

# A LATIN GRAMMAR

---

GEORGE M. LANE





PA 2087

1.25

L 3

1898



A LATIN GRAMMAR



# A LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

GEORGE M. LANE, PH.D., LL.D. *D*

PROFESSOR EMERITUS OF LATIN IN  
HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK AND LONDON

HARPER & BROTHERS PUBLISHERS

1898

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY  
CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.

PA

2087

.L3

131218 ✓

Copyright, 1898, by GARDINER M. LANE and LOUISA VAN RENSSELAER.

---

All rights reserved.

## PREFACE.

GEORGE MARTIN LANE died on the thirtieth of June, 1897. His *Latin Grammar*, in the preparation of which he had been engaged, during the intervals of teaching in Harvard University, for nearly thirty years, was at that time approaching completion. The first two hundred and ninety-one pages had been stereotyped; the pages immediately following, on the *Relative Sentence* and the *Conjunctive Particle Sentence* through *quod* and *quia* (pages 292-302), together with the chapter on the *Infinitive* (pages 374-386), were ready for stereotyping; of the remainder of the book, pages 303-373 and 387-436 were in the form of a first draught; finally, he had received a few weeks before his death, but had never examined, the manuscript of the chapter on *Versification* (pages 442-485), written at his invitation by his former pupil, Dr. Herman W. Hayley, now of Wesleyan University.

It was found that my dear and honoured master had left a written request that his work should be completed by me, in consultation with his colleagues, Professors Frederic De Forest Allen and Clement Lawrence Smith. A month had scarcely passed when scholars everywhere had another heavy loss to mourn in the sudden death of Professor Allen. Almost immediately afterwards, Professor Smith left this country, to take charge for a year of the American School of Classical Studies in Rome, but not before we had agreed that circumstances required the early publication of the book, notwithstanding his absence. I was thus deprived of two eminent counsellors, whose knowledge and experience would have been of inestimable assistance.

About one hundred and twenty pages (303-373 and 387-436), exclusive of *Versification*, were yet to receive their final form. Professor Lane had determined the order in which the topics contained in these pages should be treated, and no change has been made in that order. Most of the main principles of syntax,



## Preface.

---

too, have been left exactly as they were expressed in his draught. This draught was written some years ago, and, although he had corrected and annotated it from time to time, there is no doubt that in writing it out afresh he would have made many alterations and improvements which are not indicated in his notes. Consequently, he is not to be held responsible for errors and omissions in the pages which had not received his final approval. Yet I conceived it my duty to preserve, so far as possible, the very language of his corrected draught; and this, in the statement of almost all the main principles, I have been able to do. Some modifications and some radical alterations were inevitable; in particular, the treatment of *quamvis*, *quando*, *quin*, the *Supine*, and *Numerals* seemed to call for much amplification and rearrangement. I have also deemed it necessary to add some seventy sections<sup>1</sup> under various heads, and Dr. Hayley has been good enough to write sections 2458–2510, which precede his chapter on *Versification*. But, in general, my principal function has been: first, to provide additional Latin examples of the principles which Professor Lane had formulated; secondly, to enter, under the various principles, historical statements regarding the usage in the Latin writers, drawn from the best authorities at my disposal.

Professor Lane's own method was far from that of a compiler. He took nothing for granted without thorough investigation, however well established it might seem, and he followed the dictum of no man, however widely accepted as an authority. For example, his many pupils and correspondents will remember how untiring he was in his efforts to arrive at accuracy in even the minutest points of inflection. Thus, for the *List of Verbs* (§§ 922–1022), he made entirely new collections, and admitted no form among the 'principal parts' unless actually found represented in the authors. In the details of syntax, he was equally indefatigable; the sections on the *Locative Proper* (1331–1341), for instance, contain the result of an immense amount of painful

<sup>1</sup> The sections which I have added are as follows: 1866, 1873, 1878, 1879, 1880, 1887, 1890, 1901, 1902, 1903, 1907, 1909, 1913, 1922, 1927, 1935, 1964, 1975, 1978, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1984, 1989, 1990, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2068, 2086, 2088, 2097, 2111, 2122, 2152, 2155, 2255, 2264, 2267, 2271, 2273, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2281, 2289, 2292, 2345, 2357, 2400, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2740–2745.



## Preface.

---

research. He devoted much anxious thought to the definitions and the titles of the various constructions: thus, the distinction between the *Present of Vivid Narration* (1590) and the *Annalistic Present* (1591) seems obvious now that it is stated; but to reach it many pages of examples were collected and compared. He held that examples printed in the grammar to illustrate syntactical principles should never be manufactured; they should be accurately quoted from the authors, without other alteration than the omission of words by which the construction under illustration was not affected. He was careful, also, not to use an example in which there was any serious doubt as to the text in that part which covered the principle illustrated by the example. To 'Hidden Quantity' he had given much attention, and many of the results of his studies in this subject were published, in 1889, in the *School Dictionary* by his friend Dr. Lewis. Since that time he had found reason to change his views with regard to some words, and these changes are embodied in the present book, in which he marked every vowel which he believed to be long in quantity.

The order in which the divisions and subdivisions of grammar are here presented will not seem strange to those who are acquainted with the recent grammars published by Germans. It is the scientific order of presentation, whatever order a teacher may think fit to follow in his actual practice. The table of contents has been made so full as to serve as a systematic exposition of the scheme, and to make needless any further words upon it here. In the *Appendix* Professor Lane would have inserted, out of deference to custom, a chapter on the *Arrangement of Words*; but the draught of it which he left was too fragmentary for publication. Since the proper preparation of the chapter would have greatly delayed the publication of the book, it was thought best to omit it altogether, at least for the present. This topic, in fact, like some others in the *Appendix*, belongs rather to a treatise on Latin Composition than to a Latin Grammar.

For the indexes, and for much valuable help in proof reading, I heartily thank Dr. J. W. Walden, another of Professor Lane's pupils.

In the course of his work, Professor Lane frequently consulted his colleagues and other distinguished scholars both in this country and in Europe. He gratefully welcomed their advice, and care-

## *Preface.*

---

fully considered and often adopted their suggestions. Had he lived to write a preface, he would doubtless have thanked by name those to whom he considered himself as under particular obligation, whether from direct correspondence or through the use of their published works; but it is obvious that the information in my possession will not allow me to attempt this pleasant duty. Of Professor Lane's pupils, also, not a few, while in residence as advanced students at the University, were from time to time engaged in the collection of material which he used in the grammar. They, like his other helpers, must now be content with the thought of the courteous acknowledgment which they would have received from him.

MORRIS H. MORGAN.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY,  
CAMBRIDGE, *May*, 1898.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

THE REFERENCES ARE TO SECTIONS.

Parts of Latin Grammar, 1.

## PART FIRST: WORDS, 2-1022.

Parts of Speech, 2-15.

### (A.) SOUND, 16-179.

Alphabet, 16-25.

Vowels, 26-38.

Long and Short, 26-31. Pronunciation, 32-36. Classification, 37-38.

Diphthongs, 39-43.

Nature and Kinds, 39-41. Pronunciation, 42-43.

Consonants, 44-54.

Pronunciation, 44-49. Classification, 50-54.

Change of Sound, 55-154.

*Vowel Change*: Lengthening, 55-56. Shortening, 57-62. Long Vowels in Old Latin, 63-68. Weakening, 69-79. Diphthong Decay, 80-88. Development, 89-90. Disappearance, 91-96. Hiatus, 97. Contraction, 98-101. Elision, 102. Assimilation, 103-104. Dissimilation, 105.

*Vowels and Consonants Combined*: Assimilation, 106-111. Dissimilation, 112. Interchange of Vowels and Consonants, 113.

*Consonant Change*: Substitution, 114-119. Development, 120-121. Disappearance, 122-143. Assimilation, 144-151. Dissimilation, 152-154.

Syllables, 155.

Length of Vowels, 156-167.

Short Vowels, 157-164. Long Vowels, 165-167.

Length of Syllables, 168-169.

Accent, 170-179.

Of Disyllables, 170. Of Polysyllables, 171-173. Kinds of Accent, 174-177. Proclitics, 178. Enclitics, 179.

## Table of Contents.

---

### (B.) FORMATION, 180-396.

Definitions, 180-198.

Roots, 183-189. Present Stems as Roots, 190-194. Stems, 195-197. Primitives and Denominatives, 198.

Formation of the Noun, 199-364.

Without a Formative Suffix, 199. Formative Suffixes, 200-203. *Formation of the Substantive*: Primitives, 204-245. Denominatives, 246-279. *Formation of the Adjective*: Primitives, 280-297. Denominatives, 298-341. Comparison, 342-364.

Formation of Denominative Verbs, 365-375.

Composition, 376-396.

Of Nouns, 379-390. Of Verbs, 391-396.

### (C.) INFLECTION, 397-1022.

Definition, 397.

#### (A.) INFLECTION OF THE NOUN, 398-712.

General Principles, 398-431.

Case Endings, 398. The Stem, 399-401. Gender, 402-413. Number, 414-418. Case, 419-431.

The Substantive, 432-607.

Stems in -ā- (*The First Declension*), 432-445. Stems in -o- (*The Second Declension*), 446-466. Consonant Stems (*The Third Declension*), 467-512. Stems in -i- (*The Third Declension*), 513-569. Gender of Consonant Stems and -i- Stems, 570-584. Stems in -u- (*The Fourth Declension*), 585-595. Stems in -ē- (*The Fifth Declension*), 596-607.

The Adjective, 608-643.

Stems in -o- and -ā-, 613-620. Consonant Stems, 621-626. Stems in -i-, 627-636. Numeral Adjectives, 637-643.

The Pronoun, 644-695.

Personal and Reflexive, 644-651. Personal and Reflexive Possessive, 652-655. Other Pronouns, 656-659. Demonstrative, 660-670. Determinative, 671-675. Pronoun of Identity, 676-678. Intensive, 679-680. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite, 681-694. Correlative Pronouns, 695.

The Adverb, Conjunction, and Preposition, 696-712.

Nouns as Adverbs, 696-698. Accusative, 699-702. Ablative, 703-707. Locative, 708-709. Other Endings, 710. Correlative Adverbs, 711. Sentences as Adverbs, 712.

#### (B.) INFLECTION OF THE VERB, 713-1022.

General Principles, 713-742.

The Stem, 714-720. The Person Ending, 721-731. Nouns of the Verb, 732. Principal Parts, 733-735. Designation of the Verb, 736-737. Theme, 738-740. Classes of Verbs, 741-742.

Primitive Verbs, 743-791.

Root Verbs, 743-744. Inflection of *sum*, 745-750. *possum*, 751-753. *dō*, 754-757. *bibō*, *serō*, *sistō*, 758. *inquam*, 759-761. *eō*, 762-767. *queō*



## Table of Contents.

---

and *nequeō*, 768. *edō*, 769-771. *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 772-779. *ferō*, 780-781. Verbs in *-ere* (*The Third Conjugation*), *regō*, 782-783. Verbs in *-iō*, *-ere*, 784-791. *capiō*, 784-785. *āiō*, 786-787. *fiō*, 788-790. Others in *-iō*, *-ere*, 791.

**Denominative Verbs**, 792-797.

Verbs in *-āre* (*The First Conjugation*), *laudō*, 792-793. Verbs in *-ēre* (*The Second Conjugation*), *moneō*, 794-795. Verbs in *-īre* (*The Fourth Conjugation*), *audiō*, 796-797.

**Deponent Verbs**, 798-801.

**Periphrastic Forms**, 802-804.

**Defective Verbs**, 805-817.

**Redundant Verbs**, 818-823.

**Formation of Stems**, 824-919.

Variable Vowel, 824-827. *The Present System*: Present Indicative Stem, 828-840. Present Subjunctive, 841-843. Imperative, 844-846. Imperfect Indicative, 847-848. Imperfect Subjunctive, 849-850. Future, 851-853. *The Perfect System*: Perfect Indicative Stem, 854-875. Perfect Subjunctive, 876-878. Perfect Imperative, 879. Pluperfect Indicative, 880. Pluperfect Subjunctive, 881. Future Perfect, 882-884. Short or Old forms of the Perfect System, 885-893. *Nouns of the Verb*: The Infinitive, 894-898. Gerundive and Gerund, 899. Supine, 900. Present Participle, 901-903. Future Participle, 904-905. Perfect Participle, 906-919.

**List of Verbs arranged according to the Principal Parts**, 920-1022.

## PART SECOND: SENTENCES, 1023-2299.

**Definitions**, 1023-1061.

The Simple Sentence, 1023-1025. The Subject, 1026-1034. The Predicate, 1035-1036. Enlargements of the Subject, 1038-1047. Enlargements of the Predicate, 1048-1054. Combination of Sentences, 1055. The Compound Sentence, 1056-1057. The Complex Sentence, 1058-1061.

**Agreement**, 1062-1098.

Of the Verb, 1062-1076. Of the Substantive, 1077-1081. Of the Adjective, 1082-1098.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE, 1099-1635.

(A.) USE OF THE NOUN, 1099-1468.

**Number and Gender**, 1099-1110.

**Case**, 1111-1437.

NOMINATIVE, 1113-1123. Nominative of Title, 1114-1116. Of Exclamation, 1117. Vocative Nominative and Vocative Proper, 1118-1123.

ACCUSATIVE, 1124-1174. Of the Object, 1132-1139. Emphasizing or Defining, 1140-1146. Of the Part Concerned, 1147. Of the Thing Put

## Table of Contents.

On, 1148. Of Exclamation, 1149-1150. Of Space and Time, 1151-1156. Of the Aim of Motion, 1157-1166. Two Accusatives Combined, 1167-1174.

DATIVE, 1175-1225. *I. The Complementary Dative*: (1.) The Essential Complement: With Verbs, 1180-1199. With Adjectives, 1200-1204. (2.) The Optional Complement: Of the person or thing interested, 1205-1210. The Emotional Dative, 1211. The Dative of the Possessor, 1212-1216. Of Relation, 1217-1218. *II. The Predicative Dative*: Of Tendency or Result, 1219-1222. Of Purpose or Intention, 1223-1225.

GENITIVE, 1226-1295. *I. With Substantives*: In General, 1227-1231. Of the Subject, Cause, Origin, or Owner, 1232-1238. Of Quality, 1239-1240. Partitive, 1241-1254. Of Definition, 1255-1259. Objective, 1260-1262. *II. With Adjectives*, 1263-1270. *III. With Verbs*: Of Valuing, 1271-1275. With *rēfert* and *interest*, 1276-1279. With Judicial Verbs, 1280-1282. With Impersonals of Mental Distress, 1283-1286. With Verbs of Memory, 1287-1291. Of Participation and Mastery, 1292. Of Fulness and Want, 1293-1294. *IV. The Genitive of Exclamation*, 1295.

ABLATIVE, 1296-1400. *I. The Ablative Proper*: Of Separation and Want, and of Departure, 1302-1311. Of Source, Stuff, or Material, 1312-1315. Of Cause, Influence, or Motive, 1316-1319. Of Comparison, 1320-1330. *II. The Locative Ablative*: The Locative Proper, 1331-1341. The Ablative used as Locative: Of Place in, on, or at which, 1342-1349. Of Time at which or within which, 1350-1355. *III. The Instrumental Ablative*: (1.) The Ablative of Attendance: Of Accompaniment, 1356-1357. Of Manner, 1358-1361. Ablative Absolute, 1362-1374. Ablative of Quality, 1375. Of the Route Taken, 1376. (2.) The Instrumental Proper: Of Instrument or Means, 1377-1384. Of Specification, 1385. Of Fulness, 1386-1387. Of Measure, Exchange, and Price, 1388-1392. Of the Amount of Difference, 1393-1399. Two or more Ablatives Combined, 1400.

### Use of Cases with Prepositions, 1401-1437.

In General, 1401-1409. With the Accusative, 1410-1416. With the Ablative, 1417-1421. With the Accusative or the Ablative, 1422-1425. Combination of Substantives by a Preposition, 1426-1428. Repetition or Omission of a Preposition, 1429-1430. Two Prepositions with one Substantive, 1431-1432. Position of Prepositions, 1433-1437.

### Use of Adverbs, 1438-1453.

### Use of Degrees of Comparison, 1454-1468.

#### (B.) USE OF THE VERB, 1469-1635.

### Voice, 1469-1492.

Active, 1469-1471. Passive, 1472-1485. Deponents, 1486-1492.

### Mood, 1493-1586.

THE INDICATIVE, 1493-1533. In Declarations, 1493-1498. In Questions, 1499-1533. Yes or No Questions, 1502-1510. Positive and Negative Answers, 1511-1514. Alternative Questions, 1515-1525. Pronoun Questions, 1526-1530. Some Applications of Questions, 1531-1533.

### THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION, 1534-1539.

## Table of Contents.

---

### The Conjunctive Particle Sentence, 1838-2122.

Introduced by *quod*, 1838-1855. *quia*, 1856-1858. *quom* or *cum*, 1859-1881. *quoniam*, 1882-1884. *quotiēns*, *quotiēnscumque*, 1885-1887. *quam*, 1888-1898. *quamquam*, 1899-1902. *quamvis*, 1903-1907. *tamquam*, 1908-1910. *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1911-1922. *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *cum primum*, *simul atque*, 1923-1934. *ut*, 1935-1970. *ubi*, 1971. *quō*, 1972-1976. *quōminus*, 1977-1979. *quīn*, 1980-1990. *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1991-2009. *quandō*, 2010-2014. *sī*, 2015-2115. *etsī*, *tametsī*, *etiamsī*, 2116. *quasi*, *tamquam sī*, *ut* or *velut sī*, 2117-2122.

### Connection of Separate Sentences or Periods, 2123-2159.

Without a Connective, 2124-2127. With a Connective, 2128-2158. Affirmative Coordination, 2159.

### Nouns of the Verb, 2160-2299.

THE INFINITIVE, 2160-2236. Definitions, 2160-2163. The Infinitive of Purpose, 2164-2165. With Adjectives, 2166. *The Infinitive as Object*: The Complementary Infinitive, 2168-2171. The Accusative with the Infinitive, 2172-2206. *The Infinitive as Subject*, 2207-2215. The Infinitive of Exclamation, 2216. *Tenses of the Infinitive*, 2218. Present, 2219-2222. Perfect, 2223-2231. Future, 2232-2236.

THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND, 2237-2268. Definitions, 2237-2242. Nominative, 2243-2249. Accusative, 2250-2253. Dative, 2254-2257. Genitive, 2258-2264. Ablative, 2265-2268.

THE SUPINE, 2269-2277. Definitions, 2269. Supine in *-um*, 2270-2273. Supine in *-ū*, 2274-2277.

THE PARTICIPLE, 2278-2299. Definition, 2278. Time of the Participle, 2279-2281. The Attributive Participle, 2282-2286. The Substantive Participle, 2287-2292. The Appositive Participle, 2293-2296. The Predicative Participle, 2297-2299.

## APPENDIX, 2300-2745.

### Some Occasional Peculiarities of Verbs, 2300-2307.

The Conative Use, 2301-2303. The Causative Use, 2304. The Potential Use, 2305. The Obligatory Use, 2306. The Permissive Use, 2307.

### Indirect Discourse, 2308-2334.

Definitions, 2308-2311. Mood, 2312-2320. Tense, 2321-2324. Pronoun, 2325. Conditional Periods in Indirect Discourse, 2326-2334.

### Use of Pronouns, 2335-2403.

Personal, 2335. Reflexive, 2336-2343. Equivalents for a Reciprocal Pronoun, 2344-2345. Possessive, 2346. Demonstrative, 2347-2364. Determinative, 2365-2370. Pronoun of Identity, 2371-2373. Intensive, 2374-2384. Interrogative, 2385-2386. Relative, 2387. Indefinite, 2388-2403.

### Numerals, 2404-2428.

Classification, 2404. List of Numerals, 2405. Notation, 2406-2411. Some forms of Numerals, 2412-2418. Some uses of Numerals, 2419-2422. Other Numerals, 2423. Fractions, 2424-2428.



## Table of Contents.

---

THE SUBJUNCTIVE, 1540-1570. The Subjunctive in Declarations :  
*I. Of Desire* : Of Wish, 1540-1546. Of Exhortation, Direction, Statement  
of Propriety, 1547-1552. Of Willingness, Assumption, Concession, 1553.  
*II. Of Action Conceivable*, 1554-1562. The Subjunctive in Questions,  
1563-1570.

THE IMPERATIVE, 1571-1586. Of Command, 1571-1580. Of Prohibition,  
1581-1586.

**Tense**, 1587-1635.

OF THE INDICATIVE, 1587-1633. Present, 1587-1593. Imperfect, 1594-  
1601. Perfect, 1602-1613. Pluperfect, 1614-1618. Future, 1619-1625.  
Future Perfect, 1626-1632. The Future Active Participle with *sum*, 1633.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, 1634-1635.

### THE COMPOUND SENTENCE, OR COORDINATION, 1636-1713.

**Without a Connective**, 1637-1642.

**With a Connective**, 1643-1692.

Conjunctions, 1643. Copulative, 1644-1666. Disjunctive, 1667-1675.  
Adversative, 1676-1686. Other Words as Connectives, 1687-1692.

**The Intermediate Coordinate Sentence**, 1693-1713.

The Subordinate Idea unindicated by the Mood, 1695-1704. The Sub-  
ordinate Idea indicated by the Subjunctive, 1705-1713.

### THE COMPLEX SENTENCE, OR SUBORDINATION, 1714-2299.

Definitions and Classifications, 1714-1716. Primary and Secondary  
Tenses, 1717. Virtual Futures, 1718.

**Mood of the Subordinate Sentence**, 1720-1731.

The Indicative, 1721. The Subjunctive : In Indirect Discourse, and in  
cases of Attraction, 1722-1729. Of Repeated Action, 1730. As in the  
Simple Sentence, 1731. —

**Tense of the Subordinate Sentence**, 1732-1772.

Of the Indicative, 1732-1739. Of the Subjunctive, 1740-1772. Sequence  
of Tenses, 1745-1772. Tense subordinate to an Indicative, 1746-1761.  
Tense subordinate to a Subjunctive, 1762-1765. Tense subordinate to a  
Noun of the Verb, 1766-1769. Subjunctive due to another Subjunctive or  
to an Infinitive, 1770-1772.

**The Indirect Question**, 1773-1791.

In General, 1773-1774. Yes or No Questions, 1775-1777. Alternative  
Questions, 1778-1784. Pronoun Questions, 1785. Original Subjunctives,  
1786. Indicative Questions apparently Indirect, 1787-1791.

**The Relative Sentence**, 1792-1837.

Agreement of the Relative, 1801-1811. Moods in the Relative Sentence,  
1812-1830. Relative Sentences of Purpose, 1817. Of Characteristic or  
Result, 1818-1823. Of Cause or Concession, 1824-1830. Correlative Sen-  
tences, 1831. Relative Sentences Combined, 1832-1834. The Relative  
introducing a main Sentence, 1835-1837.



## *Table of Contents.*

---

### **Prosody, 2429-2739.**

RULES OF QUANTITY, 2429-2472. In Classical Latin, 2429-2457. Position, 2458. Hidden Quantity, 2459-2463. Peculiarities of Quantity in Old Latin, 2464-2469. Iambic Shortening, 2470-2472.

FIGURES OF PROSODY, 2473-2510. Hiatus, 2473-2480. Elision, 2481-2492. Ecthipsis, 2493-2496. Semi-Hiatus or Semi-Elision, 2497. Synaloepha, 2498. Synizesis, 2499. Synaeresis, 2500. Dialysis, 2501. Diaeresis, 2502. Hardening, 2503. Softening, 2504. Diastolé, 2505-2506. Systolé, 2507. Syncopé, 2508. Tmesis, 2509. Synapheia, 2510.

VERSIFICATION, 2511-2739. Definitions, 2511-2548. Numeri Italici, 2549. The Saturnian, 2550-2554. Dactylic Rhythms, 2555-2580. Iambic Rhythms, 2581-2627. Trochaic Rhythms, 2628-2649. Logaoedic Rhythms, 2650-2674. Dactylo-Trochaic Rhythms, 2675-2681. Anapaestic Rhythms, 2682-2690. Cretic Rhythms, 2691-2697. Bacchiac Rhythms, 2698-2706. Choriambic Rhythms, 2707. Ionic Rhythms, 2708-2717. Lyric Metres of Horace, 2718-2737. Lyric Strophes of Catullus, 2738. Index of Horatian Odes and their metres, 2739.

**Abbreviations used in citing the Authors, 2740-2745.**

**Index of Subjects.**

**Index of Latin Words.**



# LATIN GRAMMAR

I. Latin Grammar has two parts. I. The first part treats of words: (A.) their sound; (B.) their formation; (C.) their inflection. II. The second part shows how words are joined together in sentences.

---

## PART FIRST & WORDS

---

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

2. The principal kinds of words or PARTS OF SPEECH are *Nouns*, *Verbs*, and *Conjunctions*.

3. I. NOUNS are *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

4. (A.) NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE, otherwise called Substantives, are divided, as to meaning, into *Concrete* and *Abstract*.

5. (1.) CONCRETE SUBSTANTIVES denote persons or things. Concrete Substantives are subdivided into *Proper Names*, which denote individual persons or things: as, **Cicerō**, *Cicero*; **Rōma**, *Rome*; and *Common Names*, otherwise called *Appellatives*, which denote one or more of a class: as, **homo**, *man*; **taurus**, *bull*.

6. Appellatives which denote a collection of single things are called *Collectives*: as, **turba**, *crowd*; **exercitus**, *army*. Appellatives which denote stuff, quantity, material, things not counted, but having measure or weight, are called *Material Substantives*: as, **vīnum**, *wine*; **ferrum**, *iron*; **faba**, *horsebeans*.

7. (2.) ABSTRACT SUBSTANTIVES denote qualities, states, conditions: as, **rubor**, *redness*; **aequitās**, *fairness*; **sōlitūdō**, *loneliness*.

8. (B.) NOUNS ADJECTIVE, otherwise called Adjectives, attached to substantives, describe persons or things: as, **ruber**, *red*; **aequus**, *fair*; **sōlus**, *alone*.

9. PRONOUNS are words of universal application which serve as substitutes for nouns.

Thus, **taurus**, *bull*, names, and **ruber**, *red*, describes, particular things; but **ego**, *I*, is universally applicable to any speaker, and **meus**, *mine*, to anything belonging to any speaker.

10. ADVERBS are mostly cases of nouns used to denote manner, place, time or degree : as, *subitō*, *suddenly* ; *forās*, *out of doors* ; *diū*, *long* ; *valdē*, *mightily*, *very*.

11. PREPOSITIONS are adverbs which are used to modify as prefixes the meaning of verbs, or to define more nicely the meaning of cases : as, *vocō*, *I call*, *ēvocō*, *I call out* ; *ex urbe*, *from town*.

12. II. VERBS are words which denote action, including existence or condition : as, *regit*, *he guides* ; *est*, *he is* ; *latet*, *he is hid*.

13. III. CONJUNCTIONS connect sentences, nouns, or verbs : as, *et*, *and* ; *sed*, *but*.

14. INTERJECTIONS are cries which express feeling, and are not usually a part of the sentence : as, *ā*, *ah* ; *heu*, *alas*.

15. There is no ARTICLE in Latin : thus, *mēnsa* may denote *table*, *a table*, or *the table*.

## A. SOUND.

### ALPHABET.

16. The sounds of the Latin language are denoted by twenty-one letters.

Character	Name	pronounced	Character	Name	pronounced
A	a	<i>ah</i>	M	em	<i>em</i>
B	be	<i>bay</i>	N	en	<i>en</i>
C	ce	<i>kay</i>	O	o	<i>o</i>
D	de	<i>day</i>	P	pe	<i>pay</i>
E	e	<i>ch</i>	Q	qu	<i>koo</i>
F	ef	<i>ef</i>	R	er	<i>air</i>
G	ge	<i>gay</i>	S	es	<i>ess</i>
H	ha	<i>hah</i>	T	te	<i>tay</i>
I	i	<i>ee</i>	V	u	<i>oo</i>
K	ka	<i>kah</i>	X	ix	<i>eex</i>
L	el	<i>el</i>			

The sound indicated by *-ay* above, as '*bay*,' is only approximate ; the true sound is that of the French *ê* in *fête* ; see 36.

17. The Latin alphabet, which originally consisted of capitals only, was, with the exception of *G*, borrowed from the Greeks of Cumae, but the letters were called by a new set of names. The letter *C* (first written <) and *K* had originally the sound of the Greek *Γ* and *Κ*. Afterwards *K* dropped out of general use, and the sign *C* stood for both sounds. But as this proved inconvenient, a new character, *G*, was formed by adding a stroke to the *C*. This was used for the old <, while *C* kept the *k* sound only. Occasionally *q* is written for *c* : as, *peqūnia* for *pecūnia*, *money* ; *qum* for *cum*, *with*.



18. **K** and the old-fashioned character for **G**, namely **C**, were kept in abbreviations: as, **K.**, for *kalendae, calends*; **C.**, for *Gāius*; **Ḑ.**, for *Gāia*; **Cn.** for *Gnaeus*.

19. In Cicero's time two other letters were already in use in Greek words; these were always called by their Greek names, and were placed at the end of the alphabet; they are **Y**, named *ÿ* (35), and **Z**, named *zēta*.

20. Before the introduction of these letters, **u** was used for the Greek **Υ**: as **Burrus**, later **Pyrrhus**; and **s**, or, as a medial, **ss**, for **Z**: as, *sōna, belt*, later *zōna*; *malacissō, I soften*.

21. The characters **I** and **V** represent not only the two vowels **i** and **u**, but also their cognate consonants, named consonant **i** and consonant **u**, and equivalent to the English *y* and *w* respectively.

22. The consonant **i** was sometimes represented by a taller letter, especially in the imperial age: as, **MAIOR**, *greater*; or a double **i** was written: as, **EIIVS**, *of him*; **Grāiiugenārum**, *of Greek-born men* (Lucr.); **āiiō**, *I say*; **Māiia** (Cic.). Sometimes the two designations were confounded, a double **i** being written, and one or the other letter made taller: as, **EIIVS** or **EIIVS**.

23. In schoolbooks and most texts of the authors, the vowel **u** is printed **U**, **u**, and the consonant **V**, **v**. A character, **J**, **j**, was introduced in the 17th century, to indicate the consonant **i**. But this character is no longer usual in editions of the authors, and will probably soon disappear from schoolbooks.

24. The distinction between **u** and **v** is not always made very consistently: **q** has regularly, and **g** and **s** have sometimes, an aftersound of *w*, best represented by **v**; but the usual practice is to write **u**, as in the following disyllables: **quōrum**, *of whom*; **anguis**, *snake*; **suāvis**, *sweet*.

25. The alphabet represents a series of sounds, ranging from the fullest vowel sound **a**, to a mere explosion, as, **c**, **t**, or **p**. These sounds are roughly divided into vowels and consonants.

## VOWELS.

26. The vowels, **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u** (**y**), are either *long* or *short*. The sound of a long vowel is considered to be twice the length of that of a short.

27. The same characters are ordinarily used to denote both long and short vowels. But at different periods long vowels were often indicated in inscriptions thus:

28. (1.) From 134 B.C. to 74 B.C., long **a**, **e**, or **u** was sometimes doubled: as, **AARA**, *altar*; **PAASTORES**, *shepherds*; **LEEGE**, *by law*; **IVVS**, *right*.

29. (2.) Long **i** was often denoted (*a.*) From 134 B.C. on, by the spelling **ei**: as, **DAREI**, *be given*; **REDIEIT**, *has come back*; **INTERIEISTI**, *hast died*. (*b.*) From 88 B.C. on, by a taller letter ('*i longa*'): as, **HIC**, *this*; **FLXA**, *fastened*. But '*i longa*' is often used for initial consonant **i**, or for decorative purposes.

30. (3.) From 63 B.C. on, a mark called an *apex* (∩∩∩) was often put over a long vowel: as, **FĒCIT**, *made*; **HORTĒNSIVS**; **DVVMVIRATVS**, *duumvirate*. The apex was written ' in the imperial age, and was turned by the grammarians into the horizontal mark ¯, still in use.

31. In schoolbooks, a long vowel is indicated by a horizontal line over it : as, *āra*, altar ; *mēnsis*, month ; *ōrdō*, series. A short vowel is sometimes indicated by a curved mark : as, *pĕr*, through ; *dŭx*, leader ; but this mark is unnecessary if long vowels are systematically marked. A long vowel which is sometimes shortened in pronunciation is called *common*, and is marked *˘* : as, *mihī˘*, to me.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS.

32. The sound of a vowel is the same as its name.

33. The long vowels are pronounced thus : *ā* as in *father* ; *ē* as *ê* in the French *fête* ; *ī* as in *machine* ; *ō* nearly as in *tone* ; *ū* as in *rule*.

34. The short vowels have the same sounds, shortened : *a* as in the first syllable of *papa* ; *e* nearly as in *step* ; *i* as in *pit*, but with a little more of an *ee* sound ; *o* as in *obey* ; *u* as in *pull*.

35. The sound of *y* (short or long) is intermediate between *u* and *i*, like the French *u* or German *ü*. Short *u* also before *b*, *p*, *m*, or *f*, passed into this sound, and then into *i* : as, *lacruma*, *lacrima*, tear ; *optumus*, *optimus*, best.

36. The names of the English letters *a* and *o* are a pretty close approximation to the Latin sounds *e* and *o*. But the English *a* and *o* are both diphthongs, *a* having a vanishing sound of *ee* (not heard in the *ê* of *fête*), and *o* of *oo*, while the Latin *e* or *o* has one sustained sound.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS.

37. Vowels are divided into *open*, otherwise called *strong*, and *close*, otherwise called *weak*. The most open vowel is *a*, *ā* ; less open are *o*, *ō*, and *e*, *ē*. The close vowels are *u*, *ū* (*y*, *ȳ*), and *i*, *ī*.

38. *a* is uttered from the expanded throat ; *u* is labial, made by narrowing and rounding the lips, and *i* is palatal. *o* stands between *a* and *u* ; *e* between *a* and *i* ; and *y* between *u* and *i*.

#### DIPHTHONGS.

39. The combined sound of an open vowel and a closer one is called a *Diphthong*. All diphthongs are long.

40. In their origin diphthongs are of two kinds : (a.) root diphthongs : as in *foedus*, treaty ; *aurum*, gold ; or (b.) the result of vowels meeting in formation, composition, or inflection : see 99.

41. The common diphthongs are **au**, **ae**, and **oe**. Uncommon diphthongs are **ui**, formed by the union of two close vowels, and **eu**; also the following, which are chiefly confined to old inscriptions: **ai**, **ei**, **ou**, **oi**.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF DIPHTHONGS.

42. The common diphthongs are pronounced thus: **au** like *ou* in *house*; **ae** like *ay* or *ai* in *ay*, *aisle*; **oe** like *oi* in *spoil*.

43. The uncommon diphthongs are pronounced thus: **ui** like *oo-ee*, **eu** like *eh-oo*, and **ai** like *ah-ee*, all rapidly uttered; **ei** as in *eight*; **ou** like *oh-oo*, and **oi** like *oh-ee*, both rapidly uttered.

### CONSONANTS.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

44. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. The following points must be noticed:

45. **b** before **s** or **t** has the sound of **p**: as, **abs**, pronounced *aps*; **obterō**, pronounced *opterō*. **c** is always like *k*. **g** as in *garden*, *gate*, *give*; never as in *gentle*. **j** has the sound of the English consonant *y*.

46. **m** at the end of a word is hardly sounded, and in verse when it comes before a vowel usually disappears with the preceding vowel. **n** before **c**, **g**, **q**, or **x**, called '*n adulterinum*' or 'spurious **n**,' has a guttural sound, thus: **nc** as in *uncle*; **ng** as in *angle*, **ngu** as in *sanguine*; **nqu** as *nkū* in *inkuiper*; **nx** as in *lynx*. **qu** is like the English *qu* (24).

47. **s** as in *sin*, not with the sound of *z*, as in *ease*. Care should also be taken not to sound final **s** as *z*. In old Latin final **s** has a weak sound, and often drops off. **su**, when it makes one syllable with the following vowel, is like *sw* in *sweet* (24). **t** sounds always as in *time*, never as in *nation*. **v** is like the English *w*. **x** is a double consonant, standing for **cs**, and so sounded; never as *gs* or *gz*.

48. When consonants are doubled, each consonant is distinctly sounded: thus, **terra**, *earth*, sounded **ter-ra**, not '*ter-a*;' **an-nus**, *year*, not '*an-us*.' But **ll** does not differ very materially from **l**. Consonants were not doubled in writing till after 200 B.C., and for more than a century after the usage is variable; but it must not be inferred that they were pronounced as single consonants.

49. About 100 B.C. the combinations **ch**, **ph**, and **th** were introduced in Greek words to represent *χ*, *φ*, and *θ*; as **Philippus**, for the older **Pilipos**. Somewhat later these combinations were in general use in some Latin words: as, **pulcher**, **triumphus**, **Cethēgus**. **ch** is thought to have been pronounced like *kʰ* in *blockhead*, **ph** as in *uphill*, and **th** as in *hothouse*. But in practice **ch** is usually sounded as in the German *machen* or *ich*, **ph** as in *graphic*, and **th** as in *pathos*.



## CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.

50. Consonants may be classed in three ways, thus :

51. (1.) In respect of continuity of sound : consonants which admit prolongation are called *Continuous sounds* : as, l, m, s ; those which do not are called *Momentary sounds, Mutes, or Explosives* : as, t, p.

52. (2.) In respect of intonation : consonants which have resonance are called *Sonants* : as, m, b ; consonants which are mere puffs without resonance are called *Surds* : as, c, t, p.

53. (3.) In respect of the organs of voice chiefly employed : consonants are divided into *Guttural*, or throat sounds, as, g, c ; *Lingual*, or tongue sounds, as, l, d ; and *Labial*, or lip sounds, as, m, b. i is *Palatal* and f *Labiodental*.

54. The threefold classification is shown in the following table :

Name from Vocal Organs.	Continuous Sounds.			Momentary, or Mutes.	
	Sonant.		Surd.		
	Semivowel.	Nasal.	Spirant.	Sonant.	Surd.
<i>Guttural.</i>		n adul- terinum	h	g	c, q, k
<i>Palatal.</i>	i				
<i>Lingual.</i>	l, r	n	s	d	t
<i>Labiodental.</i>			f		
<i>Labial.</i>	v	m		b	p

## CHANGE OF SOUND.

## VOWEL CHANGE.

## LENGTHENING.

55. When a consonant disappears, its time is sometimes absorbed by a preceding short vowel, which thereby becomes long. This is called *Compensation* : as,

Sextius, Sēstius ; \*sexcentī, sēscenī, *six hundred* ; sexdecim, sēdecim, *sixteen* (134) ; ex, ē, *out of* (142) ; \*magior, māior, *greater* (135) ; \*abiets, abiēs, *fir* (137). Very often however the vowel is not affected.



56. In noun stems in -o- the stem vowel is lengthened in the genitive plural -ōrum : as, servōrum, *of slaves*.

#### SHORTENING.

57. A vowel originally long is regularly shortened before another vowel, and often also in the last syllable of a word of more than one syllable : as,

fuī, *I have been*, fierī, *become*, Lūcius ; N. aquila, *eagle* ; for the older fūī, fierī, Lūcius ; N. aquilā.

58. Exceptional examples are found in old Latin of a vowel preserved long before a vowel : as, fidēī ; āis ; clūeat (Plaut.) ; adnūit (Enn.) ; FVVEIT (inscr., 28) ; fūit, fūimus (Plaut.). For such vowels regularly long, see 159.

59. In certain specific endings, a vowel which was originally long is regularly short in the classical period : as in,

(a.) Noun endings : -a in the nominative of -ā- stems, and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter ; -e in the ablative of consonant stems, and in the ending of the present infinitive active ; nominatives in -or, neuter comparatives in -us, and the dative and ablative plural suffix -bus.

(b.) Verb endings : the singular in -m and -t, before -nt or -nd, and -or and -ar in the passive.

60. In a few pyrrhic words (˘ ˘) in -i, which were originally iambic (˘ -), the poets in all periods retained final -ī at pleasure : these are,

mihī, tibī, sibī ; ibī, ubī ; also alicubī. The i of bi is always short in nēcubi and sīcubi, and usually in ubinam, ubivīs and ubicumque ; ibidem is used by the dramatists, ibīdem in hexameter. ubīque has always ī.

61. In old dramatic verse iambic words (˘ -) often shorten the long vowel. The poets after Plautus and Terence preserve the long vowel.

(a.) Nouns : G. eri, boni, preti. D. cani, ero, malo. L. domi, heri ; uti. Ab. levi, manu, domo, bona, fide. Plural : N. fores, viri. D., Ab. bonis. Ac. foris, viros, bonas. (b.) Verbs : eo, volo, ago ; ero, dabo ; vides ; loces ; voles ; dedi, dedin ; roga, veni ; later poets sometimes retain cave, vale, and vide. The vowel may also be shortened when -n (1503) is added and s is dropped before -n : rogan, abin ; viden is also retained by later poets.

62. A vowel not of the last syllable is shortened in some words before a consonant : as, glōmus (Lucr.), glomus (Hor.) ; cōturnīx (Plaut., Lucr.), coturnīx (Ov.) ; dēfrūtum (Plaut.), dēfrutum (Verg.). calēfaciō, calefaciō (394) ; stetērunt, steterunt (857) ; ēgerīmus, ēgerimus (876).

#### Preservation of Long Vowels in Old Latin.

63. Examples of the preservation of a long vowel in certain specific endings occur in old Latin. In classical Latin also the long vowels are sometimes preserved, but usually only before the caesura or other strong pause in the verse.

64. (1.) In the final syllable of nouns a long vowel is sometimes preserved as follows:

65. Final *-ā* is sometimes preserved long in: (a.) The nominative singular of *-ā*-stems: as, *familiā* (Plaut.), *aquilā* (Enn.). (b.) The nominative and accusative plural neuter: as, *oppidā*, *cēterā*, *omniā* (Plaut.). Final *-ō* is sometimes preserved long in the adverbs *citō* and *modō*, which have usually *-ō* (2442). Final *-ē* is sometimes preserved long in: (a.) The ablative of consonant stems: as, *ordinē*, *dōtē* (Plaut.), *parietē* (Enn.), *temporē* (Ter.). (b.) The present infinitive active: as, *darē*, *prōmerē*; in *fieri* the ending always remained *-ī*.

66. Final *-ōr* is sometimes preserved long in the nominative singular: as, *clāmōr* (Enn.); *sorōr*, *uxōr*; *exercitōr*, *gubernātōr*; *stultiōr*, *longiōr* (Plaut.).

67. Final *-ūs* in the neuter of comparatives is rare: as, *longiūs* (Plaut.); also in the dative and ablative plural suffix *-būs*: as, *capitibūs* (Naev.), *aedibūs* (Plaut.).

68. (2.) A long vowel is sometimes preserved before *-t* in the third person singular active, or before *-r* in the first person singular passive of the verb: as,

(a.) Before *-t*: *-īt*: indicative present of verbs in *-īre*: as, *eit* or *īt*, *scīt* (Plaut.); *tinnīt* (Enn.); rarely in that of verbs in *-ere*: as, *percipīt*, *aīt* (Plaut.), *pōnīt*, *nictīt* (Enn.); *contemnīt* (Lucil.); future: *erīt*, *vēnībīt* (Plaut.); perfect: *vēdidīt* (Plaut.), *fvveit*. Subjunctive present: *sīt*, *possīt*, *velīt*, (Plaut.); perfect: *addūxerīt* (Plaut.). *-āt*: indicative present: as, *amāt*, *arāt*, *adflctāt* (Plaut.); *mānāt* (Enn.), *DECORAAT* (inscr., 28), *gemināt* (Lucil.); imperfect: *pōnēbāt* (Enn.). Subjunctive present: *fuāt*, *praetereāt*, *sciāt* (Plaut.), *augeāt* (Ter.). *-ēt*: indicative present: *iacēt* (Plaut.). Subjunctive present: *dēt*, *negēt* (Plaut.); imperfect and pluperfect: *essēt*, *fuissēt* (Enn.).

(b.) Before *-r*: *morōr*; *loquār*, *opprimār* (Plaut.); rarely *-ōr* in the future: as, *fatēbōr* (Plaut.).

#### WEAKENING.

69. A stronger vowel sound often sinks to a weaker one.

70. The weakening is sometimes a gradual process: thus, in old Latin an *o* often occurs where in later Latin an *u* is found: as, *flovios*, *pōcolom*, later *fluvius*, *river*, *pōculum*, *cup*; but it often occurs in formation, composition, or inflection, particularly when a syllable is prefixed or when the accent is shifted from its original place. Any vowel may sink to *i*, the weakest vowel. The particular sound at which the weakening is arrested is usually determined by the affinity of the vowel for the following consonant: see 106.

71. At the end of a word *e* is a favourite sound, taking the place not only of *o*, but of the weaker *i*: as, V. *\*servo*, *serve*, *thou slave*; *magis*, *mage*, *more*; N. and Ac., *\*mari*, *mare*, *sea*; *\*turpi*, *turpe*, *base*.

72. (1.) WEAKENING OF *a*. *a* to *u*: *salsus*, *salted*, *insulsus*, *unsalted*; *taberna*, *hut*, *contubernium*, *living together*.

73. *a* to *e*: *parō*, *I get ready*, *imperō*, *I command*; *\*peparī*, *peperī*, *I brought forth*; *\*fefallī*, *fefellī*, *I deceived*; *carpō*, *I pluck*, *discerpō*, *I tear apart*; *ars*, *art*, *iners*, *unskilful*; *factus*, *made*, *perfectus*, *finished*. *ā* to *ē* rarely: *hālō*, *I breathe*, *anhēlō*, *I gasp up*, *pant*.



74. a to i: tangō, *I touch*, contingō, *I take hold of*; \*tetagī, tetigī, *I touched*; canō, *I sing*, concinō, *I sing with*; \*cecanī, cecinī, *I sang*; faciō, *I make*, perficiō, *I finish*; pater, *father*, Iuppiter, *Heavenly Father*, Jove the Father; \*pepagī, pepigī, *I agreed*. ā to ī: herbā, *grass*, herbidus, *grassy*; tubā-, *trumpet*, tubicen, *trumpeter*.

75. (2.) WEAKENING OF o. o to u: tolī, tulī, *I carried*; \*pepolī, pepulī, *I pushed*; TABOLA, tabula, *board*; \*hortolus, hortulus, *little garden*; opos, opus, *work*; melios, melius, *better*; COSENTIONT, cōsentiunt, *they agree*. o was long retained in many words after u, v, or qu, but sank to u about Augustus's time, or later: servos, servom, servus, servum, *slave*; volt, vult, *he wishes*; vivont, vivunt, *they live*; sequontur, secuntur, *they follow* (112). ō to ū: quōr, cūr, *why*; hōc, hūc, *hither*; illōc, illūc, *thither*.

76. o to e: bonus, *good*, bellus, *pretty*; \*piotās, pietās, *dutifulness* (105); \*istos, iste, *that*; \*servo, serve, *thou slave* (71).

77. o to i: \*cardonis, cardinis, *of a hinge*; \*cārotās, cāritās, *dearness*; \*ūnocus, ūnicus, *only*; \*aēnopēs, aēnipēs, *bronze-foot*.

78. (3.) WEAKENING OF u. u to i: optumus, optimus, *best*; lubet, libet, *it pleases*; artubus, artibus, *with joints*; quaesumus, quaerimus, *we ask*; \*geludus, gelidus, *cold*.

79. (4.) WEAKENING OF e. e to i: teneō, *I hold*, contineō, *I hold together*; ille, *that*, illic, *that there*. ē to ī: \*sēmicaput, sīnciput, *jole*.

#### DIPHTHONG DECAY.

80. Of the six original diphthongs au, ou, eu, and ai, oi, ei, the only one which preserved its original sound in the classical period is au. ou, ai, oi and ei passed away about 130 to 90 B.C.

81. CHANGE OF au. Though au is usually preserved, in some words a and u converged to ō: as, caudex, *block*, cōdex, *book*; faucēs, *throat*, fōcāle, *neck-cloth*; particularly in the pronunciation of the vulgar: as, caupō, cōpō, *inn-keeper*; plastrum, plōstrum (*barge*), *cart*; Claudius, Clōdus. In a few words au passed into ū: as, claudō, clūdō, *I shut*.

82. CHANGE OF ou. ou, found in inscriptions down to about 90 B.C., usually passed into ū: as, POVBLCOM, NOVNTIATA, IOVSERVNT, later pūblicum, *public*, nūntiāta, *notified*, iūssērunt, *they ordered*; sometimes into ō: as, NOVNAE, nōnae, *nones*; \*moutus, mōtus, *moved*.

83. CHANGE OF eu. eu occurs in Leucēsius, later Lūcētius. Otherwise eu has disappeared in root syllables, and is found only in a few compounds (40): neuter, *neither*, neu, *nor*, seu, *whether*, and ceu, *as*; in the interjections heu, eheu, or ēheu, *alas*; and in Greek words.

84. CHANGE OF ai, ae. ai is common in inscriptions; about 130 to 100 B.C. it was displaced by ae in public documents and literature; but the old-fashioned ai was often retained in private inscriptions.

85. The diphthong ae sank very slowly indeed to the sound of simple ē. In provincial Latin ē is found as early as 200 B.C.: as, CESVLA for CAESVLLA (Inscr.); in Rome itself before 100 B.C. the pronunciation 'Cēcilius' for Caecilius, and 'prētor' for praetor is derided as boorish; but by 71 A.D. ae was verging toward ē even in the court language: the coins of Vespasian have IVDEA as well as IVDAEA. In the 3d and 4th century A.D. ē became the prevalent sound.

86. **ai, ae** is weakened in composition and inflection to **ei**, then to **ī**: as, *caedō, I cut, incedō, incidō, I cut in, cecidī, I have cut; aequos, fair, iniquos, unfair; \*viais, vieis, viis, by ways.* In the present subjunctive and future indicative, **aī** becomes **ē**: as *\*daimus, dēmus, let us give* (839, 840); *\*regaimus, regēmus, we shall guide* (852).

87. CHANGE OF **oi, oe**. **oi** passed about 130 B.C. into **oe**, sometimes into **ū**, as *FOIDERATEI, OINO, later foederatī, in treaty, ūnum, one.* Similarly in compounds: *prōvidēns, prūdēns, foreseeing.* **oi, oe** sometimes passed into **ei**, which in its turn became **ī**: as, *LOEBERTAS, LEIBERTAS, libertās, freedom.* Also in inflection: as, *\*locois, loceis, locis, in places.* In **nōn, not**, for **noenum**, it became **ō**. **oi** passed into **ui** in *huic, to this, and cui, to whom* (*cuique, cuiquam, &c.*), for the older *hoic* and *quoi* (*quoique, &c.*).

88. CHANGE OF **ei**. **ei** as a genuine diphthong is common in old inscriptions, especially in inflection; it was afterwards weakened to **ī**: as, *DEIXERVNT, VEIXSIT, later dīxērunt, they said, vīxit, he lived; vieis, viis, by ways* (86); *VIREI, virī, men; DONEIS, dōnīs, by gifts* (87). For **ei** as an indication of **ī**, see 29.

#### DEVELOPMENT.

89. A short vowel sometimes grows up before a continuous sound, **r**, or **m**. This is sometimes called *Insertion*.

*\*imbr, imber, shower; \*ācr, ācer, sharp; \*celebr, celebrer, thronged; \*agr, ager, field; agro-, \*agerulus, agellus, little field. \*smus, sumus, we are.*

90. When Greek words are used in old Latin, a short vowel grows up between **c** and **l**, **c** and **m**, and **c** or **m** and **n**: as, *Patricolēs* for *Patroclus* (107); *Aesculāpius* (108); *Tecumēssa, Alcumēna, drachuma, drachma* (108); *techina, trick; mina, mina, guminasium, gymnasium* (111).

#### DISAPPEARANCE.

91. A short vowel sometimes disappears, particularly when its sound is absorbed in that of a continuous consonant.

92. (1.) INITIAL DISAPPEARANCE. Initial short **e** is lost before **s** in *sum* for *esum*. Initial loss is sometimes called *Aphaeresis*.

93. (2.) MEDIAL DISAPPEARANCE. Medial short **e** sometimes disappears before **r**, and medial short **u** before **l**. Medial absorption is sometimes called *Syncope*.

*inferā, infrā, below; dextera, dextra, right; asperīs, asprīs, rough; discipulīna, disciplīna, training.*

94. Medial short **i** sometimes disappears between **l**, **r**, or **s**, and a following **d** or **t**: as,

*validē, valdē, mightily; solidum, soldum, sum total; pueritia, puertia, boyhood; \*liberitās, libertās, freedom.* Occasionally between other consonants: as, *audāciter, audācter, boldly.*

95. Medial short **e**, **u**, or **i** disappears in many compounds, even in the root syllable: as,



\*repepulī, reppulī, *I pushed back* (858); \*manuceps, manceps, *contractor*; \*primiceps, princeps, *first*; pūrigō, pūrgō, *I clean*; positus, postus, *placed*; surrigō, surgō, *I rise*.

96. (3.) FINAL DISAPPEARANCE. A final vowel disappears in some classes of words. The loss of a final vowel is sometimes called *Apocope*.

\*pueros, puer, *boy* (142); puere, puer, *thou boy*; animāle, animal, *breathing thing*; poste, post, *after*. Also e in the imperatives dīc, *say*, dūc, *lead*, and fac, *do*; in the enclitics -ce, -ne, *not*, and -ne interrogative: \*sei-ce, sic, *so*; hīce, hīc, *this*; \*quīne, quīn, *why not*; habēsne, haben, *hast thou*.

#### HIATUS. CONTRACTION. ELISION.

97. A succession of two vowel sounds not making a diphthong is called *Hiatus*. Hiatus in a word is often due to the loss of a consonant. It is common when the first vowel is u, i, or e; but in general it is avoided: (A.) by contraction; or (B.) by elision.

98. (A.) CONTRACTION. Two successive vowels in a word often combine and form a diphthong or a long vowel. This is called *Contraction*.

99. (1.) When the first vowel is open and the second close, they often unite in a diphthong: as,

\*Gnā-ivos, Gnaivos, Gnaeus; \*co-epiō, coepiō, *I begin*, co-ēpī (Lucr.), coepī, *I began*; rē-ice, reice, *drive back*; pro-inde, proinde, *so*; ne uter, neuter, *neither*; V. S. and N. Pl. Pompēī, Pompei; G. S. and N. Pl. familiā-i, familiai, familiae, *of a household, households*; D. S. ēī, ei, *to him*; ais, ain, ait, aibam, *thou sayest*, &c.

100. (2.) Two like successive vowels unite in one long vowel: as, Phraātēs, PHRATES; \*proolēs, prōlēs, *offspring*; nōn volō, nōlō, *I won't*; \*nehemō, nēmō, *nobody*; cōnsiliū, cōnsilī, *of counsel*; periūt, perīt, *he passed away*; \*tibiicen, tībīcen, *piper*; but generally if two i's are short, one is dropped (102).

101. (3.) Two 'unlike successive vowels, unless they form a diphthong (99), usually unite in the long sound of the first: as,

māvolō, mālō, *I wish rather*; locāvērunt, locārunt; locāverim, locārim; locāvistī, locāstī; locāvisse, locāsse, *they placed*, &c.; coalēscō, cōlēscō, *I grow together*; nōvērunt, nōrunt; nōverim, nōrim; nōvisse, nōsse, *they know*, &c.; metuī, metū, *for fear*; dēlēvistī, dēlēstī, *hast destroyed*; dehibeō, dēbeō, *I owe*; sīverīs, sīrīs, *thou mayst let*. Similarly when the first sound is a diphthong: praehibeō, praebeō, *I furnish*. Two unlike successive vowels rarely unite in the long sound of the second: as, \*locaō, locō, *I place*.

102. (B.) ELISION. Of two successive vowels in a word the first is sometimes dropped. This is called *Elision*.

\*ne-ūllus, nūllus, *no*; seorsum, sorsum, *apart*; \*minior, \*minius, minor, minus, *less*; \*capiis, capis, *thou takest*. A stem vowel usually disappears before a suffix beginning with a vowel: as, fōrmā-, *shape*, fōrmōsus for \*fōrmiōsus, *shapely* (74); optā-, *choose*, optiō, *choice*. In verse the vowel is sometimes retained in writing and dropped in pronunciation only: ne utiquam, pronounced 'nutiquam; oriundus, 'orundus' (Lucr.).

## ASSIMILATION.

**103.** Of two vowels separated by a consonant, the first sometimes becomes the same as the second.

Assimilation occurs oftenest when an *l* comes between (*o*) *u* and *i*: as, \**famolia*, *FAMELIA* (inscr.), commonly *familia*, *family*; \**cōnsulium*, *cōnsilium*, *counsel*; \**Caeculius*, *Caecilius*; \**Siculia*, *Sicilia*. Rarely in other combinations: as, \**nehil*, *nihil*, *naught*; \**sēcors*, *sōcors*, *senseless*.

**104.** Of two vowels in immediate succession, the first is sometimes partially assimilated to the second: as, \**ia*, *ea*, *she*; or the second to the first: as, *luxuria*, *luxuriēs*, *extravagance*.

## DISSIMILATION.

**105.** The repetition of a vowel without an intervening consonant is usually avoided.

Thus, while *adsiduo-* becomes *adsidui-* in *adsiduitās*, *constancy*, *pio-* becomes *pie-* in *pietās*, *dutifulness*; *rogitāre*, *keep asking*, but *hietāre*, *keep yawning*; from *dīvo-*, *dīvīnus*, *divine*, but from *alio-*, *aliēnus*, *others'*; *FILIEI*, *cōnsilī*, rather than *filiī*, *sons*, *cōnsiliī*, *of counsel*; *vacuos*, to Augustus's time, or later, rather than *vacuus*, *empty*; *ruont*, *they rush*, *flūctuom*, *of waves* (Plaut.). Similarly while *o* becomes *u* in *hortulus*, *little garden* (*horto-*), it is retained in *filiolus*, *little son* (*filio-*).

## VOWELS AND CONSONANTS COMBINED.

## ASSIMILATION.

**106.** Certain vowels, particularly short vowels, are apt to come before certain consonants.

**107.** (1.) AFFINITIES OF *o*. *o* is apt to come before *v*; and, particularly in old Latin, before *l*, sometimes before *m*.

(a.) *FLOVO*, later *fluō*, *I flow*; \**sevos*, *sovos*, *suus*, *his*. Sometimes also after *v*: as, *vertō*, *vortō*, *I turn*; old *vocivos*, *votō*, later *vacuos*, *empty*, *vetō*, *I forbid*. (b.) *CONSOL*, *TABOLA*, *POCOLOM*, later *cōnsul*, *consul*, *tabula*, *board*, *pōculum*, *cup*.

**108.** (2.) AFFINITIES OF *u*. *u* is apt to come before *l* and a vowel, or *l* with another consonant not *l*; also before *b*, *p*, *m*, and, in old Latin, *f*.

(a.) *cōnsulō*, *I deliberate*; *tabula*, *board* (107). (b.) *facilitās*, *facultās*, *ability*; *cultus*, *tilled*; *pulsus*, *driven*. (c.) *alumnus*, *foster-child*; *tegumen*, *covering*; *māxumus*, later *māximus*, *greatest*; *volumus*, *we wish*; *quæsumus*, *we ask*. (d.) *carnufex*, later *carnifex*, *executioner*; *sacrificō*, *sacri-ficō*, *I sacrifice*; *manifestus*, *palpable*.

**109.** *o*, or *u* for *o*, sometimes comes before consonants with which it has no affinity: as, *eboris*, *of ivory*, *ebur*, *ivory*; *fore*, *to be going to be*; particularly before the plural person ending *-nt* of the verb: as, *COSENTIONT*, *they agree*, *PROBAVERONT*, *they approved*; *regunt*, *they guide*.

## Consonant Change: Substitution. [110-116.]

**110. (3.) AFFINITIES OF e.** *e* is apt to come before *r* and a vowel, and before *ll*; often also before two consonants (except *ng*), or before a single consonant, especially a nasal, ending a word.

(a.) *operis*, of work; *regeris*; *regerem*; *rēxerim*, *rēxeram*, *rēxerō*; *rēxērunt*, art guided, &c. (b.) *pellō*, I drive; *velle*, to wish; *asellus*, donkey. (c.) *biceps*, two-headed (*caput*): *agmen*, train; *caespes*, sod.

**111. (4.) AFFINITIES OF i.** *i* is apt to come before *n* and a vowel, before *n* *adulterīnum*, and before *d* and *t*.

(a.) *pāgina*, page; *agminis*, of a train; *homonis*, *hominis*, of a man; *contingō*, I touch; *quīque*, five. (b.) *vividus*, lively; *regitis*, you guide; *fremitus*, a roar.

### DISSIMILATION.

**112.** *quu*, *vu*, and consonant *i* followed by vowel *i* are avoided.

Thus *quom*, *servos*, *servom*, rather than *cum*, *when*, *servos*, *servom*, *slave*, to Augustus's time, or later (cf. 105); *sequontur*, *secuntur*, rather than 'sequuntur,' *they follow*; *Grāiugena*, not 'Graiigena;' *Gāi*, *plēbēi*, *plebeian*, *Pompēi*, *Pompēis*, *Bāis*, not *Gāi*, *plēbēi*, *Pompēi*, *Pompēis*, *Bāis*. *iaciō*, I throw, in compounds becomes first *-ieciō*, then *-iciō*. But consonant *i*, though not written, was long pronounced in *-iciō*.

### INTERCHANGE OF VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

**113.** The vowels *i* and *u* sometimes turn into their cognate consonants *i* and *v* respectively; consonants *i* and *v* less frequently become vowel *i* and *u*.

(a.) \**magior*, *māior*, greater; \**agiō*, *āiō*, I say; \**hoīos*, *hūius*, of this. *lārva*, *lārva*, goblin; *mīluos*, *mīlvos*, kite; \**lauō*, *lavō*, I bathe; \**locāui*, *locāvī*, I placed. (b.) \**etiam*, *etiam*, even; \**quomiam*, *quoniam*, seeing that; \**nunciam*, *nunciam*, now. \**avispe*x, *auspe*x, diviner; *volvō*, I wrap, *invōlūcrum*, wrapper.

## CONSONANT CHANGE.

### SUBSTITUTION.

**114.** In some instances one consonant takes the place of another.

**115.** *l* in some words arises from *d*: *odor*, a smell, *oleō*, I smell; *dingua*, *lingua*, tongue. In others from *r*: *strātus*, *stlātus*, *lātus*, broad.

**116.** The lingual sonant *r* often arises from the lingual surd *s*, especially between two vowels: as,

*Papīsius*, *Papīrius*; *lasēs*, *larēs*, lares; \**genesis*, *generis*, of a race; *quaesō*, *quaerō*, I ask; \**esam*, *eram*, I was; \**esō*, *erō*, I shall be; \**gesō*, *gerō*, I bear; \**haeseō*, *haereō*, I stick. Rarely before a consonant: *dius-*, *diurnus*, of the day. Medial *s*, however, between two vowels is always preserved when it begins the second part of a compound: as, *dēsino*, I leave off. Final *r* sometimes arises from *s*: as, *arbōs*, *arbor*, tree; old *meliōs*, common *melior*, better.



117. *h* in most words is a weakened sound of an older sonant aspirate: as, *trahō*, *I drag*, *vehō*, *I carry*, for \**traghō*, \**veghō*.

118. Initial *b* sometimes comes from *v*, before which a *d* has disappeared (125): as, *dvonos*, *bonus*, *good*; *dvellum*, *bellum*, *war*; *Dvellōna*, *Bellōna*; and in many compounds of *duo*: as, *biennium*, *two years*. Medial *b* sometimes comes from *f*: as, *rūfus*, *ruber*, *red*. *b* final in *ab*, *ob*, *sub*, comes from *p*.

119. *g* in many words arises from an older *c*: as, \**necōtium*, *negōtium*, *business*; *clueō*, *I am named*, *glōria*, *renown*; and *d* from *t*: as, *aput*, *apud*, *with*.

#### DEVELOPMENT.

120. *p* grows up in a few words between *m* and *s*, and *m* and *t*: as, *cōmpsi*, *I decked*, *cōmptus*, *decked*; *sūmpsi*, *I took*, *sūmptus*, *taken*; *ēemptus*, *bought*; *contempsī*, *I scorned*, *contemptus*, *scorned*; *hiem-*, *hiemps*, *winter*.

121. As *n* often vanishes before *s* (131), so conversely an *n* sometimes grows up in old Latin between a long vowel and *s*: as, *thēnsaurus*, later *thēsauros*, *heard*; *Onēnsimus* for *Onēsīmus*. The nominative singular, *cōniūnx*, *spouse*, has an *n* after the *u* (following the analogy of the second *n* in *cōniungō*, *I join*), which is not found in the other cases.

#### DISAPPEARANCE.

122. A consonant sometimes disappears, especially in a combination of sounds which is hard to utter.

Disappearance of an initial consonant is sometimes called *Aphacresis*, of a medial, *Syncope*, of a final, *Apocope*. In many instances a whole syllable disappears.

123. (1.) INITIAL DISAPPEARANCE. Initial *s* is sometimes dropped in formation, as in the second of these pairs of kindred words: *spolium*, *plunder*, *populor*, *I strip*; *sternō*, *I spread*, *torus*, *couch*. In *līs*, *lātus* and *locus* for *stlīs*, *strife*, *stlātus*, *wide*, and *stlocus*, *place*, *st* is lost.

124. Initial *g* is lost before *n* in a few words: *gnātus*, later *nātus*, *son*; *gnōscō*, later *nōscō*, *I find out*; *gnāvus*, *nāvus*, *active*. Initial *c* of *clāmō*, *I howl*, is lost in the kindred *lāmenta*, *weeping and wailing*. Initial *qu* or *c* is lost in some derivatives from the stem *quo-* (681); \**quobī*, \**cubī*, *ubī*, *where*; \**quotī*, *utī*, or *ut*, *how, as*; \**quonde*, *unde*, *whence*; \**quoter*, *uter*, *which of the two*; but in compounds *c* is preserved: as, *sī-cubī*, *if anywhere*, *sī-cunde*, *if from any place*, *nē-cubī*, *lest anywhere*, *nē-cunde*, *lest from anywhere*.

125. Initial *d* is sometimes lost, as in *Diovis*, *Iovis*, of *Jupiter*; see also 118. Initial *t* has vanished in \**tlātus*, *lātus*, *borne* (917).

126. (2.) MEDIAL DISAPPEARANCE. In many cases a medial consonant is dropped, together with the following vowel, to avoid a stuttering sound. This occurs oftenest in formation or composition: as,

\**calami-tā-tōsus*, *calamitōsus*, *full of disaster*; \**cōnsuē-ti-tūdō*, *cōnsuētūdō*, *custom*; \**patrō-ni-cinium*, *patrōcinium*, *advocacy*. \**sti-pi-pendium*, *stipendium*, *pay*; \**venē-ni-ficus*, *venēficus*, *poisoner*.

127. Medial consonants of various kinds are further dropped as follows:



## Consonant Change: Disappearance. [128-139.]

128. Medial consonant *i* is dropped in the old PLOVS, common *plūs*, for \**plōius*, *more*; *cūnctus* for *cōiūnctus*, *all, entire*; *bīgae* for \**biugae*, *chariot and pair*.

129. Medial *v* is often dropped: as, *Gnaivos*, *Gnaeus*; *Gāvius*, *Gāius*; *dīvos*, *dīus*, *god, godly*, *deus*, *god* (104); *audiit*, *audiērunt*, &c., *he heard*, &c. (893). Contraction often ensues: as, *dīvitior*, *dītior*, *richer*; *aevitās*, *aetās*, *age*; particularly in tenses formed from perfect stems in *-vī-*: see 890 and 893.

130. Medial *r* often vanishes: as, \**provorsa*, *prōsa*, *prose*; \**torstus*, *tostus*, *parched*; \**pōrscō*, *poscō*, *I demand*; \**mulierbris*, *muliebris*, *of a woman*; \**perierō*, *pēierō*, *I forswear myself*.

131. Medial *m* or *n* is sometimes lost: as, \**septemnī*, *septēnī*, *seven every time*; so *co-* for *com-*: *cohortor*, *I exhort*, *cōnectō*, *I tie together*, *cōgnōscō*, *I learn*; and *i-* for *in-* before *gn*: *ignōscō*, *I pardon*. *n* is especially apt to vanish before *s*: *COSOL*, *consul*, *CESOR*, *censor* (inscr.); \**sanguīns*, *sanguīs*, *blood*.

132. Medial *h* sometimes vanishes: as, *ahēneus*, *aēneus*, *of bronze*, \**ahes*, *aes*, *bronze*; *mihī*, *mī*, *for me*; also in compounds: *nihil*, *nīl*, *naught*; *praehibeō*, *praebeō*, *I furnish*; \**praehidium*, *praedium*, *holding, estate*; \**prae-hida*, *praeda*, *booty*; \**nehemō*, *nēmō*, *nobody*.

133. Medial *s* is very often dropped before *n* of the interrogative *-ne* (or *-n*): as, *satisne*, *satin*, *enough?* *vidēsne*, *viden*, *seest thou?* furthermore in \**ahesneus*, *ahēneus*, *of bronze*; \**posinō*, \**posnō*, *pōnō*, *I put*. Before other consonants also: as, \**iūsdex*, *iūdex*, *juror*; *tredecim*, *thirteen*; *spopondī*, *I promised*; *stetī*, *I stood*, *stitī*, *I set* (859). Often before another *s*: *missī*, *mīsī*, *I sent*; *dīvissiō*, *dīvīsiō*, *division*. Sometimes after *x*: *exspectō*, *expectō*, *I await*.

134. Medial *x* sometimes loses its *c*: as, \**sexcentī*, *sēscenī*, *six hundred*; *Sextius*, *Sēstius*; similarly *discō*, *I learn*, *misceō*, *I mix* (834); sometimes its *s* in *ex-*: as, *ecferō*, *I carry out*. Sometimes *x* disappears entirely: *sexdecim*, *sēdecim*, *sixteen*; \**texla*, *tēla*, *web*.

135. Medial *g*, *c*, or *q* is dropped before many consonants, especially in formation: as, \**magior*, *māior*, *greater*; \**agiō*, *āiō*, *I say*; \**nigvis*, *nivis*, *of snow*; \**bregvis*, *brevis*, *short*; \**lūcmen*, *lūmen*, *light*; \**ūgmor*, *ūmor*, *moisture*; \**lūcna*, *lūna*, *moon*; *Quīnctus*, *Quīntus*; \**figbula*, *fībula*, *ouch*.

136. Medial *c* is regularly dropped between *l* and *s*, *l* and *t*, *r* and *s*, and *r* and *t*: as,

*mulsi*, *I stroked, milked*; *sparsus*, *scattered*; *artus*, *confined*; *sarsi*, *I patched*; *sartus*, *patched*; see 868, 909, 911. *c* is rarely retained: as, *mulcra*, *milkpail*.

137. Medial *d* and *t*, unless assimilated (145), are regularly dropped before *s*: as, \**virtūts*, *virtūs*, *manhood*; \**sentsī*, *sēnsī*, *I perceived*; \**vertsus*, *versus*, *turned*. Sometimes assimilation and loss occur in the same word: as, *ēssus*, *ēsus*, *caten*; *dīvissiō*, *dīvīsiō*, *division*. In the nominative of noun stems in *i*, the *i* of the stem usually vanishes with a preceding *d* or *t*: as, \**frondis*, *frōns*, *leaf*; \**frontis*, *frōns*, *forehead*.

138. Medial *d* vanishes occasionally before other consonants: as, \**cordculum*, *corculum*, *heart of hearts*; \**caedmentum*, *caementum*, *rubble-stone*; \**fidnis*, *fīnis*, *boundary*; \**suādis*, *suāvis*, *sweet*; \**hodce*, *hōc*, *this here*. Medial *t* vanishes in \**salūtber*, *salūber*, *healthful*.

139. (3.) FINAL DISAPPEARANCE. A word never ends in a doubled consonant.

Hence, nominative *fār* for \**farr*, *spelt*; *fel* for \**fell*, *gall*: *mel* for \**mell*, *honey*; *ās* for \**ass*, *unit, an as*; old second person singular *ēs*, common *es*, for \**ess*, *thou art*.

140. Final **m** of a noun is often dropped in old private inscriptions down to about 100 B.C., and occasionally down to the imperial period: as, TAVRASIA for **Taurāsiam**; VIRO for **virom**, *man*; DVONORO for **bonōrum**, *of the good*. In official inscriptions **m** is usually kept: as, ROMANOM; but not always: as, ROMANO for **Rōmānōm**, *the Romans*'. -**m** (or -**um**) is lost in **noenu** or **nōn** (87) for **noenum**, *not*, in **dōnique** (71) or **dōnec** for **dōnicum**, *till*, and in **nihil** for **nihilum**, *naught*.

141. Final **n** is lost in the nominative of noun stems in -**ōn-**, or -**in-** for -**on-**: see 497.

142. Final **s** is lost in **iste**, **ille**, and **ipse**, for **\*istos**, &c., with weakening of **o** to **e**; in some other words after an **i**, with change of **i** to **e**: **magis**, *more*; **potis**, *pote*, *able*; **\*nēvis**, **\*sivīs**, *nēve*, *and that not*, *sive*, *or if*. In the nominative singular of most -**ro-** stems -**os** disappears (454): as, **\*puerōs**, *boy*; also twice in **famul**, *thrall* (Enn., Lucr.). **abs** and **ex** become **ab**, **ā**, and **ē**. In general, final **s** has a weak sound in old Latin, and often drops off (47).

143. Final **d** is dropped in the nominative and accusative **cor** for **\*cord**, *heart*, and in the ablative singular: 426. Sometimes in **hau** for **haud** or **haut**, *not*.

#### ASSIMILATION.

144. A consonant is sometimes assimilated, either entirely or partially, to another consonant.

Assimilation is very common in prepositions prefixed to a verb; see 7001.

145. (1.) ENTIRE ASSIMILATION. (a.) The first of two consonants often becomes the same as the second: thus,

**d** or **t** before **s**, unless dropped (137), regularly becomes **s**: as, **\*edse**, **ēsse**, *to eat* (895); **\*cedsī**, **cessī**, *I yielded*; **\*concutsī**, **concussī**, *I shook up*. But **d** of **ad-** in composition sometimes remains: as, **adsentior**, *I agree*. Other examples of entire assimilation are: **rursus**, **russus**, *again*; **\*liberulus**, **libellus**, *little book*; **\*premsī**, **pressī**, *I pressed*; **fōrmōnsus**, **fōrmōsus**, commonly **fōrmōsus**, *shapely*; **\*corōnula**, **corōlla**, *chaplet*; **\*flagma**, **flamma**, *flame*; **\*sedla**, **sella**, *seat*; **\*lapidlus**, **lapillus**, *pebble*; **\*mercēdnārius**, **mercēnnārius**, *hiredling*; **quidpiam**, **quippiam**, *something*; **\*supmus**, **summus**, *highest*.

146. (b.) The second of two consonants sometimes becomes the same as the first: as,

**\*disiiciō**, sometimes **dissiciō**, *I throw asunder*; **\*tolnō**, **tollō**, *I lift* (833); **\*velse**, **\*velsem**, &c., **velle** (895), **vellem**, &c. (850) *to wish*; **\*torseō**, **torreō**, *I parch*; **gnārīgō**, **nārrō**, *I tell*; **tenditur**, **tennitur**, *is stretched*; **t** of the superlative suffix -**timo-** sometimes becomes **r**: as, **pauperrimus**, *poorest* (350); sometimes **l**: as, **humillimus**, *lowest* (350); usually **s**: as, **altissimus**, *highest* (349).

147. (2.) PARTIAL ASSIMILATION. **m** usually changes to **n** before any consonant except **m**, **b**, or **p**: thus, **com-** becomes **con-**: **conligō**, *I gather*, **conrigō**, *I put straight*, later **colligō**, **corrigō** (145). Other changes are: **\*primiceps**, **prīnceps**, *first*; **\*homce**, **hunc**, *this*; **\*tamdem**, **tandem**, *at length*; **\*tamtus**, **tantus**, *so great*.

148. **n** becomes **m** before **b**, **p**, or **m**: as in **accumbō**, *I lie by*; **rumpō**, *I break*; **inpōnō**, **impōnō**, *I put in*; **immineō**, **imminec**, *I threaten*.



## Syllables: Length of Vowels. [149-157.]

---

149. The sonants **g** and **b** regularly change to their surds, **c** and **p**, before **s** or **t**; **gu** and **qu** also become **c**: as,

\***rēgs**, \***rēcs**, **rēx**, *king*; \***rēgsī**, **rēxī**, *I guided* (47); \***rēgtus**, **rēctus**, *guided*; \***scribsī**, **scripsī**, *I wrote*; \***scribtus**, **scriptus**, *written*; \***trāgsī**, **trāxī**, *I dragged*; \***trāgtus**, **trāctus**, *dragged*; **strugū-**, **strūxī**, *I erected* (47); **strūctus**, *erected*; **coqu-**, **cōxī**, *I cooked*; **coctus**, *cooked*. In some words **bs** is written, and **ps** pronounced (45): as, **urbs**, *city*, **plēbs**, *commons*, **abs**, *from*.

150. **b** and **p** in a few words turn to **m** before **n**: as, \***Sabnium**, **Samnium**; \***scapnum**, **scamnum**, *bench*; \***sopnus**, **somnus**, *sleep*.

151. In some words the surds, **c**, **t**, and **p**, before **l**, **r**, **m**, or **n**, turn to their sonants **g**, **d**, or **b**: as, \***neclegō**, **neglegō**, *I neglect*; \***seementum**, **segmentum**, *a cut*; \***quatrāgintā**, **quadrāgintā**, *forty*; **poplicvs**, **pūblicus**, *of the state*.

### DISSIMILATION.

152. When a lingual mute, **d** or **t**, comes before **t**, the first mute in some instances changes to **s**: as,

\***edt**, **ēst**, *eats*, \***edtis**, **ēstis**, *you eat*; \***palūdter**, **palūster**, *marshy*; \***equetter**, **equester**, *of cavalry*.

153. When a root ending in **d** or **t** comes before certain suffixes beginning with **t**, both consonants change to **s**.

In this case both assimilation and dissimilation take place; such suffixes are: **-to-**, **-tā-**, **-tu-**, **-tōr-**, **-tūro-**, **-tūrā-**, **-tili-**, **-tiōn-**, **-tim**: as, \***fodtus**, **fossus**, *dug*; \***fodtor**, **fossor**, *ditcher*; \***quattus**, **quassus**, *shaken*; \***sedtum**, **sessum**, *to sit*; very often one **s** drops (133): as, \***dīvidtiō**, **dīvissiō**, **dīvisiō**, *division*. The above suffixes have also an **s** for **t** when attached to some roots ending in **l**, **m**, **r**, and to a few others: see 912.

154. Dissimilation sometimes occurs when the consonants are separated by a vowel sound: as, \***caeluleus**, **caeruleus**, *sky-blue*; \***molālis**, **molāris**, *of a mill* (313).

---

## SYLLABLES.

155. A word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs. The last syllable but one is called the *Penult*; the last syllable but two is called the *Antepenult*.

---

## LENGTH OF VOWELS.

156. The length of vowels must in general be learned by observation; but some convenient helps for the memory may be found in 2429; and the length of many vowels may be ascertained by the following general principles.

### (A.) SHORT VOWELS.

157. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short: as, **eōs**; **ēvehō**; **fruit**, **fuimus**, **adnuīt** (57); compare **prīmus** and **prior**; **sēcūrus** and **seorsum**; **dēlābor** and **deambulō**; **docēs**, **docēmus**, **docētis** and **doceō**; **vestīs**, **vestīmus**, **vestītis**, and **vestiō**, **vestiunt**; **īs**, **īmus**, **ītis**, and **eō**, **eunt**; **minūtus** and **minuō**.

158. In simple words a diphthong occurs before a vowel only in one or two proper names, as **Gnaeus**, **Annaeus**, in which it remains long, and in Greek words. In compounds, **ae** of **prae** is shortened before a vowel: as, **præacūtus**; **præeunt**, **præeunte**; **præhibeō**; **prehendō**, **prehensus**. Sometimes it coalesces with a following vowel: as, **præoptāvistī**.

159. In some instances a vowel before another vowel is preserved long: thus,

160. (1.) Old genitives in **-āī** have **ā**: as, **aulāī**. **diēī**, genitive or dative, when three syllables, and sometimes **rēī** and **fidēī** have **ē**; so also **ēī**, dative of **is**, when two syllables; less frequently **eī**.

**rēī** is said to occur in verse 6 times (Plaut. G. 2, Lucr. G. 2, D. 2); **reī** 9 times (Plaut. G. 2, Ter. G. 4, D. 1, Juv. G. 1, Sulp. Apoll. G. 1); **rēī** 27 times (Plaut. G. 2, D. 3, Enn. D. 1, Ter. G. 9, D. 8, Lucil. G. 1, D. 1, Lucr. G. 2). **fidēī** G. 3 times (Plaut., Enn., Lucr.); **fideī** 11 times (Enn. D. 1, Man. G. 2, D. 1, Sil. G. 4, D. 1, Juv. G. 2); **fidēī** 5 times (Ter. G. 1, D. 3, Hor. 1). **ēī** 35 times (Plaut. 18, Ter. 8, Lucr. 9); **eī** some 17 times (Plaut. 12, Ter. 2, German. 1, Ter. Maur. 2); **ēī** 23 times (Plaut. 11, Ter. 8, Lucil. 3, Cat. 1).

161. (2.) The penult is long in the endings **-āī**, **-āīs**, **ōī**, **-ōīs**, and **-ēī**, **-ēīs**, from stems in **-iō-** or **-iā-** (437, 458): as, **Gāī**, **Bōī**, **Pōmpēī**, **Vēī**, **plēbēī**; **Gāīs**, **Bōīs**, **Pompēīs**, **Vēīs**, **plēbēīs**, **Bāīs**.

162. (3.) Genitives in **-īus** have **ī**: as, **alterīus**; but these sometimes shorten **ī** in verse, except **neutrius**, which is not found with short **i**; **utriusque** has always short **i**.

163. (4.) A long vowel is retained in the first syllable of **fīō** throughout, except usually before **-er-** (789), as **fierem**, **fierī**; in **Gāius** when three syllables (usually **Gāius**); and in **dīus**, *godly* (129), **dīū**, *open sky* (used only in the expression **sub dīū**, i.e. **sub dīvō**), and **Dīāna**; but **Dīāna** has **ī** as often as **ī**. **ōhē** has **ō**; **ēheu** has **ē** in comedy, otherwise **ē**.

164. (5.) In many Greek words a long vowel comes before another vowel: as, **āēr**, **Aenēas**, **Mēdēa**.

#### (B.) LONG VOWELS.

165. All vowels are long which are :

166. (1.) Weakened from a diphthong, or which are the result of contraction : as,

(a.) **caedō**, **concīdō**; **aestimō**, **exīstimō** (86); old **POVBlicOS**, common **pūblicus** (82). (b.) **\*tībiicen**, **tībīcen**; **\*alius**, **alius**. But sometimes the long vowel is found only in old Latin and is regularly short in the classical period: as, old **locāt**, common **locat** (59).

167. (2.) Before **nf**, **ns**, or consonant **i**; often before **gn**: as, **infāns**; **Māia**; **āiō**, **āiunt**, **āiēbam**; **ēius**; **Sēius**; **Pompēius**; **plēbēius** (but not in compounds of **iugum**: as, **biugus**); **benīgnus**.



## LENGTH OF SYLLABLES.

**168.** A syllable is long if its vowel is long, or if its vowel is followed by two consonants or by **x** or **z** : as,

**dūcēbās**; **volvunt**. In **dūcēbās** both the vowels and the syllables are long; in **volvunt** the vowels are short, but the syllables are long; in cases like the last the syllables (not the vowels) are said to be *long by position*. **h** does not count as a consonant, and **qu** (or **qv**, 24) has the value of a single consonant only: thus, in **adhūc** and **aqua** the first syllable is short.

**169.** In prose or old dramatic verse a syllable with a short vowel before a mute or **f** followed by **l** or **r** is not long: as, **tenebrae**. In other verse, however, such syllables are sometimes regarded as long. In compounds such syllables are long in any verse: as, **obruit**.

## ACCENT.

**170.** Words of two syllables have the accent on the penult: as,

**ho'mo**; **ā'cer**.

**171.** Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when that syllable is long; otherwise on the antepenult: as,

**palūs'ter**, **onus'tus** (168); **muli'ebris**, **gen'etrīx** (169); **ar'borēs**, **ar'butus**, **gladi'olus**.

**172.** A short penult retains the accent in the genitive and vocative with a single **ī** from stems in **-io-** (456, 459): as, genitive, **cōn-si'lī**; **impe'rī**; genitive or vocative, **Vergi'lī**; **Vale'rī**; **Mercu'rī**. For **calefácis**, &c., see 394.

**173.** In a few words which have lost a syllable the accent is retained on the last syllable; such are compounds of the imperatives **dīc** and **dūc**: as, **ēdūc'**; and nominatives of proper names in **-ās** and **-īs** for **-ātis** and **-ītis**: as, **Arpīnās'**, for **Arpīnātis**; **Laenās'**; **Maecēnās'**; **Quirīs'**; **Samnīs'**; also **nostrās'**, **vostrās'**, **quōiās'**. For the effect of enclitics, see 179.

**174.** The Latin grammarians distinguish two kinds of accent: the acute, indicated by the mark ' : as, **dúx**; and the circumflex, by the mark ^ : as, **dôx**. Syllables not having these accents are said to have the grave, ` . The accent is not written, being evident from the length of the syllables.

**175.** Vowels with the acute accent are thought to have been uttered on a higher key; those with the circumflex to have begun on a higher key, and sunk to a lower key. But in modern practice this refinement is not usually attempted.

176. Monosyllables have the acute if the vowel is short: as, *dúx*; if long, the circumflex: as, *lūx*. Disyllables have the circumflex if the vowel of the penult is long and the last syllable is short: *mēta*; *fāstus*; otherwise the acute: as, (a.) *mētā*; *fāstō*; *prōfert*; (b.) *bónus*; *népōs*; *árma*; *árcus*.

177. Words of more than two syllables with the accent on the penult have the circumflex when the vowel of the penult is long and the last syllable is short: as, *amīcus*; otherwise the acute: as, (a.) *amícō*; *códex*; *rēxērunt*. (b.) *Mārcéllus*. Words of more than two syllables with the accent on the antepenult have the acute: as, *Róscius*; *Sérgius*.

#### PROCLITICS AND ENCLITICS.

178. PROCLITICS are unaccented words which are pronounced as a part of the following word; they are: (1.) The relative and indefinite pronouns and their derivatives; (2.) Prepositions.

(a.) Thus, *quō diē*, pronounced *quōdiē*; *quī vīxit*, *quīvīxit*; *genus unde Latīnum*, *genus undeLatīnum*. Similarly *quamdiū*, as long as, *aliquamdiū*, for some time; also *iamdiū*, this long time. (b.) *circum litora*, pronounced *circumlitora*; *ab ōrīs*, pronounced *abōrīs*; in inscriptions and manuscripts prepositions are often united in writing with the following word. When a preposition stands after its case it has an accent: as, *litora cícum*; except *ad*, *cum*, *per*, and *tenus*, which never have the accent.

179. ENCLITICS are words which have no accent of their own, but are pronounced as a part of the word preceding. The word before the enclitic has the accent on the last syllable.

The commonest enclitics are *-que*, *-ne*, *(-n)*, *-ve*, *-ce*, *(-c)*: as, *Latiúmque*; *Latióque*; *limináque*; *armáque*; *stimulóve*; *Hýrcānísve Arabísve*; *istíce* or *istíc* (pronoun); *istíce* or *istíc* (adverb); *adhúc*; *satísne* or *satín*; *hícine*. Other enclitics are: *-met* (650): as, *egómet*; *dum*: as, *agédum*; *inde* in *déinde* and *próinde* (which are disyllabic in verse), *éxinde*, *périnde*, and *súbinde*; and *quandō* in *néquandō* and *síquandō*.

### B. FORMATION.

180. FORMATION is the process by which stems are formed from roots or from other stems.

181. A word containing a single stem is called a *Simple* word: as, *māgnus*, *great*, stem *māgno-*; *animus*, *soul*, stem *animo-*. A word containing two or more stems is called a *Compound* word: as, *māgnanimus*, *great-souled*, stem *māgnanimo-*.

182. Most inflected words consist of two parts: a stem, which is usually a modified root (195), and an inflection ending: thus, in *ductōrī*, for a leader, the root is *d u c-*, *lead*, the stem is *ductōr-*, *leader*, and *-ī* is the inflection ending, meaning *for*.

#### ROOTS.

183. A ROOT is a monosyllable which gives the fundamental meaning to a word or group of words.

184. A root is not a real word ; it is neither a noun, naming something, nor a verb, denoting action. Thus *i u g-*, *yoke*, does not mean *a yoke* nor *I yoke* ; it merely *suggests* something about yoking. The root becomes a real word only when an inflection ending is added, or, more commonly, both a formative suffix and an inflection ending : as, *iug-u-m*, *a yoke*.

185. Roots are common to Latin and its cognate languages, such as the Sanskrit and the Greek. When a root is named in this book, the specific Latin form of the root is meant. This often differs somewhat from the form of the root which is assumed as applicable to all the cognate languages.

186. Almost all roots are noun and verb roots ; that is, roots with a meaning which may be embodied either in a noun or in a verb, or in both. Besides these there is a small class, less than a dozen in number, of pronoun roots. There are many words which cannot be traced back to their roots.

187. A root sometimes has two or more forms : as, *f ī d-* (for *f e i d-*), *f o e d-*, *f i d-*, *trust* ; *g e n-*, *g n-*, *sire* ; *t o l*, *t l*, *bear* ; *r ē g-*, *r e g-*, *guide*.

Thus, *f ī d-* is found in *f ī d-us*, *trusty*, *f ī d-ūcia*, *confidence*, *f ī d-ūciō*, *I pledge*, *f ī d-ūciārius*, *in trust*, *f ī d-ere*, *put trust in*, *f ī d-ēns*, *courageous*, *f ī d-entia*, *courage* ; *foe d-* in *foe d-us*, *pledge of faith*, *foe d-erātus*, *bound by a pledge of faith* ; *f i d-* in *f i d-ēs*, *faith*, *f i d-ēlis*, *faithful*, *f i d-ēliter*, *faithfully*, *f i d-ēlitās*, *faithfulness*, *per-f i d-us*, *faithless*, *per-f i d-ia*, *faithlessness*, *per-f i d-iōsus*, *full of faithlessness*, *per-f i d-iōsē*, *faithlessly*. *g e n-* in *gen-itor*, *sire*, *g n-* in *gi-gn-ere*, *beget*, *g n-ā* in *gnā-tus*, *son*.

188. A root ending in a vowel is called a *Vowel Root* : as, *d a-*, *give* ; a root ending in a consonant is called a *Consonant Root* : as, *rup-*, *break*. Roots are conveniently indicated by the sign √ : as, √ *t e g-*, to be read 'root *t e g-*.'

189. A root or a part of a root is sometimes doubled in forming a word ; this is called *Reduplication* : as, *mur-mur*, *murmur* ; *tur-tur*, *turtle-dove* ; *po-pul-us*, *people* ; *ul-ul-āre*, *yell*.

#### PRESENT STEMS AS ROOTS.

190. Many nouns are formed from the present stems of verbs, which take the place of roots. Stems thus used are mostly those of verbs in *-āre* and *-īre*.

Thus, from *ōrā-*, stem of *ōrāre*, *speak*, are formed *ōrā-tor*, *speaker*, and *ōrā-tiō*, *speech* ; from *audī-*, stem of *audīre*, *hear*, are formed *audī-tor*, *hearer*, and *audī-tiō*, *hearing*.

191. Verbs in *-ēre*, and those in *-āre* and *-īre* in which the *ā* or *ī* is confined to the present system (868, 874) usually have parallel nouns formed directly from a root : as,

*doc-tor*, *teacher*, *doc-umentum*, *lesson*, *doc-ilis*, *teachable* (√ *doc-*, *docēre*) ; *sec-tor*, *cutter* (√ *sec-*, *secāre*) ; *dom-itor*, *tamer*, *dom-inus*, *master*, *dom-itus*, *tamed* (√ *dom-*, *domāre*) ; *sarc-ina*, *package* (√ *sarc-*, *sarcīre*).

192. But a noun is sometimes exceptionally formed from the present stem of a verb in *-ēre* : as, *monē-ta*, *mint* (*monēre*) ; *acē-tum*, *vinegar* (*acēre*) ; *virē-tum*, *a green* (*virēre*) ; *suādē-la*, *persuasion* (*suādēre*) ; *habē-na*, *rein* (*habēre*) ; *egē-nus*, *needy* (*egēre*) ; *verē-cundus*, *shamefast* (*verēri*) ; *valē-tūdō*, *health* (*valēre*).



193. Verbs in -ere, and particularly such as have a present in -nō, -scō, -tō or -iō (832), usually have their parallel nouns formed directly from a root: as,

vīc-tor, *conqueror* (√vīc-, vincere); incrē-mentum, *growth* (√crē-, crēscere); pul-sus, *a push* (√pol-, pellere).

194. Sometimes, however, nouns are formed from such verb stems, and not from roots: as, lecti-stern-ium, *a couch-spreading* (sternere, √ster-, strā-); vinc-ibilis, *conquerable* (vincere, √vīc-); pāsc-uum, *pasture* (pāscere, √pā-); pect-en, *comb* (pectere, √pec-); fall-āx, *deceitful* (fallere, √fal-).

#### STEMS.

195. A STEM is that part of a word which contains its meaning, and is either a root alone or more commonly a root with an addition called a *Formative Suffix*.

Thus, in the word ducis, *leader's*, the stem, which is identical with the root duc-, means *leader*; a root thus serving as a stem is called a *Root Stem*; in ductōris, *leader's*, the stem is formed by the formative suffix -tōr-, denoting the agent, attached to the √duc-.

196. New stems are formed by adding a suffix to a stem. Thus, from ōrātōr-, *speaker*, is formed by the addition of the suffix -io-, a new stem ōrātōr-io-, N. ōrātōrius, *speaker's*.

197. The noun has usually only one form of the stem. The verb has different stems to indicate mood and tense; these stems are all based on two principal tense stems, the present and the perfect active.

#### PRIMITIVES AND DENOMINATIVES.

198. I. A stem or word formed directly from a root or a verb stem is called a *Primitive*. II. A stem or word formed from a noun stem is called a *Denominative*.

(a.) Primitives: from √rēg-, reg-, *guide*: rēx, stem rēg-, *king*; rēg-num, stem rēg-no-, *kingdom*; rēctus, stem rēc-to-, *guided*; regere, stem reg-e-, *guide*. From ōrā-, stem of ōrāre, *speaking*: ōrātōr, stem ōrā-tōr-, *speaker*; ōrātiō, stem ōrā-tiōn-, *speech*.

(b.) Denominatives: from noun stem rēg-, *king*: rēgina, stem rēg-inā-, *queen*; rēgius, stem rēg-io-, rēgālis, stem rēg-āli-, *royal*. From ōrātiōn-, *speech*: ōrātiūncula, stem ōrātiūn-culā-, *little speech*. From rēg-no-, *kingdom*: rēgnāre, stem rēgnā-, *to rule*. From ōr-, *mouth*: ōrāre, stem ōrā-, *to speak*.

### (A.) FORMATION OF THE NOUN.

#### WITHOUT A FORMATIVE SUFFIX.

199. Some roots are used as noun stems: as, duc-, N. dux, *leader* (√duc-, *lead*); rēg-, N. rēx, *king* (√rēg-, *guide*); particularly at the end of a compound: as, con-iug-, N. cōniūnx, *yoke-fellow, spouse* (com-, √jug-, *yoke*); tubi-cin-, N. tubicen, *trumpeter* (tubā-, √can-, *play*).



WITH A FORMATIVE SUFFIX.

200. SIMPLE formative suffixes are vowels: as, -ā-, -o-, -i-, -u-; also -io-, -uo-, (-vo-); or such little syllables as -mo-, -min-; -ro-, -lo-; -ōn-; -no-, -ni-, -nu-; -to-, -ti-, -tu-; -ter-, -tōr-; -unt- (-nt-); -es- (-er-), -ōr-; these syllables sometimes have slight modifications of form. COMPOUND suffixes consist of one or more simple suffixes attached to a simple suffix: as, -tōr-io-, -ti-mo-, &c., &c.

201. The following are examples of noun stems formed from roots or verb stems by simple suffixes added:

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.	STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
fug-ā-	fuga, <i>flight</i>	fug-, <i>fly</i>	som-no-	somnus, <i>sleep</i>	sop-, <i>sleep</i>
fid-o-	fidus, <i>trusty</i>	fīd-, <i>trust</i>	plē-no-	plēnus, <i>full</i>	plē-, <i>fill</i>
ac-u-	acus, <i>pin</i>	ac-, <i>point</i>	rēg-no-	rēgnum, <i>realm</i>	rēg-, <i>guide</i>
od-io-	odium, <i>hate</i>	od-, <i>hate</i>	da-to-	datus, <i>given</i>	da-, <i>give</i>
pluv-iā-	pluvia, <i>rain</i>	plov-, <i>wet</i>	lec-to-	lectus, <i>bed</i>	leg-, <i>lie</i>
ar-vo-	arvom, <i>tillth</i>	ar-, <i>till</i>	gen-ti-	gēns, <i>race</i>	gen-, <i>beget</i>
al-vo-	alvos, <i>belly</i>	al-, <i>nurture</i>	sta-tu-	status, <i>stand</i>	sta-, <i>stand</i>
sal-vo-	salvos, <i>safe</i>	sal-, <i>safe</i>	rēc-tōr-	rēctor, <i>ruler</i>	rēg-, <i>guide</i>
fā-mā	fāma, <i>tale</i>	fā-, <i>tell</i>	e-unt-,	iēns, <i>going</i>	i-, <i>go</i>
teg-min-	tegmen, <i>cover</i>	teg-, <i>cover</i>	rege-nt-	regēns, <i>guiding</i>	rege-, <i>guide</i>
sti-lo-	stilus, <i>style</i>	stig-, <i>stick</i>	gen-er-	genus, <i>race</i>	gen-, <i>beget</i>
err-ōn-	errō, <i>stroller</i>	errā-, <i>stroll</i>	fur-ōr-	furor, <i>madness</i>	fur-, <i>rave</i>

202. Formative suffixes are often preceded by a vowel, which in many instances is a stem vowel, real or presumed; in others, the vowel has come to be regarded as a part of the suffix itself.

Thus, -lo-: filio-lo-, N. filio-lu-s, *little son* (filio-); hortu-lu-s, *little garden* (horto-, 75); but -ulo-: rēg-ulu-s, *petty king* (rēg-); ger-ulu-s, *porter* (√g e s-, *bear*). -ci-: pūgnā-ci-, N. pūgnā-x, *full of fight* (pūgnā-re); but -āci-: fer-āx, *productive* (√f e r-, *bear*). -to-: laudā-to-, N. laudā-tu-s, *praised* (laudā-re); but -āto-: dent-ātus, *toothed* (denti-). -tu-: equitā-tu-, N. equitā-tu-s, *cavalry* (equitā-re); but -ātu-: sen-ātu-s, *senate* (sen-). -lā-: suādē-lā-, N. suādē-la, *persuasion* (suādē-re, 192); but -ēlā-: loqu-ēla, *talk* (√lo qu-, *speak*). -tāt-: cīvi-tāt-, N. cīvi-tā-s, *citizenship* (cīvi-); but -itāt-: auctōr-itā-s, *authority* (auctōr-). -cio-: aedīli-cio-, N. aedīli-ciu-s, *of an aedile* (aedīli-); but -icio-: patr-iciu-s, *patrician* (patr-). -timo-: fīni-timo-, N. fīni-timu-s, *bordering* (fīni-); but -itimo-: lēg-itimu-s, *of the law* (lēg-).

203. There are many formative suffixes of nouns. The commonest only can be named, and these may be conveniently grouped as below, by their meanings. Compound suffixes are arranged with reference to the last element of the suffix: thus, under the adjective suffix -io- (304) will be found -c-io-, -īc-io-, -tōr-io-, and -ār-io-. In many instances it is difficult to distinguish between simple and compound suffixes.

## I. THE SUBSTANTIVE.

## (A.) PRIMITIVES.

## I. THE AGENT.

204. The suffixes **-tōr-**, **-o-**, **-ā-**, **-lo-**, and **-ōn-**, are used to denote the *Agent*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
<b>lēc-tōr-</b>	<b>lēctor</b> , <i>reader</i>	√ <b>lē g-</b> , <i>read</i>
<b>scrib-ā-</b>	<b>scriba</b> , <i>writer</i>	√ <b>scrib-</b> , <i>write</i>
<b>fig-ulo-</b>	<b>figulus</b> , <i>potter</i>	√ <b>fig-</b> , <i>mould</i>
<b>err-ōn-</b>	<b>errō</b> , <i>stroller</i>	<b>errā-re</b> , <i>stroll</i>

(1.) **-tōr-** (N. **-tor**).

205. **-tōr-**, N. **-tor**, or **-sōr-**, N. **-sor** (153, 202), is the commonest suffix of the agent; the feminine is **-trī-ci-**, N. **-trī-x**. **-tōr-** is sometimes used in a present sense, of action repeated or occurring at any time, and sometimes in a past sense.

206. (a.) **-tōr-** (**-sōr-**), in the present sense, often denotes one who makes a regular business of the action of the root or verb.

**ōrā-tōr-**, N. **ōrā-tor**, *spokesman, speaker* (**ōrā-re**); **lēc-tor**, *reader* (√**lē g-**, *read*). Workmen and tradesmen: **arā-tor**, *ploughman*, **pās-tor**, *shepherd*, **pīc-tor**, *painter*, **sū-tor**, *shoemaker*. Semi-professional: **captā-tor**, *legacy-hunter*, **dēlā-tor**, *professional informer*. Government officials: **cēn-sor**, *appraiser, censor*, **imperā-tor**, *commander*, **prae-tor**, (*leader*), *praetor*, **dictā-tor**, **lic-tor**. Of the law: **āc-tor**, *manager*, **accūsā-tor**, *accuser*, **spōn-sor**, *bondsman*, **tū-tor**, *guardian*. From presumed verb stems (202): **sen-ātor**, *senator* (**sen-**); **viā-tor**, *wayfarer* (**viā-**); **fundi-tor**, *slinger* (**fundā-**). **-tro-**, N. **-ter**, has the meaning of **-tōr-**: as, **aus-tro-**, N. **aus-ter** (*scorcher*), *southwester* (√**aus-**, *burn*).

207. In the present sense **-tōr-** (**-sōr-**) is also used to indicate permanent character, quality, capability, tendency, likelihood: as, **bellā-tor**, *a man of war, warlike*; **dēliberā-tor**, *a man of caution*; **cessā-tor**, *a loiterer*; **dēri-sor**, *a mocker, ironical*; **cōnsūmp-tor**, *apt to destroy, destructive*; **aedificā-tor**, *building-mad*.

208. (b.) **-tōr-** (**-sōr-**), in a perfect sense, is used particularly in old Latin, or to denote an agent who has acquired a permanent name by a single conspicuous action. In this sense it usually has a genitive of the object, or a possessive pronoun: thus,

**castigā-tor meus**, *my mentor, or the man who has upbraided me*; **olīvae inven-tor**, *the deviser of the olive* (Aristaeus); **reper-tor vītis**, *the author of the vine* (Bacchus); **patriae liberā-tōrēs**, *the emancipators of the nation*.

(2.) **-o-** (N. **-u-s**), **-ā-** (N. **-a**); **-lo-** (N. **-lu-s**); **-ōn-** (N. **-ō**).

209. **-o-** and **-ā-** stems may denote vocation or class; many are compounds. **-o-**, N. **-u-s**: **coqu-o-**, N. **coqu-o-s** or **coc-u-s**, *cook* (√**coqu-**, *cook*); **causidic-u-s**, *pleader* (**causā-**, √**dic-**, *speak*). **-ā-**, N. **-a**: **scrib-ā-**, N. **scrib-a**, *clerk* (√**scrib-**, *write*); **agricol-a**, *husbandman* (**agro-**, √**col-**, *till*).

210. -u-lo-, N. -u-lu-s (202): ger-ulo-, N. ger-ulu-s, *bearer* (√ges-, *bear*); fig-ulu-s, *potter* (√fig-, *shape, mould*).

211. -ōn-, N. -ō-: err-ōn-, N. err-ō, *stroller* (errā-re); especially in compounds: praed-ō, *robber* (praedā-rī); praec-ō for \*praeuocō, *herald* (prae-uocā-re); combib-ō, *fellow-drinker* (com-, √bib-, *drink*).

## II. THE ACTION.

212. The suffixes -ā-, -io-, -iā-; -min-; -i-ōn-, -ti-ōn-; -lā-; -mā-, -nā-; -tā-, -tu-; -er-, -or-, -ōr-, are used to denote the *Action*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
od-io-	odium, <i>hate</i>	√od-, <i>hate</i>
āc-tiōn-	āctiō, <i>action</i>	√āg-, <i>do</i>
ques-tu-	questus, <i>complaint</i>	√ques-, <i>complain</i>
fur-ōr-	furor, <i>rage</i>	√fur-, <i>rave</i>

213. Words denoting action (1470) in a substantive form have a wide range of meaning; they may denote, according to the connection, action intransitive, transitive, or passive, complete or incomplete; if the verb denotes condition or state, the word of action often comes very near to denominatives of quality; furthermore the idea of action is often lost, and passes over to result, concrete effect, means or instrument, or place.

(1.) -ā- (N. -a); -io- (N. -iu-m); -iā- (N. -ia), -iē- (N. -iē-s).

214. -ā-, N. -a, is rare in words of action: fug-ā-, N. fug-a, *flight* (√fug-, *fly*); most words are concrete: mol-a, *mill* (√mol-, *grind*); tog-a, *covering* (√teg-, *cover*).

215. -ūr-ā-, N. -ūr-a, is rare: fig-ūrā-, N. fig-ūra, *shape* (√fig-, *shape*).

216. -tūr-ā-, N. -tūr-a, or -sūr-ā-, N. -sūr-a (153, 202), akin to the agent in -tōr- (-sōr-): armā-tūrā-, N. armā-tūra, *equipment* (armā-re); pīc-tūra, *painting*, i.e., *act of painting* or *picture* (√pīg-, *paint*). Words parallel with official personal names (206) denote office: cēn-sūra, *taxing, censor's office* (cf. cēnsōr-); prae-tūra, *praetorship* (cf. praetōr-).

217. -io-, N. -iu-m, sometimes denotes the effect or the object. The line cannot always be drawn very sharply between these stems in -io- (many of which may be formed through a presumed noun stem), and denominatives in -io- (249).

218. (a.) -io- is rarely suffixed to simple roots or verb stems: od-io-, N. od-iu-m, *hate, hateful thing, hateful conduct* (√od-, *hate*); some words become concrete: lab-iu-m, *lip* (√lab-, *lick*).

219. (b.) Most primitives in -io- are compounds: as, adag-iu-m, *proverb* (ad, √ag-, *speak*); ingen-iu-m, *disposition* (in, √gen-, *beget*); discid-iu-m, *separation*, exscid-iu-m, *destruction* (dī-, ex, √scid-, *cleave*); incend-iu-m, *conflagration* (in, √cand-, *light*); obsequ-iu-m, *compliance* (ob-, √sequ-, *follow*); conloqu-iu-m, *parley* (com-, √loqu-, *talk*); obsid-iu-m, *siege* (ob, √sed-, *sit*).



220. -t-io-, N. -t-*iu*-m: spa-tio-, N. spa-tiu-m, *stretch* (√spa-, *span, stretch*); sōlsti-tiu-m, *sun-stand, solstice* (sōl-, √sta-, *stand*); ini-tiu-m, *a beginning* (in, √i-, *go*).

221. -iā-, N. -ia: fur-iā-, N. fur-iae, plural, *ravings, madness* (√fur-, *rave*); via, for \*veh-ia, *way* (√veh-, *carry*). Most stems in -iā- are compounds, used in the plural only, often with concrete or passive meaning: dēlic-iae, *allurements, pet* (dē-, √lac-, *allure*); excub-iae, *patrol* (ex, √cub-, *lie*).

222. -iē-, N. -iē-s, a variation of -iā-, usually denotes result (604): ser-iē-, N. ser-iē-s, *row* (√ser-, *string*); spec-iē-s, *sight, looks* (√spec-, *spy, see*); pernic-iē-s, *destruction* (per, √nec-, *murder*).

223. -t-iē-, N. -t-iē-s: permi-tiē-, N. permi-tiē-s, *wasting away* (per, √mi-, *less*).

### (2.) -min- (N. -men); -din-, -gin- (N. -dō, -gō).

224. -min-, N. -men (202), usually active, occasionally passive, is very common; it sometimes denotes the means, instrument, or effect.

certā-min-, N. certā-men, *contest* (certā-re); crī-men, *charge* (√cer-, crī-, *sift*); spec-imen, *what is inspected, sample* (√spec-, *spy, see*); lū-men, *light* (√lūc-, *light*); flū-men, *flood, stream* (√flu-gu-, *flow*); ag-men, *what is led, train* (√ag-, *lead*). Words in -min- often mean nearly the same as those in -mento- (239): as, levā-men, levā-mentu-m, *lightening*; teg-umen, teg-umentu-m, *covering*.

225. ē-din-, -ī-din- (202): ē-din-, N. -ē-dō: grav-ēdin-, N. grav-ēdō, (*heaviness*), catarrh (√grav-, *heavy*). -ī-din-, N. -ī-dō: cup-īdin-, N. cup-īdō, *desire* (√cup-, *desire*); lib-īdō, *whim* (√lib-, *yearn*).

226. -ā-gin-, -ī-gin- (202): -ā-gin-, N. -ā-gō: vorā-gin-, N. vorā-gō, *gulf* (vorā-re); imā-gō, *representation* (\*imā-, cf. imitārī). -ī-gin-, N. -ī-gō: orī-gin-, N. orī-gō, *source* (orī-rī); cāl-īgō, *darkness* (√cāl-, *hide*). A few denominatives have -ū-gin-, N. -ū-gō: aer-ūgin-, N. aer-ūgō, *copper rust* (aer-).

### (3.) -i-ōn- (N. -i-ō); -ti-ōn- or -si-ōn- (N. -ti-ō or -si-ō).

227. -i-ōn-, N. -i-ō: opīn-iōn-, N. opīn-iō, *notion* (opīnā-rī); condic-iō, *agreement* (com-, √dic-, *say*); contāg-iō, *touch* (com-, √tāg-, *touch*). Some words are concrete: leg-iō, *pick, legion* (√leg-, *pick*). A few are denominatives: commūn-iō, *mutual participation* (commūni-).

228. -ti-ōn-, N. -ti-ō, or -si-ōn-, N. -si-ō (153, 202), is very common, and may denote action either intransitive, transitive, or passive, or the manner or possibility of action.

cōgitā-tiōn-, N. cōgitā-tiō, *a thinking, a thought* (cōgitā-re); existimā-tiō, *judging, reputation* (existimā-re); coven-tiō, commonly cōn-tiō, *meeting, speech* (com-, √ven-, *come*); dēpul-siō, *warding off* (dē-, √pol-, *push*); oppūgnā-tiō, *besieging, method of besieging* (oppūgnā-re); occultā-tiō, *hiding, chance to hide, possibility of hiding* (occultā-re). Some words denote the place where: sta-tiō, *a stand* (√sta-, *stand*); some become collectives or concretes: salūtā-tiō, *greeting, levee, guests at a levee* (salūtā-re); mūnī-tiō, *fortification, i.e., act of fortifying or works* (mūnī-re).



*The Substantive: Action.* [229-237.]

(4.) -ē-lā- (N. -ē-la), -tē-lā- (N. -tē-la).

229. -ē-lā-, N. -ē-la (202): suādē-lā-, N. suādē-la, *persuasion* (suādē-re): loqu-ēla, *talk* (√loqu-, *talk*); quer-ēla or quer-ēlla, *complaint* (√que s-, *complain*). Some words are concrete: candē-la, *candle* (candē-re).

230. -tē-lā-, N. -tē-la: conrup-tēlā-, N. conrup-tēla, *a seduction* (com-, √rup-, *spoil, ruin*); tū-tēla, *protection* (√tū-, *watch, protect*).

(5.) -mā- (N. -ma), -nā- (N. -na); -trī-nā- (N. -trī-na).

231. -mā- and -nā- are rare, and denote result or something concrete. -mā-, N. -ma: fā-mā-, N. fā-ma, *tale* (√fā-, *tell*); flam-ma, *blaze* (√flag-, *blaze*). -nā-, N. -na: lū-na, *moon* (√lūc-, *light*); pen-na, *feather* (√pet-, *fly*).

232. -inā-, N. -ina: ang-inā-, N. ang-ina, *choking* (√ang-, *choke*); pāg-ina, *page* (√pāg-, *fasten*); sarc-ina, *package* (√sarc-, *patch*). -īnā-, N. -īna (202): ru-īnā-, N. ru-īna, *downfall* (√ru-, *tumble*); -īnā- is very common in denominatives: pisc-īna, *fish-pond* (pisci-).

233. -trī-nā-, N. -trī-na, akin to the agent in -tōr-: doc-trīnā-, N. doc-trīna, *teaching*, either *the act of teaching* or *what is taught* (√doc-, *teach*); sū-trīna, *shoemaking, shoemaker's trade, shoemaker's shop* (√sū-, *sew*).

(6.) -tā- or -sā- (N. -ta or -sa); -tu- or -su- (N. -tu-s or -su-s).

234. -tā-, N. -ta, or -sā-, N. -sa (153), is rare, and sometimes denotes result, or something concrete: as, no-tā-, N. no-ta, *mark* (√gno-, *know*); por-ta (*passage*), *gate* (√por-, *fare*); fos-sa, *ditch* (√fod-, *dig*); repul-sa, *repulse* (re-, √pol-, *push*); offēn-sa, *offence* (ob, √fend-, *strike*).

235. -tu-, N. -tu-s, or -su-, N. -su-s (153, 202), denotes the action and its results: ques-tu-, N. ques-tu-s, *complaint* (√que s-, *complain*); gem-itus, *groan* (√gem-, *groan*). Stems in -ā-tu-, N. -ā-tu-s, sometimes denote office or officials: cōnsul-ātu-, N. cōnsul-ātu-s, *being consul, consulship* (cōnsul-); sen-ātu-s, *senate* (sen-). -tu- is seldom passive: vī-su-s, *active, sight*, passive, *looks* (√vid-, *see*); apparā-tu-s, *preparation*, either *a getting ready*, or *what is got ready* (apparā-re). The supine (2269) is the accusative or ablative of substantives in -tu- (-su-). Most words in -tu- (-su-) are defective in case, and are chiefly used in the ablative (430).

(7.) -er- for -es- (N. -us); -ōr- (N. -or).

236. Neuter stems in -er- (for -es-), or in -or- (for -os-), N. -us, denote result, or have a concrete meaning: gen-er-, N. gen-us, *birth, race* (√gen-, *beget*); op-er-, N. op-us, *work* (√op-, *work*); frīg-or-, N. frīg-us, *cold* (√frīg-, *cold*). -ēs with lengthened ē is sometimes used in the nominative of gender words: as, nūb-ēs, *cloud* (√nūb-, *veil*); sēd-ēs, *seed* (√sēd-); vāt-ēs, *bard*. -n-er-, -n-or-, N. -n-us: vol-ner-, N. vol-nus, *wound* (√vol-, *tear*); fac-inor-, N. fac-inus, *deed* (√fac-, *do*, 202).

237. -ōr- (for an older form -ōs-, 116), N. -ōs, commonly -or-, masculine, denotes a state. Many substantives in -ōr- have a parallel verb, usually in -ēre (368), and an adjective in -ido- (287).

od-ōr-, N. od-ōs or od-or *smell* (√od-, *smell*, cf. olē-re); pall-or, *pale-ness* (cf. pallē-re); cal-or, *warmth* (cf. calē-re); ūm-or, *moisture* (cf. ūmē-re); am-or, *love* (cf. amā-re); ang-or, *choking, anguish* (√ang-, *choke*).

### III. THE INSTRUMENT OR MEANS.

238. The suffixes -men-to-, -tro-, -cro- or -culo-, -lo-, -bro- or -bulo-, are used to denote the *Instrument* or *Means*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
ōrnā-mento-	ōrnāmentum, <i>embellishment</i>	ōrnā-re, <i>embellish</i>
arā-tro-	arātrum, <i>plough</i>	arā-re, <i>plough</i>
pō-culo-	pōculum, <i>drinking-cup</i>	√pō-, <i>drink</i>
pā-bulo-	pābulum, <i>fodder</i>	√pā-, <i>feed</i>

239. -men-to-, N. -men-tu-m (202), is one of the commonest suffixes; it sometimes denotes result of action, rarely action itself.

pīg-mento-, N. pīg-mentu-m, *paint* (√pīg-, *paint*); experī-mentu-m, *test* (experī-rī); ōrnā-mentu-m, *ornament* (ōrnā-re); frag-mentu-m, *fragment* (√frag-, *break*); cae-mentu-m, *quarried stone* (√caed-, *cut*); incrē-mentu-m, *growth* (in, √crē-, *grow*); al-imentu-m, *nourishment* (√al-, *nurture*); doc-umentu-m, *lesson* (√doc-, *teach*). See also -min- (224). -men-tā-, N. -men-ta, F., is rare: ful-menta, *prop* (√fulc-, *prop*); rā-menta, *scraping* (√rād-, *scrape*).

240. -tro-, N. -tru-m (202): arā-tro-, N. arā-tru-m, *plough* (arā-re); fer-etru-m, *bier* (√fer-, *bear*); rōs-tru-m, *beak* (√rōd-, *peck*). Sometimes -stro-: mōn-stru-m, *warning* (√mōn-, *mind*); lu-stra, plural, *fen, jungle* (√lu-, *wash*); lū-stru-m, *purification* (√lou-, *wash*). -trā-, N. -tra, F.: mulc-trā-, N. mulc-tra (also mulc-tru-m, Ne.), *milking-pail* (√mulg-, *milk*). -es-trā-: fen-estra, *window*.

241. -cro-, N. -cru-m, used when an l precedes: ful-cro-, N. ful-cru-m, *couch-leg* (√fulc-, *prop*). -cro- sometimes denotes the place where: ambulā-cru-m, *promenade* (ambulā-re); sometimes the effect: simulā-cru-m, *likeness* (simulā-re).

242. -culo-, N. -culu-m (202): pō-culo-, N. pō-culu-m, *cup* (√pō-, *drink*); fer-culu-m, *tray* (√fer-, *bear*). -culo- sometimes denotes the place where: cub-iculu-m, *sleeping-room* (√cub-, *lie*); cēnā-culu-m, originally *dining-room*, usually *garret* (cēnā-re).

243. -u-lo-, N. -u-lu-m- (202): chiefly after c or g: vinc-ulo-, N. vinc-ulu-m, *bond* (√vinc-, *bind*); cing-ulu-m, *girdle* (√cing-, *gird*). -u-lā-, N. -u-la, F., rēg-ula, *rule* (√rēg-, *guide*).

244. -bro-, N. -bru-m (202): crī-bro-, N. crī-bru-m, *sieve* (√cer-, crī-, *sift*); lā-bru-m, *wash-basin* (√lav-, *wash*). -brā-, N. -bra, F.: dolā-bra, *chisel, mattock* (dolā-re); lat-ebra, *hiding-place* (√lat-, *hide*).

245. -bulo-, N. -bulu-m (202): pā-bulo-, N. pā-bulu-m, *fodder* (√pā-, *keep*); vēnā-bulu-m, *hunting-spear* (vēnā-rī); pat-ibulu-m, *pillory* (√pat-, *stretch*). -bulo- sometimes denotes the place where: sta-bulu-m, *standing-place, stall* (√sta-, *stand*). -bulā-, N. -bula, F., rare: fī-bula, *ouch* (√fīg-, *fasten*); ta-bula, *board* (√ta-, *stretch*); fā-bula, *talk* (√fā-, *talk*).

(B.) DENOMINATIVES.

I. THE QUALITY.

246. The suffixes -io-, -iā-; -tā-, -tāt-, -tūt-, -tū-din-, are used to denote the *Quality*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
conlēg-io-	conlēgium, <i>colleagueship</i>	conlēgā-, N. conlēga, <i>colleague</i>
audāc-iā-	audācia, <i>boldness</i>	audāci-, N. audāx, <i>bold</i>
cīvi-tāt-	cīvitās, <i>citizenship</i>	cīvi-, N. cīvis, <i>citizen</i>
māgni-tūdin-	māgnitūdō, <i>greatness</i>	māgno-, N. māgnus, <i>great</i>

247. These abstracts are feminine, and come chiefly from adjectives or participles, except those in -io-, which are neuters, and come mostly from substantives. Sometimes the same stem takes two or more of these suffixes: as, clāri-tāt- or clāri-tūdin-, *brightness* (clāro-); iuven-tūt-, in poetry iuven-tāt- or iuven-tā-, *youth* (iuven-).

(1.) -io- (N. -iu-m), -iā- (N. -ia).

248. -iā- is sometimes weakened to -iē- (604); -io- or -iā- is sometimes attached to other suffixes: thus, -t-io-, -t-iā- (-t-iē-); -mōn-io-, -mōn-iā-; -cin-io-.

249. -io-, N. -iu-m, chiefly used in compounds, denotes *belonging to*, with a very wide range of meaning; many of these words are clearly neuter adjectives in -io- (305). Suffixed to personal names -io- often denotes the condition, action, or employment, which gives rise to the name; this meaning sometimes passes over to that of result, relation of persons, collection of persons, or place.

250. (a.) From simple noun stems: sen-io-, N. sen-iu-m, *feeble old age* (sen-); somn-iu-m, *dream* (somno-); sāv-iu-m, *love-kiss* (suāvi-); silent-iu-m, *silence* (silenti-); crepund-ia, plural, *rattle* (\*crepundo-); mendāc-iu-m, *lie* (mendāci-); sōlāc-iu-m, *comfort* (\*sōlāci-, *comforting*).

251. (b.) Direct compounds (377): aequinoct-iu-m, *equinox* (aequo-, nocti-); contubern-iu-m, *companionship* (com-, tabernā-); prīvilēg-iu-m, *special enactment* (prīvo-, lēg-).

252. (c.) Indirect compounds (377), chiefly from personal names: cōnsil-iu-m, *deliberating together, faculty of deliberation, conclusion, advice, deliberative body* (cōnsul-); auspic-iu-m, *taking auspices, auspices taken* (auspic-); rēmig-iu-m, *rowing, oars, oarsmen* (rēmig-); conlēg-iu-m, *colleagueship, corporation* (conlēgā-); aedific-iu-m, *building* (\*aedific-, *builder*); perfug-iu-m, *asylum* (perfugā-).

253. -t-io- N. -t-iu-m, rare: servi-tio-, N. servi-tiu-m, *slavery, slaves* (servo-); calvi-tiu-m, *baldness* (calvo-).

254. -mōn-io-, N. -mōn-iu-m (202): testi-mōnio-, N. testi-mōniu-m, *evidence* (testi-); mātr-imōniu-m, *marriage* (mātr-); patr-imōniu-m, *patrimony* (patr-).



255. -cin-io-, N. -cin-*iu*-m, rare: *latrō-cinio*-, N. *latrō-ciniu*-m, *robbery* (*latrōn*-, 131); *patrō-ciniu*-m, *protection* (*patrōno*-, 126).

256. -iā-, N. -ia, is very common indeed, forming abstracts from nouns, mostly adjectives or present participles.

*audāc-iā*-, N. *audāc-ia*, *boldness* (*audāci*-); *miser-ia*, *wretchedness* (*miser-*); *abundant-ia*, *plenty* (*abundanti*-); *scient-ia*, *knowledge* (*scienti*-); *milit-ia*, *warfare* (*milit*-); *vīctōr-ia*, *victory* (*vīctōr*-); *māter-ia*, *timber* (*māter*-); *custōd-ia*, *guard* (*custōd*-).

257. -iē-, N. -iē-s (104): *pauper-iē*-, N. *pauper-iē-s*, *moderate means* (*pauper*-). Most stems in -iē- are primitive (222).

258. -tiā-, N. -tia, is suffixed to a few adjective stems, chiefly in -o-: *iūsti-tiā*-, N. *iūsti-tia*, *justice* (*iūsto*-); *mali-tia*, *wickedness* (*malo*-); *pudīci-tia*, *shamefastness* (*pudīco*-); *trīsti-tia*, *sadness* (*trīsti*-).

259. -tiē-, N. -tiē-s, particularly as a collateral form of -tiā- in the N., Ac., and Ab. singular (604): *molli-tiē*-, N. *molli-tiē-s*, *softness* (*molli*-).

260. -mōn-iā-, N. -mōn-ia (202): *ācri-mōniā*-, N. *ācri-mōnia*, *sharpness* (*ācri*-); *parsi-mōnia*, *economy* (*parso*-). Analogously from roots, *quer-imōnia*, *complaint* (√*qu e s*-, *complain*); *al-imōnia*, *nurture* (√*a l*-, *nurture*).

(2.) -tā- (N. -ta), -tāt- (N. -tā-s), -tūt- (N. -tū-s),  
-tū-din- (N. -tū-dō).

261. -tā-, N. -ta: chiefly poetic: *iuven-tā*-, N. *iuven-ta*, *youth* (*iuven*-); *senec-ta*, *age* (*sen-ec*-).

262. -tāt-, N. -tā-s (202), is one of the very commonest suffixes.

*pie-tāt*-, N. *pie-tā-s*, *dutifulness* (*pio*-, 105); *fēlici-tā-s*, *happiness* (*fēlici*-); *cīvi-tā-s*, *citizenship, the community* (*cīvi*-); *facili-tā-s*, *easiness*, *facul-tā-s*, *ability* (*facili*-); *cāri-tā-s*, *deariness* (*cāro*-); *auctōr-itā-s*, *authority* (*auctōr*-); *liber-tā-s*, *freedom* (*libero*-, 94); *mājes-tā-s*, *grandeur* (*mājōs*-); *volun-tā-s*, *wish* (\**volunti*-, 126); *venus-tā-s*, *grace* (*venusto*-, 126); *ae-tā-s*, *age* (*aevo*-, 129); *tempes-tā-s*, *kind of time, weather* (*tempes*-).

263. -tūt-, N. -tū-s, only in *iuven-tūt*-, N. *iuven-tū-s*, *youth* (*iuven*-), *senec-tū-s*, *age* (*senec*-), *servi-tū-s*, *slavery* (*servo*-), and *vir-tū-s*, *manhood* (*viro*-, 94).

264. -tū-din-, N. -tū-dō, suffixed to adjective stems: *māgni-tūdin*-, N. *māgni-tūdō*, *greatness* (*māgno*-); *forti-tūdō*, *courage* (*forti*-); and to a few participles: *cōnsuē-tūdō*, *custom* (*cōnsuēto*-, 126); *sollici-tūdō*, *anxiety* (*sollicito*-); analogously *valē-tūdō*, *health* (\**valēto*-, *valēre*).

## II. THE PERSON CONCERNED.

265. The suffixes -ārio-, -ōn-, -iōn-, -li-, -no-, and some others, are used to denote the *Person concerned* or *occupied* with a thing: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
sīc-ārio-	sīcārius, <i>assassin</i>	sīcā-, N. sīca, <i>dagger</i>
āle-ōn-	āleō, <i>gambler</i>	āleā-, N. ālea, <i>die</i>
lūd-iōn-	lūdiō, <i>player</i>	lūdo-, N. lūdus, <i>play</i>
aedī-li-	aedīlis, <i>aedile</i>	aedi-, N. aedis, <i>house</i>
tribū-no-	tribūnus, <i>tribune</i>	tribu-, N. tribus, <i>tribe</i>



### III. THE PLACE.

266. Neuters with the suffixes -tōrio-, -ārio-, -īli-, -to-, or -ēto-, are often used to denote the *Place*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
audī-tōrio-	audī-tōrium, <i>lecture-room</i>	audītōr-, N. auditor, <i>hearer</i>
aer-ārio-	aer-ārium, <i>treasury</i>	aer-, N. aes, <i>money</i>
ov-īli-	ovile, <i>sheepfold</i>	ovi-, N. ovis, <i>sheep</i>
murt-ēto-	murtēta, <i>myrtlegroves</i>	murto-, N. murtus, <i>myrtle</i>

### IV. DIMINUTIVES.

267. The suffixes -lo-, -lā-, or -cu-lo-, -cu-lā-, are used to form substantives with a *Diminutive* meaning. Diminutives may denote:

268. (1.) Actual smallness: as, *secūricula*, a little hatchet; *ventulus*, a bit of wind; *spēcula*, a ray of hope.

269. (2.) Imputed smallness: implying, (a.) admiration, affection, or compassion; (b.) contempt or irony. This diminutive, which usually serves to add point to sentences themselves of a playful, patronizing, or slurring character, is very hard to translate; *little* and *small* are often inadequate; *old* or *poor* will sometimes do; but usually recourse must be had to free translations adapted to the particular context: as,

*ōrātiūncula*, a gem of a speech, an attempt at a speech; *mātercula*, an anxious mother, poor mamma, dear mamma; *lectulus*, one's own little bed; *ānellus aureolus*, a gay gold ring; *Graeculī*, our Greek cousins, the good people in Greece; *Graeculus*, a regular Greek, your gentleman from Greece; *muliercula*, a pretty girl, a lady gay, one of the gentler sex, a mere woman, an unprotected female, a maiden all forlorn; *lacrimula*, a wee tear, a crocodile tear; *volpēcula*, Master Reynard, dan Russel; *tōnstricula*, a common barber girl; *popellus*, rabble; *nummulī*, filthy lucre; *mercēdula*, an apology for pay; *ratiūncula*, a first rate reason; *caupōnula*, a low tavern.

270. Some diminutives have entirely lost the diminutive meaning: as, *puella*, girl, not necessarily little girl; others have changed their original meaning: as, *avūnculus*, uncle, originally grandpapa; *anguilla*, eel, originally little snake. Some words are only found in the diminutive form: as, *stella*, star (\*sterā-). Diminutives usually have the gender of their primitives; exceptions are rare: as, *rāna*, frog, F., *rānūnculus*, tadpole, M.

(1.) -lo- (N., M. -lu-s, Ne. -lu-m), -lā- (N. -la).

271. Stems in -o-, -ā-, or a mute (-g-, -c-, -d-, or -t-), take -lo- or -lā-, which is usually preceded by -u- (202).

*hortu-lo-*, N. *hortu-lu-s*, little garden (*horto-*); *oppidu-lu-m*, hamlet (*oppido-*); *serru-lā-*, N. *serru-la*, little saw (*serrā-*); *rēg-ulu-s*, chieftain (*rēg-*); *vōc-ula*, a bit of a voice (*vōc-*); *calc-ulu-s*, pebble (*calci-*); *nepōt-ulu-s*, a grandson dear (*nepōt-*); *aetāt-ula*, tender age (*aetāt-*).

272. Stems in -eo-, -io-, or -vo-, retain -o- before -lo-; stems in -eā-, -iā-, or -vā-, also have -o- before -lā-.

alveo-lo-, N. alveo-lu-s, *little tray* (alveo-); gladio-lu-s, *little sword* (gladio-); servo-lu-s, *little slave* (servo-); nauseo-lā-, N. nauseo-la, *a slight squeamishness* (nauseā-); bēstio-la, *little animal* (bēstiā-); filio-la, *little daughter* (filiā-).

273. Stems in -lo-, -ro-, -no-, and -lā-, -rā-, -nā-, commonly drop the stem vowel and assimilate -r- or -n- to -l-: thus: -el-lo-, -el-lā- (110).

catel-lo-, for \*catululo-, N. catel-lu-s, *puppy* (catulo-); agel-lu-s, *little field* (agro-); asel-lu-s, *donkey* (asino-); fābel-lā-, N. fābel-la, *short story* (fābulā-); umbel-la, *sunshade* (umbrā-); pāgel-la, *short page* (pāginā-). A few words are not thus changed: pueru-lo-, N. pueru-lu-s, *poor boy* (puero-), as well as puel-lu-s.

274. In some words the vowel before -ll- is not changed to -e-: Hispāl-lu-s (Hispāno-), Messāl-la (Messānā-), proper names; corōl-la, *chaplet* (corōnā-); ūl-lu-s, *the least one, any at all* (ūno-); Sūl-la (Sūrā-), proper name; lapil-lu-s, for \*lapid-lu-s, *pebble* (lapid-). Also homul-lu-s, *son of the dust* (homon-).

(2.) -cu-lo- (N., M. -cu-lu-s, Ne. -cu-lu-m), -cu-lā- (N. -cu-la).

275. Stems in a continuous sound (-l-, -n-, -r-, or -s-), or in -i-, -u-, or -ē-, usually take -cu-lo- or -cu-lā-.

sermūn-culo-, N. sermūn-culu-s, *small-talk* (sermōn-); virgun-culā-, N. virgun-cula, *little maid* (virgon-); homun-culu-s, *son of earth* (homon-); arbus-cula, *tiny tree* (arbos-); cor-culu-m, *heart of hearts* (cord-, cor-, 138); īgni-culu-s, *spark* (īgni-); ani-cula, *grandam* (anu-); diē-cula, *brief day* (diē-); analogously, volpē-cula (*vixen*), *little fox* (\*volpē-). Rarely with ī: canī-cula, *little dog* (can-).

276. -ūn-culo-, N. -ūn-culu-s: av-ūnculo-, N. av-ūnculu-s, *uncle* (avo-); rān-ūnculu-s, *tadpole* (rānā-). -ūn-culā-, N. -ūn-cula: dom-ūnculā-, N. dom-ūncula, *little house* (domo-).

277. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives: cistel-lu-la, *casket* (cistel-la, cistu-la, cistā-).

278. A few other suffixes have a diminutive meaning: as, -ciōn-, -leo-, -astro-, -ttā-: homun-ciō, *manikin, child of dust* (homon-); acu-leu-s, *sting* (acu-); Antōni-aster, *regular little Antony*; pīn-aster, *bastard pine*; Iūli-tta, *Juliet* (Iūliā-); Pōlli-tta, *little Polla* (Pōllā-).

## V. PATRONYMICS.

279. Patronymics, or proper names which denote descent from a father or ancestor, have stems in -dā- (N. -dē-s), F. -d- (N. -s). These are chiefly Greek names used in poetry.

Priami-dā-, N. Priami-dē-s, *scion of Priam's house*; Tantalī-d-, N. Tantalī-s, *daughter of Tantalus*. Pēlī-dē-s (Pēleu-s); Aenea-dē-s (Aenēā-); Thēstia-dē-s (Thēstio-); Lāertia-dē-s (Lāertā-); Scīpia-dā-s (Scīpiōn-). F. sometimes -īnē or -ōnē: Neptūnīnē (Neptūno-); Acrisiōnē (Acrisio-).

## II. THE ADJECTIVE.

### (A.) PRIMITIVES.

280. Primitive adjectives may usually be divided into active and passive; but the same suffix often has either an active or a passive meaning. Under primitive adjectives belong the participles; but these will be mentioned in connection with the verb.

#### I. WITH AN ACTIVE MEANING.

281. The suffixes *-o-*, *-uo-*, *-ci-*, *-lo-*, and *-do-*, are used to form adjectives with an *Active* meaning: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
vag-o-	vagus, <i>wandering</i>	√vag-, <i>wander</i>
contig-uo-	contiguus, <i>touching</i>	com-, √tag-, <i>touch</i>
minā-ci-	mināx, <i>threatening</i>	minā-rī, <i>threaten</i>
cal-ido-	calidus, <i>warm</i>	√cal-, <i>warm</i>

#### (1.) *-o-* (N. *-u-s*); *-uo-* (N. *-uu-s*).

282. *-o-* (N. *-u-s*): such have the meaning of a participle: vag-o-, N. vag-u-s, *roaming* (√vag-, *roam*); vīv-u-s, *living* (√vīv-, *live*); many are compounds: as, male-dic-u-s, *abusive* (male, √dic-, *say*); pro-fug-u-s, *flying on* (prō-, √fug-, *fly*). Passive: fīd-u-s, *trustworthy* (√fīd-, *trust*).

283. *-uo-*, N. *-uu-s*: adsid-uo-, N. adsid-uu-s, *unremitting* (ad, √sed-, *sit*); contig-uu-s, *touching* (com-, √tag-, *touch*); perpet-uu-s, *uninterrupted* (per, √pet-, *go*). Some words are passive: as, sal-vu-s, *safe* (√sal-, *save*); vac-uu-s, *empty* (√vac-, *empty*); rēlic-uu-s, *left behind* (rē-, √liqu-, *leave*), later rēliquus (112).

#### (2.) *-ci-* (N. *-x*); *-lo-* (N. *-lu-s*); *-do-* (N. *-du-s*).

284. *-ā-ci-*, N. *-ā-x* (202), denotes capacity, habit, or inclination, often implying censure: pūgnā-ci-, N. pūgnā-x, *full of fight* (pūgnā-re); minā-x, *threatening* (minā-rī); fer-āx, *productive* (√fer-, *bear*); dic-āx, *full of mother-wit, quick at a joke* (√dic-, *say*); rap-āx, *apt to snatch* (√rap-, *snatch*).

285. *-u-lo-*, N. *-u-lu-s* (202), denotes simple action: as, pat-ulo-, N. pat-ulu-s, *spreading* (√pat-, *spread*); or inclination: as, bib-ulu-s, *apt to drink* (√bib-, *drink*).

286. *-do-* is often suffixed to *-un-* (*-en-*), *-bun-*, or *-cun-*; thus: *-un-do-* (*-en-do-*), *-bun-do-*, *-cun-do-*.

287. *-i-do-*, N. *-i-du-s* (202), denotes a state, and usually has a parallel verb in *-ēre* (368): cal-ido-, N. cal-idu-s, *warm* (cf. calē-re); call-idu-s, *knowing* (cf. callē-re); nit-idu-s, *shining* (cf. nitē-re); rarely in *-ere*: cup-idu-s, *desirous* (cf. cupe-re); flu-idu-s, *liquid* (cf. flue-re); rap-idu-s, *hurried* (cf. rape-re). *-i-do-* becomes *-i-di-* in vir-idi-s, *green* (cf. virē-re). *-do-* sometimes occurs in denominatives: herbi-du-s, *grassy* (herbā-).



288. -un-do- (-en-do-), N. -un-du-s (-en-du-s) is the suffix of the gerundive, which was originally neither active nor passive (2238). In a few words from reflexives, which have become adjectives, it has a reflexive or active meaning: lāb-undo-, N. lāb-undu-s, *gliding, slipping* (lābī); ori-undu-s, *arising* (orīrī); sec-undu-s, *following* (sequī); volv-endu-s, *rolling* (volvī).

289. -bun-do-, N. -bun-du-s (202), has the meaning of an exaggerated present participle: frem-ebundo-, N. frem-ebundu-s, *muttering away* (√frem-, *roar*); trem-ebundu-s, *all in a flutter* (√trem-, *quiver*); fur-ibundu-s, *hot with rage* (√fur-, *rave*); cōntiōnā-bundu-s, *speaking a speech* (cōntiōnā-rī); minitā-bundu-s, *breathing out threatenings* (minitā-rī); vitā-bundu-s, *forever dodging* (vitā-re).

290. -cun-do-, N. -cun-du-s, denotes permanent quality: fā-cundo-, N. fā-cundu-s, *eloquent* (√fā-, *speak*); irā-cundu-s, *choleric* (irā-scī); iū-cundu-s, *pleasant, interesting* (√iuv-, *help*).

## II. WITH A PASSIVE MEANING.

291. The suffixes -li-, -ti-li-, -bili-, -tīvo-, -no-, and -mino-, are used to form adjectives with a *Passive* meaning: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
fac-ili-	facilis, <i>easy to do</i>	√f a c-, <i>do</i>
duc-tili-	ductilis, <i>ductile</i>	√d u c-, <i>draw</i>
amā-bili-	amābilis, <i>lovable</i>	amā-re, <i>love</i>
māg-no-	māgnus, <i>great</i>	√m a g-, <i>increase</i>

(1.) -li- (N. -li-s); -ti-li-, -bili- (N. -ti-li-s, -bili-s).

292. -i-li-, N. -i-li-s (202), denotes passive capability: fac-ili-, N. fac-ili-s, *easy to do* (√f a c-, *do*); frag-ili-s, *breakable, frail* (√f r a g-, *break*); hab-ili-s, *manageable, handy* (√h a b-, *hold*); nūb-ili-s, *marriageable* (√n ū b-, *veil*).

293. -ti-li-, N. -ti-li-s, or -si-li-, N. -si-li-s (153), denotes capability or quality: as, duc-tili-, N. duc-tili-s, *capable of being drawn out, ductile* (√d u c-, *draw*); fis-sili-s, *cleavable* (√f i d-, *split*); rā-sili-s, *scraped* (√r ā d-, *scrape*). Rarely active: as, fer-tili-s, *productive* (√f e r-, *bear*).

294. -bili-, N. -bili-s (202), denotes passive capability like -i-li-, but is far more common: horr-ibili-s, *exciting a shudder* (cf. horrē-re); amā-bili-s, *lovable* (amā-re); flē-bili-s, *lamentable* (√f l ē-, *weep*). Rarely active: as, sta-bili-s, *that can stand* (√s t a-, *stand*); penetrā-bili-s, *piercing* (penetrā-re). -ti-bili- (153), passive, rare: flexibili-s, *flexible* (√f l e c-, *bend*).

295. -tīvo-, N. -tīvu-s, denotes the way a thing originated: as, cap-tīvu-s, *captive* (√c a p-, *take*); sta-tīvu-s, *set* (√s t a-, *set*).

(2.) -no- (N. -nu-s); -mino- (N. -minu-s).

296. -no-, N. -nu-s, an old passive participle suffix, denotes result: māg-nu-s (*enlarged*), *great* (√m a g-, *great*); vā-nu-s, *vain* (√v a c-, *empty*). Neuter as substantive: dō-nu-m, *gift* (√d ō-, *give*). Sometimes active: egē-nu-s, *needy* (egē-re, 192).

## The Adjective: Appurtenance. [297-304.

297. -mino-, an old passive participle suffix, is found in the second person plural of the passive verb: *regi-minī* (sc. *estis*), *being ruled (are ye)*; subjunctive, *regā-minī* (*regere*). The nominative singular with -s lost, -mino, is rarely found in the second and third person singular imperative of deponents: as, *prōgredi-mino*, *step forward thou* (*prōgredī*). -mino- or -mno- is further found in a few substantives: as, *alu-mnu-s*, *nurseling* (√ *al*, *nurse*).

### (B.) DENOMINATIVES.

298. Denominative adjectives may be divided into such as denote: I. *Material* or *Resemblance*. II. *Appurtenance*: implying sometimes *possession*, often *fitness*, *conformity*, *character*, or *origin*. III. *Supply*. IV. *Diminutives*. V. *Comparatives* and *Superlatives*; a few of these are primitive.

#### I. MATERIAL OR RESEMBLANCE.

299. The suffixes -eo- and -n-eo- are used to form adjectives denoting *Material* or *Resemblance*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
aur-eo-	aureus, <i>golden</i>	auro-, N. aurum, <i>gold</i>
ahē-neo-	ahēneus, <i>bronze</i>	*ahes-, N. aes, <i>bronze</i>

300. -eo-, N. -eu-s: aur-eo-, N. aur-eu-s, *golden, all gold, as good as gold* (auro-); ferr-eu-s, *iron* (ferro-); pulver-eu-s, *all dust* (pulver-); virgin-eu-s, *girlish* (virgin-).

301. -n-eo-, N. -n-eu-s: ahē-neu-s, *bronze* (\*ahes-, aes-); quer-neu-s, *oaken* (quercu-). -no- is usually poetical: as, ebur-nu-s, *ivory* (ebur-); quer-nu-s, *oaken* (quercu-). -ā-neo-, N. -ā-neu-s: miscell-āneu-s, *mixed* (miscello-).

#### II. APPURTENANCE.

302. The suffixes -o-, -io-, -vo-; -timo-, -li-, -no-; -bri-, -cri-, -tri-; -co-, -ti-, -si-, are used to form adjectives denoting *Belonging to*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
rēg-io-	rēgius, <i>kingly</i>	rēg-, N. rēx, <i>king</i>
mari-timo-	maritimus, <i>of the sea</i>	mari-, N. mare, <i>sea</i>
rēg-āli-	rēgālis, <i>of a king</i>	rēg-, N. rēx, <i>king</i>
can-ino-	caninus, <i>of a dog</i>	can-, N. canis, <i>dog</i>
mulie-bri-	muliebris, <i>womanly</i>	mulier-, N. mulier, <i>woman</i>
cīvi-co-	cīvicus, <i>citizen's</i>	cīvi-, N. cīvis, <i>citizen</i>

(i.) -o- (N. -u-s), -io- (N. -iu-s), -vo- (N. -vu-s).

303. -o-, N. -u-s: decōr-o-, N. decōr-u-s, *becoming* (decōr-); canōr-u-s, *melodious* (canōr-); pervius, *passable* (via-).

304. -io- is one of the commonest suffixes, and is often added to other suffixes; thus: -c-io-, -īc-io-; -tōr-io- (-sōr-io-); -ār-io-.

305. -io-, N. -iu-s: rēg-io-, N. rēg-iu-s, *of or like a king* (rēg-); patr-iu-s, *of a father* (patr-). Here belong many gentile names: as, Sēst-iu-s (Sexto-). These are used with substantives as adjectives: as, lēx Cornēl-ia, lēx Iūl-ia. Furthermore patrilial adjectives: as, Corinth-iu-s, *Corinthian* (Corintho-). In some, consonant -io- is used: plēbē-iu-s, *of the commons* (plēbē-). -io- is rare in primitives: exim-iu-s, *select* (ex, √ e m-, take).

306. -c-io-, N. -c-iu-s (202): aedīl-i-cio, N. aedīl-i-ciu-s, *of an aedile* (aedil-i); patr-iciu-s, *of the fathers* (patr-); later-iciu-s, *of brick* (later-).

307. -īc-io-, N. -īc-iu-s: nov-īcio-, N. nov-īciu-s, *new, new-comer* (novo-); nātāl-īciu-s, *birthday's* (nātāl-i); caement-īciu-s, *rubble* (caemento-). Usually suffixed to perfect participles to denote the quality derived from the past act: conduct-īciu-s, *hired* (conducto-); trālāt-īciu-s, *transferred* (trālāto-).

308. -tōr-io-, N. -tōr-iu-s, or -sōr-io-, N. -sōr-iu-s, from the agent (205) in -tōr- (-sōr-), is the commonest ending with -io-: imperā-tōrio-, N. imperā-tōriu-s, *of a commander* (imperātōr-). The neuter, as substantive, denotes the place where (266): audī-tōriu-m, *lecture-room* (audītōr-); dēvor-sōriu-m, *inn* (dēvorsōr-).

309. -ār-io-, N. -ār-iu-s, very common, is chiefly added to substantives: as, agr-ārio-, N. agr-āriu-s, *of land* (agro-). Often as substantive: not-āriu-s (265), *stenographer* (notā-); aer-āriu-m (266), *treasury* (aer-); sēmin-āriu-m, *nursery* (sēmin-); bell-āria, plural, *goodies, bonbons* (bello-).

310. -ī-vo-, N. -ī-vu-s (202): tempest-īvu-s, *seasonable* (tempestāt-, 126); aest-īvu-s, *summer's* (aestāt-).

(2.) -timo- (N. -timu-s); -li- (N. -li-s); -no- (N. -nu-s).

311. -timo-, N. -timu-s (202), for an older -tumo- (78): mari-timo-, N. mari-timu-s, *of the sea* (mari-); fīni-timu-s, *of the border* (fīni-); lēg-itu-m, *lawful* (lēg-).

312. -li- N. -li-s: humi-li-, N. humi-li-s, *lowly* (humo-); but almost always in denominatives -li- is preceded by a long vowel (202), usually -ā- or -ī-, thus: -ā-li- (-ā-ri-), -ī-li-; -ē-li-, -ū-li-.

313. -ā-li-, N. -ā-li-s: rēg-āli-, N. rēg-āli-s, *kingly* (rēg-); decemvir-āli-s, *of a decemvir* (decemviro-); fāt-āli-s, *fated* (fāto-); t-āli-s, *such* (stem to-, that); qu-āli-s, *as* (quo-). -ā-ri-, N. -ā-ri-s, is used for -āli- if an l precedes (154): as, mol-āri-, N. mol-āri-s, *of a mill* (molā-); mīlit-āri-s, *of a soldier* (mīlit-). Neuters in -āli- and -āri- often become substantives (600): fōc-āle, *neckcloth* (fauci-); anim-al, *breathing thing* (animā-); calc-ar, *spur* (calci-).

314. -ī-li-, N. -ī-li-s: cīv-īli-, N. cīv-īli-s, *of a citizen* (cīvi-); puer-īli-s, *boyish* (puero-). The neuter, as substantive, sometimes denotes the place where (266): ov-īle, *sheepfold* (ovi-).

315. -ē-li-, N. -ē-li-s: fidē-li-, N. fidē-li-s, *faithful* (fidē-); crūd-ēli-s, *cruel* (crūdo-); patru-ēli-s, *cousin* (patruo-). -ū-li-, N. -ū-li-s: tribū-li-, N. tribū-li-s, *tribesman* (tribu-).



## *The Adjective: Appurtenance.* [316-327.]

316. The old participle suffix **-no-** (296) is sometimes added at once to noun stems, sometimes to other suffixes: thus, **-ā-no-**, **-ī-no-**; **-ti-no-**, **-tī-no-**; **-er-no-**, **-ur-no-**.

317. **-no-**, N. **-nu-s**, is added to stems formed with the comparative suffix **-ero-** or **-tero-** (347), denoting place: **super-no-**, N. **super-nu-s**, *above*; **inter-nu-s**, *internal* (*inter*); **exter-nu-s**, *outside*; so, also, **alter-nu-s**, *every other* (*altero-*); and to a very few substantives: as, **pater-nu-s**, *fatherly* (*patr-*); **frāter-nu-s**, *brotherly* (*frātr-*); **vēr-nu-s**, *of spring* (*vēr-*). Also to cardinals, making distributives: as, **bī-nī**, *two by two* (for \**duīnī*, *duo-*, 118).

318. **-ā-no-**, N. **-ā-nu-s** (202): **arc-āno-**, N. **arc-ānu-s**, *secret* (*arcā-*); **Rōm-ānu-s**, *of Rome* (*Rōmā-*); **mōnt-ānu-s**, *of a mountain* (*mōnti-*); **oppid-ānu-s**, *of a town* (*oppido-*). **-i-āno-**: **Cicerōn-iāno-**, N. **Cicerōn-iānu-s**, *Cicero's*. Rarely **-ā-neo-**: **mediterr-āneu-s**, *midland* (*medio-*, *terrā-*).

319. **-ī-no-**, N. **-ī-nu-s** (202): **mar-īno-**, N. **mar-īnu-s**, *of the sea*; **repent-īnu-s**, *sudden* (*repenti-*); oftenest added to names of living beings: as, **can-īnu-s**, *of a dog* (*can-*); **dīv-īnu-s**, *of a god* (*dīvo-*); **ali-ēnu-s**, *others'* (*alio-*, 105). Also to proper names: as, **Plaut-īno-**, N. **Plaut-īnu-s**, *of Plautus* (*Plautō-*); **Alp-īnu-s**, *Alpine* (*Alpi-*).

320. **-ti-no-**, N. **-ti-nu-s**, is used in some adjectives of time: **crās-tinu-s**, *to-morrow's* (*crās-*); **diū-tinu-s**, *lasting* (*diū*); **prīs-tinu-s**, *of aforetime* (*prī-*, *prae*).

321. **-tī-no-**, N. **-tī-nu-s**, is used in a few words of place and time: **intes-tīno-**, N. **intes-tīnu-s**, *inward* (*intus*); **vesper-tīnu-s**, *at eventide* (*vespero-*, 94).

322. **-s-** before **-no-** becomes **-r-** (116): **hodie-no-**, N. **hodie-nu-s**, *of to-day* (*hodiē*, \**hodiēs-*); **diur-no-**, N. **diur-nu-s**, *of the day* (*dīus-*); and **-urno-**, regarded as a compound suffix, is found in **diūt-urno-**, N. **diūt-urnu-s**, *lasting* (\**diūto-*); **noct-urnu-s**, *of the night* (*nocti-*). **-t-erno-**, N. **-t-ernu-s**, is rare: **hes-ternu-s**, *yester* (\**heso-*); **sempi-ternu-s**, *everlasting* (*semper*).

### (3.) **-bri-**, **-cri-**, **-tri-** (N. **-ber** or **-bri-s**, &c.).

323. **-bri-**, N. **-ber** or **-bri-s**: **salū-bri-**, N. **salū-ber**, *healthy* (*salūt-*); **mulie-bri-s**, *womanly* (*mulier-*).

324. **-cri-**, N. **-cer** or **-cri-s** (202): **volu-cri-**, N. **volu-cer**, *winged* (\**volō-*, *flying*); **medio-cri-s**, *middling* (*medio-*).

325. **-tri-**, N. **-ter** or **-tri-s**: **eques-tri-**, N. **eques-ter**, *of horsemen* (*equit-*, 152); **sēmēs-tri-s**, *of six months* (*sex*, *mēns-*). **-es-tri-** is used in a few words: **camp-ester**, *of fields* (*campo-*); **silv-estri-s**, *of woods* (*silvā-*).

### (4.) **-co-** (N. **-cu-s**); **-ti-**, **-si-** (N. **-s**, **-si-s**).

326. **-co-** is often suffixed to **-ti-**, sometimes to **-es-ti-**; thus: **-ti-co-**, **-es-ti-co-**.

327. **-co-**, N. **-cu-s**: **cīvi-co-**, N. **cīvi-cu-s**, *of a citizen* (*cīvi-*); **belli-cu-s**, *of war* (*bello-*); **vīli-cu-s**, *bailiff* (*villā-*). **-ā-co-**, **-ī-co-**, **-ū-co-** (202): **merā-cu-s**, **amī-cu-s**, **anti-cu-s**, **apri-cu-s**, **postī-cu-s**, **pudī-cu-s**, **cadū-cu-s**. **-ti-co-**, N. **-ti-cu-s**: **rūs-tico-**, N. **rūs-ticu-s**, *of the country* (*rūs-*). **-es-ti-co-**, N. **-es-ti-cu-s**: **dom-esticu-s**, *of a house* (*domo-*, *domu-*).

328. -ti- or -si- denotes belonging to a place; usually -ā-ti-, -ī-ti-, -es-ti-, -en-ti-; -ēn-si-, or -i-ēn-si-.

329. -ti-, N. -s: Tībur-ti-, N. Tībur-s, *Tiburine* (Tībur-). -ā-ti-: quōi-āti-, N. quōi-ā-s, *what countryman?* (quōio-); Anti-ā-s, *of Antium* (Antio-); optim-ātēs, *good men and true* (optimo-). -ī-ti-: Samn-īti-, N. Samn-ī-s, *Samnian* (Samnio-). -en-ti-: Vēi-enti-, N. Vēi-ēn-s, *of Vei* (Vēio-). -es-ti-, N. -es-ti-s: agr-esti-, N. agr-esti-s, *of the fields* (agro-); cael-esti-s, *heavenly* (caelo-).

330. -ēn-si-, N. -ēn-si-s (202), from appellatives of place or proper names of place: castr-ēnsi-, N. castr-ēnsi-s, *of a camp* (castro-); circ-ēnsi-s, *of the circus* (circo-); Hispāni-ēnsi-s (*temporarily*) *of Spain*. -i-ēnsi-: Karthāgin-iēnsi-s, *of Carthage* (Karthāgin-).

### III. SUPPLY.

331. The suffixes -to- or -ōso- are used to form adjectives denoting *Supplied* or *Furnished with*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
barbā-to-	barbātus, <i>bearded</i>	barbā-, N. barba, <i>beard</i>
ann-ōso-	annōsus, <i>full of years</i>	anno-, N. annus, <i>year</i>

(1.) -to- (N. -tu-s); -len-to- (N. -len-tu-s).

332. -to-, the perfect participle suffix, is sometimes added at once to a noun stem, sometimes to other suffixes, thus: -āto-, -īto-, -ēto-, -ūto-, -ento-, -lento-.

333. -to-, N. -tu-s: onus-to-, N. onus-tu-s, *loaded* (onus-); vetus-tu-s, *full of years* (\*vetus-, *year*); iūs-tu-s, *just* (iūs-); honēs-tu-s, *honourable* (\*hones-); fūnēs-tu-s, *deadly* (fūnēs-). -ā-to-: barbā-tu-s, *bearded* (barbā-); dent-ātu-s, *toothed* (denti-); -ī-to-: aurī-tu-s, *long-eared* (auri-); -ū-to-: cornū-tu-s, *horned* (cornu-). -en-to-, N. -en-tu-s: cru-ento-, N. cru-entu-s, *all gore* (\*cruenti-, \*cruēre). As substantive, arg-entu-m (*white metal*), *silver* (\*argenti-, \*argēre, *be white*); flu-enta, plural, *streams* (fluenti-).

334. The neuter of stems in -to-, as a substantive, denotes the place where something, generally a plant, is found (266): arbus-tu-m, *vineyard* (arbos-); commonly preceded by -ē-, forming -ē-to- (202), usually plural: dūm-ēta, *thorn-thickets* (dūmo-); murt-ēta, *myrtle-groves* (murto-).

335. -len-to-, N. -len-tu-s (202): vīno-lento-, N. vīno-lentu-s, *drunken* (vīno-); sanguin-olentu-s, *all blood* (sanguin-); lūcu-lentu-s, *bright* (lūci-, 108); pulver-ulentu-s, *dusty* (pulver-). A shorter form -lenti- is rare: vi-olenti-, N. vi-olēn-s, *violent* (vi-); op-ulēn-s, *rich* (op-).

(2.) -ōso- (N. -ōsu-s).

336. -ōso- (sometimes -ōnso-, -ōsso-), N. -ōsu-s, *full of*, is very common indeed. -ōso- is sometimes attached to other suffixes, thus: -c-ōso-, -ul-ōso-, -ūc-ul-ōso-.

## The Adjective: Comparison. [337-343.]

337. -ōso-, N. -ōsu-s: ann-ōso-, N. ann-ōsu-s, *full of years*; fōrm-ōnsu-s, fōrm-ōssu-s or fōrm-ōsu-s, *shapely* (fōrmā-); pericul-ōsu-s, *with danger fraught* (periculo-); mōr-ōsu-s, *priggish, cross* (mōr-); calamit-ōsu-s, *full of damage* (calamitāt-, 126); superstiti-ōsu-s, *superstitious* (superstitiōn-, 126); frūctu-ōsu-s, *fruitful* (frūctu-, 97); mōnt-uōsu-s, *full of mountains* (mōnti-, 202); cūri-ōsu-s, *full of care* (cūrā-); labōr-iōsu-s, *toilsome* (labōr-, 202).

338. -c-ōso-, N. -c-ōsu-s: belli-cōso-, N. belli-cōsu-s, *warlike* (bello-, bellico-). -ul-ōso-, N. -ul-ōsu-s: formīd-ulōso-, N. formīd-ulōsu-s, *terrible* (formīdin-, 126). -ūc-ul-ōso-, N. -ūc-ul-ōsu-s: met-ūculoso-, N. met-ūculōsu-s, *skittish* (metu-).

### IV. DIMINUTIVES.

339. Diminutives are formed from adjectives, as from substantives (267).

-lo-, N. -lu-s: aureo-lo-, N. aureo-lu-s, *all gold, of precious gold, of red red gold, good as gold* (aureo-); ebrio-lu-s, *tipsy* (ebrio-); parvo-lu-s, or parvu-lu-s, *smallish* (parvo-); frigidu-lu-s, *chilly* (frīgido-); vet-ulus, *little old* (vet-); tenellu-lu-s, *soft and sweet* (tenello-, tenero-); pulchellus, *sweet pretty* (pulchro-); bel-lu-s, *bonny* (bono-); novel-lu-s, *newborn* (\*novolo-, novo-). -culo-, N. -culu-s: pauper-culo-, N. pauper-culu-s, *poorish* (pauper-); levi-culu-s, *somewhat vain* (levi-).

340. A peculiar class of diminutives is formed by adding -culo- to the comparative stem -ius- (346): as, nitidius-culo-, N. nitidius-culu-s, *a trifle sleeker* (nitidius-); longius-culu-s, *a bit longer* (longius-).

341. Adverbs sometimes have a diminutive form: as, bellē, *charmingly*; paululum, *a little bit*; meliusculē, *a bit better* (340).

### V. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

342. Comparatives and superlatives are usually formed from the stem of the positive: as, dignior, *worthier*, dignissimus, *worthiest*, from digno-, stem of dignus (102). A few are formed directly from roots: thus, māior, *greater*, and māximus, *greatest*, are formed from the √mag-, and not from māgno-, stem of māgnus.

#### (I.) COMPARATIVE -ior, SUPERLATIVE -issimus.

343. The nominative of comparative adjectives ends usually in -ior, and that of superlatives in -issimus: thus,

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
-ior	-ior	-ius	-issimus	-issima	-issimum
POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.		
altus, <i>high</i> ,		altior, <i>higher</i> ,	altissimus, <i>highest</i> .		
trīstis, <i>sad</i> ,		trīstior, <i>sadder</i> ,	trīstissimus, <i>saddest</i> .		



## (2.) SUPERLATIVE -rimus.

344. Adjectives with the nominative in -er have the nominative of the superlative like the nominative of the positive with -rimus added (350): as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
pauper, <i>poor</i> ,	pauperior, <i>poorer</i> ,	pauperrimus, <i>poorest</i> .
ācer, <i>sharp</i> ,	ācrior, <i>sharper</i> ,	ācerrimus, <i>sharpest</i> .
mātūrrimus occurs once (Tac.), for mātūrrissimus, positive mātūrus, <i>ripe</i> .		

## (3.) SUPERLATIVE -limus.

345. humilis, difficilis, and facilis,  
similis, dissimilis, and gracilis,

have the nominative of the superlative in -limus, following l of the stem (350): as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
humilis, <i>lowly</i> ,	humilior, <i>lowlier</i> ,	humillimus, <i>lowliest</i> .

## THE COMPARATIVE SUFFIX.

346. The comparative suffix is -iōs-, which becomes in the singular, nominative masculine and feminine, -ior (116; 59), neuter nominative and accusative, -ius (59); in all other cases -iōr- (116).

347. Other comparative suffixes are -ro- or -ero-, and -tro- or -tero-, used in a few words, principally designating place: as, sup-erī, *the upper ones*, inferī, *the nether ones*; ex-terī, *outsiders*, posterī, *after-generations*; alter, *the other*; uter, *whether? which of the two?* (for \*quo-ter, quo-); dexter, *right*.

348. Some words designating place have a doubled comparative suffix, -er-iōr-, or -ter-iōr-: as, sup-er-ior, *upper*, inferior, *lower*. ci-ter-ior, *hither*, dēterior (*lower*), *worse*, exterior, *outer*, interior, *inner*, posterior, *hinder*, *after*, ūterior, *further*, dexterior, *more to the right*. -is-tro- is used in two words which have become substantives: min-is-ter (*inferior*), *servant*, and magister (*superior*), *master*.

## THE SUPERLATIVE SUFFIX.

349. The common superlative suffix is -issimo-, nominative -issimus, for an older -issumo-, nominative -issumus (78).

350. In some words, -timo- is added to the last consonant of the positive stem, and the t is assimilated to preceding r or l (344, 345): as, ācer-rimo-, N. ācerrimus; humil-limo-, N. humillimus.

351. The suffix -timo- is further used in a few root superlatives: ci-timus, dextimus, extimus, intimus, optimus, postumus, and ūltimus; and -simo- in māximus, pessimus, and proximus.

352. The suffix -mo- or -imo- is used in sum-mo-, N. summus, *highest* (sup); min-imo-, N. minimus, *least*; primus, *first*, septimus, *seventh*, decimus, *tenth*. -mo- or -imo- is attached to -iōs- in plūrimus for \*plo-iōs-imus (*fullest*), *most*; and to -rē- or -trē-, a modified -ro- or -tro-, in suprēmus, extrēmus, and postrēmus.

PECULIARITIES OF COMPARISON.

353. Some positives have a comparative or superlative, or both, from a different form of the stem: such are,

frūgī, <i>thrifty</i> ,	frūgālior,	frūgālissimus.
nēquam, <i>naughty</i> ,	nēquior,	nēquissimus.
iuvenis, <i>young</i> ,	iūnior,	(nātū minimus).
senex, <i>old</i> ,	senior,	(nātū māximus).
māgnus, <i>great</i> ,	māior,	māximus (351).
beneficus, <i>kindly</i> ,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus.
honōrificus, <i>complimentary</i> ,	honōrificentior,	honōrificentissimus.
māgnificus, <i>grand</i> ,	māgnificentior,	māgnificentissimus.

354. iuvenior, *younger*, is late (Sen., Plin., Tac.). benevolēns, *kindly*, benevolentior, benevolentissimus, and maledīcēns, *abusive*, maledīcentior (once each, Plaut.), maledīcentissimus, have usually as positive benevolus and maledicus respectively.

355. Some positives have a comparative or superlative, or both, from a wholly different stem: such are,

bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior,	optimus (351).
malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pēior,	pessimus (351).
multus, <i>much</i> ,	plūs (sing. Ne. only),	plūrimus (352).
parvus, <i>little</i> ,	minor,	minimus (352).

parvus has rarely parvissimus.

356. Four comparatives in -erior or -terior, denoting place (348), have two forms of the superlative; the nominative masculine singular of the positive is not in common use:

exterior,	extimus (351), or extrēmus (352),	<i>outermost</i> .
īnferior,	īnfimus, or īmus,	<i>lowest</i> .
posterior,	postumus (351), <i>lastborn</i> , or postrēmus (352),	<i>last</i> .
superior,	summus (352), or suprēmus (352),	<i>highest</i> .

357. Six, denoting place, have the positive only as an adverb or preposition:

cis, <i>this side</i> ,	citerior (348),	citimus (351), <i>hitherest</i> .
dē, <i>down</i> ,	dēterior (348),	dēterrimus, <i>lowest, worst</i> .
in, <i>in</i> ,	interior (348),	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
prae, <i>before</i> ,	prior,	prīmus (352), <i>first</i> .
prope, <i>near</i> ,	propior,	proximus (351), <i>nearest</i> .
ūls, <i>beyond</i> ,	ūltior (348),	ūltimus (351), <i>furthest</i> .

ōcior, *swifter*, ōcissimus, has no positive.

358. These have a superlative, but no comparative: bellus, *pretty*, falsus, *false*, inclutus, *famed*, invīctus, *unconquered*, invītus, *unwilling*, meritus, *deserving*, novus, *new*; vetus, *old*, veterrimus, *old*, sacer, *sacred*, sacer, *sacred*, vafer, *sly*, vafer, *sly*; malevolus, *malevolent*, malevolentissimus (twice, Cic.), *spiteful*; maleficus, *maleficent*, maleficentissimus (once, Suet.), *wicked*, mūnificus, *generous*, mūnificentissimus (inscr. ; Cic. once), *generous*. mīrificus, *strange*, mīrificentissimus (twice, Acc., Ter.), *strange*. Plautus has ipsissimus, *his very self*.

359. Most primitives in *-ilis* and *-bilis* (292, 294), have a comparative, but no superlative; but these have a superlative: *facilis* and *difficilis* (345), *easy* and *hard*, *ūtilis*, *useful*; also *fertilis*, *productive*, *amābilis*, *lovable*, *mōbilis*, *movable*, *nōbilis*, *well known*.

360. Many adjectives have no suffixes of comparison, and supply the place of these by *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*: as, *mīrus*, *strange*, *magis mīrus*, *māximē mīrus*. Many adjectives, from their meaning, do not admit of comparison.

#### COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS.

361. Adverbs derived from adjectives have as their comparative the accusative singular neuter of the comparative adjective; the superlative is formed like that of the adjective, but ends in *-ē*: as,

<i>altē</i> , on high,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altissimē</i> .
<i>ācriter</i> , sharply,	<i>ācrius</i> ,	<i>ācerrimē</i> .
<i>facile</i> , easily,	<i>facilius</i> ,	<i>facillimē</i> .

362. An older superlative ending, *-ēd* for *-ē*, occurs in an inscription of 186 B.C.: *FACILVMED*, i.e. *facillimē*. A few adverbs have superlatives in *-ō* or *-um*: as, *meritissimō*, *most deservedly*; *prīmō*, *at first*, *primum*, *first*; *postrēmō*, *at last*, *postrēmum*, *for the last time*.

363. If the comparison of the adjective has peculiarities, they are retained in the adverb likewise: as, *bene*, *well*, *melius*, *optimē*; *male*, *ill*, *pēius*, *pes-simē*; *multum*, *much*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*; *mātūrē*, *betimes*, *mātūrius*, *mātū-rissimē* (Cic., Plin.), or *mātūrrimē* (Cic., Caes., Sall., Tac.). *ōcius*, *swifter*, no positive, *ōcissimē*. *minus*, *less*, and *magis*, *more*, are for *\*minius* and *\*magius*. In poetry *magis* sometimes becomes *mage* (71).

364. A few adverbs not derived from adjectives are compared: as, *diū*, *long*, *diūtius*, *diūtissimē*; *saepe*, *often*, *saepius*, *saepissimē*; *nūper*, *lately*, no comparative, *nūperrimē*; *secus*, *otherwise*, *sētius*, *the less*; *temperi*, *betimes*, *temperius*, *earlier*, no superlative.

#### (B.) FORMATION OF DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

365. Denominative verb stems have present infinitives in *-āre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre* (*-ārī*, *-ērī*, or *-īrī*), and are formed from noun stems of all endings: as,

VERB.	FROM NOUN.	VERB.	FROM NOUN.
<i>fugā-re</i> , rout	<i>fugā-</i> , N. <i>fuga</i>	<i>flōrē-re</i> , blossom	<i>flōr-</i> , N. <i>flōs</i>
<i>locā-re</i> , place	<i>loco-</i> , N. <i>locus</i>	<i>sordē-re</i> , be dirty	<i>sordi-</i> , N. <i>sordēs</i>
<i>nōminā-re</i> , name	<i>nōmin-</i> , N. <i>nōmen</i>	<i>pūnī-re</i> , punish	<i>poenā-</i> , N. <i>poena</i>
<i>levā-re</i> , lighten	<i>levi-</i> , N. <i>levis</i>	<i>condī-re</i> , season	<i>condo-</i> , N. <i>condus</i>
<i>sinuā-re</i> , bend	<i>sinu-</i> , N. <i>sinus</i>	<i>custōdī-re</i> , guard	<i>custōd-</i> , N. <i>custōs</i>
<i>albē-re</i> , be white	<i>albo-</i> , N. <i>albus</i>	<i>vestī-re</i> , dress	<i>vesti-</i> , N. <i>vestis</i>
<i>miserē-rī</i> , pity	<i>misero-</i> , N. <i>miser</i>	<i>gestī-re</i> , flutter	<i>gestu-</i> , N. <i>gestus</i>



366. These present verb stems are formed by adding a suffix consisting of a variable vowel, -o- or -u-, -e- or -i- (for an older -io- or -iu-, -ie- or -ii-), to the noun stem. The noun stem ending is often slightly modified, and almost always contracted with the variable vowel.

367. In a half a dozen denominatives from stems in -u- the u of the noun stem remains without modification, and is not contracted with the variable vowel (97): these are, *acuere*, *sharpen* (*acu-*), *metuere*, *fear*, *statuere*, *set*, *tribuere*, *assign*; *arguere*, *make clear*, *bātuere*, *beat*.

368. Verbs in -āre are by far the most numerous class of denominatives; they are usually transitive; but deponents often express condition, sometimes occupation: as, *dominārī*, *lord it, play the lord*; *aquārī*, *get oneself water*. Most verbs in -īre also are transitive; those in -ēre usually denote a state: as, *calēre*, *be warm*; but some are causative: as, *monēre*, *remind*.

369. Many denominative verbs in -āre contain a noun suffix which is not actually found in the noun itself; such suffixes are: -co-, -cin-, -lo-, -er-, -ro-, -to-, &c.: as,

-co-: *albi-cāre*, *be white* (\**albi-co-*); *velli-cāre*, *pluck* (\**velli-co-*, *pluck*). -cin-: *latrō-cinārī*, *be a robber* (*latrōn-*); *sermō-cinārī*, *discourse* (*sermōn-*). -lo-: *grātu-lārī*, *give one joy* (\**grātu-lo-*); *vi-olāre*, *harm* (\**vi-olo-*); *hēiu-lārī*, *cry 'hēia'* (\**hēiu-lo-*). -er-: *mod-erārī*, *check* (\**mod-es-*, 236). -ro-: *tole-rāre*, *endure* (\**tole-ro-*); *flag-rāre*, *blaze* (\**flag-ro-*). -to-: *dēbili-tāre*, *lame* (\**dēbili-to-*); *dubi-tāre*, *doubt* (\**dubi-to-*).

370. Many denominatives in -āre are indirect compounds (377), often from compound noun stems which are not actually found. So, particularly, when the first part is a preposition, or the second is from the root *fac-*, *make*, *ag-*, *drive*, *do*, or *cap-*, *take*: as,

*opi-tul-ārī*, *bear help* (*opitulo-*); *suf-fōc-āre*, *suffocate* (\**suf-fōc-o-*, *fauci-*); *aedi-fic-āre* (*housebuild*), *build* (\**aedific-* or \**aedifico-*, *house-builder*); *signi-fic-āre*, *give token* (\**significo-*); *fūm-ig-āre*, *make smoke* (\**fūmigo-*, *smoker*, *fūmo-*, √*ag-*); *nāv-ig-āre*, *sail*, and *rēm-ig-āre*, *row* (*nāvi-*, *ship*, and *rēmo-*, *oar*); *mīt-ig-āre*, *make mild* (*mīti-*); *iūr-ig-āre*, commonly *iūr-g-āre*, *quarrel* (*iūr-*); *pūr-ig-āre*, commonly *pūr-g-āre*, *clean* (*pūro-*); *gnār-ig-āre*, *nārrāre*, *tell* (*gnāro-*); *anti-cip-āre*, *take beforehand* (\**anticipo-*, *ante*, √*cap-*); *oc-cup-āre*, *seize* (\**occupo-*); *recup-er-āre*, *get back* (\**recupero-*).

371. Many verbs in -tāre (-sāre), or -tārī (-sārī), express frequent, intense, or sometimes attempted action. These are called *Frequentatives* or *Intensives*; they are formed from perfect participle stems; but stems in -ā-to- become -i-to-: as,

*cant-āre*, *sing* (*canto-*); *cess-āre*, *loiter* (*cesso-*); *amplex-ārī*, *embrace* (*amplexo-*); *habit-āre*, *live* (*habito-*); *pollicit-ārī*, *make overtures* (*pollicito-*); *dormit-āre*, *be sleepy* (*dormito-*); *negit-āre*, *keep denying* (*negāto-*).

372. Some frequentatives in -tāre are formed from the present stem of a verb in -ere; the formative vowel before -tāre becomes i: as,

*agi-tāre*, *shake* (*age-re*); *flui-tāre*, *float* (*flue-re*); *nōsci-tāre*, *recognize* (*nōsce-re*); *quaeri-tāre*, *keep seeking* (*quaere-re*); *scīsci-tārī*, *enquire* (*scīsce-re*); *vēndi-tāre*, *try to sell* (*vēnde-re*).

373. A few frequentatives add **-tā-** to the perfect participle stem: as, **ācti-tāre**, *act often* (**ācto-**); **facti-tāre**, *do repeatedly* (**facto-**); **lēcti-tāre**, *read again and again* (**lēcto-**); **ūcti-tāre**, *anoint often* (**ūcto-**). From a frequentative another frequentative is sometimes derived: as, **dict-āre**, *dictate*, **dicti-tāre**, *keep asserting* (**dicto-**).

374. Some verbs are found only as frequentatives: as, **gust-āre**, *taste* (**\*gusto-**, **√gus-**, *taste*); **put-āre**, *think* (**puto-**, **√pu-**, *clean*); **aegrōt-āre**, *be ill* (**aegrōto-**).

375. A few verbs in **-uriō**, **-urire**, express desire; such are called *Desideratives*: as, **ēss-urire** or **ēs-urire**, *want to eat* (**edere**, **ēsse**). A few in **-ssō**, **-ssere**, express earnest action; such are called *Meditatives*: as, **lacē-ssō**, **lacē-ssere**, *provoke*.

## COMPOSITION.

376. In compounds, the fundamental word is usually the second, which has its meaning qualified by the first.

377. A **DIRECT COMPOUND** is one formed directly from two parts: as, **cōn-iug-**, N. **cōniūnx**, *yoke-fellow* (**com-**, *together*, **√iu g-**, *yoke*); **cōn-iungere**, *join together* (**com-**, **iungere**); an **INDIRECT COMPOUND** is one formed by the addition of a suffix to a direct compound: as, **iūdic-io-**, N. **iūdicium**, *trial* (**iūdic-**): **iūdicā-re**, *judge* (**iūdic-**).

378. A **REAL COMPOUND** is a word whose stem is formed from two stems, or an inseparable prefix and a stem, fused into one stem; an **APPARENT COMPOUND** is formed by the juxtaposition of an inflected word with another inflected word, a preposition, or an adverb.

### I. COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

#### (A.) REAL COMPOUNDS.

##### FORM OF COMPOUNDS.

379. If the first part is a noun, its stem is taken: as, **Ahēno-barbus**, *Redbeard*, *Barbarossa*; usually with weakening of a stem vowel: as, **Grāiu-gena**, *Greek-born* (**Grāio-**, 112); **aēni-pēs**, *bronze-foot* (77); or sometimes with disappearance of a syllable (126): as, **\*venēni-ficus**, **venē-ficus**, *poisoner* (**venēno-**); or of a vowel (95): as, **man-ceps**, *contractor* (**manu-**); particularly before a vowel (102): as, **māgn-animus**, *great-souled* (**māgno-**). Consonant stems are often extended by **i** before a consonant: as, **mōri-gerus**, *complaisant* (**mōr-**); or less frequently lose a consonant (133): as, **\*iūs-dex**, **iū-dex**, *juror*.

380. Stems in **-s-**, including those in **-er-**, **-or-** and **-ōr-** (236), are sometimes compounded as above (379): as, **nemori-vagus**, *woodranger*; **honōri-ficus**, *complimentary*; but usually they drop the suffix and take **i**: as, **opi-fex**, *workman* (**oper-**); **foedi-fragus**, *truce-breaker* (**foeder-**); **volni-ficus**, *wounding* (**volner-**); **mūni-ficus**, *generous* (**mūner-**); **terri-ficus**, *awe-inspiring* (**terrōr-**); **horri-fer**, *dreadful*, **horri-sonus**, *awful-sounding* (**horrōr-**).



381. The second part, which often has weakening of the vowel (69), is sometimes a bare root used as a stem (199), oftener a root with a formative suffix; or a noun stem, sometimes with its stem ending modified: as, iū-dic-, N. iūdex, *juror* (√dic-, *declare*); causi-dic-o-, N. causicus, *pleader* (209); in-gen-io-, N. ingenium, *disposition* (√gen-, *beget*, 219); con-tāg-iōn-, N. contāgiō, *touching together* (√tāg-, *touch*, 227); im-berb-i-, N. imberbis, *beardless* (barbā-).

#### MEANING OF COMPOUNDS.

382. DETERMINATIVES are compounds in which the second part keeps its original meaning, though determined or modified by the first part. The meaning of a determinative may often be best expressed by two words.

383. (1.) The first part of a determinative may be an adjective, an adverb, a preposition, or an inseparable prefix; the second part is a noun: as,

lāti-fundium, i.e. lātī fundī, *broad acres*; prīvi-lēgium, i.e. prīva lēx, *special act*; alti-sonāns, i.e. altē sonāns, *high-sounding*; con-discipulus, i.e. cum alterō discipulus, *fellow-pupil*; per-māgnus, i.e. valdē māgnus, *very great*; in-dīgnus, i.e. nōn dīgnus, *unworthy*.

384. (2.) The first part of a determinative may represent the oblique case of a noun, generally a substantive; the second part is a noun or verb stem. These compounds are called *Objectives*: as,

Accusative of direct object (1132), armi-ger, i.e. quī arma gerit, *armour-bearer*; dative of indirect object (1208), man-tēle, i.e. manibus tēla, *handkerchief, napkin*; genitive (1227), sōl-stitium, i.e. sōlis statīō, *solstice*; ablative instrumental (1300), tubi-cen, i.e. quī tubā canit, *trumpeter*; locative (1331), Trōiu-gena, i.e. Trōiae nātus, *Troy-born*; ablative locative (1350), nocti-vagus, *night-wandering*; mōnti-vagus, *mountain-ranging*.

385. POSSESSIVES are adjective compounds in which the meaning of the second part is changed. The second part of a possessive is always formed from a substantive, qualified by the noun, adverb, or inseparable prefix of the first part, and the whole expresses an attribute which something *has*: as,

longi-manus, *longarms, long-armed*; miseri-cors, *tender-hearted*; bi-linguis, *two-tongued*; māgn-animus, *greatheart, great-hearted*; im-berbis, *beardless*.

#### (B.) APPARENT COMPOUNDS.

386. Apparent Compounds are formed:

387. (1.) By two nouns combined, one with an unchanging case ending, the other with full inflections: as, aquae-ductus, *aqueduct*; senātūs-cōnsultum, *decree of the senate*; pater-familiās, *father of a family*; vērī-similis, *like the truth*; in these words, aquae, senātūs, familiās, and vērī are genitives, and remain genitives, while the other part of the compound is declinable.



388. (2.) By a substantive with an adjective habitually agreeing with it, both parts being declined : as, *rēs pūblica*, *the common-weal* ; *rēs gestae*, *exploits* ; *iūs iūrandum*, *oath* ; *pecūniae repetundae*, *money claim*.

389. (3.) By nouns, chiefly substantives, in the same case placed loosely side by side and making one idea. The two words may be used : (a.) Copulatively : as, *ūsus-fructus*, *use and enjoyment* ; *pactum-conventum*, *bargain and covenant* ; *duo-decim*, *two and ten, twelve* ; or (b.) Appositively : one word explaining the other (1045) : as, *Iuppiter*, *Jove the Father*, for *Iovis pater* ; *Mārspiter*, *Mars the Father*, for *Mārs pater*.

390. (4.) From an original combination of an oblique case with a preposition : as, *prōcōsul*, *proconsul*, from *prō cōsule*, *for a consul* ; *ēgregius*, *select*, from *ē grege*, *out of the herd* ; *dēlirus*, *astray, mad*, from *dē līrā*, *out of the furrow*.

## II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

### (A.) REAL COMPOUNDS.

391. Real Compounds are direct compounds of a verb with a preposition ; the root vowel or diphthong of the verb is often weakened (69) : as,

*per-agere*, *put through, accomplish* ; *ab-igere*, *drive away* ; *ex-quirere*, *seek out*. The prefix, which was originally a separate adverb modifying the verb, is in poetry sometimes separated from the verb by another word ; the disyllabic prepositions in particular often remain as juxtaposed adverbs (396).

392. Some prepositions are inseparable, that is, used only in composition : *ambi-*, *round*, *an-*, *up*, *dis-*, *in two, apart*, *por-*, *towards*, *red-*, *re-*, *back*, *sēd-*, *sē-*, *by oneself, away* : as, *amb-ire*, *go round to* ; *an-hēlāre*, *breathe up* ; *dis-pellere*, *drive apart* ; *por-rigere*, *stretch forth* ; *red-dere*, *give back* ; *sē-iungere*, *separate*.

### (B.) APPARENT COMPOUNDS.

393. Apparent Compounds are formed by the juxtaposition of :

394. (1.) A verb with a verb : *faciō* and *fīō* are added to present stems, mostly of intransitive verbs in *-ēre* ; the *-e-* of the first verb is sometimes long, and sometimes short (62) : as, *calē-facere*, *make warm* (*calēre*) ; *excandē-facere*, *make blaze* (*candēre*) ; *madē-facere*, *make wet* (*madēre*). In these apparent compounds, the accent of *faciō* remains the same as in the simple verb : as, *calēfācis*.

395. (2.) A substantive with a verb : as, *anim-advertere*, *pay heed to*, *animum advertere* ; *vēnum-dare*, or *vēndere*, *sell*, *vēnum dare* ; *vēn-ire*, *be sold*, *vēnum ire* ; *lucrī-facere*, *make gain*, *lucrī facere* ; *rē ferre* or *rē-ferre*, *concern*.

396. (3.) An adverb with a verb : as, *circum-dare*, *put round* ; *satis-facere*, *satis-dare*, *give satisfaction* ; *intro-ire*, *go inside* ; *mālle*, *prefer*, for *magis velle* ; *nōlle*, *be unwilling*, for *nōn velle* ; *ne-scīre*, *hau-scīre*, *not know*.

### C. INFLECTION.

397. INFLECTION is the change which nouns, pronouns, and verbs undergo, to indicate their relation in a sentence.

The inflection of a noun or pronoun is often called *Declension*, and that of a verb, *Conjugation*.

#### (A.) INFLECTION OF THE NOUN.

398. The noun or pronoun is inflected by attaching case endings to the stem.

The endings, which are called case endings for brevity, indicate number as well as case, and serve also to distinguish gender words from neuters in the nominative and accusative singular of some stems, and of all plurals. These endings are nearly the same for stems of all kinds.

#### THE STEM.

399. The stem contains the meaning of the noun. Noun stems are arranged in the following order: (1.) stems in *-ā-*, in *-o-*, in a consonant, or in *-i-*; these are substantive, including proper names, or adjective; (2.) stems in *-u-* or *-ē-*; these are substantive only, and include no proper names.

400. In some instances, a final stem vowel is retained before a case ending which begins with a vowel: as, *urbi-um*, *ācri-a*, *cornu-a*, *portu-ī*, *portu-um* (97); in others the stem vowel blends inseparably with the vowel of the case ending: as, *mēnsīs* (86), *dominīs* (87).

401. Some nouns have more than one form of the stem: as,

*sēdēs* (476); *femur*, *iecur* (489); *vās*, *mēnsīs* (492); *vīrus*, *volgus* (493); *iter*, *nix*, *senex*, &c. (500); *vīs* (518); *caedēs* (523); *famēs*, *plēbēs* (524); *domus* (594); *angiportus*, &c. (595). Many nouns have a consonant stem in the singular, and an *-i-* stem in the plural: see 516; most substantives in *-iē-* or *-tiē-* have a collateral form in *-iā-* or *-tiā-* (604). Some adjectives have two different stems: as, *hilarus*, *hilara*, *hilarum*, and *hilaris*, *hilare*; *exanimus* and *exanimis*.

#### GENDER.

402. There are two genders, *Masculine* and *Feminine*. Masculine and feminine nouns are called *Gender nouns*. Nouns without gender are called *Neuter*.

403. Gender is, properly speaking, the distinction of sex. In Latin, a great many things without life are conceived of as alive, and are masculine or feminine.

404. Some classes of substantives may be brought under general heads of signification, as below, like the names of rivers and winds (405), which are conceived of as male divinities, or of plants (407), which are conceived of as females. When the gender cannot be determined thus, it must be learned from the special rules for the several stems and their nominatives.

## GENDER OF SOME CLASSES OF SUBSTANTIVES.

### MASCULINES.

405. Names of male beings, rivers, winds, and mountains, are masculine : as,

Caesar, Gāius, Sūlla, men's names ; pater, *father* ; erus, *master* ; scriba, *scrivener* ; Tiberis, *the Tiber* ; Aquilō, *a Norther* ; Lūcrētis, *Mt. Lucretis*.

406. The river names : Allia, Dūria, Sagra, Lēthē, and Styx are feminine. Also the mountain names Alpēs, plural, *the Alps*, and some Greek names of mountains in -a or -ē : as, Aetna, *Mt. Etna* ; Rhodopē, *a Thracian range*. A few are neuter, as Sōracte.

### FEMININES.

407. Names of female beings, plants, flowers, shrubs, and trees, are feminine : as,

Gāia, Glycerium, women's names ; mālus, *apple-tree* ; quercus, *oak* ; ilex, *holm-oak* ; abiēs, *fir*.

408. Masculine are : bōlētus, *mushroom*, carduus, *thistle*, dūmī, plural, *brambles*, intibus, *endive*, iuncus, *rush*, oleaster, *bastard olive*, rubus, *bramble*, rumex, *sorrel*, scirpus, *bulrush*, and rarely fīcus, *fig*. Also some of Greek origin : as, acanthus, amāracus, asparagus, and crocus. Neuter are : apium, *parsley*, balsamum, *balsam-tree*, rōbur, *heart of oak*, and some names with stems in -er- (573).

### MOBILE, COMMON, AND EPICENE NOUNS.

409. MOBILE NOUNS have different forms to distinguish sex : as, Iūlius, *a man*, Iūlia, *a woman*, Iūlia ; cervus, *stag*, cerva, *hind* ; socer, *father-in-law*, socrus, *mother-in-law* ; victor, *conqueror*, victrix, *conqueress*. Adjectives 'of three endings' (611), belong to this class.

410. Some nouns have one ending, but are applicable to either sex. Such are said to be of *Common Gender* : as, adulēscēns, *young man or young woman* ; dux, *leader* ; infāns, *baby, child* ; and many other consonant stems or stems in -i-, denoting persons. Adjectives 'of two endings' or 'of one ending' (611), belong to this class.

411. EPICENES have one ending and one grammatical gender, though applicable to animals of either sex. Thus, aquila, *eagle*, is feminine, though it may denote a *he-eagle* as well as a *she-eagle* : anatēs, *ducks*, feminine, includes *drakes*.

### NEUTERS.

412. Infinitives, words and expressions quoted or explained, and letters of the alphabet, are neuter : as,



*vivere ipsum, mere living; istūc 'taceō,' your 'I won't mention;'* *longum vale, a long goodbye; o Graecum, Greek O.* But the letters have sometimes a feminine adjective, agreeing with *littera* understood.

#### VARIABLE GENDER.

413. Some substantives have different genders in the two numbers; the different gender is sometimes indicated by a difference of stem: as, *epulum*, neuter, *epulae*, feminine, *feast*. See *balneum*, *frēnum*, *jocus*, *locus*, *margarita*, *ostrea*, *rāstrum*, in the dictionary.

#### NUMBER.

414. There are two numbers, the *Singular* used of one, the *Plural* of more than one.

415. *ambō*, *both*, and *duo*, *two*, nominative and accusative masculine and neuter, are the only remnants of an old *Dual* number, denoting two.

416. Some substantives, from their meaning, have no plural.

Such are: proper names: as, *Cicerō*, *Cicero*; *Rōma*, *Rome*; material and abstract substantives: as, *oleum*, *oil*, *vīnum*, *wine*, *iūstitia*, *justice*; and gerunds: as, *regendī*, *of guiding*. For the occasional use of the plural, 1105-1110.

417. Some substantives, from their meaning, have no singular.

Such are: names of persons of a class: as, *māiōrēs*, *ancestors*; *superī*, *the beings above*; *mānēs*, *ghosts*; of feasts, sacrifices, days: as, *Sāturnālia*, *festival of Saturn*; *kalendae*, *first of the month*; of things made of parts or consisting of a series of acts: as, *arma*, *arms*; *artūs*, *joints*; *quadrigae*, *four-in-hand*; *exsequiae*, *funeral rites*; of some places: as, *Faleriī*; *Vēī*; *Pompēī*; *Athēnae*, *Athens*; *Alpēs*, *the Alps*.

418. Some substantives have different meanings in the two numbers: as,

*aedis*, *temple*, *aedēs*, *house*; *auxilium*, *aid*, *auxilia*, *auxiliaries*; *carcer*, *jail*, *carcerēs*, *race-barriers*; *Castrum*, *Castle*, *castra*, *camp*; *comitium*, *meeting-place*, *comitia*, *election*; *cōpia*, *abundance*, *cōpiae*, *troops*; *facultās*, *ability*, *facultātēs*, *wealth*; *finis*, *end*, *finēs*, *boundaries*; *grātia*, *favour*, *grātie*, *thanks*; *impedimentum*, *hindrance*, *impedimenta*, *baggage*; *littera* *letter (of the alphabet)*, *litterae*, *epistle*; *rōstrum*, *beak*, *rōstra*, *speaker's stand*. See also *aqua*, *bonum*, *fōrtūna*, *lūdus*, *opera*, *pars*, in the dictionary.

#### CASE.

419. Nouns have five cases, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ablative*.

The nominative represents a noun as subject, the accusative as object; the genitive denotes the relation of *of*, the dative of *to* or *for*, and the ablative of *from*, *with*, *in*, or *by*. But the meanings of the cases are best learnt from reading. All cases but the nominative and vocative are called *Oblique Cases*.

420. Town names and a few appellatives have also a case denoting the place where, called the *Locative*. Masculine stems in *-o-* and some Greek stems with other endings have still another form used in addressing a person or thing, called the *Vocative*.

421. The stem of a noun is best seen in the genitive; in the genitive plural it is preserved without change, except that *o* of *-o-* stems is lengthened (56). In dictionaries the stem ending is indicated by the genitive singular, thus: *-ae*, *-ī*, *-is*, *-ūs* (*-ēī*), indicate respectively stems in *-ā-*, *-o-*, a consonant or *-i-*, *-u-*, and *-ē-*, as follows:

GENITIVE SINGULAR.	GENITIVE PLURAL.	STEMS IN.
<i>-ae</i> , <i>mēnsae</i> , <i>table</i>	<i>-ārum</i> , <i>mēnsā-rum</i>	<i>-ā-</i> , <i>mēnsā-</i> , N. <i>mēnsa</i>
<i>-ī</i> , <i>dominī</i> , <i>master</i>	<i>-ōrum</i> , <i>dominō-rum</i>	<i>-o-</i> , <i>domino-</i> , N. <i>dominus</i>
<i>-is</i> , <i>rēgis</i> , <i>king</i>	<i>-cons. um</i> , <i>rēg-um</i>	<i>-consonant</i> , <i>rēg-</i> , N. <i>rēx</i>
<i>-is</i> , <i>cīvis</i> , <i>citizen</i>	<i>-ium</i> , <i>cīvi-um</i>	<i>-i-</i> , <i>cīvi-</i> , N. <i>cīvis</i>
<i>-ūs</i> , <i>portūs</i> , <i>port</i>	<i>-uum</i> , <i>portu-um</i>	<i>-u-</i> , <i>portu-</i> , N. <i>portus</i>
( <i>-ēī</i> , <i>rēī</i> ), <i>thing</i>	( <i>-ērum</i> , <i>rē-rum</i> )	<i>-ē</i> , <i>rē-</i> , N. <i>rēs</i>

422. Gender nominatives usually add *-s* to the stem: as, *servo-s* or *servu-s*, *slave*, *rēx* (149), *cīvi-s*, *portu-s*, *rē-s*. But stems in *-ā-* or in a continuous consonant (*-l-*, *-n-*, *-r-*, or *-s-*) take no *-s*: as, *mēnsa*, *cōnsul*, *consul*, *flāmen*, *special priest*, *agger*, *mound*, *flōs*, *flower*.

423. Neuters have the nominative and accusative alike; in the singular the stem is used: as *nōmen*, *name*; or a shortened stem: as, *exemplar*, *pattern*; but stems in *-o-* take *-m*: as, *aevo-m* or *aevu-m*, *age*. In the plural *-a* is always used: as, *rēgna*, *kingdoms*, *nōmina*, *cornua*, *horns*. For *-s* in adjectives 'of one ending,' see 612.

424. Gender accusatives singular add *-m* to the stem: as, *mēnsa-m*, *servo-m* or *servu-m*, *nāvi-m*, *ship*, *portu-m*, *die-m*. The consonant stems have the ending *-em*: as, *rēg-em*; most substantive stems in *-i-* and all adjectives also drop *-i-* and take *-em*: as, *nāv-em*, *trist-em*, *sad*. In the plural, gender stems add *-s* to the accusative singular (131): as, *mēnsā-s*, *servō-s*, *rēgē-s*, *nāvī-s* or *nāvē-s*, *portū-s*, *rē-s*.

425. The ablative singular usually ends in the long vowel of the stem: as, *mēnsā*, *dominō*, *nāvī*, *portū*, *rē*. The ablative of consonant stems usually has *-e* for an older *-ē*: as, *patre*, *father*; and that of substantive *-i-* stems has *-e* more commonly than *-ī*: as, *nāve*.

426. The ablative singular of *-ā-* and *-o-* stems ended anciently in *-ād* and *-ōd* respectively: as, *PRAIDAD*, *PREIVATOD*; that of consonant stems in *-īd*: as, *AIRID*, *COVENTIONID*. But *-d* is almost entirely confined to inscriptions and disappeared early, first in consonant and *-o-* stems, and afterwards in *-ā-* stems (143).

427. The genitive plural adds *-rum* to *-ā-*, *-o-*, and *-ē-* stems: as, *mēnsā-rum*, *dominō-rum*, *rē-rum*; and *-um* to consonant stems, *-i-* stems, and *-u-* stems: as, *rēg-um*, *cīvi-um*, *portu-um*.

428. The dative and ablative plural are always alike: stems in *-ā-* and *-o-* take *-is*, which blends with the stem vowel (400): as, *mēnsīs*, *dominīs*; other stems have *-bus*, before which consonant stems are extended by *i*: as, *rēgi-bus*, *nāvi-bus*, *portu-bus* or *porti-bus*, *rē-bus*.

429. Some pronouns and a few adjectives have some peculiar case endings; see 618-694.

430. Many nouns are defective in case.

Thus, many monosyllables have no genitive plural: as, *aes*, *copper*, *cor*, *heart*, *cōs*, *whetstone*, *dōs*, *dowry*, *ōs*, *face*, *pāx*, *peace*, *pix*, *pitch*, *rōs*, *dew*, *sāl*, *salt*, *lūx*, *light*; many words have no genitive, dative, or ablative plural: as, *hiemps*, *winter*; especially neuters: as, *fār*, *spelt*, *fel*, *gall*, *mel*, *honey*, *pūs*, *matter*, *rūs*, *country*, *tūs*, *frankincense*. Many words in -tu- (-su-) have only the ablative (235). For -ē- stems, see 600. Other words more or less defective are *exlēx*, *exspēs*, *fās* and *nefās*, *īnfitiās*, *inquiēs*, *īnstar*, *luēs*, *nēmō*, *ōpis* and *vicis* genitives, *pondō* and *sponte* ablatives, *secus*, *vīs*. Many adjectives 'of one ending' want the nominative and accusative neuter plural and genitive plural.

431. Some adjectives are altogether indeclinable: as, *frūgī*, *thrifty*, an old dative; *nēquam*, *naughty*, an old accusative; *quot*, *how many*; *tot*, *so many*; and most numerals (637). These adjectives are attached to any case of a substantive without varying their own forms.

## STEMS IN -ā-.

### The First Declension.

Genitive singular -ae, genitive plural -ā-rum.

432. Stems in -ā- include substantives and adjectives; both substantives and adjectives are feminine.

433. Names of males are masculine (405): as, *scriba*, *writer*; also *Hadria*, *the Adriatic*, and rarely *dāmma*, *deer*, and *talpa*, *mole*.

434. The nominative of stems in -ā- ends in the shortened stem vowel -a.

435. Stems in -ā- are declined as follows:

Example Stem	mēnsa, <i>table</i> , mēnsā-, F.		Stem and case endings
Singular			
Nom.	mēnsa	<i>table, a (or the) table</i>	-a
Gen.	mēnsae	<i>a table's, of a table</i>	-ae
Dat.	mēnsae	<i>to or for a table</i>	-ae
Acc.	mēnsam	<i>a table</i>	-am
Abl.	mēnsā	<i>from, with, or by a table</i>	-ā
Plural			
Nom.	mēnsae	<i>tables (or the) tables</i>	-ae
Gen.	mēnsārum	<i>tables', of tables</i>	-ārum
Dat.	mēnsīs	<i>to or for tables</i>	-īs
Acc.	mēnsās	<i>tables</i>	-ās
Abl.	mēnsīs	<i>from, with, or by tables</i>	-īs



## SINGULAR CASES.

436. -ā- of the stem was shortened in the nominative and accusative singular at an early period (59). A few examples of the nominative in -ā are found in the oldest writers (65): as, *familiā*, *family*; *liberā*, *free*, adjective; *epistulā*, *letter* (Plaut.). A couple of old masculine nominatives in -ās are quoted (422): *paricidās*, *murderer*, and *hosticapās*, *taker of enemies*. In the accusative singular -ām occurs once: *inimicitiam* (Enn.).

437. The genitive sometimes ends (1.) in -āi in poetry: as, *aulāi*, *of the hall*; *pictāi*, *embroidered*; (2.) in -ās: as, *molās*, *of a mill*. This genitive is rare, but was always kept up in the word *familiās* with *pater* or *māter*, sometimes with *filius* or *fīlia*: *pater familiās*, *the goodman*, *māter familiās*, *the housewife*. But *pater familiae*, or in the plural *patrēs familiārum*, is equally common.

438. Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in -ae: as, *Rōmae*, *at Rome, in Rome*; *mīlitiae*, *in war, in the field, in the army*.

## PLURAL CASES.

439. Compounds ending with -cola, *inhabiting*, and -gena, *born*, and patronymics, sometimes have the genitive plural in -ūm in poetry: as, *caelicolūm*, *of occupants of heaven*; *Grāiugenūm*, *of Greek-born men*; *Aeneadūm*, *of Aeneas's sons*; also names of peoples: as, *Lapithūm*, *of the Lapithae*. With these last -ūm occurs even in prose: as, *Crotōniātūm*, *of the Crotona people*.

440. In the dative and ablative plural, -eis sometimes occurs (443): as, *tueis ingrātieis*, *against your will* (Plaut.). Nouns in -ia have rarely a single ī: as, *pecūnis*, *by moneys* (Cic.); *taenīs*, *with fillets* (Verg.); *nōnis Iūnis*, *on the fifth of June* (Cic.).

441. In the dative and ablative plural, words in -āia, or plural -āiae, have -āis, and those in -ēia have -ēis (112): as, *KAL. MAIS*, *on the calends of May* (inscr.); *Bāis*, *at Bajae* (Hor.); *plēbēis*, *plebeian*.

442. The dative and ablative plural sometimes end in -ābus, particularly in *deābus*, *goddesses*, and *filiābus*, *daughters*, to distinguish them from *deīs*, *gods*, and *filiīs*, *sons*. *ambae*, *both*, and *duae*, *two*, regularly have *ambābus* and *duābus*.

443. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

G. -ai, one syllable (84): *PVLCHRAI*; -āis, twice only: *PROSEPNAIS*, for *Prōserpinae*; -aes, after 80 B.C., chiefly in proper names, mostly Greek: *HERAES*; rarely in appellatives: *DOMINAES*; -ēs: *MINERVES*; -ā, once: *COIRA*, i.e. *Cūrae*. D. -ai, in all periods (84): *FILIAI*; -ā: *FORTVNA*; -ē (85): *FORTVNE*. Ac. -a (140): *TAVRASIA*; *MAGNA SAPIENTIA*. Ab. -ād (426): *PRAIDAD*. Loc. -ai: *ROMAI*. Plural: N. -ai (84): *TABELAI DATAI*; -ā, rare: *MATRONA*; -ē, rare and provincial (85): *MVSTE*, i.e. *mystae*. D. and Ab. -eis, very often (86): *SCRIBEIS*; D. -ās, once: *DEVAS CORNISCAS*, i.e. *dīvīs Corniscīs*. Ab. -ēs once (85): *NVGES*, i.e. *nūgīs*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

444. Greek appellatives always take a Latin form in the dative singular and in the plural, and usually throughout: thus, *poēta*, M., *poet*, and *aula*, F., *court*, are declined like *mēnsa*. Masculines have sometimes a nominative -ēs and accusative -ēn: as, *anagnōstēs*, *reader*, *anagnōstēn*; rarely an ablative -ē: as, *sophistē*, *sophist*. Greek feminines in -ē sometimes have Greek forms in late writers: as, N. *grammaticē*, *philology*, G. *grammaticēs*, Ac. *grammaticēn*, Ab. *grammaticē* (Quintil.).

445. Greek proper names sometimes have the following forms. Nominative masculine -ās, -ēs: as, **Prūsiās, Atrīdēs**; feminine -ā: as, **Gelā, Phaedrā**; -ē: as, **Circē**. Genitive feminine -ēs: as, **Circēs**. Accusative masculine -ān, -dēn: as, **Aenēān, Pēlidēn**; feminine -ēn: as, **Circēn**. Ablative feminine -ē: as, **Tīsiphonē**. Vocative -ā or -a: as, **Atrīdā, Atrīda, Thyesta**; -tē: as, **Boōtē**; -dē: as, **Aeacidē**.

## STEMS IN -o-.

### The Second Declension.

Genitive singular -ī, genitive plural -ō-rum.

446. Stems in -o- include substantives and adjectives, masculine or neuter.

447. Most names of plants in -us are feminine (407); also the following: **alvos** or **alvus**, *belly*, **colus**, *distaff*, **domus**, *house*, **humus**, *ground*, **vannus**, *fan*.

448. The nominative of masculines ends, including the stem vowel, in -o-s, or usually -u-s; some end in -r; neuters end in -o-m, or usually -u-m.

449. (1.) Stems in -o- with the nominative in -us or -um are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	dominus, <i>master</i> , domino-, M.	rēgnum, <i>kingdom</i> , rēgno-, Ne.	Stem and case endings	
Singular			M.	Ne.
Nom.	dominus, <i>a (or the) master</i>	rēgnum	-us	-um
Gen.	dominī, <i>a master's</i>	rēgnī	-ī	-ī
Dat.	dominō, <i>to or for a master</i>	rēgnō	-ō	-ō
Acc.	dominum, <i>a master [master</i>	rēgnum	-um	-um
Abl.	dominō, <i>from, with, or by a</i>	rēgnō	-ō	-ō
Voc.	domine, <i>master</i>		-e	
Plural				
Nom.	dominī, <i>(the) masters</i>	rēgna	-ī	-a
Gen.	dominōrum, <i>of masters</i>	rēgnōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	dominīs, <i>to or for masters</i>	rēgnīs	-īs	-īs
Acc.	dominōs, <i>masters [masters</i>	rēgna	-ōs	-a
Abl.	dominīs, <i>from, with, or by</i>	rēgnīs	-īs	-īs

450. **deus**, *god*, is declined as follows: N. **deus**, G. **deī**, D. and Ab. **deō**, Ac. **deum**. Plural: N. **deī**, **diī**, commonly **dī**, G. **deōrum** or **deūm**, D. and Ab. **deīs**, **diīs**, commonly **dīs**, Ac. **deōs**.

451. (2.) Stems in -o- with the nominative in -r or in -āius, -ēius, or -ōius are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	puer, boy, puero-, M.	ager, field, agro-, M.	Pompēius, Pompey, Pompēio-, M.
Singular			
Nom.	puer, <i>a (or the) boy</i>	ager	Pompēius
Gen.	puerī, <i>a boy's, of a boy</i>	agrī	Pompēī
Dat.	puerō, <i>to or for a boy</i>	agrō	Pompēiō
Acc.	puerum, <i>a boy</i>	agrum	Pompēium
Abl.	puerō, <i>from, with, or by a boy</i>	agrō	Pompēiō
Voc.			Pompēī, Pompeī
Plural			
Nom.	puerī, <i>(the) boys</i>	agrī	Pompēī
Gen.	puerōrum, <i>boys', of boys</i>	agrōrum	Pompēiōrum
Dat.	puerīs, <i>to or for boys</i>	agrīs	Pompēīs
Acc.	puerōs, <i>boys</i>	agrōs	Pompēiōs
Abl.	puerīs, <i>from, with, or by boys</i>	agrīs	Pompēīs

## SINGULAR CASES.

452. -us and -um were originally -os and -om. But -us was used in the earliest times, -um somewhat later, and both became prevalent between 218 and 55 B.C. (75). After u or v, however, the -os and -om were retained till toward 50 A.D. (105); also after qu; but -cus and -cum often displaced -quos and -quom (112): as, equos, equom, or ecus, ecum, *horse*; antīquos, antīquom, or antīcus, antīcum, *ancient*. In the vocative -e was always used, and is retained by Plautus in puere, *thou boy*.

453. Words in -rus with a long penult, as, sevērus, *stern*, and the following substantives with a short penult are declined like dominus (449):

erus, <i>master</i>	umerus, <i>shoulder</i>
iūniperus, <i>juniper</i>	uterus, <i>womb</i>
numerus, <i>number</i>	

For adjective stems in -ro- with nominative -rus, see 615.

454. Masculine stems in -ro- preceded by a short vowel or a mute, except those above (453), drop -os in the nominative, and have no vocative: as, stem puero-, N. puer, *boy* (142). Most masculines in -ro- have a vowel before r only in the nominative -er (89): as, agro-, N. ager. But in compounds ending in -fer and -ger, *carrying, having*, and the following, the vowel before -r is a part of the stem, and is found in all the cases:

adulter, Liber, <i>paramour, Liber</i>	puer, vir, <i>boy, man</i>
gener, socer, <i>son-in-law, father-in-law</i>	liberī, vesper, <i>children, evening</i>

For Mulciber, Hibēr, and Celtibēr, see the dictionary; for adjective stems in -ro- with nominative -r, see 616. Once socerus (Pl.).



455. *nihilum*, *nothing*, usually drops -um in the nominative and accusative, becoming *nihil* or *nīl*, and *noenum*, *naught*, becomes *nōn*, *not* (140). *famul* is used for *famulus*, *slave*, by Ennius and Lucretius, once each (142).

456. Substantives ending in -ius or -ium (but never adjectives), have commonly a single -ī in the genitive singular (105): as,

*Vergilius*, G. *Vergīlī* (172); *filius*, *son*, G. *filī*; *cōnūbium*, *marriage*, G. *cōnūbī*.

457. Vergil has once a genitive -īī, *fluvīī*, *river's*. Propertius has -īī two or three times; with Ovid, Seneca, and later writers, -īī is common: as, *gladiī*, *of a sword*; even in proper names, which were the last to take -īī: as, *Tarquiniī*; but family names almost always retain a single -ī. Locatives have -īī: as, *Iconīī* (Cic.).

458. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, or -ōius have -āī, -ēī, or -ōī in the genitive and vocative singular and nominative plural, and -āīs, -ēīs, or -ōīs in the dative and ablative plural (112): as,

*Gāius*, G., V., and N. Pl. *Gāī*, D. and Ab. Pl. *Gāīs*; *Pompēī*, *Pompēīs*; *Bōī*, *Bōīs*. In verse -ēī of the vocative is sometimes made one syllable (99): as, *Pompēī*; *Volteī* (Hor.).

459. Latin proper names in -ius have the vocative in -ī only: as,

*Vergilius*, V. *Vergīlī*; *Mercurius*, V. *Mercūrī* (172). So, also, *filius*, *filī*, *son*; *genius*, *genī*, *good angel*; *volturius*, *volturī*, *vulture*; *meus*, *mī*, *my*, from the stem *mio-*.

460. Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in -ī: as, *Ephesī*, *in Ephesus*; *humī*, *on the ground*; *bellī*, *in war*.

#### PLURAL CASES.

461. In the nominative plural masculine, -eī sometimes occurs (465): as, *nātei geminei*, *twins born* (Plaut.); -eis or -īs is rare (465): as, *Sardeis*, *Sardians*; *oculīs*, *eyes*; not infrequently *hīsce*, *these here* (Plaut.); masculine stems in -io- have rarely a single -ī: as, *filī*, *sons*. For -āī, -ēī, or -ōī, see 458. The nominative and accusative plural of neuters ended anciently in -ā (65): as, *oppidā*, *towns* (Plaut.). But -ā was shortened at an early period (59).

462. In the common genitive plural -ōrum, the -o- of the stem is lengthened (56). A genitive plural in -ūm (or, after v, in -ōm) is common from *dīvos*, *divus*, and *deus*, *god*; from *dēnārius*, *denar*, *modius*, *peck*, *nummus*, *money*, *sēstertius*, *sesterce*, and *talentum*, *talent*, with numerals; and from cardinals and distributives (641): as, *dīvōm*, *dīvūm*, *deūm*; *mille sēstertiūm*; *ducentūm*; *bīnūm*. The u was originally long (29; 30); but it was shortened before 100 A.D.

463. Other masculine substantives have occasionally this genitive: as, *liberūm*, *of children*; particularly in set phrases and in verse: as, *centuria fabrūm*, *century of mechanics*; *Grāiūm*, *of Greeks*. With neuter substantives, as *oppidūm*, for *oppidōrum*, *of towns*, and with adjectives it is rare.

464. In the dative and ablative plural, -eis is rare (87): as, *Epidamnieis* (Plaut.). Stems in -io- have rarely a single ī: as, *filīs*, *for sons*. For -āīs, -ēīs, or -ōīs, see 458. *ambō*, *both*, and *duo*, *two*, have *ambōbus* and *duōbus* (640).

465. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows :

N. -os, -om, with o retained (70): FILIOS, TRIBVNOS; POCOLOM; in proper names -o (47): CORNELIO; -u, rare: LECTV; -is, or -i, for -ius: CAECILIS; CLAVDI; neuter -o (140): POCOLO. G. oldest form -ī: VRBANI; -ei, from 146 B.C. to Augustus: POPVLEI; CONLEGEI; -ī from stems in -io- not before Tiberius: COLLEGII. Ac. -om: VOLCANOM; -o (140): OPTVMO VIRO; -u: GREMIV. Ab. -ōd, not after 186 B.C. (426): POPLICOD, PREIVATOD. Plural: N.-ei, always common (87): VIREI; FILEI; -ēs, -eis, -īs (461): ATILIES; COQVES; LEIBEREIS, i.e. *liberī*; MAGISTREIS; MAGISTRIS; -ē, rare: PLOIRVME, i.e. *plūrumī*. G. -ōm or -ō (140) ROMANOM; ROMANO; -ōro (140): DVONORO; -im once: AISERNIM. D. and Ab. -eis, the only form down to about 130 B.C. (87): ANTIQVEIS; PROXSVMES; -ēs, twice: CAVATVRINES.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

466. Greek stems in -o- are generally declined like Latin nouns, but in the singular sometimes have -os in the nominative, -on in the nominative or accusative neuter, rarely -ū in the genitive, or -ō in the feminine ablative. Plural, nominative sometimes -oe, masculine or feminine, and genitive, chiefly in book-titles, -ōn: as,

Nominative *Īlios*; *Īlion* or *Īlium*. Genitive *Menandrū*, of *Menander*. Ablative feminine adjective *lecticā octōphorō*, in a sedan with eight bearers. Plural: nominative *Adelphoe*, the Brothers; *canēphoroe*, basket-bearers, feminine. Genitive *Geōrgicōn liber*, book of Husbandry. For *Androgeōs*, *Athōs* and *Panthūs*, see the dictionary.

#### CONSONANT STEMS.

##### *The Third Declension.*

Genitive singular -is, genitive plural -um.

467. Consonant stems are mostly substantive, and include both gender words and neuters.

Comparatives and a few other words are adjective. For the gender of substantives, see 570.

468. The nominative of consonant stems ends in -s (or -x); or in -n (-ō), -l, -r, or -s of the stem, rarely in -c or -t.

469. Most consonant stems have one syllable less in the nominative than in the genitive.

Such words are called *Imparisyllabic* words or *Imparisyllables*: as, nominative *rēx*, king, one syllable; genitive *rēgis*, of a king, two syllables.

470. Many consonant stems have a double form: one form used in the nominative singular (neuters have this form in the accusative also), another form in the other cases: as,

## The Noun : Consonant Stems. [471, 472.

*iūdex*, *juror*, stem of nominative *iūdec-* (110), of other cases *iūdic-*; *flāmen* (110), *special priest*, *flāmin-* (111); *virgō*, *maid*, *virgin-* (111); *auceps* (110), *fowler*, *aucup-* (72); *ebur* (75), *ivory*, *ebor-*; *genus*, *race*, *gener-* (116, 110); *trīstius* (346), *sadder*, *trīstiōr-* (346); *corpus* (75), *body*, *corpor-* (116); *pater* (89), *father*, *patr-*. In such instances the stem of the oblique cases is taken for brevity to represent both forms of the stem.

### I. MUTE STEMS.

**471. (1.)** Stems in a guttural mute, *-g-* or *-c-*, are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	<i>rēx</i> , <i>king</i> , <i>rēg-</i> , M.	<i>dux</i> , <i>leader</i> , <i>duc-</i> , M.	<i>iūdex</i> , <i>juror</i> , <i>iūdic-</i> , M., F.	Case endings
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i> , <i>a (or the) king</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>iūdex</i>	<i>-s (-x)</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i> , <i>a king's, of a king</i>	<i>ducis</i>	<i>iūdicis</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i> , <i>to or for a king</i>	<i>ducī</i>	<i>iūdicī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i> , <i>a king</i> [ <i>king</i> ]	<i>ducem</i>	<i>iūdicem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēge</i> , <i>from, with, or by a</i>	<i>duce</i>	<i>iūdice</i>	<i>-e</i>
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i> , <i>(the) kings</i>	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgum</i> , <i>kings', of kings</i>	<i>ducum</i>	<i>iūdicum</i>	<i>-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i> , <i>to or for kings</i>	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i> , <i>kings</i> [ <i>kings</i> ]	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>iūdicēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i> , <i>from, with, or by</i>	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>iūdicibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

In the nominative and accusative, neuters have no case ending in the singular, and *-a* in the plural. In the other cases they have the same case endings as gender stems.

**472. (a.)** Examples of stems in *-g-*, with nominative *-x*, genitive *-gis*, are :

- ex, -egis* *grex*, M., (F.), *herd*; *aquilex*, M., *spring-hunter, hydraulic engineer*.
- ēx, -ēgis* *rēx*, M., *king*; *interrēx*, *regent*; *lēx*, F., *law*; and N. and Ac. *exlēx*, *exlēgem*, *beyond the law*, adjective.
- ex, -igis* *rēmex*, M., *oarsman*.
- īx, -īgis* *strīx*, F., *screech-owl*.
- ūnx, -ugis* *cōniūnx* (121) or *cōniux*, M., F., *spouse*.
- ux, -ūgis* *frūx*, F., *fruit*.



473. (b.) Examples of stems in -c-, with nominative -x, genitive -cis, are :

- ax, -acis fax, F., *torch*, no G. Pl. in good writers (430).  
 -āx, -ācis pāx, F., *peace*, Pl. only N. and Ac. pācēs ; līmāx, F., *snail*.  
 -ex, -ecis faenisex, M., *haycutter* ; nex, F., *murder* ; precī, D., F., *prayer*, no N., usually plural.  
 -ēx, -ēcis vervēx, M., *wether* ; allēx, F., *fish-pickle*, also allēc, Ne.  
 -ex, -icis Masculines mostly : apex, *point* ; cārex, F., *rush* ; caudex or cōdex, *block, book* ; cīmex, *bug* ; cortex, M., F., *bark* ; culex, *gnat* ; forfex, M., F., *shears* ; frutex, *shrub* ; ilex, F., *holm-oak* ; illex, M., F., *seducer* ; imbrex, *tile* ; latex, *fluid* ; mūrex, *purple-shell* ; ōbice, Ab., M., F., *bar*, no N. ; paelex, F., *concubine* ; pollex, *thumb* ; pūlex, *flea* ; pūmex, *pumice-stone* ; rāmex, *blood-vessel* ; rumex, *sorrel* ; silex, M., F., *flint* ; sōrex, *shrew-mouse* ; vortex or vertex, *whirl* ; vītex, F., *a shrub*. Also some compounds : as, iūdex, *juror* ; artifex, *artisan* ; auspex, *bird-viewer*.  
 -ix, -icis Feminines mostly : appendix, *addition* ; calix, M., *cup* ; filix, *fern* ; fulix, *gull* ; fornix, M., *arch* ; larix, *larch* ; pix, *pitch*, no G. Pl. (430) ; salix, *willow* ; vārix, *swollen vein* ; vicis, G., *change*, no N., D., or G. Pl. (430).  
 -īx, -īcis Feminines : cervīx, *neck* ; cicātrīx, *scar* ; cornīx, *crow* ; cōturnīx (62), *quail* ; lōdīx, *blanket* ; rādīx, *root* ; struīx, *heap*. Also coxendīx, *hip*, later coxendix, coxendicis.  
 -ōx, -ōcis vōx, F., *voice*.  
 -ux, -ucis crux, F., *cross* ; dux, M., F., *leader* ; nux, F., *nut-tree, nut* ; trādux, M., *vinelayer*.

474. (2.) Stems in a lingual mute, -d- or -t-, are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	custōs, <i>keeper</i> , custōd-, M.	aetās, <i>age</i> , aetāt-, F.	virtūs, <i>virtue</i> , virtūt-, F.	mīles, <i>soldier</i> , mīlit-, M.
Singular				
Nom.	custōs	aetās	virtūs	mīles
Gen.	custōdis	aetātis	virtūtis	mīlitis
Dat.	custōdī	aetātī	virtūtī	mīlitī
Acc.	custōdem	aetātem	virtūtem	mīlitem
Abl.	custōde	aetāte	virtūte	mīlite
Plural				
Nom.	custōdēs	aetātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs
Gen.	custōdum	aetātum	virtūtum	mīlitum
Dat.	custōdibus	aetātibus	virtūtibus	mīlitibus
Acc.	custōdēs	aetātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs
Abl.	custōdibus	aetātibus	virtūtibus	mīlitibus

## The Noun: Consonant Stems. [475-477.]

475. (a.) Examples of stems in **-d-**, with nominative **-s**, genitive **-dis**, are :

- as, -adis    *vas*, M., F., *personal surety*, no G. Pl. (430).
- aes, -aedis    *praes*, M., *bondsman*.
- es, -idis    *obses*, M., F., *hostage*; *praeses*, M., F., *overseer*. \**dēses*, *slothful*, adjective.
- ēs, -edis    *pēs*, M., *foot*.
- es, -ēdis    *hērēs*, M., F., *heir*; *exhērēs*, *disinherited*, adjective; *mercēs*, F., *reward*.
- is, -idis    Feminines: *capis*, *cup*; *cassis*, *helmet*; *cuspis*, *spear-point*; *prōmulsis*, *appetizer*; *lapis*, M., *stone*.
- ōs, -ōdis    *custōs*, M., F., *guard*.
- aus, -audis    *laus*, F., *praise*.
- us, -udis    *pecus*, F., *beast, head of cattle*.
- ūs, -ūdis    Feminines: *incūs*, *anvil*; *palūs*, *swamp*, nominative once in Horace; *palus*, as from an **-o-** stem; *subscūs*, *dovetail*.

476. *sēdēs*, F., *seat*, has an **-s-** stem, namely **-ēs** (236), in the nominative, and **sēd-** in the other cases (401); G. Pl. *sēdum*, once *sēdium* (Vell. Pat.). The only example of a neuter stem in **-d-**, with nominative **-r**, genitive **-dis**, is *cor* (143), *heart*, *cordis*, no G. Pl. (430).

477. (b.) Examples of stems in **-t-**, with nominative **-s**, genitive **-tis**, are :

- as, -atis    *anas*, F., *duck*; G. Pl. also *anitem* (Cic.), and Ac. Pl. *anitēs* (Plaut.).
- ās, -ātis    *aetās*, F., *age*; also numerous other feminines in **-tās** (262).
- es, -etis    *interpres*, M., F., *go-between*; *seges*, F., *crop*; *teges*, F., *mat*.
- es, -itis    Masculines mostly: *ames*, *net-pole*; *antistes*, M., F., *overseer*; *caespes*, *sod*; *comes*, M., F., *companion*; *eques*, *horseman*; *fōmes*, *tinder*; *gurgēs*, *whirlpool*; *hospes*, M., F., *guest-friend*; *līmes*, *path*; *merges*, F., *sheaf*; *mīles*, M., F., *soldier*; *palmes*, *vine-sprout*; *pedes*, *man afoot, infantry*; *poples*, *hough*; *stīpes*, *trunk*; *termes*, *bough*; *trāmes*, *by-path*. *dives*, *rich*; *sōspes*, *safe*; *superstes*, *surviving*; *caelite*, Ab., *occupant of heaven*, no N., adjectives.
- ēs, -etis    *abiēs*, F., *fir*; *ariēs*, M., *ram*; *pariēs*, M., *wall*.
- ēs, -ētis    Feminines: *quiēs* and *requiēs*, *rest*, no D., Ac. often *requiem*, Ab. usually *requiē* (603); *inquiēs*, *unrest*, N. only.
- os, -otis    *compos*, *master of*, adjective.
- ōs, -ōtis    *nepōs*, M., *grandson, profligate*; *sacerdōs*, M., *priest*; *cōs*, F., *whetstone*, no G. Pl. (430); *dōs*, F., *dowry*, no G. Pl. in good writers (430); *dōtum* once (Val. Max.), and *dōtium* in the jurists.
- ūs, -ūtis    Feminines: *iuventūs*, *youth*; *salūs*, *existence*; *senectūs*, *old age*; *servitūs*, *slavery*, all singular only; and *virtūs*, *virtue*, with a plural.

478. *vātēs*, *bard*, has an -s- stem, namely -ēs (236), in the nominative, and *vāt-* in the other cases (401); G. Pl. *vātum*, but thrice *vātium* (Cic.). The only example of a neuter stem in -t-, with nominative -t, genitive -tis, is *caput*, *head*, *capitis*, and its compounds *occiput*, *back of the head*, and *sīnciput*, *jole*. *lac*, Ne., *milk*, *lactis*, has in old Latin nominative and accusative *lacte*, but usually drops the -te.

479. (3.) Stems in a labial mute, -b- or -p-, are declined as follows :

*mūniceps*, *burgess*, stem *mūnicip-*, M., F.

Singular: N. *mūniceps*, G. *mūnicipis*, D. *mūnicipī*, Ac. *mūnicipem*, Ab. *mūnicipe*. Plural: N. *mūnicipēs*, G. *mūnicipum*, D. *mūnicipibus*, Ac. *mūnicipēs*, Ab. *mūnicipibus*.

480. Examples of stems in -b- or -p-, with nominative -s, genitive -bis or -pis, are :

-ebs, -ibis *caelebs*, *unmarried*, adjective, the only stem in -b-.

—, -apis *dapis*, G., F., *feast*, N. and D. S., and G. Pl. not used (430).

-eps, -ipis *adeps* or *adips*, M., F., *fat*, no G. Pl.; *forceps*, M., F., *pincers*; *mūniceps*, *burgher*. *particeps*, *sharing*, and *prīnceps*, *first*, adjectives.

-eps, -upis *auceps*, *fowler*; *manceps*, *contractor*, *mancupis* or *mancipis*.

—, -ipis *stipis*, G., F., *small change*, no N.

-ops, -opis *Ops*, F., old *Opis* (Plaut.), *goddess of power*; *opis*, G., F., *help*, no N., D. once only, Pl. *opēs*, *means* (418).

## II. STEMS IN A CONTINUOUS CONSONANT.

481. (1.) Stems in -l- and -n- are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	<i>cōnsul</i> , <i>consul</i> , <i>cōnsul-</i> , M.	<i>leō</i> , <i>lion</i> , <i>leōn-</i> , M.	<i>imāgō</i> , <i>likeness</i> , <i>imāgin-</i> , F.	<i>nōmen</i> , <i>name</i> , <i>nōmin-</i> , Ne.
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>leō</i>	<i>imāgō</i>	<i>nōmen</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōnsulis</i>	<i>leōnis</i>	<i>imāginis</i>	<i>nōminis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōnsulī</i>	<i>leōnī</i>	<i>imāginī</i>	<i>nōminī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōnsulem</i>	<i>leōnem</i>	<i>imāginem</i>	<i>nōmen</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōnsule</i>	<i>leōne</i>	<i>imāgine</i>	<i>nōmine</i>
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōnsulēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>imāginēs</i>	<i>nōmina</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōnsulum</i>	<i>leōnum</i>	<i>imāginum</i>	<i>nōminum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōnsulibus</i>	<i>leōnibus</i>	<i>imāginibus</i>	<i>nōminibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōnsulēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>imāginēs</i>	<i>nōmina</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōnsulibus</i>	<i>leōnibus</i>	<i>imāginibus</i>	<i>nōminibus</i>



482. Examples of stems in *-l-*, with nominative *-l*, genitive *-lis*, are :  
*-āl, -alis* sāl, M., *salt*, sometimes Ne. in the singular; no G. Pl. (430).  
*-el, -ellis* fel (139), Ne., *gall*; mel, Ne., *honey*; plural only fella, mella.  
*-il, -ilis* mūgil, M., *mullet*; pūgil, M., *boxer*; vigil, M., *watchman*.  
*-ōl, -ōlis* sōl, M., *sun*, no G. Pl. (430).  
*-ul, -ulis* cōnsul, *consul*; praesul, *head dancer*; exsul, *exile*.

483. (a.) Examples of stems in *-n-*, with nominative *-en*, genitive *-inis*, are :

flāmen, M., *priest*; pecten, M., *comb*; tībīcen, M., *piper*; tubicen, M., *trumpeter*; sanguen, Ne., *blood*. Many neuters in *-men* (224): as, certāmen, *contest*.

484. (b.) Examples of stems in *-n-*, with nominative *-ō*, genitive *-ōnis*, are :

Many masculine concretes: as, pugiō, *dagger*; words of the agent (211): as, praedō, *robber*; and family names: as, Cicerō. Feminine abstracts in *-iō* (227), and many in *-tiō* or *-siō* (228): as, opīniō, *notion*; cōgitātiō, *thought*.

485. (c.) Examples of stems in *-n-*, with nominative *-ō*, genitive *-inis*, are :

Masculines: Apollō; cardō, *hinge*; ōrdō, *rank*; turbō, *whirlwind*. homo, M., F., *human being*; nēmō, *nobody*; for G. and Ab., nūllius and nūllō are generally used; margō, M., F., *brink*. Feminines: grandō, *hail*; harundō, *reed*; hirundō, *swallow*; hirūdō, *leech*; testūdō, *tortoise*; virgō, *maiden*. Many in *-dō, -dinis* (225), *-gō, -ginis* (226), and *-tūdō, -tūdinis* (264): as, cupīdō, also M., *desire*; imāgō, *likeness*; sōlitūdō, *loneliness*.

486. sanguīs, M., *blood*, stem sanguin-, takes *-s* in the nominative (131). canis, M., F., *dog*, stem can-, and iuvenis, M., F., *young person*, stem iuven-, have the nominative formed like that of *-i-* stems. For senex, *old man*, see 500.

487. (2.) Stems in *-r-* and *-s-* are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	pater, <i>father</i> , patr-, M.	dolor, <i>pain</i> , dolōr-, M.	flōs, <i>flower</i> , flōr-, M.	genus, <i>race</i> , gener-, Ne.
Singular <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	pater patris patrī patrem patre	dolor dolōris dolōrī dolōrem dolōre	flōs flōris flōrī flōrem flōre	genus generis generī genus genere
Plural <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	patrēs patrum patribus patrēs patribus	dolōrēs dolōrum dolōribus dolōrēs dolōribus	flōrēs flōrum flōribus flōrēs flōribus	genera generum generibus genera generibus

488. Many stems in *-r-* ended originally in *-s-*, which became *-r-* between two vowels, and in some words in the nominative also (116): as, *flōs*, M., *flower*, G. \**flōsis*, *flōris*; *honōs*, M., *honour*, G. *honōris*, N. *honor*.

489. (a.) Examples of stems in *-r-*, with nominative *-r*, genitive *-ris*, are:

- ar, -aris    *baccar*, Ne., *a plant*; *iūbar*, Ne., rarely M., *bright sky*, no Pl.
- ār, -aris    *lār*, M., *household god*; G. Pl. *larum*; two or three times *larium*.
- ār, -arris    *fār* (139), Ne., *spelt*; Pl. only N. and Ac. *farra*.
- er, -eris    Masculines: *acipēns*, *sturgeon*; *agger*, *mound*; *āns*, rarely F., *goose*; *asser*, *pole*; *carcer*, *jail*; *later*, *brick*; *mulier*, F., *woman*; *passer*, *sparrow*; *vōmer*, *ploughshare*. Neuters: *cadāver*, *corpse*; *tūber*, *swelling*; *ūber*, *breast*; *verberis*, G., *lash*, no N., generally Pl.; *acer*, *maple*, and some other plant names: see 573. *pauper*, *poor*, adjective.
- ter, -tris    *accipiter*, M., *hawk*; *frāter*, M., *brother*; *māter*, F., *mother*; *pater*, M., *father*.
- ēr, -ēris    *vēr*, Ne.; no Pl.
- or, -oris    *aequor*, Ne., *sea*; *marmor*, Ne., *marble*; *arbor*, F., *tree*.
- or, -ōris    *olor*, M., *swan*; *soror*, F., *sister*; *uxor*, F., *wife*. Many masculines in *-or* for *-ōs* (237): as, *odor*, *smell*; and in *-tor*, *-tōris* (205): as, *amātor*, *lover*. Also gender comparatives of adjectives: as, *trīstior* (346), M., F., *sadder*.
- ur, -oris    Neuters: *ebur*, *ivory*; Pl. only *ebora*; *rōbur*, *heart of oak*; Pl. *rōbora* common, *rōborum* and *rōboribus* twice each. Also *femur* *thigh*, *femoris* or *feminis*, and *iecur*, *liver*, *iecoris*, *iecineris*, or *iocineris*.
- ur, -uris    *augur*, M., F., *augur*; *furfur*, M., *bran*; *turtur*, M., F., *turtle-dove*; *voltur* or *vultur*, M., *vulture*. Neuters: *fulgur*, *lightning*; *guttur*, rarely M., *throat*; *murmur*, *murmur*; *sulphur*, *sulphur*. *cicur*, *tame*, adjective.
- ūr, -ūris    *fūr*, M., *thief*.

490. *volucris*, F., *bird*, stem *volucr-*, has its nominative formed like that of *-i-* stems.

491. (b.) Examples of stems in *-s-*, or *-r-* for *-s-*, with nominative *-s*, genitive *-ris*, are:

- aes, -aeris    *aes*, Ne., *copper, bronze*; in the Pl. only *aera* and *aerum* are usual.
- ēs, -eris    *Cerēs*. *pūbēs*, *mangrown*; *impūbēs*, *immature*, adjectives; for the last more commonly *impūbis*, like *brevis* (630).
- is, -eris    *cinis*, M., *ashes*; *cucumis*, M., *cucumber*, also with *-i-* stem; *pulvīs*, M., *dust*; *vōmis*, M., *ploughshare*.
- ōs, -oris    *arbōs*, F., *tree*.
- ōs, -ōris    Masculines: *flōs*, *flower*; *mōs*, *custom*; *rōs*, *decree*, no G. Pl. (430); *lepōs*, *grace*; *honōs* or *honor*, *honour*, and some old Latin words for later *-or*: as, *odōs* or *odor*, *smell* (489). *ōs*, Ne., *mouth, face*, no G. Pl. (430).

- us, -eris** Neuters: *acus*, *husk*; *foedus*, *treaty*; *fūnus*, *funeral*; *genus*, *race*; *glōmus* (62), *claw*; *holus*, *green stuff*; *latus*, *side*; *mūnus*, *gift*; *onus*, *burden*; *opus*, *work*; *pondus*, *weight*; *raudus* or *rūdus*, *piece of copper*; *scelus*, *crime*; *sīdus*, *constellation*; *ulcus*, *sore*; *vellus*, *fleece*; *vīscus*, *bowel*, usually plural; *volnus* or *vulnus*, *wound*. Also *Venus*, F., and *vetus*, *old*, adjective.
- us, -oris** Neuters: *corpus*, *body*; *decus*, *grace*; *dēdecus*, *disgrace*; *facinus*, *deed*; *faenus*, *interest*; *frīgus*, *cold*; *lītus*, *shore*; *nemus*, *grove*; *pectus*, *breast*; *pecus*, *flock*; *penus*, *store*; *pīgnus*, *pledge*; *stercus*, *dung*; *tempus*, *time*; *tergus*, *back*. Also *lepus*, M., *hare*.
- us, -ōris** Neuter comparatives of adjectives: *as*, *trīstius* (346), *sadder*.
- ūs, -ūris** Neuters: *crūs*, *leg*; *iūs*, *right*, Pl. *iūra*, G. Pl. twice only (Plaut.; Cato), no D. or Ab. Pl.; *iūs*, *broth*, *pūs*, *pus*, *rūs*, *country*, *tūs*, *frankincense*, Pl. only N. and Ac. *iūra*, &c. *tellūs*, F., *earth*.

492. *vās*, Ne., *vessel*, *utensil*, retains the *s* between two vowels: G. *vāsis*, D. *vāsī*, Ab. *vāse*, plural N. and Ac. *vāsa*; the G. *vāsōrum*, and D. and Ab. *vāsis*, are formed from an *-o-* stem, *vāso-* (401). *mēnsis*, M., *month*, *mēnsis*, has its nominative formed like that of *-i-* stems; G. Pl. *mēnsūm*, sometimes *mēnsuūm* or *mēnsium*. *os* (139), Ne., *bone*, *ossis*, has no G. Pl. in good writers (430): *ossium* late.

493. The two neuters *vīrus*, *gall*, *poison*, and *volgus* or *vulgus*, *the crowd*, have *-o-* stems, except in the nominative and accusative (401), and no plural: thus, N. and Ac. *volgus*, G. *volgī*, D. and Ab. *volgō*. A masculine accusative *volgum* is sometimes found. The Greek neuter *pelagus*, *the deep*, has also G. *pelagī*, D. and Ab. *pelagō*, Pl. N. and Ac. *pelagē* (508).

### III. STEMS IN *-u-* OR *-v-*.

494. Four substantives with stems in *-u-* or *-v-*, *grūs*, F., *crane*, *gruis*; *sūs*, M., F., *sow*, *swine*, *suis*; *bōs*, M., F., *ox*, *cow*, *bovis*; and *nix* (500), F., *snow*, *nivis*, follow the consonant declension; also the genitive *Iovis*, and the other oblique cases of *Iuppiter* (500). But *sūs* has in the plural dative and ablative *suibus*, *sūbus*, or *subus*; *bōs* has in the plural genitive *boum* or *bovum*, rarely *bovom* (112), and in the dative and ablative *bōbus*, or oftener *būbus* (75); *nix* has no genitive plural in good writers (430): *nivium* late, once *nivum*.

### SINGULAR CASES.

495. (1.) The nominative singular of gender stems in a mute is formed by adding *-s* to the stem (422): *as*,

*rēg-*, *king*, N. *rēx* (149); *duc-*, *leader*, N. *dux* (47); *custōd-*, *guard*, N. *custōs* (137); *aetāt-*, *age*, N. *aetās* (137); *caelib-*, *unmarried*, N. *caelebs* (45); *mūnicip-*, *burgher*, N. *mūniceps*. *hiem-*, *winter*, the only stem in *-m-*, N. *hiemps* (120) or *hiems*, also takes *-s*.

496. (2.) Stems in a continuous consonant, *-l-*, *-n-*, *-r-*, or *-s-*, and neuters have no nominative suffix (422, 423): *as*,

*cōnsul-*, *consul*, N. *cōnsul*; *flāmin-*, *special priest*, N. *flāmen*; *agger-*, *mound*, N. *agger*; *iūr-* for *iūs-*, *right*, N. *iūs*.

For *cor*, *heart*, see 476; *lacte*, *lac*, *milk*, 478; *sanguīs*, *blood*, 486; *-s* in neuter adjectives, 612.



497. (a.) Stems in *-ōn-* drop *-n-* in the nominative; stems in *-in-* for *-on-* drop *-n-*, and end in *-ō* (141): as,

*leōn-*, *lion*, N. *leō*; *imāgin-* for *imāgon-*, *likeness*, N. *imāgō*.

498. (b.) Stems of one syllable in *-r-* for *-s-* usually retain *-s* in the nominative: as, *flōr-* for *flōs-*, M., *flower*, N. *flōs*; *iūr-* for *iūs-*, Ne., *right*, N. *iūs*. Some of more than one syllable also retain *-s*: see 491; but in others *-s* is changed to *-r*, and in masculines a preceding *ō* is shortened: as, *odōs*, *smell*, *odor*. *lepōs*, *grace*, retains *-ōs*.

499. (c.) Four stems in *-er-* for *-es-* have the nominative singular in *-is*: *cinis*, *ashes*, *cineris*; *cucumis*, *cucumber*, *cucumeris* or *cucumis*; *pulvīs*, *dust*, *pulveris*; and *vōmis*, oftener *vōmer*, *ploughshare*, *vōmeris*.

500. The following have the nominative singular formed from a different stem from that of the other cases (401):

*iter*, *journey*, *itineris*, stems *iter-*, *itiner-*; *Iuppiter* (389), *Iovis*; *nix*, *snow*, *nivis*, stems *nigu-*, *niv-* (494); *senex*, *old man*, *man of forty or more*, *senis*, stems *senec-*, *sen-*. For *sēdēs*, *seat*, see 476; *vātēs*, *bard*, 478. *canis*, *dog*, N. also *canēs* (Plaut., Enn., Lucil.), *iuvenis*, *young or middle-aged person* (486), *volucris*, *bird* (490), and *mēnsis*, *month* (492), have their nominatives formed like those of *-i-* stems.

501. An old dative in *-ē* is sometimes retained in set phrases (507): as, *aerē*, *money*; *jūrē*, *right*.

502. Substantives have rarely an ablative in *-ī* or *-ei* like *-i-* stems: as, *capitī* (Catull.), *head*, for *capite*; *dōtei* (Plaut.), *dowry*, for *dōte*. Substantives used as adjectives have sometimes *-ī*: as, *artificī manū*, *with artist hand*; but often *-e*: as, *ālite lāpsū*, *with winged glide*. For *-ē* in old Latin, see 65.

503. Adjectives in the comparative degree have sometimes an ablative in *-ī*: as, *meliōrī*, *better*, for *meliōre*. Adjectives 'cf one ending' with consonant stems (624) have always *-e*, except *vetus*, *old*, which has sometimes *veterī*.

504. Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in *-ī*: as, *Karthāginī*, *at Carthage*; *rūrī*, *a-field*, *in the country*.

#### PLURAL CASES.

505. The nominative and accusative plural masculine and feminine have rarely *-īs*, like stems in *-i-*: as, *sacerdōtīs*, *priests*; *meliōrīs*, *better*. For *-ā* in neuters in old Latin, see 65.

506. The genitive plural of stems in *-tāt-* (262) is sometimes *-ium*, like that of *-i-* stems: as, *cīvitātium*, *communities*; *voluptātium*, *pleasures* (Cic.); but chiefly in or after the Augustan age. *mēnsis*, *month*, has *mēnsum*, but often *mēnsuum*, sometimes *mēnsium*. *āles*, *bird*, has sometimes *ālituum* in hexameter verse. For the dative and ablative *-būs* in old Latin, see 67.

507. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. MVNICIPES; *-ō* for *-ōs* (47): MAIO, i.e. *māiōs* or *māior*. G. *-es*, as early as 218 B.C.: SALVTES; *-us*, from 186 to 100 B.C.: NOMINVS; *-u* (47): CAESARV. D. *-ei*: VIRTVTEI, soon after 290 B.C.; HEREDEI, 45 B.C.; *-ē*, disappeared sooner than *-ei* except in set phrases (501), but is equally old: IVNONE; IOVRE. Ac. *-e* (140): APICE. Ab. *-īd* (426): COVENTIONID, i.e. *cōntiōne*; *-ei*: VIRTVTEI; *-ī*: HEREDI. Plural: N. *-īs*: IOVDICIS. G. *-om*: POVMILIONOM; *-ium*: MVNICIPIVM. D. *-ebus*: TEMPESTATEBVS. Ac. *-īs*: MVNICIPIS.

GREEK NOUNS.

508. Greek appellatives of the consonant declension occasionally retain Greek case endings: as, *lampas*, *torch*, G. *lampados*, Ac. *lampada*. Plural: N. *lampades*, Ac. *lampadas*. *āēr*, *air*, has usually the accusative *āera*, and *aethēr*, *upper air*, always has *aethera*. In the plural nominative and accusative, *cētus*, *swimming monster*, *melos*, *strain of music*, and *pelagus* (493), *the deep*, have -ē: as, *cētē*. Genitive -ōn, rare: as, *epigrammatōn*, *epigrams*. Dative and ablative -mātis from words in -ma, -matis: as, *poēmatis*, *poems* (401).

509. Greek proper names of the consonant declension are usually declined like Latin ones in old Latin and prose. From Vergil and Propertius on, Greek case endings grow more and more frequent, especially in poetry; they are best learned for every name from the dictionary; the commonest forms are:

Genitive -os: as, *Pān*, *Pānos*; -ūs, with nominative -ō: as, *Mantō*, *Mantūs*. Dative -i, rare: as, *Mīnōidi*. Accusative -a, common with names of persons in poetry, not in prose, more common with those of places, and even in prose: as, *Acheronta*; always *Pāna*; -ō, with feminines in -ō, -ūs: as, *Dīdō*. Vocative: *Pallās*, *Pallā*; in old Latin the nominative is commonly used instead of the vocative. Plural: Nominative -es: as, *Arcades*. Dative -sin, rare: as, *Lēmniasin*. Accusative -as, very common: as, *Lelegas*; in prose, *Macedonas*; also in words not Greek: as, *Allobrogas* (Caes.).

510. Names in -eus, like *Orpheus*, are usually declined like -o- stems (449). They have less frequently Greek forms: as, G. *Orpheos*, D. *Orphei* or *Orphī*, Ac. *Orphea*. Accusative rarely -ēa: as, *Īlionēa*.

511. Some names in -ēs have the genitive in -is or -ī and the accusative in -em or -ēn (401): as, *Sōcratēs*, G. *Sōcratis* or *Sōcratī*, Ac. usually *Sōcratem*, also *Sōcratēn*. *Achillēs* and *Ulixēs* have in the genitive -eī, -ēī, or -ī. Names in -clēs have rarely the accusative -clea: as, *Periclea*.

512. Some names in -is have forms either from a stem in -id-, or from one in -i-: as, *Paris*, G. *Paridis*, D. *Paridī*, Ac. *Paridem*, *Parim* or *Parin*, V. *Pari*.

STEMS IN -i- AND MIXED STEMS.

*The Third Declension.*

Genitive singular -is, genitive plural -i-um.

513. Stems in -i- include both substantives and adjectives, gender words and neuters.

For the gender of substantives, see 570.

514. The nominative of gender stems in -i- ends usually in -s (or -x), sometimes in -l or -r; that of neuter substantives has no suffix, and ends usually in -e, sometimes in -l or -r.

515. Most stems in -i- have as many syllables in the nominative as in the genitive.



Such words are called *Parisyllabic* words, or *Parisyllables*: as, nominative *cīvis*, *citizen*, two syllables; genitive *cīvis*, *of a citizen*, also two syllables.

516. Stems in *-i-* are declined in the main like consonant stems, but have *-im* in the accusative of some substantives, and *-ī* in the ablative of adjectives, of some gender substantives, and of neuters; in the plural they have *-ium* in the genitive, *-īs* often in the accusative of gender words, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative neuter.

# I. PARISYLLABLES.

517. (1.) Parisyllabic gender stems in *-i-* with the nominative in *-is* are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	tussis, <i>cough</i> , tussi-, F.	turris, <i>tower</i> , turri-, F.	amnis, <i>river</i> , amni-, M.	hostis, <i>enemy</i> , hosti-, M., F.	Stem and case endings
Singular					
Nom.	tussis	turris	amnis	hostis	-is
Gen.	tussis	turris	amnis	hostis	-is
Dat.	tussī	turri	amni	hosti	-ī
Acc.	tussim	turrim, -em	amnem	hostem	-im, -em
Abl.	tussī	turri, -e	amne, -ī	hoste	-ī, -e
Plural					
Nom.	tussēs	turrēs	amnēs	hostēs	-ēs
Gen.		turrium	amnium	hostium	-ium
Dat.		turribus	amnibus	hostibus	-ibus
Acc.	tussis, -ēs	turris, -ēs	amnīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Abl.		turribus	amnibus	hostibus	-ibus

518. (a.) Like the singular of *tussis* are declined parisyllabic names of rivers and places, like *Tiberis*, *Hispalis*. Also *cucumis*, M., *cucumber* (but see 491), and the defectives *sitis*, F., *thirst*, Ac. *sitim*, Ab. *sitī*, no plural; and *vīs*, F., *power*, Ac. *vim*, Ab. *vī*. Plural (401): N. *vīrēs*, G. *vīrium*, D. and Ab. *vīribus*, Ac. *vīris* or *vīrēs*. (The D. *vī* is only found twice; a N. and Ac. Pl. *vīs* is very rare.)

519. (b.) The following feminines are declined like *turris*, with *-im* or *-em* in the accusative, and *-ī* or *-e* in the ablative:

*clāvis*, *key*

*nāvis*, *vessel*

*sēmentis*, *planting*

*febris*, *fever*

*puppis*, *stern*

*strigilis*, *skin-scraper*

So also in the oblique cases, *Liger*, *the Liger*. *Arar*, *the Arar*, has in the accusative *-im*, in the ablative *-e* or *-ī*.

520. *secūris*, *axe*, *messis*, *crop*, and *restis*, *rope*, also have *-im* or *-em* in the accusative, but only *secūrī*, *messe*, and *reste* in the ablative. *canālis*, *conduit*, has only *-em* in the accusative, and only *-ī* in the ablative.



## The Noun: Stems in -i-. [521-527.]

521. (c.) The following are declined like *amnis*, with -em in the accusative, and -ī or -e in the ablative:

*avis*, bird  
*bilis*, bile

*civis*, citizen  
*classis*, fleet

*fūstis*, club  
*ignis*, fire

522. (d.) Most parisyllabic stems in -i-, with the nominative in -is, are declined like *hostis*: as,

*ēnsis*, M., *glaive*; *piscis*, M., *fish*; *aedis*, F., *temple*, Pl. *house* (418); *vitis*, F., *vine*; and a great many others. Also gender forms of adjectives in -i- 'of two endings' (630), except the ablative singular, which ends in -ī.

523. (2.) Parisyllables in -i- with the nominative in -ēs have their other cases like those of *hostis*: such are:

*caedēs*, *bloodshed*; *cautēs*, *rock*; *clādēs*, *disaster*; *indolēs*, *native disposition*, no Pl.; *lābēs*, *fall*; *mōlēs*, *pile*; *nūbēs*, *cloud*; *prōlēs*, *offspring*, no Pl.; *pūbēs*, *young population*, no Pl.; *rūpēs*, *crag*; *saepēs*, *hedge*; *strāgēs*, *slaughter*; *subolēs*, *offspring*; *tābēs*, *wasting*, no Pl., feminine; and some others. Masculine: *verrēs*, *boar*; *volpēs* or *vulpēs*, *fox*.

524. *famēs*, *hunger*, has G. twice *famī* (Cato, Lucil.), Ab. always *famē* (603), no Pl.; *plēbēs*, *commons*, N. also *plēbs* or *plēps*, has G. *plēbēi* (603), *plēbī* or *plēbis*, no Pl.

525. (3.) A few stems in -bri-, -cri-, or -tri-, are declined as follows:

*imber*, *shower*, stem *imbri-*, M.

Singular: N. *imber*, G. *imbris*, D. *imbri*, Ac. *imbrem*, Ab. *imbri*, oftener *imbre*. Plural: N. *imbrēs*, G. *imbrum*, D. *imbribus*, Ac. *imbris* or *imbrēs*, Ab. *imbribus*. So also *lunter* or *linter*, F. (M.), *tub*, *boat*, *ūter*, M., *leather bag*, and *venter*, M., *belly*, but with only -e in the Ab.; and the masculine of adjectives in -bri-, -cri-, -tri-, N. -er (628); these last have in the Ab. always -ī.

526. (4.) Parisyllabic neuters in -i- with the nominative in -e are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	sedīle, <i>seat</i> , sedīli-, Ne.		mare, <i>sea</i> , mari-, Ne.		Stem and case endings	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	sedīle	sedīlia	mare	maria	-e	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	sedīlis	sedīlium	maris		-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	sedīlī	sedīlibus	marī		-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	sedīle	sedīlia	mare	maria	-e	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	sedīlī	sedīlibus	marī		-ī	-ibus

527. *mare* has rarely the ablative *mare* in verse; in the plural only the nominative and accusative are usual; but a genitive *marum* is once quoted (Naev.), and the ablative *maribus* is once used by Caesar.

528. Examples of parisyllabic neuters in *-i-*, with the nominative in *-e*, genitive *-is*, are :

*ancīle*, *sacred shield*; *aplustre*, *ancient*; *conclāve*, *suite of rooms*; *īnsigne*, *ensign*; *praesaepe*, *stall*; *rēte*, *net*, Ab. *rēte*. Also the neuter of adjectives in *-i-* 'of two endings' (630), and some words in *-īle*, *-āle*, *-āre*, originally adjectives (313, 314): as, *būbile*, *ox-stall*; *fōcāle*, *neckcloth*; *cocleāre*, *spoon*.

## II. IMPARISYLLABLES.

529. Some stems in a mute followed by *-i-*, and a few in *-li-* and *-ri-* or *-si-* drop the *-i-* in the nominative, and thus become imparisyllables. Gender stems of this class are like consonant stems in the singular, except the ablative of adjectives, which has usually *-ī*.

530. Imparisyllabic stems in *-i-* are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	<i>arx</i> , <i>citadel</i> , <i>arci-</i> , F.	<i>pars</i> , <i>part</i> , <i>parti-</i> , F.	<i>urbs</i> , <i>city</i> , <i>urbi-</i> , F.	<i>animal</i> , <i>animal</i> , <i>animāli-</i> , Ne.
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>arx</i>	<i>pars</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>arcis</i>	<i>partis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>animālis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>arcī</i>	<i>partī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>animālī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>arcem</i>	<i>partem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>arce</i>	<i>parte</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>animālī</i>
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>arcēs</i>	<i>partēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>arcium</i>	<i>partium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>animālium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>arcibus</i>	<i>partibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>arcīs</i> , <i>-ēs</i>	<i>partīs</i> , <i>-ēs</i>	<i>urbīs</i> , <i>-ēs</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>arcibus</i>	<i>partibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>

531. Examples of stems in *-ci-*, with nominative *-x*, genitive *-cis*, are :

*-āx*, *-ācis* *fornāx*, F., *furnace*. Many adjectives (284): as, *audāx*, *daring*.

*-aex*, *-aecis* *faex*, F., *dregs*, no G. Pl. (430).

*-ex*, *-icis* *supplex*, *suppliant*, Ab. *-ī*, sometimes *-e*, G. Pl. *supplicum*. Adjectives: *duplex*, *twofold*; *multiplex*, *manifold*; *quadruplex*, *fourfold*; *septemplex*, *sevenfold*; *simplex*, *simple*; *triplex*, *threefold*. The foregoing have Ab. *-ī*: as, *duplicī*; *duplice* once (Hor.), *septempace* twice (Ov.; Stat.); G. Pl. *-ium*, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *-ia*.

*-ix*, *-icis* *fēlix*, *happy*; *pernīx*, *nimble*, adjectives. Also many feminines of the agent in *-trīx* (205): as, *vīctrix*, *victorious*; these sometimes have a Ne. Pl. N. and Ac.: as, *vīctricia*; in the G. Pl. they have *-ium*, or, as substantives, *-um*: as, *nūtrīcum*, *nurses*.

## The Noun: Stems in -i-. [532, 533.

- lx, -lcis    calx, F. (M.), *heel*; calx, M., F., *limestone*, no G. Pl. (430); falx, F., *sickle*.
- nx, -ncis    lanx, F., *platter*, no G. Pl. (430); deūnx, M., *eleven twelfths*; quīncunx, M., *five twelfths*.
- ox, -ocis    praecox, *over-ripe*, older stem praecoqui- : as, G. praecoquis; rarely with -o- stem (401) : as, praecoquam.
- ōx, -ōcis    celōx, F., *clipper*. atrōx, *savage*; ferōx, *wild*; vėlōx, *swift*, adjectives.
- rx, -rcis    arx, F., *citadel*, G. Pl. rare and late; merx, F., *ware*, N. in old Latin sometimes mercēs or mers.
- ux, -ucis    Adjectives: trux, *savage*, Ab. -ī or -e, G. Pl. -ium; redux, *returning*, Ab. -ī or -e (558); no G. Pl. and no Ne. N. or Ac. (430).
- aux, —    fauce, F., Ab., *throat*, N. faux once only and late, generally Pl.
- ūx, -ūcis    lūx, F. (581), *light*, Ab. sometimes -ī, no G. Pl. (430).

532. (a.) Examples of stems in -di-, with nominative -s, genitive -dis, are :

- ēs, -edis    Compounds of pēs, *foot*: compede, F., Ab., *fetter*, no N., G. Pl. compedium; adjectives: as, ālipēs, *wing-footed*, bipēs, *two-legged*, quadrupēs, *four-footed*, &c., Ab. -ī, Pl. G. -um only (563), Ne. N. and Ac. -ia, rare and late.
- ns, -ndis    Feminines: frōns, *foliage*; glāns, *acorn*; iūglāns, *walnut*.
- rs, -rdis    concors, *like-minded*, adjective, and other compounds of cor, Ab. -ī (559), Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia, G. Pl. not usual: discordium, *at variance*, and vēcordium, *frantic*, once each.
- aus, -audis    fraus, F., *deceit*, G. Pl. fraudium, later fraudum.

533. (b.) Examples of stems in -ti-, with nominative -s (-x), genitive -tis, are:

- ās, -ātis    Arpinās, of *Arpinum*, and adjectives from other town names; optimātēs, *good men and true*, G. Pl. -ium, less often -um; penātēs, *gods of the household store*.
- es, -etis    Adjectives: hebes, *dull*; teres, *cylindrical*, Ab. -ī (559), no G. Pl., Ne. Pl. hebetia, teretia, late and rare; perpes, *lasting through*, Ab. perpetī, late only; praepes, *swift-winged*, Ab. -ī or -e, G. Pl. -um, no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac.
- ēs, -ētis    locuplēs, *rich*, adjective, Ab. usually -e of a person, -ī often of a thing, G. Pl. locuplētium, sometimes locuplētum, Ne. Pl. locuplētia once.
- īs, -itis    līs, *contention*; dīs, *rich*, adjective, Ab. always -ī (559), Pl. G. -ium, once -um (Sen.), Ne. N. and Ac. -ia. Quirīs, Samnīs.
- ls, -ltis    puls, *pottage*, no G. Pl. (430).



- ns, -ntis** Masculines: *dēns*, tooth; *fōns*, fountain; *pōns*, bridge; *mōns*, mountain, N. once *mōntis* (Enn.); factors of twelve: *sextāns*, one sixth; *quadrāns*, *triēns*, *dōdrāns*, *dēxtāns*. Feminines: *frōns*, forehead; *gēns*, clan; *mēns*, mind. Present participles: as, *re-gēns*, guiding. Many adjectives: as, *ingēns*, gigantic, Ab. *-ī* (559); *Vēiēns*, of *Vei*; compounds of *mēns*: as, *āmēns*, out of one's head; of *dēns*: as, *tridēns*, Ab. *-ī*, as substantive usually *-e*.
- eps, -ipitis** Adjective compounds of *caput*, head: *anceps* (543), two-headed, once older *ancipēs* (Plaut.); *biceps*, two-headed; *triceps*, three-headed; *praiceps*, head-first, old *praecipēs* (Plaut.; Enn.), Ab. *-ī* (559), no G. Pl., Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *-ia*.
- rs, -rtis** Feminines: *ars*, art; *cohors*, cohort; *fōrs*, chance; *mors*, death; *pars*, part; *sors*, lot, N. twice *sortis* (Plaut.; Ter.). Adjectives: *cōsors*, sharing, *exsors*, not sharing, no G. Pl.; *expers*, without part; *iners*, unskilled, *sollers*, all-skilled, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *-ia*.
- x, -ctis** *nox*, F., night; Ab. also *noctū* (401); an old adverb form is *nox*, nights.

534. (a.) Stems in *-bi-*, with nominative *-bs* (149), genitive *-bis*, are:

*trabs*, F., beam, older N. *trabēs* (Enn.); *plēbs*, F., commons, N. sometimes *plēps*, for the older *plēbēs* (603), no Pl.; *urbs*, F., city.

535. (b.) Stems in *-pi-*, with nominative *-ps*, genitive *-pis*, are:  
*inops*, poor, adjective, Ab. *-ī* (559), G. Pl. *-um*, no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430);  
*stirps*, F. (M.), trunk.

536. Examples of stems in *-li-*, with nominative *-l*, genitive *-lis*, are:

**-al, -ālis** Neuters, originally adjective (546): *animal*, animal; *bacchānal*, shrine or feast of Bacchus; *cervīcal*, bolster; *puteal*, well-curb; *toral*, valance; *tribūnal*, tribunal; *vectīgal*, indirect tax. Only N. or Ac.: *cubital*, elbow-cushion; *minūtal*, minced-fish; *capital*, *capitālia*, death, capital crime.

**-il, -ilis** *vigil*, wide-awake, adjective, Ab. *-ī*, as substantive *-e* (561), G. Pl. *vigilum* (563), no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430).

537. (a.) Examples of stems in *-ri-*, with nominative *-r*, genitive *-ris*, are:

**-ar, -āris** Neuters, originally adjective (546): *calcar*, spur; *columbar*, dove-cote; *exemplar*, pattern; *lacūnar*, panel-ceiling; *pulvinar*, couch; *subligar*, tights; *torcular*, wine-press.

**-ār, -aris** Adjectives: *pār*, equal; *dispār*, *impār*, unequal, for Ab., see 561; G. Pl. *-ium*, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *-ia*; *compār*, co-mate, as substantive has G. Pl. *-um*.

**-er, -eris** Adjectives: *dēgener*, degenerate, Ab. *-ī* (559), no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430); *ūber*, fruitful, Ab., *-ī*, late *-e*, Ne. Pl. *ūbera* once only (Acc.).

-or, -oris Adjectives: **memor**, *remembering*; **immemor**, *forgetful*, Ab. -ī (559), G. Pl. **memorum** (636) once only (Verg.), no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430).

-or, -ōris Adjective compounds of **color**: as, **concolor**, *of like shade*, **discolor**, *of different shade*, both with Ab. -ī only; **versicolor**, *pieced*, Ab. -ī, rarely -e, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia; the G. Pl. of these words is not usual, but **versicolōrum** once.

538. (b.) Stems in -ri-, with nominative -s of the stem, genitive -ris, are **glīs**, F., *dormouse*, **gliris**; **mās**, M., *male*, **maris**; **mūs**, F., *mouse*, **mūris**.

539. The only imparisyllabic stem in -si- is **ās** (139), M., *unit*, *an as*, G. **assis**, with its compounds **bēs**, *two thirds*, G. **bessis**, and **sēmis**, *half an as*, *half*, G. **sēmissis**.

#### SINGULAR CASES.

540. (1.) The nominative singular of gender stems in -i- is usually formed by adding -s to the stem (422). But many gender substantives have the nominative in -ēs (236, 401): as,

**amni-**, *river*, N. **amnis**; **aedi-**, *temple*, N. **aedis**; **brevi-**, *short*, N. **brevis**. With N. -ēs: **nūbi-**, *cloud*, N. **nūbēs**; for other examples, see 523.

541. Some substantives form the nominative in both these ways: as, **vallēs** and **vallis**, *valley*, equally common; **aedis**, *temple*, later **aedēs**; for **caedēs**, *slaughter*, **clādēs**, *disaster*, and **mōlēs**, *pile*, **caedis**, &c., occur exceptionally.

542. A few stems in -bri-, -cri-, or -tri-, drop -i- in the nominative, without taking -s, -r of the ending becoming -er (89): as, **imbri-**, *shower*, N. **imber** (525).

543. Of gender imparisyllables, some have lost -i- of the stem before -s in the nominative; others have originally a consonant stem in the nominative (529-535).

Thus, **mōnti-**, *mountain*, and **sorti-**, *lot*, have N. **mōns** and **sors** for an older **mōntis** and **sortis**; but **dēns**, *tooth*, and **regēns**, *ruling*, have as original stems **dent-** and **regent-**. Adjectives in -cipiti- have N. -ceps (533).

544. A few adjective stems in -li- or -ri- drop -i- in the nominative without taking -s (536, 537): as, **vigili-**, *wide-awake*, N. **vigil**; **pari-**, *equal*, N. **pār**; so also **Arar** and **Liger**. Three substantives in -ri- for -si- likewise drop -i-, and end in the original -s (538): **glīri-** for **glīsi-**, *dormouse*, N. **glīs**; **mās**, *male*; **mūs**, *mouse*.

545. **carō**, F., *flesh*, **carnis** (Ab. -ī, usually -e, no G. Pl.) and **supellēx**, F., *furniture*, **supellēctilis** (Ab. -ī or -e, no Pl.), have the nominative formed from a different stem from that of the other cases (401).

546. (2.) Neuter stems in -i- have no nominative suffix, and end in -e for -i- of the stem (71): as,

**mari-**, *sea*, N. **mare**; **brevi-**, *short*, N. **breve**. In some words, originally neuter adjectives in -āle and -āre, the -e is dropped and the ā shortened: as, **animāle**, *living thing*, **animal** (536); **exemplāre** (Lucr.), *pattern*, **exemplar** (537). Some neuter adjectives end in -l or -r (536, 537); and some 'of one ending' end in -s (612).

547. The accusative singular of gender substantives usually has **-em**, like consonant stems (424); but a few substantives with the nominative in **-is** have **-im** only, and some have either **-im** or **-em**.

548. (a.) Accusatives in **-im**

Are <b>sitim</b> , <b>tussim</b> , <b>vim</b> ,	<i>thirst, cough, strength</i>
And <b>būrim</b> , <b>cucumim</b> .	<i>ploughtail, cucumber</i>

549. The accusative in **-im** is found in many adverbs (700): as, **partim**, *in part*; in some adverbial expressions: as, **adamussim**, **examussim**, *to a T*, **adfatis**, *to satiety*, **ad ravim**, *to hoarseness*; in some names of rivers and cities: as, **Tiberim**, **Hispalim**; and in some Greek words (565).

550. (b.) Six have the accusative commonly in **-im**, sometimes in **-em**:

<b>febrim</b> , <b>-em</b> , <i>fever</i>	<b>puppm</b> , <b>-em</b> , <i>stern</i>	<b>secūrim</b> , <b>-em</b> , <i>axe</i>
<b>pelvim</b> , <b>-em</b> , <i>basin</i>	<b>restim</b> , <b>-em</b> , <i>rope</i>	<b>turrim</b> , <b>-em</b> , <i>tower</i>

551. Six have the accusative commonly in **-em**, sometimes in **-im**:

<b>bipennem</b> , <b>-im</b> , <i>two-edged axe</i>	<b>nāvem</b> , <b>-im</b> , <i>ship</i>
<b>clāvem</b> , <b>-im</b> , <i>key</i>	<b>sēmentem</b> , <b>-im</b> , <i>planting</i>
<b>messem</b> , <b>-im</b> , <i>crop</i>	<b>strigilem</b> , <b>-im</b> , <i>skin-scraper</i>

552. In the ablative, gender substantives have usually **-e**, and neuters and adjectives have **-ī**: as,

**hoste**, *enemy*; **marī**, *sea*; **ācrī**, *sharp*, **brevī**, *short*, **audācī**, *daring*.

553. (1.) Of gender substantives with the nominative in **-is**, a few have only **-ī** in the ablative, and many have either **-ī** or **-e**.

554. (a.) These ablatives have only **-ī**:

<b>secūrī</b> , <b>sitī</b> , <b>tussī</b> , <b>vī</b> ,	<i>axe, thirst, cough, strength</i>
<b>canālī</b> , <b>cucumī</b> .	<i>conduit, cucumber</i>

Some names of rivers and cities have only **-ī**: as, **Tiberī**, **Hispalī**. The locative also ends in **-ī**: as, **Neāpolī**, *at Neapolis*.

555. (b.) These ablatives of gender substantives with the nominative in **-is** have **-ī** or **-e**:

<b>amne</b> , <b>-ī</b> , <i>river</i>	<b>clāvī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>key</i>	<b>puppī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>stern</i>
<b>ave</b> , <b>-ī</b> , <i>bird</i>	<b>febrī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>fever</i>	<b>sēmentī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>planting</i>
<b>bīle</b> , <b>-ī</b> , <i>bile</i>	<b>fūstī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>club</i>	<b>strigilī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>skin-scraper</i>
<b>cīvī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>citizen</i>	<b>ignī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>fire</i>	<b>turrī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>tower</i>
<b>clāsse</b> , <b>-ī</b> , <i>fleet</i>	<b>nāvī</b> , <b>-e</b> , <i>ship</i>	

556. A few other words in **-is** have occasionally an ablative in **-ī**: as, **anguis**, *snake*, **collis**, *hill*, **fīnis**, *end*, **postis**, *post*, **unguis**, *nail*, &c. **sors**, *lot*, **imber**, *shower*, and **lūx**, *light*, have also **-e** or **-ī**; **supellēx**, *furniture*, has **supellēctilī** or **-e**; **Arar** has **-e** or **-ī**; **Liger**, **-ī** or **-e**.

557. Neuter names of towns with the nominative in **-e** have **-e** in the ablative: as, **Praeneste**. **rēte**, *net*, has only **rēte**; **mare**, *sea*, has rarely **mare** (527).

558. (2.) Adjectives 'of two endings' with stems in **-i-** (630) often have **-e** in the ablative when they are used as substantives, and sometimes in verse, when a short vowel is needed: as,



**adfinī, -e**, connection by marriage; **aedīle, -ī**, aedile; **familiārī, -e**, friend. But some, even as substantives, have **-ī**: as, **aequālī**, of the same age, **cōsulārī**, ex-consul, **gentīlī**, tribesman. Adjectives of place in **-ēnsis** (330) usually have **-ī**, but sometimes **-e**: as, **Tarquiniēse**. Proper names have usually **-e**: as, **Juvenāle**.

**559.** Adjectives 'of one ending' with stems in **-i-** (632), have commonly **-ī** in the ablative. The following ablatives have only **-ī**:

**āmentī**, frenzied, **ancipitī**, two-headed, **praecipitī**, head-first, **concolōrī**, of like hue, **concordī**, harmonious, **discordī**, at variance, **sōcordī**, imperceptive, **dēgenerī**, degenerate, **dītī**, rich, **teretī**, rounded, **ingentī**, huge, **inopī**, without means, **memorī**, remembering, **immemorī**, forgetful.

**560.** Present participles, when used as adjectives, have **-ī** in the ablative, otherwise **-e**: as,

**ā sapientī virō**, by a wise man; **adulēscēte**, youth, substantive; **Rōmulō rēgnante**, in the reign of Romulus, ablative absolute (1362).

**561.** Other adjectives 'of one ending' occasionally have **-e** in the ablative when used as substantives or as epithets of persons, or in verse when a short syllable is needed: as,

**cōnsortī**, sharing, **parī**, equal, **vigilī**, wide-awake, **fēlicī**, happy, as adjectives; but **cōnsorte**, &c., as substantives; in prose, **imparī**, **disparī**, unequal; in verse, **impare**, **dispare**. Proper names have **-e**: as, **Fēlice**.

#### PLURAL CASES.

**562.** In the plural, gender nominatives have **-ēs**, rarely **-īs** or **-eis**, and gender accusatives have **-īs** or **-ēs** indifferently, sometimes **-eis**; after about 50 A.D., **-ēs** was the prevalent ending for both cases. Neuters add **-a** to the stem, making **-ia**; for **-iā** in old Latin, see 65.

**563.** In the genitive plural, present participles, some substantive stems in **-nt(i)-**, and some adjectives 'of two endings' (631) have occasionally **-um**: as,

**amantum**, lovers; **rudentum**, rigging; **agrestum**, country folk; **caelestum**, heaven's tenantry. **apis**, bee, has commonly **-um**; **caedēs**, slaughter, and **fraus**, deceit, have rarely **-um**. For **-um** in some adjectives 'of one ending,' see 636; for **-būs** in the dative and ablative in old Latin, see 67.

**564.** Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. without **-is**: **VECTIGAL**, i.e. **vectigālis**, adjective; **-e** for **-is** (47, 71): **MILITARE**, i.e. **militāris**, adjective; **-ēs** (540): **AIDILES**, i.e. **aedilis**; **CIVES**, i.e. **cīvis**. G. **-us**, from 186 to 100 B.C.: **PARTVS**, i.e. **partis**. D. **-ei**: **VRBEI**. Ac. **-i** (140): **PARTI**, i.e. **partem**; **-e**: **AIDE**, i.e. **aedem**. Ab. **-ei**: **FONTEI**; **-e**: **SERVILE**, i.e. **servīli**. Plural: N. **-ēs**: **FINES**; **-eis**: **FINEIS**; **-īs**: **FINIS**.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

**565.** Greek stems in **-i-** are usually declined like Latin ones, with the accusative in **-im**, and ablative in **-ī**. But the accusative sometimes has **-n**: as, **poēsin**, poetry, **Charybdin**; similarly **Capyn**; and a vocative occurs: as, **Charybdi**. The plural genitive **Metamorphōseōn**, and as ablative **Metamorphōsesin**, occur as titles of books.

## CHARACTERISTICS OF STEMS IN -i-.

566. Parisyllables with nominatives in -is, -ēs, or -e, and a few in -er; and imparisyllables with nominatives in -al, and in -ar for -āre, have stems in -i-.

But *canis*, *iuvenis* (486), *volucris* (490), *mēnsis* (492), *sēdēs* (476), and *vātēs* (478), have consonant stems.

567. Under -i- stems may also conveniently be grouped the following classes, which have usually a consonant form in the singular, and an -i- form in the plural:

568. (a.) Imparisyllabic adjectives with the genitive in -is, except comparatives and the dozen with consonant stems (624), and imparisyllables with a nominative in -s or -x preceded by any consonant except p. But *cōniūnx* (472) and *caelebs* (480) have consonant stems.

569. (b.) The following monosyllables: *ās*, *unit*, *an as*, *faex*, *dregs*, *fraus*, *deceit*, *glīs*, *dormouse*, *līs*, *strife*, *lūx*, *light*, *mās*, *male*, *mūs*, *mouse*, *nox*, *night*, *stirps*, *trunk*, *vīs*, *strength*. Also *fauce*, *throat*, and *compede*, *fetter*, both Ab., no N., and *fornāx*, *furnace*.

## GENDER OF CONSONANT STEMS AND -i- STEMS.

570. The gender of many of these substantives is determined by their meaning (404-412); that of participles used as substantives follows the gender of the substantive understood; Greek substantives follow the Greek gender. The gender of other words may be conveniently arranged for the memory according to the nominative endings as follows.

## MASCULINE.

571. Imparisyllables in -es or -ēs and substantives in -er, -ō, -or, and -ōs are masculine: as,

*caespes*, *sod*; *pēs*, *foot*; *agger*, *mound*; *sermō*, *speech*; *pallor*, *pale-ness*; *flōs*, *flower*.

572. These imparisyllables in -es or -ēs are feminine: *merges*, *sheaf*, *seges*, *crop*, *teges*, *mat*; *requiēs* and *quiēs*, *rest*; *compedēs*, plural, *fetters*; *mercēs*, *reward*. *aes*, *copper*, *bronze*, is neuter.

573. These substantives in -er are neuter: *cadāver*, *corpse*, *iter*, *way*, *tūber*, *swelling*, *truffle*, *ūber*, *udder*, *verberis*, *lash*, genitive, no nominative; also names of plants in -er: as, *acer*, *maple*, *cicer*, *chickpea*, *papāver*, *poppy*, *piper*, *pepper*, *siler*, *osier*, *siser*, *skirret*, *sūber*, *corktree*. *linter*, *tub*, *boat*, is feminine, once masculine. *vēr*, *spring*, is neuter.

574. Substantives in -ō, with genitive -inīs (485), are feminine; as, *imāgō*, *likeness*; also *carō*, *carnis*, *flesh*, and words of action in -iō and -tiō (227, 228). But *cardō*, *hinge*, *ōrdō*, *rank*, and *turbō*, *whirlwind*, are masculine. *margō*, *brink*, and *cupīdō*, *desire*, are sometimes masculine.

575. These substantives in -or are neuter: *ador*, *spelt*, *aequor*, *sea*, *marmor*, *marble*, *cor*, *heart*. *arbor*, *tree*, is feminine.

576. These substantives in -ōs are feminine: *cōs*, *whetstone*, *arbōs*, *tree*, *dōs*, *dowry*. *ōs*, *ōris*, *mouth*, *face*, is neuter, also *os*, *ossis*, *bone*.

## The Noun: Consonant and -i- Stems. [577-584.

### FEMININE.

577. Parisyllables in **-ēs**, and substantives in **-ās** **-aus**, **-is**, **-s** preceded by a consonant, and **-x**, are feminine: as,

*nūbēs*, cloud; *aetās*, age; *laus*, praise; *nāvis*, ship; *urbs*, city; *pāx*, peace.

578. *ās*, assis, penny, is masculine. *vās*, vessel, utensil, and the defectives *fās*, right, and *nefās*, wrong, are neuter.

579. Substantives in **-nis** are masculine; also twenty-nine others in **-is**, as follows:

<i>axis</i> , callis, <i>caulis</i> , <i>anguis</i> ,	<i>axle</i> , path, cabbage, snake
<i>fascis</i> , <i>fūstis</i> , <i>lapis</i> , <i>sanguis</i> ,	<i>bundle</i> , club, stone, blood
<i>piscis</i> , <i>postis</i> , <i>pulvis</i> , <i>ēnsis</i> ,	<i>fish</i> , post, dust, glaive
<i>torquis</i> , <i>torris</i> , <i>unguis</i> , <i>mēnsis</i> ,	<i>twisted collar</i> , firebrand, nail, month
<i>vēctis</i> , <i>vermis</i> , <i>vōmis</i> , <i>collis</i> ,	<i>lever</i> , worm, ploughshare, hill
<i>glis</i> , <i>canālis</i> , also <i>follis</i> ,	<i>dormouse</i> , conduit, ball
<i>cassēs</i> , <i>sentēs</i> , <i>veprēs</i> , <i>orbis</i> ,	<i>nets</i> , brambles, thorns, plurals, circle
<i>cucumis</i> , and sometimes <i>corbis</i> .	<i>cucumber</i> , basket

*būrim*, ploughtail, accusative only, is also masculine. A few of the above are sometimes feminine: as, *amnis*, *anguis*, *callis*, *canālis*, *cinis*, *finis*, *fūnis*, *torquis*, *veprēs*, &c.

580. Four in **-s** preceded by a consonant are masculine: *dēns*, tooth, *fōns*, fountain, *pōns*, bridge, *mōns*, mountain; also factors of twelve: *sextāns*, one sixth, *quadrāns*, *triēns*, *dōdrāns*, *dēxtāns*; *rudēns*, rope, once. *adeps*, fat, and *forceps*, pincers, are masculine or feminine. *stirps*, stock, is sometimes masculine.

581. *calix*, cup, *fornix*, arch, and *trādux*, vinelayer, are masculine; also substantives in **-ūnx** and **-ex**; except *nex*, murder, and *precī*, prayer, dative, no nominative, which are feminine; also rarely *grex*, herd. *cortex*, bark, *forfex*, scissors, *silex*, flint, and *ōbice*, barrier, ablative, no nominative, are either masculine or feminine. *calx*, heel, and *calx*, lime, are sometimes masculine, also *lūx*, light, in the ablative in old Latin.

### NEUTER.

582. Substantives in **-c**, **-e**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, in **-ar**, **-ur**, **-us**, and **-ūs**, are neuter: as,

*lac*, milk; *mare*, sea; *animal*, animal; *carmen*, song; *caput*, head; *calcar*, spur; *fulgur*, lightning; *corpus*, body; *iūs*, right.

583. *sōl*, sun, *pecten*, comb, *liēn*, spleen, *rēnēs*, kidneys, plural, and *furfur*, bran, are masculine. So usually *sāl*, salt, but sometimes neuter in the singular. *fār*, spelt, is neuter.

584. *pecus*, beast, is feminine; also *tellūs*, earth, and the substantives in **-ūs** which have **-ūdis** (475) or **-ūtis** (477) in the genitive: as, *palūs*, marsh; *iuventūs*, youth.



## STEMS IN -u-.

*The Fourth Declension.*

Genitive singular -ūs, genitive plural -u-um.

**585.** Stems in -u- are substantive only, and mostly masculine.

**586.** There are only three neuters in common use, **cornū**, *horn*, **genū**, *knee*, and **verū**, *a spit*. But some cases of other neuters are used: as, ablative **pecū**, *flock*; plural nominative and accusative **artua**, *limbs* (Plaut.); **ossua**, *bones* (inscr.).

**587.** The nominative of stems in -u- ends, including the stem vowel, in -u-s in gender words, and in lengthened -ū of the stem in neuters.

**588.** Most substantives in -u- are masculines in -tu- or -su-, often defective in case (235). The following words are feminine: **acus**, *pin, needle*, **domus**, *house*, **manus**, *hand*, **porticus**, *colonnade*; and the plurals **idūs**, *ides*, and **quīnquātrūs**, *feast of Minerva*; rarely **penus**, *store*, and **specus**, *cave*.

**589.** Stems in -u- are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	<b>flūctus</b> , <i>wave</i> , <b>flūctu-</b> , M.	<b>cornū</b> , <i>horn</i> , <b>cornu-</b> , Ne.	Stem and case endings	
Singular			M.	Ne.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>flūctus</b> , <i>a (or the) wave</i>	<b>cornū</b>	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>flūctūs</b> , <i>a wave's, of a wave</i>	<b>cornūs</b>	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>flūctui</b> , -ū, <i>to or for a wave</i>	<b>cornū</b>	-ui, -ū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>flūctum</b> , <i>a wave</i>	<b>cornū</b>	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>flūctū</b> , <i>from, with, or by a wave</i>	<b>cornū</b>	-ū	-ū
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>flūctūs</b> , <i>(the) waves</i>	<b>cornua</b>	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>flūctuum</b> , <i>waves', of waves</i>	<b>cornuum</b>	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>flūctibus</b> , <i>to or for waves</i>	<b>cornibus</b>	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>flūctūs</b> , <i>waves</i> [waves]	<b>cornua</b>	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>flūctibus</b> , <i>from, with, or by</i>	<b>cornibus</b>	-ibus	-ibus

## SINGULAR CASES.

**590.** In the genitive, the uncontracted form -uis sometimes occurs: as, **anuis**, *old woman* (Ter.). A genitive in -tī is rather common: as, **adventī**, *arrival*; **ōrnātī**, *embellishment* (Ter.); **senātī**, *senate*. In the dative, -ui is regularly contracted to -ū in neuters and often in gender words.

PLURAL CASES.

591. In the genitive plural, a form in -om occurs in old writers (105): as, *flūctuom*, *waves* (Plaut.). -ūm for -u-um is rare: as, *passūm*, *steps* (Plaut.); *currūm*, *chariots* (Verg.).

592. In the dative and ablative plural, the following retain -u-bus: *acus*, *pin*, *needle*, *arcus*, *bow*, *partus*, *birth*, *tribus*, *tribe*. The following have -u-bus or -i-bus (78): *artūs*, plural, *joints*, *lacus*, *lake*, *portus*, *haven*, *specus*, *cave*, *genū*, *knee*, *verū*, *a spit*. All other words have -i-bus only.

593. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

G. -uos (105): SENATVOS; -ū (142) SENATV; -uus, in the imperial age (28): EXERCITVVS. D. -uei (88): SENATVEI. Ac. -u (140): MANV. Ab. -uu (28): ARBITRATVV; -uō, once, by some thought to be for -ūd (426): MAGISTRATVO. Plural: N. -uus (28): MAGISTRATVVS.

594. *domus*, *house*, F., has stems of two forms, *domu-* and *domo-* (401); it is declined as follows: N. *domus*, G. *domūs*, rarely *domī*, D. *domuī* or *domō*, Ac. *domum*, Ab. *domō* or *domū*, Locative *domī*, rarely *domuī*. Plural: N. *domūs*, G. *domuum*, later *domōrum*, D. and Ab. *domibus*, Ac. *domōs*, less commonly *domūs*.

595. Some other substantives have an -u- stem in some of their cases, and an -o- stem in others: see *angiportus*, *arcus*, *caestus*, *colus*, *cornū*, *cornus*, *cupressus*, *ficus*, *fretus*, *gelus*, *laurus*, *murtus*, *penus*, *pinus*, *quercus*, *rictus*, *tonitrus*, in the dictionary.

STEMS IN -ē-.

The Fifth Declension.

(Genitive singular -ēī, genitive plural -ē-rum.)

596. Stems in -ē- are substantive only, and feminine.

597. *diēs*, *day*, is always masculine in the plural, and commonly in the singular; but the feminine is common when *diēs* denotes length of time or a set day. *merīdiēs*, *midday*, is masculine and singular only.

598. The nominative of stems in -ē- ends, including the stem vowel, in -ē-s.

599. Stems in -ē- are of two classes:

600. (1.) Stems of the first class have one or two syllables; there are four of them: *rēs*, *thing*, *spēs*, *hope*, *diēs*, *day*, and *fidēs*, *faith*.

Of this class, *rēs* and *diēs* have a plural throughout; *spēs* has only the nominative and accusative plural, and *fidēs* has no plural.

601. Stems in *-ē-* of the first class are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	<i>rēs</i> , <i>thing</i> , <i>rē-</i> , F.	<i>diēs</i> , <i>day</i> , <i>diē-</i> , M.	Stem and case endings
Singular			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs</i> , <i>a (or the) thing</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēi</i> , <i>rēī</i> , <i>a thing's, of a thing</i>	<i>diēī</i> , <i>diēī</i>	<i>-ēī</i> , <i>-ēī</i> , <i>-ēī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēi</i> , <i>rēī</i> , <i>to or for a thing</i>	<i>diēī</i> , <i>diēī</i>	<i>-ēī</i> , <i>-ēī</i> , <i>-ēī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rem</i> , <i>a thing</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rē</i> , <i>from, with, or by a thing</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
Plural			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs</i> ( <i>the</i> ) <i>things</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rērum</i> , <i>things', of things</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēbus</i> , <i>to or for things</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēs</i> , <i>things</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēbus</i> , <i>from, with, or by things</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

602. *fidēs* is declined like *rēs*; it has once a genitive *fidēs* (Plaut.). For *rēī*, *reī*, or *rēī*, and *fidēī*, *fideī*, or *fidēī*, see 160. *diēs* has rarely a genitive *diēs* (Enn.) or *diī* (Verg.). *spēs* has only the genitive and dative *spēī* in verse. A genitive or dative in *-ē* is sometimes found: as, *rē*, *diē*, *fidē*.

603. A few cases of other words sometimes follow this class (401): as, *plēbēs* (524), *commons*, G. *plēbēī* or *plēbī*; *famēs* (524), *hunger*, Ab. always *famē*; *requiēs* (477), *rest*, G. *requiē* (Sall.), Ac. *requiem*, Ab. *requiē*; *tābēs* (523), *waste*, Ab. *tābē*, \**contāgēs*, *contact*, Ab. *contāgē* (Lucr.), &c.

604. (2.) Stems of the second class are formed by the suffix *-iē-* or *-tiē-*, and have three or more syllables.

This class, which is a modification of stems in *-ā-*, has usually no genitive, dative, or plural. Many stems, especially those in *-tiē-*, have also a collateral form in *-ā-*, and the genitive and dative, when used at all, are commonly from a stem in *-ā-*.

605. Stems in *-ē-* of the second class are declined as follows :

*lūxuriēs*, *extravagance*, stem *lūxuriē-*, F.  
*Nom.* *lūxuriēs*, *Acc.* *lūxuriem*, *Abl.* *lūxuriē*.

606. A few examples of the genitive of these stems are found: as, *perniciī*, *perniciēs*, or *perniciē*, *ruin* (Cic.); *rabiēs*, *fury* (Lucr.); *aciē*, *edge of battle* (Sall., Caes., auct. B. Afr.), *faciē*, *make* (Plaut., Lucil.), *speciē*, *looks* (Caes.); *aciēī* (auct. B. Afr.). And a very few of the dative: as, *aciēī* twice (Caes.); *perniciēī*, *perniciī* (Nep.); *perniciē* (Liv.).

607. *ēluviēs*, *offscouring, wash*, has the nominative of the plural, and *glaciēs*, *ice*, has the accusative of the plural. Five words only have the nominative and accusative plural:

*seriēs*, *aciēs*, *row, edge*, *speciēs*, *faciēs*, *look, make*, *effigiēs*, *likeness*.



### THE ADJECTIVE.

608. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and it has been shown already how their cases are formed. But they differ from substantives in having different forms in some of their cases to denote different genders; it is convenient therefore to put their complete declension together.

609. Adjective stems end in **-o-** and **-ā-**, in a consonant, or in **-i-**.

610. An accusative plural of a stem in **-u-**, *anguimanūs*, with a serpent for a hand, is once used (Lucr.). There are no adjective stems in **-ē-**.

611. Adjectives are often conveniently said to be 'of three endings,' 'of two endings,' or 'of one ending.'

By the 'ending' is meant the ending of the nominative singular: thus, *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good, and *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, sharp, are 'of three endings' (409); *brevis*, *breve*, short, is 'of two endings' (410); and *audāx*, bold, is 'of one ending' (410).

612. Adjectives 'of one ending' which form a gender nominative in **-s**, retain the **-s** irrationally in the nominative and accusative neuter singular: as, N. M. and F. *audāx*, N. and Ac. Ne. also *audāx*.

### STEMS IN -o- AND -ā-.

613. Most adjectives with stems in **-o-** and **-ā-** are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. bonus, F. bona, Ne. bonum, good, bono-, bonā-.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Voc.</i>	bone					

614. Stems in **-io-** and **-iā-** have no consonant **i** in cases ending in **-i** or **-īs** (112): as, *plēbēius*, plebeian, G. S. M. and Ne., and N. Pl. M. *plēbēi*, D. and Ab. Pl. *plēbēis*.

615. Stems in **-ro-** preceded by a long vowel retain **-us** in the nominative singular masculine and are declined like *bonus* (453): as, *sevērus*, stern; also

*ferus*, merus, wild, unmixed  
*mōrigerus*, complaisant  
*praeposterus*, reversed

*properus*, hasty  
*prōsperus*, lucky  
*triquetrus*, three-cornered

616. (1.) Some stems in *-ro-* preceded by a short vowel end in *-r* in the nominative singular masculine and have no vocative (454); they are declined as follows :

Example Stems	M. <i>liber</i> , F. <i>libera</i> , Ne. <i>liberum</i> , <i>free</i> , <i>libero-</i> , <i>liberā-</i> .					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberōs</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>

Such are : compounds, chiefly poetical, ending in *-fer* and *-ger*, *bearing*, *carrying*, *having* : as, *caelifer*, *heaven-upholding* ; *corniger*, *horned* ; also the following :

(*alter*, 618), *asper*, *other*, *rough*      *satur*, *sēmifer*, *full*, *half-beast*  
*lacer*, *liber*, *torn*, *free*                      *tener*, *Trēver*, *tender*, *Treveran*  
*gibber*, *miser*, *hump-backed*, *forlorn*

*dexter*, *right*, has *dextera*, *dexterum*, or *dextra*, *dextrum*, G. *dexterī*, or *dextrī*, &c. *sinister*, *left*, has usually *sinistra*, &c., rarely *sinisteram* (Plaut., Ter.). *asper* has a plural accusative *asprōs* (Stat.), and ablative *asprīs* (Verg.).

617. (2.) Other stems in *-ro-* have a vowel before *r* only in the nominative singular masculine *-er* (454) ; they are declined as follows :

Example Stems	M. <i>aeger</i> , F. <i>aegra</i> , Ne. <i>aegrum</i> , <i>ill</i> , <i>aegro-</i> , <i>aegrā-</i> .					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegra</i>	<i>aegrum</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>	<i>aegrārum</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrum</i>	<i>aegram</i>	<i>aegrum</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>

618. Nine adjectives or adjective pronouns have the pronoun form *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-ī* in the dative singular, for masculine, feminine, and neuter alike ; they are the following :

*alius*, *another*                      *ūnus*, *one*                      *alter*, *the other*  
*sōlus*, *alone*                      *ūllus*, *any at all*                      *uter*, *which of the two*  
*tōtus*, *whole*                      *nūllus*, *no*                      *neuter*, *neither*

619. Of the above words, those with the nominative in **-us** are declined like **ūnus** (638). But **alius** has N. and Ac. Ne. **aliud** (659); for the G., **alterius** is mostly used, except in the combination **alius modī**, *of another sort*; the N. M. is rarely **alis**, Ne. **alid**, D. rarely **alī**. **alter** is declined like **liber** (616), except in the genitive singular **alterius** (**alterius**) and dative **alterī**. For **uter** and its derivatives, see 693.

620. The ordinary genitive and dative of **-o-** and **-ā-** stems, from some of the above words, is sometimes found: G. and D. **aliae**, **sōlae**, **alterae**, D. **aliō**, **nūllō**, &c.

## CONSONANT STEMS.

### OF TWO ENDINGS.

621. The only consonant stems of two endings are comparatives (346); they are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. and F. <b>trīstior</b> , Ne. <b>trīstius</b> , <i>sadder</i> , <b>trīstiōr-</b> , <b>trīstius-</b> .			
	Singular.		Plural.	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>trīstior</b>	<b>trīstius</b>	<b>trīstiōrēs</b>	<b>trīstiōra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>trīstiōris</b>	<b>trīstiōris</b>	<b>trīstiōrum</b>	<b>trīstiōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>trīstiōrī</b>	<b>trīstiōrī</b>	<b>trīstiōribus</b>	<b>trīstiōribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>trīstiōrem</b>	<b>trīstius</b>	<b>trīstiōres</b>	<b>trīstiōra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>trīstiōre</b>	<b>trīstiōre</b>	<b>trīstiōribus</b>	<b>trīstiōribus</b>

622. The ablative rarely has **-ī** for **-e**: as, **meliōrī** (503); the accusative plural masculine and feminine rarely have **-īs**: as, **meliōrīs** (505).

623. **plūs**, *more*, has in the singular only Ne. N. and Ac. **plūs**, G. **plūris**, and Ab. **plūre**. Plural: N. M. and F. **plūrēs**, Ne. **plūra**, G. **plūrium**, D. and Ab. **plūribus**, Ac. M. and F. **plūrēs** or **plūris**, Ne. **plūra**. **complūrēs**, *a good many*, plural only, has N. M. and F. **complūrēs**, Ne. N. and Ac. **complūria** or **complūra**, G. **complūrium**, D. and Ab. **complūribus**, Ac. M. and F. **complūrēs** or **complūris**.

### OF ONE ENDING.

624. A dozen adjectives 'of one ending,' mostly words applying to persons, with consonant stems throughout, have no nominative or accusative neuter plural; they are:

<b>caelebs</b> , <b>compos</b> , <i>unmarried</i> , <i>master of</i> <b>*dēses</b> , <b>dīves</b> , <i>lazy</i> , <i>rich</i> <b>particeps</b> , <b>prīnceps</b> , <i>sharing</i> , <i>first</i>	<b>pūbēs</b> , <b>impūbēs</b> , <i>mangrown</i> , <i>immature</i> <b>sōspes</b> , <b>superstes</b> , <i>safe</i> , <i>surviving</i> <b>pauper</b> , <b>cicur</b> , <i>poor</i> , <i>tame</i>
---	--



625. When these adjectives have a neuter, it is the same as the gender forms, except in the accusative singular; they are declined as follows:

M. F. and Ne. *dīves*, *rich*, stem *dīvit-*.

Singular: N. *dīves*, G. *dīvitis*, D. *dīvitī*, Ac. M. and F. *dīvitem*, Ne. *dīves*, Ab. *dīvite*. Plural: N. and Ac. M. and F. *dīvitēs*, G. *dīvitum*, D. and Ab. *dīvitibus*.

626. The plural *caelitēs*, *heavenly, occupants of heaven*, is also declined like the plural of *dīves*; the singular Ab. *caelite* occurs a couple of times. *vetus*, *old*, G. *veteris*, is also declined like *dīves*, but has a Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *vetera*; the Ab. S. is regularly *vetere*, but *veterī* is sometimes used.

### STEMS IN -i-.

#### OF THREE ENDINGS.

627. A dozen adjectives with stems in -bri-, -cri-, or -tri-, have a distinctive form in -er for the masculine nominative singular; they are:

<i>celeber</i> , <i>thronged</i>	<i>volucer</i> , <i>winged</i>	<i>pedester</i> , <i>foot-</i>
<i>salūber</i> , <i>healthy</i>	<i>campester</i> , <i>of a plain</i>	<i>puter</i> , <i>rotten</i>
<i>ācer</i> , <i>keen</i>	<i>equester</i> , <i>cavalry-</i>	<i>silvester</i> , <i>woody</i>
<i>alacer</i> , <i>lively</i>	<i>palūster</i> , <i>of a swamp</i>	<i>terrester</i> , <i>land-</i>

So also *celer*, *swift*. The names of months, *September*, *Octōber*, *November*, *December*, are also adjectives with stems in -bri-, but are not used in the neuter. Other adjectives with stems in -bri-, -cri-, or -tri-, have no distinctive form for the masculine nominative singular: as, *muliebris*, *mediocris*, *inlūstris*.

628. These adjectives are declined as follows:

Example Stem	M. <i>ācer</i> , F. <i>ācris</i> , Ne. <i>ācre</i> , <i>sharp</i> , <i>ācri-</i> .					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

629. In all cases but the masculine nominative singular these adjectives are just like those in -i- 'of two endings' (630). But the ablative always has -ī, never -e, and the genitive plural always has -ium, never -um. In *celer* the second e belongs to the stem: M. *celer*, F. *celeris*, Ne. *celere*; the genitive plural, which is *celerum*, is found only as a substantive. Most of these adjectives have now and then a masculine in -is, like adjectives 'of two endings' (630), and in old Latin the nominative -er is rarely feminine.

OF TWO ENDINGS.

630. Adjectives 'of two endings' with stems in *-i-* are declined as follows:

Example Stem	M. and F. <i>brevis</i> , Ne. <i>breve</i> , <i>short</i> , <i>brevi-</i> .			
	Singular.		Plural.	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>breve</i>	<i>brevēs</i>	<i>brevia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>brevis</i>	<i>brevium</i>	<i>brevium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevibus</i>	<i>brevibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>brevem</i>	<i>breve</i>	<i>brevīs, -ēs</i>	<i>brevia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevī</i>	<i>brevibus</i>	<i>brevibus</i>

631. The ablative is sometimes *-e* when these adjectives are used substantively or in verse (558). The genitive plural is rarely *-um* for *-ium* (563).

OF ONE ENDING.

632. Most adjectives 'of one ending' have a consonant form of the stem in the singular, except usually in the ablative (633), and an *-i-* stem in the plural; they are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	M. F. and Ne. <i>audāx</i> , <i>bold</i> , <i>audāc(i)-</i> .		M. F. and Ne. <i>regēns</i> , <i>ruling</i> , <i>regent(i)-</i> .	
Singular	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>regēns</i>	<i>regēns</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>regentis</i>	<i>regentis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>regentī</i>	<i>regentī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>regentem</i>	<i>regēns</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>regente, -ī</i>	<i>regente, -ī</i>
Plural	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>regentēs</i>	<i>regentia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>regentium</i>	<i>regentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>regentibus</i>	<i>regentibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>audācīs, -ēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>regentīs, -ēs</i>	<i>regentia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>regentibus</i>	<i>regentibus</i>

633. Present participles have *-ī* in the ablative, when they are used as adjectives, otherwise *-e* (560). For *-ī* or *-e* in other words, see 559, 561. For *-ium* or *-um* in the genitive plural, 563.

634. Most adjectives 'of one ending' in *-i-* are declined as above (632); some of them have peculiarities in some of their cases, as follows:

635. (1.) *trux* (531), *savage*, has Ab. *-ī* or *-e*, G. Pl. *-ium*, no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. *redux* (531), *returning*, has Ab. *-ī* or *-e*, no G. Pl. or Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. *hebes*, *dull*, *teres*, *cylindrical* (533), and compounds of *caput*, *head*, as *anceps*, (533), *two-headed*, have Ab. *-ī*, no G. Pl.; a Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. *-ia* is rare. For *locuplēs*, *rich*, see 533.

636. (2.) The following have *-ī* in the ablative, but *-um* of consonant stems in the genitive plural, and no nominative or accusative neuter plural: *inops* (535), *without means*, *vigil* (536), *wide-awake*, *memor* (537), *remembering*, *dēgener*, *degenerate*. *ūber* (537), *prolific*, has Ab. *-ī*, twice *-e*, Ne. Pl. once *-a* (Acc.). Compounds of *pēs*, as, *bipēs* (532), *two-legged*, have a late and rare Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *-ia*.

### THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVE.

637. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and the hundreds except *centum* are declined. The other cardinals are not declined.

638. *ūnus*, *one*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Voc.</i>	ūne					

In verse, the genitive singular is often *ūnius*.

639. *duo*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*, are declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duo or duōs	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

640. In dramatic verse, *duō*, &c., is common. In the genitive plural, *duo* sometimes has *duūm* (462). *ambō*, *both*, is declined like *duo*, but has *-ō* in the nominative and accusative, and only *ambōrum* and *ambārum* in the genitive plural. For the forms *duo*, *ambō*, see 415; *duōbus*, *duābus*, 464, 442.

641. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus* (613): as, *ducentī*, *ducentae*, *ducenta*, *two hundred*, G. *ducentōrum* or *ducentūm* (462), &c.



642. The adjective **mille**, *thousand*, is not declined. The substantive has in the singular only N. Ac. Ab. **mille**, but a complete plural: N. and Ac. **millia** (*mīlia*), G. **millium** (*mīlium*), D. and Ab. **millibus** (*mīlibus*).

643. Ordinals, as **prīmus**, *first*, and distributives, as **bīnī**, *two each*, are declined like **bonus** (613). But distributives seldom have a singular, and often have the genitive plural **-ūm** (462): as, **bīnūm**.

## THE PRONOUN.

### (A.) THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

644. The pronoun of the first person, **ego**, *I*, of the second person, **tū**, *thou*, and the reflexive pronoun, **suī**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, are declined as follows:

	ego, <i>I</i>		tū, <i>thou</i>		suī, <i>self</i>
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing. & Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ego</b>	<b>nōs</b>	<b>tū</b>	<b>vōs</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>meī</b>	<b>nostrūm, -trī</b>	<b>tuī</b>	<b>vestrūm, -trī</b>	<b>suī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mihī, mī</b>	<b>nōbīs</b>	<b>tibī</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>	<b>sibī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<b>nōs</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōs</b>	<b>sē</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<b>nōbīs</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>	<b>sē</b>

645. The nominatives **ego** and **tū**, and the accusatives **mē**, **tē** and **sē**, have no case ending. The last vowel of **ego** is rarely long in Plautus, long or short in Lucilius. The nominative **ego** has a different stem from that of its other cases, and the plurals of **ego** and **tū** have a different stem from that of the singular.

646. **meī**, **tuī**, and **suī**, which are often monosyllables in old verse, were originally the genitive of the neuter possessives, used substantively. An old genitive **mīs** is quoted, and **tīs** occurs rarely in Plautus.

647. The datives **tibī** and **sibī**, also the plurals **nōbīs** and **vōbīs**, have the form of a locative case, seen in **ibī**, *there*, and **ubī**, *where* (709).

648. In old Latin, the ablative is **mēd**, **tēd**, **sēd** (426), which forms are also used irrationally for the accusative. But by Terence's time the **-d** was no longer used (143).

649. Older forms for **vestrūm** and **vestrī** are **vostrūm** and **vostrī**. The genitive plural was originally a genitive of the possessive: that in **-ī** being the neuter singular, that in **-ūm** the masculine or feminine plural. In old Latin, **nostrōrum**, **nostrārūm**, **vostrōrum**, **vostrārūm** also occur.

650. Emphasis is given (1.) by reduplication (189): N. **tūte**; with **-ne** interrogative, **tūtine**; Ac. and Ab. **mēmē**, **tētē**, rare; **sēsē**, very common. (2.) by **-met** added to any case but the genitive plural: as, **egomet**; but **tū** has only **tūtemet** or **tūtimet**.

651. In inscriptions, the datives MIHEI, TIBEI, and SIBEI occur, so written in verse sometimes even when the last syllable is short; and MIHE, TIBE. Plural: D. and Ab. VOBIS. Ac. ENOS in an old hymn; SESE (28).

---

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE.

652. The possessives of *ego*, *tū*, and *suī*, are *meus*, *mine*, *tuus*, *thine*, and *suus*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their* (*own*), declined like *bonus* (613), except that *meus* has *mī* in the vocative singular masculine (459); those of *nōs* and *vōs* are *noster*, *our*, and *voster*, later *vester*, *your*, declined like *aeger* (617).

653. Old forms are *tuos*, *tuom*, and *suos*, *suom* (452). In old verse *mēus*, *mēi*, &c., *tūos*, *tūi*, &c., *sūos*, *sūi*, &c., often occur. *sōs* for *suōs*, *sās* for *suās*, and *sīs* for *suīs*, are old and rare.

654. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

MEEIS, MIEIS, monosyllable; TOVAM; SVEI, SOVOM, SOVO, SVVO, SOVEIS, SVEIS, SVIEIS.

655. Emphasis is given (1.) by *-met* added to *suō*, *suā*, *suōs*, and to *mea* and *sua*, neuter plural: as, *suōmet*; (2.) by *-pte*, which is oftenest found with the ablative: as, *suōpte*.

---

(B.) OTHER PRONOUNS.

656. Some pronouns have a peculiar genitive singular in *-ius* and dative singular in *-ī*, for masculine, feminine, and neuter alike.

These are: *iste*, *ille*, *ipse*, *uter*, and their derivatives. Some other words of a pronoun character also have this form of the genitive and dative: see 618.

657. In verse, the *-ī-* of the genitive is often shortened, and always in *utriusque*; but *neutrius* is not found with short *i*. In dramatic verse, the genitive singular of *iste*, *ille*, or *ipse*, is often two syllables.

658. *hīc*, *is*, *quī* or *quis*, and their derivatives have the genitive singular in *-ius*, thus: *hūius*, *ēius*, and *quōius* or *cūius*; in dramatic verse, these genitives are often one syllable. Their datives are *huic* for *hoice*, *ēī* or *ēi*, and *quoi* or *cui*.

659. Six words have a peculiar neuter nominative and accusative singular in *-d*: *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *quid*, *quod*, *aliud*, and derivatives. In manuscripts, *-t* is sometimes found for *-d*: as, *it*, *illut*, *istut*, &c.; sometimes also in inscriptions of the empire. In *hōc* for *\*hod-ce* and in *istūc* and *illūc* for *\*istud-ce*, *\*illud-ce*, the *d* has vanished (138).

---

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

660. The demonstrative pronouns are *hīc*, *this*, *this near me*; *iste*, *istic*, *that*, *that near you*; and *ille*, *illic*, *yonder*, *that*.

661. The demonstrative pronoun *hīc*, *this*, *this near me*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

662. The stem of *hīc* is *ho-*, *hā-*; to most of its cases a demonstrative -c for -ce is attached. The masculine and feminine nominative singular and nominative and accusative neuter plural take an -i-: *hīc* for \**ho-i-ce*, \**heice* (87); *haec* for *ha-i-ce* (84). *hunc*, *hanc*, are for \**hom-ce*, \**ham-ce*.

663. Old forms with the full ending -ce are frequent in the dramatists: D. *huice*, Ac. *hunce*. Plural: Ne. N. and Ac. *haece*, G. F. *hārunce*; also *hōrunc*, *hārunc*. After 100 B. C., the full form -ce is not found, except occasionally after -s: *hūiusce*, *hōsce*, *hāsce*, *hīsce*. Before -ne interrogative it is retained in the weakened form -ci-: as, *hīcine*. But *hīcne*, *hōcne*, *huicne*, &c., are found, though rarely.

664. The nominative *hic* or *hicine* and nominative and accusative *hoc* or *hocine* sometimes have the vowel before c short. A nominative plural feminine *haec* is found in writers of all ages. Other and rare forms are: Pl. N. M. *hīsce* (461), D. or Ab. *hībus*.

665. Other case forms of *hīc* are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. M. *hec*, *hic*. G. *hoivs*, *hviivs* (22), *hviivs*, *hoivsce*, *hoivsqve*, *hviivsqve*. D. *hoice*, *hoic*, *hoi*, *hvic*, *hvi*. Ac. M. *honc*, *hoc*; F. *hance*; Ne. *hoce*, *hvc*. Ab. M. and Ne. *hoce*; F. *hace*, oftener than *hac* in republican inscriptions; *haace* (28). Loc. *heice*, *heic*. Plural: N. M. *heisce*, *heis*, or *hei*, *hisce* or *his*; *hi*, not before Augustus; Ne. N. and Ac. *haice*, *haece*. G. *horvnc*. D. and Ab. *heisce*, *hibvs*. Ac. F. *hasce*.

666. The demonstrative pronouns *iste*, *that*, *that near you*, and *ille*, *yonder*, are declined alike, as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>



667. The first syllable of *iste* and *ille* is often short in the dramatists. Old forms of *iste* are: N. *istus*, G. *istī*, in *istimodī*, D. F. *istae*. The initial *i* of *iste* and of *istic* (669), is sometimes not written: as, *sta rēs* (Cic.), *stūc periculum* (Ter.). Old forms of *ille* are: N. *olus* (48); *ollus* or *olle*, &c.: as, D. S. or N. Pl. *ollī*, D. Pl. *ollīs*. G. *illī*, in *illimodī*, D. F. *illae*. The dramatists have *eccistam*, *eccilla*, *eccillud*, *eccillum*, *eccillam*, for *ecce istam*, &c., and *ellum*, *ellam*, for *em illum*, &c.

668. Other case forms of *ille* are found in inscriptions, as follows:

D. F. *ILLAE*. Plural: N. M. *ILLEI*. G. *OLORVM* (48). D. and Ab. *OLLEIS*, *ILLEIS*.

669. *istic* and *illic*, compounded of *iste*, *ille*, and *-ce* or *-c*, are declined alike, as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illic</i>	<i>illaec</i>	<i>illūc</i>	<i>illic</i>	<i>illaec</i>	<i>illaec</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illunc</i>	<i>illanc</i>	<i>illūc</i>	<i>illōsce</i>	<i>illāsce</i>	<i>illaec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illōc</i>	<i>illāc</i>	<i>illōc</i>	<i>illīsce</i>	<i>illīsce</i>	<i>illīsce</i>

670. Rare forms are: N. and Ac. Ne. *istōc*, *illōc*, G. *illiusce*, D. *illic*, Ab. F. *istāce*, *illāce*. Plural: N. M. *illīsce* (461), *illic*, Ac. *illōsce*, *illāsce*. Before *-ne* interrogative, *-ce* becomes *-ci-*: N. *illicine*, *istūcine* or *istucine*, Ac. *illancine*, Ab. *istōcine*, *istācine*. Pl. Ac. *istōscine*.

#### THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN.

671. The determinative pronoun *is*, *that*, *the aforesaid*, *the one*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī</i> , <i>iī</i> , or <i>ī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ēī</i>	<i>ēī</i>	<i>ēī</i>	<i>eīs</i> , <i>iīs</i> , or <i>īs</i>	<i>eīs</i> , <i>iīs</i> , or <i>īs</i>	<i>eīs</i> , <i>iīs</i> , or <i>īs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs</i> , <i>iīs</i> , or <i>īs</i>	<i>eīs</i> , <i>iīs</i> , or <i>īs</i>	<i>eīs</i> , <i>iīs</i> , or <i>īs</i>

672. *is* and *id* (659) are formed from a stem *i-*, and the other parts from a stem *eo-*, *eā-* (104). The genitive is sometimes written in Cicero and Plautus *eius* (22). The dative singular is *ēī* thirty-five times in verse, *eī* some seventeen times, and *ēi* twenty-three times (160).

673. In old verse, the genitive singular rarely has the first syllable short. Old and rare forms are: D. F. *eae*, Ac. M. *im* or *em*. Pl. D. and Ab. *ibus*, F. *eābus* (442). In dramatic verse, *eūm*, *eām*, *ei*, *eō*, *ēa*, and *ei*, *eōrum*, *earum*, *eōs*, *ēas*, *ēis*, are often found; also *eccum*, *eccam*, *eccōs*, *eccās*, *ecca*, for *ecce eum*, &c.

674. Other case forms of *is* are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. *EIS*, 124 B.C. G. *elvs*, *elivs*, *eilvs* or *elivs* (22). D. *EIEI*, 123 B.C.; *EEL*, *IEI*; *EI*, 123 B.C., and common in all periods. Plural: N. *EEIS*, *EIS*, *IEIS*, till about 50 B.C.; *EEL*, *EI*, *IEI*. D. and Ab. *EEIS*, *EIEIS*, *IEIS*, *IS*; after the republic, *IIS*, *IS*.

675. A rare and old pronoun equivalent to *is* is *sum*, *sam*, accusative singular, *sōs*, accusative plural, and *sīs*, dative plural.

#### THE PRONOUN OF IDENTITY.

676. The pronoun of identity, *īdem*, *the same*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }	<i>eīdem</i> } or <i>īdem</i> }

677. In manuscripts and editions, the plural nominative masculine is often written *iīdem*, and the dative and ablative *iīsdem*. The singular nominative masculine is rarely *eīsdem* or *īsdem* (Plaut., Enn.), *eīdem* (Cic., Varr.), neuter *īdem* (Plaut.). In verse, *eundem*, *eāndem*, *eīdem*, *eōdem*, *eādem*, and *eīdem*, *eaedem*, *eōrundem*, *eōsdem*, *eāsdem*, are often found.

678. Other case forms of *īdem* are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. M. *EISDEM*, 123 B.C., *ISDEM*, 59 B.C., both common till Caesar's time; *EIDEM*; Ne. *EIDEM*, 71 B.C. D. *IDEM*. Plural: N. M. *EISDEM*, *ISDEM*, *EIDEM*, till Caesar's time; *IIDEM*, once only. D. and Ab. *ISDEM*, very rarely *IIDEM*.

#### THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

679. The intensive pronoun *ipse*, *himself*, stems *ipso-*, *ipsā-*, is declined like *ille* (666), but has the nominative and accusative neuter singular *ipsum*.

680. In dramatic verse, *ipse* has rarely the first syllable short, and often has the older form *ipsus* (142). Plautus has these forms: N. F. *eapse*, Ac. *eumpse*, *eampse*, Ab. *eōpse*, *eāpse*, equivalent to *ipsa*, &c. So *reāpse* for *rē ipsā*.

## THE RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

(1.) *quī* AND *quis*.

681. The stem *qui-*, or *quo-*, *quā-*, is used in three ways: as a relative, *who*, *which*; as an interrogative, *who?* *which?* *what?* as an indefinite, *any*.

682. (a.) The relative *quī*, *who*, *which*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

683. (b.) The interrogative adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *which?* *what?* is declined like the relative *quī* (682).

684. The interrogative substantive has in the nominative singular *quis*, *quid*, *who?* *what?* the rest is like *quī* (682).

In old Latin, *quis* is both masculine and feminine, but a separate feminine form *quae* is used three or four times.

685. *quis* interrogative is sometimes used adjectively with appellatives: as, *quis senātor?* *what senator?* And *quī* is sometimes used substantively: as, *quī prīmus Ameriam nūntiat?* *who is the first to bring the tidings to Ameria?*

686. (c.) The indefinite *quis* or *quī*, *one*, *any*, has the following forms:

*quis* and *quid* masculine and neuter substantives, *quī* and *quod* adjectives; feminine singular nominative and neuter plural nominative and accusative commonly *qua*, also *quae*. The rest is like *quī* (682).

687. *quis*, *quem*, *quid*, and *quibus* come from the stem *qui-*; the other parts come from *quo-*, *quā-*. *quae* stands for an older *quai* (690). For *quid* and *quod*, see 659.

688. Old forms of the genitive singular are *quōius*, and of the dative *quōiei*, *quōiī*, or *quoi*, also in derivatives of *quī* or *quis*. A genitive plural *quōiūm* is old and rare. The dative and ablative plural is sometimes *quīs* from *quo-*, *quā-*. A nominative plural interrogative and indefinite *quēs* is rare (Pacuv.).

689. The ablative or locative is sometimes *quī*, from the stem *qui-*: as an interrogative, *how?* as a relative, *wherewith*, *whereby*, masculine, feminine, or neuter, in old Latin sometimes with a plural antecedent; especially referring to an indefinite person, and with *cum* attached, *quīcum*; and as an indefinite, *somehow*.



690. Other case forms of *quī* or *quis* and their derivatives are found in inscriptions, as follows :

N. *QVEI*, prevalent in republican inscriptions; also *QVI*; once *QVE*. G. *QVOIVS*, regularly in republican inscriptions; *CVIIVS*, *CVILVS*, *CVILLVS* (22), once *QVIVS* (17). D. *QVOIEI*, *QVOI*; once F. *QVAI*. Ab. *QVEI*. Plural: N. M. *QVEI*, but after 120 B. C., occasionally *QVI*; *QVES*, indefinite; F. and Ne. *QVAI*. G. *QVOIVM*.

#### DERIVATIVES OF *quī* AND *quis*.

691. The derivatives of *quī* and *quis* have commonly *quis* and *quid* as substantives, and *quī* and *quod* as adjectives. Forms requiring special mention are named below :

692. *quisquis*, *whoever, whatever, everybody who, everything which*, an indefinite relative, has only these forms in common use: N. M. *quisquis*, sometimes F. in old Latin, Ne. N. and Ac. *quicquid* or *quidquid*, Ab. M. and Ne. as adjective *quōquō*.

Rare forms are: N. M. *quīquī*, Ac. *quemquem*, once Ab. F. *quāquā*, as adverb *quīquī*, once D. *quibusquibus*. A short form of the genitive occurs in *quoiquoimodī* or *cuicuimodī*, *of whatsoever sort*.

*aliquis* or *aliquī*, *aliqua*, once *aliquae* (Lucr.), *aliquid* or *aliquod*, *some one, some*; Ab. M. sometimes, Ne. often *aliquī* (689). Pl. Ne. N. and Ac. only *aliqua*; D. and Ab. sometimes *aliquīs* (688).

*ecquis* or *ecquī*, *ecqua* or *ecquae*, *ecquid* or *ecquod*, *any?* Besides the nominative only these forms are found: D. *eccui*, Ac. *ecquem*, *ecquam*, *ecquid*, Ab. M. and Ne. *ecquō*. Pl. N. *ecquī*, Ac. M. *ecquōs*, F. *ecquās*.

*quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *whoever, whichever, everybody who, everything which*. The *cumque* is sometimes separated from *quī* by an intervening word. An older form is *quīquomque*, &c.

*quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*, *a, a certain, some one, so and so*; Ac. *quendam*, *quandam*. Pl. G. *quōrundam*, *quārundam*.

*quīlibet*, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* or *quodlibet*, *any you please*.

*quisnam*, rarely *quīnam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who ever? who in the world?* Sometimes *nam quis*, &c.

*quispiam*, *quaepiam*, *quippiam*, *quidpiam* or *quodpiam*, *any, any one*; Ab. also *quīpiam* (689), sometimes as adverb, *in any way*.

*quisquam*, *quicquam* or *quidquam*, *anybody at all, anything at all*, generally a substantive, less frequently an adjective, *any at all*. There is no distinctive feminine form, and *quisquam* and *quemquam* are rarely, and in old Latin, used as a feminine adjective. Ab. also *quīquam* (689), sometimes as adverb, *in any way at all*. No plural.

*quisque*, *quaeque*, *quicque*, *quidque* or *quodque*, *each*. Sometimes *ūnus* is prefixed: *ūnusquisque*; both parts are declined. *quisque* and *quemque* are sometimes feminine. Ab. S. *quīque* (689) rare, Ab. Pl. *quīsque* (688) once (Lucr.).

*quīvis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis* or *quodvis*, *which you will*; Ab. also *quīvis* (689).

(2.) **uter.**

**693.** **uter, utra, utrum**, *whether? which of the two?* has the genitive singular **utrius**, and the dative singular **utrī**.

The rest is like **aeger** (617). **uter** is sometimes relative, *whichsoever*, or indefinite, *either of the two*.

DERIVATIVES OF **uter**.

**694.** The derivatives of **uter** are declined like **uter**; they are:

**neuter**, *neither of the two*, genitive **neutrius**, always with **ī** (657). When used as a grammatical term, *neuter*, the genitive is always **neutrī**: as, **generis neutri**, *of neither gender*.

**utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque**, *whichever of the two, either of the two*.

**uterlibet**, *whichever you please*.

**uterque**, *whichsoever, both*. G. always **utriusque** (657).

**utervīs**, *whichever you wish*.

**alteruter**, F. **altera utra**, Ne. **alterutrum** or **alterum utrum**, *one or the other*, G. **alterius utrius**, once late **alterutrius**, D. **alterutri**, Ac. M. **alterutrum** or **alterum utrum**, F. **alterutram** once (Plin.) or **alteram utram**, Ab. **alterutrō** or **alterō utrō**, F. **alterā utrā**. No Pl., except D. **alterutrīs** once (Plin.).

## CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**695.** Pronouns often correspond with each other in meaning and form; some of the commonest correlatives are the following:

Kind.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative, Determinative, &c.	Relative.
Simple	<b>quis, quī</b> , <i>who?</i>	<b>quis, quī</b> , <b>aliquis</b>	<b>hīc, iste, ille</b> <b>is, quisque</b>	<b>quī</b>
Alternative	<b>uter</b> , <i>which of the two?</i>	<b>uter</b> , <b>alteruter</b>	<b>uterque</b>	<b>uter, quī</b>
Number	<b>quot</b> , <i>how many?</i> (431)	<b>aliquot</b>	<b>tot</b>	<b>quot</b>
Quantity	<b>quantus</b> , <i>how large?</i> (613)	<b>aliquantus</b> , <b>quantusvīs</b>	<b>tantus</b>	<b>quantus</b>
Quality	<b>quālis</b> , <i>of what sort?</i> (630)	<b>quālislibet</b>	<b>tālis</b>	<b>quālis</b>

THE ADVERB,  
THE CONJUNCTION, AND THE PREPOSITION.

I. NOUNS AS ADVERBS.

696. Adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions are chiefly noun or pronoun cases which have become fixed in a specific form and with a specific meaning. Many of these words were still felt to be live cases, even in the developed period of the language; with others the consciousness of their noun character was lost.

697. Three cases are used adverbially: the accusative, the ablative, and the locative.

698. The rather indeterminate meaning of the accusative and the ablative is sometimes more exactly defined by a preposition. The preposition may either accompany its usual case: as, *adamussim*, *admodum*, *īlicō*; or it may be loosely prefixed, with more of the nature of an adverb than of a preposition, to a case with which it is not ordinarily used: as, *examussim*, *intereā*. Sometimes it stands after the noun: as, *nūper* (\**novomper*) *lately*. Besides the three cases named above, other forms occur, some of which are undoubtedly old case endings, though they can no longer be recognized as such: see 710.

(I.) ACCUSATIVE.

(a.) ACCUSATIVE OF SUBSTANTIVES.

699. *domum*, *homeward*, *home*; *rūs*, *afield*; *forās*, *out of doors* (\**forā-*); *vicem*, *instead*; *partim*, *in part*; old *noenum* or *noenu*, common *nōn*, for *ne-oenum*, i. e. *ūnum*, *not one*, *naught*, *not*; *admodum*, *to a degree*, *very*; *adamussim*, *examussim*, *to a T*; *adfati-*, *to satiety*; *invicem*, *in turn*, *each other*.

700. Many adverbs in *-tim* and *-sim* denote manner (549): as, *cautim*, *warily*, *statim*, *at once*, *sēnsim*, *perceptibly*, *gradually*; *ōstiāt-*, *door by door*, *viritim*, *man by man*, *fūrtim*, *stealthily*.

(b.) ACCUSATIVE OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

701. Neuters: all comparative adverbs in *-ius* (361): as, *doctius*, *more learnedly*; so *minus*, *less*, *magis*, *more* (363). *primum*, *first*, *secundum*, *secondly*, &c.; *tum*, *then* (*to-*, *that*): *commodum*, *just in time*; *minimum*, *at least*, *potissimum*, *in preference*, *postrēmum*, *at last*, *summum*, *at most*; *versum*, *toward*, *ursum*, *russum*, *rūsum*, *back*; *facile*, *easily*, *impūne*, *scotfree*, *recēns*, *lately*, *semel*, *once* (*simili-*), *simul*, *together* (*simili-*). Plural: *cētera*, *for the rest*; *quā*, *because* (*qui-*); in old Latin *frūstra*, *in vain* (*fraud-*).

702. Feminines: *bifāriam*, *twofold*; *cōram*, *face to face* (*com-* or *co-*, \**ōrā-*); *tam*, *so* (*tā-*, *that*); *quam*, *as*, *how*. Plural: *aliās*, *on other occasions*.



## (2.) ABLATIVE.

## (a.) ABLATIVE OF SUBSTANTIVES.

703. *domō*, from home, *rūre*, from the country; *hodiē*, to-day (ho-, diē-), *vesperī*, *vespere*, by twilight, *noctū*, by night, nights, *lūcī*, *lūce*, by light, *tempore*, in time, betimes; *sponte*, voluntarily, *fōrte*, by chance; *quotan-nīs*, yearly; *grātiis* or *grātis*, for nothing, *ingrātiis* or *ingrātis*, against one's will; *ilicō*, on the spot (in *locō*), *foris*, out of doors (\**forā*-).

## (b.) ABLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

704. Many adverbs in -ō are formed from adjectives of time: as, *perpetuō*, to the end, *crēbrō*, frequently, *rārō*, seldom, *repentinō*, suddenly, *sērō*, late, *prīmō*, at first. Many denote manner: as, *arcānō*, privily, *sēriō*, in earnest. Some are formed from participles: as, *auspicātō*, with auspices taken; *compositō*, by agreement. A plural is rare: *alternīs*, alternately.

705. Instead of -ō, neuter ablatives commonly have -ē: as, *longē*, far, *doctē*, wisely. So also superlatives: *facillimē*, most easily, anciently *FACILV-MED* (362). A few ablatives have -e: as, *repente*, suddenly.

706. From pronouns some end in -ī (689): as, *quī*, how? indefinite, *quī*, somehow; *atquī*, but somehow; *quī-quam*, in any way at all.

707. Feminines: many in -ā: *ūnā*, together; *circā*, around; *contrā*, against (com-, 347); *extrā*, outside (ex, 347); in classical Latin, *frūstrā*, in vain (fraud-). So, especially, adverbs denoting the 'route by which: ' *hāc*, this way; *rēctā*, straightway.

## (3.) LOCATIVE.

708. In -ī, from names of towns and a few other words: *Karthāginī*, at Carthage; *Rōmae*, for *Rōmāi*, at Rome; *domī*, at home; *illī*, commonly *illī-c*, there (*illo-*), *istī*, commonly *istī-c*, where you are, *hī-c*, here (ho-); old *sei*, common *sī*, at that, in that case, so, if; *sīc*, so (*sī*, -ce).

709. In -bī, from some pronouns: *ibī*, there (i-); *ubī* (for \**quobī*, 124), where; *alicubī*, somewhere; *sī-cubi*, if anywhere, *nē-cubi*, lest anywhere.

## OTHER ENDINGS.

710. Besides the above, other endings are also found in words of this class: as,

-s in *abs*, from, *ex*, out of; similarly *ūs-que*, in every case, ever (*quo-que*), *us-quam*, anywhere at all (*quo-quam*, 124). -tus has the meaning of an ablative: as, *intus*, from within, within; *antiquitus*, from old times, anciently; *funditus*, from the bottom, entirely. -ō denotes the 'place to which' in adverbs from pronoun stems: as, *eō*, thither; *quō*, whither; *illō*, or *illūc*, for \**illōce*, thither (75); *hōc*, commonly *hūc*, for \**hōce*, hither. -im denotes the 'place from which:' as, *istim*, commonly *istinc*, from where you are; *illim*, commonly *illinc*, from yonder; *hinc*, hence; *exim*, thereupon; also -de: as, *unde*, whence (*quo-*, 124), *sī-cunde*, if from any place, *nē-cunde*, lest from anywhere. -ter: as comparative (347): *praeter*, further, beyond, *inter*, between; denoting manner: *ācriter*, sharply; *āmanter*, affectionately; rarely from -o- stems: as, *firmiter*, steadfastly.

CORRELATIVE ADVERBS.

711. Adverbs derived from pronoun stems often correspond with each other in meaning and form; some of the commonest correlatives are the following:

	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative, Determinative, &c.	Relative.
Place	ubī, <i>where?</i>	alicubī usquam uspīam ubivīs	hīc, istīc, illīc ibī, ibīdem	ubī
	quō, <i>whither?</i>	aliquō quōlibet quōvīs	hūc, istūc, illūc eō, eōdem	quō
	quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i>	aliquōvor- sum	horsum, istorsum	quorsum
	unde, <i>whence?</i>	alicunde undelibet	hinc, istinc, illinc inde, indidem	unde
Time	quandō, <i>when?</i>	aliquandō umquam	nunc, tum, tunc	quom or cum
	quotiēns, <i>how often?</i>	aliquotiēns	totiēns	quotiēns
Way	quā, <i>by what way?</i>	aliquā quāvīs	hāc, istāc, illāc eā, eādem	quā
Manner	utī or ut, <i>how?</i>	aliquā	ita, sic	utī or ut
Degree	quam, <i>how?</i>	aliquam	tam	quam

II. SENTENCES AS ADVERBS.

712. Some adverbs are condensed sentences: as,

īlicet, *you may go, straightway* (īre licet); scīlicet, *you may know, obviously, of course* (scīre licet); vidēlicet, *you can see, plainly* (vidēre licet); nūdiustertius, *now is the third day, day before yesterday* (num dius, i.e. diēs, tertius); fōrsitan, *maybe* (fōrs sit an); mīrum quantum, *strange how much, astonishingly*; nesciō quō pactō, nesciō quōmodo, *somehow or other, unfortunately*.

## (B.) INFLECTION OF THE VERB.

713. The verb is inflected by attaching person endings to the several stems.

## THE STEM.

714. The stem contains the meaning of the verb, and also denotes the mode (mood) and the time (tense) of the action as viewed by the speaker.

715. There are three MOODS, *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, and *Imperative*.

716. There are six TENSES in the indicative, three of the present system, *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future*; and three of the perfect system, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Perfect*. The subjunctive lacks the futures; the imperative has only the present.

717. The meanings of the moods and tenses are best learnt from reading. No satisfactory translation can be given in the paradigms, especially of the subjunctive, which requires a variety of translations for its various uses.

718. The verb has two principal stems: I. The Present stem, which is the base of the present system; II. The Perfect stem, which is the base of the perfect active system.

719. The perfect system has no passive; its place is supplied by the perfect participle with a form of *sum*, *am*, or less frequently of *fuī*, *am become*.

720. Many verbs have only the present system: as, *maereō*, *mourn*; some have only the perfect system: as, *meminī*, *remember*. Some verbs have a present and perfect system made up of two separate roots or stems: as, present indicative *ferō*, *carry*, perfect indicative *tulī*, and perfect participle *lātus*; present *possum*, *can*, perfect *potuī*.

## THE PERSON ENDING.

721. The person ending limits the meaning of the stem by pointing out the person of the subject. There are three PERSONS, the *First*, used of the speaker, the *Second*, of what is spoken to, and the *Third*, of what is spoken of. The person ending furthermore indicates number and voice.

722. There are two NUMBERS: the *Singular*, used of one, and the *Plural*, used of more than one.

723. There are two VOICES: the *Active*, indicating that the subject acts, and the *Passive*, indicating that the subject acts on himself, or more commonly is acted on by another.



## The Verb : Person Endings. [724-731.]

724. Only transitive verbs have all persons of the passive. Intransitive verbs have in the passive only the third person singular, used impersonally ; the participle in this construction is neuter.

725. Some verbs have only the passive person endings, but with a reflexive or an active meaning ; such are called *Deponents* : see 798.

726. The person endings are as follows :

Voice.	Active.				Passive.			
Mood.	IND. & SUB.		IMPERATIVE.		IND. & SUB.		IMPERATIVE.	
Number.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
First person.	-m	-mus	not used	not used	-r	-mur	not used	not used
Second person.	-s	-tis	none, -tō	-te, -tōte	-ris, -re	[-minī]	-re, -tor	[-mini]
Third person.	-t	-nt	-tō	-ntō	-tur	-ntur	-tor	-ntor

727. In the perfect indicative active, the second person singular ends in **-tī**, and the third person plural in **-runt** for an older **-ront**, or in **-re**. **-re** is most used in poetry and history, and by Cato and Sallust ; **-runt** by Cicero, and almost always by Caesar.

728. In the indicative, **-m** is not used in the present (except in **sum**, **am**, and **inquam**, *quoth I*), in the perfect or future perfect, or in the future in **-bō**. **-s** is not used in **ēs** or **es**, *thou art*, and in **ēs**, *eatest* (139).

729. In inscriptions, **-d** sometimes stands for **-t** in the third person singular, and sometimes **-t** is not used : as, **FECID**, *made*, for **fēcit** ; **DEDE**, *gave*, for **dedēt** or **dedit**. And other forms of the third person plural of the indicative active are sometimes used : as, **DEDROT**, **DEDRO**, and **DEDERI**, *gave*, for **dedērunt**, **EMERV**, *bought*, for **ēmērunt**.

730. In the passive second person singular, **-re** is not very common in the present indicative, except in deponents ; but in other tenses **-re** is preferred, especially in the future **-bere**, by Cicero, **-ris** by Livy and Tacitus. The second person plural passive is wanting ; its place is supplied by a masculine participle form in **-minī**, which is used without reference to gender, for gender words and neuters alike (297).

731. Deponents have rarely **-mino** in the imperative singular : as, second person, **prōgredimino**, *step forward thou* (Plaut.) ; in laws, as third person : **FRVIMINO**, *let him enjoy* ; or **-tō** and **-ntō** for **-tor** and **-ntor** : as, **ūtītō**, *let him use* ; **ūtuntō**, *let them use*. In a real passive, **-ntō** is rare : as, **CENSENTO**, *let them be rated*.

## NOUNS OF THE VERB.

732. The verb is accompanied by some nouns, which are conveniently, though not quite accurately, reckoned parts of the verb ; they are :

Three Infinitives, *Present Active* and *Passive*, and *Perfect Active*, sometimes called the *Infinitive Mood*. For the future active and passive and the perfect passive, compound forms are used.

The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive*.

Two *Supines*.

Three Participles, *Present* and *Future Active*, and *Perfect Passive*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

733. The several verb stems can readily be found, when once the principal parts are known ; these are given in the dictionary.

734. The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a verb are the *Present Indicative Active*, *Present Infinitive Active*, *Perfect Indicative Active*, and *Perfect Participle* : as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
regō, <i>rule</i>	regere	rēxī	rēctus
laudō, <i>praise</i>	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
moneō, <i>advise</i>	monēre	monuī	monitus
audiō, <i>hear</i>	audīre	audīvī	audītus

735. The Principal Parts of deponents are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, and *Perfect Participle* : as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. PART.
queror, <i>complain</i>	querī	questus
mīror, <i>wonder</i>	mīrārī	mīrātus
vereor, <i>fear</i>	verērī	veritus
partior, <i>share</i>	partīrī	partītus

## DESIGNATION OF THE VERB.

736. A verb is usually named by the present indicative active first person singular : as, regō ; laudō, moneō, audiō ; or by the present infinitive active : as, regere ; laudāre, monēre, audīre. Deponents are named by the corresponding passive forms : as, queror ; mīror, vereor, partior ; or querī ; mīrārī, verērī, partīrī.

737. For convenience, verbs with -ere in the present infinitive active are called *Verbs in -ere* ; those with -āre, -ēre, or -īre, *Verbs in -āre*, -ēre, or -īre, respectively. In like manner deponents are designated as *Verbs in -ī* ; or *Verbs in -ārī*, -ērī, or -īrī, respectively.

THEME OF THE VERB.

738. The several stems of the verb come from a form called the *Theme*. In primitives, the theme is a root ; in denominatives, the theme is a noun stem.

Thus, *re g-* in *reg-ō* is a root ; while *vesti-* in *vesti-ō*, *dress*, is a noun stem. The noun stem is sometimes modified in form. Oftentimes the noun stem is only presumed : as, *audi-* in *audi-ō*.

739. Some verbs have a denominative theme in the present system, and a primitive theme in the perfect system, others have the reverse.

740. Most verbs with an infinitive of more than two syllables in *-āre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, or, if deponent, in *-ārī*, *-ērī*, or *-īrī*, are denominative ; most other verbs are primitive.

Thus, *laudāre*, *monēre*, *audire* ; *mīrārī*, *verērī*, *partīrī*, are denominative ; while *esse*, *dare*, (*dē*)*lēre*, *regere*, *querī*, are primitive. A few verbs, however, which have the appearance of denominatives, are thought to be primitive in their origin.

ARRANGEMENT OF THE VERB.

741. Verbs are divided into two classes, according to the form of the present system : I. Root verbs, and verbs in *-ere*, mostly primitive ; II. Verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, mostly denominative.

742. Verbs are sometimes arranged without regard to difference of kind, in the alphabetical order of the vowel before *-s* of the second person singular of the present indicative active, *ā*, *ē*, *i*, *ī* : thus, *laudās*, *monēs*, *regis*, *audīs*, sometimes called the *first*, *second*, *third*, and *fourth conjugation* respectively.

I. PRIMITIVE VERBS.

743. A few of the oldest and commonest verbs of everyday life have a bare root as stem in the present indicative or in parts of it ; and some of them have other peculiarities ; such are called *Root Verbs*, or by some, *irregular* (744-781). Most primitives are verbs in *-ere*, like *regō* (782).

(A.) ROOT VERBS.

*Irregular Verbs.*

(a.) WITH A PREVALENT BARE ROOT.

744. Primitives with the bare root as present indicative stem in almost all their forms are *sum*, *am*, *dō*, *give*, *put*, and compounds ; and with the root doubled, *bibō*, *drink*, *serō*, *sow*, and *sistō*, *set*.



(1.) *sum, am* (e s-, s-).

745. *sum, am*, is used only in the present system (720). The perfect system is supplied by forms of *fuī* (f u-).

PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
<i>sum</i>	<i>esse</i>	( <i>fuī</i> )	_____

INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT TENSE.	
Singular.	Plural.
<i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>
<i>es, thou art</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>
<i>est, he is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>
IMPERFECT TENSE.	
<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>erās, thou wert</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>erat, he was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>
FUTURE TENSE.	
<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, thou wilt be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	
<i>fuī, I have been, or was</i>	<i>fuimus, we have been, or were</i>
<i>fuistī, thou hast been, or wert</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been, or were</i>
<i>fuit, he has been, or was</i>	<i>fuērunt or -re, they have been, or were</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, thou hadst been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	
<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, thou wilt have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>sim, may I be</i>	<i>simus, let us be</i>
<i>sīs, mayst thou be</i>	<i>sītis, be you, may you be</i>
<i>sit, let him be, may he be</i>	<i>sint, let them be, may they be</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>essem, I should be</i>	<i>essēmus, we should be</i>
<i>essēs, thou wouldst be</i>	<i>essētis, you would be</i>
<i>esset, he would be</i>	<i>essent, they would be</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>fuerim, I may have been</i>	<i>fuerīmus, we may have been</i>
<i>fuerīs, thou mayst have been</i>	<i>fuerītis, you may have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he may have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they may have been</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>fuissem, I should have been</i>	<i>fuissēmus, we should have been</i>
<i>fuissēs, thou wouldst have been</i>	<i>fuissētis, you would have been</i>
<i>fuisset, he would have been</i>	<i>fuissent, they would have been</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>es or estō, be thou, thou shalt be</i>	<i>este or estōte, be you, you shall be</i>
<i>estō, he shall be</i>	<i>suntō, they shall be</i>

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres. esse, to be</i>	<i>Pres. See 749</i>
<i>Perf. fuisse, to have been</i>	<i>Perf. ———</i>
<i>Fut. futūrus esse, to be going to be</i>	<i>Fut. futūrus, going to be</i>

746. The first person **sum** is for an older **esum** (92); for the **-m**, and for **es**, see 728. In **sum** and **sumus**, an **u** is developed before the person endings (89). For **sim**, &c., and **siem**, &c., see §41. In the imperfect **eram**, &c., and the future **erō**, &c., **s** has become **r** (116).

747. The indicative and imperative **es** is for an older **ēs**, which is regularly used by Plautus and Terence. The **e** of **es** and **est** is not pronounced after a vowel or **-m**, and is often omitted in writing: as, **experrēcta ēs**, pronounced **experrēctas**; **epistula est**, pronounced **epistulast**; **cōnsilium est**, pronounced **cōnsiliumst**. In the dramatists, **-s** preceded by a vowel, which is usually short, unites with a following **ēs** or **est**: thus, **tū servos ēs** becomes **tū servos**; **similis est**, **similist**; **virtūs est**, **virtūst**; **rēs est**, **rēst**.

748. Old forms are: **SONT** (inscr. about 120 B.C.); with suffix **-scō** (834), **escit** (for **\*esscit**), *gets to be, will be*, **escunt**; present subjunctive, **siem**, **siēs**, **siet**, and **sient** (841), common in inscriptions down to 100 B.C., and in old verse; also in compounds; imperative **estōd** rare.

749. The present participle is used only as an adjective. It has two forms: **sontem** (accusative, no nominative), which has entirely lost its original meaning of *being, actual, the real man*, and has only the secondary meaning of *guilty*, and **insōns**, *innocent*; and **-sēns** in **absēns**, *away*, **praesēns**, *at hand*, and **dī cōnsentēs**, *gods collective*. **sum** has no gerund or gerundive.

750. A subjunctive present **fuam**, **fuās**, **fuat**, and **fuant** occurs in old Latin, and an imperfect **forem**, **forēs**, **foret**, and **forent**, in all periods. The present infinitive **fore**, *to get to be, become*, has a future meaning. Old forms in the perfect system are **FVVEIT** (28), **FVET**; **fūit**, **fūimus**, **fūerim**, **fūerit**, **fūerint**, **fūisset** (Plaut., Enn.). **fuī** has no perfect participle or supine.

751.

**possum, can.**

Principal parts : <b>possum, posse</b> ; ( <b>potuī, —</b> ).		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>possum, potes, potest</b>	<b>possumus, potestis, possunt</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>poteram, poterās, poterat</b>	<b>poterāmus, poterātis, poterant</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>poterō, poteris, poterit</b>	<b>poterimus, poteritis, poterunt</b>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>possim, possīs, possit</b>	<b>possīmus, possītis, possint</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>possem, possēs, posset</b>	<b>possēmus, possētis, possent</b>
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>posse</b>	<b>—</b>

752. **possum** is formed from **potis** or **pote**, *able*, and **sum**, juxtaposed (396). The separate forms **potis sum**, &c., or **pote sum**, &c., are also used, and sometimes even **potis** or **pote** alone takes the place of a verb; in either case **potis** and **pote** are indeclinable, and are applied to gender words and neuters both.

753. **t** is retained before a vowel, except in **possem**, &c., for **potessem**, &c., and in **posse**; **t** before **s** changes to **s** (145). Old forms are: **possiem**, &c. (748), **potessem**, **potisset**, **potesse**. Rare forms are **POTESTO** (inscr. 58 B.C.), and passives, as **potestur**, &c., with a passive infinitive (1484). **possum** has no participles; the perfect system, **potuī**, &c., is like **fuī**, &c. (745).



(2.) *dō, give, put* (d ā-, d a-).

754. There are two verbs *dō*, one meaning *give*, and one meaning *put*. The *dō* meaning *put* is oftenest used in compounds; the simple verb has been crowded out by *pōnō*. The present system of *dō* is as follows:

Principal parts : <i>dō, dare, dedī, datus.</i>		
ACTIVE VOICE.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dō, dās, dat</i>	<i>damus, datis, dant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>dabam, dabās, dabat</i>	<i>dabāmus, dabātis, dabant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>dabō, dabis, dabit</i>	<i>dabimus, dabitis, dabunt</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dem, dēs, det</i>	<i>dēmus, dētis, dent</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>darem, darēs, daret</i>	<i>darēmus, darētis, darent</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	<i>dā or datō, datō</i>	<i>date or datōte, dantō</i>
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>dāns</i>
GERUND.		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dandī, &amp;c.</i>	
PASSIVE VOICE.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	—, <i>daris or -re, datur</i>	<i>damur, daminī, dantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>dabar, dabāre or -ris, dabātur</i>	<i>dabāmur, dabāminī, dabantur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>dabor, dabere or -ris, dabitur</i>	<i>dabimur, dabiminī, dabuntur</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	—, <i>dēre or -ris, dētur</i>	—, <i>dēminī, dentur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>darer, darēre or -ris, darētur</i>	<i>darēmur, darēminī, darentur</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	<i>dare or dator, dator</i>	<i>daminī, dantor</i>
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>darī</i>	<i>dandus</i>
GERUNDIVE.		

755. In the present system *a* is short throughout in the first syllable, except in *dās* and *dā*. For *dedī*, *datus*, and supines *datum*, *datū*, see 859 and 900.

756. Old forms: with suffix *-nō* (833): *danunt* for *dant*. From another form of the root come *duis*, *duit*; *interduō*, *concrēduō*, perfect *concrēduī*; subjunctive *duim*, *duīs* (*duās*), *duit* and *duint* (841), and compounds, used especially in law language, and in praying and cursing; *crēduam*, *crēduās* or *crēduīs*, *crēduat* or *crēduit*.

757. Real compounds of *dō* have a present system like *regō* (782); in the perfect and the perfect participle, *e* and *a* become *i*: as, *abdō*, *put away*, *abdere*, *abdidī*, *abditus*; *crēdō*, *put trust in*. *perdō*, *fordo*, *destroy*, and *vēndō*, *put for sale*, have gerundives *perdendus*, *vēndundus*, and perfect participles *perditus*, *vēnditus*; the rest of the passive is supplied by forms of *pereō* and *vēneō*. *reddō*, *give back*, has future *reddibō* 3 times (Plaut.). In the apparent compounds with *circum*, *pessum*, *satis*, and *vēnum*, *dō* remains without change, as in 754.

(3.) *bibō*, *serō*, and *sistō*.

758. *bibō*, *drink*, *serō*, *sow*, and *sistō*, *set*, form their present stem by reduplication of the root (189). The vowel before the person endings is the root vowel, which becomes variable, like a formative vowel (824). These verbs have the present system like *regō* (782).

(b.) WITH THE BARE ROOT IN PARTS.

*inquam*, *eō*, and *queō*.

759. *inquam*, *eō*, and *queō* have the bare root as present stem, in almost all their parts; in a few parts only the root is extended by a formative vowel (829).

(1.) *inquam*, *say I*, *quoth I*.

760. *inquam*, *say I*, is chiefly used in quoting a person's direct words; and, from its meaning, is naturally very defective. The only parts in common use are the following:

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>inquam</i> , <i>inquis</i> , <i>inquit</i>	_____, _____, <i>inquiunt</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	_____, <i>inquiēs</i> , <i>inquiet</i>	_____, _____, _____

761. Rare forms are: subjunctive *inquiāt* (Cornif.), indicative imperfect *inquiēbat* (Cic.), used twice each; indicative present *inquimus* (Hor.), perfect *inquiī* (Catull.), *inquiīstī* (Cic.), once each; imperative *inque*, 4 times (Plaut. 2, Ter. 2), *inquitō*, 3 times (Plaut.). For *inquam*, see 728.

762.

(2.) eō, go (ī- for ei-, i-).

Principal parts: eō, īre, iī, itum.

Principal parts : eō, īre, iī, itum.			
	INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.	
<i>Pres.</i>	eō, īs, it	īmus, ītis, eunt	
<i>Imp.</i>	ībam, ībās, ibat	ībāmus, ībātis, ibant	
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō, ībis, ibit	ībimus, ībitis, ibunt	
<i>Perf.</i>	iī, īstī, iīt or īt	iimus, īstis, iērunt or -re	
<i>Plup.</i>	ieram, ierās, ierat	ierāmus, ierātis, ierant	
<i>F. P.</i>	ierō, ieris, ierit	ierimus, ieritis, ierint	
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	eam, eās, eat	eāmus, eātis, eant	
<i>Imp.</i>	īrem, īrēs, īret	irēmus, irētis, irent	
<i>Perf.</i>	ierim, ierīs, ierit	ierīmus, ierītis, ierint	
<i>Plup.</i>	īsem, issēs, isset	issēmus, issētis, issent	
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	ī or itō, itō	īte or itōte, euntō	
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	īre	iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis	
<i>Perf.</i>	isse	itum	
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse	itūrus	
	GERUND.	SUPINE.	
<i>Gen.</i>	eundī		
<i>Dat.</i>	eundō		
<i>Acc.</i>	eundum	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	eundō	—	

763. The passive is only used impersonally, and has a neuter gerundive *eundum* and participle *itum*; but transitive compounds, as *adeō*, *go up to*, have a complete passive: as, *adeor*, *adīris*, &c. *ambiō*, *go round, canvass*, follows denominatives in *-īre* (796), but has once or twice the imperfect *ambibat*, *ambibant*, *ambibātur* (Liv., Tac., Plin. *Ep.*), and once the future *ambibunt* (Plin.); future perfect *ambīssit*, *ambīssint*, once each (prol. Plaut.).

764. The *ī* is weakened from *ei* (88): as, *eis*, *eit*, *eite*, *abeis*, *abei* (Plaut.); *EITVR*, *ABEI*, *ADEITVR* (inscr. 130 B.C.), *VEIRE* (49 B.C.), *PRAETEREIS*. Before *o*, *u*, or *a*, the root becomes *e*. For *u* in *euntis*, see 902.

765. Old forms are: *ierō* (Plaut.), *iī*, *ierat* (Ter.), once each (58); in an inscription of 186 B.C., *ADIESET*, *ADIESENT*, *ADIESE*, and of 146 B.C., *REDIEIT* (105); *INTERIEISTI*. A future in *-iet*, as *trānsiet* (Sen.), is late and rare.



766. Compounds often have a double *i* in the second persons of the perfect indicative, in the pluperfect subjunctive throughout, and in the perfect infinitive: as, *abiistī, abiistis; abissem, &c.; abissem;* oftener still, however, a single long *ī* (105): as, *abīstī, &c.* In the first person of the perfect indicative a single long *ī* is found rarely in late writers in the singular: as, *adī* (Val. Fl.).

767. A few examples are found of a perfect system with *v*, as *ivī, &c.* This form is confined almost exclusively to poetry and late prose.

(*a.*) Examples of simple forms with *v* are: *īverō, īvisse* (Plaut.), *ivīt* (Cato), *ivī* (Ter., Varro), *īverat* (Catull.). (*b.*) Compound forms: *obīvit* (Verg.), *subīvit* (Ov., Stat.); *trānsīvisse* (Claud. ap. Tac.), *inīvimus, trānsīvī, trānsīvimus* (Curt.), *trānsīvit, trānsīverant* (Sen.), *exīvit* (Gell.). Apparent compounds (396): *ante ivīt* (Ov.); *intrō ivīt* (C. Gracch., Piso, Gell.).

(3.) *queō, can.*

768. *queō, can,* and *nequeō, can't,* have the perfect *quīvī*, the rest like *eō* (762); but they have no imperative, gerundive, or future participle, and the present participle is rare. *queō* is commonly used with a negative, and some parts only so. Passive forms are rare, and only used with a passive infinitive (1484).

*edō; volō (nōlō, mālō) and ferō.*

(1.) *edō, eat* (*e d-*, *ē d-*).

769. *edō, eat,* has a present system with a formative vowel like *regō* throughout (782); but in some parts of the present, and of the imperfect subjunctive, parallel root forms occur, with *d* of the root changed to *s* (145, 152), and the vowel lengthened, as may be seen in the following:

Principal parts : <i>edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus.</i>		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>edō, ēs or edis, ēst or edit</i>	<i>edimus, ēstis or editis, edunt</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>edim, edīs, edit</i> <i>or edam, edās, edat</i>	_____, _____, <i>edint</i> <i>or edāmus, edātis, edant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	_____, <i>ēssēs, ēsset</i> <i>or ederem, ederēs, ederet</i>	<i>ēssēmus, _____, ēssent</i> <i>or ederēmus, ederētis, ederent</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	<i>ēs or ede, ēstō or editō</i>	<i>ēste or edite</i>
INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ēsse</i>	<i>edēns</i>

# The Verb: volō, will. [770-774.

770. For ēs, see 728; for edim, &c., 841. In the passive, the indicative present ēstur is used, and imperfect subjunctive ēssētur. The perfect participle ēsus is for an older ēssus (133). Supines ēssum, ēssū (Plaut.).

771. comedō, *eat up*, has also the following root forms: comēs, comēst, comēstis; comēstō; comēsse; comēssēs, comēsset. The present subjunctive has also comedim, comedīs, comedint. The participle perfect is comēssus, comēsus, or comēstus, future comēssūrus. exedō, *eat out*, has exēst and exēsse; subjunctive exedint.

772. volō (nōlō, mālō) and ferō have the bare root in some parts only of the present system; in other parts the root extended by a formative vowel, like regō (782). volō (nōlō, mālō) lack some forms, as will be seen below.

773. (2.) volō, *will, wish, want, am willing* (vol-, vel-).

Principal parts : volō, velle, voluī, ———.			
	INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.	
<i>Pres.</i>	volō, vīs, volt or vult	volumus, vultis or vultis, volunt	
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam, volēbās, volēbat	volēbāmus, volēbātis, volēbant	
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, volet	volēmus, volētis, volent	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī, voluistī, voluit	voluimus, voluistis, voluērunt or -re	
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram, voluerās, volue- rat	voluerāmus, voluerātis, volue- rant	
<i>F. P.</i>	voluerō, volueris, volue- rit	voluerimus, volueritis, volue- rint	
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	velim, velīs, velit	velīmus, velītis, velint	
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem, vellēs, vellet	vellēmus, vellētis, vellent	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim, voluerīs, volue- rit	voluerīmus, voluerītis, volue- rint	
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissē, voluissēs, volu- isset	voluissēmus, voluissētis, volu- issent	
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	volēns	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse		

774. volo for volō is rare (2443). volt and vultis became vult and vultis about the time of Augustus (75). For volumus, see 89; velim, &c., 841; vellem, &c., velle, 146. sīs, *an thou wilt*, is common for sī vīs (Plaut., Ter., Cic., Liv.). sultis, *an't please you*, is used by Plautus for sī vultis.

775. *nōlō*, *won't*, is formed from *nōn*, *not*, and *volō*, juxtaposed, and *mālō*, *like better*, from *magis* or *mage*, *more*, and *volō*, juxtaposed (396).

776. *nōlō*, *won't*, *don't want*, *object*, *am not willing*.

Principal parts : <i>nōlō</i> , <i>nōlle</i> , <i>nōluī</i> , ———.		
	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nōn vīs</i> , <i>nōn volt</i> or <i>vult</i>	<i>nolumus</i> , <i>nōn voltis</i> or <i>vultis</i> , <i>nōlunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i> , <i>nōlēbās</i> , <i>nōlēbat</i>	<i>nōlēbāmus</i> , <i>nōlēbātis</i> , <i>nōlēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	———, <i>nōlēs</i> , <i>nōlet</i>	<i>nōlēmus</i> , <i>nōlētis</i> , <i>nōlent</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>nōlim</i> , <i>nōlīs</i> , <i>nōlit</i>	<i>nōlīmus</i> , <i>nōlītis</i> , <i>nōlint</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>nōllem</i> , <i>nōllēs</i> , <i>nōllet</i>	<i>nōllēmus</i> , <i>nōllētis</i> , <i>nōllent</i>
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	<i>nōlī</i> or <i>nōlītō</i> , <i>nōlītō</i>	<i>nōlīte</i> or <i>nōlītōte</i> , <i>nōluntō</i>
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>nōlle</i>	———

777. *nevīs*, *nevolt*, and *nevellēs*, from *ne-*, *not*, are found in Plautus. *nōlō* has usually no participles, but *nōlēns* is used a few times by late writers (Cels., Luc., Quintil., Ta., Juv., Mart., Plin.). The perfect system, *nōluī*, &c., is like that of *volō* (772).

778. *mālō*, *like better*, *choose rather*.

Principal parts : <i>mālō</i> , <i>mālle</i> , <i>māluī</i> , ———.		
	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mālō</i> , <i>māvīs</i> , <i>māvolt</i> or <i>māvult</i>	<i>mālumus</i> , <i>māvoltis</i> or <i>māvultis</i> , <i>mālunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>mālēbam</i> , <i>mālēbās</i> , <i>mālēbat</i>	<i>mālēbāmus</i> , <i>mālēbātis</i> , <i>mālēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	———, <i>mālēs</i> , <i>mālet</i>	<i>mālēmus</i> , <i>mālētis</i> , <i>mālent</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mālim</i> , <i>mālīs</i> , <i>mālit</i>	<i>mālīmus</i> , <i>mālītis</i> , <i>mālint</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>māllem</i> , <i>māllēs</i> , <i>māllet</i>	<i>māllēmus</i> , <i>māllētis</i> , <i>māllent</i>
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mālle</i>	———

779. Old forms are *māvolō*, *māvolunt*; *māvolet*; *māvelim*, *māvelis*, *māvelit*; *māvellem*. The perfect system, *māluī*, &c., is like that of *volō* (772).



*The Verb: ferō, carry.* [780, 781.]

(3.) ferō, *carry* (f e r-).

780. **ferō**, *carry*, is used only in the present system (720). The other parts are supplied by forms of **tollō**, *lift* (**tōl-**, **tīā-**). The present system of **ferō** is as follows:

Principal parts : <b>ferō, ferre ; (tulī, lātus).</b>		
	ACTIVE VOICE.	
	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert	ferimus, fertis, ferunt
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam, ferēbās, ferēbat	ferēbāmus, ferēbātis, ferēbant
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, feret	ferēmus, ferētis, ferent
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, ferat	ferāmus, ferātis, ferant
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrem, ferrēs, ferret	ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	fer or fertō, fertō	ferite or fertōte, feruntō
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferēns
	GERUND.	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī, &c.	
	PASSIVE VOICE.	
	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris or -re, fertur	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar, ferēbāre or -ris, ferēbātur	ferēbāmur, ferēbāminī, ferēbantur
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar, ferēre or -ris, ferētur	ferēmur, ferēminī, ferentur
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferar, ferāre or -ris, ferātur	ferāmur, ferāminī, ferantur
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrer, ferrēre or -ris, ferrētur	ferrēmur, ferrēminī, ferrentur
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	ferre or fertor, fertor	feriminī, feruntor
	INFINITIVE.	GERUNDIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferrī	ferendus

781. For *tulī*, see 860; the full form *tetulī*, &c., is found in old Latin, and *tolī*, &c., in inscriptions; the compound with *re-* is sometimes *rettulī* and sometimes *rētulī* (861). For the participle *lātus*, see 125.

## (B.) VERBS IN -ere.

*The Third Conjugation.*

782.

regō, rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus

ACTIVE VOICE.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT TENSE.	
Singular.	Plural.
regō, <i>I rule, or am ruling</i>	regimus, <i>we rule, or are ruling</i>
regis, <i>thou rulest, or art ruling</i>	regitis, <i>you rule, or are ruling</i>
regit, <i>he rules, or is ruling</i>	regunt, <i>they rule, or are ruling</i>
IMPERFECT TENSE.	
regēbam, <i>I was ruling, or I ruled</i>	regēbāmus, <i>we were ruling, or we ruled</i>
regēbās, <i>thou wert ruling, or thou ruledst</i>	regēbātis, <i>you were ruling, or you ruled</i>
regēbat, <i>he was ruling, or he ruled</i>	regēbant, <i>they were ruling, or they ruled</i>
FUTURE TENSE.	
regam, <i>I shall rule</i>	regēmus, <i>we shall rule</i>
regēs, <i>thou wilt rule</i>	regētis, <i>you will rule</i>
reget, <i>he will rule</i>	regent, <i>they will rule</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	
rēxī, <i>I have ruled, or I ruled</i>	rēximus, <i>we have ruled, or we ruled</i>
rēxistī, <i>thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst</i>	rēxistis, <i>you have ruled, or you ruled</i>
rēxit, <i>he has ruled, or he ruled</i>	rēxērunt or -re, <i>they have ruled, or they ruled</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
rēxeram, <i>I had ruled</i>	rēxerāmus, <i>we had ruled</i>
rēxerās, <i>thou hadst ruled</i>	rēxerātis, <i>you had ruled</i>
rēxerat, <i>he had ruled</i>	rēxerant, <i>they had ruled</i>
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	
rēxerō, <i>I shall have ruled</i>	rēxerimus, <i>we shall have ruled</i>
rēxeris, <i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	rēxeritis, <i>you will have ruled</i>
rēxerit, <i>he will have ruled</i>	rēxerint, <i>they will have ruled</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
regam, <i>may I rule</i>	regāmus, <i>let us rule</i>
regās, <i>mayst thou rule</i>	regātis, <i>may you rule</i>
regat, <i>let him rule</i>	regant, <i>let them rule</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

regerem, <i>I should rule</i>	regerēmus, <i>we should rule</i>
regerēs, <i>thou wouldst rule</i>	regerētis, <i>you would rule</i>
regeret, <i>he would rule</i>	regerent, <i>they would rule</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

rēxerim, <i>I may have ruled</i>	rēxerīmus, <i>we may have ruled</i>
rēxerīs, <i>thou mayst have ruled</i>	rēxerītis, <i>you may have ruled</i>
rēxerit, <i>he may have ruled</i>	rēxerint, <i>they may have ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rēxissem, <i>I should have ruled</i>	rēxissēmus, <i>we should have ruled</i>
rēxissēs, <i>thou wouldst have ruled</i>	rēxissētis, <i>you would have ruled</i>
rēxisset, <i>he would have ruled</i>	rēxissent, <i>they would have ruled</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

rege or regitō, <i>rule, thou shalt rule</i>	regite or regitōte, <i>rule, you shall rule</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	regere, <i>to rule</i>
Perf.	rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>
Fut.	rēctūrus esse, <i>to be going to rule</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	regēns, <i>ruling</i>
Fut.	rēctūrus, <i>going to rule</i>

GERUND.

Gen.	regendī, <i>of ruling</i>
Dat.	regendō, <i>for ruling</i>
Acc.	regendum, <i>ruling</i>
Abl.	regendō, <i>by ruling</i>

SUPINE.

Acc.	*rēctum, <i>to rule, not used</i>
Abl.	*rēctū, <i>in ruling, not used</i>



## VERBS IN -ere.

*The Third Conjugation.*

783.

**regor**, *am ruled.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

regor, *I am ruled*  
 regeris or -re, *thou art ruled*  
 regitur, *he is ruled*

## Plural.

regimur, *we are ruled*  
 regimini, *you are ruled*  
 reguntur, *they are ruled*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

regēbar, *I was ruled*  
 regēbāre or -ris, *thou wert ruled*  
 regēbātur, *he was ruled*

regēbāmur, *we were ruled*  
 regēbāmini, *you were ruled*  
 regēbantur, *they were ruled*

## FUTURE TENSE.

regar, *I shall be ruled*  
 regēre or -ris, *thou wilt be ruled*  
 regētur, *he will be ruled*

regēmur, *we shall be ruled*  
 regēmini, *you will be ruled*  
 regentur, *they will be ruled*

## PERFECT TENSE.

rēctus sum, *I have been, or was ruled*  
 rēctus es, *thou hast been, or wert ruled*  
 rēctus est, *he has been, or was ruled*

rēctī sumus, *we have been, or were ruled*  
 rēctī estis, *you have been, or were ruled*  
 rēctī sunt, *they have been, or were ruled*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rēctus eram, *I had been ruled*  
 rēctus erās, *thou hadst been ruled*  
 rēctus erat, *he had been ruled*

rēctī erāmus, *we had been ruled*  
 rēctī erātis, *you had been ruled*  
 rēctī erant, *they had been ruled*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

rēctus erō, *I shall have been ruled*  
 rēctus eris, *thou wilt have been ruled*  
 rēctus erit, *he will have been ruled*

rēctī erimus, *we shall have been ruled*  
 rēctī eritis, *you will have been ruled*  
 rēctī erunt, *they will have been ruled*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

regar, *may I be ruled*  
 regāre or -ris, *mayst thou be ruled*  
 regātur, *let him be ruled*

Plural.

regāmur, *may we be ruled*  
 regāmini, *may you be ruled*  
 regantur, *let them be ruled*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

regerer, *I should be ruled*  
 regere or -ris, *thou wouldst be ruled*  
 regeretur, *he would be ruled*

regerēmur, *we should be ruled*  
 regerēmini, *you would be ruled*  
 regerentur, *they would be ruled*

PERFECT TENSE.

rēctus sim, *I may have been ruled*  
 rēctus sis, *thou mayst have been ruled*  
 rēctus sit, *he may have been ruled*

rēcti simus, *we may have been ruled*  
 rēcti sitis, *you may have been ruled*  
 rēcti sint, *they may have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rēctus essem, *I should have been ruled*  
 rēctus essēs, *thou wouldst have been ruled*  
 rēctus esset, *he would have been ruled*

rēcti essēmus, *we should have been ruled*  
 rēcti essētis, *you would have been ruled*  
 rēcti essent, *they would have been ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

regere or regitor, *be ruled, thou shalt be ruled*  
 regitor, *he shall be ruled*

regimini, *be ruled*  
 reguntor, *they shall be ruled*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regī, *to be ruled*  
 Perf. rēctus esse, *to have been ruled*  
 Fut. \*rēctum irī, *to be going to be ruled, not used*

GERUNDIVE.

regendus, *to be ruled*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

rēctus, *ruled*

## VERBS IN -iō, -ere.

784. Verbs in -iō, -ere, as *capiō*, *capere*, *take* (c a p-), drop an *i* in some forms of the present and imperfect. The present system is as follows :

ACTIVE VOICE.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiō</i> , <i>capis</i> , <i>capit</i>	<i>capimus</i> , <i>capitis</i> , <i>capiunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>capiēbam</i> , <i>capiēbās</i> , <i>capīēbat</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i> , <i>capiēbātis</i> , <i>capiēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>capiam</i> , <i>capies</i> , <i>capiet</i>	<i>capiemus</i> , <i>capietis</i> , <i>capient</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiam</i> , <i>capias</i> , <i>capiat</i>	<i>capiamus</i> , <i>capiatis</i> , <i>capiant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>caperem</i> , <i>caperēs</i> , <i>caperet</i>	<i>caperēmus</i> , <i>caperētis</i> , <i>caperent</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	<i>cape</i> or <i>capitō</i> , <i>capitō</i>	<i>capite</i> or <i>capitōte</i> , <i>capiuntō</i>
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>capiēns</i>
GERUND.		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>capiendī</i> , &c.	
PASSIVE VOICE.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capior</i> , <i>caperis</i> or -re, <i>capitur</i>	<i>capimur</i> , <i>capiminī</i> , <i>capiuntur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>capiēbar</i> , <i>capiēbāre</i> or -ris, <i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i> , <i>capiēbāminī</i> , <i>capiēbantur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>capiar</i> , <i>capiere</i> or -ris, <i>capietur</i>	<i>capiemur</i> , <i>capiemini</i> , <i>capientur</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiar</i> , <i>capiāre</i> or -ris, <i>capiātur</i>	<i>capiamur</i> , <i>capiaminī</i> , <i>capiantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>caperer</i> , <i>caperēre</i> or -ris, <i>caperētur</i>	<i>caperēmur</i> , <i>caperēminī</i> , <i>caperentur</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	<i>capere</i> or <i>capitor</i> , <i>capitor</i>	<i>capiminī</i> , <i>capiuntor</i>
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capi</i>	<i>capendus</i>
GERUNDIVE.		



## The Verb: Verbs in -iō, -ere. [785-791.

785. There are a dozen verbs in -iō, -ere, like *capiō*, and three deponents in -ior, -ī, all formed from consonant roots with a short vowel: see 836. *āiō*, *say*, and *fiō*, *grow*, *become*, have certain peculiarities arising from the blending of the root with the suffix.

(1.) *āiō*, *say*, *say ay*, *avouch* (a g-).

786. *āiō*, *say*, is defective, and has only these parts in common use :

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>āiō</i> , <i>ais</i> , <i>ait</i>	——, ——, <i>aiunt</i>
<i>Ind. Imp.</i>	<i>aiēbam</i> , <i>aiēbās</i> , <i>aiēbat</i>	<i>aiēbāmus</i> , <i>aiēbātis</i> , <i>aiēbant</i>
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	——, <i>aiās</i> , <i>aiat</i>	——, ——, ——

787. For *āiō*, sometimes written *aiiō* (22), see 135. Old forms are: present *ais*, *ais*, *ais*, *ais*, or with -n interrogative *ain*, *ain*; *ait*, *ait*, or *ait*; imperfect *aibam*, *aibās*, *aibat*, and *aibant*; imperative once only, *ai* (Naev.). A participle *aiēntibus*, *affirmative*, occurs once (Cic.).

(2.) *fiō*, *become*, *am made*.

788. *fiō*, *become*, and *factus sum* supplement each other: in the present system, the passive of *faciō*, *make*, except the gerundive, *faciendus*, is not used, *fiō*, &c., taking its place; in the perfect system, only *factus sum*, &c., is used.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>fiō</i> , <i>fīs</i> , <i>fit</i>	——, ——, <i>fiunt</i>
<i>Ind. Imp.</i>	<i>fiēbam</i> , <i>fiēbās</i> , <i>fiēbat</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i> , <i>fiēbātis</i> , <i>fiēbant</i>
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	<i>fiam</i> , <i>fiēs</i> , <i>fiet</i>	<i>fiēmus</i> , <i>fiētis</i> , <i>fient</i>
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	<i>fiam</i> , <i>fiās</i> , <i>fiat</i>	<i>fiāmus</i> , <i>fiātis</i> , <i>fiant</i>
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>fierem</i> , <i>fierēs</i> , <i>fieret</i>	<i>fierēmus</i> , <i>fierētis</i> , <i>fierent</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
<i>Infīn. Pres.</i>	<i>fieri</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i> ——

789. In *fiō*, &c., *i* represents an older *ei*, seen in *FEIENT* (inscr. 45 B.C.). The infinitive *fieri* is not a passive form, but represents an older *fieri* (65); twice *fiere* (Enn., Laev.). The vowel before -er- in *fierem*, &c., and *fieri*, is sometimes long in the dramatists where a cretic (— ◡ —) is required, but otherwise always short.

790. -*fiō* is used in apparent compounds (394): as, *patēfit*. In real compounds commonly -*ficiō*: as, *cōnficiō*; but sometimes -*fiō*: as, *cōnfīt*, *cōnfīunt*, *cōnfīat*, *cōnfīeret*, *cōnfīerent*, *cōnfīerī*; *dēfit*, *dēfiet*, *dēfiat*, *dēfierī*; *effit*, *effiant*, *ecfierī*; *īfīt*; *interfiat*, *interfierī*; *superfit*, *superfiat*.

791. Some verbs in -iō, -ere (or -ior, -ī), have occasionally the form of verbs in -īre (or -īrī), in some parts of the present system, oftenest before an *r*, and particularly in the passive infinitive: as,

*fodīrī*, 3 times (Cato, Col. 2), *circumfodīrī* (Col.), *ecfodīrī* (Plaut.); *adgre-dīrī* (*adgredīrier*), 4 times (Plaut.), *prōgredīrī* (Plaut.); *morīrī* 6 times (Plaut. 4, Pomp., Ov.), *ēmorīrī* twice (Plaut., Ter.); *orīrī*, always; *parīre*, twice (Plaut., Enn.); usually *potīrī* (*potīrier*). Also *cupīret* (Lucr.); *adgredīre*, *adgredī-bor*, *adgredīmur* (Plaut.); *morīmur* (Enn.); *orīris* (Varr., Sen.), *adorītur* (Lucil., Lucr.), *orīrētur* (Cic., Nep., Sall., Liv.), *adorīrētur* (Liv., Suet.); *parībis* (Pomp.), *PARIRET* (inscr.); *potīris* (Manil.), *potītur* (Lucil., Ov.), &c., &c.

## II. DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

## (I.) VERBS IN -āre.

*The First Conjugation.*

792.

laudō, *praise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus

---

ACTIVE VOICE.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT TENSE.	
Singular.	Plural.
laudō, <i>I praise, or am praising</i>	laudāmus, <i>we praise, or are praising</i>
laudās, <i>thou praisest, or art praising</i>	laudātis, <i>you praise, or are praising</i>
laudat, <i>he praises, or is praising</i>	laudant, <i>they praise, or are praising</i>
IMPERFECT TENSE.	
laudābam, <i>I was praising, or I praised</i>	laudābāmus, <i>we were praising, or we praised</i>
laudābās, <i>thou wert praising, or thou praisedst</i>	laudābātis, <i>you were praising, or you praised</i>
laudābat, <i>he was praising, or he praised</i>	laudābant, <i>they were praising, or they praised</i>
FUTURE TENSE.	
laudābō, <i>I shall praise</i>	laudābimus, <i>we shall praise</i>
laudābis, <i>thou wilt praise</i>	laudābitis, <i>you will praise</i>
laudābit, <i>he will praise</i>	laudābunt, <i>they will praise</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	
laudāvī, <i>I have praised, or I praised</i>	laudāvimus, <i>we have praised, or we praised</i>
laudāvistī, <i>thou hast praised, or thou praisedst</i>	laudāvistis, <i>you have praised, or you praised</i>
laudāvit, <i>he has praised, or he praised</i>	laudāvērunt or -re, <i>they have praised, or they praised</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
laudāveram, <i>I had praised</i>	laudāverāmus, <i>we had praised</i>
laudāverās, <i>thou hadst praised</i>	laudāverātis, <i>you had praised</i>
laudāverat, <i>he had praised</i>	laudāverant, <i>they had praised</i>
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	
laudāverō, <i>I shall have praised</i>	laudāverimus, <i>we shall have praised</i>
laudāveris, <i>thou wilt have praised</i>	laudāveritis, <i>you will have praised</i>
laudāverit, <i>he will have praised</i>	laudāverint, <i>they will have praised</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

laudem, *may I praise*  
 laudēs, *mayst thou praise*  
 laudet, *let him praise*

Plural.

laudēmus, *let us praise*  
 laudētis, *may you praise*  
 laudent, *let them praise*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

laudārem, *I should praise*  
 laudārēs, *thou wouldst praise*  
 laudāret, *he would praise*

laudārēmus, *we should praise*  
 laudārētis, *you would praise*  
 laudārent, *they would praise*

PERFECT TENSE.

laudāverim, *I may have praised*  
 laudāverīs, *thou mayst have praised*  
 laudāverit, *he may have praised*

laudāverimus, *we may have praised*  
 laudāverītis, *you may have praised*  
 laudāverint, *they may have praised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

laudāvissem, *I should have praised*  
 laudāvissēs, *thou wouldst have praised*  
 laudāvisset, *he would have praised*

laudāvissēmus, *we should have praised*  
 laudāvissētis, *you would have praised*  
 laudāvissent, *they would have praised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

laudā or laudātō, *praise, thou shalt praise*  
 laudātō, *he shall praise*

laudāte or laudātōte, *praise, you shall praise*  
 laudantō, *they shall praise*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudāre, *to praise*  
 Perf. laudāvisse, *to have praised*  
 Fut. laudātūrus esse, *to be going to praise*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. laudāns, *praising*  
 Fut. laudātūrus, *going to praise*

GERUND.

Gen. laudandī, *of praising*  
 Dat. laudandō, *for praising*  
 Acc. laudandum, *praising*  
 Abl. laudandō, *by praising*

SUPINE.

Acc. laudātum, *to praise*  
 Abl. \*laudātū, *in praising, not used*



## VERBS IN -āre.

*The First Conjugation.*

793.

laudor, *am praised.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
laudor, <i>I am praised</i>	laudāmur, <i>we are praised</i>
laudāris or -re, <i>thou art praised</i>	laudāminī, <i>you are praised</i>
laudātur, <i>he is praised</i>	laudantur, <i>they are praised</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

laudābar, <i>I was praised</i>	laudābāmur, <i>we were praised</i>
laudābāre or -ris, <i>thou wert praised</i>	laudābāminī, <i>you were praised</i>
laudābātur, <i>he was praised</i>	laudābantur, <i>they were praised</i>

## FUTURE TENSE.

laudābor, <i>I shall be praised</i>	laudābimur, <i>we shall be praised</i>
laudābere or -ris, <i>thou wilt be praised</i>	laudābiminī, <i>you will be praised</i>
laudābitur, <i>he will be praised</i>	laudābuntur, <i>they will be praised</i>

## PERFECT TENSE.

laudātus sum, <i>I have been, or was praised</i>	laudātī sumus, <i>we have been, or were praised</i>
laudātus es, <i>thou hast been, or wert praised</i>	laudātī estis, <i>you have been, or were praised</i>
laudātus est, <i>he has been, or was praised</i>	laudātī sunt, <i>they have been, or were praised</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

laudātus eram, <i>I had been praised</i>	laudātī erāmus, <i>we had been praised</i>
laudātus erās, <i>thou hadst been praised</i>	laudātī erātis, <i>you had been praised</i>
laudātus erat, <i>he had been praised</i>	laudātī erant, <i>they had been praised</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

laudātus erō, <i>I shall have been praised</i>	laudātī erimus, <i>we shall have been praised</i>
laudātus eris, <i>thou wilt have been praised</i>	laudātī eritis, <i>you will have been praised</i>
laudātus erit, <i>he will have been praised</i>	laudātī erunt, <i>they will have been praised</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

lauder, *may I be praised*  
 laudēre or -ris, *mayst thou be praised*  
 laudētur, *let him be praised*

Plural.

laudēmur, *may we be praised*  
 laudēmini, *may you be praised*  
 laudentur, *let them be praised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

laudārer, *I should be praised*  
 laudārēre or -ris, *thou wouldst be praised*  
 laudārētur, *he would be praised*

laudārēmur, *we should be praised*  
 laudārēmini, *you would be praised*  
 laudārentur, *they would be praised*

PERFECT TENSE.

laudātus sim, *I may have been praised*  
 laudātus sis, *thou mayst have been praised*  
 laudātus sit, *he may have been praised*

laudātī sīmus, *we may have been praised*  
 laudātī sītis, *you may have been praised*  
 laudātī sint, *they may have been praised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

laudātus essem, *I should have been praised*  
 laudātus essēs, *thou wouldst have been praised*  
 laudātus esset, *he would have been praised*

laudātī essēmus, *we should have been praised*  
 laudātī essētis, *you would have been praised*  
 laudātī essent, *they would have been praised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

laudāre or laudātor, *be praised, thou shalt be praised*  
 laudātor, *he shall be praised*

laudāmini, *be praised*  
 laudantor, *they shall be praised*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudārī, *to be praised*  
 Perf. laudātus esse, *to have been praised*  
 Fut. \*laudātum irī, *to be going to be praised, not used*

GERUNDIVE.

laudandus, *to be praised*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

laudātus, *praised*

## (2.) VERBS IN -ēre.

*The Second Conjugation.*

794.

**moneō, advise.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus

---

ACTIVE VOICE.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT TENSE.	
Singular.	Plural.
moneō, <i>I advise, or am advising</i>	monēmus, <i>we advise, or are advising</i>
monēs, <i>thou advisest, or art advising</i>	monētis, <i>you advise, or are advising</i>
monet, <i>he advises, or is advising</i>	monent, <i>they advise, or are advising</i>
IMPERFECT TENSE.	
monēbam, <i>I was advising, or I advised</i>	monēbāmus, <i>we were advising, or we advised</i>
monēbās, <i>thou wert advising, or thou advisedst</i>	monēbātis, <i>you were advising, or you advised</i>
monēbat, <i>he was advising, or he advised</i>	monēbant, <i>they were advising, or they advised</i>
FUTURE TENSE.	
monēbō, <i>I shall advise</i>	monēbimus, <i>we shall advise</i>
monēbis, <i>thou wilt advise</i>	monēbitis, <i>you will advise</i>
monēbit, <i>he will advise</i>	monēbunt, <i>they will advise</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	
monuī, <i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	monuimus, <i>we have advised, or we advised</i>
monuistī, <i>thou hast advised, or thou advisedst</i>	monuistis, <i>you have advised, or you advised</i>
monuit, <i>he has advised, or he advised</i>	monuērunt or -re, <i>they have advised, or they advised</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
monueram, <i>I had advised</i>	monuerāmus, <i>we had advised</i>
monuerās, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	monuerātis, <i>you had advised</i>
monuerat, <i>he had advised</i>	monuerant, <i>they had advised</i>
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	
monuerō, <i>I shall have advised</i>	monuerimus, <i>we shall have advised</i>
monueris, <i>thou wilt have advised</i>	monueritis, <i>you will have advised</i>
monuerit, <i>he will have advised</i>	monuerint, <i>they will have advised</i>



SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

*moneam, may I advise*  
*moneās, mayst thou advise*  
*moneat, let him advise*

Plural.

*moneāmus, let us advise*  
*moneātis, may you advise*  
*moneant, let them advise*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*monērem, I should advise*  
*monērēs, thou wouldst advise*  
*monēret, he would advise*

*monērēmus, we should advise*  
*monērētis, you would advise*  
*monērent, they would advise*

PERFECT TENSE.

*monuerim, I may have advised*  
*monuerīs, thou mayst have advised*  
*monuerit, he may have advised*

*monuerīmus, we may have advised*  
*monuerītis, you may have advised*  
*monuerint, they may have advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*monuissē, I should have advised*  
*monuissēs, thou wouldst have advised*  
*monuisset, he would have advised*

*monuissēmus, we should have advised*  
*monuissētis, you would have advised*  
*monuissent, they would have advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*monē or monētō, advise, thou shalt advise*  
*monētō, he shall advise*

*monēte or monētōte, advise, you shall advise*  
*monentō, they shall advise*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. monēre, to advise*  
*Perf. monuisse, to have advised*  
*Fut. monitūrus esse, to be going to advise*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. monēns, advising*  
*Fut. monitūrus, going to advise*

GERUND.

*Gen. monendī, of advising*  
*Dat. monendō, for advising*  
*Acc. monendum, advising*  
*Abl. monendō, by advising*

SUPINE.

*Acc. \*monitum, to advise, not used*  
*Abl. monitū, in advising*

## VERBS IN -ēre.

*The Second Conjugation.*

795.

**moneor**, *am advised.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

moneor, *I am advised*  
 monēris or -re, *thou art advised*  
 monētur, *he is advised*

## Plural.

monēmur, *we are advised*  
 monēminī, *you are advised*  
 monentur, *they are advised*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

monēbar, *I was advised*  
 monēbāre or -ris, *thou wert advised*  
 monēbātur, *he was advised*

monēbāmur, *we were advised*  
 monēbāminī, *you were advised*  
 monēbantur, *they were advised*

## FUTURE TENSE.

monēbor, *I shall be advised*  
 monēbere or -ris, *thou wilt be advised*  
 monēbitur, *he will be advised*

monēbimur, *we shall be advised*  
 monēbiminī, *you will be advised*  
 monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

## PERFECT TENSE.

monitus sum, *I have been, or was ad-  
vised*  
 monitus es, *thou hast been, or wert  
advised*  
 monitus est, *he has been, or was ad-  
vised*

monitī sumus, *we have been, or were  
advised*  
 monitī estis, *you have been, or were  
advised*  
 monitī sunt, *they have been, or were  
advised*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monitus eram, *I had been advised*  
 monitus erās, *thou hadst been advised*  
 monitus erat, *he had been advised*

monitī erāmus, *we had been advised*  
 monitī erātis, *you had been advised*  
 monitī erant, *they had been advised*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

monitus erō, *I shall have been ad-  
vised*  
 monitus eris, *thou wilt have been  
advised*  
 monitus erit, *he will have been ad-  
vised*

monitī erimus, *we shall have been  
advised*  
 monitī eritis, *you will have been  
advised*  
 monitī erunt, *they will have been  
advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

monēar, *may I be advised*  
 monēāre or -ris, *mayst thou be advised*  
 monēātur, *let him be advised*

Plural.

monēāmur, *may we be advised*  
 monēāmini, *may you be advised*  
 monēantur, *let them be advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

monērer, *I should be advised*  
 monērēre or -ris, *thou wouldst be advised*  
 monērētur, *he would be advised*

monērēmur, *we should be advised*  
 monērēmini, *you would be advised*  
 monērentur, *they would be advised*

PERFECT TENSE.

monitus sim, *I may have been advised*  
 monitus sis, *thou mayst have been advised*  
 monitus sit, *he may have been advised*

monitī sīmus, *we may have been advised*  
 monitī sītis, *you may have been advised*  
 monitī sint, *they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monitus essem, *I should have been advised*  
 monitus essēs, *thou wouldst have been advised*  
 monitus esset, *he would have been advised*

monitī essēmus, *we should have been advised*  
 monitī essētis, *you would have been advised*  
 monitī essent, *they would have been advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

monēre or monētor, *be advised, thou shalt be advised*  
 monētor, *he shall be advised*

monēmini, *be advised*  
 monentor, *they shall be advised*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monērī, *to be advised*  
 Perf. monitus esse, *to have been advised*  
 Fut. \*monitum irī, *to be going to be advised, not used*

GERUNDIVE.

monendus, *to be advised*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

monitus, *advised*



## (3.) VERBS IN -ire.

*The Fourth Conjugation.*

796.

audiō, *hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus

---

ACTIVE VOICE.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT TENSE.	
Singular.	Plural.
audiō, <i>I hear, or am hearing</i>	audīmus, <i>we hear, or are hearing</i>
audīs, <i>thou hearest, or art hearing</i>	audītis, <i>you hear, or are hearing</i>
audit, <i>he hears, or is hearing</i>	audiunt, <i>they hear, or are hearing</i>
IMPERFECT TENSE.	
audiēbam, <i>I was hearing, or I heard</i>	audiēbāmus, <i>we were hearing, or we heard</i>
audiēbās, <i>thou wert hearing, or thou heardst</i>	audiēbātis, <i>you were hearing, or you heard</i>
audiēbat, <i>he was hearing, or he heard</i>	audiēbant, <i>they were hearing, or they heard</i>
FUTURE TENSE.	
audiam, <i>I shall hear</i>	audiēmus, <i>we shall hear</i>
audiēs, <i>thou wilt hear</i>	audiētis, <i>you will hear</i>
audiet, <i>he will hear</i>	audient, <i>they will hear</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	
audīvī, <i>I have heard, or I heard</i>	audīvimus, <i>we have heard, or we heard</i>
audīvisti, <i>thou hast heard, or thou heardst</i>	audīvistis, <i>you have heard, or you heard</i>
audīvit, <i>he has heard, or he heard</i>	audīvērunt or -re, <i>they have heard, or they heard</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
audīveram, <i>I had heard</i>	audīverāmus, <i>we had heard</i>
audīverās, <i>thou hadst heard</i>	audīverātis, <i>you had heard</i>
audīverat, <i>he had heard</i>	audīverant, <i>they had heard</i>
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	
audīverō, <i>I shall have heard</i>	audīverimus, <i>we shall have heard</i>
audīveris, <i>thou wilt have heard</i>	audīveritis, <i>you will have heard</i>
audīverit, <i>he will have heard</i>	audīverint, <i>they will have heard</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
audiam, <i>may I hear</i>	audiāmus, <i>let us hear</i>
audiās, <i>mayst thou hear</i>	audiātis, <i>may you hear</i>
audiat, <i>let him hear</i>	audiant, <i>let them hear</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

audirem, <i>I should hear</i>	audirēmus, <i>we should hear</i>
audirēs, <i>thou wouldst hear</i>	audirētis, <i>you would hear</i>
audiret, <i>he would hear</i>	audirent, <i>they would hear</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audiverim, <i>I may have heard</i>	audiverimus, <i>we may have heard</i>
audiveris, <i>thou mayst have heard</i>	audiveritis, <i>you may have heard</i>
audiverit, <i>he may have heard</i>	audiverint, <i>they may have heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audivissem, <i>I should have heard</i>	audivissēmus, <i>we should have heard</i>
audivissēs, <i>thou wouldst have heard</i>	audivissētis, <i>you would have heard</i>
audivisset, <i>he would have heard</i>	audivissent, <i>they would have heard</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

audi or auditō, <i>hear, thou shalt hear</i>	audite or auditōte, <i>hear, you shall hear</i>
auditō, <i>he shall hear</i>	audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Fres.	audire, <i>to hear</i>
Perf.	audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>
Fut.	auditūrus esse, <i>to be going to hear</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Pres.	audiēns, <i>hearing</i>
Fut.	auditūrus, <i>going to hear</i>

GERUND.

Gen.	audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>
Dat.	audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>
Acc.	audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
Abl.	audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE.

Acc.	auditum, <i>to hear</i>
Abl.	auditū, <i>in hearing</i>

## VERBS IN -ire.

*The Fourth Conjugation.*

797.

audior, *am heard.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
audior, <i>I am heard</i>	audīmur, <i>we are heard</i>
audīris or -re, <i>thou art heard</i>	audīminī, <i>you are heard</i>
audītur, <i>he is heard</i>	audiuntur, <i>they are heard</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

audiēbar, <i>I was heard</i>	audiēbāmur, <i>we were heard</i>
audiēbāre or -ris, <i>thou wert heard</i>	audiēbāminī, <i>you were heard</i>
audiēbātur, <i>he was heard</i>	audiēbantur, <i>they were heard</i>

## FUTURE TENSE.

audiar, <i>I shall be heard</i>	audiēmur, <i>we shall be heard</i>
audiēre or -ris, <i>thou wilt be heard</i>	audiēminī, <i>you will be heard</i>
audiētur, <i>he will be heard</i>	audientur, <i>they will be heard</i>

## PERFECT TENSE.

audītus sum, <i>I have been, or was heard</i>	audītī sumus, <i>we have been, or were heard</i>
audītus es, <i>thou hast been, or wert heard</i>	audītī estis, <i>you have been, or were heard</i>
audītus est, <i>he has been, or was heard</i>	audītī sunt, <i>they have been, or were heard</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audītus eram, <i>I had been heard</i>	audītī erāmus, <i>we had been heard</i>
audītus erās, <i>thou hadst been heard</i>	audītī erātis, <i>you had been heard</i>
audītus erat, <i>he had been heard</i>	audītī erant, <i>they had been heard</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

audītus erō, <i>I shall have been heard</i>	audītī erimus, <i>we shall have been heard</i>
audītus eris, <i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	audītī eritis, <i>you will have been heard</i>
audītus erit, <i>he will have been heard</i>	audītī erunt, <i>they will have been heard</i>



SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

audiar, *may I be heard*  
 audiāre or -ris, *mayst thou be heard*  
 audiātur, *let him be heard*

Plural.

audiāmur, *may we be heard*  
 audiāmini, *may you be heard*  
 audiantur, *let them be heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

audīrer, *I should be heard*  
 audīrere or -ris, *thou wouldst be heard*  
 audīrētur, *he would be heard*

audīrēmur, *we should be heard*  
 audīrēmini, *you would be heard*  
 audīrentur, *they would be heard*

PERFECT TENSE.

audītus sim, *I may have been heard*  
 audītus sis, *thou mayst have been heard*  
 audītus sit, *he may have been heard*

audītī simus, *we may have been heard*  
 audītī sītis, *you may have been heard*  
 audītī sint, *they may have been heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audītus essem, *I should have been heard*  
 audītus essēs, *thou wouldst have been heard*  
 audītus esset, *he would have been heard*

audītī essēmus, *we should have been heard*  
 audītī essētis, *you would have been heard*  
 audītī essent, *they would have been heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

audīre or auditor, *be heard, thou shalt be heard*  
 auditor, *he shall be heard*

audīmini, *be heard*  
 audiuntor, *they shall be heard*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīrī, *to be heard*  
 Perf. audītus esse, *to have been heard*  
 Fut. audītum irī, *to be going to be heard*

GERUNDIVE.

audiendus, *to be heard*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

audītus, *heard*

## THE DEPONENT VERB.

798. Deponents, that is, verbs with passive person endings and a reflexive or an active meaning (725), have these active noun forms: participles, the future infinitive, the gerund, and the supines. The perfect participle is usually active, but sometimes passive. The following is a synopsis of deponents:

PRINCIPAL PARTS.				
queror, <i>complain</i> , querī, questus		mīror, <i>wonder</i> , vereor, <i>fear</i> , partior, <i>share</i> ,	mīrārī, verērī, partīrī,	mīrātus veritus partītus
	I. -ī	II. (1.) -ārī	(2.) -ērī	(3.) -īrī
INDICATIVE MOOD.				
Pres.	queror	mīror	vereor	partior
Imp.	querēbar	mīrābar	verēbar	partiēbar
Fut.	querar	mīrābor	verēbor	partiar
Perf.	questus sum	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	partītus sum
Plup.	questus eram	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	partītus eram
F. P.	questus erō	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	partītus erō
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.				
Pres.	querar	mīrer	verear	partiar
Imp.	quererer	mīrārer	verērer	partīrer
Perf.	questus sim	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	partītus sim
Plup.	questus es- sem	mīrātus es- sem	veritus essem	partītus es- sem
IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
	querere	mīrāre	verēre	partīre
PARTICIPLES.				
Pres.	querēns	mīrāns	verēns	partiēns
Perf.	questus	mīrātus	veritus	partītus
Fut.	questūrus	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	partītūrus
INFINITIVE.				
Pres.	querī	mīrārī	verērī	partīrī
Perf.	questus esse	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	questūrus es- se	mīrātūrus es- se	veritūrus esse	partītūrus es- se
GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.				
Gen.	querendī, &c. querendus	mīrandī, &c. mīrandus	verendī, &c. verendus	partiendī, &c. partiendus
SUPINE.				
Acc.	questum	*mīrātum	*veritum	*partitum
Abl.	*questū	mīrātū	*veritū	*partitū

## The Verb: Periphrastic Forms. [799-803.

799. Three deponents in **-ior**, **-ī**, **gradior**, *walk*, **morior**, *die*, and **patior**, *suffer*, and their compounds, have a present system like the passive of **capiō** (784). But **adgredior** and **prōgredior** and **morior** and **ēmorior** have sometimes the forms of verbs in **-īrī**; for these, and for **orior**, *arise*, **orīrī**, **ortus**, and **potior**, *become master of*, **potīrī**, **potitus**, see 791. By far the largest number of deponents are verbs in **-ārī**, like **mīror**, **mīrārī** (368).

800. Some verbs waver between active and passive person endings: as, **adsentiō**, *agree*, **adsentīre**, and **adsentior**, **adsentīrī**; **populō**, *ravage*, **populāre**, and **populor**, **populārī**: see 1481.

801. A few verbs are deponent in the present system only: as, **dēvortor**, *turn in*, perfect **dēvortī**; **revortor**, *turn back*, perfect **revortī**, but with active perfect participle **revorsus**. Four are deponent in the perfect system only: **fīdō**, *trust*, **fīdere**, **fīsus**, and the compounds, **cōnfīdō**, **diffīdō**; and **audeō**, *dare*, **audēre**, **ausus**, **gaudeō**, *feel glad*, **gaudēre**, **gāvisus**, and **soleō**, *am used*, **solēre**, **solitus**. Most impersonals in **-ēre** have both an active and a deponent form in the perfect system: see 815, 816.

### PERIPHRASTIC FORMS.

802. (1.) The future active participle with a form of **sum** is used to denote an intended or future action: as,

**rēctūrus sum**, *I am going to rule, intend to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>rēctūrus sum, es, est</b>	<b>rēctūrī sumus, estis, sunt</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>rēctūrus eram, erās, erat</b>	<b>rēctūrī erāmus, erātis, erant</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>rēctūrus erō, eris, erit</b>	<b>rēctūrī erimus, eritis, erunt</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>rēctūrus fuī, fuistī, fuit</b>	<b>rēctūrī fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>rēctūrus fueram, fuerās, fuerat</b>	<b>rēctūrī fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant</b>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>rēctūrus sim, sīs, sit</b>	<b>rēctūrī sīmus, sītis, sint</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>rēctūrus essem, essēs, esset</b>	<b>rēctūrī essēmus, essētis, essent</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>rēctūrus fuerim, fuerīs, fuerit</b>	<b>rēctūrī fuerīmus, fuerītis, fuerint</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>rēctūrus fuissēm, fuissēs, fuisset</b>	<b>rēctūrī fuissēmus, fuissētis, fuissent</b>
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>rēctūrus esse</b>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>rēctūrus fuisse</b>	

803. A future perfect is hardly ever used: as, **fuerit vīctūrus** (Sen.). In the imperfect subjunctive, **forem**, **forēs**, **foret**, and **forent** are sometimes used (Nep., Sall., Liv., Vell.).



804. (2.) The gerundive with a form of **sum** is used to denote action which requires to be done : as,

**regendus sum**, *I am to be ruled, must be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>regendus sum, es, est</b>	<b>regendī sumus, estis, sunt</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>regendus eram, erās, erat</b>	<b>regendī erāmus, erātis, erant</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>regendus erō, eris, erit</b>	<b>regendī erimus, eritis, erunt</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>regendus fuī, fuistī, fuit</b>	<b>regendī fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>regendus fueram, fuerās, fuerat</b>	<b>regendī fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant</b>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD		
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>regendus sim, sis, sit</b>	<b>regendī simus, sitis, sint</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>regendus essem, essēs, esset</b>	<b>regendī essēmus, essētis, essent</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>regendus fuerim, fuerīs, fuerit</b>	<b>regendī fuerīmus, fuerītis, fuerint</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>regendus fuissem, fuissēs, fuisset</b>	<b>regendī fuissēmus, fuissētis, fuissent</b>
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>regendus esse</b>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>regendus fuisse</b>	

### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

805. (1.) Some verbs have only a few forms : as,

**inquam**, *quoth I* (760) ; **āiō**, *avouch* (786). See also **apage**, *avaunt, get thee behind me*, **cedo**, *give, tell*, **fārī**, *to lift up one's voice*, **havē** or **avē** and **salvē**, *all hail*, **ovat**, *triumphs*, and **quaesō**, *prithce*, in the dictionary.

806. (2.) Many verbs have only the present system ; such are :

807. (a.) **sum**, *am* (745) ; **ferō**, *carry* (780) ; **fiō**, *grow, become* (788).

808. (b.) Some verbs in **-ere** : **angō**, *throttle*, **bītō**, *go*, **clangō**, *sound*, **claudō** or **claudeō**, *hobble*, **fatiscō**, *gape*, **gliscō**, *wax*, **glūbō**, *peel*, **hiscō**, *gape*, **temnō**, *scorn*, **vādō**, *go*, **vergō**, *slope*. Also many inceptives (834) : as, **dītēscō**, *get rich*, **dulcēscō**, *get sweet*, &c., &c.

809. (c.) Some verbs in **-ēre** : **albeō**, *am white*, **aveō**, *long*, **calveō**, *am bald*, **cāneō**, *am gray*, **clueō**, *am called*, **hight**, **flāveō**, *am yellow*, **hebeō**, *am blunt*, **immineō**, *threaten*, **lacteō**, *suck*, **liveō**, *look dark*, **maereō**, *mourn*, **polleō**, *am strong*, **renīdeō**, *am radiant*, **squāleō**, *am scaly*, **ūmeō**, *am wet*.

810. (d.) Some verbs in **-īre** : **balbūtiō**, *sputter*, **feriō**, *strike*, **ganniō**, *yelp*, **ineptiō**, *am a fool*, **superbiō**, *am stuck up*, **tussiō**, *cough*. Also most desideratives (375).

## The Verb: Defective Verbs. [811-815.]

**811.** Many verbs are not attended by a perfect participle, and lack in consequence the perfect passive system, or, if deponent, the perfect active system.

**812.** (3.) Some verbs have only the perfect system: so particularly *coepī*, *have begun, began* (99); and with a present meaning, *ōdī*, *have come to hate, hate*; and *meminī*, *have called to mind, remember*. The following is a synopsis of these three verbs:

INDICATIVE MOOD.				
	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Active.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coepī</i>	<i>coeptus sum</i>	<i>ōdī</i>	<i>meminī</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>coeperam</i>	<i>coeptus eram</i>	<i>ōderam</i>	<i>memineram</i>
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>coeperō</i>	<i>coeptus erō</i>	<i>ōderō</i>	<i>meminerō</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.				
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coeperim</i>	<i>coeptus sim</i>	<i>ōderim</i>	<i>meminerim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>coepissem</i>	<i>coeptus essem</i>	<i>ōdissem</i>	<i>meminissem</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
<i>Perf.</i>	—	—	—	<i>mementō, me- mentōte</i>
INFINITIVE.				
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coepisse</i>	<i>coeptus esse</i>	<i>ōdisse</i>	<i>meminisse</i>
PARTICIPLES.				
<i>Perf.</i>		<i>coeptus</i>	—	—
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>coeptūrus</i>		<i>ōsūrus</i>	—

**813.** A few forms of the present system of *coepī* occur in old writers: as, *coepiō* (Plaut.), *coepiam* (Caec., Cato), *coepiat* (Plaut.), *coeperet* (Ter.), and *coepere* (Plaut.); perfect once *coēpit* (Lucr.). *ōsus sum* or *fuī* (Plaut., C. Gracch., Gell.), *exōsus sum* (Verg., Sen., Curt., Gell.), and *perōsus sum* (Suet., Col., Quint.), are sometimes used as deponents. *meminī* is the only verb which has a perfect imperative active. *ōdī* and *meminī* have no passive.

**814.** *coeptūrus* is rather rare and late (Liv. 2, Plin., Suet.), once as future infinitive (Quint.); and *ōsūrus* is very rare (Cic., Gell.). *exōsus* and *perōsus*, as active participles, *hating bitterly*, are not uncommon in writers of the empire; the simple *ōsus* is not used as a participle.

**815.** (4.) Impersonal verbs have usually only the third person singular, and the infinitive present and perfect: as,

(a.) *pluit*, *it rains*, *tonat*, *it thunders*, and other verbs denoting the operations of nature. (b.) Also a few verbs in *-ēre* denoting feeling: as, *miseret* (or *miserētur*, *miserēscit*), *it distresses*, *miseritum est*; *paenitet*, *it repents*, *paenituit*; *piget*, *it grieves*, *piguit* or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *it shames*, *puduit* or *puditum est*; *taedet*, *it is a bore*, *taesum est*.

816. Some other verbs, less correctly called impersonal, with an infinitive or a sentence as subject, are likewise defective: as,

lubet or libet, *it suits*, lubitum or libitum est, lubuit or libuit; licet, *it is allowed*, licuit or licitum est; oportet, *it is proper*, oportuit; rē fert or rēfert, *it concerns*, rē ferre or rēferre, rē tulit or rētulit. For the impersonal use of the third person singular passive, as pūgnātur, *there is fighting*, pūgnandum est, *there must be fighting*, see 724.

817. Of the impersonals in -ēre, some have other forms besides the third person singular and the infinitives: as,

paenitēns, *repenting*, paenitendus, *to be regretted*, late; pigendus, *irksome*; pudēns, *modest*, pudendus, *shameful*, pudītūrum, *going to shame*; lubēns or libēns, *with willing mind*, gladly, very common indeed; imperative LICETO, *be it allowed* (inscr. 133-III B.C.), licēns, *unrestrained*, licitus, *allowable*; gerunds pudendum, pudendō, pigendum.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

818. (1.) Some verbs have more than one form of the present stem: thus,

819. (a.) Verbs in -ere have rarely forms of verbs in -ēre in the present system: as, abnueō, *nod no*, abnuēbunt (Enn.), for abnuō, abnuent; congruēre, *to agree* (Ter.), for congruere. For verbs in -iō, -ere (or -ior, -ī), with forms of verbs in -īre (or -īri), see 791. Once pīnsībat (Enn.).

820. (b.) Some verbs in -āre have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ere: as, lavis, *washest*, lavit, &c., for lavās, lavat, &c.; sonit, *sounds*, sonunt, for sonat, sonant. Others have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ēre: as, dēnseō, *thicken*, dēnsērī, for dēnsō, dēnsārī.

821. (c.) Some verbs in -ēre have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ere: as, fervit, *boils*, fervont, for fervet, fervent. See also fulgeō, oleō, scateō, strideō, tergeō, tueor in the dictionary. cieō, *set a going*, sometimes has a present stem in -īre, particularly in compounds: as, cīmus, ciunt, for ciēmus, cient.

822. (d.) Some verbs in -īre have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ere: as, ēvenunt, *turn out*, for ēveniunt; ēvenat, ēvenant, for ēveniat, ēveniant, and advenat, pervenat, for adveniat, perveniat (Plaut.).

823. (2.) Some verbs have more than one form of the perfect stem: as,

eō, *go*, old iī (765), common iī, rarely ivī (767); pluit, *it rains*, pluit, sometimes plūvit. See also pangō, parcō, clepō, vollō or vellō, intellegō, pōnō, nectō, and adnectō, saliō and īnsiliō, applicō, explicō and implicō, dīmicō and necō in the dictionary. Some compound verbs have a form of the perfect which is different from that of the simple verb: as, canō, *make music*, cecinī, concinui, occinui; pungō, *punch*, pupugī, compunxi, expunxi; legō, *pick up*, lēgī, dilēxi, intellēxi, neglēxi; emō, *take, buy*, ēmī (adēmī, exēmī), cōmpsi, dēmpsi, prōmpsi, sūmpsi.



## FORMATION OF STEMS.

### VARIABLE VOWEL.

824. The final vowel of a tense stem is said to be *variable* when it is -o- in some of the forms, and -u-, -e-, or -i- in others.

825. The sign for the variable vowel is -o|e-: thus, *rego|e-*, which may be read 'rego- or rege-', represents *rego-* or *regu-*, *rege-* or *regi-*, as seen in *rego-r* or *regu-nt*, *rege-re* or *regi-t*.

826. The variable vowel occurs in the present of verbs in -ere, except in the subjunctive, in the future in -bō or -bor, and in the future perfect, as may be seen in the paradigms. It is usually short; but in the active, o is long: as, *regō*, *laudābō*, *laudāverō*; and poets rarely lengthen i in the second and third person singular of the present. For the future perfect, see 882.

827. In old Latin, the stem vowel of the third person plural of the present was o: as, *COSENTIONT*; o was long retained after v, u, or qu (112): as, *vīvont*, *ruont*, *sequantur*; or, if o was not retained, qu became c: as, *secuntur*.

### I. THE PRESENT SYSTEM.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE STEM.

##### I. PRIMITIVES.

##### (A.) ROOT VERBS.

828. A root without addition is used as the present stem, in the present tense or parts of the present tense, in root verbs (744-781): as,

*es-t, is*; *da-t, gives*; *inqui-t, quoth he*; *i-t, goes*; *nequi-t, can't*; *ēs-t, eats*; *vol-t, will*; *fer-t, carries*. With reduplicated root (189): *bibi-t, drinks*; *seri-t, sows*; *sisti-t, sets*.

##### (B.) VERBS IN -ere.

829. (1.) The present stem of many verbs in -ere is formed by adding a variable vowel -o|e-, which appears in the first person singular active as -ō, to a root ending in a consonant or in two consonants: as,

PRESENT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
<i>rego e-</i>	<i>regō, guide</i>	<i>reg-</i>
<i>verto e-</i>	<i>vertō, turn</i>	<i>vert-</i>

Other examples are: *tegō*, *cover*; *petō*, *make for*; *mergō*, *dip*, *serpō*, *creep*; *pendō*, *hang*; *dicō*, *say*, *fidō*, *trust*, *scribō*, *write*, with long *i* for *ei* (88); *dūcō*, *lead*, with long *ū* for *eu*, *ou* (82); *lūdō*, *play*, with long *ū* for *oi*, *oe* (87); *laedō*, *hit*, *claudō*, *shut*; *rādō*, *scrape*, *cēdō*, *move along*, *figō*, *fix*, *rōdō*, *gnaw*, *glūbō*, *peel*. \**furō*, *rave*; *agō*, *drive*, *alō*, *nurture*. *gignō*, *beget* (*g e n-*, *g n-*), has reduplication, and *sīdō*, *settle*, *light* (*s e d-*, *s d-*), is also the result of an ancient reduplication (189).

830. In some present stems an original consonant has been modified: as, *gerō*, *carry* (*g e s-*), *ūrō*, *burn* (116); *trahō*, *draw* (*t r a g h-*), *vehō*, *cart* (117); or has disappeared: as, *fluō*, *flow* (*f l ū g u-*).

831. Some roots in a mute have a nasal before the mute in the present stem: as, *frangō*, *break* (*f r a g-*). Other examples are: *iungō*, *join*, *linquō*, *leave*, *pangō*, *fix*, *pingō*, *paint*; *findō*, *cleave*, *fundō*, *pour*; *-cumbō*, *lie*, *lambō*, *lick*, *rumpō*, *break* (148). The nasal sometimes runs over into the perfect or perfect participle, or both.

832. (2.) The present stem of many verbs in *-ere* is formed by adding a suffix ending in a variable vowel *-o|e-*, which appears in the first person singular active as *-ō*, to a root: thus, *-nō*, *-scō*, *-tō*, *-iō*: as,

PRESENT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
<i>lin</i> <i>o e-</i>	<i>linō</i> , <i>besmear</i>	<i>li-</i>
<i>crēsc</i> <i>o e-</i>	<i>crēscō</i> , <i>grow</i>	<i>cr ē-</i>
<i>pect</i> <i>o e-</i>	<i>pectō</i> , <i>comb</i>	<i>pec-</i>
<i>capi</i> <i>o e-</i>	<i>capiō</i> , <i>take</i>	<i>cap-</i>

833. (a.) *-nō* is added to roots in a vowel, or in a continuous sound, *-m-*, *-r-*, or *-l-*.

So regularly *linō*, *besmear*, *sinō*, *let*; *temnō*, *scorn*, *cernō*, *sift*, *spernō*, *spurn*, only. Occasionally such forms are found in old Latin from other roots, mostly in the third person plural: as, *danunt* (Naev., Plaut.), *prōdinunt*, *redinunt*, for *prōdeunt*, *redeunt* (Enn.). In a few verbs, *-n* is assimilated (146): as, *tollō*, *lift*. Sometimes the doubled *l* runs into the perfect (855): as, *velli*, *fefellī*. *minuō*, *lessen*, and *sternuō*, *sneeze*, have a longer suffix *-nuo|e-*.

834. (b.) *-scō*, usually meaning 'begin to,' forms presents called *Inceptives* or *Inchoatives*.

*-scō* is attached: first, to roots: as, *nāscor*, *am born*, *nōscō*, *learn*, *pāscō*, *feed*, *scīscō*, *resolve*; consonant roots have *i*, less commonly *ē*, before the suffix: as, *tremiscō* or *tremescō*, *fall a-trembling*, *nancīscor*, *get* (831); but *discō*, *learn* (*dic-*), and *pōscō*, *demand* (*p o r c-*), are shortened (134). Secondly, to a form of the present stem of denominative verbs, especially of those in *-ēre*: as, *clārēscō*, *brighten*; the stem is often assumed only, as in *inveterāscō*, *grow old*, *mātūrēscō*, *get ripe*. Many inceptives are used only in composition: as, *extimēscō*, *get scared*, *obdormiscō*, *drop asleep*.

835. (c.) *-tō* occurs in the following presents from guttural roots: *flectō*, *turn*, *nectō*, *string*, *pectō*, *comb*, *plector*, *am struck*, *amplector*, *hug*, *complector*, *clasp*. From a lingual root *vid-*, comes *visō*, *go to see*, *call on* (153). From vowel roots: *bētō* or *bītō*, *go*, and *metō*, *mow*.

836. (*d.*) -iō is usually added to consonant roots with a short vowel; the following have presents formed by this suffix:

capiō, *take*, cupiō, *want*, faciō, *make*, fodiō, *dig*, fugiō, *run away*, iaciō, *throw*, pariō, *bring forth*, quatiō, *shake*, rapiō, *seize*, sapiō, *have sense*, and their compounds; the compounds of \*laciō, *lure*, and speciō or spiciō, *spy*, and the deponents gradior, *step*, morior, *die*, and patior, *suffer*, and their compounds. For occasional forms like those of verbs in -īre (or -īri), see 791. For āiō, see 786; for fiō, 788.

837. A few present stems are formed by adding a variable vowel -o|e-, for an older -iō|e-, to a vowel root: as,

ruō, *tumble down*, rui-s, rui-t, rui-mus, rui-tis, ruu-nt (97). Vowel roots in -ā-, -ē-, or -ī- have a present stem like that of denominatives: as, stō, *stand*, stā-s, sta-t, stā-mus, stā-tis, sta-nt; fleō, *weep*, flē-s, fle-t, flē-mus, flē-tis, fle-nt; neō, *spin*, has once neu-nt for ne-nt (Tib.); sciō, *know*, scī-s, sci-t, scī-mus, scī-tis, sciu-nt.

838. Most present stems formed by adding the suffix -iō to a root ending in -l-, -r-, or -n-, and all formed by adding -iō to a long syllable, have the form of denominatives in -īre in the present system: as, saliō, *leap*, salīre, aperiō, *open*, aperīre, veniō, *come*, venīre; farciō, *cram*, farcīre.

## II. DENOMINATIVES.

839. The present stem of denominatives is formed by attaching a variable vowel -o|e-, for an older -iō|e-, to a theme consisting of a noun stem: as,

UNCONTRACTED PRESENT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
cēnao e-	cēnō, <i>dine</i>	cēnā-
flōreo e-	flōreō, <i>blossom</i>	flōre-
vestio e-	vestiō, <i>dress</i>	vesti-
acuo e-	acuō, <i>point</i>	acu-

The noun stem ending is often slightly modified in forming the theme: thus, laud- becomes laudā- in laudō for \*laudā-ō, and flōr- becomes flōre- in flōre-ō.

840. In most of the forms, the final vowel of the theme is contracted with the variable vowel: as,

laudō, laudā-s, laudā-mus, laudā-tis; monē-s, monē-mus, monē-tis; audī-s, audī-mus, audī-tis (166). The long ā, ē, or ī, is usually shortened in some of the forms, as may be seen in the paradigms. In a few forms no contraction occurs: as, moneō, audiō, audiū-nt, audie-ntis, &c., audie-ndus, &c. (97). Denominatives from stems in -u-, as acuō, are not contracted, and so have the forms of verbs in -ere (367).

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

841. The suffix of the present subjunctive of sum, *am*, is -ī-, which becomes -i- in some of the persons: si-m, sī-s, si-t, sī-mus, sī-tis, si-nt. So also in the singular and in the third person plural, dui-m, &c. (756), and edi-m, &c. (769), and in all the persons, veli-m, &c. (nōli-m, &c., māli-m, &c.). An old suffix is -iē- (-ie-), in sie-m, siē-s, sie-t, and sie-nt.



842. (1.) The present subjunctive stem of verbs in *-ere*, *-ēre*, and *-īre*, ends in *-ā-*, which becomes *-a-* in some of the persons; this suffix replaces the variable vowel of the indicative: as,

*rega-m*, *regā-s*, *rega-t*, *regā-mus*, *regā-tis*, *rega-nt*; *capia-m*, *capiā-s*, &c.; *monea-m*, *moneā-s*, &c.; *audia-m*, *audiā-s*, &c. *ea-m*, *quea-m*, *fera-m*, and the old *fua-m* (750), also have the formative subjunctive vowel.

843. (2.) The present subjunctive stem of verbs in *-āre* ends in *-ē-*, which becomes *-e-* in some of the persons: as,

*laude-m*, *laudē-s*, *laude-t*, *laudē-mus*, *laudē-tis*, *laude-nt*. *dō*, *give*, also has *de-m*, *dē-s*, &c.

#### IMPERATIVE.

844. Root verbs have a root as imperative stem (745-780): as, *es*, &c., *fer*, &c. But the imperative of *nōlō* has a stem in *-ī-*, like verbs in *-īre*: thus, *nōlī*, *nōlī-tō*, *nōlī-te*, *nōlī-tōte*.

845. The imperative stem of verbs in *-ere*, and of verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, and *-īre*, is the same as that of the indicative: as,

*rege*, *regi-tō*, *regu-ntō*, *rege-re*; *cape*, *capi-tō*, *capiu-ntō*; *fī*; *laudā*, &c.; *monē*, &c.; *audī*, &c.

846. The second person singular imperative active of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō*, is usually *dīc*, *dūc*, and *fac*, respectively, though the full forms, *dīce*, &c., are also used, and are commoner in old Latin. Compounds of *dūcō* may have the short form: as, *ēdūc*. *ingerō* has once *inger* (Catull.). *sciō* has regularly the singular *scī-tō*, plural *scī-tōte*, rarely *scī-te*.

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

847. The imperfect indicative stem ends in *-bā-*, which becomes *-ba-* in some of the persons: as,

*daba-m*, *dabā-s*, *daba-t*, *dabā-mus*, *dabā-tis*, *daba-nt*; *ība-m*; *quība-m*. In verbs in *-ere* and *-ēre*, the suffix is preceded by a form ending in *-ē-*: as, *regēba-m*; *monēba-m*; so also *volēba-m* (*nōlēba-m*, *mālēba-m*), and *ferēba-m*; in verbs in *-iō*, *-ere*, and in *-iō*, *-īre*, by a form ending in *-iē-*: as, *capiēba-m*; *audiēba-m*; in verbs in *-āre*, by one ending in *-ā-*: as, *laudāba-m*. In verse, verbs in *-īre* sometimes have *-ī-* before the suffix (Plaut., Ter., Catull., Lucr., Verg., &c.): as, *audība-t*. *āiō*, *say*, has sometimes *āiba-m*, &c. (787)

848. The suffix of the imperfect indicative of *sum*, *am*, is *-ā-*, which becomes *-a-* in some of the persons; the *s* becomes *r* between the vowels (116): *era-m*, *erā-s*, *era-t*, *erā-mus*, *erā-tis*, *era-nt*.

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

849. The imperfect subjunctive stem ends in *-rē-*, which becomes *-re-* in some of the persons: as,

dare-m, darē-s, dare-t, darē-mus, darē-tis, dare-nt; īre-m, fore-m, ferre-m. In verbs in -ere, the -rē- is preceded by a form ending in -e-: as, regere-m, capere-m; in verbs in -āre, -ēre, and -īre, by one ending in -ā-, -ē-, or -ī-, respectively: as, laudāre-m, monēre-m, audīre-m.

850. The suffix of the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*, *am*, is -sē-, which becomes -se- in some of the persons; esse-m, essē-s, esse-t, essē-mus, essē-tis, esse-nt; so also ēssē-s, &c. (769). volō, *wish*, nōlō, *won't*, and mālō, *prefer*, have velle-m, nōlle-m, and mālle-m respectively (146).

## FUTURE.

851. The future stem of *sum*, *am*, is er<sup>o</sup>|e-: erō, eri-s, eri-t, eri-mus, eri-tis, eru-nt. dō has dabō, eō has ībō, and queō has quībō.

852. (1.) The future stem of verbs in -ere and -īre ends in -a- in the first person singular, otherwise in -ē-, which becomes -e- in some of the persons: as,

rega-m, regē-s, rege-t, regē-mus, regē-tis, rege-nt; capia-m, capiē-s, &c.; audia-m, audiē-s, &c. The first person singular is not a future form, but the subjunctive present, used with a future meaning (842); an old form in -e- is also quoted: dīce-m, facie-m (Cato). Verbs in -īre sometimes have -bō|e-, chiefly in the dramatists: as, scībō, opperībō-r (Plaut., Ter.), lēnību-nt (Prop.); rarely verbs in -ere (819): as, exsūgēbō (Plaut.). For reddībō, instead of the usual reddam, see 757.

853. (2.) The future stem of verbs in -āre and -ēre ends in -bō|e-, which is preceded by a form ending in long -ā- or -ē- respectively: as,

laudābō, laudābi-s, laudābi-t, laudābi-mus, laudābi-tis, laudābu-nt. monēbō, monēbi-s, &c.

## II. THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

### PERFECT INDICATIVE STEM.

854. There are two kinds of perfect stems: (A.) Some verbs have as perfect stem a root, generally with some modification, but without a suffix (858-866). (B.) Some perfects are formed with a suffix, -s-, or -v- or -u- (867-875).

855. Some perfects of primitives are formed not from a root, but from the present stem without the formative vowel, treated as a root: as, *prehendī*, *seized*, from *prehend-* (866); *poposcī*, *asked*, *fefellī*, *deceived* (858); *iūnxī*, *joined* (867).

856. The first person of the perfect ends in -ī, sometimes written *ei* (29). -t, -stī, sometimes written -stei (29), -stis, and -mus are preceded by short *i*; -re is always, and -runt is usually, preceded by long ē: as, rēxī, rēxi-stī, rēxi-t, rēxi-mus, rēxi-stis, rēxē-runt (rēxe-runt), or rēxē-re.

857. Sometimes -t is preceded by long ī: as, iūt, petiūt, REDIEIT (29). -runt is sometimes preceded by short e (Plaut., Ter., Lucr., Hor., Ov., Verg., Phaedr.).

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

858. (1.) Some verbs in -ere form their perfect stem by prefixing to the root its initial consonant with the following vowel, which, if a, is usually represented by e; this is called the *Reduplicated Perfect*, and the first syllable is called the *Reduplication*: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
pu-pug-	pungō, <i>punch</i>	pug-
pe-pig-	pangō, <i>fix</i>	pag-

Other examples are: cadō, *fall*, cecidī (ca d-, 74); pariō, *bring forth*, peperī (pa r-, 73); pellō, *push*, pepulī (po l-, 75); poscō, *demand*, poposcī (855); fallō, *deceive*, fefellī (855, 73); see also 923-932. caedō, *cut*, has cecidī (86); and a few old forms are quoted from verbs having an o or an u in the root with e in the reduplication: as, memordī, pepugī.

859. Four verbs with vowel roots also have a reduplicated perfect stem: dō, *give, put*, dare, dedī; bibō, *drink*, bibere, bibī; stō, *stand*, stāre, steti, and sistō, *set*, sistere, -stitī, rarely stitī. Also four verbs in -ēre: mordeō, *bite*, momordī, pendeō, *hang*, pependī, spondeō, *promise*, spopondī, tondeō, *clip*, -totondī. In the root syllable of spopondī, *promised*, steti, *stood*, stitī, *set*, and the old scicidī, *clove*, an s is dropped (133).

860. In compounds the reduplication is commonly dropped; as, cecidī, *fell*, compound concidī, *tumbled down*. Compounds of cucurrī, *ran*, sometimes retain the reduplication: as, prōcucurrī. Compounds of bibī, *drank*, didicī, *learned*, poposcī, *asked*, stitī, *set*, steti, *stood*, and dedī, *gave, put*, retain it, the last two weakening e to i: as, restitī, *staid back*. abscondidī, *hid away*, usually becomes abscondī; in apparent compounds, e is usually retained: as, circum steti, *stood round*, vēnum dedī, *put for sale*. The reduplication is also lost in the simple verbs tulī, *carried*, old tetulī, and in scindō, *split*, scidī, which last is rare as a simple verb.

861. Some compounds with re- drop only the vowel of the reduplication (95): as, reccidī, *fell back*; rettulī, *brought back*, also rētulī; repperī, *found*; retutidī, *beat back*. Some perfects occur only in composition: as, percellō, *knock down*, perculī; contundō, *smash to pieces*, contudī; diffindō, *split apart*, diffidī; but fidī also occurs a couple of times as a simple verb.

862. (2.) Some verbs in -ere have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
ēd-	edō, <i>eat</i>	ed-
lēg-	legō, <i>pick up, read</i>	leg-

Other examples are: fodiō, *dig*, fōdī; fundō, *pour*, fūdī; linguō, *leave*, liquī; see 936-946. Three verbs in -ēre also have this form, sedeō, *sit*, sēdī, strīdeō, *grate*, strīdī, videō, *see*, vidī; and one in -īre, veniō, *come*, vēnī.



## The Verb: Perfect Stem. [863-868.]

863. The following verbs in *-ere* with *a* in the present stem, have long *ē* in the perfect stem:

*agō, do, ēgī, frangō, break, frēgī, pangō, fix, rarely pēgī, but always compēgī, impēgī, oppēgī; capiō, take, cēpī, faciō, make, fēcī, iaciō, throw, iēcī.* So also the old *co-ēpī, began, common coepī.*

864. Two verbs in *-āre* and some in *-ēre* have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in *-v-* and has a long vowel: *iuuō, help, iuuāre, iūvī, lavō, wash, lavāre or lavere, lāvī; caveō, look out, cavēre, cāvī; see 996.*

865. Verbs in *-uō, -uere*, both primitives and denominatives, have usually a perfect stem in short *u* of the theme (57): as, *luō, pay, luī; acuō, sharpen, acui: see 947, 948.* Forms with long *ū* are old and rare (58): as, *fūī, adnūī, cōstitūī, institūī. fluō, flow, and struō, pile, have flūxī and strūxī (830).*

866. (3.) Some verbs in *-ere* from roots ending in two consonants have a perfect stem consisting of the root: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
mand-	mandō, <i>chew</i>	m a n d-
pand-	pandō, <i>open</i>	p a n d-

Other examples are: *vortō or vertō, turn, vortī or vertī; scandō, climb, -scendī; prehendō, seize, prehendi (855); vollō or vellō, pluck, vollī or vellī; see 949-951.* Similarly *ferveō, boil, fervere or fervēre, has fervi or ferbuī (823), and prandeō, lunch, prandēre, has prandī.*

### (B.) PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*, OR IN *-v-* OR *-u-*.

#### PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*.

867. Many verbs in *-ere* form their perfect stem by adding the suffix *-s-* to a root, which generally ends in a mute: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
carp-s-	carpō, <i>pluck</i>	c a r p-
scalp-s-	scalpō, <i>dig</i>	s c a l p-
ges-s-	gerō, <i>bear</i>	g e s-
dix-	dīcō, <i>say</i>	d i c-

Other examples are: *dūcō, lead, dūxī (47); fingō, mould, finxī (855); lūdō, play, lūsī (137); scribō, write, scripsī (149); struō, pile, strūxī (149); vivō, live, vixī (88).* Some verbs with a short vowel in the present, have a long vowel in the perfect: as, *regō, guide, rēxī (149); intellegō, understand, intellēxī (823); tegō, cover, tēxī; iungō, join, iūnxī (855).* And some verbs with a long vowel in the present, have a short vowel in the perfect: as, *ūrō, burn, ussī (830). See 952-961.*

868. Some verbs in *-ēre* also have a perfect in *-s-*: as, *algeō, am cold, alsī (136); haereō, stick, haesī (133): see 999, 1000.* Also some in *-īre*: as, *sarciō, patch, sarsī (136): see 1014, 1015.*

## PERFECT STEM IN -v- OR -u-.

869. (1.) Some verbs in -ere, with vowel roots, and almost all verbs in -āre or -īre, form their perfect stem by adding the suffix -v- to a theme ending in a long vowel: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
crē-v-	crēscō, <i>grow</i>	crē-
laudā-v-	laudō, <i>praise</i>	laudā-
audī-v-	audiō, <i>hear</i>	audī-

For other verbs in -ere with a perfect stem in -v-, and particularly *terō*, *cernō*, *spernō*, and *sternō*, see 962-970.

870. A few verbs in -ere have a perfect stem in -v- attached to a presumed theme in long ī: as, *cupiō*, *want*, *cupivī*; *petō*, *aim at*, *petivī*; *quaerō*, *inquire*, *quaesivī*; *arcēssō*, *fetch*, *arcēssivī*; see 966-970.

871. A few verbs in -ēre also have a perfect stem in -v-: as, *fleō*, *weep*, *flēre*, *flēvī*; see 1001-1003. And three verbs in -ēscere have a perfect stem in -v- attached to a presumed theme in long ē: *-olēscō*, *grow*, *-olēvī*; *quiēscō*, *get quiet*, *quiēvī*; *suēscō*, *get used*, *suēvī*.

872. One verb in -āscere has a perfect stem in -v- attached to a presumed theme in long ā: *advesperāscit*, *it gets dusk*, *advesperāvit*.

873. (2.) Many verbs in -ere form their perfect stem by adding the suffix -u- to a consonant root: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
al-u-	alō, <i>nurture</i>	al-
gen-u-	gignō, <i>beget</i>	gen-

Other examples are: *colō*, *cultivate*, *coluī*; *cōnsulō*, *consult*, *cōnsulūi*; *-cumbō*, *lie*, *-cubuī*; *fremō*, *roar*, *fremuī*; *ēliciō*, *draw out*, *ēlicuī*; *molō*, *grind*, *moluī*; *rapiō*, *snatch*, *rapuī*; *serō*, *string*, *-seruī*; *stertō*, *snore*, *-stertuī*; *strepō*, *make a racket*, *strepuī*; *texō*, *weave*, *texuī*; *volō*, *will*, *voluī*; *compescō*, *check*, *compescuī* (855); see 971-976.

874. Some verbs in -āre also have a perfect stem in -u-: as, *crepō*, *rattle*, *crepāre*, *crepuī* (993); and many in -ēre: as, *moneō*, *warn*, *monēre*, *monuī*: see 1004-1006; also four in -īre: as, *saliō*, *leap*, *salire*, *saluī* (1019).

875. Very few verbs have a perfect stem in -u- formed from a noun stem: as, *mātūrēscō*, *get ripe*, *mātūruī* (*mātūro-*); *nigrēscō*, *get black*, *nigruī* (*nigro-*).

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

876. The perfect subjunctive stem ends in -erī-, for which -eri- is sometimes used: as,

*rēxeri-m*, *rēxerī-s*, *rēxeri-t*, *rēxerī-mus*, *rēxerī-tis*, *rēxeri-nt*.

877. In the perfect subjunctive, long *ī* is found before the person endings -s, -mus, and -tis, some 25 times, as follows: -īs, 18 times (Plaut. 3, Pac., Enn., Ter., Hor., Tib., Sen., inscr., once each, Ov. 8), -īmus, 4 times (Plaut. 3, Ter. 1), -ītis, 3 times (Plaut. 2, Enn. 1).

878. In the perfect subjunctive, short *i* is found, as in the future perfect, some 9 times, thus: -is, 8 times (Plaut. in anapests 3, Verg. 2, Hor. 3), -imus once (Verg.). But before -tis, short *i* is not found.

#### PERFECT IMPERATIVE.

879. One verb only, *meminī*, *remember*, has a perfect imperative; in this imperative, the person endings are not preceded by a vowel, thus: *memen-tō*, *memen-tōte*.

#### PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

880. The pluperfect indicative stem ends in -erā-, which becomes -era- in some of the persons: as,

*rēxera-m*, *rēxerā-s*, *rēxera-t*, *rēxerā-mus*, *rēxerā-tis*, *rēxera-nt*.

#### PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

881. The pluperfect subjunctive stem ends in -issē-, which becomes -isse- in some of the persons: as,

*rēxisse-m*, *rēxissē-s*, *rēxisse-t*, *rēxissē-mus*, *rēxissē-tis*, *rēxisse-nt*.

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

882. The future perfect stem ends in -erō- and -eri-: as,

*rēxerō*, *rēxeri-s*, *rēxeri-t*, *rēxeri-mus*, *rēxeri-tis*, *rēxeri-nt*.

883. In the future perfect, short *i* is found before the person endings -s, -mus, and -tis, some 40 times, as follows: -is, 29 times (Plaut. 2, Cic. 1, Catull. 1, Verg. 7, Hor. 12, Ov. 4, Germ. 1, Juv. 1); -imus, 3 times (Plaut., Ter., Lucr.); -itis, 8 times (Enn. 1, Plaut. 5, Ov. 2).

884. In the future perfect, long *ī* is found, as in the perfect subjunctive, some 33 times, thus: -īs, 28 times (Plaut. 3, Hor. 5, Ov. 15, Prop., Stat., Mart., Priap., inscr., once each), -īmus, once (Catull.), -ītis, 4 times (Ov. 3, Priap. 1).

---

#### SHORT OR OLD FORMS.

885. (I.) Some shorter forms in the perfect system are principally found in old Latin.

886. (a.) Shorter forms in the perfect indicative, the pluperfect subjunctive, and the infinitive, most of them from perfects in -s- (867), occur chiefly in verse: thus,

Perfect indicative, second person singular, common: as, *dixtī* (Plaut., Ter., Cic.); plural, rare: as, *accestis* (Verg.). Pluperfect subjunctive singular, not very common: as, *exstinxem* (Verg.), *intellēxēs* (Plaut.), *vīxet* (Verg.); plural, once only, *ērēpsēmus* (Hor.). Infinitive, *dixe* (Plaut.), *cōnsūmpse* (Lucr.).



887. (*b.*) A perfect subjunctive stem in *-sī-* or in *-ssī-*, and a future perfect indicative stem in *-so|e-* or in *-sso|e-*, occur chiefly in old laws and prayers, and in dramatic verse: as,

Perfect subjunctive: *faxim, faxīs, FAXSEIS* (inscr. 145 B.C.), *faxit, faxīmus, faxītis, faxint*; *ausim, ausīs, ausit*; *locāssim, amāssīs, servāssit, amāssint, prohibēssīs, prohibēssit, cohibēssit, licēssit*.

Future perfect indicative: *faxō, faxis, faxit, faxitis, capsō, recepsō, iussō, occisit, capsimus*; *levāssō, invītāssitis, mulcāssitis, exoculāssitis, prohibēssis, prohibēssint*. Denominatives in *-āre* have also, in old Latin, a future perfect infinitive: as, *impetrāssere*.

888. Passive inflections, as future perfect *faxitur, turbāssitur*, deponent *MERCASSITVR* (inscr. 111 B.C.), are very rare; and, indeed, with the exception of *faxō* and *ausim*, even the active forms had become antiquated by 150 B.C. Denominatives in *-īre* never have the above formations. But *ambiō, canvass*, is thought to have a future perfect *ambīssit* twice (Plaut. prol.).

889. (2.) Shortened forms from perfect stems formed by the suffix *-v-* (869) are very common in all periods.

890. (*a.*) In tenses formed from perfect stems in *-āv-*, *-ēv-*, and *-ōv-*, *v* is often dropped before *-is-*, *-ēr-*, or *-er-*, and the vowels thus brought together are contracted: as,

*laudāvistī, laudāstī; laudāvistis, laudāstis; laudāvērunt, laudārunt* (but the form in *-re*, as *laudāvēre*, is never contracted); *laudāverim, laudārim, &c.; laudāveram, laudāram, &c.; laudāvissem, laudāssem, &c.; laudāverō, laudārō, &c.; laudāvisse, laudāsse*.

*-plēvistī, -plēstī; -plēvistis, -plēstis; -plēvērunt, -plērunt; plēverim, -plērim, &c.; -plēveram, -plēram, &c.; -plēvissem, -plēssem, &c.; -plēverō, -plērō, &c.; -plēvisse, -plēsse*.

*nōvistī, nōstī; nōvistis, nōstis; nōvērunt, nōrunt; nōverim, nōrim, &c.; nōveram, nōram, &c.; nōvissem, nōssem, &c.; nōverō* always retains the *v*, but *cōgnōrō, &c.; nōvisse, nōsse*.

891. The verbs in which *v* is not a suffix, but belongs to the root (864), are not thus shortened, except *moveō*, mostly in compounds. *iuvō*, however, has *iuerint* (Catull.), *adiuerō* (Enn.), once each, and twice *adiuerit* (Plaut., Ter.).

892. Contractions in the perfect before *-t* and *-mus* are rare: as, *inrītāt, disturbāt; suēmus* or *sūēmus* (Lucr.), *nōmus* (Enn.), *cōnsuēmus* (Prop.).

893. (*b.*) In tenses formed from perfect stems in *-īv-*, *v* is often dropped before *-is-*, *-ēr-*, or *-er-*; but contraction is common only in the forms which have *-is-*: as,

*audīvistī, audīstī; audīvistis, audīstis; audīvērunt, audiērunt; audīverim, audierim, &c.; audīveram, audieram, &c.; audīvissem, audīssem, &c.; audīverō, audierō, &c.; audīvisse, audīsse*. Sometimes *audiī, audiit, audit*. Intermediate between the long and the short forms are *audierās* and *audierit*, once each (Ter.). In the perfect subjunctive, *sinō* has *sīverīs* (Plaut., Cato), *sīrīs* (Plaut., Cato, Liv.), *sīreis* (Pac.), or *seirīs* (Plaut.), *sīrit* (Plaut., Liv.), *sīrītis* (Plaut.), *sīverint* (Plaut., Curt.), *sierint* (Cic., Curt.), or *sīrint* (Plaut.). *dēsīnō* is thought to have *dēsīmus* in the perfect indicative a couple of times (Sen., Plin. *Ep.*).

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

894. The active infinitive has the ending *-re* in the present, and *-isse* in the perfect : as,

*dare* ; *regere*, *capere* ; *laudāre*, *monēre*, *audire*. *rēxisse* ; *laudāvisse* or *laudāsse*, *monuisse*, *audīvisse* or *audisse*.

895. For *-rē* in old Latin, see 65. The infinitive of *fiō*, *become*, ends in *-rī*, *fīerī*, which is not a passive form ; twice *fiere* (Enn., Laev.). An older form for *-re* is *-se*, found in *esse*, *to be*, *ēsse*, *to eat*, and their compounds. For *velle*, *to wish* (*mālle*, *nōlle*), see 146. In the perfect, *eō*, *go*, sometimes has *-iisse* in compounds (766), and in poetry, *petō*, *go to*, has rarely *petiisse*.

896. The present infinitive passive of verbs in *-ere* has the ending *-ī* ; that of other verbs has *-rī* : as,

*regī*, *capī* ; *laudārī*, *monērī*, *audirī*. *ferō*, *carry*, has *ferrī*. The length of the *ī* is sometimes indicated by the spelling *ei* (29) : as, *DAREI*.

897. A longer form in *-ier* for *-ī*, and *-rier* for *-rī*, is common in old laws and dramatic verse, and occurs sometimes in other poetry : as, *FIGIER*, *to be posted*, *GNOSCIER*, *to be read* (inscr. 186 B.C.) ; *dīcier*, *to be said*, *cūrārier*, *to be looked after* (Plaut.) ; *dominārier*, *to be lord paramount* (Verg.).

898. The place of the perfect passive, future active, and future passive infinitive is supplied by a circumlocution, as seen in the paradigms. For the future perfect *-āssere*, see 887.

GERUNDIVE AND GERUND.

899. The gerundive stem is formed by adding *-ndo-*, nominative *-ndus*, *-nda*, *-ndum*, to the present stem : as,

*dandus*, stem *dando-* ; *regendus*, *capiendus* ; *laudandus*, *monendus*, *audiendus*. Verbs in *-ere* and *-īre* often have *-undus*, when not preceded by *u* or *v*, especially in formal style : as, *capiundus* ; *eō*, *go*, always has *eundum*, and *orior*, *rise*, *oriundus*. For the adjective use, see 288. The gerund is like the oblique cases of the neuter singular. For *-bundus*, see 289 ; *-cundus*, 290.

SUPINE.

900. The supine stem is formed by the suffix *-tu-*, which is often changed to *-su-* (912).

This suffix is attached to a root or to a form of the present stem after the manner of the perfect participle (906) : as, *nūntiātum*, *to report*, *nūntiātū*, *in reporting*, stem *nūntiātu-*. Many of the commonest verbs have no supine : as, *sum*, *eō*, *ferō* ; *regō*, *emō*, *tegō* ; *amō*, *dēleō*, *doceō*, &c., &c.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

901. The present participle stem is formed by adding *-nt-* or *-nti-*, nominative *-ns*, to the present stem : as,

*dāns*, *giving*, stems *dant-*, *danti-* ; *regēns*, *capiēns* ; *laudāns*, *monēns*, *audiēns*.



902. The adjective **sontem** (accusative, no nominative), which was originally the participle of **sum**, has **o** before the suffix, and **absēns** and **praesēns** have **e**; the participle of **eō** has **ē** in the nominative singular, otherwise **u**, **iēns**, **euntis**, &c. **n** rarely drops before **-s** (131): as, **LIBES** (inscr.), **exsultās** (Enn.), **animās** (Lucr.).

903. Some adjectives which were originally present participles have no verb: as, **clēmēns**, *merciful*, **ēlegāns**, *choice*, **ēvidēns**, *clear*, **frequēns**, *thick*, **petulāns**, *wanton*, **recēns**, *fresh*, **repēns**, *sudden*, &c., &c. For **potēns**, *powerful*, see 922.

#### FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

904. The future participle suffix is **-tūro-**, nominative **-tūrus**, **-tūra**, **-tūrum**, which is often changed to **-sūro-**, nominative **-sūrus**, **-sūra**, **-sūrum** (912).

This suffix is added to a theme after the manner of the perfect participle (906): as, **rēctūrus**, *going to guide*; **laudātūrus**, *going to praise*.

905. Some future participles have a different formation from that of the perfect participle: as, **mortuus**, *dead*, **moritūrus**; see also in the dictionary **arguō**, **fruor**, **orior**, **ruō**, **secō**. And some verbs have two forms of the future participle: as, **agnōscō**, **ignōscō**, **hauriō**, **iuvō**, **pariō**. Some verbs which have no perfect participle have a future participle: as, **acquiēscō**, **appāreō**, **ārdeō**, **caleō**, **careō**, **doleō**, **ēsuriō**, **fugiō**, **haereō**, **incidō**, **iaceō**, **-nuō**, **parcō**, **rauciō**, **recidō**, **sonō**, **stō**, **valeō**.

#### PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

906. The perfect participle suffix is **-to-**, nominative **-tus**, **-ta**, **-tum**, which is often changed to **-so-**, nominative **-sus**, **-sa**, **-sum** (912).

907. The perfect participle was originally active as well as passive, and some participles have retained the active meaning: as,

**adultus**, *grown up*; **ēmersus**, *rising out from*; **exōsus**, **perōsus**, *hating bitterly*; **placitus**, *engaging*; **iūrātus**, *sworn*, **coniūrātus**, *conspiring*; **prānsus**, *having lunched*, **cēnātus**, *having dined*, **pōtus**, *drunk*, &c. The perfect participles of deponents are usually active, but sometimes passive: as, **meditātus**, *having studied*, or *studied*. Many verbs are not accompanied by a perfect participle (811), particularly verbs in **-ēre**, with a parallel adjective in **-idus** (287). Intransitive verbs have usually only the neuter. A perfect active participle **meminēns** is said to have been used twice (Plaut., Laev.).

908. The perfect participle is formed in one of two separate ways:

909. (1.) From a theme consisting of a root; in this way the participles of most verbs in **-ere** and **-ēre** are formed: as,

**gestus**, *carried*, **aptus**, *fit*, **solūtus**, *loosed* (113), **iūctus**, *joined* (831), **sparsus**, *sprinkled* (136); **doctus**, *taught*.

910. In some consonant root participles of verbs in **-ere**, **-āre**, or **-ēre**, which have the suffix **-u-** in the perfect stem (873), the **-to-** is preceded by a short **i**: as, **genitus**, *born* (971-976); **domitus**, *tamed* (993); **monitus**, *warned* (1003, 1004, 1009). In old Latin, **e** occurs: as, **MERETA** (inscr.); **e** is retained in **vegetus**, *sprightly*. One participle has **-tuo-**: **mortuus**, *dead*.



## *The Verb : Nouns of the Verb.* [911-919.]

---

911. Some verbs in *-āre* have participles from consonant roots: as, *frictus*, *rubbed*, *fricō*, *fricāre*; see 993. Also some in *-īre*: as, *fartus*, *stuffed* (136), *farcīō*, *farcīre*; *fultus*, *propped*, *fulciō*, *fulcīre*; see 1011-1015, and 1017, 1019, 1020.

912. With some roots in *-d-* or *-t-*, in *-l-*, *-m-*, or *-r-*, and a few others, *-to-* becomes *-so-* (153): as, *fossus*, *dug*; *pulsus*, *pushed*; of two s's one is often dropped: as, *divissus*, *divided*, commonly *divisus*; with some participles always: as, *fisus*, *trusting*; and regularly when the root ends in two consonants: as, *vorsus* or *versus*, *turned*.

913. (2.) From a theme in long *ā* or in long *ī*; in this way participles are regularly formed from denominatives in *-āre* or *-īre* respectively: as,

*laudātus*, *praised*; *audītus*, *heard*.

914. A few perfect participles of verbs in *-ere* are formed from a presumed theme in long *ī*, or long *ē*, or from one in long *ū*: as, *petitus*, *aimed at*; *exolētus*, *grown out*; see 967-970; *tribūtus*, *assigned*; see 947, 948.

915. (1.) Many perfect participles formed from consonant roots have a short root vowel: as,

*adspectus*, *beheld*; *captus*, *taken*; *coctus*, *cooked*; *commentus*, *devising*; *cultus*, *tilled*; *dictus*, *said*, verb *dīcō*; *ductus*, *led*, *dūcō*; *factus*, *made*; *fossus*, *dug*; *gestus*, *carried*; *inlectus*, *allured*; *questus*, *complaining*; *raptus*, *seized*; *tersus*, *neat*; *textus*, *woven*; *vorsus*, *turned*.

916. (2.) Some perfect participles formed from consonant roots have a long root vowel, sometimes even when the vowel of the parallel present stem is short: as,

*fixus*, *fastened*, verb *figō*; *-flictus*, *dashed*, *-flīgō*; *pāstus*, *fed*, *pāscō*; *pollūctus*, *offered up*, *pollūceō*; *scriptus*, *written*, *scribō*; *ūstus*, *burnt*, *ūrō*. Also *āctus*, *driven*, *agō*; *ēemptus*, *bought*, *emō*; *frūctus*, *enjoying*, *fruor*; *lēctus*, *culled*, *legō*; *pīctus*, *painted*, *pingō*; *rēctus*, *ruled*, *regō*; *relictus*, *left*, *relinquō*; *strūctus*, *piled*, *struō*; *tēctus*, *covered*, *tegō*; *ūnctus*, *anointed*, *unguō*; *vīctus*, *conquered*, *vincō*; *ūltus*, *avenging*, *ulcīscor*. Furthermore, *iūnctus*, *joined*, *iungō*; *sānctus*, *hallowed*, *sanciō* (831); also, *fūnctus*, *having performed*, *fungor*.

917. (1.) Most perfect participles formed from vowel roots have a long root vowel: as,

*lātus*, *borne* (125); *nātus*, *born*; *-plētus*, *filled*; *trītus*, *worn*; *nōtus*, *known*; *sūtus*, *sewed*. So also *rūtus*, but only in the law phrase *rūta caesa*, or *rūta et caesa*, *diggings and cuttings*, i.e., *minerals and timber*.

918. (2.) Ten perfect participles formed from vowel roots have a short root vowel; they are:

*citus*, *datus*, *hurried*, *given*  
*itum*, *ratus*, *gone*, *thinking*

*-rutus*, *satus*, *fallen*, *planted*  
*situs*, *status*, *lying*, *set*

*litus*, *quitus*, *besmeared*, *been able*

919. As *citus*, so always *percitus* and *incitus* (once *incītus*, doubtful); usually *concitus*, rarely *concius*; *excitus* and *excītus* equally common; always *accītus*. *ambītus* always has long *ī* (763). *āgnītus*, *recognized*, *cōgnītus*, *known*, and the adjectives *inclūtus* or *inclītus*, *of high renown*, and *putus*, *clean*, have a short root vowel. For *dēfrūtum*, *dēfrutum*, see 62.

## LIST OF VERBS

ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

920. I. The principal parts of root verbs and of verbs in **-ere** are formed in a variety of ways and are best learned separately for every verb (922-986).

921. II. The principal parts of verbs in **-āre**, **-ēre**, and **-īre**, are usually formed as follows :

laudō, <i>praise</i>	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
moneō, <i>advise</i>	monēre	monuī	monitus
audiō, <i>hear</i>	audire	audīvī	auditus

For other formations, see 989-1022.

## I. PRIMITIVE VERBS.

## (A.) ROOT VERBS.

922. Root verbs have their principal parts as follows :

sum, <i>am</i>	esse	_____	_____
_____, <i>become, get, am</i>	fore	fuī	_____

For **fuam**, &c., **forem**, &c., **fore**, see 750. **fuī**, &c., serves as the perfect system of **sum**.

pos-sum, <i>can</i>	pos-se	_____	_____
_____, <i>can</i>	_____	potuī	_____

**potuī**, &c., serves as the perfect system of **possum**. Of the present system of **potuī**, only **potēns**, *powerful*, is used, and only as an adjective.

dō, <i>give, put</i>	dare	dedī	datus
----------------------	------	------	-------

For compounds, see 757.

bibō, <i>drink</i>	bibere	bibī	pōtus
--------------------	--------	------	-------

So the compounds, with the reduplication preserved in the perfect system (860).

serō, <i>sow</i>	serere	sēvī	satus
------------------	--------	------	-------

Compounds have **i** for **a** in the perfect participle : as, **cōn-situs**.

sistō, <i>set</i>	sistere	-stitī, rarely stitī	status
inquam, <i>quoth I</i>	_____	inquiī once	_____
eō, <i>go</i>	īre	īī, very rarely īvī	itum, -itus
queō, <i>can</i>	quīre	quīvī	quitus
ne-queō, <i>can't</i>	ne-quīre	ne-quīvī	ne-quitus
edō, <i>eat</i>	ēsse	ēdī	ēsus
volō, <i>will, wish, want</i>	velle	voluī	_____
nōlō, <i>won't</i>	nōlle	nōluī	_____
mālō, <i>like better</i>	mālle	māluī	_____
ferō, <i>carry</i>	ferre	(tulī)	(lātus)

For **tulī**, old **tetulī**, and **lātus**, see 780 ; for the perfect of **re-ferō**, 861.

(B.) VERBS IN **-ere**.

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

923. (1a.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a reduplicated perfect stem (858), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus** :

924. (a.) With the present stem in **-o|e-** (829).

<b>canō</b> , <i>make music</i>	<b>canere</b>	<b>cecinī</b>	( <b>cantātus</b> )
---------------------------------	---------------	---------------	---------------------

For **con-cinō**, **oc-cinō**, and **prae-cinō**, see 971 and 823.

<b>tendō</b> , <i>stretch</i>	<b>tendere</b>	<b>tetendī</b>	<b>tentus</b>
-------------------------------	----------------	----------------	---------------

For **tennitur** (Ter.), **dis-tennite** (Plaut.), see 146; late participle **tēnsus**. Compounds have **-tendī** (860) and **-tentus**. But sometimes **ex-tēnsus**, and in late writers, **dē-tēnsus**, **dis-tēnsus**, **os-tēnsus**, and **re-tēnsus**.

925. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by **-o|e-** (831).

<b>pangō</b> , <i>fix</i>	<b>pangere</b>	<b>pepigī</b> , <i>agreed</i>	<b>pāctus</b>
---------------------------	----------------	-------------------------------	---------------

In meaning, the perfect **pepigī** corresponds to **pacīscor**; **panxit**, *made, set in verse* (Enn.), **panxerit**, *set* (Col.), **pēgit** (Pac.), **pēgerit** (Cic.), *fixed*, once each. For **com-pingō** and **im-pingō**, see 938.

<b>pungō</b> , <i>punch</i>	<b>pungere</b>	<b>pupugī</b>	<b>punctus</b>
-----------------------------	----------------	---------------	----------------

For **com-pungō** and **ex-pungō**, see 954 and 823.

<b>tangō</b> , <i>touch</i>	<b>tangere</b>	<b>tetigī</b>	<b>tāctus</b>
-----------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

In old Latin: **tagō** (Turp.), **tagit**, **tagam** (Pac.). Compounds have **i** for **a** in the present system: as, **con-tingō**, **con-tingere**, **con-tigī** (860), **con-tāctus**; in old Latin: **at-tigās** (Plaut., Ter., Acc., Pac.), **at-tigat** (Pac.), **at-tigātis** (Plaut., Pac.).

926. (c.) With the present stem in **-lo|e-** (833).

<b>tollō</b> , <i>take off</i>	<b>tollere</b>	( <b>sus-tulī</b> )	( <b>sub-lātus</b> )
--------------------------------	----------------	---------------------	----------------------

As the perfect and perfect participle of **tollō** are appropriated by **ferō**, **tollō** takes those of **sus-tollō**. The original perfect is **tetulī** (860).

927. (d.) With the present stem in **-sco|e-** (834).

<b>discō</b> , <i>learn</i>	<b>discere</b>	<b>didicī</b>	_____
<b>poscō</b> , <i>demand</i>	<b>poscere</b>	<b>poposcī</b>	_____

For **poposcī**, see 855. For **-didicī** and **-poposcī**, see 860.

928. (e.) With the present stem in **-io|e-** (836).

<b>pariō</b> , <i>bring forth</i>	<b>parere</b>	<b>peperi</b>	<b>partus</b>
-----------------------------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

For forms in **-īre**, see 791. **a-periō**, **o-periō**, 1019; **com-periō**, 1012; **re-periō**, 1011.

929. (1 b.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a reduplicated perfect stem (858), and the perfect participle, when used, is **-sus** (912).

930. (a.) With the present stem in **-o|e-** (829).

<b>cadō</b> , <i>fall</i>	<b>cadere</b>	<b>cecidī</b>	<b>-cāsus</b>
---------------------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

Compounds have **i** for **a** in the present system: as, **oc-cidō**, **oc-cidere**, **oc-cidī** (860), **oc-cāsus**. Rarely **e** in the present and perfect systems (Enn., Lucr., Varr.): as, **ac-cedere**, **ac-cedisset**. For the perfect of **re-cidō**, see 861.

<b>caedō</b> , <i>fell, cut</i>	<b>caedere</b>	<b>cecidī</b>	<b>caesus</b>
---------------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

Compounds have **i** for **ae**: as, **ac-cidō**, **ac-cidere**, **ac-cidī** (860), **ac-cīsus**.



parcō, *spare*

parcere

pepercī

pepercī, &c. (regularly in Cic., Caes., Hor., Ov., Mart.; Nep. once; also Plaut. twice, Ter. once). Old **parsī**, &c. (Plaut. 8, Cato, Ter., Nov., Nep., once each); once **parcuit** (Naev.). Compounds: **com-perce** (Plaut.), **con-parsit** (Ter.), **in-perce**, **im-percitō**, **re-percis** (Plaut.), **re-parcent** (Lucr.).

pendō, *weigh, pay*

pendere

pependī

pēnsus

931. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

tundō, *pound*

tundere

tutudī not used

tūnsus

For the perfect of **re-tundō**, see 861; other compounds have the perfect **-tudi** (861), but once **con-tūdit** (Enn.). Perfect participle, **tūsus** (Plin., Mart.); compounds: **con-tūnsus** (Plin.), **con-tūsus** (Cato, Varr., Caes., Lucr., Sal., Verg., &c.); **ob-tūnsus** (Plaut., Verg., Liv., Sen.), **op-tūsus**, **ob-tūsus** (Lucr., Sen., Quintil., Tac.); **per-tūssus** (Plaut.), **per-tūsus** (Cato, Lucr., Liv., Sen., &c.); **re-tūnsus** (Plaut., Verg.), **re-tūsus** (Cic., Lucr., Hor.); **sub-tūsus** (Tib.).

932. (c.) With the present stem in -ro|e-, or -lo|e- (833).

currō, *run*

currere

cucurrī

cursum

For perfect of compounds, see 860.

fallō, *cheat*

fallere

fefellī

falsus

Compound **re-fellō**, **re-fellere**, **re-fellī** (860), ———.

pellō, *push*

pellere

pepulī

pulsus

For the perfect of **re-pellō**, see 861. Other compounds have **-pulī** (860).

933. (1c.) The following verbs in **-ere** have lost the reduplication (861):

934. (a.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

findō, *split apart*

findere

-fidī, rarely fidī

fissus

scindō, *rend*

scindere

-scidī, rarely scidī

scissus

935. (b.) With the present stem in -lo|e- (833).

per-cellō, *knock down*

per-cellere

per-culī

per-culsus

936. (2a.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (862), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

937. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

agō, *drive*

agere

ēgī

āctus

Real compounds have **i** for **a** in the present system: as, **ab-igō**, **ab-igere**, **ab-ēgī**, **ab-āctus**; but **per-agō** retains **a**. **cōgō** and **dēgō** are contracted: **cōgō**, **cōgere**, **co-ēgī**, **co-āctus**; **dēgō**, **dēgere**, ———, ———.

emō, *take, buy*

emere

ēmī

ēemptus

**co-emō** retains **e** in the present system, and usually **inter-emō** and **per-emō**; other compounds have **-imō**. For **cōmō**, **dēmō**, **prēmō**, and **sūmō**, see 952.

———, *strike*

———

īcī

ictus

Forms of the present system are **īcit** (Plaut., Lucr.), **icitur** (Plin.), **īcimur** (Lucr.).

legō, *pick up, read*

legere

lēgī

lēctus

Compounds with **ad**, **inter**, **nec-**, **per**, **prae**, and **re-**, have **-legō** in the present system, others **-ligō**. For **dī-ligō**, **intel-legō**, **neg-legō**, see 952.

## The Verb: List of Verbs. [938-946.

938. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).  
**com-pingo**, *fix together*    **com-pingere**    **com-pēgī**    **com-pāctus**

A compound of **pangō** (925, 823).

**frangō**, *smash*    **frangere**    **frēgī**    **frāctus**

Compounds have i for a in the present system : as, **cōn-fringō**, **cōn-fringere**, **cōn-frēgī**, **cōn-frāctus**.

**im-pingō**, *drive in*    **im-pingere**    **im-pēgī**    **im-pāctus**

A compound of **pangō** (925, 823). So also **op-pēgī**.

**linquo**, *leave*    **linquere**    **līquī**    **-līctus**

**rumpō**, *burst*    **rumpere**    **rūpī**    **ruptus**

So the compounds. But Plautus has **con-rumptus** and **dir-rumptus**.

**vincō**, *conquer*    **vincere**    **vīcī**    **vīctus**

939. (c.) With the present stem in -sco|e- (834).

**pavēscō**, *get afraid*    **pavēscere**    **ex-pāvī**    ———

940. (d.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

**capiō**, *take*    **capere**    **cēpī**    **captus**

Compounds have i for a in the present system and e in the perfect participle : as, **in-cipiō**, **in-cipere**, **in-cēpī**, **in-ceptus**. In the present system, e is rare : as, **re-cepit** (Lucr.); u is frequent in old Latin.

**coepiō**, *begin* rare    **coepere** once    **coepī**    **coeptus**

See 812-814.

**faciō**, *make*    **facere**    **fēcī**    **factus**

For **fac**, see 846; for passive, 788. Compounds have i for a in the present system and e in the perfect participle : as, **ef-ficiō**, **ef-ficere**, **ef-fēcī**, **ef-fectus**.

**fugiō**, *run away*    **fugere**    **fūgī**    ———

**iaciō**, *throw*    **iacere**    **iēcī**    **iactus**

Compounds have -iciō (112), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus : as, **ē-iciō**, **ē-icere**, **ē-iēcī**, **ē-iectus**. In old Latin the present system has rarely -ieciō; -iecere. **dis-siciō** is sometimes used (Lucr., Verg.) for **dis-iciō** (146).

941. (2b.) The following verbs in -ere have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (862), and the perfect participle, when used, in -sus (912).

942. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

**cūdō**, *hammer*    **cūdere**    **-cūdī**    **-cūsus**

943. (b.) With reduplication and -o|e- in the present stem (829).

**sīdō**, *settle*    **sīdere**    **sīdī**, **-sīdī**, **-sēdī**    **-sessus**

944. (c.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

**fundō**, *pour*    **fundere**    **fūdī**    **fūsus**

945. (d.) With the present stem in -so|e- for -to|e- (835).

**visō**, *go to see*    **visere**    **visī**    ———

946. (e.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

**fodiō**, *dig*    **fodere**    **fōdī**    **fossus**

For forms in -īre, see 791.

947. (2 c.) The following verbs in *-ere* (367) with the present stem in *-o|e-* (837, 840), have the perfect stem in *-u-* or in *-v-* of the theme (865), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*:

acuō, <i>sharpen</i>	acuere	acuī	acūtus adjective
arguō, <i>make clear</i>	arguere	arguī	argūtus rare
con-gruō, <i>agree</i>	con-gruere	con-gruī	—
ex-uō, <i>doff</i>	ex-uere	ex-uī	ex-ūtus
im-buō, <i>give a smack of</i>	im-buere	im-buī	im-būtus
ind-uō, <i>don</i>	ind-uere	ind-uī	ind-ūtus
in-gruō, <i>impend</i>	in-gruere	in-gruī	—
luō, <i>pay, atone for</i>	luere	luī	-lūtus, <i>washed</i>
metuō, <i>fear</i>	metuere	metuī	metūtus once
-nuō, <i>nod</i>	-nuere	-nuī	—
pluit, <i>it rains</i>	pluere	pluit, plūvit	—
ruō, <i>tumble down</i>	ruere	ruī	-rutus
so-lvō, <i>loose</i>	so-lvere	so-lvī	so-lūtus
spuō, <i>spit</i>	spuere	-spuī	—
statuō, <i>set</i>	statuere	statuī	statūtus

Compounds have *i* for *a* throughout: as, cōn-stituō, cōn-stituere, &c.

volvō, <i>roll</i>	volvere	volvī	volūtus
suō, <i>sew</i>	suere	-suī	sūtus
tribuō, <i>assign</i>	tribuere	tribuī	tribūtus

948. Two verbs in *-ere* with the present stem in *-nuo|e-* (833), have the perfect stem in *-nu-* (865), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*:

minuō, <i>lessen</i>	minuere	minuī	minūtus
sternuō, <i>sneeze</i>	sternuere	sternuī	—

949. (3.) The following verbs in *-ere* have a perfect stem consisting of a root ending in two consonants (866), and the perfect participle in *-sus* (912):

950. (a.) With the present stem in *-o|e-* (829); most have a nasal (831).

-cendō, <i>light</i>	-cendere	-cendī	-cēnsus
-fendō, <i>hit</i>	-fendere	-fendī	-fēnsus
mandō, <i>chew</i>	mandere	mandī once	mānsus
pandō, <i>open</i>	pandere	pandī	pāssus, pānsus

For *dis-pennite* (Plaut.), see 146. *dis-pandō*, *dis-pendō*, has perfect participle *dis-pessus* (Plaut., Lucr.), *dis-pānsus* (Lucr., Plin., Suet.).

pre-hendō, <i>seize</i>	pre-hendere	pre-hendī	pre-hēnsus
-------------------------	-------------	-----------	------------

Rarely *prae-hendō*; but very often *prēndō*, *prēndere*, *prēndī*, *prēnsus*.

scandō, <i>climb</i>	scandere	-scendī	-scēnsus
----------------------	----------	---------	----------

Compounds have *e* for *a* throughout: as, *dē-scendō*, *dē-scendere*, &c.

vorrō, verrō, <i>sweep</i>	vorrere, verrere	-vorri, -verri	vorsus, versus
vortō, vertō, <i>turn</i>	vortere, vertere	vorti, verti	vorsus, versus

951. (b.) With the present stem in *-lo|e-* (833).

vollō, vellō, <i>tear</i>	vollere, vellere	vollī, vellī	volsus, vulsus
---------------------------	------------------	--------------	----------------

Late perfect *vulsī* (Sen., Luc.); *-vulsī* (Laber., Col., Sen., Luc.).



# The Verb : List of Verbs. [952-953.

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN -s-, OR IN -v- OR -u-.

PERFECT STEM IN -s-.

952. (1a.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -s- (867), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

953. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

carpō, <i>nibble, pluck</i>	carpere	carpsi	carptus
-----------------------------	---------	--------	---------

Compounds have e for a: as, dē-cerpō, dē-cerpere, dē-cerpsi, dē-cerptus.

com-būrō, <i>burn up</i>	com-būrere	com-bussi	com-bustus
cōmō, <i>put up</i>	cōmere	cōmpsi	cōmptus

Compound of com- and emō (937, 823). See also dēmō, prēmō, sūmō.

coquō, <i>cook</i>	coquere	cōxi	coctus
dēmō, <i>take away</i>	dēmere	dēmpsi	dēmptus
dīcō, <i>say</i>	dīcere	dīxi	dictus

For dīc, see 846.

dī-ligō, <i>esteem</i>	dī-ligere	dī-lēxi	dī-lēctus
------------------------	-----------	---------	-----------

Compound of dis- and legō (937, 823). See also intel-legō and neg-legō.

dūcō, <i>lead</i>	dūcere	dūxi	ductus
-------------------	--------	------	--------

For dūc, ē-dūc, see 846.

-fligō, <i>smash</i>	-fligere	-flīxi	-flīctus
----------------------	----------	--------	----------

Of the simple verb, fligit occurs (L. Andr.), fligēbant (Lucr.), and fligī (L. Andr., Acc.).

gerō, <i>carry</i>	gerere	gessi	gestus
intel-legō, <i>understand</i>	intel-legere	intel-lēxi	intel-lēctus
neg-legō, <i>disregard</i>	neg-legere	neg-lēxi	neg-lēctus

In the perfect system very rarely intel-lēgī and neg-lēgī (862, 823).

nūbō, <i>veil, marry (a man)</i>	nūbere	nūpsi	nūpta
prēmō, <i>take out</i>	prēmere	prōmpsi	prōmptus
regō, <i>guide, rule</i>	regere	rēxi	rēctus

In the present system, con-rigō and ē-rigō; commonly por-rigō, sometimes porgō; rarely sur-rigō, commonly surgō; always pergō.

rēpō, <i>creep</i>	rēpere	rēpsi	———
scalpō, <i>dig</i>	scalpere	scalpsi	scalptus
scribō, <i>write</i>	scribere	scripsi	scriptus
sculpō, <i>carve</i>	sculpere	sculpsi	sculptus
struō, <i>build up</i>	struere	struxi	structus
sūgō, <i>suck</i>	sūgere	sūxi	suctus
sūmō, <i>take up</i>	sūmere	sūmpsi	sūmptus
tegō, <i>cover</i>	tegere	tēxi	tēctus
trahō, <i>drag</i>	trahere	trāxi	tractus
ūrō, <i>burn</i>	ūrere	ussi	ūstus
vehō, <i>cart</i>	vehere	vexi	vectus
vīvō, <i>live</i>	vivere	vixi	———

954. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

cingō, <i>gird</i>	cingere	cinxī	cinctus
com-pungō, <i>prick over</i>	com-pungere	com-punxī	com-punctus

A compound of pungō (925, 823).

ē-mungō, <i>clean out</i>	ē-mungere	ē-munxī	ē-munctus
ex-pungō, <i>prick out</i>	ex-pungere	ex-punxī	ex-punctus

A compound of pungō (925, 823).

fingō, <i>mould</i>	figere	finxī	fictus
iungō, <i>join</i>	iungere	iūnxī	iūctus
pingō, <i>paint</i>	pingere	pinxī	pīctus
plangō, <i>beat</i>	plangere	planxī	planctus
stinguō, <i>poke, poke out</i>	stinguere	-stinxī	-stinctus
stringō, <i>peel, graze</i>	stringere	strinxī	strictus
tingō, <i>wet</i>	tingere	tinxī	tinctus
unguō, <i>anoint</i>	unguere	ūnxī	ūctus

Sometimes ungō, ungere, &c., in the present system.

955. (c.) With the present stem in -no|e- (833).

temnō, <i>scorn</i>	temnere	(con-tempsī)	(con-temptus)
---------------------	---------	--------------	---------------

956. (d.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

ad-liciō, <i>lure</i>	ad-licere	ad-lexī	—
in-liciō, <i>inveigle</i>	in-licere	in-lexī	in-lectus
pel-liciō, <i>lead astray</i>	pel-licere	pel-lexī	pel-lectus
-spiciō, <i>spy</i>	-spicere	-spexī	-spectus

Forms of the simple verb are old and rare : as, *specitur*, *spicit*, *spece* (Plaut.), *specimus* (Varr.), *spiciunt* (Cato), *spēxit* (Naev., Enn.).

957. (1 b.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -s- (867), and the perfect participle, when used, in -sus (912):

958. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

cēdō, <i>move along</i>	cēdere	cessī	cessus
claudō, <i>shut</i>	claudere	clausī	clausus

Sometimes clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsus. Compounds have ū for au throughout.

dī-vidō, <i>separate</i>	dī-videre	dī-vīsī	dī-vīsus
fīgō, <i>pin</i>	fīgere	fīxī	fīxus, twice fīctus
fluō, <i>flow</i>	fluere	flūxī	fluxus adjective
laedō, <i>hurt</i>	laedere	laesī	laesus

Compounds have ī for ae throughout : as, in-līdō, in-līdere, &c.

lūdō, <i>play</i>	lūdere	lūsī	lūsus
mittō, <i>send</i>	mittere	mīsī	missus
mergō, <i>dip, duck</i>	mergere	mersī	mersus
plaudō, <i>clap</i>	plaudere	plausī	plausus

Also ap-plaudō, ap-plaudere, &c. Other compounds have usually ō for au throughout : as, ex-plōdō, &c.; but ex-plaudō (Lucr.).

premō, <i>squeeze</i>	premere	pressī	pressus
-----------------------	---------	--------	---------

Compounds have i for e in the present system : as, com-primō, &c.

# The Verb : List of Verbs. [959-964.

rādō, <i>scrape</i>	rādere	rāsī	rāsus
rōdō, <i>gnaw</i>	rōdere	rōsī	rōsus
spargō, <i>scatter</i>	spargere	sparsī	sparsus

Compounds usually have **e** for **a** throughout: as, cōn-spergō, &c.

trūdō, <i>shove</i>	trūdere	trūsī	trūsus
vādō, <i>go</i>	vādere	-vāsī	-vāsus

959. (b.) With the present stem in -scō|e- (834).

algēscō, <i>get cold</i>	algēscere	alsī	_____
ārdēscō, <i>flame out</i>	ārdēscere	ārsī (ex-ārsī)	_____
lūcēscō, <i>grow light</i>	lūcēscere	-lūxī	_____

Sometimes in the present system lūciscō, lūciscere, &c.

frīgēscō, <i>grow cold</i>	frīgēscere	-frīxī	_____
vivēscō, <i>get alive</i>	vivēscere	(re-vīxī)	_____

In composition, also re-viviscō, re-viviscere.

960. (c.) With the present stem in -to|e- (835).

flectō, <i>turn</i>	flectere	flexī	flexus
nectō, <i>bind together</i>	nectere	nexī, nexuī	nexus

Perfect system rare: nexit (Lucil., Acc.); nexuit, ad-nexuerant (Sall.).

pectō, <i>comb</i>	pectere	pexī once	pexus
--------------------	---------	-----------	-------

961. (d.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

quatiō, <i>shake</i>	quatere	-cussī	quassus
----------------------	---------	--------	---------

Compounds have **u** for **a**: as, in-cutiō, in-cutere, in-cussī, in-cussus.

## PERFECT STEM IN -V-.

962. (2 a.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -v-, preceded by a long vowel of the root (869), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

963. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

terō, <i>rub</i>	terere	trīvī	trītus
------------------	--------	-------	--------

Perfect infinitive once in pentameter verse (823) at-teruisse (Tib.).

964. (b.) With the present stem in -no|e- (833).

cernō, <i>sift, separate, see</i>	cernere	crēvī, <i>decided</i>	certus, -crētus
linō, <i>besmear</i>	linere	lēvī, <i>rarely</i> livī	litus

In the present system some forms in -īre are used by late writers.

sinō, <i>leave, let</i>	sinere	sīvī	situs
-------------------------	--------	------	-------

Perfect system forms of sinō and dē-sinō in -v- are: sīvī (Plaut., Ter., Cic.); dē-sīvit (Sen.), sīvistis (Cic.), once each; sīverīs (Plaut., Cato), dē-sīverit (Cato, Gell.), sīverint (Plaut., Curt.), sīvisset (Cic., Liv.). Much oftener without -v-: as, dē-siī (Sen.), sīstī (Plaut., Cic.); dē-sīstī often, siit once (Ter.), dē-siit (Varr., Sen., &c.), dē-sīt (Mart., &c.), dē-siimus (Lent.), dē-sīmus (893), sīstis; dē-siērunt (Cic., Liv.); dē-sierat, dē-sierit (Cic.); dē-sisse, &c., sisset, sissent, dē-sisse. For sīrīs, &c., see 893; for pōnō, 972.

spernō, <i>spurn</i>	spernere	sprēvī	sprētus
sternō, <i>strew</i>	sternere	strāvī	strātus



965. (c.) With the present stem in -sco|e- (834).

crēscō, <i>grow</i>	crēscere	crēvī	crētus
nōscō, <i>get to know</i>	nōscere	nōvī	nōtus adjective

Compounds: ī-gnōscō, ī-gnōvī, ī-gnōtum; ā-gnōscō, ā-gnōvī, ā-gnitus; cō-gnōscō, cō-gnōvī, cō-gnitus; dī-nōscō, dī-nōvī, rarely dī-gnōscō, dī-gnōvī, —; inter-nōscō, inter-nōvī, —. Old passive infinitive GNOSCIER (inscr. 186 B. C.).

pāscō, <i>feed</i>	pāscere	pāvī	pāstus
scīscō, <i>enact</i>	scīscere	scīvī	scītus

966. (2b.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -v-, preceded by the long vowel of a presumed denominative stem (870), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

967. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

petō, <i>aim at</i>	petere	petīvī	petītus
---------------------	--------	--------	---------

In the perfect, sometimes petiī (Cic., Ov., Liv., Val. Fl., Plin. *Ep.*), PETIEI (inscr.), petī late (Sen., Stat.); petiit (Cic., Hor., Tac., Suet.), petīt (Verg., Ov., Phaedr., Sen., Luc., Suet.), petiisse (Verg., Hor., Ov., Val. Fl., Stat.).

quaerō, <i>inquire</i>	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītus
------------------------	----------	----------	-----------

Compounds sometimes retain ae in old Latin, but usually have ī for ae throughout: as, con-quirō, con-quirere, &c.

968. (b.) With the present stem in -sco|e- (834).

ab-olēscō, <i>vanish away</i>	ab-olēscere	ab-olēvī	—
ad-olēscō, <i>grow up</i>	ad-olēscere	ad-olēvī	ad-ultus
con-cupīscō, <i>hanker for</i>	con-cupīscere	con-cupīvī	con-cupītus
-dormīscō, <i>fall asleep</i>	-dormīscere	-dormīvī	—
ex-olēscō, <i>grow out</i>	ex-olēscere	ex-olēvī	ex-olētus
in-veterāscō, <i>get set</i>	in-veterāscere	in-veterāvī	—
obs-olēscō, <i>get worn out</i>	obs-olēscere	obs-olēvī	obs-olētus adj.
quiēscō, <i>get still</i>	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētus adjective
re-sipīscō, <i>come to</i>	re-sipīscere	re-sipīvī	—
suēscō, <i>get used</i>	suēscere	suēvī	suētus
vesperāscit, <i>gets dusk</i>	vesperāscere	vesperāvit	—

969. (c.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

cupiō, <i>want</i>	cupere.	cupīvī	cupītus
--------------------	---------	--------	---------

Once with a form in -īre (791), cupīret (Lucr.).

sapiō, <i>have a smack</i>	sapere	sapīvī	—
----------------------------	--------	--------	---

Compounds have i for a: as, re-sipiō, &c.

970. (d.) With the present stem in -ssō|e- (375).

ar-cēssō, <i>send for</i>	ar-cēssere	ar-cēssīvī	ar-cēssītus
---------------------------	------------	------------	-------------

Sometimes ac-cersō, &c.; infinitive rarely ar-cēssirī or ac-cersirī.

capēssō, <i>undertake</i>	capēssere	capēssīvī	—
facēssō, <i>do, make off</i>	facēssere	facēssīvī	facēssītus

Perfect system rare: facēssierīs or facēsserīs (Cic.), facēssisset (Tac.).

in-cēssō, <i>attack</i>	in-cēssere	in-cēssīvī	—
lacēssō, <i>provoke</i>	lacēssere	lacēssīvī	lacēssītus

# The Verb: List of Verbs. [971-975.

## PERFECT STEM IN -u-.

971. (3.) The following verbs in **-ere** have the perfect stem in **-u-** (873), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**; in some participles **-tus** is preceded by a short **i**, thus, **-itus** (910):

972. (a.) With the present stem in **-o|e-** (829).

<b>alō</b> , <i>bring up</i>	<b>alere</b>	<b>aluī</b>	<b>altus</b> , later <b>alitus</b>
<b>colō</b> , <i>till, stay round, court</i>	<b>colere</b>	<b>coluī</b>	<b>cultus</b>
<b>con-cinō</b> , <i>chime with</i>	<b>con-cinere</b>	<b>con-cinuī</b>	—

A compound of **canō** (924, 823). See also **oc-cinō** and **prae-cinō**.

<b>cōn-sulō</b> , <i>consult</i>	<b>cōn-sulere</b>	<b>cōn-suluī</b>	<b>cōn-sultus</b>
<b>depsō</b> , <i>knead</i>	<b>depsere</b>	<b>depsuī</b>	<b>depstus</b>
<b>fremō</b> , <i>growl</i>	<b>fremere</b>	<b>fremuī</b>	—
<b>gemō</b> , <i>groan</i>	<b>gemere</b>	<b>gemuī</b>	—
<b>molō</b> , <i>grind</i>	<b>molere</b>	<b>moluī</b>	<b>molitus</b>
<b>oc-cinō</b> , <i>sing ominously</i>	<b>oc-cinere</b>	<b>oc-cinuī</b>	—

Once with reduplication, **oc-cecinerit** (Liv.).

<b>oc-culō</b> , <i>hide</i>	<b>oc-culere</b>	<b>oc-culuī</b>	<b>oc-cultus</b>
<b>pīsō</b> , <b>pīnsō</b> , <i>bray</i>	<b>pīsere</b> , <b>pīnsere</b>	<b>pīnsuī</b> , <b>pīsivī</b>	<b>pistus</b>

Once (818, 847) **pīnsibat** (Enn.). Perfect once **pīnsuī** (Pomp.), once (823, 893) **pīsiērunt** (Varr.). Perfect participle often **pīnsitus** (Col.), once **pīnsus** (Vitr.).

<b>pōnō</b> , <i>place</i>	<b>pōnere</b>	<b>po-suī</b>	<b>po-situs</b>
----------------------------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

A compound of **por-** and **sinō** (964). Perfect in old Latin **po-sivī** (893); **po-suī** is first used by Ennius. Perfect participle in verse sometimes, **po-stus**, **-po-stus**, **inposisse** (Plaut.).

<b>prae-cinō</b> , <i>play before</i>	<b>prae-cinere</b>	<b>prae-cinuī</b>	—
<b>serō</b> , <i>string</i>	<b>serere</b>	<b>-seruī</b>	<b>sertus</b>
<b>stertō</b> , <i>snore</i>	<b>stertere</b>	<b>(dē-stertuī)</b>	—
<b>strepō</b> , <i>make a racket</i>	<b>strepere</b>	<b>strepuī</b>	—
<b>texō</b> , <i>weave</i>	<b>texere</b>	<b>texuī</b>	<b>textus</b>
<b>tremō</b> , <i>quake</i>	<b>tremere</b>	<b>tremuī</b>	—
<b>vomō</b> , <i>throw up</i>	<b>vomere</b>	<b>vomuī</b>	—

973. (b.) With reduplication and **-o|e-** in the present stem (829).

<b>gignō</b> , <i>beget</i>	<b>gignere</b>	<b>genuī</b>	<b>genitus</b>
-----------------------------	----------------	--------------	----------------

Present sometimes also without reduplication, **genit**, &c. (Varr., Lucr.).

974. (c.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by **-o|e-** (831).

<b>ac-cumbō</b> , <i>lie by</i>	<b>ac-cumbere</b>	<b>ac-cubuī</b>	<b>ac-cubitus</b>
---------------------------------	-------------------	-----------------	-------------------

So also **in-cumbō**; **dis-cumbō** has **dis-cubuī**, **dis-cubitus**. Compounds with **dē**, **ob**, **prō**, **re-**, and **sub**, have **-cubuī**, —.

975. (d.) With the present stem in **-io|e-** (836).

<b>ē-liciō</b> , <i>coax out</i>	<b>ē-licere</b>	<b>ē-licuī</b>	<b>ē-licitus</b>
<b>rapiō</b> , <i>seize</i>	<b>rapere</b>	<b>rapuī</b>	<b>raptus</b>

Compounds have **i** for **a** in the present and perfect systems, and **e** in the perfect participle: as, **ē-ripiō**, **ē-ripere**, **ē-ripuī**, **ē-reptus**. Old Latin has **u** in **dē-rupier** and in **sub-rupiō**, **sub-rupere**, **sub-rupuī**, **sub-ruptus**; shortened forms are: **surpuit**, **surpuerit** (Plaut.), **surpit** (Plaut. prol.), **surpere** (Lucr.), **surpite**, **surpuerat** (Hor.). For **sub-repsit** (Plaut.), see 887.

976. (e.) With the present stem in -sco|e- (835); for com-pēscuī, see 855.

acēscō, <i>get sour</i>	acēscere	-acui	_____
alēscō, <i>grow up</i>	alēscere	(co-alui)	(co-alitus)
ārēscō, <i>dry up</i>	ārēscere	-āruī	_____
calēscō, <i>get warm</i>	calēscere	-calui	_____
candēscō, <i>get white</i>	candēscere	-candui	_____
cānēscō, <i>get grey</i>	cānēscere	cānuī	_____
clārēscō, <i>get bright</i>	clārēscere	clāruī	_____
com-pescō, <i>check</i>	com-pescere	com-pescuī	_____
con-ticēscō, <i>get all still</i>	con-ticēscere	con-ticuī	_____

Also in the present system, con-ticiscō, con-ticiscere, &c.

crēbrēscō, <i>get common</i>	crēbrēscere	-crēbruī	_____
crūdēscō, <i>wax bad</i>	crūdēscere	(re-crūdui)	_____
-dolēscō, <i>get pained</i>	-dolēscere	-doluī	_____
dūrēscō, <i>get hard</i>	dūrēscere	dūruī	_____
ē-vilēscō, <i>get cheap</i>	ē-vilēscere	ē-viluī	_____
fervēscō, <i>boil up</i>	fervēscere	-ferbuī, -fervī	_____
flōrēscō, <i>blossom out</i>	flōrēscere	-flōruī	_____
horrēscō, <i>bristle up</i>	horrēscere	-horruī	_____
languēscō, <i>get weak</i>	languēscere	languī	_____
latēscō, <i>hide away</i>	latēscere	-lituī	_____
liquēscō, <i>melt</i>	liquēscere	(dē-licuī)	_____
madēscō, <i>get moist</i>	madēscere	maduī	_____
marcēscō, <i>pine away</i>	marcēscere	(ē-marcuī)	_____
mātūrēscō, <i>ripen</i>	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	_____
nigrēscō, <i>get black</i>	nigrēscere	nigruī	_____
nōtēscō, <i>get known</i>	nōtēscere	nōtuī	_____
ob-mūtēscō, <i>get still</i>	ob-mūtēscere	ob-mūtuī	_____
ob-surdēscō, <i>get deaf</i>	ob-surdēscere	ob-surduī	_____
oc-callēscō, <i>get hard</i>	oc-callēscere	oc-calluī	_____
pallēscō, <i>grow pale</i>	pallēscere	palluī	_____
pūtēscō, <i>get soaked</i>	pūtēscere	pūtuī	_____
rigēscō, <i>stiffen up</i>	rigēscere	riguī	_____
rubēscō, <i>redde</i>	rubēscere	rubuī	_____
sānēscō, <i>get well</i>	sānēscere	-sānuī	_____
senēscō, <i>grow old</i>	senēscere	-senuī	_____
stupēscō, <i>get dazed</i>	stupēscere	(ob-stupuī)	_____

Also op-stipēscō or ob-stipēscō, op-stipuī or ob-stipuī.

tābēscō, <i>waste away</i>	tābēscere	tābuī	_____
tepēscō, <i>get lukewarm</i>	tepēscere	tepuī	_____
-timēscō, <i>get scared</i>	-timēscere	-timuī	_____
torpēscō, <i>get numb</i>	torpēscere	torpuī	_____
tremēscō, <i>quake</i>	tremēscere	(con-tremuī)	_____

Also in the present system, con-tremiscō, con-tremiscere, &c.

tumēscō, <i>swell up</i>	tumēscere	-tumuī	_____
valēscō, <i>get strong</i>	valēscere	-valuī	_____
vānēscō, <i>wane</i>	vānēscere	(ē-vānuī)	_____



# The Verb: List of Verbs. [977-986.]

## DEPONENTS IN -ī.

977. (1.) The following deponents in -ī have the perfect participle in -tus, except *morior*, which has -tuus:

978. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

<i>fruor</i> , enjoy	<i>fruī</i>	<i>frūctus</i>
<i>loquor</i> , speak	<i>loquī</i>	<i>locūtus</i>
<i>queror</i> , complain	<i>querī</i>	<i>questus</i>
<i>sequor</i> , follow	<i>sequī</i>	<i>secūtus</i>

979. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

<i>fungor</i> , get quit	<i>fungī</i>	<i>fūctus</i>
--------------------------	--------------	---------------

980. (c.) With the present stem in -sco|e- (834).

<i>apīscor</i> , lay hold of	<i>apīscī</i>	<i>aptus</i>
Compounds have i and e for a: as, <i>ad-ipīscor</i> , <i>ad-ipīscī</i> , <i>ad-eptus</i> .		
<i>com-minīscor</i> , devise	<i>com-minīscī</i>	<i>com-mentus</i>
<i>ex-pergīscor</i> , stretch myself, wake	<i>ex-pergīscī</i>	<i>ex-per-rēctus</i>

Perfect participle rarely *ex-pergītus* (Lucil., Lucr.).

<i>nancīscor</i> , get	<i>nancīscī</i>	<i>nactus</i> , <i>nactus</i>
<i>nāscor</i> , am born	<i>nāscī</i>	<i>nātus</i>
<i>ob-livīscor</i> , forget	<i>ob-livīscī</i>	<i>ob-lītus</i>
<i>pacīscor</i> , bargain	<i>pacīscī</i>	<i>pactus</i>

Compounds: *dē-pecīscor*, *dē-pecīscī*, *dē-pectus*; *com-pectus*.

<i>pro-ficīscor</i> , start on	<i>pro-ficīscī</i>	<i>pro-fectus</i>
<i>ulcīscor</i> , avenge	<i>ulcīscī</i>	<i>ūltus</i>

981. (d.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

<i>morior</i> , die	<i>moriī</i>	<i>mortuus</i>
<i>orior</i> , rise	<i>oriī</i>	<i>ortus</i>
<i>potior</i> , master	<i>potiī</i>	<i>potītus</i>

For forms in -īrī of these three verbs, see 791. For *potiī*, twice *poti* (Enn., Pac.).

982. (2.) The following deponents in -ī have the perfect participle in -sus (912):

983. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

<i>lābor</i> , tumble down	<i>lābī</i>	<i>lapsus</i>
<i>nītor</i> , rest on	<i>nītī</i>	<i>nīsus</i> , <i>nīxus</i>
<i>ūtor</i> , use	<i>ūtī</i>	<i>ūsus</i>

984. (b.) With the present stem in -sco|e- (834).

<i>dē-fetīscor</i> , get tired out	<i>dē-fetīscī</i>	<i>dē-fessus</i>
------------------------------------	-------------------	------------------

985. (c.) With the present stem in -to|e- (835).

<i>am-plector</i> , hug round	<i>am-plectī</i>	<i>am-plexus</i>
<i>com-plector</i> , hug up	<i>com-plectī</i>	<i>com-plexus</i>

986. (d.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

<i>gradior</i> , step	<i>gradī</i>	<i>gressus</i>
<i>patior</i> , suffer	<i>patī</i>	<i>passus</i>

Compounds of these two verbs have e for a: as, *ad-gredior*, *per-petior*, *per-pessus*; for forms of -gredior in -īrī, see 791.

## II. DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

987. Most verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, and *-īre* (or in *-ārī*, *-ērī*, and *-īrī*), are denominatives.

988. Some primitives from vowel roots have the form of denominatives in the present system, or throughout; and some verbs with a denominative present system have the perfect and perfect participle formed directly from a root.

(I.) VERBS IN *-āre*.

## (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

989. (1.) The following verb in *-āre* has a reduplicated perfect stem (859):

<i>stō</i> , <i>stand</i>	<i>stāre</i>	<i>stetī</i>	—
---------------------------	--------------	--------------	---

For *-stitī*, see 860. The compound *prae-stō* has rarely the perfect participle *prae-stātus* (Brut., Plin.), and *prae-stitus* (Liv.).

990. (2.) The following verbs in *-āre* have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in *-v-* and has a long vowel (864), and the perfect participle in *-tus*:

<i>iuvō</i> , <i>help</i>	<i>iuvāre</i>	<i>iūvī</i>	<i>iūtus</i> once
---------------------------	---------------	-------------	-------------------

For *iuerint*, *ad-iuerō*, and *ad-iuerit*, see 891. Perfect participle usual only in the compound *ad-iūtus*.

<i>lavō</i> , <i>bathe</i>	<i>lavāre</i>	<i>lāvī</i>	<i>lautus</i>
----------------------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

Forms in *-ere* are very common in the present tense (820): *lavis* (Plaut., Hor.), *lavī* (Plaut., Lucr., Catull., Verg., Hor.), *lavimus* (Hor.), *lavitur* (Val. Fl.), *lavitō* (Cato), *lavere* often, *lavī* (Pomp.). Perfect participle often *lōtus* (81) in writers of the empire; supine, *lautum*, *lavātum*.

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN *-v-* OR *-u-*.PERFECT STEM IN *-v-*.

991. (1a.) Two verbs in *-āre* have the perfect stem in *-v-* (869), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*, both preceded by a long *-ā-* of the root:

<i>flō</i> , <i>blow</i>	<i>flāre</i>	<i>flāvī</i>	<i>flātus</i>
<i>nō</i> , <i>swim</i>	<i>nāre</i>	<i>nāvī</i>	—

992. (1b.) Most verbs in *-āre* have the perfect stem in *-v-* (869), and the perfect participle in *-tus*, both preceded by a form of the present stem in long *-ā-*: as,

<i>laudō</i> , <i>praise</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>laudāvī</i>	<i>laudātus</i>
<i>liberō</i> , <i>free</i>	<i>liberāre</i>	<i>liberāvī</i>	<i>liberātus</i>
<i>nōminō</i> , <i>name</i>	<i>nōmināre</i>	<i>nōmināvī</i>	<i>nōminātus</i>
<i>spērō</i> , <i>hope</i>	<i>spērāre</i>	<i>spērāvī</i>	<i>spērātus</i>

## PERFECT STEM IN -u-.

993. (2.) The following verbs in -āre have the perfect stem in -u- (874), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus; in some participles, -tus is preceded by a short i, thus, -itus (910):

crepō, <i>rattle</i>	crepāre	crepuī	(in-crepitus)
----------------------	---------	--------	---------------

Forms of the perfect system in -v- (823) are: in-crepāvit (Plaut.), dis-crepāvit (Varr.), in-crepārit (Suet.).

cubō, <i>lie</i>	cubāre	cubuī	_____
------------------	--------	-------	-------

Forms of the perfect system in -v- (823) are: ex-cubāverant (Caes.), cubāris (Prop.), in-cubāvēre (Plin.), cubāsse (Quintil.). Compound perfect participle in-cubitus (Plin.).

domō, <i>tame</i>	domāre	domuī	domitus
ē-necō, <i>murder</i>	ē-necāre	ē-necuī	ē-nectus

The simple verb has necāvī, necātus; twice necuit (Enn., Phaedr.). ē-necō sometimes has i for e in the present and perfect system; once (823) ē-nicāvit, and once (887) ē-nicāssō (Plaut.); perfect participle also ē-necātus (Plin.).

fricō, <i>rub down</i>	fricāre	fricuī	frictus
------------------------	---------	--------	---------

Perfect participle also fricātus (Vitr.), cōn-fricātus (Varr., Plin.), dē-fricātus (Catull., Col., Plin.), in-fricātus (Col., Plin.), per-fricātus (Vitr., Plin.).

micō, <i>quiver</i>	micāre	micuī	_____
---------------------	--------	-------	-------

So the compounds; except dī-micō, dī-micāvī, dī-micātum; twice in pentameter verse (823) dī-micuisse (Ov.).

-plicō, <i>fold</i>	-plicāre	-plicuī	-plicitus
---------------------	----------	---------	-----------

A few forms of the present system of the simple verb occur. In the perfect and perfect participle usually -plicāvī, -plicātus; but sometimes ap-plicuī (Cic. once, Tib., Ov., Liv., Sen., &c.); com-plicuī (Sen.), ex-plicuī (Verg., Hor., Liv., Sen., &c.), im-plicuī (Verg., Tib., Ov., Sen., &c.); ap-plicitus (Col., Quintil., Plin. *Ep.*), ex-plicitus (Caes., Sen., Plin. *Ep.*), im-plicitus (Plaut., Cic., Liv.); once re-plictus (Stat.).

secō, <i>cut</i>	secāre	secuī	sectus
------------------	--------	-------	--------

The compound with ex sometimes has i for e; once (823) exicāveris (Cato).

sonō, <i>sound</i>	sonāre	sonuī	_____
--------------------	--------	-------	-------

Also (820) sonit, sonunt (Enn., Acc.), sonere (Acc., Lucr.); re-sonunt (Enn.). Perfect (823) re-sonārint (Hor.), re-sonāvit (Man.), sonātūrus (Hor.).

tonō, <i>thunder</i>	tonāre	tonuī	(at-tonitus)
----------------------	--------	-------	--------------

Once (820) tonimus (Varr.). Perfect participle once in-tonātus (Hor.).

vetō, <i>forbid</i>	vetāre	vetuī	vetitus
---------------------	--------	-------	---------

In old Latin, votō, &c. (107). Perfect once (823) vetāvit (Pers.).

## DEPONENTS IN -ārī.

994. There are many deponents in -ārī, with the perfect participle in -ātus: as,

hortor, <i>exhort</i>	hortārī	hortātus
-----------------------	---------	----------

For the primitive fārī, *speak*, and compounds, see the dictionary.



(2.) VERBS IN *-ēre*.

## (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

995. (1.) The following verbs in *-ēre* have a reduplicated perfect stem (859), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-sus* (912):

<i>mordeō, bite</i>	<i>mordēre</i>	<i>momordī</i>	<i>morsus</i>
---------------------	----------------	----------------	---------------

The compound *prae-mordeō* has once (823) *prae-morsisset* (Plaut.).

<i>pendeō, am hung</i>	<i>pendēre</i>	<i>pependī</i>	—
------------------------	----------------	----------------	---

The compound *prō-pendeō* has the perfect participle *prō-pēnsus*.

<i>spondeō, covenant</i>	<i>spondēre</i>	<i>spopondī</i>	<i>spōnsus</i>
--------------------------	-----------------	-----------------	----------------

For *dē-spondī* and *re-spondī*, see 860; rarely *dē-spopondī* (Plaut.).

<i>tondeō, shear</i>	<i>tondēre</i>	<i>-totondī, -tondī</i>	<i>tōnsus</i>
----------------------	----------------	-------------------------	---------------

For *dē-tondunt* (Varr.), see 821. Perfect only in the compounds *at-tondī* and *dē-tondī* (860); once *dē-totonderat* (Varr.), and perhaps *dē-totondit* (Enn.).

996. (2*a*.) The following verbs in *-ēre* have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in *-v-* and has a long vowel (864), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*:

<i>caveō, look out</i>	<i>cavēre</i>	<i>cāvī</i>	<i>cautus</i>
------------------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

<i>faveō, am friendly</i>	<i>favēre</i>	<i>fāvī</i>	—
---------------------------	---------------	-------------	---

<i>foveō, warm, cherish</i>	<i>fovēre</i>	<i>fōvī</i>	<i>fōtus</i>
-----------------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

<i>moveō, move</i>	<i>movēre</i>	<i>mōvī</i>	<i>mōtus</i>
--------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

For short forms in the perfect system, particularly in compounds, see 891.

<i>voveō, vow</i>	<i>vovēre</i>	<i>vōvī</i>	<i>vōtus</i>
-------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

997. (2*b*.) Three verbs in *-ēre* have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (864), and the perfect participle in *-sus* (912):

<i>sedeō, sit</i>	<i>sedēre</i>	<i>sēdī</i>	<i>-sessus</i>
-------------------	---------------	-------------	----------------

Real compounds have *i* for *e* in the present system: as, *ob-sideō*, &c. Compounds with *dis-*, *prae*, and *re-* have no perfect participle.

<i>strīdeō, grate</i>	<i>strīdēre</i>	<i>strīdī</i>	—
-----------------------	-----------------	---------------	---

Often with a present system in *-ere* (821).

<i>videō, see</i>	<i>vidēre</i>	<i>vīdī</i>	<i>vīsus</i>
-------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

998. (3.) The following verbs in *-ēre* have a perfect stem ending in two consonants (866), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-sus* (912):

<i>ferveō, boil</i>	<i>fervēre</i>	<i>fervī, ferbuī</i>	—
---------------------	----------------	----------------------	---

Sometimes with forms in *-ere* (821) in verse. The perfect system is rare.

<i>prandeō, lunch</i>	<i>prandēre</i>	<i>prandī</i>	<i>prānsus</i>
-----------------------	-----------------	---------------	----------------

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*, OR IN *-v-* OR *-u-*.PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*.

999. (1*a*.) The following verbs in *-ēre* have the perfect stem in *-s-* (868), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*:

augeō, <i>increase</i>	augēre	auxī	auctus
in-dulgeō, <i>am kind</i>	in-dulgēre	in-dulsī	_____
lūceō, <i>beam</i>	lūcēre	lūxī	_____
lūgeo, <i>mourn</i>	lūgēre	lūxī	_____
torqueō, <i>twist</i>	torquēre	torsī	tortus

1000. (1b.) The following verbs in -ēre have the perfect stem in -s- (868), and the perfect participle, when used, in -sus (912) :

algeō, <i>feel cold</i>	algēre	alsī	_____
ārdeō, <i>blaze</i>	ārdēre	ārsī	_____
cō-nīveō, <i>wink and blink</i>	cō-nīvēre	cō-nīxī, cō-nīvī	_____

The perfects cō-nīxī (Turp.), cō-nīvī (Crass.), occur once each.

fulgeō, <i>flash</i>	fulgēre	fulsī	_____
----------------------	---------	-------	-------

Forms of the present in -ere (821) occur in verse: fulgit (Pomp., Lucil., Lucr.), fulgere (Pac., Acc., Lucil., Lucr., Verg.); ef-fulgere (Verg., Claud.).

haereō, <i>stick</i>	haerēre	haesī	_____
iubeō, <i>order</i>	iubēre	iūssī	iūssus

In old Latin, IOVBEO, &c., IOVSI, IVSI, &c. (inscr.).

maneō, <i>stay</i>	manēre	mānsī	mānsum
mulceō, <i>stroke</i>	mulcēre	mulsī	mulsus adjective

Perfect participle per-mulsus rare (Cornif., Varr.).

mulgeō, <i>milk</i>	mulgēre	mulsī	mulsus once
rīdeō, <i>laugh</i>	rīdēre	rīsī	-rīsus
suādeō, <i>advise</i>	suādēre	suāsī	suāsus
tergeō, <i>wipe</i>	tergēre	tersī	tersus

For forms in -ere in the present, as tergit, &c. (Varr., Prop., Stat., Col.), see 821.

turgeō, <i>am swelling</i>	turgēre	tursī once	_____
----------------------------	---------	------------	-------

Of the perfect system, turserat (Enn.).

urgeō, <i>push</i>	urgēre	ursī	_____
--------------------	--------	------	-------

PERFECT STEM IN -v- OR -u-.

PERFECT STEM IN -v-.

1001. (1a.) The following verbs in -ēre have the perfect stem in -v- (869), and the perfect participle in -tus, both preceded by a long -ē- of the root:

dē-leō, <i>wipe out</i>	dē-lēre	dē-lēvī	dē-lētus
fleō, <i>weep</i>	flēre	flēvī	flētus
neō, <i>spin</i>	nēre	nēvī	_____

For neunt (Tib.), see 837.

-pleō, <i>fill</i>	-plēre	-plēvī	-plētus
--------------------	--------	--------	---------

**1002.** (1*b*.) The following verb in **-ēre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (869), preceded by long **-ī-**, and the perfect participle in **-tus**, preceded by short **-i-** of the root :

<b>cieō</b> , <i>set a going</i>	<b>ciēre</b>	<b>cīvī</b>	<b>citus</b>
----------------------------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

Somewhat defective; also with a form in **-īre** (821). For the perfect participle of compounds, see 919.

**1003.** (1*c*.) The following verb in **-ēre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (869), and the perfect participle in **-itus** (910) :

<b>ab-oleō</b> , <i>destroy</i>	<b>ab-olēre</b>	<b>ab-olēvī</b>	<b>ab-olitus</b>
---------------------------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

#### PERFECT STEM IN **-u-**.

**1004.** (2*a*.) Most verbs in **-ēre** have the perfect stem in **-u-** (874), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**, which is usually preceded by a short **i** (910) : as,

<b>doceō</b> , <i>teach</i>	<b>docēre</b>	<b>docuī</b>	<b>doctus</b>
<b>habeō</b> , <i>have</i>	<b>habēre</b>	<b>habuī</b>	<b>habitus</b>

So also **post-habeō**; other compounds have **i** for **a** : as, **pro-hibeō**, **pro-hibēre**, **pro-hibuī**, **pro-hibitus**; twice contracted, **prōbet**, **prōbeat** (Lucr.). Compounds with **dē** and **prae** are regularly contracted, **dēbeō**, **praebeō**, &c. : but in Plautus once **de-hibuistī**, and regularly **prae-hibeō**, &c., throughout.

<b>mereō</b> , <i>earn</i>	<b>merēre</b>	<b>meruī</b>	<b>meritus</b>
----------------------------	---------------	--------------	----------------

Often deponent (800) : **mereor**, **merērī**, **meritus**.

<b>misceō</b> , <i>mix</i>	<b>miscēre</b>	<b>miscuī</b>	<b>mixtus</b> , <b>mistus</b>
----------------------------	----------------	---------------	-------------------------------

The present stem is an extension of the suffix **-sc<sup>o</sup>|e**. (834); **-sc-** of the present runs over into the perfect.

<b>moneō</b> , <i>advise</i>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>monuī</b>	<b>monitus</b>
<b>placeō</b> , <i>am pleasing</i>	<b>placēre</b>	<b>placuī</b>	<b>placitus</b>

So the compounds **com-placeō** and **per-placeō**; **dis-pliceō** has **i** for **a** throughout.

<b>taceō</b> , <i>hold my tongue</i>	<b>tacēre</b>	<b>tacuī</b>	<b>tacitus</b> adjective
--------------------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------------------

The compound **re-ticeō** has **i** for **a** and no perfect participle.

<b>teneō</b> , <i>hold</i>	<b>tenēre</b>	<b>tenuī</b>	<b>-tentus</b>
----------------------------	---------------	--------------	----------------

Compounds have **i** for **e** in the present and perfect : as, **dē-tineō**, **dē-tinuī**, **dē-tentus**.

<b>terreō</b> , <i>scare</i>	<b>terrēre</b>	<b>terruī</b>	<b>territus</b>
<b>torreō</b> , <i>roast</i>	<b>torrēre</b>	<b>torruī</b>	<b>tostus</b>

**1005.** (2*b*.) The following verb in **-ēre** has the perfect stem in **-u-** (874), and the perfect participle in **-sus** (912) :

<b>cēnseō</b> , <i>count, rate</i>	<b>cēnsēre</b>	<b>cēnsuī</b>	<b>cēnsus</b>
------------------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------



## The Verb: List of Verbs. [1006-1008.

1006. (3.) The following verbs in *-ēre* have the perfect stem in *-u-* (874), and no perfect participle (907):

<i>arceō, check</i>	<i>arcēre</i>	<i>arcuī</i>	_____
---------------------	---------------	--------------	-------

The compounds *co-erceō* and *ex-erceō* have *e* for *a*, and perfect participles *co-ercitus* and *ex-ercitus*.

<i>caleō, am warm</i>	<i>calēre</i>	<i>caluī</i>	_____
<i>candeō, glow white</i>	<i>candēre</i>	<i>canduī</i>	_____
<i>careō, have not</i>	<i>carēre</i>	<i>caruī</i>	_____
<i>doleō, ache</i>	<i>dolēre</i>	<i>doluī</i>	_____
<i>egeō, need</i>	<i>egēre</i>	<i>eguī</i>	_____

The compound *ind-igeō, ind-igēre, ind-iguī, \_\_\_\_\_*, has *i* for *e*.

<i>ē-mineō, stick out</i>	<i>ē-minēre</i>	<i>ē-minuī</i>	_____
<i>flōreō, bloom</i>	<i>flōrēre</i>	<i>flōruī</i>	_____
<i>horreō, bristle up</i>	<i>horrēre</i>	<i>horruī</i>	_____
<i>iaceō, lie</i>	<i>iacēre</i>	<i>iacuī</i>	_____
<i>lateō, lie hid</i>	<i>latēre</i>	<i>latuī</i>	_____
<i>liceō, am rated</i>	<i>licēre</i>	<i>licuī</i>	_____
<i>liqueō, am melted</i>	<i>liquēre</i>	<i>licuī</i>	_____
<i>madeō, am soaked</i>	<i>madēre</i>	<i>maduī</i>	_____
<i>niteō, shine</i>	<i>nitēre</i>	<i>nitui</i>	_____
<i>noceō, am hurtful</i>	<i>nocēre</i>	<i>nocuī</i>	_____
<i>oleō, smell</i>	<i>olēre</i>	<i>oluī</i>	_____

For forms in *-ere* in the present system, see 821.

<i>palleō, look pale</i>	<i>pallēre</i>	<i>palluī</i>	_____
<i>pāreō, wait on, am obedient</i>	<i>pārēre</i>	<i>pāruī</i>	_____
<i>pateō, am open</i>	<i>patēre</i>	<i>patuī</i>	_____
<i>rigeō, am stiff</i>	<i>rigēre</i>	<i>riguī</i>	_____
<i>sileō, am silent</i>	<i>silēre</i>	<i>siluī</i>	_____
<i>sorbeō, suck up</i>	<i>sorbēre</i>	<i>sorbuī</i>	_____

The perfect system of the simple verb is rare: *sorbuit, sorbuerint* (Plin.); also (823) *sorpsit* (Val. Max.); *ab-sorbeō* and *ex-sorbeō* have *-sorbuī*; but *ab-sorpsi* (Plin.), *ex-sorpsi* (Luc.).

<i>studeō, am eager</i>	<i>studēre</i>	<i>studuī</i>	_____
<i>stupeō, am dazed</i>	<i>stupēre</i>	<i>stupuī</i>	_____
<i>timeō, fear</i>	<i>timēre</i>	<i>timuī</i>	_____
<i>valeō, am strong</i>	<i>valēre</i>	<i>valuī</i>	_____
<i>vigeō, feel strong</i>	<i>vigēre</i>	<i>viguī</i>	_____

1007. For *audeō, gaudeō, and soleō*, see 801; for *lubet or libet, licet, miseret, oportet, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*, see 815 and 816.

### DEPONENTS IN *-ērī*.

1008. (1a.) The following deponent in *-ērī* has the perfect participle in *-tus*:

<i>reor, reckon, think</i>	<i>rērī</i>	<i>ratus</i>
----------------------------	-------------	--------------

**1009.** (1*b*.) The following deponents in **-ērī** have the perfect participle in **-tus**, which is preceded by a short **i** (910):

<b>liceor</b> , <i>bid</i>	<b>licērī</b>	<b>licitus</b>
<b>misereor</b> , <i>pity</i>	<b>miserērī</b>	<b>miseritus</b>

Perfect participle also **misertus** (Val. Max., Sen., Curt.). Active forms are: **miserēte**, **miserērent** (Enn.), **misereās** (Ter.), **miseret** (Lucr.), **miserent** (Val. Fl.). Passive forms are sometimes used impersonally (724): as, **miserētur**, &c.

<b>tueor</b> , <i>look to, protect</i>	<b>tuērī</b>	<b>tuitus</b> late
--	--------------	--------------------

Forms in **-ī** also occur in verse (821). As perfect participle, generally **tūtātus**.  
**vereor**, *am awed at*                      **verērī**                      **veritus**

**1010.** (2.) One deponent in **-ērī** has the perfect participle in **-sus** (912):

<b>fateor</b> , <i>confess</i>	<b>fatērī</b>	<b>fassus</b>
--------------------------------	---------------	---------------

Compounds have **i** and **e** for **a**: as, **cōn-fiteor**, **cōn-fessus**.

### (3.) VERBS IN **-īre**.

#### (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

**1011.** (1*a*.) The following verb in **-īre** has a reduplicated perfect stem (861), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

<b>re-periō</b> , <i>find</i>	<b>re-perīre</b>	<b>re-pperī</b>	<b>re-pertus</b>
-------------------------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------

**1012.** (1*b*.) The following verb in **-īre** has no reduplication in the perfect stem, and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

<b>com-periō</b> , <i>find out</i>	<b>com-perīre</b>	<b>com-perī</b>	<b>com-pertus</b>
------------------------------------	-------------------	-----------------	-------------------

As deponent: **com-periar** (Ter.), **com-perior** (Sall., Tac.).

**1013.** (2.) The following verb in **-īre** has a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (862), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

<b>veniō</b> , <i>come</i>	<b>venīre</b>	<b>vēnī</b>	<b>ventum, -ventus</b>
----------------------------	---------------	-------------	------------------------

For **ē-venunt**, **ē-venat**, **ē-venant**, **ad-venat**, **per-venat**, see 822.

#### (B.) PERFECT STEM IN **-s-**, OR IN **-v-** OR **-u-**.

##### PERFECT STEM IN **-s-**.

**1014.** (1.) The following verbs in **-īre** have the perfect stem in **-s-** (868), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

<b>farcīō</b> , <i>stuff</i>	<b>farcīre</b>	<b>farsī</b>	<b>fartus</b>
------------------------------	----------------	--------------	---------------

Compounds have usually **e** for **a** throughout.

<b>fulciō</b> , <i>prop</i>	<b>fulcīre</b>	<b>fulsī</b>	<b>fultus</b>
<b>hauriō</b> , <i>drain</i>	<b>haurīre</b>	<b>hausī</b>	<b>haustus</b>

A perfect subjunctive **haurierint** is quoted from Varro (823).

saepiō, <i>hedge in</i>	saepīre	saepsi	saeptus
sanciō, <i>hallow</i>	sancīre	sanxi	sānctus adjective
Perfect participle rarely <b>sancītus</b> (Lucr., Liv.). A pluperfect <b>sancierat</b> is quoted from Pomponius Secundus (823).			
sarciō, <i>patch</i>	sarcīre	sarsi	sartus
vinciō, <i>bind</i>	vincīre	vinxi	vinctus

**1015.** (2.) The following verb in **-īre** has the perfect stem in **-s-** (868), and the perfect participle in **-sus** (912):

sentiō, <i>feel</i>	sentīre	sēnsi	sēnsus
---------------------	---------	-------	--------

The compound with **ad** is generally deponent (800).

#### PERFECT STEM IN **-v-**.

**1016.** (1a.) The following verb in **-īre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (869), and the perfect participle in **-tus**, both preceded by a long **ī** of the root:

sciō, <i>know</i>	scīre	scīvī	scītus
-------------------	-------	-------	--------

**1017.** (1b.) The following verb in **-īre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (869), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

sepeliō, <i>bury</i>	sepelīre	sepelīvī	sepultus
----------------------	----------	----------	----------

**1018.** (1c.) Most verbs in **-īre** have the perfect stem in **-v-** (869), and the perfect participle in **-tus**, both preceded by a form of the present stem in long **-ī-**: as,

audiō, <i>hear</i>	audīre	audīvī	audītus
--------------------	--------	--------	---------

#### PERFECT STEM IN **-u-**.

**1019.** (2.) The following verbs in **-īre** have the perfect stem in **-u-** (874), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

am-iciō, <i>don</i>	am-icīre	am-icui	am-ictus
---------------------	----------	---------	----------

Perfect rare: once **am-icui** (Brut.), once **am-ixī** (Varr.).

ap-eriō, <i>open</i>	ap-erīre	ap-eruī	ap-ertus
op-eriō, <i>cover over</i>	op-erīre	op-eruī	op-ertus
saliō, <i>leap</i>	salīre	saluī	_____

Compounds have **i** for **a** throughout: as, **in-siliō**. A perfect system in **-v-** (823, 893), as **ex-silivī**, occurs in late writers (Col., Sen., Plin., &c.).

#### DEPONENTS IN **-irī**.

**1020.** (1a.) The following deponents in **-irī** have the perfect participle in **-tus**:

ex-perior, <i>try</i>	ex-perirī	ex-pertus
op-perior, <i>wait for</i>	op-perirī	op-pertus

Perfect participle once **op-perītus** (Plaut.).



1021. (1b.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-ītus**:

blandior, <i>am agreeable</i>	blandīrī	blandītus
largior, <i>shower</i>	largīrī	largītus
mentior, <i>tell lies</i>	mentīrī	mentītus
mōlior, <i>work hard</i>	mōlīrī	mōlītus
partior, <i>share</i>	partīrī	partītus
sortior, <i>draw lots</i>	sortīrī	sortītus

1022. (2.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-sus** (912):

mētior, <i>measure</i>	mētīrī	mēnsus
ordior, <i>begin</i>	ordīrī	orsus

## PART SECOND *β* SENTENCES

---

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE AND ITS PARTS.

**1023.** A SENTENCE is a thought expressed by means of a verb. The SUBJECT is that which is spoken of. The PREDICATE is that which is said of the subject.

**1024.** A SIMPLE SENTENCE is one which has only one subject and one predicate.

Thus, *Rhodanus fluit, the Rhone flows*, is a simple sentence: the subject is *Rhodanus* and the predicate is *fluit*.

**1025.** The sentence may be *declarative*, stating a fact, *exclamatory*, crying out about something, *interrogative*, asking a question, or *imperative*, giving a command.

### THE SUBJECT.

**1026.** The subject is a substantive, or any word or words having the value of a substantive.

**1027.** The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.

**1028.** The subject may be expressed, or may be merely indicated by the person ending.

**1029.** (1.) With the first or the second person, the subject is expressed by a personal pronoun (*ego tū, nōs vōs*) only when somewhat emphatic, or in an indignant question. Otherwise the verb of the first or second person is not attended by a personal pronoun: as, *eram, I was, erās, thou wert*.

**1030.** The subject is regularly omitted when it is general and indefinite, in the first person plural; as, *intellegimus, we understand*; and second person singular, as: *putārēs, you, or anybody would have thought*.

**1031.** The subject of the first or second person is sometimes a substantive, contrary to the English idiom: as, *Hannibal petō pācem, I Hannibal am suing for peace. pars spectātōrum scīs, a part of you spectators knows. exoriāre aliquis nostrīs ex ossibus ūltor, from out our bones mayst some avenger spring. trecentī coniūrāvimus, three hundred of us have sworn an oath together.*

1032. (2.) With the third person the subject is regularly expressed, unless the general 'he she it,' or 'they' implied in the person ending is definite enough.

1033. The third person plural often refers to people in general, particularly of verbs meaning *say, name or call, think*, and, with *volgō* added, of other verbs also: as, *ferunt, they say, people say, or the world says*. The singular verb *inquit*, is rarely used in the sense of *says somebody, it will be said, or quotha*.

1034. Some verbs have no subject at all in the third person singular; these are called *Impersonal*. Such are: a few verbs expressing 'operations of nature,' five verbs of 'mental distress,' and any verb used to denote merely the occurrence of action, without reference to any doer: as,

(a.) *lūcet, it is light, lūcēscit, it is getting light; pluit, it rains, fulget, it lightens, tonat, it thunders*. (b.) *miseret, it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it grieves, pudet, it puts to shame, taedet, it bores*. (c.) *bene erat, it went well; pūgnātur, there is fighting, pūgnātum est, there was fighting*. See also 816.

### THE PREDICATE.

1035. The predicate is either a verb alone, or a verb of indeterminate meaning with a predicate nominative added to complete the sense.

Verbs of indeterminate meaning are such as mean *am* (something), *become, remain, seem, am thought, am called or named, am chosen*.

1036. The verb is sometimes omitted, when it is easily understood. So particularly such everyday verbs as mean *am, do, say, come, and go*, in proverbs and maxims, in short questions, and in emphatic or lively assertion or description: as,

*quod hominēs, tot sententiae, sc. sunt, as many men, so many minds. omnia praeclāra rāra, sc. sunt, all that's very fair is rare. mortuus Cūmīs, sc. est, he died at Cumae. bene mihi, sc. sit, be it well with me, i. e. a health to me. haec hāctenus, sc. dicam, thus much only, or no more of this.*

### ENLARGEMENT OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1037. The parts of the simple sentence may be enlarged by additions. The commonest enlargements of the subject and of the predicate are the following.

1038. I. The subject may be enlarged by the addition of attributes, appositives, or objects.

1039. (1.) An ATTRIBUTE is an essential addition to a substantive, uniting with it as one idea. The attribute may be:

1040. (a.) Genitive of a substantive of different meaning, denoting the agent, possessor, or the like: as, *metus hostium, fear of the enemy, i. e. which they feel. hostium castra, camp of the enemy*.

1041. (b.) Genitive or ablative of a substantive with an adjective in agreement: as, *puer sēdecim annōrum, a boy of sixteen years; bovēs mirā speciē, kine of wondrous beauty*.



## Parts of the Sentence. [1042-1052.

1042. (c.) A noun in the same case, either an adjective or participle, or else a substantive used adjectively: as, *pūgna Cannēnsis*, the battle of Cannae; *cīvitātēs vīctae*, the conquered communities; *vīctor Rōmulus rēx*, victorious king Romulus.

1043. (d.) A substantive in the accusative or ablative with a preposition: as, *pūgna ad Cannās*, the battle near Cannae. *vir sine metū*, a man without fear (1427).

1044. An attribute is rarely attached immediately to a proper name: as, *fortem Gyān*, Gyas the brave. *Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis*, Lucanius, of the same rank. It is much oftener attached to a general word in apposition with the proper name: as, *vir clārissimus, M. Crassus*, the illustrious Crassus.

1045. (2.) An APPOSITIVE is a separate substantive added as an explanation to another substantive, and in the same case, but not like the attribute uniting with it as one idea: as,

*avītum malum, rēgnī cupīdō*, the ancestral curse, ambition for a crown. *Hamīlcar, Mārs alter*, Hamīlcar, a second Mars. *Cornēlia, māter Gracchōrum*, Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi. *Teutomatus, Ollivīcōnis filius*, rēx Nitīobrogum, Teutomatus, the son of Ollivico, the king of the Nitīobroges.

1046. (3.) The OBJECT of a substantive is another substantive of different meaning in the genitive, denoting that on which action is exerted: as,

*metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, i. e. which is felt towards them. *vēnditiō bonōrum*, sale of the goods.

1047. A substantive in any case may be modified like the subject.

1048. II. The predicate may be enlarged by the addition of accusatives, datives, predicate nouns, or adverbial adjuncts.

1049. (1.) The ACCUSATIVE denotes the object of the verb; also extent, duration, and aim of motion. See 1124.

1050. (2.) The DATIVE denotes that for or to which something is or is done. See 1175.

1051. (3.) A predicate noun, either substantive or adjective, denoting 'office, time, age, order, condition,' or the like, is often added to other verbs besides those of indeterminate meaning (1035): as,

*Iūnius aedem dictātor dēdicāvit*, Junius dedicated a temple in his capacity as dictator, not Junius the dictator. *litterās Graecās senex didicī*, I learned Greek when I was an old man. *prīnceps in proelium ibat, ūltimus excēdēbat*, he was always the first to go into battle, the last to come out. For the predicative dative of the substantive, see 1219.

1052. In like manner a noun may be added as a predicate in agreement with a substantive in any oblique case: as,

*sē incolumēs recipiunt*, they come back safe. *ante mē cōnsulem*, before my consulship. *Dolābellā hoste dēcrētō*, Dolabella having been voted an enemy. *nātūrā dūce*, with nature as a guide.

**1053.** (4.) An ADVERBIAL ADJUNCT is either an oblique case of a noun, often with a preposition, or an adverb denoting 'place, time, extent, degree, manner, cause,' or 'circumstances' generally: as,

*silentiō proficiscitur, he marches in silence. in eō flūmine pōns erat, over that river there was a bridge.*

**1054.** A predicate substantive may be modified like the subject. An adjective, either of the subject or of the predicate, may be modified by an oblique case or by an adverb.

### COMBINATION OF SENTENCES.

**1055.** Simple sentences may be combined in two different ways. The added sentence may be I. Coordinate; or II. Subordinate.

Thus, in *he died and we lived*, the two sentences are coordinate, that is, of equal rank. But in *he died that we might live*, the sentence beginning with *that* is subordinate. In either combination the separate sentences are often called *Clauses* or *Members*, in contradistinction to the more comprehensive sentence of which they are parts.

### I. THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

**1056.** A COMPOUND SENTENCE is one which consists of two or more coordinate simple sentences: as,

*tū mē amās, ego tē amō, Pl. Most. 305, thou art in love with me, I'm in love with thee. nox erat et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō inter minōra sīdera, H. Epod. 15, 1, 'twas night, and in a cloudless sky, bright rode the moon amid the lesser lights. ā tē petō, mē dēfendās, Fam. 15, 8, I ask it of you, protect me.*

**1057.** A compound sentence is usually abridged when the members have parts in common: as,

*valēbant precēs et lacrimae, Mil. 34, prayers and tears had weight, compound subject, for valēbant precēs et valēbant lacrimae. rogat ōratque tē, RA. 144, he begs and entreats you, compound predicate, for rogat tē ōratque tē. arma virumque canō, V. 1, 1, arms and the man I sing, compound object, for arma canō virumque canō. diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est, 1, 26, 1, there was long and sharp fighting, for diū pūgnātum est atque ācriter pūgnātum est.*

### II. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

**1058.** A COMPLEX SENTENCE is one which consists of a main and a subordinate sentence: as,

centuriōnēs praemittit (main sentence), quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant (subordinate sentence), 2, 17, 1, *he sends some officers ahead to select a suitable spot for the camp.* nunc scio (main sentence), quid sit Amor (subordinate sentence), V. E. 8, 43, *now, now I know what Eros is.* ā tē petō (main sentence), ut mē dēfendās (subordinate sentence), Fam. 15, 7, *I ask it of you that you protect me.*

**1059.** Several sentences are often subordinate to one and the same main sentence, and subordinate sentences may in their turn be main sentences to other subordinate sentences.

Thus, in the following sentence *b* is subordinate to *A*, and *c* to *Ab*: (*c.*) quālis esset nātūra mōntis, (*b.*) quī cōgnōscerent, (*A.*) mīsit, 1, 21, 1, *he sent some people to see what the character of the hill was.*

**1060.** Subordinate sentences may be coordinated with each other, as well as main sentences.

Thus, in the following sentence, *b* and *b* are both subordinate to *A*, but coordinate with each other: (*A.*) hīs rēbus fiēbat, (*b.*) ut et minus lātē vagārentur (*b.*) et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent, 1, 2, 4, *so it came to pass that, in the first place, they did not roam round much, and secondly, they could not so easily make aggressive war on their neighbours.*

**1061.** A subordinate sentence introductory in thought to the main sentence, though not necessarily first in the order of the words, is called a *Protasis*; the main sentence which completes the thought is called an *Apodosis*: as,

quom vidēbis (protasis), tum sciēs (apodosis), Pl. B. 145, *when thou see'st, then thou'lt know.* ut sēmentem fēceris (protasis), ita metēs (apodosis), DO. 2, 261, *as a man soweth, so shall he reap.* sī sunt dī (protasis), beneficī in hominēs sunt (apodosis), Div. 2, 104, *if there are gods, they are kind to men.*

---

## AGREEMENT.

### (A.) OF THE VERB.

**1062.** A verb agrees with its subject in number and person: as,

praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vīvō, RA. 145, *you, sir, hold my estates, it is by the compassion of other people that I am supported.* Rhodanus fluit, 1, 6, 2, *the Rhone flows.* nōs, nōs, dicō apertē, cōsulēs dēsumus, C. 1, 3, *it is ourselves, yes, ourselves, I will speak without reserve, the consuls, who fail in our duty.* vōs vōbīs cōsulite, 7, 50, 4, *do you look out for yourselves.* diffūgēre nivēs, H. 4, 7, 1, *scattered and gone are snows.*



1063. With a compound subject, two constructions are admissible, as follows.

1064. (1.) With two or more singular subjects, the verb is often in the plural : as,

(a.) Without connectives: persons: *iisdem ferē temporibus fuērunt* C. Cotta, P. Sulpicius, Q. Varius, Cn. Pompōnius, *Br.* 182, *in about the same times lived Cotta, Sulpicius, Varius, and Pomponius.* Things: *fidēs Rōmāna, iūstitia imperātōris in forō et cūriā celebrantur*, *L.* 5, 27, 11, *the chivalrous principle of Rome and the square dealing of her captain are trumpeted in market place and council hall.* (b.) With *atque*, *et*, or *-que*: persons: *ex hīs Cotta et Sulpicius facile primās tulērunt*, *Br.* 182, *of these Cotta and Sulpicius indisputably bore the palm.* Things: *nox et amor vīnumque nihil moderābile suādent*, *O. Am.* 1, 6, 59, *darkness and love and wine to nothing governable tempt.* *cum senātus populusque Rōmānus pācem comprobāverint*, *L.* 37, 45, 14, *when the senate and the people of Rome sanction peace.* (c.) With *et . . . et*: persons: *et Q. Māximus et L. Paullus iīs temporibus fuērunt*, *Fam.* 4, 6, 1, *both Maximus and Paullus lived in such times.* Things: *utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae excitābant*, 7, 80, 5, *both of these eagerness for glory in the first place and secondly fear of disgrace spurred on.*

1065. The plural is sometimes demanded by the meaning of the verb: as, *iūs et iniūria nātūrā dīiudicantur*, *Leg.* 1, 44, *right and wrong are naturally distinguished from each other.*

1066. (2.) Often, however, with two or more singular subjects, the verb is put in the singular: as,

(a.) Without connectives: persons: *tum Gorgiās, Thrasy-machus, Prodicus, Hippiās in māgnō honōre fuit*, *Br.* 30, *at that time Gorgias, Thrasy-machus, Prodicus, and Hippias were in high renown.* Things: *persuāsit nox, amor, vīnum, adulēscētia*, *T. Ad.* 470, *the witchery was night, flirtation, wine, and youth.* (b.) With *atque*, *et*, or *-que*: persons: *cūr Lysiās et Hyperidēs amātur?* *Br.* 68, *why is a Lysias and a Hyperides idolized?* Things: *Gallōs ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit*, 1, 2, 1, *the Matrona and Sequana cut off the Gauls from the Belgians.* *senātus populusque Rōmānus voluit*, *L.* 21, 40, 3, *senate and people of Rome ordained.* (c.) With *et . . . et*: persons: *illam ratiōnem et Pompēius et Flaccus secūtus est*, *Flacc.* 32, *that rule both Pompey and Flaccus followed.* Things: *tālis senātorum et dīgnitās et multitūdō fuit*, *Ph.* 13, 13, *both the position and number of the senators was such.*

1067. With two or more singular subjects denoting things, and making a compound idea, a singular verb is very common, agreeing either with the subjects taken as a unit, or with the nearest: as,

(a.) *cum tempus necessitāsque postulat, dēcertandum manū est*, *Off.* 1, 81, *when the emergency requires, we must fight it out by hand.* *tanta laetitia ac grātulātiō fuit*, *L.* 10, 26, 4, *so great was the demonstration of joy.* (b.) *Cingetorigi principātus atque imperium est trāditum*, 6, 8, 9, *the headship and command was assigned to Cingetorix.*

1068. (3.) With mixed subjects, singular and plural, the verb may likewise be either plural or singular: as,

(a.) *vīta mors, dīvitiae paupertās omnīs hominēs permovent*, *Off.* 2, 37, *life and death, riches and poverty, tell much on everybody.* (b.) *quantō in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur*, 2, 26, 5, *in what imminent peril camp and legions and commander were involved.* *hōc mihi et Peripatētici et Acadēmia concēdit*, *Ac.* 2, 113, *this point both Peripatetics and Academy grant me.*

1069. The plural is sometimes used with a singular subject limited by an ablative with *cum*, *with*: as, *Syrus cum illō vostrō cōsusurrant*, *T. Hau.* 473, *Syrus and you man of yours are whispering together.* *Bocchus cum peditibus postrēmam Rōmānōrum aciem invādunt*, *S. I.* 101, 5, *Bocchus with the infantry falls on the rearward line of the Romans.* Cicero commonly uses a singular verb in this combination, Caesar has the plural once only.

1070. (4.) When the subjects are connected by *nec . . . nec*, *aut*, or *aut . . . aut*, the verb is likewise either plural or singular: as,

(a.) *neque multitudō hostium neque tēlōrum vīs arcēre impetum eius viri potuerunt*, *L.* 26, 5, 17, *neither the numbers of the enemy nor the shower of missiles could arrest the onslaught of that intrepid soul.* *sī quid Sōcratēs aut Aristippus fēcerint*, *Off.* 1, 148, *if a Socrates or an Aristippus had done anything.* (b.) *neque pēs neque mēns satis suum officium facit*, *T. Eu.* 729, *nor foot nor mind its duty doth aright.* *sī Sōcratēs aut Antisthenēs dīceret*, *TD.* 5, 26, *if a Socrates or an Antisthenes should say it.*

1071. Collectives have usually a singular verb. But the plural is sometimes used, especially when the subject is separated from its verb, or is to be supplied from a preceding clause: as,

*cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent*, 2, 6, 3, *when such a throng were throwing stones.* *is civitatī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis exīrent*, 1, 2, 1, *this person succeeded in inducing the community to leave their territory.*

1072. The verb sometimes agrees with an appositive explaining the subject, or with a substantive in the predicate: as,

(a.) *flammae latē fūsae, certiōris clādis indicium, prōgredi longius prohibuit*, *L.* 10, 43, 11, *wide-spread flames, sign of a surer disaster, prevented a further advance.* When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *civitas*, or the like, is added to plural names of places, the predicate usually agrees with the appellative: as, *Coriolī oppidum captum*, *L.* 2, 33, 9, *Corioli town was taken.* (b.) *amantium irae amoris integratiōst*, *T. Andr.* 555, *lovers' tiffs are love's renewal.* *summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII*, 1, 29, 3, *the grand total was about three hundred and sixty-eight thousand.* The verb regularly agrees with the predicate substantive when the subject is an infinitive: as, *contentum suis rēbus esse māximae sunt dīvitiae*, *Par.* 51, *for a man to be content with his own estate is the greatest possible riches.*

1073. The verb sometimes agrees with a substantive introduced by such words as *quam*, *quantum*, *nisi*, or *praeterquam*: as, *quis illum cōsulem nisi latrōnēs putant?* *Ph.* 4, 9, *who but brigands think that man a consul?* So also a predicate adjective or participle: as, *mihi nōn tam cōpia quam modus quaerendus est*, *IP.* 3, *I must aim not so much at comprehensiveness as at moderation.*

1074. A speaker in referring to himself sometimes uses the first person plural, as a more modest form of expression: as, *Molōnī dedimus operam*, *Br.* 307, *we attended Molo's instruction*, i. e. I. Similarly *nōs* in all its cases for *ego*, &c., and *noster*, &c., for *meus*, &c.



**1075.** The singular imperative *age* is sometimes used in addressing more than one, particularly in old Latin: *as, age licēminī*, Pl. *St.* 221, *come, people, give a bid.* *age igitur intrō abīte*, Pl. *MG.* 928, *come then go in.* Similarly, *cave dīrum-pātis*, Pl. *Pozn.* 117, *mind you don't break it off.* Similarly *ain*.

**1076.** If the subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second or the third, and the second to the third: *as,*

*sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valē-mus*, *Fam.* 14, 5, 1, *if you and Tullia, our sunbeam, are well, darling Cicero and I are well.* But sometimes in contrasts the verb agrees with the nearest person: *as, quid indicat aut ipse Cornēlius aut vōs?* *Sull.* 54, *what information does Cornelius himself give, or you people?*

## (B.) OF THE NOUN.

### (1.) THE SUBSTANTIVE.

**1077.** A substantive which explains another substantive referring to the same thing is put in the same case.

This applies to the substantive used as attribute, appositive, or predicate. The two substantives often differ in gender or number, or both. (a.) Attribute: *tīrōne exercitū*, *Fam.* 7, 3, 2, *with a raw army.* *ā mīmā uxōre*, *Ph.* 2, 20, *from an actress-wife.* *mendicōs hominēs*, Pl. *St.* 135, *beggar-men.* *oculī hominis histriōnis*, *DO.* 2, 193, *the eyes of an actor man.* *nēmīnī hominī*, Pl. *As.* 466, *to no human being.* *servom hominem*, *T. Ph.* 292, *a servant man.* *hominēs sicāriōs*, *RA.* 8, *professional bravoos.* (b.) Appositive: *quid dicam dē thēsaurō rērum omnium, memoriā?* *DO.* 1, 18, *what shall I say of that universal storehouse, the memory?* *duo fulmina nostrī imperiī*, *Cn. et P. Scīpiōnēs*, *Balb.* 34, *the two thunderbolts of our realm, the Scipios, Gnaeus and Publius.* (c.) Predicate: *īra furor brevis est*, *H. E.* 1, 2, 62, *wrath is a madness brief.* *Dolābellā hoste dēcrētō*, *Ph.* 11, 16, *Dolabella having been voted a public enemy.* Some apparent exceptions will be noticed from time to time hereafter.

**1078.** Mobile substantives take also the gender and number of the masculines or feminines they explain: *as,*

*stilus optimus dicendī magister*, *DO.* 1, 150, *pen is the best professor of rhetoric.* *vīta rūstica parsimōniae magistra est*, *RA.* 75, *country life is a teacher of thrift.* *fluviōrum rēx Ēridanus*, *V. G.* 1, 482, *Eridanus, of rivers king.* *et genus et fōrmam rēgīna pecūnia dōnat*, *H. E.* 1, 6, 37, *both birth and shape the almighty dollar gives.* *ut omittam illās omnium doctrīnārum inventricēs Athēnās*, *DO.* 1, 13, *to say nothing of the great originator of all intellectual pursuits, Athens.*

**1079.** A substantive explaining two or more substantives, is put in the plural: *as,*

*foedus inter Rōmam Lāvīniumque urbēs renovātum est*, *L.* 1, 14, 3, *the treaty between the cities of Rome and Lavinium was renewed.* *Cn. et P. Scīpiōnēs*, *Balb.* 34, *the Scipios, Gnaeus and Publius.*



1080. A plural subject, expressed or implied, is sometimes defined by a singular word, which is generally a collective or distributive: as,

ut ambō exercitūs suās quisque abirent domōs, L. 2, 7, 1, *so that both armies went back to their respective homes.* uterque eōrum ex castris exercitum edūcunt, Caes. C. 3, 30, 3, *they bring their army out of camp, each of them.* heus forās exīte hūc aliquis, Pl. E. 398, *hallo, you boys, come out of doors here, somebody.* alius alium percontāmur, Pl. St. 370, *we ask of one another.* cum accidisset ut alter alterum vidērēmus, Fin. 3, 8, *when it came to pass that we each saw the other.* The verb sometimes agrees with the defining singular: as, quandō duo cōsulēs, alter morbō, alter ferrō periisset, L. 41, 18, 16, *since the two consuls had died, one a natural death, the other by the sword.*

1081. A substantive in the accusative or nominative is sometimes in apposition to a thought or clause: as,

manūs intentantēs, causam discordiae, Ta. 1, 27, *shaking their fists, a provocation to quarrel.* pars ingentī subiēre feretrō, trīste ministerium, V. 6, 222, *a part put shoulder to the mighty bier, a service sad.* nec Homērum audiō, quī Ganymēdēn ab dīs raptum ait propter fōrmam; nōn iūsta causa cūr Lāomedontī tanta fieret iniūria, TD. 1, 65, *nor will I lend an ear to Homer, who asserts that Ganymede was carried off by the gods for his beauty; no just reason for doing Laomedon such injustice.*

## (2.) THE ADJECTIVE.

1082. An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, agrees with its substantive in number, gender, and case: as,

vir bonus, H. Ep. 1, 16, 40, *a good man,* bona uxor, Pl. MG. 684, *a good wife,* oleum bonum, Cato, RR. 3, *good oil.* Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, 1, 1, 1, *Gaul, including everything under the name, is divided into three parts.* et variae volucrēs nemora āvia pervolitantēs āera per tene-rum liquidīs loca vōcibus opplent, Lucr. 2, 145, *and motley birds, in path-less woods that flit through liether sky, fill space with carols clear.*

1083. An adjective or participle, either attributive or predicate, sometimes takes the number and gender of the persons or things implied in the substantive: as,

(a.) concursus populī mīrantium quid rēi esset, L. 1, 41, 1, *a gathering of the public, wondering what was the matter.* (b.) pars subeuntium obrutī, pars cōfixī, Ta. H. 2, 22, *a part of those who came up were crushed, a part were run through.* Samnītiū caesī tria milia ducentī, L. 10, 34, 3, *of the Samnites were slain three thousand two hundred.*

1084. (1.) An attributive adjective referring to several substantives is commonly expressed with one only, generally with the first or the last: as,

*rēs erat multae operae et labōris*, 5, 11, 5, *it was a job that required much work and trouble.* *semper amāvī ingenium, studia, mōrēs tuōs*; O. 33, *I have always admired your ability, your scholarly tastes, and your character.* In lively style, the adjective is often used with every substantive.

1085. Two or more attributive adjectives in the singular connected by a conjunction may belong to a plural substantive: as,

*circā portās Collīnam Ēsquilīnamque*, L. 26, 10, 2, *about the gates, the Colline and the Esquiline.* But the substantive may also be in the singular: as, *inter Ēsquilīnam Collīnamque portam*, L. 26, 10, 1, *between the Esquiline and the Colline gate.*

1086. The combined idea of a substantive with an attributive adjective may be qualified by one or more adjectives: as,

*nāvis longās trīgintā veterēs*, L. 27, 22, 12, *thirty old men-of-war.* *privāta nāvis onerāria māxima*, V. 5. 136, *a very large private freighting vessel.* *āter aliēnus canis*, T. Ph. 706, *a strange black dog.*

1087. (2.) A predicate adjective or participle referring to two or more substantives is usually in the plural; its gender is determined as follows:

1088. (a.) If the substantives denote persons of the same gender, that gender is used; if they denote persons of different gender, the masculine is used: as,

*venēnō absūptī Hannibal et Philopoemēn*, L. 39, 52, 8, *it was by poison that Hannibal and Philopoemen were taken off.* *quam pridem pater mihi et māter mortuī essent*, T. Eu. 517, *how long my father and my mother had been dead.*

1089. (b.) If the substantives denote things, and are of different genders, the neuter plural is used; also commonly when they are feminines denoting things: as,

*mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant*, L. 32, 29, 1, *the wall and town-gate had been struck by lightning* *ira et avāritia imperiō potentiōra erant*, L. 37, 32, 13, *hot blood and greed proved stronger than authority.*

1090. (c.) If the substantives denote both persons and things, either the gender of the substantives denoting persons is used, or the neuter. The gender of the substantives denoting things is very rarely used: as,

*et rēx rēgiaque clāssis ūnā profectī*, L. 21, 50, 11, *the king too and the king's fleet set sail in his company.* *inimīca inter sē liberam civitātem et rēgem*, L. 44, 24, 2, *that a free state and a monarch were irreconcilable things.* *Dolopas et Athamāniam ēreptās sibi querēs*, L. 38, 10, 3, *complaining that the Dolopians and Athamania were wrested from him.*

1091. When the verb is attached to the nearest only of two or more subjects, a predicate participle or adjective naturally takes the gender of that substantive: as, *ibī Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est*, 1, 26, 5, *there the daughter of Orgetorix and one of the sons too was made prisoner.* *ut brāchia atque umerī liberī esse possent*, 7, 56, 4, *so that their arms and shoulders might be unhampered.*

1092. The ablative singular *absente* is once used by Terence with a plural substantive: *absente nōbis*, T. Eu. 649, *while we were out.*



## Agreement: The Noun. [1093-1098.]

1093. A neuter adjective or pronoun is sometimes used as a substantive in the predicate (1101): as,

*triste lupus stabulīs, V. E. 3, 80, a baleful thing the wolf for folds. quod ego fui ad Trāsumennum, id tū hodiē, L. 30, 30, 12, what I was myself at Trasumene, that you are today.*

1094. A demonstrative, determinative, or relative pronoun used substantively takes the number and gender of the substantive it represents; the case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands: as,

*erant peditēs, quōs dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur; ad eōs sē recipiēbant; hī concurrēbant, 1, 48, 5, there were foot-soldiers whom they had picked out; with these men they kept company in action; upon them they would fall back; these people would always rally. Hippiās glōriātus est ānulum quem habēret, pallium quō amictus, soccōs quibus indūtus esset, sē suā manū cōnfēcisse, DO. 3, 127, Hippias bragged he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore, the cloak in which he was wrapped, and the slippers which he had on.*

1095. Sometimes, however, the number and gender of these pronouns are determined by the sense, and not by the form of the substantive represented: as,

*equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant, 1, 15, 1, he sends all the horse ahead, for them to see. hīc sunt quīnque minae. hōc tibi erus mē iūssit ferre, Pl. Ps. 1149, here are five minae; this my master bade me bring for thee. Domitius Massiliam pervenit atque ab iīs receptus urbī praeficitur, Caes. C. 1, 36, 1, Domitius arrived at Massilia, and was received by the people and put in charge of the town. ad hirundinīnum nidum vīsast sīmia adscēnsiōnem ut faceret admōlirier; neque eās ēripere quibat inde, Pl. R. 598, up to a swallow-nest methought an ape did strive to climb; nor could she snatch the nestlings thence; the eās refers to hirundinēs, implied in hirundinīnum.*

1096. A pronoun representing two or more substantives sometimes takes the number and gender of the nearest. But usually it is plural, and its gender is determined like that of an adjective (1087).

1097. A demonstrative, determinative, or relative pronoun used substantively is generally attracted to the number and gender of a predicate substantive in its own clause: as,

*haec est nōbilis ad Trāsumennum pūgna, L. 22, 7, 1, such is the far-famed fight at Trasumene, 217 B. C. ista quidem vīs est, Suet. Inl. 82, now that I call an outrage, Caesar's dying words, 44 B. C. But with a negative, usually the neuter: as, nec sopor illud erat, V. 3, 173, nor was that sleep.*

1098. A demonstrative, determinative, or relative pronoun in agreement with a substantive is often equivalent to a genitive limiting the substantive: as,

*hōc metū vagārī prohibēbat, 5, 19, 2, by fear of this he stopped the prowling round. is pavor perculit Rōmānōs, L. 31, 46, 7, the panic occasioned by this demoralized the Romans. quā spē adductī, 4, 6, 4, impelled by the hope of this.*



## THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

### (A.) USE OF THE NOUN.

---

#### NUMBER AND GENDER.

**1099.** The singular of a word denoting a person is sometimes used in a collective sense.

This singular is generally a military designation: as, *miles*, *eques*, *pedes*, *hostis*, *Rōmānus*, *Poenus*. But other substantives and adjectives are occasionally thus used.

**1100.** A substantive or adjective denoting a person is often used in the singular as representative of a class, particularly when two persons are contrasted: as,

*sī tabulam dē naufrāgiō stultus adripuerit, extorquēbitne eam sapiēns?* *Off. 3, 89, if a fool has seized a plank from a wreck, will the sage twitch it away?*

**1101.** The neuter singular of certain adjectives is used as an abstract substantive.

These adjectives have commonly stems in *-o-*, and are often used in the partitive genitive (1250). The nominative is rare, also the accusative and ablative, except in prepositional constructions. Such are: *bonum*, *malum*; *rēctum*, *prāvum*; *decōrum*, *indecōrum*; *honestum*; *vērūm*, *falsum*; *iūstum*, *iniūstum*; *aequum*; *ambiguum*; *rīdiculum*. *ūtile*, *ināne*, *commūne*, *insigne*, *simile*, &c.

**1102.** Certain adjectives, which originally agreed with an appellative denoting a thing, have dropped the appellative and become substantives.

Such are: *Āfricus*, sc. *ventus*; *Āfrica*, sc. *terra*; *calda*, sc. *aqua*; *cānī*, sc. *capillī*; *circēnsēs*, sc. *lūdī*; *decuma*, sc. *pars*; *fera*, sc. *bēstia*; *hīberna*, sc. *castra*; *merum*, sc. *vīnum*; *nātālis*, sc. *diēs*; *patria*, sc. *terra*; *praetexta*, sc. *toga*; *summa*, sc. *rēs*; *trirēmis*, sc. *nāvis*, and some others.

**1103.** Certain adjectives denoting relationship, friendship, hostility, connection, or age, may be used in both numbers as substantives.

Such are: (*a.*) *adfīnis*, *cōgnātus*, *cōnsanguineus*, *gentilis*, *necessārius*, *propīnquus*; (*b.*) *adversārius*, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *familiāris*, *hostis*, *intimus*, *invidus*, *socius*, *sodālis*; (*c.*) *contubernālis*, *manipulāris*, *vīcīnus*; (*d.*) *adulēscēns*, *aequālis*, *iuvenis*, *senex*.

**1104.** The masculine plural of many adjectives is used substantively to denote a class.

Such are: *bonī*, *the good, the well-disposed, conservatives, patriots, our party*; *improbī*, *the wicked, the dangerous classes, revolutionists, anarchists, the opposite party*; *doctī*, *indoctī*; *pīī*, *impiī*, and the like.

**1105.** Proper names of men are used in the plural to denote different persons of the same name, or as appellatives to express character, oftenest good character: as,

*duo Metellī, Celer et Nepōs, Br. 247, the two Metelluses, Celer and Nepos. quid Crassōs, quid Pompēiōs ēvertit? J. 10, 108, what overthrew a Crassus, Pompey what? i.e. men like Crassus and Pompey.*

**1106.** The neuter plural of adjectives of all degrees of comparison is very often used as a substantive.

Such adjectives are usually in the nominative or accusative, and may have a pronoun, a numeral, or an adjective, agreeing with them. In English the singular is often preferred. Such are: *bona, mala; vēra, falsa; haec, this; omnia, everything; haec omnia, all this, &c., &c.*

**1107.** Names of countries are sometimes used in the plural when the country consists of several parts which are called by the same name as the whole country: as, *Galliae, the Gauls; Germāniae, the Germanies.*

**1108.** Material substantives are often used in the plural to denote different sorts of the substance designated, its constituent parts, or objects made of it: as,

*aera, lumps of bronze, bronzes, coppers. aquae, water in different places, medicinal springs. cērae, pieces of wax, tablets, wax masks, waxworks. marmora, kinds of marble, blocks of marble, works of marble. nivēs, snowflakes, snowdrifts, snowstorms, repeated snows. spūmae, masses of foam. sulphura, lumps of sulphur. vīna, wines, different kinds of wine.*

**1109.** Abstract substantives are often used in the plural to denote different kinds or instances of the abstract idea, or an abstract idea pertaining to several persons or things: as,

*sunt domesticae fortitudinēs nōn inferiōrēs militāribus, Off. 1, 78, there are cases of heroism in civil life fully equal to those in war. tē cōscientiae stimulant maleficiōrum tuōrum, Par. 18, you are tormented by pricks of conscience for your sins. propter siccitatēs palūdum, 4, 38, 2, because the swamps were dry everywhere.*

**1110.** The plural is sometimes used in generalizations, and in poetry to magnify a single thing, to give mystery to the statement, or often merely for metrical convenience: as, *advēnisse familiārēs dicitō, Pl. Am. 353, say that the people of the house are come, the plural familiārēs denoting one person. Priamī dum rēgna manēbant, V. 2, 22, while Priam's realms still stood. externōs optāte ducēs, V. 8, 503, choose captains from a foreign strand, i.e. Aeneas.*

## C A S E.

**1111.** There are two groups of cases, the principal and the secondary.

**1112.** The principal cases are the nominative and the accusative. The principal cases, which have more complete inflections than the secondary, express the two chief relations of the noun in the sentence, those of the subject and of the object. The secondary cases are used to express subordinate or supplementary relations.

## THE NOMINATIVE.

1113. The nominative is principally used as the subject or predicate noun of a verb or of an infinitive. Besides this use, the nominative occurs in titles, exclamations, and addresses (1114-1123).

### THE NOMINATIVE OF TITLE.

1114. The nominative is used in inscriptions, notices, titles, or headings: as,

L · CORNELIVS · CN · F · CN · N · SCIPIO, CIL. I, 34, on a tomb, *Lucius Cornelius Scipio, son (filius) of Gnaeus, grandson (nepōs) of Gnaeus*. LABYRINTHVS HIC HABITAT MINOTAVRVS, CIL. IV, 2331, on a plan of the Labyrinth scratched by a Pompei schoolboy, *The Maze. Here lives Minotaur*. PRIVATVM PRECARIO ADEITVR, CIL. I, 1215, *Private Grounds. No Admittance without leave*. Themistoclēs, Neoclī filius, Athēniēnsis, N. 2, 1, *Themistocles, son of Neocles, of Athens*.

1115. The title proper of a book is often put in the genitive, dependent on liber or librī: as, Cornēlī Tacitī Historiārum Liber Prīmus, *Tacitus's Histories, Book First*. Or prepositional expressions are used: as, M. Tullī Cicerōnis de Fātō Liber, *Cicero, Fate, in One Book*. Cornēlī Tacitī ab Excessū dīvi Augustī Liber Prīmus, *Tacitus's Roman History from the Demise of the sainted Augustus, Book First*.

1116. Sometimes the nominative of a title or exclamation is retained in a sentence for some other case: as, Gabiniō cōgnōmen 'Cauchius' ūsūrpāre concessit, Suet. Cl. 24, *he allowed Gabinius to take the surname 'Cauchius';* (compare Catō quasi cōgnōmen habēbat Sapientis, L. 6, *Cato had the virtual surname of the Wise*). 'Marsya' nōmen habet, O. 6, 400, *it has the name of 'Marsyas';* (compare nōmen Dānuvium habet, S. Fr. 3, 55, *it has the name Danube*). resonent mihi 'Cynthia' silvae, Prop. 1, 18, 31, *let woods reecho 'Cynthia' for me;* (compare tū, Tityre, fōrmōsam resonāre docēs Amaryllida silvas, V. E. 1, 4, *thou, Tityrus, dost teach the woods to echo Amaryllis Fair*).

### THE NOMINATIVE OF EXCLAMATION.

1117. The nominative is sometimes used in exclamations: as, fōrtūnae filius, omnēs, H. S. 2, 6, 49, *'the child of Fortune,' all exclaim*. This nominative is often accompanied by an interjection, such as ecce, ēn, heu, ō, prō, vāh: as, ēn Priamus, V. 1, 461, *lo, Priam here*. ō fēstus diēs, T. Eu. 560, *oh day of cheer*. For eccilla, see 667.

### THE VOCATIVE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE PROPER.

1118. The vocative nominative is used when a person or thing is addressed: as,

quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? C. 1, 1, *in heaven's name, how long, Catiline, wilt trifle with our patience?* valēte, dēsīderia mea, valēte, Fam. 14, 2, 4, *good bye, my absent loves, good bye*. Instead of a proper name, an emphatic tū is often used: as, advorte animum sis tū, Pl. Cap. 110, *just pay attention, sirrah, please*.



**1119.** Masculine stems in **-o-** commonly use the special form for the second person singular called the vocative: as,

**urbem, urbem, mī Rūfe, cole, Fam. 2, 12, 2, stick to town, dear Rufus, yes, to town.** But the vocative nominative is sometimes used even of **-o-** stems: as, **audī tū, populus Albānus, L. 1, 24, 7, hear thou, the people of Alba.**

**1120.** Poets use the vocative nominative or vocative proper very freely, sometimes for liveliness, but often simply in place of other cases not allowed by the metre: as,

**ōra manūsque tuō lavimus, Fērōnia, fōnte, H. S. 1, 5, 24, our faces and our hands, Feronia, in thy spring we wash. occiderat Tātius, populisque aequāta duōbus, Rōmule, iūra dabās, O. 14, 805, now dead was Tātius, and to peoples twain thou gavest, Romulus, impartial laws. longum tibi, Daedale, crīmen, O. 8, 240, a lasting stigma, Daedalus, to thee.** In these three examples, **Fērōniae, Rōmulus,** and **Daedalō** would be impossible. In poetry, the vocative is particularly common in questions.

**1121.** Nominative forms and vocative forms are often combined: as, **dulcis amīce, H. E. 1, 7, 12, sweet friend. mī vir, Pl. Am. 716, my husband. Iāne pater, J. 6, 394, thou father Janus.**

**1122.** In verse the vocative is occasionally used even in the predicate: as, **quō moritūre ruis? V. 10, 811, whither, on death intent, fliest thou? quibus, Hector, ab ōris expectāte venis? V. 2, 282, out of what limboes, Hector, dost thou gladly welcomed come?**

**1123.** The vocative nominative or vocative proper is sometimes accompanied by **ō**, but only in impassioned addresses: as, **ō fōrtūnāte adulēscēns, Arch. 24, oh thou thrice blest youth; also by prō in addresses to gods, by eho and heus in calls on men. Rarely by au, ehem, hem, ēheu, ēia or hēia, iō.**

## THE ACCUSATIVE.

**1124.** The accusative is used primarily with verbs, or with expressions equivalent to verbs. The relations expressed by the accusative are all of one general kind; but they vary somewhat, according to the nature of the verb.

**1125. I.** With most verbs, the accusative either (*a.*) denotes that which is affected or apprehended, or is produced by the action of the verb (1132); or, less frequently (*b.*) it repeats the meaning of the verb in the form of a substantive (1140).

Such accusatives, called accusatives of the *Object*, are never attended by a preposition, and become nominative in the passive construction.

**1126. II.** With some verbs, the accusative denotes (*a.*) extent or duration (1151); with others it denotes (*b.*) aim of motion (1157).

Both these accusatives sometimes have their places taken by a prepositional expression, or by an adverb; in the passive construction, they are not convertible into a nominative, but remain accusative.

1127. Two or even three accusatives are sometimes used with one and the same verb: see 1167-1174.

1128. The accusative is sometimes disengaged from the verb, with which it originally stood, and used with a noun or a preposition.

1129. (1.) With substantives, the accusative is rare; it is used (*a.*) in a few attributive expressions, chiefly old set forms, and rarely to denote (*b.*) aim of motion.

Thus (*a.*) the predicative *id aetātis*, in *id aetātis iam sumus*, *we are now of that age*, becomes attributive in *hominēs id aetātis*, *people of that age*. And (*b.*) as *domum*, *home*, is used with the verb *redeō*, *go back*, so also rarely with the substantive *reditiō*, *a return*.

1130. With adjectives, the accusative is commonly that of extent: so with *altus*, *high*, *lātus*, *wide*, and *longus*, *long*, sometimes with *crassus*, *thick*.

Thus, in *eōs surculōs facitō sint longī pedēs bīnōs*, *see that the scions be two feet long*, the accusative *pedēs*, which belongs with the predicate *sint longī*, may be used with the attributive adjective *longus* alone, thus: *surculi longī pedēs bīnōs*, *scions two feet long*.

1131. (2.) The accusative is used with many prepositions: see 1410.

---

## I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

1132. The object of a verb is put in the accusative: as,

(*a.*) *oppida sua omnia incendunt*, 1, 5, 3, *they set all their towns afire*. *cōnspexit adrāsum quendam*, H. E. 1, 7, 49, *he spied a man all shaven and shorn*. (*b.*) *duās fossās perdūxit*, 7, 72, 3, *he made two trenches*. This accusative, is, as may be seen above, either (*a.*) receptive, i. e. existing independently of the action of the verb, and only affected or apprehended by it; or (*b.*) of product, i. e. produced by the action of the verb.

1133. Verbs thus used with an object are said to be *used transitively*. Such verbs may also be used intransitively, that is without an object, when stress is put on the action merely: thus,

(*a.*) Transitively: *tū mē amās*, *ego tē amō*, Pl. Most. 305, *thou lovest me, and I love thee*. *nova dīruunt*, *alia aedificant*, S. C. 20, 12, *they pull down new structures, and build up others*. (*b.*) Intransitively: *amō*, Pl. B. 511, *I'm in love*. *dīruit*, *aedificat*, H. E. 1, 1, 100, *it pulleth down, it buildeth up*.

1134. Some verbs, in addition to the accusative, often take an infinitive also: thus, *eum vident sedēre*, V. 5, 107, *they see him sit, they see that he is sitting*. Here the accusative *eum*, originally the object, *they see him*, becomes at the same time the subject of the new statement appended, *sedēre*, *sit*, thus giving rise to the construction known as the *accusative with the infinitive*.

1135. Instead of the proper accusative of the object, another accusative is sometimes substituted, denoting the ultimate result: as,

*rūpēre viam*, L. 2, 50, 10, *they broke a path*, i. e. *they broke through the obstacles, and so made a path*. *foedusque ferī*, E. 33, *and strike a covenant*, i. e. *strike a victim, and so make a covenant*.



## The Noun : Accusative. [1136-1140.]

1136. In Plautus, *quid tibi* with a substantive of action in *-tiō* and *est*, has an accusative like a verb used transitively : as, *quid tibi hanc cūrātiōst rem?* Pl. *Am.* 519, *what business hast thou with this?*

1137. Many verbs ordinarily used intransitively, particularly verbs of motion, have a transitive use when compounded with a preposition.

Such prepositions are, *ad*, *circum*, *ex*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *prae*, *praeter*, *trāns*, and some others : as, *plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant*, 4, 26, 2, *a good many took their stand round a few*. *Caesar omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit*, *Caes. C.* 1, 15, 1, *Caesar runs over the whole Picene territory*. *praeterire nēmō pristrinum potest*, Pl. *Cap.* 808, *no man can pass the mill*. *flūmen trāsiērunt*, 4, 4, 7, *they crossed the river*.

1138. A few verbs with a transitive use, have, when compounded with *circum* and *trāns*, besides the accusative of the object, a second accusative of the thing to which the preposition refers : as, *istum circumdūce hāsce aedīs*, Pl. *Most.* 843, *take that man round this house*. *Caesar funditōrēs pōntem trādūcit*, 2, 10, 1, *Caesar takes the slingers over the bridge*. *trānsfer limen aureolōs pedēs*, *Cat.* 61, 166, *over the threshold put thy little golden foot*. In the passive, the accusative connected with the preposition is sometimes retained : as, *Apollōniam praetervehuntur*, *Caes. C.* 3, 26, 1, *they sail by Apollonia*.

1139. Verbs of weeping and wailing, and some other verbs of feeling, which commonly have an intransitive use, sometimes have a transitive use with an accusative : as,

(a.) *lūget senātus, maeret equester ōrdō*, *Mil.* 20, *the senate is in mourning, the equestrian order betrays its sadness*. (b.) *mātrōnae eum lūxērunt*, *L.* 2, 7, 4, *the married women wore mourning for him*. *maereō cāsum ēius modī*, *Fam.* 14, 2, 2, *I cannot help showing my grief over a misfortune of such a kind*. *quid mortem congemis ac flēs*, *Lucr.* 3, 934, *why dost thou death bewail and weep?* Such verbs are *fleō*, *weep*, *gemō*, *wail*, *lāmentor*, *queror*, *bewail*, *doleō*, *am distressed*, *lūgeō*, *mourn*, *maereō*, *betray sadness*. Similarly, *horreō*, *shudder*, *reformīdō*, *am in dread*, *fastīdiō*, *feel disdain*, *rīdeō*, *laugh*, &c., &c. The object is oftener a thing than a person, and passive constructions are rare, and mostly confined to poetry.

### THE EMPHASIZING OR DEFINING ACCUSATIVE.

1140. The meaning of a verb, even of one ordinarily intransitive, may be emphasized or more exactly defined by an accusative of kindred derivation added.

(a.) Seldom without an adjective : as, *dum vītā vīvās*, Pl. *Per.* 494, *as long as life thou liv'st*, i. e. as long as you ever live and breathe. *quōrum māiōrum nēmō servitūtem servivit*, *T.* 29, *of whose ancestors not one has served servitude*, i. e. been a regular slave. *vidē nē facinus faciās*, *Fin.* 2, 95, *mind you don't do a deed*, i. e. a misdeed. (b.) Commonly with an adjective : as, *scelestam servitūtem serviunt*, Pl. *Cu.* 40, *a wicked servitude they serve*. *facinus memorābile fēcistis*, *L.* 24, 22, 16, *you have done a deed well worth mentioning*. *mīrum atque īncītum somniāvī somnium*, Pl. *R.* 597, *a strange and silly dream dreamed I*.



## 1141-1147.] Sentences : The Simple Sentence.

1141. The verb sometimes has an accusative of kindred meaning, but of different derivation: as,

ut vivās aetātem miser, Pl. *Am.* 1023, *that thou mayst live thy days in woe.* nōn pūgnāvit ingēns Idomeneus Sthenelusve sōlus dicenda Mūsīs proelia, H. 4, 9, 19, *not towering Idomeneus nor Sthenelus alone has battles fought for Muses to rehearse.*

1142. The neuter singular accusative of a descriptive adjective is used, particularly by the poets, to denote manner: as,

māgnū clāmat, Pl. *MG.* 823, *he's bellowing big.* suāve locus vōcī resonat conclūsus, H. *S.* 1, 4, 76, *sweet to the voice the pent-up place rings back.* suāve rubēns hyacinthus, V. *E.* 3, 63, *sweet-blushing hyacinth.* cūr tam cernis acūtum? H. *S.* 1, 3, 26, *why dost thou see so sharp?* The plural is not so common: as, asper, acerba tuēns, Lucr. 5, 33, V. 9, 794, *rough, staring savageness.*

1143. Some verbs of smell and of taste have an accusative defining what the smell or the taste is: as, pāstillōs Rūfillus olet, Gargōnius hīrcum, H. *S.* 1, 2, 27, *of lozenges Ruffillus smells, Gargonius of the goat.* doctrīnam redolet puerīlem, DO. 2, 109, *it smacks of A B C studies.* nōn omnēs possunt olere unguenta exōtica, Pl. *Most.* 42, *not every man can of imported ointments reek.* meliōra unguenta sunt quae terram quam quae crocum sapiunt, Cic. in Plin. *NH.* 17, 5, 3, 38, *essences that smell of earth are better than those that smell of saffron.*

1144. Any verb or verbal expression may be defined in a general way by the neuter accusative of a pronoun or of an enumerative word. as,

id gaudeō, T. *Andr.* 362, *I'm glad of that.* id maestast, Pl. *R.* 397, *she's mournful over this.* id prōdeō, T. *Eu.* 1005, *I'm coming out for this.* cētera adsentior Crassō, DO. 1, 35, *on all the other points I agree with Crassus.* So also quod, *for which, on account of which,* aliquid, quicquam, nihil, &c., &c., and particularly quid, *why, in what respect, wherein, what, or what . . . for:* as, quid vēnistī, Pl. *Am.* 377, *why art thou come?* quid tibi obstō, RA. 145, *wherein do I stand in your way?*

1145. The accusative of an appellative is rarely used adverbially: as, māgnam partem ex iambīs nostra cōstat ōrātiō, O. 189, *our own speech is made up a great deal of iambs.* māximam partem lacte vivunt, 4, 1, 8, *they live on milk the most part, i. e. chiefly.* Prepositional expressions are commoner: as, māgnā ex parte, 1, 16, 6, *principally.* For vicem, *instead of, for, or like,* see the dictionary.

1146. The accusative is sometimes disengaged from a verb, and qualifies a substantive as an attribute, chiefly in a few set expressions (1129): as, ōrātiōnēs aut aliquid id genus, Att. 13, 12, 3, *speeches or something that kind.* aucupium omne genus, Cat. 114, 3, *fowling of every kind.* nūgās hōc genus, H. *S.* 2, 6, 43, *small talk — this kind.* hōc genus in rēbus, Lucr. 6, 917, *in matters of this kind.* cum id aetātis filiō, Clu. 141, *with a son of that age.* Similarly diēs quīndecim supplicātiō, 2, 35, 4, *a fortnight thanksgiving.*

### THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PART CONCERNED.

1147. Poets use the accusative to express the part concerned, especially a part of the human body: as,

## *The Noun : Accusative.* [1148-1151.

---

tremat artūs, *Lucr.* 3, 489, *V. G.* 3, 84, *he shivers in his limbs.* tremis ossa pavōre, *H. S.* 2, 7, 57, *thou tremblest in thy bones with fear.* viridī membra sub arbutō strātus, *H.* 1, 1, 21, *stretching — his limbs — beneath an arbut green.* ōs umerōsque deō similis, *V.* 1, 589, *in face and shoulders like a god.*

### THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE THING PUT ON.

1148. The accusative is used with reflexive verbs in poetry to denote the thing put on : as,

comantem Androgeī galeam induitur, *V.* 2, 391, *Androgeus' high-haired helm he dons.* exuviās indūtus Achillī, *V.* 2, 275, *clad in Achilles' spoils.* Rarely to denote the thing taken off : as, priōrēs exuitur vultūs, *St. Th.* 10, 640, *she doffs her former looks.*

### THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION.

1149. The accusative is used in exclamations, sometimes merely to call attention to something, but generally with a predicate to express a judgment with emphasis.

(a.) In calling attention, ecce or em is used in old Latin : as, ecce mē, *Pl. MIG.* 663, *behold, your humble servant.* em Dāvom tibi, *T. Andr.* 842, *there, Davos sir.* For ellum, eccillum, &c., see 667 and 673. Also, from Cicero on, ēn : as, ēn quattuor ārās, *V. E.* 5, 65, *see, altars four.* (b.) In emphatic judgments sometimes the accusative alone : as, fōrtūnātum Nicobūlum, *Pl. B.* 455, *lucky man that Nicobulus.* testis ēgregiōs, *Cael.* 63, *mighty fine witnesses ;* sometimes with an interjection : as, ō imperātōrem probum, *Pl. B.* 759, *oh what a good commander ;* rarely so with ecastor, edepol, eugē, *bravo*, heu, ilicet, *all's up*, ēheu. Interrogatively : hancine impudentiam ? *V.* 5, 62, *possible, shamelessness like this ?*

1150. The accusative is used in excited orders, appeals, and questions, without any verb expressed, or even distinctly felt : as, Tiberium in Tiberim, *Suet. Tib.* 75, *Tiberius to the Tiber.* dī vostram fidem, *T. Andr.* 716, *ye gods your help.* prō fidem, Thēbānī cīvēs, *Pl. Am.* 376, *oh help, or murder, ye citizens of Thebes.* So with unde, quō, and quādo, often followed by mihi or tibi : as, quō mihi fōrtūnam, si nōn concēditur ūti ? *H. E.* 1, 5, 12, *why wealth for me, if wealth I may not use ?*

---

## II. THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPACE AND TIME, AND OF AIM OF MOTION.

### THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPACE AND TIME.

1151. Extent of space or duration of time is denoted by the accusative : as,



(a.) *mīlia passuum* XX *prōcēdit*, 5, 47, 1, *he pushes on twenty miles. trīduī viam prōgressī*, 4, 4, 4, *having advanced three days journey. aggerem lātum pedēs* CCCXXX, *altum pedēs* LXXX *exstrūxērunt*, 7, 24, 1, *they built up a mound three hundred and thirty feet wide, and eighty feet high* (1130). (b.) *mātrōnae annum lūxērunt*, L. 2, 7, 4, *the married women wore mourning a year. ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus erat*, Br. 229, *he was nineteen years old. secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs*, 4, 34, 4, *there followed a good many days a succession of storms. triennium vagātī*, 4, 4, 2, *having led a nomad life three years. ūnum diem supplicātiō habita est*, L. 10, 47, 7, *a thanksgiving was held one day. diēs quīndecim supplicātiō*, 2, 35, 4, *a fortnight thanksgiving* (1129). Sometimes *per* is added: as, *lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt*, C. 3, 20, *games were celebrated ten days long.*

1152. The idea of traversing is sometimes not expressed: as, *mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit*, 1, 22, 5, *he pitches camp three miles away from their camp. quadrīngentōs inde passūs cōstituit sīgna*, L. 34, 20, 4, *four hundred paces from there he set up the standards.*

1153. With *absum* and *dīstō*, the ablative of amount of difference is sometimes used (1393): as, *certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse*, 1, 41, 5, *he was informed that Ariovistus's troops were four and twenty miles away from ours.* If the place is not mentioned from which distance is reckoned, *ab* or *ā* is sometimes used before the expression of distance: as, *positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv*, 6, 7, 3, *pitching camp fifteen miles away.*

1154. The accusative is used with *abhinc*, *ago*: as, *quaestor fuistī abhinc annōs quattuordecim*, V. 1, 34, *you were a quaestor fourteen years ago.* The ablative occurs once or twice with *abhinc*, meaning *before* (1393): as, *comitiīs abhinc diēbus trīgintā factīs*, V. 2, 130, *the election having been held thirty days before.*

1155. The accusative singular is used with ordinals, to show the number of days, months, or years since a particular event, including the day, month, or year of the event itself: as, *quod annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat*, IP. 7, *the circumstance that he has now been on the throne two and twenty years.*

1156. The accusative in some pronominal expressions and adverbs passes over from 'time through which' to a loose 'time at which': as, *id temporis*, RA. 97, *at that time. hōc noctis*, Pl. Am. 163<sup>b</sup>, *at this time of night. tum, then, num, nunc, now, nunc ipsum*, Pl. B. 940, Att. 10, 4, 10, *this very minute, commodum, just in time.* For the locative ablative exceptionally used to denote duration, see 1355.

## THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE AIM OF MOTION.

1157. (1.) Proper names of towns and of little islands or peninsulas are put in the accusative to denote the aim with expressions of motion: as,

*Labiēnus Lutetiam proficiscitur*, 7, 57, 1, *Labiēnus starts for Lutetia. Leucadem vēnimus*, Fam. 16, 9, 1, *we came to Leucas. nocturnus introitus Zmyrnam*, Ph. 11, 5, *the entrance into Smyrna by night* (1129). Plautus uses *Accherūns* a few times like a town name: as, *vīvom mē accersunt Accheruntem mortuī*, Most. 509, *the dead are taking me to Acheron alive.*



## The Noun: Accusative. [1158-1166.

**1158.** With singular names of towns and little islands, Plautus has the accusative alone twenty times, and twenty times with *in*; Terence has, including *Lēmnum*, *Ph.* 567, and *Cyprum*, *Ad.* 224, 230, the accusative alone six times, and twice with *in*, *in Lēmnum*, *Ph.* 66, and *in Cyprum*, *Ad.* 278. Plural town names never have *in*.

**1159.** An appellative *urbem* or *oppidum* accompanying the accusative of a town name is usually preceded by *in* or *ad*: as, *ad urbem Fīdēnās tendunt*, *L.* 4, 33, 10, *they make for the city of Fidenae*. *Iugurtha Thalam pervēnit, in oppidum māgnū*, *S. I.* 75, 1, *Iugurtha arrived at Thala, a large town*.

**1160.** When merely 'motion towards' or 'nearness' is meant, *ad* is used: as, *trēs viae sunt ad Mutinam*, *Ph.* 12, 22, *there are three roads to Mutina*. *mīles ad Capuam profectus sum*, *CM.* 10, *I went to the war as a private, to the region round about Capua*.

**1161.** Proper names of countries are also sometimes put in the accusative in poetry, to denote aim of motion: as, *abiit Alidem*, *Pl. Cap.* 573, *he went away to Elis*. So in prose also, *Aegyptus* in Cicero, Caesar, Nepos, Livy, and Tacitus: as, *Germānicus Aegyptum proficiscitur*, *Ta.* 2, 59, *Germanicus sets out for Egypt*. Rarely and in poetry names of peoples: as, *sitientis ibimus Afrōs*, *V. E.* 1, 64, *to thirst-parched Afrians we shall go*. In general the accusative of country names is preceded by *in* or *ad*, as are also appellatives regularly in prose; but in poetry, even appellatives without a preposition are common.

**1162.** (2.) The accusatives *domum*, *rūs*, and *forās*, are used like proper names of towns: as,

(a.) *eō domum*, *Pl. Mer.* 659, *I'm going home*. *equitēs domum contendērunt*, 2, 24, 4, *the cavalry hurried home*. *domum reditiōnis spē sublātā*, 1, 5, 3, *the hope of a return home being out of the question* (1129). (b.) *rūs ibō*, *T. Eu.* 216, *I shall go out of town*. (c.) *effūgī forās*, *T. Eu.* 945, *I ran out of doors*.

**1163.** The singular *domum* is always retained by Caesar, even when two or more separate persons or parties are spoken of. Plautus and Sallust have the plural *domōs* once each, and Cicero and Livy use it occasionally.

**1164.** The accusative *domum* or *domōs* sometimes has an attribute, usually a possessive pronoun: as, *domum suam quemque revertī*, 2, 10, 4, *for every man to go back to his home*. *alius alium domōs suās invitāt*, *S. I.* 66, 3, *they invite each other to their homes*. *aurum domum rēgiam comportant*, *S. I.* 76, 6, *they bring all the gold to the house royal*. *cum domum rēgis dēvertisēs*, *D.* 17, *when you went to stay at the king's palace*. The preposition *in* is sometimes used when the attribute is a genitive, and commonly so when it is any adjective but a possessive pronoun.

**1165.** (3.) In old Latin, *exsequiās* and *īnfitiās* are also used with *eō*, and sometimes *malam crucem* and *malam rem*, though these last more commonly have *in*: as,

*exsequiās Chremētī ire*, *T. Ph.* 1026, *to go to Chremes's funeral*, *ut eās malam crucem*, *Pl. Men.* 328, *that thou mayst get thee to the accursed cross*. Later writers, as Nepos, Livy, and Quintilian, use *īnfitiās eō* again, and, from Sallust on, *vēnum eō* and *vēnum dō* sometimes occur for *vēneō* and *vēndō*.

**1166.** With the accusative in *-tum* (or *-sum*), called the supine, the idea of 'aim' passes over into that of 'purpose': as *militātum abiit*, *T. Hau.* 117, *he's gone away a soldiering* (2270).

## TWO ACCUSATIVES COMBINED.

### OBJECT AND PREDICATE.

**1167.** Many verbs may take two accusatives, an object and a predicate.

Such are verbs signifying *make, keep, choose, name or call, have, think, recognize or find, show oneself, &c., &c.*: as, *longiorem mensem faciunt*, *V. 2, 129, they make the month longer.* *eum certiorem faciunt*, *5, 37, 7, they let him know.* *Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit*, *I. 1, 32, 1, the people made Ancus Marcius king.* *mē cēpere arbitrum*, *T. Hau. 500, they've chosen me as referee.* *Duellium 'Bellium' nōmināvērunt*, *O. 153, Duellius they named 'Bellius.'* *vicinam Capreis insulam 'Apragopolim' appellābat*, *Suet. Aug. 98, the island next to Capreae he called 'the Castle of Indolence.'* *conlēgās adiūtōrēs habēbat*, *Sest. 87, he had his colleagues as assistants.* *tē sapientem existimant*, *L. 6, they consider you a sage.* *quem virum P. Crassum vidimus*, *CM. 61, what a man we saw in Crassus.* *sevērū mē praebeō*, *C. 4, 12, I show myself stern.* In the passive both the object and the predicate become nominatives: as, *Caesar certior factus est*, *3, 19, 5, Caesar was informed.*

**1168.** In the sense of *consider as equivalent to*, *dūcō* and *habeō*, less frequently *putō*, have the ablative with *prō*. Other constructions with these and the above verbs may be found in the dictionary.

### PERSON AND THING.

**1169.** (1.) Some verbs of teaching and hiding, demanding and questioning, may take two accusatives, one of a person and one of a thing.

The commonest of these verbs are *doceō* and its compounds, and *cēlō*; *flāgitō*, *ōrō*, *poscō*, and *rogō*, *interrogō*. The thing is usually the neuter of a pronoun or enumerative word (1144): as, (a.) *pēior magister tē istaec docuit, nōn ego*, *Pl. B. 163, a worse instructor taught thee that, not I.* *quid tē litterās doceam?* *Pis. 73, why should I teach you your A B C's?* (b.) *nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem* *T. Ampii, Fam. 2, 16, 3, I have not kept you in the dark about the talk with Ampius.* (c.) *interim cōtidiē Caesar Aeduōs frumentum flāgitāre*, *1, 16, 1, meantime Caesar every day a dunning the Aeduans for the grain.* *Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit*, *V. 1, 86, he called on the Miletus people for a vessel.* *quid me istud rogās?* *Fin. 5, 83, why do you ask me that?* *Racilius mē sententiam rogāvit*, *QFr. 2, 1, 3, Racilius asked me my opinion.*

**1170.** With *doceō*, meaning *inform*, *cēlō*, *rogō*, and *interrogō*, the ablative of the thing with *dē* is also used. And with *flāgitō* and *poscō*, sometimes the ablative of the person with *ab*, with *cēlō* the ablative of the person with *dē*.

**1171.** In the passive the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective is retained: as,



nōsne hōc cēlātōs tam diū, T. *Hec.* 645, *for us not to be told of this so long*; rarely with reversed construction: quōr haec cēlāta mē sunt? Pl. *Ps.* 490, *why was this hid from me?* Accusatives of appellatives are rare: as, omnīs militiae artīs ēdoctus fuerat, L. 25, 37, 3, *he had been thoroughly taught all the arts of war.* interrogātus sententiam, L. 36, 7, 1, *being asked his opinion.* Other constructions of doctus, and of the passive of cēlō, flāgitō, poscō, rogō and interrogō, may be found in the dictionary.

1172. (2.) Verbs of wishing, reminding, inducing, and accusing, and some others, also sometimes take an accusative of the person and one of the thing.

Such are volō, moneō and its compounds, hortor and cōgō; accūsō, arguō, insimulō, obiūrgō. The thing is usually the neuter of a pronoun or enumerative word (1144): as, quid mē voltis? Pl. *Mer.* 868, *what do you want of me?* illud tē esse admonitum velim, *Cael.* 8, *on this point I want you to be reminded* (1171). In old Latin, accusatives of appellatives also are thus used, and sometimes also with dōnō and condōnō.

1173. (3.) The defining accusative is sometimes combined with an accusative of the person: as, tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre, Cat. 7, 9, *thee to kiss so many kisses* (1140). But usually with an accusative of the person, the ablative takes the place of the defining accusative: as, ōdissem tē odiō Vatīniānō, Cat. 14, 3, *I should hate thee with a Vatinian hate.*

## OBJECT AND EXTENT, DURATION, OR AIM.

1174. The accusative of extent or duration, or of aim of motion is often combined with that of the object: as,

(a.) milia passuum decem novem mūrum perdūcit, 1, 8, 1, *he makes a wall nineteen miles* (1151). mātṛōnae annum eum lūxērunt, L. 2, 7, 4, *the married women wore mourning for him a year* (1151). (b.) Ancus multitudinem omnem Rōmam trādūxit, L. 1, 33, 1, *Ancus moved the whole population over to Rome* (1157). eōs domum remittit, 4, 21, 6, *he sends them home again* (1162). For other combinations, see 1138, 1198, and 2270.

## THE DATIVE.

1175. The dative denotes that for or to which a thing is or is done, and either accompanies single words, such as verbs, adjectives, sometimes adverbs, rarely substantives, or serves to modify the entire sentence. It has two principal uses.

1176. I. The dative is used as a complement. Complements may be roughly distinguished as essential or optional. But these two complements are not always separated by a sharp line, and the same dative may sometimes be referred indifferently to either head.



1177. (1.) The ESSENTIAL COMPLEMENT is a dative of the person or thing added to an idea which is felt as incomplete without the dative (1180).

Thus, *pāret*, *he is obedient*, is a statement which is felt as incomplete without a dative added to denote what it is he is obedient to, in the sentence *pāret senātuī*, *he is obedient to the senate*. But when stress is put on the action merely, without reference to its bearing, such a verb may be used without a dative: as, *pāret*, *he is obedient*, *he yields obedience*.

1178. (2.) The OPTIONAL COMPLEMENT, that is, the dative of interest, advantage, or disadvantage, adds something to an idea that is already complete in itself (1205).

Thus, *carmina cantō*, *I chant verses*, is a statement entirely complete in itself; it may be modified or not, at option, by a dative, thus: *carmina virginibus puerisque cantō*, *verses for maids and boys I chant*.

1179. II. The dative of certain substantives is used predicatively (1219).

## I. THE COMPLEMENTARY DATIVE.

### (1.) THE ESSENTIAL COMPLEMENT.

#### THE DATIVE WITH VERBS.

1180. Many verbs require a dative to complete their meaning.

#### WITH VERBS OF INTRANSITIVE USE.

1181. (1.) Many verbs of intransitive use, particularly such as denote a state, disposition, feeling, or quality, take the dative: as,

*quodne vōbīs placeat, displiceat mihī?* Pl. *MG.* 614, *shall that which pleases you, displeasing be to me?* *sī Asiciō causa plūs prōfuit quam invidia nocuit*, *Cael.* 23, *if his case has been more helpful to Asicius than the hostility has been damaging.* *imperat aut servit collēcta pecūnia cuique*, *H. E.* 1, 10, 47, *for every man his garnered hoard or master is or slave.* *nōne huic lēgī resistētis?* *Agr.* 2, 85, *will you not stand out against this law?* *gymnasiīs indulgent Graeculī*, *Traj. in Plin. Ep.* 40 [49], 2, *our Greek cousins are partial to gymnasiums.* *ignōscās velim huic festinātiōnī meae*, in a letter, *Fam.* 5, 12, 1, *please excuse haste.* *huic legiōnī Caesar cōfidēbat māximē*, 1, 40, 15, *Caesar trusted this legion most of all.* *an C. Trebōniō ego persuāsī? cui nē suādēre quidem ausus essem*, *Ph.* 2, 27, *or was it I that brought conviction to Trebonius? a man to whom I should not have presumed even to offer advice.* In the passive, such verbs are used impersonally, the dative remaining (1034); personal constructions are rare and poetical.

**1182.** This dative is used with such verbs or verbal expressions as mean *am pleasing or displeasing, helpful or injurious, command, yield, or am obedient, am friendly, partial, or opposed; spare, pardon, threaten, trust, advise, persuade, happen, meet.* But the English translation is not a safe guide: many of the verbs used with a dative are represented transitively in English; and some verbs of the meanings above are used transitively in Latin: as, *dēlectō, iuvō, laedō, &c., &c.*

**1183.** The dative is rarely used with a form of *sum* and a predicate noun corresponding in meaning with the verbs above (1181): as, *quid mihi scelestō tibi erat auscultātiō?* Pl. *R.* 502, i. e. *quid tibi auscultābam?* *why did I, ill-starred wretch, lend ear to thee?* *quī studiōsus rēi nullī aliaest*, Pl. *MG.* 802, i. e. *quī studet, who lends his soul to nothing else.* Or immediately with a noun: as, *servitūs opulentō hominī*, Pl. *Am.* 166, *slavery to a millionaire.* *optemperātiō lēgibus*, Leg. 1, 42, *obedience to the laws.* *aemula labra rosīs*, Mart. 4, 42, 10, *lips rivalling the rose.*

**1184.** Some verbs have a variable use without any difference of meaning: thus, *cūrō, decet*, and *vītō*, have sometimes the dative in old Latin, but usually the accusative. In Cicero, *adūlor* has the accusative; from Nepos on, the dative as well. *medeor, medicor*, and *praestōlor* take either the accusative or the dative.

**1185.** Some verbs have an accusative with one meaning, a dative of the complement, essential or optional, with another: see *aemulor, caveō, comitor, cōsulō, conveniō, cupiō, dēspērō, maneō, metuō, moderor, prōspiciō, temperō, timeō*, and the different uses of *invidēō*, in the dictionary.

**1186.** In poetry, verbs of union, of contention, and of difference, often take a dative: as, (a.) *haeret laterī lētālis harundō*, V. 4, 73, *sticks to her side the deadly shaft.* So with *coēō, concurrō, haereō*, and similarly with *iungō, misceō*. (b.) *quid enim contendat hirundō cynnīs?* Lucr. 3, 6, *for how can swallow cope with swans?* So with *bellō, certō, contendō, pūgnō*. (c.) *infidō scurrae distābit amicus*, H. E. 1, 18, 4, *a friend will differ from a faithless hanger-on.* So with *differō, discrepō, dissentiō, distō*.

**1187.** A verb often takes the dative, when combined with *adversum*, *obviam*, or *praestō*, also with *bene, male, or satis*, and the like: as,

*fit ob viam Clōdiō*, Mil. 29, *he runs across Clodius.* *cui bene dīxit umquam bonō?* Sest. 110, *for what patriot had he ever a good word?* *nōs, virī fortēs, satis facere rēi pūblicae vidēmur*, C. 1, 2, *we doughty champions flatter ourselves we are doing our whole duty by the state.* Similarly with verbs of transitive use.

**1188.** (2.) Many verbs of intransitive use compounded with a preposition take a dative connected in sense with the preposition: as,

*manus extrēma nōn accessit operibus ēius*, Br. 126, *the last touch was not put upon his works.* *omnibus adfuit hīs pūgnīs Dolābella*, Ph. 2, 75, *Dolabella was on hand in all these battles.* *pontō nox incubat ātra*, V. 1, 89, *over the deep, night broodeth black.* *cōgnitiōnibus dē Chrīstiānīs interfui numquam*, Plin. *Ep. ad Trai.* 96 [97], 1, *I have never been to any of the trials of the Christians.*

**1189.** The prepositions are chiefly *ad, ante, com-, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, or super*. In many compounds of these prepositions, however, the dative is due to the general meaning of the verb, as in *cōnfidit mihi*, *he puts all trust in me* (1181), as contrasted with *cōnsentit mihi*, *he feels with me*, nearly equivalent to *sentit mēcum* (1188).



1190. Instead of the dative, such verbs often have a prepositional construction, particularly when place, literal or figurative, is distinctly to be expressed: as,

*accēdere in fūnus*, *Leg. 2, 66, to go to a funeral.* *in morbum incidit*, *Clu. 175, he fell ill.*

1191. Some verbs of intransitive use take, when compounded, either the dative or the accusative. See *adiaceō*, *antecēdō*, *anteeō*, *praecurrō*, *praestō*, *incēdō*, *inlūdō*, *īnsultō*, *invādō*, in the dictionary. And some compounds acquire a transitive use altogether, as *obeō*, *oppūgnō*: see 1137.

#### WITH VERBS OF TRANSITIVE USE.

1192. (1.) Many verbs of transitive use take the dative: as,

*ēī filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat*, 1, 3, 5, *he gives this person his own daughter in marriage.* *decima legiō ēī grātiās ēgit*, 1, 41, 1, *the tenth legion gave him thanks.* *huic fert subsidium Pulio*, 5, 44, 13, *to him Pulio brings aid.* *multis idem minātur Antōnius*, *Ph. 11, 2, to many Antony threatens the same.* *rēliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt*, 1, 12, 3, *the rest betook themselves to flight.* *commendō vōbīs meum parvum filium*, *C. 4, 23, unto your keeping do I commit the little son of mine.* *multī sē aliēnissimis crēdiderunt*, 6, 31, 4, *many people put themselves in the hands of utter strangers.* *equitēs imperat cīvitatibus*, 6, 4, 6, *he issues orders to the communities for horse.*

1193. This dative is used with such verbs as *dō*, *trādō*, *tribuō*, *dīvidō*, *ferō*, *praebeō*, *praestō*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*, *dēbeō*, *negō*, *mōnstrō*, *dīcō*, *nārō*, *mandō*, *praecipio*, &c., &c. In the passive construction, the accusative becomes nominative, the dative remaining.

1194. (2.) Many verbs of transitive use compounded with a preposition take a dative connected in sense with the preposition: as,

*nihil novī vōbīs adferam*, *RP. 1, 21, I shall not lay any novelty before you.* *lēgēs omnium salūtem singulōrum salūtī antepōnunt*, *Fin. 3, 64, the law always puts the general safety before the safety of the individual.* *tīmōrem bonis iniēcistis*, *Agr. 1, 23, you have struck terror into the hearts of patriots.* *nōluērunt feris corpus obicere*, *RA. 71, they would not cast his person before ravenous beasts.* *nēminem huic praeferō*, *N. 8, 1, 1, there is nobody I put before him.* *hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit*, 1, 54, 2, *he put Labienus over the winter-quarters.* *animum ōva gallinīs saepe suppōnimus*, *DN. 2, 124, we often put ducks' eggs under hens.*

1195. The prepositions are *circum*, *dē*, *ex*, *post*, or those named in 1189. In many compounds of transitive use, however, the dative is due to the general meaning of the verb, as with those spoken of in 1189.

1196. With these verbs, a prepositional construction is often used, as with the verbs of intransitive use (1190): as,

*iam diū nihil novī ad nōs adferēbātur*, *Fam. 2, 14, no news has got to us this long time.* For compounds of *circum* and *trāns* with two accusatives, see 1138.



1197. Verbs of transitive use compounded with **com-** have oftener the ablative with **cum**: as, **cōnferte hanc pācem cum illō bellō**, *V. 4, 115, just compare this peace with that war*. See also in the dictionary, **coniungō** and **compōnō**; also the indirect compounds **comparō**, *compare*, from **compār**, and **commūnicō**.

1198. With a few compounds of **ad** or **in**, a second accusative is exceptionally used: as, **arbitrum illum adēgit**, *Off. 3, 66, he had the other man up before a daysman*. So with **inmittō**, *Pl. Cap. 548, insinuō*, *Lucr. 1, 116, &c., &c.* Regularly with **animum advertō**: as, **animum adverti columellam**, *TD. 5, 65, I noticed a modest shaft*. **quā rē animum adversā**, *Caes. C. 1, 80, 4, this fact being paid heed to: compare 1138*.

1199. A few compound verbs admit either the dative of the person or thing and accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person or thing and ablative of the thing; such are **adspargō** and **inspurgō**, **circumdō**, **circumfundō**, **exuō** and **induō**, **impertiō**, **interclūdō**; also the uncompounded **dōnō**: as, **praedam militibus dōnat**, *7, 11, 9, he presents the booty to the soldiers*. **scribam tuum anulō dōnāstī**, *V. 3, 185, you presented your clerk with a ring*. For the different constructions of **interdicō**, see the dictionary.

## THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

1200. The dative with many adjectives and some adverbs denotes that to which the quality is directed.

Such have the meaning of *useful, necessary, fit, easy, agreeable, known, near, belonging, friendly, faithful, like*, and most of their opposites; the adjective is often predicative: as, **vēr ūtile silvīs** (1036), *V. G. 2, 323, the spring is good for woods*. **est senātōrī necessārium nōsse rem pūblicam**, *Leg. 3, 41, for a senator it is indispensable to be conversant with government*. **ōrātiōnis genus pompae quam pūgnae aptius**, *O. 42, a style better suited to the parade than to the field*. **convenienter nātūrae vivere**, *Off. 3, 13, to live in touch with nature*.

1201. Some adjectives of this class have the dative of a person, the accusative with **ad** of a thing: so **accommodātus**, **aptus**, **idōneus**, **necessārius**, and **ūtilis**; and some denoting feeling have also the accusative with a preposition: **aequus**, **iniquus**, **fidēlis** with **in**, **benevolus** with **ergā**, and **impius** with **adversus**. **propior** and **proximus** sometimes accompany an accusative, like **prope**, **propius**, and **proximē**.

1202. The adjectives **commūnis**, **proprius** or **aliēnus**, **sacer**, **tōtus**, often accompany the construction of the genitive of the owner: see 1238. For **aliēnus** with the ablative, see 1306. Sometimes **aliēnus** has the ablative with **ab**.

1203. Some adjectives denoting relationship, connection, friendship or hostility, become substantives, and as such, admit the genitive also (1103): such are (*a.*) **adfinis**, **cōgnātus**; (*b.*) **aequālis**, **familiāris**, **finitimus**, **pār** and **dispār**, **propinquus**, **vīcīnus**; (*c.*) **adversārius**, **amicus**, **inimicus**, **necessārius**.

1204. In Plautus and Terence, **similis**, *the like, the counterpart*, and its compounds, regularly take the genitive. The dative, as well as the genitive, is also used from Ennius on, particularly of a limited or approximate likeness: see the dictionary.

(2.) THE OPTIONAL COMPLEMENT.

**1205.** The dative of a person or thing interested, benefited, harmed, may be added at option to almost any verb: as,

cōservāte parentī filium, parentem filiō, *Cael.* 80, *save the son for the father, the father for the son.* mea domus tibi patet, mihi clausa est, *RA.* 145, *the very house I own is open for you, is shut upon me.* cui flāvam religās comam, simplex munditiis? *H.* 1, 5, 4, *for whom bind'st thou in wreaths thy golden hair, plain in thy neatness?* nōn auderet facere haec viduae mulierī, quae in mē fecit, *T. Hau.* 953, *he durst not to an unprotected female do what he hath done towards me.*

**1206.** The place of a verb with the dative of interest is sometimes filled by an interjection, *ecce*, *ei*, *em*, or *vae*: as, *ei mihi quālis erat*, *E.* 1, 7, *V.* 2, 274, *ah me, how ghastly he did look.* *vae victis*, *Pl. Ps.* 1317, *said by Brennus, 390 B.C., L.* 5, 48, 9, *woe worth the worsted.* *vae capiti atque aetati tuae*, *Pl. R.* 375, *a murrain on thy head and life.*

**1207.** The dative is often added to the entire sentence, where either a genitive or a possessive pronoun limiting a substantive might be used.

In such cases the dative expresses interest, advantage, or disadvantage, while the genitive would simply indicate the owner or the object: as, *trānsfigitur scūtum Pulionī*, 5, 44, 7, *unfortunately for Pulio, his shield gets pierced through and through.* *militanti in Hispāniā pater ēī moritur*, *L.* 29, 6, *while serving in Spain he had the misfortune to lose his father.* *huic ego mē bellō ducem profiteor*, *C.* 2, 11, *I here proclaim myself captain for this war.* *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt*, 1, 31, 2, *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet.* *nostris militibus spem minuit*, 5, 33, 5, *it dashed the hopes of our soldiers.* *extergē tibi manūs*, *Pl. Most.* 267, *wipe off thy hands.* *vellunt tibi barbam lascivī puerī*, *H. S.* 1, 3, 133, *the wanton gamins pull thy beard, poor soul.*

**1208.** This dative is sometimes detached from the verb, and used immediately with a substantive, instead of the genitive: as, *Philocōmasiō custōs*, *Pl. MG.* 271, *the keeper for Philocomasium.* *rēctor iuvenī*, *Ta.* 1, 24, *a mentor for the young man.* So particularly with a gerundive in official expressions: as, *cūrātor mūrīs reficiendis*, *OG.* 19, *commissioner for rebuilding the walls.*

**1209.** Verbs of warding off sometimes take a dative, especially in poetry, also those of robbing and ridding: as, (a.) *hunc quoque arcēbis gravidō pecorī*, *V. G.* 3, 154, *him also wilt thou for the pregnant herd keep far.* *sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite*, *V. E.* 7, 47, *the summer's heat keep distant for the flock.* (b.) *torquem dētrāxit hostī*, *Fin.* 1, 35, *he pulled a torque away from his enemy.* *ēripiēs mihi hunc errōrem*, *Att.* 10, 4, 6, *you will rid me of this mistake.*

**1210.** With verbs of motion the dative of the person interested denotes in poetry the end of motion also: as, *multōs Danaūm dēmittimus Orcō*, *V.* 2, 398, *we send down many a Danaan for the nether king.* So also the dative of personified words of place: as, *it clāmor caelō*, *V.* 5, 451, *up goes a shout for heaven, i. e. heaven hears a shout.* *sēdibus hunc refer ante suīs*, *V.* 6, 152, *first bear him duly to his place of rest, i. e. let his expectant grave receive him.*



## THE EMOTIONAL DATIVE.

**1211.** The dative of the personal pronoun is often used with expressions of emotion, interest, surprise, or derision: as,

quid mihi Celsus agit? *H. E. 1, 3, 15, how fares me Celsus?* Tongilium mihi ēdūxit, *C. 2, 4, he took out Tongilius, bless my soul.* at tibi repente, cum minimē expectārem, vēnit ad mē Caninius māne, *Fam. 9, 2, 1, but bless you, sir, when I least dreamt of it, who should drop in on me all at once but Caninius, bright and early.*

## THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.

**1212.** The dative is used with forms of *sum* to denote the possessor: as,

est hominī cum deō similitūdō, *Leg. 1, 25, man has a resemblance to god.* an nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? *O. E. 16, 166, dost possibly not know kings have long arms?* suos cuique mōs, *T. Ph. 454, to every man his own pet way.* So also with the compounds *absum, dēsum, supersum*: as, hōc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit, *4, 26, 5, this was all Caesar lacked.*

**1213. (1.)** With *mihi est nōmen*, the name is put either in the dative or in the nominative: as,

mihi nōmen est Iūliō, or mihi nōmen est Iūlius, *Gell. 15, 29, 1, my name is Julius.* In old Latin and in Sallust, the dative: as, nōmen Mercuriōst mihi, *Pl. Am. prol. 19, my name is Mercury*; later the nominative: as, canibus pigris nōmen erit Pardus, Tigris, Leo, *J. 8, 34, the craven cur shall sport the name of 'Lion, Tiger, Pard.'* Cicero uses either the dative or the nominative, Livy oftener the dative than the nominative. Tacitus puts adjectives in the dative, substantives in the nominative, rarely in the genitive. Caesar does not use the construction.

**1214. (2.)** With the actives *nōmen dō, indō, pōnō, tribuō*, &c., the name may be in the dative or in the accusative; with the passive of these expressions, the name may be in the dative or in the nominative: as,

quī tibi nōmen insānō posuēre, *H. S. 2, 3, 47, who've put on thee the nickname Crank.* quī filiīs Philippum atque Alexandrum nōmina inposuerat, *L. 35, 47, 5, who had given his sons the names Philip and Alexander.* A genitive dependent on *nōmen* is used once by Tacitus and in very late Latin.

**1215.** With a gerundive, the dative of the possessor denotes the person who has the action to do: see 2243. For the ablative with *ab*, or for *habeō*, see 2243, 2245.

**1216.** This dative is sometimes used with the perfect participle, and the tenses formed with it: as, mihi est elaborātum, *Caecil. 40, I have it all worked out.* carmina nūlla mihi sunt scrīpta, *O. Tr. 5, 12, 35, no poetry have I ready made.* Rarely with passives of the present system: as, nūlla placēre diū nec vivere carmina possunt, quae scribuntur aquae pōtōribus, *H. E. 1, 19, 2, no verse can take or be longlived that by teetotallers is writ.*



## THE DATIVE OF RELATION.

1217. The dative may denote the person viewing or judging: as, *eris mihi māgnus Apollō*, V. E. 3, 104, *thou shalt to me the great Apollo be*. *Quīntia fōrmōsa est multīs, mihi candida, longa, rēcta est*, Cat. 86, 1, *in many eyes is Quintia fair, to me she's bonny, tall, and straight*. From Caesar on, participles are often used to denote the person viewing or judging: as, *est urbe ēgressīs tumulus*, V. 2, 713, *there is, as you get out of town, a mound*. *in ūniversum aestimantī*, Ta. G. 6, *looking at it generally*.

1218. In imitation of a Greek idiom, *volēns*, *cupiēns*, or *invītus*, is used by Sallust and Tacitus in agreement with a dative dependent on a form of *sum*, the combination being equivalent to a subject with a form of *volō*, *cupiō*, or *invītus sum*, respectively: as, *cēterīs remanēre volentibus fuit*, Ta. H. 3, 43, i. e. *cēterī remanēre voluērunt*, *the rest were minded to bide where they were*. Once in Livy.

## II. THE PREDICATIVE DATIVE.

## THE DATIVE OF TENDENCY OR RESULT.

1219. (1.) Certain datives are used with a form of *sum* to denote what a thing tends to, proves, or is. This dative is generally accompanied by a dative of the person interested: as,

*auxiliō is fuit*, Pl. Am. prol. 92, *he was a help to them*. *odiō sum Rōmānīs*, L. 35, 19, 6, *I am an abomination in the eyes of Rome*. *potestne bonum cuiquam malō esse?* Par. 7, *can good prove bad for any human being?* L. Cassius identidem quaerere solēbat, cui bonō fuisset, RA. 84, *Cassius used to ask for ever and ever, who the person benefited was, or who the gainer was*. *nēminī meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī fuit*, V. 1, 16, *my visit did not prove a bother or an expense to a soul*. *rēs et fōrtūnae tuae mihi māximae cūrae sunt*, Fam. 6, 5, 1, *your money-matters are an all-absorbing interest to me*.

1220. There are many of these datives, mostly abstracts and all singular; some of the commonest are *cūrae*, *ūsui*, *praesidiō*, *cordī*, *odiō*, *auxiliō*, *impedimentō*, *salūtī*, *voluptātī*. The adjectives *māgnus*, *māior*, *māximus*, or *tantus* and *quantus*, are sometimes used in agreement with them; and the dative *frūgī* sometimes has *bonae*.

1221. Instead of the dative of tendency, a predicative nominative or accusative is rarely used: thus, *possessiōnem liberam Dardaniae sōlāciō fore*, L. 40, 57, 9, *that the unrestricted occupancy of Dardania would prove comforting*, but, *domestica quiēs sōlācium fuit*, L. 6, 30, 9, *the peace that prevailed at home was a solid comfort*. Prepositional expressions with *prō* and *in* also occur.

1222. (2.) The dative is also used with a few verbs of considering or accounting to denote what a thing is accounted.

So with such verbs as *dō*, *dūcō*, *habeō*, *tribuō*, and *vertō*: as, *vitiō mihi dant, quod mortem hominis necessariū graviter ferō*, *Matius in Fam. 11, 28, 2, the world scores it against me that I take the murder of a near and dear friend to heart.* *postquam paupertās probrō habērī coepit*, *S. C. 12, 1, after lack of wealth began to count as a stigma.*

### THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR INTENTION.

**1223.** A few datives are used to denote what a thing is intended to be. This dative is generally accompanied by a dative of the person interested.

So (a.) *dōnō* and *mūnerī*: as, *ēmit eam dōnō mihi*, *T. Eu. 135, he bought her as a gift for me.* *centum bovēs militibus dōnō dedit*, *L. 7, 37, 3, he gave the soldiers a hundred oxen as a present.* Also (b.) *auxiliō*, *praesidiō*, and *subsidiō*, used of military operations, chiefly with verbs of motion: as, *ii, quī praesidiō contrā castra erant relictī, subsidiō suis iērunt*, *7, 62, 8, the men that had been left as a protection against the camp, went as a reinforcement to their own side.*

**1224.** For the datives *dōnō* and *mūnerī*, a predicative nominative or accusative is sometimes used: as, *corōnam Iovī dōnum in capitōlium mittunt*, *L. 2, 22, 6, they send a crown to the capitol as a present for Jupiter.* Prepositional expressions are also used for *auxiliō*, &c.: as, *ad praesidium*, *L. 3, 5, 3, in praesidium*, *L. 31, 16, 7, for protection*, *auxiliī causā*, *L. 2, 24, 4, to help.*

**1225.** The dative *receptuī* is also used in military language to denote purpose: as, *Caesar receptuī canī iūssit*, *7, 47, 1, Caesar ordered the retreat sounded.* *Quīnctius receptuī canere iūssit*, *L. 34, 39, 13.* This dative is sometimes attached immediately to a substantive: as, *receptuī signum*, *Ph. 13, 15, the trumpet for retreat.*

---

### THE GENITIVE.

**1226.** The genitive is principally used with nouns, less frequently with verbs. Sometimes even when it seems to be dependent on a verb, it really depends on a substantive understood, or on a noun virtually contained or implied in the verb. Some verbs require an accusative also, in addition to the genitive.

---

#### I. THE GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

**1227.** A substantive is often limited by another substantive in the genitive.

The things denoted by the two words are usually distinct: as, *metus hostium*, *the fear of the enemy*, i. e. either (a.) which they feel (1231), or (b.) which is felt towards them (1260); *māgnī ponderis saxa*, *stones of great weight* (1239). Sometimes, however, they are more or less the same: as, *militum pars*, *part of the soldiers* (1242); *māgna multitūdō perditōrum hominum*, *a perfect swarm of desperadoes* (1255).



## 1228-1233.] Sentences: The Simple Sentence.

**1228.** Two or even three genitives expressing different relations, sometimes limit one substantive: as, *superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō*, 3, 18, 6, *Sabinus's dilatoriness in days preceding*. *eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostri exercitūs perspectā*, 2, 17, 2, *studying up the order of march followed by our army in those days*.

**1229.** The limited substantive is often omitted, when it is obvious from the context: as, *ventum erat ad Vestae*, sc. *aedem*, H. S. 1, 9, 35, *to Vesta's were we come*, i. e. to her temple. *aberam bīduī*, sc. *iter*, Att. 5, 17, 1, *I was two days distant*. Usually so, when it is expressed with another genitive, which generally precedes: as, *quis est, quī possit cōferre vītā Trebōnii cum Dolābellae?* Ph. 11, 9, *who is there that can compare the life of Trebonius with Dolabella's?*

**1230.** Instead of the genitive depending on a substantive, an equivalent adjective or a prepositional expression is often used. Such substitutions will be mentioned below in their appropriate places.

**1231.** The relations expressed by the limiting genitive vary very much according to the context. These relations may be put in classes, as below (1232-1260). But it must be remembered that as the genitive connects substantives in a loose way, the same construction may sometimes be referred to more than one head.

### THE GENITIVE OF THE SUBJECT, CAUSE, ORIGIN, OR OWNER.

**1232. (1.)** The genitive is used to denote that which does the action, or which causes, originates, or possesses the object designated by the substantive it limits: as,

*metus hostium*, Gell. 9, 12, 13, *the fear of the enemy*, i. e. which they feel. *adventus Caesaris*, 6, 41, 4, *the arrival of Caesar*. *bellum Venetōrum*, 3, 16, 1, *the war with the Venetans*. *illud Solōnis*, CM. 50, *Solon's memorable words*. *Canachī signa*, Br. 70, *statues by Canachus*. *Cupīdinis signum*, V. 4, 135, *the statue representing Cupid*. *hūius signis*, V. 3, 9, *with statues belonging to this man*. *pācem Ariovistī*, 1, 37, 2, *a peaceful policy on Ariovistus's part*. *Cannārum pūgna*, L. 23, 43, 4, *the battle of Cannae* (1427). *abacī vāsa omnia*, V. 4, 35, *all the vessels on the sideboard*. *prīdiē ēius diēi*, 1, 47, 2, *the day before that day* (1413). *labrōrum tenuis*, Lucr. 1, 940, *the length of the lips* (1420).

**1233.** Instead of the genitive, an adjective is often used to express such relations; less frequently a prepositional construction: as,

(a.) *odium paternum*, N. 23, 1, 3, *the hatred felt by his father*. *servilī tumultū*, 1, 40, 5, *in the slave insurrection*. *bellō Cassiānō*, 1, 13, 2, *in the war with Cassius*. *illud Cassiānum, cui bonō fuerit*, Ph. 2, 35, *Cassius's test question, 'who the gainer was.'* *erilis patria*, Pl. B. 170, *my master's birthplace*. *intrā domesticōs parietēs*, C. 2, 1, *within the walls of our houses*. So usually with names of countries and of towns: as, *anus Corinthia*, T. Hau. 600, *an old woman of Corinth*. *pūgna Cannēnsis*, L. 22, 50, 1, *the battle of Cannae*. Often in a generalizing sense: as, *paternus maternusque sanguis*, RA. 66, *the blood of a father and of a mother*. (b.) *ad Cannās pūgnam*, L. 22, 58, 1, *the battle of Cannae*.



1234. The possessive pronoun is regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of a personal or reflexive pronoun (1230) : as,

mea domus, *RA.* 145, *my own house.* in tuā quādam epistolā, *Att.* 9, 10, 3, *in a letter of yours.* But sometimes, for emphasis, the genitive of the personal or reflexive is used : as, māgnō suī cum periculō, 4, 28, 2, *with great personal risk* ; commonly so with omnium or utriusque : as, voluntātī vestrūm omnium pārui, *DO.* 3, 208, *I yielded to your joint wish* ; see however 1235.

1235. A word in apposition with the possessive pronoun is put in the genitive : as, meā ūnius operā, *Pis.* 6, *by my sole instrumentality.* ad vestram omnium caedem, *C.* 4, 4, *for the murder of you all* (1230). So particularly ipse, omnis, sōlus, and ūnus.

1236. The genitive is often used predicatively with verbs meaning *am, belong, become, make, seem, am accounted, &c., &c.* : as,

litterārīi ista sunt lūdī, *Quint.* 1, 4, 27, *such questions belong to the infant school.* hīc versus Plautī nōn est, hīc est, *Fam.* 9, 16, 4, *this line is not Plautus's, this one is.* omnia, quae mulieris fuērunt, virī fiunt, *Top.* 23, *everything which was the woman's becomes the man's.* neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī, 1, 45, 1, *and that he did not think Gaul was any more Ariovistus's than it was the Romans'.* hostiumst potīta, *Pl. E.* 562, *into the foemen's hands she fell.*

1237. The possessive genitive of a person or of an abstract is particularly common when the subject of the verb is an infinitive or sentence : as,

(a.) scyphīs pūgnāre Thrācum est, *H.* 1, 27, 1, *to fight with bowls is Vandal work.* erat āmentis, cum aciem vidērēs, pācem cōgitāre, *Lig.* 28, *it was a madman's act, dreaming of peace when you saw the troops in battalia.* temporī cēdere semper sapientis est habitum, *Fam.* 4, 9, 2, *shaping your course to circumstance has always passed as the sign of a wise man.* mentīrī nōn est meum, *T. Hau.* 549, *telling lies is not my style* (1234). (b.) nōn est pudōris mei, mē prōpūgnātōrem P. Scīpiōnis profitērī, *V.* 4, 80, *it is not in keeping with my delicacy to set up as the champion of Scipio.* hārum rērum esse dēfēnsōrem māgnī animī est, *Sest.* 99, *to be the defender of these interests takes heroism.* hōc sentīre prūdētiaē est, facere fortitūdinis, *Sest.* 86, *to think thus shows wisdom, to act thus, courage.* negāvit mōris esse Graecōrum, ut in convīviō virōrum accumberent mulierēs, *V.* 1, 66, *he said it was not manners among the Greeks to have women at table at a men's dinner-party.*

1238. With the possessive genitive, the limited substantive is sometimes defined by commūnis, proprius or aliēnus, sacer, or tōtus added : as, hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, 6, 23, 2, *this they consider a special characteristic of bravery.* omnia quae nostra erant propria, *RA.* 150, *everything which was our peculiar property* (1234). illa īnsula eōrum deōrum sacra putātur, *V.* 1, 48, *that island is considered the hallowed property of those gods.* iam mē Pompēi tōtum esse scīs, *Fam.* 2, 13, 2, *you are aware that I am become Pompey's, out and out.*

### THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

1239. (2.) The genitive with an adjective in agreement is used to denote quality, either attributively or predicatively : as,

(a.) Attributively : *māgnī ponderis saxa*, 2, 29, 3, *stones of great weight*. *summae speī adulēscētēs*, 7, 63, 9, *young men of high promise*. *diērum vigintī supplicātiō*, 4, 38, 5, *a twenty day thanksgiving*. *bēlua multōrum es caput*, H. E. 1, 1, 76, *a many-headed beast art thou*. *ēius modī cōnsilium*, 5, 29, 5, *such a plan*. *dēmittō auriculās ut inīquae mentis asellus*, II. S. 1, 9, 20, *I drop my ears like Neddy in the sulks* (269). *vāllō pedum IX*, 5, 42, 1, *with a nine foot palisade*. (b.) Predicatively : *māgnae habitus auctoritātis*, 7, 77, 3, *passing for a man of great influence*. *flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium*, 2, 18, 3, *the depth of the river was about three feet*. The genitive of quality resembles the ablative of quality (1375); the two are sometimes combined : as, *hominem māximī corporis terribilique faciē*, N. 15, 3, 1, *a man of gigantic frame and with an awe-inspiring presence*. But the genitive is common in designations of size and number.

1240. A substantive expressing quality with *aequus*, *pār*, *similis*, or *dissimilis* in agreement, is put not in the genitive, but in the ablative, by Cicero, Caesar, Nepos, and Livy.

### THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

1241. (3.) The partitive genitive denotes a whole of which the limited substantive denotes a part. There are two kinds of partitive genitive, the numerical and the quantitative : as,

(a.) *militum pars*, 6, 40, 8, *part of the soldiers*, numerical partitive (1242).  
(b.) *multum aestātis*, 5, 22, 4, *much of the summer*, quantitative partitive (1247).

1242. (a.) The numerical partitive is a plural or a collective, limiting a word expressing part of the number : as,

*militum pars*, 6, 40, 8, *part of the soldiers*. *pars equitātūs*, 4, 16, 2, *part of the cavalry*. *alter cōsul*, L. 6, 35, 5, *one of the two consuls*. *uter est insānior hōrum?* II. S. 2, 3, 102, *which of these two is crazier?* *eōrum neuter*, Pis. 62, *neither of the two*. *multae istārum arborum*, CM. 59, *many of the trees you see there*. *quis omnium mortālium?* V. 5, 179, *who among all the sons of men?* *nēmō nostrūm*, RA. 55, *not one of us*. *nihil hōrum*, RA. 138, *none of these things*. *Sertinius, sapientum octāvus*, H. S. 2, 3, 296, *Sertinius, of sages eighth*. *ō māior iuvenum*, H. AP. 366, *O elder of the youths*. *hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae*, 1, 1, 3, *of all these the stoutest fighters are the Belgians*. Also with superlative adverbs : as, *deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt*, Ta. G. 9, *of the gods, they revere Mercury most*. *minumē gentium*, Pl. Poen. 690, T. Eu. 625, *no, never in the world*.

1243. *uterque*, *each*, *both*, often takes the genitive plural of a pronoun : as, *quōrum uterque*, *uterque eōrum*, *hōrum*, *nostrūm*, &c. ; sometimes of a substantive and pronoun combined : as, *utriusque hārum rērum*, TD. 1, 65, *of each of these things*. *quārum civitātum utraque*, V. 5, 56, *each of these communities*. With a substantive alone, it is oftener attributive : as, *uterque dux*, Marc. 24, *each commander* ; and sometimes with neuter pronouns : as, *quod utrumque*, Brut. in Fam. 11, 1, 1, N. 25, 2, 4. The plural *utrīque* is used both ways : as, *ab utrīque vestrūm*, Fam. 11, 21, 5, and *ab utrīque nobīs*, Brut. in Fam. 11, 20, 3.



1244. The plurals **tot**, **totidem**, and **quot**, are not used partitively, and **omnēs** and **cūnctī** only so by poets and late prose writers. **plērīque** is used either way, in agreement, or with the genitive.

1245. The numerical partitive is exceptionally used in poetry with the positive of a descriptive adjective : as, **sāncte deōrum**, V. 4, 576, *thou holy of the gods*. And in late prose, particularly with words denoting a class of persons : as, **cum dēlēctis peditum**, L. 26, 5, 3, *with the pick of the infantry*. **levīs cohortium**, Ta. 3, 39, *the light-armed of the cohorts*.

1246. Instead of the numerical partitive, a prepositional expression with **ante**, **inter**, or **in**, or with **ex** or **dē**, is sometimes used : as, **ante aliōs acceptissimus**, L. 1, 15, 8, *most welcome before others*. So particularly **quīdam** and **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, with **ex** or **dē** : as, **quīdam ex hīs**, 2, 17, 2, *one of these*. **ūnus dē multis**, Fin. 2, 66, *one of the common herd*. But **ūnus** sometimes has the genitive : as, **ūnus multōrum**, H. S. 1, 9, 71. And usually so in a series, when **ūnus** is followed by **alter**, **alius**, **tertius**, &c.

1247. (b.) The quantitative partitive is usually a singular, limiting a neuter singular word denoting amount. The limited word is either a nominative, or an accusative without a preposition. This genitive often borders very closely on the genitive of definition (1255) : as,

**multum aestātis**, 5, 22, 4, *much of the summer*. **amplius obsidum**, 6, 9, 7, *something more extensive in the way of hostages*. **minus dubitātiōnis**, 1, 14, 1, *less of hesitation*. **quam minimum spatiū**, 3, 19, 1, *as little time as possible*. **id aetātis**, DO. 1, 207, *at that time of life*. **id temporis**, Fin. 5, 1, *at that time of day*. **quid causae est?** Ac. 1, 10, *what earthly reason is there?* **hōc litterulārum**, Att. 12, 1, 1, *this apology for a letter, or this hasty line*. **hōc sibī sōlāciū prōpōnēbant**, 7, 15, 2, *they laid this flattering unction to their souls*.

1248. Such neuters are : **multum**, **plērumque**, **plūrimum**, **amplius**, **plūs**, **paulum**, **minus**, **minimum**, **tantum**, **quantum**, **tantundem**, **nīmium** ; in poetry and late prose, also many other adjectives singular and plural. Furthermore, **id**, **hōc**, **illud**, **quod**, **quid**, &c., and **nihil** ; also **abunde**, **adfati**, **largiter**, **nimis**, **partim**, **parum**, and **satis**.

1249. A few adjectives of place and time indicating a particular part of an object, are commonly used in immediate agreement with their substantives : as,

**summus mōns**, 1, 22, 1, *the highest part of the mountain, or the mountain-top*. **extrēmā hieme**, **mediā aestāte**, IP. 35, *at the end of the winter, in midsummer*. Such are : **prīmus**, **intimus**, **medius**, **extrēmus**, **postrēmus**, **ūltimus**, **summus**, **īnīmus**, **īmus**, **rēliquus**. But the neuter is sometimes used partitively : as, **aestātis extrēmum erat**, S. I. 90, 1, *it was the end of summer*. **summa pectoris**, Fam. 1, 9, 15, *the upper parts of the breast*.

1250. The limiting genitive is often the neuter singular of an adjective used substantively : as,

**aliquid bonī**, T. Andr. 398, *something good*. **aliquid malī**, T. En. 999, *something bad*. **numquid tandem novī?** Br. 10, *nothing new, pray?* This use is ordinarily confined to stems in **-o-** ; rarely otherwise : as, **plūs inānis**, Lucr. 1, 365, *more of the void* ; and usually only when joined with an **-o-** stem : as, **nihil solidī**, **nihil ēminentis**, DN. 1, 75, *no solidity, no projection*.



**1251.** The partitive construction sometimes extends to the predicate: as, *id erit signi mē invitum facere*, *RA.* 83, *this will be something of an indication that I act with reluctance*; *signi* is here in the predicate, and yet made dependent on *id*. *quid ergo est tui consilii?* *Brut.* in *Fam.* 11, 1, 3, *what then is your advice?* *quid sui consilii sit ostendit*, 1, 21, 2, *he explains what his plan is*. *quid est enim huic reliqui?* *Sull.* 89, *for what is there left for my client?* *hi milites nihil reliqui victis fecere*, *S. C.* 11, 7, *these soldiers left nothing over to the conquered*. *nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt*, 2, 26, 5, *as for speed, they left no effort unspared*.

**1252.** The accusative with a preposition also sometimes has the genitive: as, *in id redactus sum loci*, *T. Ph.* 979, *I am reduced to such a strait*. *ad id loci*, *S. C.* 45, 3, *to that spot*. *ad id locorum*, *S. I.* 63, 6, *up to that time*. *in multum diei*, *L.* 9, 44, 11, *till late in the day*. In Cicero, also the ablatives *eō*, *eōdem*, and *quō*, with *loci*: as, *eō loci*, *Sest.* 68, *in that position*. And in later writers, other ablatives, with or without a preposition, also have a genitive.

**1253.** Some appellatives of place are put in the genitive with adverbs of place: as, *ubinam gentium?* *Pl. Mer.* 434, *C.* 1, 9, *where in the world?* *nusquam gentium*, *T. Ad.* 540, *nowhere in the world*. Similarly, *loci* with adverbs of time or order, as with *interea* in Plautus and Terence, *postea* in Plautus, *postea* in Sallust, and *inde* in Lucretius; also *locorum* with *adhuc* and *postid* in Plautus.

**1254.** In Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus, genitives of abstracts are used with the adverbs *eō*, *quō*, and *huc*: as, *eō miseriae*, *S. I.* 14, 3, *to that pitch of distress*. Once with *ut*: *ut quisque audientiae habuisset, adcurrerent*, *Ta.* 15, 53, *they should run up, with a speed commensurate in every case to their daring*.

## THE GENITIVE OF DEFINITION.

**1255.** (4.) The genitive is used to define that of which a thing consists: as,

*magna multitudō perditorum hominum*, 3, 17, 4, *a perfect swarm of desperadoes*. *innumerabile pondus auri*, *Sest.* 93, *a weight of gold too great to count*. *mille numero navium classem*, *V.* 1, 48, *an armada a thousand sail strong*.

**1256.** The genitive of an explicit word containing the leading idea is sometimes used to define a more general word; as,

*praedae pecudum hominumque*, *L.* 24, 20, 5, *booty consisting of cattle and human beings*. *pignora coniugum ac liberorum*, *L.* 2, 1, 5, *pledges in the shape of wives and children*. *confisus munitione fossae*, *Caes. C.* 1, 42, 3, *relying on the defensive works in the shape of a moat*. Rarely in poetry and late prose, the proper name of a place, with *urbs*, *promunturium*, &c.: as, *urbem Patavi*, *V.* 1, 247, *the city of Patavium* (1045). Particularly with the words *vōx*, *nōmen*, *genus*, and especially *causa*: as, *haec vōx voluptatis*, *Fin.* 2, 6, *this word 'pleasure'*. *nōmen amicitiae*, *Fin.* 2, 78, *the name 'friendship'*. Compare *nōmen fraternum*, 1, 36, 5, *the name of brothers* (1233). *haec ignominiae causa*, *Clu.* 120, *this reason, namely the censor's stigma*. *parvulae causae vel falsae suspitionis vel terroris repentini*, *Caes. C.* 3, 72, 4, *insignificant causes, as for instance ungrounded suspicion or a panic*. *propter eam causam sceleris istius*, *V.* 4, 113, *for this reason, namely the crime of the defendant*.

1257. The genitive of definition is very common with *causā*, less common with *grātiā*, to define what the motive or cause is: as,

*amicitiae causā*, I, 39, 2, *from motives of friendship*. Compare *vestrā magis hōc causā volēbam, quam meā*, *DO.* I, 164, *I wished this more for your sake than for my own* (1234). *honestātis amplitūdinisque grātiā*, *RA.* 15, *in compliment to their respectability and high social standing*. So also sometimes with *nōmine*, and in old or official Latin, with *ergō*.

1258. Conversely, the genitive of a generic word denoting a person is sometimes added to a leading word defining the kind of a person: as, *frūstum puerī*, *Pl. Per.* 849, *thou bit of a boy*. *mōnstrum hominis*, *T. Eu.* 696, *thou fiend in human shape*. *quaedam pestēs hominum*, *Fam.* 5, 8, 2, *some regular plagues in the shape of men*.

1259. *quidquid est, quantum est, quod est, or quodcumque est*, with a genitive, is equivalent to an emphatic *omnis*: as, *quidquid patrum est*, *L.* 3, 17, 5, *whatever there is in the shape of senators, i. e. every single senator*. *quod est pecūniae, trādit*, *Caes. C.* 2, 20, 8, *what there is in the way of money, he hands over*. Similarly *tantum* for *tot*: as, *tantum hominum*, *Pl. Poen.* 619, *such a mass of men*.

## THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

1260. (5.) The objective genitive denotes the object of the action expressed in the limited substantive: as,

*metus hostium*, *Gell.* 9, 12, 13, *the fear of the enemy, i. e. which is felt towards them*. *vēnditiō bonōrum*, *RA.* 110, *sale of the goods*. *lūctū filiī*, *DO.* 2, 193, *from grief for his son*. This construction is freely used, even when the parallel verb has a dative, an ablative, or a prepositional expression: as, *fidūciā locī*, 7, 19, 2, *from confidence in the position*. *liberātiōnem culpae*, *Lig.* I, *acquittal from guilt*. *militiae vacātiōnem*, 6, 14, 1, *exemption from military service*. *opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus*, 5, 48, 1, *disappointed in his hope of three legions*. *deōrum opiniō*, *TD.* 1, 30, *a conception of the gods*. *miserrima est contentiō honōrum*, *Off.* 1, 87, *a scramble for office is a pitiful thing*.

1261. Instead of the objective genitive, a prepositional expression is sometimes used with greater precision: as,

*metus ā vī atque irā deōrum*, *DN.* 1, 45, *fear of the might and wrath of the gods*. So especially the accusative, usually denoting a person, with *in*, *ergā*, or *adversus*, combined with substantives denoting feeling: as, *odium in hominum ūniversum genus*, *TD.* 4, 25, *hatred to all mankind*. *vestra ergā mē voluntās*, *C.* 4, 1, *your good-will towards me*.

1262. A possessive pronoun or adjective is sometimes used for the objective genitive: as,

(a.) *odiō tuō*, *T. Ph.* 1016, *from hate to thee*. *tuā fidūciā*, *V.* 5, 176, *from his reliance on you*. *aspectūque suō*, *Lucr.* 1, 91, *and at the sight of her*. (b.) *metus hostilis*, *S. I.* 41, 2, *fear felt of the enemy*. *servilis percontātiō*, *DO.* 2, 327, *crossquestioning of the servant-girls*. *firmus adversus militārem largitiōnem*, *Ta. H.* 2, 82, *dead-set against any largess to the military*.



## II. THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

1263. (1.) The genitive is used with many adjectives to denote the object.

Such are chiefly adjectives meaning (a.) *desirous*, (b.) *knowing*, or *remembering*, (c.) *participating*, *controlling*, or *guilty*, (d.) *full*, and most of their opposites: as, (a.) *auri cupidus*, Pl. *Poen.* 179, *eager for gold*. *sapientiae studiōsōs*, id est enim philosophōs, *TD.* 5, 9, *devotees of wisdom, for that is what 'philosophers' means*. So also *aemulus*, *avidus*, *fastidiōsus*, *invidus*. (b.) *gnārus rēi pūblīcae*, *Br.* 228, *familiar with government*. *rēi militāris perītissimū*, I, 21, 4, *a master of the art military*. *hominēs adulēscētulōs*, *inperītōs rērum*, *T. Andr.* 910, *mere hobbledehoyes, not up in the world's ways*. *imperītus mōrum*, *RA.* 143, *behind the times*. *immemor beneficiōrum*, *memor patriae*, *Ph.* 2, 27, *forgetful of kindnesses, never forgetting his country*. So also *cōnsciū*, *cōnsultus*, *insciū*, *insolēns*, *insolitus*, *insuētus*, *iēiūnus*, *prōvidus*, *prūdēns*, *rudis*. (c.) *praedae participēs*, *Caes. C.* 3, 82, 1, *sharing in the booty*. *manifestus tantī sceleris*, *S. I.* 35, 8, *caught in committing this atrocious crime*. *expers glōriae*, *IP.* 57, *without a share in the glory*. So also *adfinis*, *compos*, *cōnsors*, *exhērēs*, *potēns*, *reus*. (d.) *negōtī plēnus*, *Pl. Ps.* 380, *full of business*. *fōns plēnissimū piscium*, *V.* 4, 118, *a fountain swarming with fish*. *refertō praedōnum mari*, *IP.* 31, *when the sea was crammed with corsairs*. So also *fertilis*, *inops*, *liberālis*, *nūdus*, *prōfūsus*.

1264. In poetry and late prose, a great many other adjectives of these meanings, besides those mentioned above, are also used with the genitive. Such are principally: (a.) *avārus*, *cūriōsus*, *incūriōsus*, *sēcūrus*. (b.) *nesciū*, *praesāgus*, *praesciū*, *scītus*. (c.) *exsors*, *immūnis*, *impos*, *impotēns*, *innocēns*, *innoxiū*, *insōns*, *noxius*, *suspectus*. (d.) *abundāns*, *dīves*, *egēnus*, *inānis*, *indigus*, *largus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prōdigus*, *sterilis*, *vacuus*.

1265. With *cōnsciū* and the genitive of a thing, the dative of a person is sometimes added: as, *tot flāgitiōrum exercitui meō cōnsciū*, *Ta.* 1, 43, *a participant with my army in so many outrages*. Sometimes *cōnsciū* has the dative of a thing: as, *mēns cōnscia factis*, *Lucr.* 3, 1018, *the mind of guilt aware*.

1266. (2.) The genitive of the object is often used with present participles which express permanent condition.

These participles are chiefly from verbs which have a transitive use. Not common in old Latin: as, *amantem uxōris*, *Pl. As.* 857, *devoted to his wife*. *fugitāns litium*, *T. Ph.* 623, *inclined to dodge a suit at law*. Very common in Cicero: as, *semper appetentēs glōriae praeter cēterās gentis fuistis*, *IP.* 7, *you have always been more hungry for glory than any other nation*. Especially in set expressions: as, *homo amantissimū patriae*, *Sull.* 34, *vir amantissimū rēi pūblīcae*, *C.* 4, 13, *ever a devoted patriot*. *negōtīi gerentēs*, *Sest.* 97, *business men*. *aliēnī appetēns*, *DO.* 2, 135, *S. C.* 5, 4, *always hankering after other people's things*. In Caesar seldom: as, *fugiēns labōris*, *C.* 1, 69, 3, *apt to shirk exertion*.



**1267.** The genitive is hardly ever found with adjectives in *-āx* (284): as, *hūius rēi mendācem*, Pl. *As.* 855, *untruthful in this point*. But in poetry, from Vergil and Horace on, and in late prose, a few genitives occur with adjectives whose parallel verbs have a transitive use, such as *capāx*, *edāx*, *tenāx*, &c.: as, *tempus edāx rērum*, O. 15, 234, *thou all-devourer — time*.

**1268.** Some of the adjectives which usually take the genitive have occasionally other constructions.

Thus, with *adfīnis* the dative also occurs (1200), rarely with *aemulus* (1183); the ablative with adjectives of fulness, as *dīves*, *plēnus*, and *refertus* (1387); *iūre* with *cōsultus* and *perītus* (1385). For *vacuus*, &c., see 1306. Prepositional constructions also occur with these adjectives, such as the accusative with *ad* or *in*, or the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *in*: see the dictionary.

**1269.** For the genitive, with words denoting relationship, connection, friendship, or hostility, see 1203; with *similis*, 1204. With *dīgnus* and *indīgnus*, *worthy* and *unworthy*, the ablative is regularly used (1392); rarely the genitive: as, *nōn ego sum dīgnus salūtis?* Pl. *Tri.* 1153, *don't I deserve a greeting too?* *indīgnus avōrum*, V. 12, 649, *unworthy of my sires*.

**1270.** (3.) In poetry and late prose, the genitive is used very freely with many adjectives of various meanings, often merely to indicate what they apply to: as,

*nēmō militāris rēi callidior habēbātur*, Ta. *H.* 2, 32, *at soldiering nobody was thought to have a greater knack*. *vetus operis ac labōris*, Ta. 1, 20, *an old hand at the toil and moil of army life*. *aevī mātūrus Acestēs*, V. 5, 73, *Acestes, ripe in years*. *sērī studiōrum*, H. *S.* 1, 10, 21, *what laggards at your books*. *integer vitae scelerisque pūrus*, H. 1, 22, 1, *the man unspotted in his life and clean of sin*. *fessī rērum*, V. 1, 178, *in travail spent*. *satin tū sānu's mentis aut animī tuī?* Pl. *Tri.* 454, *art thou quite right in thy five wits?* (1339).

### III. THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

#### VERBS OF VALUING.

**1271.** A few neuter adjectives of quantity are put in the genitive with verbs of valuing to denote the amount of estimation; such genitives are:

*māgnī*, *plūris*, *plūrimī*; *parvī*, *minōris*, *minimī*; *tantī*, *quantī*.

The verbs with which these genitives are used are *aestimō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *habeō*, *pendō*, *putō*, and *sum*; rarely *existimō*: as, *māgnī opera eius aestimāta est*, N. 24, 1, 2, *his services were rated high*. *nōn māgnī pendō*, Pl. *As.* 460, *I don't care much*. *sua parvī pendere*, S. *C.* 12, 2, *a settling small store by what they had of their own*. *Verrēsne tibi tantī fuit?* V. 1, 77, *was Verrēs so important in your eyes?* *est mihi tantī*, C. 2, 15, *it is well worth my while*. *quantī is ā cīvibus suis fieret ignōrābās?* V. 4, 19, *did not you know how the man was prized by his own townsmen?* Rarely *māximī*: as, *māximī aestimāre*, Clu. 159, *to think all the world of*.

## 1272-1278.] Sentences: The Simple Sentence.

1272. In expressions of worthlessness, other genitives are also used thus; such are *nihilī*, or, usually with a negative, *āssis*, *flocī*, *naucī*, *pilī*, *terūncī*: as, *nōn āssis facis?* Cat. 43, 13, *car'st not a doit?* So also *hūius*: as, *hūius nōn faciam*, T. *Ad.* 163, *I shall not care a snap.*

1273. With *aestimō*, the ablatives *māgnō* and *permāgnō* are sometimes used: as, *quid? tū ista permāgnō aestimās?* V. 4, 13, *tell me, do you rate that sort of thing very high yourself?* Compare 1390.

1274. The genitives *tantī* and *quantī*, *plūris* and *minōris* are also used with verbs of buying and selling, hiring and letting, and costing. But other words are put in the ablative with these verbs: see 1391. For *māgnī*, &c., with *rēfert* and *interest*, see 1279.

1275. A similar genitive occurs in one or two set forms, such as *aequī bonīque dīcō*, or *faciō*, *aequī faciō*, and *bonī cōsulō*: as, *istūc*, Chremēs, *aequī bonīque faciō*, T. *Hau.* 787, *I count that, Chremes, fair and good.* *aequī istūc faciō*, Pl. *MG.* 784, *that's all the same to me.*

### THE VERBS *rēfert* AND *interest*.

1276. *rēfert* and *interest*, *it concerns*, are much alike in meaning and in construction. But with *rēfert*, the person concerned is oftenest expressed in old Latin, less frequently in classical Latin; with *interest*, the person or thing concerned is first expressed by Cicero.

1277. (1.) With *rēfert* and *interest*, a first or second person concerned is denoted by the possessive pronoun forms *meā*, *tuā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*; and the third person reflexive by *suā*: as,

(a.) *quid id rēfert meā?* Pl. *Cur.* 395, *what's that to me?* *tuā istūc rēfert māxumē*, Pl. *Tri.* 319, *that is of most concern to thee.* *nōn suā rēferre*, Quinct. 19, *that it did not concern him.* *nōn nostrā magis quam vestrā rēfert vōs nōn rebellāre*, L. 34, 17, 7, *it is not more for our interest than for your own that you should not make war again.* Without the verb: as, *quid istūc nostrā*, or *quid id nostrā?* T. *Ph.* 800, 940, *what's that to us?* (b.) *tuā et meā māximē interest tē valēre*, Fam. 16, 4, 4, *your health is a matter of the highest importance to you and to me.* *vestrā hōc māximē interest*, Sull. 79, *this is of vital moment to you.*

1278. (2.) With *interest*, a third person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive. Also with *rēfert*, a few times from Sallust on: as,

(a.) *quid ēius intererat?* RA. 96, *what concern was it of his?* *interesse rēi pūblicae sē cum Pompēiō colloquī*, Caes. C. 1, 24, 5, *that it was of importance to the common weal that he should have a parley with Pompey.* (b.) *faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur*, S. I. 111, 1, *that he must do something which should seem more for the other side's good than his own.* For the accusative with *ad* with these verbs, or for the dative with *rēfert*, see the dictionary.



1279. The matter of concern is expressed by a sentence or infinitive, or by a neuter pronoun; rarely by an appellative: as, *nōn quō meā interesset loci nātūra*, *Att.* 3, 19, 1, *not that the character of the place concerned me*. The degree of concern is expressed by an adverb, as *māgnopere*, by a neuter accusative, as *multum*, or by a genitive of estimation, *māgnī*, *permāgnī*, *plūris*, *parvī*, *tantī*, *quantī* (1271).

### JUDICIAL VERBS.

1280. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, take a genitive of the charge: as,

*C. Verrem insimulat avāritiae*, *V.* 1, 128, *he charges Verres with avarice*. *accūsātus est prōditiōnis*, *N.* 1, 7, 5, *he was charged with treason*. *capitis arcēssere*, *D.* 30, *accuse on a capital charge*. *prōditiōnis damnātus est*, *N.* 2, 8, 2, *he was convicted of treason*. *Pollis pecūniae publicae est condemnātus*, *Flacc.* 43, *Pollis was condemned for embezzlement of government money*. *māiestātis absolūtī sunt permultī*, *Clu.* 116, *a good many were acquitted of high treason*. With this genitive, an ablative, *crimine*, *iūdictiō*, *nōmine*, or *lēge*, is sometimes expressed (1377): as, *nē quem umquam innocentem iūdictiō capitis arcēssās*, *Off.* 2, 51, *that you are never to accuse any innocent man on a charge affecting his status as a citizen*.

1281. The charge is sometimes denoted by a prepositional construction: as, *sēscentī sunt, quī inter sicāriōs et dē venēficiīs accūsābant*, *RA.* 90, *there are hundreds and hundreds that brought charges of murder, by steel and by poison*. So also *dē āleā*, *of gambling*, in Cicero regularly *dē pecūniīs repetundīs*, *of extortion*, and necessarily *dē vī*, *of an act of violence*, as *vīs* has no genitive. For the neuter accusative, see 1172.

1282. The penalty also is sometimes denoted by the genitive: as, *cupiō octuplī damnārī Aprōnium*, *V.* 3, 28, *I want to have Apronius condemned to a payment of eightfold*. *damnātusque longī Sisyphus Aeolidēs labōris*, *H.* 2, 14, 19, *and Sisyphus the Acolid, amerced with penance long*. Sometimes by the ablative: as, *capite*, *V.* 5, 109. So usually from Livy on, when the penalty is a definite sum of money or fractional part of a thing.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS OF MENTAL DISTRESS.

1283. A genitive of the thing, commonly with an accusative of the person, is used with five impersonals of mental distress:

*miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*: as,

*tūi mē miseret*, *mēi piget*, *E.* in *Div.* 1, 66, *I pity thee, I loathe myself*. *frātris mē pudet pigetque*, *T. Ad.* 391, *my brother stirs my shame and my disgust*. *mī pater, mē tūi pudet*, *T. Ad.* 681, *dear father, in thy presence I'm abashed*. *galeātum sēro duellī paenitet*, *J.* 1, 169, *too late, with casque on head, a combatant repenteth him of war*. So also *miserētur*, and in old Latin inceptively, *miserēscit*, *commiserēscit*.

1284. These verbs sometimes have a sentence or a neuter pronoun as subject: as, *nōn tē haec pudet?* *T. Ad.* 754, *does not this make thee blush for shame?* Rarely an appellative: as, *mē quidem haec condiciō nōn paenitet*, *Pl. St.* 51, *for my part, with my wedded state I'm well content*. Or a person: as, *pudeō*, *Pl. Cas.* 877, *I feel ashamed*. For participles and gerundives, see §17.



## 1285-1291.] Sentences: The Simple Sentence.

1285. The genitive is used with the personals *misereor* or *misereō*, and in poetry with *miserescō*: as,

*aliquandō miserēminī sociōrum*, *V. 1, 72, do take pity on your allies, it is high time.* *nēminis miserēre certumst, quia mēi miseret nēminem*, *Pl. Cap. 764, I'm bound to care for nobody, as no one cares for me.* *Arcadii miserescite rēgis*, *V. 8, 573, take pity on the king of Arcady.*

1286. Personal verbs of desiring, loathing, admiring, and dreading, sometimes take the genitive: as, *pol, quamquam domī cupiō, opperiar*, *Pl. Tri. 841, although I yearn for home, I vow I'll wait* (1263). *fastidit mēi*, *Pl. Aul. 245, he views me with disdain* (1263). *iūstitiaene prius mīrer, belline labōrum?* *V. 11, 126, thy justice first shall I admire? thy toils in war?* *nē tuī quidem testimōnii veritus*, *Att. 8, 4, 1, not having any awe about your recommendation either.*

### VERBS OF MEMORY.

1287. The genitive is used with verbs of remembering and forgetting: as,

*vivōrum meminī, nec tamen Epicūrī licet obliviscī*, *Fin. 5, 3, I remember the living, and yet it will not do for me to be forgetful of Epicurus.* *reminiscerētur incommodī populī Rōmānī*, *1, 13, 4, he had better call to mind the rebuff dealt out to Rome.* *flāgitiorum suōrum recordābitur*, *Pis. 12, he will bethink him of his abominable actions.* *oblitusque meōrum obliviscendus et illis*, *H. E. 1, 11, 10, and friends forgetting and by friends forgot.* See 1263.

1288. With verbs of remembering and forgetting the thing is sometimes expressed by the accusative, and regularly when it is a neuter pronoun. *meminī* takes also the accusative of a person we have known: as, *Cinnam meminī, vīdī Sūllam*, *Ph. 5, 17, I can remember Cinna, I have seen Sulla.* *recordor* takes the accusative much oftener than the genitive.

1289. The ablative also with *dē* occurs with *meminī*: as, *dē pallā mementō*, *Pl. As. 939, don't forget about the gown.* Likewise with *recordor*, particularly of persons: as, *recordāre dē cēteris*, *Sull. 5, bethink yourself about the rest of the men.*

1290. The impersonal *venit in mentem* also takes the genitive: as, *venit mihi Platōnis in mentem*, *Fin. 5, 2, Plato comes into my head*; very exceptionally the ablative with *dē*. But the verb in this combination is often used personally, with the thing occurring to the mind as the subject, and regularly in Cicero, when it is *rēs* or *genus*, or a neuter pronoun.

1291. Verbs of reminding take the accusative of a person and sometimes with it the genitive of a thing: as,

*admonēbat alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae*, *S. C. 21, 4, he reminded one man of his beggary, another of his greed.* So also *commoneō*, *commonefaciō*, and, in Tacitus only, *moneō*. Oftener however the thing is in the ablative with *dē*, or, if it is a neuter pronoun or adjective, in the accusative (1172). Rarely a substantive equivalent to a neuter pronoun: as, *eam rem nōs locus admonuit*, *S. I. 79, 1, the place has reminded me of that.*

## VERBS OF PARTICIPATION AND MASTERY.

1292. Verbs of participation and mastery sometimes take the genitive in old Latin and in poetry: as, **servom sūi participat cōsiliī**, Pl. *Cist.* 163, *she makes a slave a sharer in her plot* (1263). **quā Daunus agrestium rēgnāvit populōrum**, H. 3, 30, 11, *where Daunus was the lord of rural folk* (1260). So, even in prose, **potior**, which usually has the ablative (1379): as, **totius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant**, 1, 3, 8, *they hope they can get the mastery over the whole of Gaul*. Especially with persons, or with the genitive plural **rērum**: **rērum potior**, *get to be, or often, am, master of the situation, or I am monarch of all I survey*. Similarly in Tacitus **apīscor, adipīscor**: as, **arma, quīs Servius Galba rērum adeptus est**, Ta. 3, 55, *the war by which Galba became master of the throne*. In Plautus **crēdō** sometimes has the genitive of a thing and dative of a person.

## VERBS OF FULNESS AND WANT.

1293. The genitive is sometimes used with verbs of filling, abounding, and lacking, as it is with the corresponding adjectives (1263): as,

**convivium vicinōrum cōtidiē compleō**, CM. 46, *I fill out a dinner-party every day with neighbours*. **haec rēs vitae mē, soror, saturant**, Pl. *St.* 18, *these things, my sister, sicken me of life*. **terra ferārum nunc etiam scatit**, Lucr. 5, 39, *still teems the earth with ravin beasts*. So with **egeō** sometimes: as, **egeō cōsiliī**, Att. 7, 22, 2, *I am in need of some advice*. And usually with **indigeō**: as, **hōc bellum indiget celeritātis**, Ph. 6, 7, *this war requires rapid action*. But, from Livy on, the ablative is commoner with **indigeō**: see 1305.

1294. With verbs of separating and abstaining, the ablative is regularly used (1302). But the genitive is sometimes found in poetry: as, **mē omnium labōrum levās**, Pl. *R.* 247, *thou riddest me of all my woes*. **abstinētō irārum calidae-que rixae**, H. 3, 27, 69, *from bursts of rage keep thou and hot affray*.

## IV. THE GENITIVE OF EXCLAMATION.

1295. In poetry, the genitive with an adjective in agreement occurs two or three times in exclamation: as, **foederis heu tacitī**, Prop. 5, 7, 21, *alas, that secret covenant*. Usually the nominative (1117), or the accusative (1149).

---

## THE ABLATIVE.

1296. The ablative is used principally with verbs and their participles, or with adjectives, and consists of three cases that were originally distinct.

1297. I. The ABLATIVE proper denotes that from which something parts or proceeds (1302).

## 1298-1302.] Sentences: The Simple Sentence.

---

The ablative proper is often accompanied by the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, or *tenus*.

1298. With the ablative proper two other cases, originally distinct, a locative case and an instrumental case, were confounded, and merged under the common name of the ablative.

1299. II. The LOCATIVE case denotes the place in, at, or on which action occurs. A few forms of the locative proper are still preserved (1331). But ordinarily the locative ablative is used to denote the place where (1342).

The locative ablative is often accompanied by the prepositions *in* or *sub*.

1300. III. The INSTRUMENTAL case denotes that by which or with which a main person or thing is attended (1356).

The instrumental ablative is often accompanied by the prepositions *cum* or *cōram*.

1301. The ablative or locative is sometimes attached immediately to a substantive.

Thus, (a.) sometimes to a substantive which denotes or implies action: as, *interitus ferrō*, *destruction with the sword*, like *intereō ferrō*; see 1307, 1331, 1342, 1376, 1377. (b.) In constructions in which the ablative is due to an older combination with a verb: as, *vir singulārī virtūte*, *a man of unex-ampled bravery*. See 1309 and 1375.

---

### I. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

#### THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND WANT, AND OF DEPARTURE.

1302. Verbs of separation take an ablative of the thing from which separation takes place: as,

(a.) *caruit forō posteā Pompēius, caruit senātū, caruit pūblicō*, *Mil.* 18, *after that Pompey had to keep away from the market place, from the senate, from highways and byways.* *adhūc Q. Ligārius omnī culpā vacat*, *Lig.* 4, *thus far Ligarius proves devoid of any guilt.* *egeō cōnsiliō*, *Att.* 15, 1, A. 5, *I need advice* (1305). (b.) *Italiā prohibētur: nōn tū eum patriā privāre, quā caret, sed vitā vis*, *Lig.* 11, *he is kept out of Italy; you want to deprive him not of his country, from which he is debarred, but of life.* *liberēmus cūrā populum Rōmānum*, *L.* 39, 51, 9, *Hannibal's words when he took poison*, 183 B. C., *let me relieve Rome of anxiety.*



1303. This ablative is used (a.) with such verbs as mean *abstain*, *abstineō*, *dēsistō*, *supersedeō*; *am devoid of*, *careō*, *vacō*; *need*, *egeō*; and in addition to the accusative of the object, (b.) with verbs used transitively, such as mean *keep off*, *arceō*, *exclūdō* and *interclūdō*, *prohibeō*; *drive away*, *remove*, *pellō*, *moveō*, and their compounds; *free*, *expediō*, *liberō*, *levō*, *solvō* and *exsolvō*; *deprive*, *orbō*, *privō*, *spoliō*, *nūdō*, *fraudō*.

1304. A preposition, *ab* or *ex*, is often used with these verbs, and regularly when the ablative denotes a person. But *careō* and *egeō*, and *exsolvō* and *levō*, never have a preposition.

1305. With *egeō*, the genitive is sometimes used, and often with *indigeō*: see 1293. Also in poetry, with verbs of abstaining and separating: see 1294.

1306. The ablative of separation is sometimes used with such adjectives as *aliēnus*, *expers*, *liber*, *nūdus*, *vacuus*, &c.: as, *negant id esse aliēnum māiestātē deōrum*, *Div. 2, 105*, *they maintain that this is not at variance with the greatness of the gods*. *vacuī cūrīs*, *Fin. 2, 46*, *devoid of cares*. *arce et urbe orba sum*, *E. Tr. 114*, *of tower and town bereft am I*. But sometimes the genitive: see 1263 and 1264; sometimes also prepositional constructions: for these, and particularly for the different constructions of *aliēnus*, see the dictionary.

## TOWN AND ISLAND NAMES.

1307. (1.) Proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the ablative with verbs of motion, to denote the place from which motion proceeds: as,

*Dāmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō*, *TD. 5, 109*, *Damaratus ran away from Corinth to Tarquinii*. *signum Carthāgine captum*, *V. 4, 82*, *the statue carried off from Carthage*. *Megaribus*, *Pl. Per. 137*, *from Megara*. *Lēmno*, *Pl. Tru. 90*, *from Lemnos*. *Rōmā accēperam litterās*, *Att. 5, 8, 2*, *I had got a letter from Rome*. Rarely with a substantive of motion (1301): as, *dē illius Alexandrēa discessū*, *Att. 11, 18, 1*, *about his departure from Alexandria*. Also in dating letters: as, *v kal. Sextil.*, *Rēgiō*, *Fam. 7, 19*, *Regium, 17 July*; less often the locative: as, *Idibus Iūniis, Thessalonicae*, *QFr. 1, 3, 10*, *Thessalonica, 13 June*. Like a town name: *Ācherunte*, poet. in *TD. 1, 37*, *from Acheron*. With an attribute: *ipsā Samō*, *V. 1, 51*, *from Samos itself*. *Teānō Sidicinō*, *Att. 8, 11, B, 2*, *from Sidicinian Teanum*.

1308. Singular town or island names sometimes have *ex* in old Latin: thus, *Carystō*, *Pl. Ps. 730*, *from Carystus*, or, *ex Carystō*, *Ps. 737*, indifferently. *ex Andrō*, *T. Andr. 70*, *from Andros*. In classical Latin, town names rarely have *ab*: as, *ab Athēnīs proficīscī*, *Serv. in Fam. 4, 12, 2*, *to start from Athens*; chiefly of neighbourhood: as, *ab Gergoviā*, *7, 43, 5*; *7, 59, 1*, *from camp at Gergovia*; or direction: as, *ā Salōnīs ad Ōricum*, *Caes. C. 3, 8, 4*, *from Salonae to Oricum*; regularly with *longē*: as, *longē ā Syracūsīs*, *V. 4, 107*, *far from Syracuse*.

1309. The ablative of a town or country name is rarely attached immediately to a substantive, to denote origin: as, *Periphanēs Rhodō mercātor dīves*, *Pl. As. 499*, *Periphanes from Rhodes a chapman rich*. *videō ibī hospitem Zacynthō*, *Pl. Mer. 940*, *I see the friend there from Zacynthus*. Rarely in Cicero: as, *Teānō Āpulō laudātōrēs*, *Clu. 197*, *eulogists from Apulian Teanum*; in Caesar twice. In Livy with *ab* only: as, *Turnus ab Arīciā*, *L. 1, 50, 3*, *Turnus from Aricia*. But the Roman tribe one belongs to, is regularly in the ablative: as, *Q. Verrem Rōmiliā*, sc. *tribū*, *V. a. pr. 1, 23*, *Verres of the tribe Romilia*.

## 1310-1315.] Sentences : The Simple Sentence.

**1310.** With a verb, country names regularly have a preposition, and always in Cicero, Sallust, and Livy : as, *ē Ciliciā dēcēdēns*, *Br.* 1, *going away from Cilicia*. The ablative alone is rare : as, *Aegyptō adveniō domum*, *Pl. Most.* 440, *from Egypt I come home*. Chiefly in Tacitus : as, *Aegyptō remeāns*, 2, 69, *coming back from Egypt*. In Caesar, by attraction : *cōgēbantur Corcyrā atque Acarnāniā pābulum supportāre*, *C.* 3, 58, 4, *they were forced to fetch fodder from Corcyra and even Acarnania*.

**1311.** (2.) The ablatives *domō* and *rūre*, and in poetry *humō*, are used like proper names of towns : as,

(a.) *domō excesserant*, 4, 14, 5, *they had gone away from home*. Also metaphorically : as, *domō doctus*, *Pl. Mer.* 355, *by home-experience taught*.  
(b.) *rūre rediit uxor mea*, *Pl. Mer.* 705, *my wife's come back from out of town*.  
(c.) *humō*, in Vergil first : as, *vix oculōs attollit humō*, *O.* 2, 448, *scarce from the ground her eyes she lifts*.

### THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE, STUFF, OR MATERIAL.

**1312.** The verb *nāscor* and participles of origin take an ablative to denote parentage or rank in life.

Such participles are : *nātus*, *prōgnātus*, and *ortus* ; in poetry and late prose, also *crētus*, *ēditus*, *generātus*, *genitus*, *satus*, and *oriundus* : as,  
(a.) *Rōmulus deō prōgnātus*, *L.* 1, 40, 3, *Romulus, sprung from a god*. *dīs genite*, *V.* 9, 642, *thou sired of gods*. Of a parent, *ex* is sometimes used : as *ex mē hīc nātus nōn est*, *T. Ad.* 40, *he's not my son* ; and of remoter ancestors, *ab*. (b.) *locō nātus honestō*, 5, 45, 2, *respectably descended*. *summō locō nātus*, 5, 25, 1, *of high birth*. *familiā antiquissimā nātum*, 7, 32, 4, *a member of an old family*. Rarely with *dē* : as, *quō dē genere gnātust Philocratēs* ? *Pl. Cap.* 277, *what is the parentage of Philocrates* ?

**1313.** The ablative with an attribute, attached to a substantive, sometimes denotes stuff or material : as, *aere cavō clipeum*, *V.* 3, 286, *a targe of hollow bronze*. *perennī frōnde corōnam*, *Lucr.* 1, 118, *a crown of amaranthine leaf*. *solidōque adamante columnae*, *V.* 6, 552, *and pillars of the solid adamant*. This construction borders closely on the ablative of quality (1375). Rarely without an attribute : as, *pīctās abiete puppīs*, *V.* 5, 663, *painted sterns of fir*.

**1314.** A substantive denoting stuff or material is generally put in the ablative with *dē* or *ex* ; thus,

(a.) Directly with a substantive : *pōcula ex aurō*, *V.* 4, 62, *cupps of gold*.  
(b.) Oftener with an auxiliary verb or participle : *signum erat hōc Cupīdinis ē marmore*, *V.* 4, 5, *this statue of Cupid was made of marble*. *scūtīs ex cortice factīs*, 2, 33, 2, *with long shields made out of bark*. *ex ūnā gemmā pergrandī trūlla excavāta*, *V.* 4, 62, *a ladle scooped out of a single enormous semi-precious stone*.

**1315.** The ablative with forms of *faciō* and *sum* denotes that with which or to which something is done : as, *quid hōc homine faciās* ? *Sest.* 29, *what can you do with such a fellow* ? *quid mē fiet* ? *T. Andr.* 709, *what will become of me* ? But often the dative (1205) : as, *quid tibi faciam* ? *Att.* 7, 3, 2, *what shall I do to you* ? Or the ablative with *dē* : as, *dē frātre quid fiet* ? *T. Ad.* 996, *as to my brother, what will come to pass* ?



## THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, INFLUENCE, OR MOTIVE.

**1316.** The ablative is used to denote cause, influence, or motive: as,

madeō metū, Pl. *Most.* 395, *I'm drenched with dread.* tū imprudentiā lāberis, *Mur.* 78, *you, sir, slip from inadvertence.* maerore et lacrimis cōnsenescēbat, *Clu.* 13, *she just pined away in sorrow and tears.* irā incendior, Pl. *Ps.* 201, *I'm getting hot with wrath.* premor luctū, *Att.* 3, 22, 3, *I am bowed down with grief.* quod ego nōn superbiā faciēbam, *DO.* 1, 99, *I did not act thus from superciliousness, not I.* nōn movētur pecūniā, *V.* 4, 18, *he is not moved by money.* boat caelum fremitū virūm, Pl. *Am.* 232, *the welkin rings with roar of men.* delictō dolēre, correctiōne gaudēre, *L.* 90, *be pained by the sin, take pleasure in the reproof.* aetate nōn quis optuerier, Pl. *Most.* 840, *owing to age thou canst not see.* Iovis iussū veniō, Pl. *Am. prol.* 19, *at Jove's behest I come.* Sēiānus nimiā fōrtūnā sōcors, *Ta.* 4, 39, *Sejanus giddy with over-prosperity.* ferōx praedā glōriāque exercitus, *Ta. H.* 1, 51, *the army flushed with booty and glory.* exercitūs nostrī interitus ferrō, *Pis.* 40, *the annihilation of our army by the sword* (1301).

**1317.** Instead of the ablative, other constructions often occur, especially with verbs used transitively; such are:

(a.) Prepositional constructions with *dē* or *ex*, and in *Livy* with *ab*; also with *ob*, *per*, or *propter*: as, *multi in oppidum propter timōrem sēsē recipiunt*, *Caes. C.* 2, 35, 6, *a good many retreated to the town from fear.* Sometimes with *prae*: as, *prae amōre exclūstī hunc forās*, *T. Eu.* 98, *it was for love you turned him out of doors*; in classical Latin, usually of hindrance: as, *sōlem prae iaculōrum multitūdine nōn vidēbitis*, *TD.* 1, 101, *you won't see the sun for the cloud of javelins.* (b.) Circumlocutions with *causā*, less frequently with *grātiā* (1257). (c.) Ablatives absolute, or participles, particularly auxiliary participles with an ablative to express cause, oftener motive, such as *captus*, *ductus*, *excitātus* or *incitātus*, *impulsus*, *incensus*, *inflammātus*, *mōtus*, *perterritus*: as, *nōnnūllī pudōre adductī remanēbant*, 1, 39, 3, *some stuck by from shame.*

**1318.** The person by whom the action of a passive verb is done, is denoted by the ablative with *ab* or *ā*. Also occasionally with verbs equivalent to a passive, such as *cadō*, *intereō*, *pereō*, *vēneō*, &c., &c. Things or animals are sometimes represented as persons by the use of *ab*: as, *animus bene infōrmātus ā nātūrā*, *Off.* 1, 13, *a soul meetly fashioned by dame nature.*

**1319.** In poetry, an ablative denoting a person, with an adjective in agreement, is sometimes equivalent to an expression with an abstract substantive: as, *et adsiduō ruptae lēctōre columnae*, *J.* 1, 13, *and pillars by persistent reader riven*, i. e. *adsiduitate lēctōris*, or *adsiduā lēctiōne*. *cūrātus inaequālī tōnsōre capillōs*, *H. E.* 1, 1, 94, *my locks by unsymmetric barber trimmed.*

## THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

**1320.** (1.) The ablative may be used with a comparative adjective, when the first of two things compared is in the nominative, or is a subject-accusative.



Such an ablative is translated by *than*: as, (a.) *lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia*, *C. 1, 6, your schemes are plainer to us than day.* *ō mātrem pulchrā filia pulchrior*, *H. 1, 16, 1, O daughter fairer than a mother fair.* Particularly in sentences of negative import: as, *quis Karthāginiēnsium plūris fuit Hannibale?* *Sest. 142, of all the sons of Carthage, who was rated higher than Hannibal?* *nec mihi est tē iūcundius quicquam nec cārius*, *Fam. 2, 10, 1, and there is nothing in the world nearer and dearer to me than you.* (b.) *illud cōgnōscēs profectō, mihi tē neque cāriōrem neque iūcundiōrem esse quemquam*, *Fam. 2, 3, 2, one thing I am sure you will see, that there is nobody nearer and dearer to me than you.*

1321. (2.) The ablative of comparison is occasionally used when the first member of comparison is an accusative of the object: as,

*exēgī monumentum aēre perennius*, *H. 3, 30, 1, I have builded up a monument more durable than bronze.* Particularly so in sentences of negative import: as, *hōc mihi grātius facere nihil potes*, *Fam. 13, 44, you can do nothing for me more welcome than this.* Also with predicate adjectives dependent on a verb of thinking (1167): as, *Hērodotum cūr vērāciōrem dūcam Enniō?* *Div. 2, 116, why should I count Herodotus any more truthful than Ennius?* Regularly when the second member of comparison is a relative: as, *quā pecude nihil genuit nātūra fēcundius*, *DN. 2, 160, nature has created nothing more prolific than this animal, i. e. the sow.*

1322. (3.) In poetry, the ablative of comparison may be used with the first member of comparison in any case: as, *Lūcili ritū, nostrū meliōris utrōque*, *H. S. 2, 1, 29, after Lucilius's way, a better man than thou or I.*

1323. (4.) In sentences of negative import, the ablative is sometimes used with *alter* and *alius*, as with a comparative: as, *neque mēst alter quisquam*, *Pl. As. 492, and there's no other man than I.* *nec quicquam aliud libertāte commūni quaesisse*, *Brut. and Cass. in Fam. 11, 2, 2, and to have aimed at nothing else than freedom for all.* But in prose, *quam* is commonly used.

1324. (1.) The second member of comparison is often introduced by *quam*, *than*, or in poetry by *atque* or *ac*. This member, whatever the case of the first member, is sometimes made the subject of a form of *sum* in a new sentence: as,

*meliōrem quam ego sum suppōnō tibi*, *Pl. Cur. 256, I give you as a substitute a better than I am myself.* *verba M. Varrōnis, hominis quam fuit Claudius doctiōris*, *Gell. 10, 1, 4, the words of Varro, a better scholar than Claudius ever was.* *ut tibi māiōri quam Africānus fuit, mē adiūctum esse patiāre*, *Fam. 5, 7, 3, so that you will allow me to be associated with you, a bigger man than Africanus ever was.*

1325. (2.) When the first member is in the nominative or accusative, *quam* is commonly a mere coordinating word, with both members in the same case: as,

(a.) *plūris est oculātus testis ūnus quam auritī decem*, *Pl. Tru. 490, a single witness with an eye rates higher than a dozen with the ear.* (b.) *tū velim existimēs nēminem cuiquam neque cāriōrem neque iūcundiōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihi*, *Fam. 1, 9, 24, I hope you will be convinced that nobody was ever nearer and dearer to anybody than you to me.*

1326. An introductory ablative of a demonstrative or relative pronoun sometimes precedes the construction with **quam**: as, **quid hōc est clārius, quam omnis Segestae mātērōnās et virginēs convēnisse?** *V. 4, 77, what fact is there better known than this, to wit, that all the women in Segesta, married and single, came streaming together?*

1327. The ablative is sometimes used with comparative adverbs also.

So particularly in sentences of negative import: as, **nihil lacrimā citius arēscit**, *Corn. 2, 50, nothing dries up quicker than a tear*. Less frequently in positive sentences in prose: as, **fōrtūna, quae plūs cōnsilīs hūmānīs pollet, contrāxit certāmen**, *L. 44, 40, 3, fortune, who is mightier than the devices of man, precipitated the engagement*. Very commonly, however, **quam** is used with comparative adverbs.

1328. Designations of number or extent are often qualified by **amplius**, **longius**, or **plūs**, *over*, or by **minus**, *under*.

The word thus qualified is put in the case which the context would require without any such qualification: as, **plūs septingentī captī**, *L. 41, 12, 8, over seven hundred were taken prisoners*. **tēcum plūs annum vīxit**, *Q. 41, he lived with you over a year (1151)*. **cum equīs plūs quīngentīs**, *L. 40, 32, 6, with over five hundred horses*. Less frequently with **quam**. When these words are felt as real substantives in the nominative or accusative, the ablative of comparison may be used (1320): as, **plūs trīduō**, *RA. 74, more than three days*.

1329. In expressions of age with **nātus**, the adjectives **māior** and **minor** are used as well as **amplius** and **minus**, and with the same construction (1328): as, **annōs nātus māior quadrāgintā**, *RA. 39, over forty years old*. For other constructions, see the dictionary. Similarly **conlēctus aquae digitum nōn altior ūnum**, *Lucr. 4, 414, a pool no deeper than a finger's breadth (1130)*. But commonly with comparative adjectives of extent, **quam** is used, or the ablative (1320): as, **palūs nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā**, *7, 19, 1, a marsh not wider than fifty feet*.

1330. With a comparative adjective or adverb, the ablatives **opīniōne**, **expectātiōne**, and **spē**, and some others, chiefly in poetry, take the place of a sentence with **quam**: as,

**opīniōne melius**, *Pl. Cas. 338, better than you thought*. **minōra opīniōne**, *Caes. C. 2, 31, 5, more insignificant than is thought*. **lātius opīniōne dissēminātum est hōc malum**, *C. 4, 6, this infection is more sweeping than anybody dreams*. **spē omnium sērius**, *L. 2, 3, 1, later than was generally expected*.

## II. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

### (A.) THE LOCATIVE PROPER.

1331. (1.) Singular proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the locative to denote the place in or at which action occurs: as,



quid Rōmae faciam? mentīrī nescio, J. 3, 41, *what can I do in Rome? I don't know how to lie.* Corinthī et Karthāginī, Agr. 2, 90, *at Corinth and at Carthage.* Lacedaemoni, N. praef. 4, *in Lacedaemon.* Tiburī, Att. 16, 3, 1, *at Tibur.* Rhodī, Fam. 4, 7, 4, *at Rhodes.* mānsiōnēs diutinae Lēmnī, T. Ph. 1012, *protracted stays at Lemnos (1301).* Sometimes in dates: as, data Thessalonicae, Att. 3, 20, 3, *given at Thessalonica (1307).* The locative rarely means *near*: as, Antii, L. 22, 1, 10, *round about Antium.* In Plautus only two singular town names with consonant stems occur, and these regularly in the locative, Carthāginī and Sicyōnī, three times each; once in a doubtful example, Sicyōne, Cist. 128. Terence has no examples of these stems. From Cicero on, the locative ablative is commoner with them (1343).

1332. With an adjective attribute also, the locative is used: as, Teānī Āpulī, Clu. 27, *at the Apulian Teanum.* Suessae Auruncae, L. 32, 9, 3, *at the Auruncan Suessa.* The appellative *forum, market place*, used, with an attribute, as a proper name, is sometimes put in the accusative with *ad*: as, Claterna, ad Forum Cornēlium, Fam. 12, 5, 2, *at Claterna and at Forum Cornelium*; sometimes in the locative ablative: Forō Iūli, Plin. Ep. 5, 19, 7.

1333. When the locative is further explained by an appellative following, the appellative is put in the locative ablative, either alone, or with *in*: as, Antiochiāe, celebrī quondam urbe, Arch. 4, *at Antioch, once a bustling town.* Neāpolī, in celeberrimō oppidō, RabP. 26, *at Neapolis, a town swarming with people.* An appellative in the ablative with *in* may be further defined by a proper name in the locative: as, duābus in īnsulis, Melitae et Samī, V. 5, 184, *in two islands — at Melita and Samos.* in oppidō, Antiochiāe, Att. 5, 18, 1, *within town walls — at Antioch.* in sēcessū, Apollōniae, Suet. Aug. 94, *out of town — at Apollonia.* Or in the ablative: as, in oppidō Citiō, N. 5, 3, 4, *in the town of Citium.* in urbe Rōmā, L. 39, 14, 7, *in the city of Rome.*

1334. In Plautus, singular town names with stems in *-ā-* or *-o-* are put in the locative ten or twelve times, in the ablative with *in* some fifteen times. Three such have only *in*, never the locative: in Anactoriō, Poen. 896, in Seleuciā, Tri. 901, in Spartā, Poen. 663; furthermore, in Epidamnō, Men. 267, 380 twice, in Ephesō, B. 309, MG. 441, 778, and in Epidaurō, Cur. 341, 429, E. 540, 541, 554, but also Epidamni, Men. prol. 51, Ephesī, B. 336, 1047, MG. 648, and Epidaurī, E. 636. Terence, who has only *-o-* stems, uses the locative six times, the ablative with *in* four times: only with *in*: in Andrō, Andr. 931, in Imbrō, Hec. 171. Furthermore in Lēmnō, Ph. 873, 1004, but also Lēmnī, Ph. 680, 942, 1013. Also Milētī, Ad. 654, Rhodī, Eu. 107, Sūniī, Eu. 519.

1335. A town name is sometimes put in the ablative with *in* by assimilation with a parallel *in*: as, in Illyricō, in ipsā Alexandrēā, Att. 11, 16, 1, *in Illyricum, and at Alexandria itself.* Antiochum in Syriā, Ptolemaeum in Alexandriā esse, L. 42, 25, 7, *that Antiochus was in Syria, Ptolemy at Alexandria.* in mōnte Albānō Lāviniōque, L. 5, 52, 8, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium.* Also without assimilation: as, nāvis et in Cāiētā est parāta nōbis et Brundusii, Att. 8, 3, 6, *we have a vessel all chartered, one in Cajeta and one at Brundisium.* in Hispalī, Caes. C. 2, 18, 1, *in Hispalis.*

1336. With country names, the locative is very exceptional: as, Chersonēsī, N. 1, 2, 4, *at the Peninsula.* Aegyptī, Val. M. 4, 1, 15, *in Egypt.* Similarly Accheruntī, Pl. Cap. 689, 998, Mer. 606, Tru. 749, *in Acheron*; Accherunte however once: Accheruntē, Pl. Poen. 431. In Sallust, Rōmae Numidiaequē, I. 33, 4, with assimilation of Numidiae to Rōmae.

1337. (2.) The locatives domī, rūrī, humī, and rarely orbī, are used like proper names of towns: as,



(a.) *cēnābō domī*, Pl. St. 482, *I shall dine at home*. Metaphorically, *domī est*, *nāscitur*, or *habeō*, *I can get at home*, *I need not go abroad for*, or *I have in plenty*: as, *id quidem domī est*, Att. 10, 14, 2, *as for that, I have it myself*. With a possessive pronoun or *aliēnus* in agreement, either the locative is used, or the ablative with *in*; for *domuī*, as, Off. 3, 99, see 594; with other adjectives the ablative with *in*. (b.) *rūrī*, T. Ph. 363, *up in the country*; for *rūre*, see 1344 and 1345. (c.) *humī*, *on the ground*, or *to the ground*, in Terence first: as, *hunc ante nostram iānuam appōne :: obsecrō, humīne?* T. Andr. 724, *set down this baby at our door :: good gracious; on the ground?* *iacēre humī*, C. 1, 26, *sleeping on bare ground*. (d.) *orbī* with *terrae* or *terrārum*: as, *amplissimum orbī terrārum monumentum*, V. 4, 82, *the grandest monument in the wide wide world*.

1338. The locatives *bellī*, older *duellī*, and *militiae* are sometimes used in contrast with *domī*: as, *domī duellique*, Pl. Cap. prol. 68, *domī bellique*, L. 2, 50, 11, *domī militiaeque*, TD. 5, 55, *militiae et domī*, T. Ad. 495, *at home and in the field*. Rarely without *domī*: as, *bellī*, RP. 2, 56, *militiae*, S. I. 84, 2.

1339. (3.) Other appellatives rarely have the locative: as, *proximae vicīniae*, Pl. B. 205, MG. 273, *in the next neighbourhood*. *terrae*, L. 5, 51, 9, *in the earth*. With verbs of suspense, doubt, and distress, and with many adjectives, *animī*, *in soul*, is not infrequent; and *animī* being mistaken for a genitive, *mentis* is also used: as, *dēsipiēbam mentis*, Pl. E. 138, *I was beside myself*. Oftener *animō* (1344).

1340. Many original locatives have become set as adverbs: as, *peregrī*, *abroad*. Particularly of pronouns: as, *illī*, Pl. Am. 249, *off there*, oftener *illīc*; *istī* or *istīc*, *hīc*; sometimes further defined by an added expression: as, *hīc vicīniae*, T. Ph. 95, *here in the neighbourhood*. *hīc proximae vicīniae*, MG. 273, *here in the house next door*. *hīc in Veneris fānō meāe vicīniae*, Pl. R. 613, *here, in the shrine of Venus, in my neighbourhood*. *hīc Rōmae*, Arch. 5, *here in Rome*.

1341. The locative proper sometimes denotes time when: as, *lūcī*, *by light*, *temperī*, *betimes*, *herī* or *here*, *yesterday*, *vesperī*, *at evening*, *herī vesperī*, DO. 2, 13, *last evening*. In Plautus, *diē septimī*, Men. 1156, *Per. 260*, *on the seventh day*, *māne sānē septimī*, Men. 1157, *bright and early on the seventh*, *diē crāstinī*, Most. 881, *tomorrow*. Often with an adjective juxtaposed: as, *postrīdiē*, *the day after*, *postrīdiē māne*, Fam. 11, 6, 1, *early next day*, *cōtidīē*, *each day*, *daily*, *prīdiē*, *the day before*.

## (B.) THE ABLATIVE USED AS LOCATIVE.

### PLACE IN, ON, OR AT WHICH.

1342. (1.) Plural proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the locative ablative to denote the place in or at which action occurs: as,

*mortuus Cūmīs*, L. 2, 21, 5, *he died at Cumae*. *Athēnīs tenue caelum*, *crassum Thēbīs*, Fat. 7, *in Athens the air is thin, at Thebes it is thick*. *locus ostenditur Capreīs*, Suet. Tib. 62, *the place is pointed out at Capreae*. Rarely with substantives of action (1301): as, *mānsiō Formiīs*, Att. 9, 5, 1, *the stay at Formiae*. With an attribute: *Athēnīs tuīs*, Att. 16, 6, 2, *in your darling Athens*. *Curibus Sabīnīs*, L. 1, 18, 1, *at the Sabine Cures*.

**1343.** (2.) Singular proper names of towns with consonant stems are oftener put in the locative ablative than in the locative proper: as,

*adulēscēntium gregēs Lacedaemone vidimus*, *TD.* 5, 77, *we have seen the companies of young men in Lacedaemon.* *Karthāgine*, *Att.* 16, 4, 2, *at Carthage.* *Tibure*, *H. E.* 1, 8, 12, *at Tibur.* *Nārbōne*, *Ph.* 2, 76, *at Narbo.* See 1331. So also *Acherunte*, *Lucr.* 3, 984, *in Acheron.* *Calydōne et Naupāctō*, *Caes. C.* 3, 35, 1, *at Calydon and Naupactus*, with *Naupāctō* attracted by *Calydōne*. With an attribute: *Carthāgine Novā*, *L.* 28, 17, 11, *at New Carthage.* *Acherunte profundō*, *Lucr.* 3, 978, *in vasty Acheron.*

**1344.** (3.) A few general appellatives are used in the locative ablative without an attribute, especially in set expressions, to denote the place where: as,

*terrā marique*, *IP.* 48, *by land and sea*; less commonly *marī atque terrā*, *S. C.* 53, 2, *by sea and land.* *dextrā Pīraeus, sinistrā Corinthus*, *Cael. in Fam.* 4, 5, 4, *Piraeus on the right, Corinth on the left.* Rarely, *rūre*, *Pl. Cas.* 110, *H. E.* 1, 7, 1, *in the country*, for *rūrī* (1337). So *animō*, *animīs*, with verbs of feeling: as, *angor animō*, *Br.* 7, *I am distressed in soul*, or *I am heart-broken.* Metaphorically: *locō*, (a.) *in the right place*, also *suō locō*, or *in locō*. (b.) *locō*, *instead*; *numerō*, *in the category*, both with a genitive. *prīncipiō*, *initiō*, *in the beginning.*

**1345.** Certain appellatives, with an attribute, often denote the place where by the locative ablative; so especially *locō*, *locīs*, *rūre*, *librō*, *librīs*, *parte*, *partibus*: as, *remōtō*, *salūbrī*, *amoenō locō*, *Fam.* 7, 20, 2, *in a sequestered, healthy, and picturesque nook.* *idōneō locō*, 3, 17, 5, *in an advantageous spot.* *inīquō locō*, 5, 51, 1, *on unsuitable ground.* *campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs*, 7, 72, 3, *in level and sunken places.* *rūre meō*, *H. E.* 1, 15, 17, *at my own country box.* *rūre paternō*, *H. E.* 1, 18, 60, *J.* 6, 55, *on the ancestral farm.* *aliō librō*, *Off.* 2, 31, *in another book.*

**1346.** Substantives are often used in the locative ablative with *tōtus* in agreement, less often with *cūnctus*, *omnis*, or *medius*, to denote the place where: as, *tōtā Galliā*, 5, 55, 3, *all over Gaul.* *tōtis trepidātur castrīs*, 6, 37, 6, *there is a panic all over the camp.* *omnibus oppidīs*, *V.* 2, 136, *in all the towns.* *omnibus oppidīs maritimīs*, *Caes. C.* 3, 5, 1, *in all the seaports.* *mediā urbe*, *L.* 1, 33, 8, *in the heart of Rome.* But sometimes *in* is used, or the accusative with *per*.

**1347.** (4.) With country names and most appellatives, the place where is generally expressed by the ablative with *in*. But even without an attribute, the ablative alone is sometimes used, especially in poetry: as,

*Ītaliā*, *V.* 1, 263, *in Italy*, *lītore*, *V.* 1, 184, *upon the beach*, *corde*, *V.* 1, 209, *in heart*, *pectore*, *V.* 1, 657, *in breast*, *thalamō*, *H.* 1, 15, 16, *in bower*, *umerō*, *V.* 1, 501, *on shoulder*, *Ēsquiliīs*, *DN.* 3, 63, *on the Esquiline.* Once in Plautus *Ālide*, *Cap.* 330, *in Elis*, but eight times in *Ālide*.

**1348.** The locative ablative is sometimes used with such verbs as *teneō* and *recipiō*: as, (a.) *Ariovistus exercitum castrīs continuit*, 1, 48, 4, *Ariovistus kept his infantry in camp.* *oppidō sēsē continēbant*, 2, 30, 2, *they kept inside the town.* (b.) *oppidīs recipere*, 2, 3, 3, *to receive inside their towns.* *rēx ecquis est, qui senātōrem tēctō ac domō nōn invitet?* *V.* 4, 25, *is there a monarch in the wide world that would not welcome a senator to house and home?*



1349. The locative ablative is used with *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō*, *glōrior*, *laetor*, *nītor*, *stō*, and with *frētus*: as, *barbarī cōnfīsī locī nātūrā in aciē permānsērunt*, 8, 15, 1, *the natives, trusting in the nature of their position, kept their stand in battle array*. *superiōribus victōriis frētī*, 3, 21, 1, *relying on their former victories*. For other constructions with these words, see the dictionary.

## TIME AT WHICH OR TIME WITHIN WHICH.

1350. (1.) The locative ablative is used to denote the point of time at which action occurs.

So particularly of substantives denoting periods or points of time, thus: *hieme*, 5, 1, 1, *in the winter*. *Kalendīs*, H. *Epod.* 2, 70, *upon the first*, i. e. of the month. Generally with an attribute: as, *prīmō vēre*, 6, 3, 4, *in the first month of spring*. *Mārtiūs Kalendīs*, H. 3, 8, 1, *upon the first of March*. With a parallel locative (1341): *vesperī eōdem diē*, Att. 8, 5, 1, *the evening of the same day*.

1351. Words not in themselves denoting periods or points of time, are in the same way put in the ablative: as,

*patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, 1, 12, 5, *in the memory of our fathers*. *nōn modo illīs Pūnicīs bellis, sed etiam hāc praedōnum multitūdine*, V. 4, 103, *not only in the Punic wars of yore, but also in the present swarm of pirates*. *proximis comitiis*, 7, 67, 7, *at the last election*. *spectaculis*, Att. 2, 19, 3, *at the shows*. Especially substantives of action in -tus or -sus (235): as, *sōlis occāsū*, 1, 50, 3, *at sunset*. *adventū in Galliam Caesaris*, 5, 54, 2, *at Caesar's arrival in Gaul*. *eōrum adventū*, 7, 65, 5, *after these people came*. *discessū cēterōrum*, C. 1, 7, *when the rest went away*.

1352. (2.) The locative ablative is used to denote the space of time within which action occurs: as,

*paucis diēbus opus efficitur*, 6, 9, 4, *the job is finished up in a few days*. *tribus hōris Aduātucam venīre potestis*, 6, 35, 8, *in three hours you can get to Aduatuca*. *quae hīc mōnstra fiunt, annō vix possum ēloquī*, Pl. *Most.* 505, *what ghost-transactions take place here I scarce could tell you in a year*. *cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, id bīduō circumvāllāvit*, 7, 11, 1, *arriving at Vellaunodunum, a town of the Senons, in two days time he invested it*. *quicquid est, bīduō sciēmus*, Att. 9, 14, 2, *whatever it may be, we shall know in a couple of days*.

1353. The ablative of the time at or within which action occurs is sometimes accompanied by *in*: as, *in bellō*, 6, 1, 3, *in the war*. *in tempore*, T. *Hau.* 364, *in the nick of time*. *in adulēscentiā*, Pl. *B.* 410, *in my young days*. *in tālī tempore*, Lucr. 1, 93, L. 22, 35, 7, *in such a stress, at such an hour*. *in hōc trīduō*, Pl. *Ps.* 316, *within the next three days*. Especially of repeated action, in the sense of *a* or *every*, with numerals: as, *ter in annō*, Pl. *B.* 1127, *RA.* 132, *three times a year*. *in hōrā saepe ducentōs versūs dictābat*, H. *S.* 1, 4, 9, *two hundred verses in an hour he'd often dictate off*, of Lucilius, father of satire, 150-103 B. C. Other expressions of time with *in*, also with *inter*, *intrā*, *sub*, &c., may be found in the dictionary.



1354. An ablative of the time within which action occurs is sometimes followed by a relative pronoun sentence, with the relative pronoun likewise in the ablative: as, *quadrīduō, quō haec gesta sunt, rēs ad Chr̄sogonum dēfertur*, *RA.* 20, *within the four days space in which this occurred, the incident is reported to Chrysogonus*, i. e. four days after this occurred. *diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat conportārī, omnī opere effectō*, 4, 18, 1, *the job being all done ten days after the carting of the stuff had begun.*

1355. The ablative is exceptionally used to denote duration of time: as, *tōtā nocte continenter iērunt*, 1, 26, 5, *they went on and on all night without interruption.* Regularly, however, the accusative (1151).

### III. THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

#### (A.) THE ABLATIVE OF ATTENDANCE.

#### THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

1356. A few indefinite designations of military forces denote accompaniment by the ablative alone, or oftener with *cum*: as,

(a.) *ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt*, 2, 7, 3, *they marched upon Caesar's camp with all their forces.* *omnibus cōpiīs ad Ilerdam proficīscitur*, *Caes. C.* 1, 41, 2, *he marches before Ilerda, horse, foot, and dragoons.* (b.) *is civitātī persuāsit, ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent*, 1, 2, 1, *well, this man induced the community to emigrate in a body, bag and baggage.*

1357. The participles *iūctus* and *coniūctus* take the ablative of the thing joined with: as, *dēfēnsiōne iūcta laudātiō*, *Br.* 162, *a eulogy combined with a defence.* But sometimes the ablative with *cum* is used, or the dative (1186).

#### THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

1358. (1.) Certain substantives without an attribute are put in the ablative alone to denote manner; but usually substantives without an attribute have *cum*.

(a.) Such adverbial ablatives are *iūre* and *iniūriā*, *ratione et viā*, *silentiō*, *vitiō*, *ordine*, *sponte*, *cōsuētūdine*, &c.: as, *Arātus iūre laudātur*, *Off.* 2, 81, *Aratus is justly admired.* *iniūriā suspectum*, *C.* 1, 17, *wrongfully suspected.* *in omnibus, quae ratione docentur et viā*, *O.* 116, *in everything that is taught with philosophic method.* *silentiō ēgressus*, 7, 58, 2, *going out in silence.* *cēnsōrēs vitiō creatī*, *L.* 6, 27, 5, *censors irregularly appointed.* *ordine cūcta exposuit*, *L.* 3, 50, 4, *he told the whole story from beginning to end*, i. e. with all the particulars. (b.) With *cum*: *face rem hanc cum cūrā gerās*, *Pl. Per.* 198, *see that this job with care thou dost.* *cum virtūte vivere*, *Fin.* 3, 29, *to live virtuously.*

1359. (2.) The ablative of a substantive with an attribute is often used to denote manner, sometimes with *cum*: as,

(a.) *ī pede faustō*, H. E. 2, 2, 37, *go with a blessing on thy foot*. *dat sonitū māgnō strāgem*, Lucr. 1, 288, *it deals destruction with a mighty roar*. *ferārū rītū sternuntur*, L. 5, 44, 6, *they throw themselves down beast-fashion*. *apis Matinae mōre modōque operōsa carmina fingō*, H. 4, 2, 27, *in way and wise of Matin bee laborious lays I mould*. 'indoctus' *dīcimus brevī primā litterā*, 'insanus' *prōductā*, 'inhūmānus' *brevī*, 'infēlix' *longā*, O. 159, *we pronounce indoctus with the first letter short, insānus with it long, inhūmānus with it short, infēlix with it long* (167). *ternō cōsurgunt ōrdine rēmī*, V. 5, 120, *with triple bank each time in concert rise the oars*. (b.) *Allobroges māgnā cum cūrā suōs finēs tuentur*, 7, 65, 3, *the Allobrogans guard their own territory with great care*.

1360. With a substantive meaning *way* or *manner*, as *modō*, *rītū*, &c., *feeling* or *intention*, as *hāc mente*, *aequō animō*, *condition*, as *eā condiōne*, or a part of the body, as in *nūdō capite*, *bareheaded*, *cum* is not used.

1361. Other expressions denoting manner, particularly prepositional expressions with *per*, may be found in the dictionary: as, *per dolum*, 4, 13, 1, *by deceit*, *per iocum*, Agr. 2, 96, *in fun*, *per litterās*, Att. 5, 21, 13, *by letter*, *in writing*, *per vim*, RA. 32, *violently*, *per praestigiās*, V. 4, 53, *by some hocus pocus or other*, &c., &c. Sometimes the ablative with *ex*.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1362. (1.) The ablative of a substantive, with a predicate participle in agreement, is used to denote an attendant circumstance of an action.

In this construction, which is called the *Ablative Absolute*, (a.) the present participle is sometimes used: as, *nūllō hoste prohibente incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātis perdūxit*, 3, 6, 5, *with no enemy hindering, he conducted the legion in safety to the Nantuates*. Much oftener, however, (b.) the perfect participle: as, *hōc respōnsō datō discessit*, 1, 14, 7, *this answer given he went away*. (c.) The future participle is also used in the ablative absolute from Livy on: as, *hospite ventūrō, cessābit nēmo tuōrum*, J. 14, 59, *a visitor to come, your slaves will bustle each and all*.

1363. A predicate ablative with a participle meaning *made*, *kept*, *chosen*, or the like, occurs in Cicero, Caesar, Nepos, and Livy, but is rare (1167): as, *Dolābellā hoste dēcrētō*, Ph. 11, 16, *Dolabella having been voted an enemy of the state*.

1364. The perfect participles of deponents used actively in the ablative absolute, are chiefly those of intransitive use, such as *nātus*, *mortuus*, *ortus*, *profectus*. From Sallust on, other perfect deponent participles also are used actively with an accusative. Cicero and Caesar use a few deponent participles, such as *ēmeritus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *dēpopulātus*, as passives, and later authors use many other participles so.

1365. (2.) The ablative of a substantive, with a predicate noun in agreement, is often used to denote an attendant circumstance of an action: as,



brevitatem secutus sum te magistrō, *Fam.* 11, 25, 1, *I aimed at brevity with you as a teacher.* natus dis inimicis, *Pl. Most.* 563, *born under wrath of gods.* M. Messalā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, 1, 2, 1, *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* istō praetore vēnit Syracūsās, *V.* 4, 61, *in the defendant's praetorship he came to Syracuse.*

1366. The nominative quisque, plerique, or ipse, sometimes accompanies the ablative absolute: as, causā ipse prō se dictā, damnatur, *L.* 4, 44, 10, *he is condemned after pleading his case in person.*

1367. The ablative absolute may denote in a loose way various relations which might be more distinctly expressed by subordinate sentences.

So particularly: (a.) Time: as, tertiā initā vigiliā exercitum ēdūcit, *Caes. C.* 3, 54, 2, *at the beginning of the third watch he leads the army out.* (b.) Cause or means: as, C. Flāminium Caelius religiōne neglēctā cecidisse apud Trāsumēnum scribit, *DN.* 2, 8, *Caelius writes that Flaminius fell at Trasumene in consequence of his neglect of religious observances.* (c.) Concession: as, id paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit, 2, 12, 2, *though the defenders were few, he could not take it by storm.* (d.) Hypothesis: as, quae potest esse vitae iūcunditās sublātis amicitiiis? *Pl.* 80, *what pleasure can there be in life, if you take friendships away?* (e.) Description: as, domum vēnit capite obvolūtō, *Ph.* 2, 77, *he came home with his head all muffled up.*

1368. It may be seen from the examples above that a change of construction is often desirable in translating the ablative absolute. Particularly so in many set idiomatic expressions: as, nullā interpositā morā, *Caes. C.* 3, 75, 1, *without a moment's delay, instantly.* equō admissō, 1, 22, 2, *equō citātō*, *Caes. C.* 3, 96, 3, *full gallop.* clāmōre sublātō, 7, 12, 5, *with a round of cheers.* bene rē gestā salvos redeō, *Pl. Tri.* 1182, *crowned with success I come back safe and sound.*

1369. The substantive of the ablative absolute usually denotes a different person or thing from any in the main sentence. But exceptions to this usage sometimes occur: as,

quibus audītis, eōs domum remittit, 4, 21, 6, *after listening to these men, he sends them home again.* sī ego mē sciente paterer, *Pl. MG.* 559, *if I should wittingly myself allow, more emphatic than sciēns.* sē iūdice nēmo nocēns absolvitur, *J.* 13, 2, *himself the judge, no criminal gets free.*

1370. Two ablatives absolute often occur together, of which the first indicates the time, circumstances, or cause of the second: as, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus, 2, 11, 5, *the ranks being demoralized from hearing the shouts.* cōnsūptis omnibus tēlis gladiis dēstrictis, *Caes. C.* 1, 46, 1, *drawing their swords after expending all their missiles.*

1371. The substantive is sometimes omitted in the ablative absolute, particularly when it is a general word for a person or a thing which is explained by a relative: as, praemissis, quī repūrgārent iter, *L.* 44, 4, 11, *sending sappers and miners ahead to clear a way.* relātis ordine, quae vidissent, *L.* 42, 25, 2, *telling circumstantially all they had seen.*

1372. The ablative neuter of some perfect participles is used impersonally (1034). This use is rare in old Latin, in classical Latin commonest in Cicero, and afterwards in Livy: as, auspiciātō, *DN.* 2, 11, *with auspices taken.* sortitō, *V.* 2, 126, *lots being drawn, or by lot.* Such ablatives readily become adverbs (704). Substantives are also sometimes used alone: as, austrō, *Div.* 2, 58, *when the wind is south.* tranquillitāte, *Plin. Ep.* 8, 20, 6, *when it is calm.* serēnō, *L.* 37, 3, 3, *the day being clear.*



1373. The ablative neuter of some perfect participles is occasionally used in agreement with a sentence or an infinitive: as, *cōgnitō vivere Ptolomaeum*, L. 33, 41, 5, *it being known that Ptolemy was alive*. This construction is not used in old Latin, and is rare in classical Latin, but common in Livy and Tacitus. So adjectives also: as, *incertō quid vitarent*, L. 28, 36, 12, *it not being obvious what they were to steer clear of*.

1374. The ablative absolute is sometimes attended, especially in Livy and Tacitus, by an explanatory word, such as *etsi*, *tamen*, *nisi*, *quasi*, *quamquam*, or *quamvis*: as, *etsi aliquō acceptō detrimentō, tamen summā exercitūs salvā*, Caes. C. 1, 67, 5, *though with some loss, yet with the safety of the army as a whole*.

### THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

1375. The ablative with an adjective in agreement or with a limiting genitive is used to denote quality, either predicatively or attributively: as,

(a.) Predicatively: *capillō sunt prōmissō*, 5, 14, 3, *they have long hair, or let their hair grow long*. *singulārī fuit industriā*, N. 24, 3, 1, *he had unparalleled activity*. *animō bonō's*, Pl. *Aul.* 732, *be of good cheer*. *ad flūmen Genusum, quod ripīs erat impeditis*, Caes. C. 3, 75, 4, *to the river Genusus, which had impracticable banks*. (b.) Attributively: *difficilī trāsitū flūmen ripisque praeruptis*, 6, 7, 5, *a river hard to cross and with steep banks*. *interfectus est C. Gracchus, clārissimō patre, avō, māiōribus*, C. 1, 4, *Gracchus was done to death, a man with an illustrious father, grandfather, and ancestors in general* (1044). *bōs cervī figūrā*, 6, 26, 1, *an ox with the shape of a stag*. Compare the genitive of quality (1239).

### THE ABLATIVE OF THE ROUTE TAKEN.

1376. The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of motion to denote the route taken: as,

*Aurēliā viā profectus est*, C. 2, 6, *he has gone off by the Aurelia Road*. *omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat*, 5, 19, 2, *he kept sending his chariot men out by all possible highways and byways*. *hīs pōntibus pābulātum mittēbat*, Caes. C. 1, 40, 1, *by these bridges he sent foraging*. *frūmentum Tiberī vēnit*, L. 2, 34, 5, *some grain came by the Tiber*. *lupus Esquilīna portā ingressus per portam Capēnam prope intāctus ēvāserat*, L. 33, 26, 9, *a wolf that came in town by the Esquiline gate had got out through the Capene gate, almost unscathed*. This construction gives rise to some adverbs: see 707. The ablative of the route is sometimes used with a substantive of action (1301): as, *nāvigātiō inferō*, *Att.* 9, 5, 1, *the cruise by the lower sea*. *eōdem flūmine invēctiō*, *Fin.* 5, 70, *entrance by the same river*.

### (B.) THE INSTRUMENTAL PROPER.

#### THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT OR MEANS.

1377. The ablative is used to denote the instrument or means: as,

pūgnābant armīs, H. S. 1, 3, 103, *they fought with arms*. clārē oculis videō, sum pernīx pedibus, manibus mōbilis, Pl. MG. 630, *I can see distinctly with my eyes, I'm nimble with my legs, and active with my arms*. iuvābō aut rē tē aut operā aut cōnsiliō bonō, Pl. Ps. 19, *I'll help thee either with my purse or hand or good advice*. lacte et carne vivunt, pelli-busque sunt vestitī, 5, 14, 2, *they live on milk and meat, and they are clad in skins*. contentus paucīs lēctōribus, H. S. 1, 10, 74, *content with readers few*. centēnāque arbore flūctum verberat, V. 10, 207, *and with an hundred beams at every stroke the wave he smites*. Rarely with substantives denoting action (1301): as, gestōrēs linguīs, auditōrēs auribus, Pl. Ps. 429, *reporters with their tongues and listeners with their ears*. teneris labellis mollēs morsiunculae, Pl. Ps. 67<sup>a</sup>, *caressing bites with velvet lips*.

1378. When the instrument is a person, the accusative with **per** is used: as, haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ad hostēs dēferuntur, 6, 7, 9, *this too is reported to the enemy through the medium of scouts*. Or a circumlocution, such as virtūte, beneficiō, benignitāte, or especially operā, with a genitive or possessive; as, deūm virtūte multa bona bene parta habēmus, Pl. Tri. 346, *thanks to the gods, we've many a pretty penny prettily put by*. meā operā Tarentum recēpistī, CM. 11, *it was through me you got Tarentum back*. Rarely the ablative of a person, the person being then regarded as a thing: as, iacent suīs testibus, Mil. 47, *they are cast by their own witnesses*.

1379. The instrumental ablative is used with the five deponents fruor, fungor, potior, ūtor, vēscor, and several of their compounds, and with ūsus est and opus est: as,

pāce numquam fruēmur, Ph. 7, 19, *we never shall enjoy ourselves with peace, i. e. we never shall enjoy peace*. fungar vice cōtis, H. AP. 304, *I'll play the whetstone's part*. castrīs nostrī potitī sunt, 1, 26, 4, *our people made themselves masters of the camp*. vestrā operā ūtar, L. 3, 46, 8, *I will avail myself of your services*. carne vēscor, TD. 5, 90, *I live on meat*. opust chlamyde, Pl. Ps. 734, *there is a job with a cloak, i. e. we need a cloak*.

1380. Instead of the instrumental ablative, some of the above verbs take the accusative occasionally in old Latin: thus, in Plautus and Terence, always abūtor, also fungor, except once in Terence; fruor in Cato and Terence, and perfruor in Lucretius, once each; potior twice in Plautus and three times in Terence, often also the genitive (1292). The gerundive of these verbs is commonly used personally in the passive, as if the verbs were regularly used transitively.

1381. ūtor often has a second predicative ablative: as, administrīs druidibus ūtuntur, 6, 16, 2, *they use the druids as assistants*. facilit mē ūtētur patre, T. Hau. 217, *an easy-going father he will find in me*.

1382. ūsus est and opus est sometimes take a neuter participle, especially in old Latin: as, visō opust cautōst opus, Pl. Cap. 225, *there's need of sight, there's need of care*. Sometimes the ablative with a predicate participle: as, celeriter mī eō homine conventōst opus, Pl. Cur. 302, *I needs must see that man at once*.

1383. With opus est, the thing wanted is often made the subject nominative or subject accusative, with opus in the predicate: as, dux nōbis et auctor opus est, Fam. 2, 6, 4, *we need a leader and adviser*. Usually so when the thing needed is a neuter adjective or neuter pronoun: as, multa sibī opus esse, V. 1, 126, *that he needed much*. A genitive dependent on opus is found once or twice in late Latin (1227).



1384. *ūsus est* is employed chiefly in comedy, but also once or twice in Cicero, Lucretius, Vergil, and Livy. Once with the accusative: *ūsust hominem astūtum*, Pl. *Ps.* 385, *there's need of a sharp man*.

### THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

1385. The instrumental ablative is used to denote that in respect of which an assertion or a term is to be taken: as,

*temporibus errāstī*, Ph. 2, 23, *you have slipped up in your chronology*. *excellēbat āctiōne*, Br. 215, *his forte lay in delivery*. *Helvētiī rēliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt*, 1, 1, 4, *the Helvetians outdo the rest of the Kelts in bravery*. *hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt*, 1, 1, 2, *these people all differ from each other in language, usages, and laws*. *sunt quīdam hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine*, Off. 1, 105, *some people are human beings not in reality but in name*. *ūna Suēba nātiōne, altera Nōrica*, 1, 53, 4, *one woman a Suebe by birth, the other Noric*. *vīcistis cochleam tarditūdine*, Pl. *Poen.* 532, *you've beaten snail in slowness*. *dēmēns iūdicīō volgī*, H. S. 1, 6, 97, *mad in the judgement of the world*. *sapiunt meā sententiā*, T. Ph. 335, *in my opinion they are wise*. *meā quidem sententiā*, CM. 56, *in my humble opinion*. *quis iūre peritior commemorārī potest?* Clu. 107, *who can be named that is better versed in the law?*

### THE ABLATIVE OF FULNESS.

1386. The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of abounding, filling, and furnishing: as,

*villa abundat porcō, haedō, āgnō*, CM. 56, *the country place is running over with swine, kid, and lamb*. *tōtum mōntem hominibus complērī iūs-sit*, 1, 24, 3, *he gave orders for the whole mountain to be covered over with men*. *Māgōnem poenā adfēcērunt*, N. 23, 8, 2, *they visited Mago with punishment*. *legiōnēs nimis pulcris armis praeditās*, Pl. *Am.* 218, *brigades in goodliest arms arrayed*. *cōsulārī imperiō praeditus*, Pis. 55, *vested with the authority of consul*. For the genitive with *compleō* and *impleō*, see 1293.

1387. The ablative is sometimes used with adjectives of fulness, instead of the regular genitive (1263). Thus, in later Latin, rarely with *plēnus*: as, *māxima quaeque domus servīs est plēna superbīs*, J. 5, 66, *a grand establishment is always full of stuck-up slaves*. *et ille quidem plēnus annīs abiit, plēnus honōribus*, Plin. *Ep.* 2, 1, 7, *well, as for him, he has passed away, full of years and full of honours*. So in Cicero and Caesar, once each. Also with *dīves* in poetry, and, from Livy on, in prose. With *refertus*, the ablative of things is common, while persons are usually in the genitive (1263). With *onustus*, the ablative is generally used, rarely the genitive.

### THE ABLATIVE OF MEASURE, EXCHANGE, AND PRICE.

1388. The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of measuring and of exchanging, and in expressions of value and price: as,



(a.) quod m̄agnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, N. 18, 1, 1, *because we gauge great men by their merit.* (b.) nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit, S. C. 58, 15, *nobody except a conqueror has ever exchanged war for peace.* (c.) haec signa sēstertiūm sex milibus quingentis esse vēdita, V. 4, 12, *that these statues were sold for sixty-five hundred sesterces.* aestimāvit dēnāriis III, V. 3, 214, *he valued it at three denars.* trīgintā millibus dīxistis eum habitāre, Cael. 17, *you have said he pays thirty thousand rent.* quod nōn opus est, āsse cārum est, Cato in Sen. Ep. 94, 28, *what you don't need, at a penny is dear.* hem, istūc verbum, mea voluptās, vilest vīgintī minīs, Pl. Most. 297, *bless me, that compliment, my charmer, were at twenty minas cheap.*

1389. With mūtō and commūtō, the ablative usually denotes the thing received. But sometimes in Plautus, and especially in Horace, Livy, and late prose, it denotes the thing parted with : as, cūr valle permūtem Sabīnā dīvitiās operōsiōres? H. 3, 1, 47, *why change my Sabine dale for wealth that brings more care?* Similarly with cum in the prose of Cicero's age : as, mortem cum vitā commūtāre, Sulp. in Fam. 4, 5, 3, *to exchange life for death.*

1390. The ablative of price or value is thus used chiefly with verbs or verbal expressions of bargaining, buying or selling, hiring or letting, costing, being cheap or dear. Also with aestimō, of a definite price, and sometimes m̄agnō, perm̄agnō (1273).

1391. The ablatives thus used, are (a.) those of general substantives of value and price, such as pretium, (b.) numerical designations of money, or (c.) neuter adjectives of quantity, m̄agnō, perm̄agnō, quam plūrimō, parvō, minimō, nihilō, nōnnihilō : as, m̄agnō decumās vēdidī, V. 3, 40, *I sold the tithes at a high figure.* For tantī and quantī, plūris and minōris, see 1274.

1392. The ablative is also used with dīgnus and indīgnus : as, dīgnī māiōrum locō, Agr. 2, 1, *well worthy of the high standing of their ancestors.* nūlla vōx est audīta populi Rōmānī māiestāte indīgna, 7, 17, 3, *not a word was heard out of keeping with the grandeur of Rome.* See also dīgnor in the dictionary. Similarly in Plautus with condīgnē, decōrus, decet, aequē, aequos. For the genitive with dīgnus, see 1269; for the accusative with dīgnus and a form of sum, 1144.

## THE ABLATIVE OF THE AMOUNT OF DIFFERENCE.

1393. The instrumental ablative is used to denote the amount of difference.

This ablative is used with any words whatever of comparative or of superlative meaning : as, ūnō diē longiōrem mēsem faciunt aut bīduō, V. 2. 129, *they make the month longer by a day, or even by two days.* ubī adbibit plūs paulō, T. Hau. 220, *when he has drunk a drop too much.* nummō dīvitior, Pl. Ps. 1323, *a penny richer.* bīduō post, 1, 47, 1, *two days after.* multīs ante diēbus, 7, 9, 4, *many days before.* paucīs ante diēbus, C. 3, 3, *a few days ago.* nimiō praestat, Pl. B. 396, *'t is ever so much better.* multō m̄ālim, Br. 184, *I would much rather.* multō m̄āxima pars, C. 4, 17, *the largest part by far.*

1394. In expressions of time, the accusative is sometimes used with **post**, less frequently with **ante**, as prepositions, instead of the ablative of difference : as, **post paucōs diēs**, L. 21, 51, 2, **post diēs paucōs**, L. 37, 13, 6, **paucōs post diēs**, L. 33, 39, 2, *after a few days*. **paucōs ante diēs**, L. 39, 28, 4, **diēs ante paucōs**, L. 31, 24, 5, *a few days before*. With this prepositional construction, ordinals are common : as, **post diem tertium**, 4, 9, 1, *after the third day*, according to the Roman way of reckoning, i. e. the next day but one.

1395. (1.) When the time before or after which anything occurs is denoted by a substantive, the substantive is put in the accusative with **ante** or **post** : as,

**paulō ante tertiam vigiliam**, 7, 24, 2, *a little before the third watch*.  
**bīduō ante victōriam**, *Fam.* 10, 14, 1, *the day but one before the victory*.  
**paucis diēbus post mortem Africāni**, L. 3, *a few days after the death of Africanus*.

1396. Sometimes in late writers, as Tacitus, Pliny the younger, and Suetonius, a genitive is loosely used : as, **sextum post clādis annum**, *Ta.* 1, 62, i. e. **sextō post clādem annō**, *six years after the humiliating defeat*. **post decimum mortis annum**, *Plin. Ep.* 6, 10, 3, *ten years after his death*. Similarly **intrā sextum adoptiōnis diem**, *Suet. Galb.* 17, *not longer than six days after the adoption-day*.

1397. (2.) When the time before or after which anything occurs is denoted by a sentence, the sentence may be introduced :

(a.) By **quam** : as, **post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dixerat**, *Mil.* 44, *it took place two days after he said it*. With **quam**, **post** is sometimes omitted. Or (b.) less frequently by **cum** : as, **quem trīduō, cum hās dābam litterās, exspectābam**, *Planc. in Fam.* 10, 23, 3, *I am looking for him three days after this writing* (1601). For a relative pronoun sentence, see 1354.

1398. Verbs of surpassing sometimes have an accusative of extent (1151) : as, **mīrāmur hunc hominem tantum excellere cēteris**? *IP.* 39, *are we surprised that this man so far outshines everybody else*? With comparatives, the accusative is rare : as, **aliquantum inīquior**, *T. Hau.* 201, *somewhat too hard*. Similarly **permultum ante**, *Fam.* 3, 11, 1, *long long before*.

1399. In numerical designations of distance, the words **intervāllum** and **spatium** are regularly put in the ablative : as, **rēx vi mīlium passuum intervāllō ā Saburrā cōnsēderat**, *Caes. C.* 2, 38, 3, *the king had pitched six miles away from Saburra*.

## TWO OR MORE ABLATIVES COMBINED.

1400. Two or more ablatives denoting different relations are often combined in the same sentence : as,

**Menippus, meō iūdictiō (1385) tōtā Asiā (1346) illis temporibus (1350) disertissimus**, *Br.* 315, *Menippus, in my opinion the most gifted speaker of that day in all Asia*. **hāc habitā orātiōne (1362) mīlitibus studiō (1316) pūgnae ārdentibus (1370) tubā (1377) sīgnum dedit**, *Caes. C.* 3, 90, 4, *seeing that his soldiers were hot for battle after this speech, he gave the signal by trumpet*.



## USE OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

**1401.** Two cases, the accusative and the ablative, are used with prepositions.

**1402.** Prepositions were originally adverbs which served to define more exactly the meaning of a verb.

Thus, *endo*, *in*, *on*, the older form of *in*, is an adverb, in an injunction occurring in a law of the Twelve Tables, 451 B.C., *manum endo iacitō*, *let him lay hand on*. Similarly, *trāns*, *over*, in *trānsque datō*, *and he must hand over*, i. e. *trāditōque*.

**1403.** In the course of time such adverbs became verbal prefixes; the verbs compounded with them may take the case, accusative or ablative, required by the meaning of the compound. Thus, *amīcōs adeō*, *I go to my friends* (1137); *urbe exeō*, *I go out of town* (1302).

**1404.** For distinctness or emphasis, the prefix of the verb may be repeated before the case: as, *ad amīcōs adeō*; *ex urbe exeō*. And when it is thus separately expressed before the case, it may be dropped from the verb: as, *ad amīcōs eō*; *ex urbe eō*.

**1405.** The preposition thus detached from the verb becomes an attendant on a substantive, and serves to show the relation of the substantive in a sentence more distinctly than the case alone could.

**1406.** A great many adverbs which are never used in composition with a verb likewise become prepositions: as, *apud*, *circiter*, *infra*, *iūxtā*, *pōne*, *propter*, &c., &c. The inflected forms of substantives, *prīdiē*, *postrīdiē* (1413), *tenus* (1420), and *finī* (1419), are also sometimes used as prepositions. And *vicem* (1145), *causā*, *grātiā*, *nōmine*, *ergō* (1257), resemble prepositions closely in meaning.

**1407.** A trace of the original adverbial use of prepositions is sometimes retained, chiefly in poetry, when the prefix is separated from its word by what is called *Tmesis*: as, *ire inque gredī*, i. e. *ingredīque*, *Lucr. 4, 887, to walk and to step off*. *per mihī mirum vīsum est*, *DO. 1, 214, passing strange it seemed to me*.

**1408.** Even such words as are used almost exclusively as prepositions sometimes retain their original adverbial meaning also: as, *adque adque*, *E. in Gell. 10, 29, 2, and up and up, and on and on, or and nearer still and still more near*. *occīsīs ad hominum milibus quattuor*, *2, 33, 5, about four thousand men being killed*. *susque dēque*, *Att. 14, 6, 1, up and down, topsy turvy, no matter how*.

**1409.** On the other hand, some verbal prefixes are never used as separate prepositions with a substantive. These are called *Inseparable Prepositions*; they are: *amb-*, *round*, *an-*, *up*, *dis-*, *in two*, *por-*, *towards*, *rēd-*, *back*. Usually also *sēd-*, *apart* (1417).

## PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

**1410.** The accusative is accompanied by the following prepositions:



## The Noun: Preposition. [1411-1417.

ad, *to*, adversus or adversum, *towards, against*, ante, in composition also antid-, *before*, apud, *near, at*, circā, circum, circiter, *round, about*, cis, citrā, *this side of*, contrā, *opposite to*, ergā, *towards*, extrā, *outside*, infrā, *below*, inter, *between*, intrā, *within*, iūxtā, *near*, ob, *against*, penes, *in the possession of*, per, *through*, pōne, post, in Plautus postid, poste, pos, *behind*, praeter, *past*, prope (propius, proximē), propter, *near*, secundum, *after*, subter, *under*, suprā, *above*, trāns, *across*, ūls, ūltrā, *beyond*. For the various shades of meaning and applications of these prepositions, see the dictionary.

1411. Prepositions which accompany the accusative may be easily remembered in this order:

ante, apud, ad, adversum,  
circum, cis, ob, trāns, secundum,  
penes, pōne, prope, per,  
post, and all in -ā and -ter.

1412. Of the above named words some are not used as prepositions till a relatively late period.

Thus, infrā is first used as a preposition by Terence; circā, citrā, contrā, and ūltrā, are first used as prepositions about Cicero's time. In Cicero and Sallust, iūxtā is still used only as an adverb, in Caesar and Nepos as a preposition.

1413. The substantive forms prīdiē, *the day before*, and postrīdiē, *the day after*, are sometimes used with an accusative like prepositions, mostly in Cicero, to denote dates: as, prīdiē nōnās Māiās, Att. 2, 11, 2, *the day before the nones of May*, i. e. 6 May. postrīdiē lūdōs Apollinārīs, Att. 16, 4, 1, *the day after the games of Apollo*, i. e. 6 July. For the genitive with these words, see 1232.

1414. The adverb vorsus or versus, *wards*, occurs as a preposition, standing after its accusative, once in Sallust, Aegyptum vorsus, J. 19, 3, *Egyptwards*, and once or twice in Pliny the elder. Exceptionally and late, ūsque: as, ūsque initium pōntis, L. 44, 5, 6, *even to the beginning of the bridge*.

1415. clam, *secretly*, is ordinarily an adverb. But in old Latin it is used very often as a preposition, *unknown to*, with an accusative of a person. Terence has once the diminutive form clanculum, Ad. 52. Once in Caesar, and then with an ablative, clam vōbīs, C. 2, 32, 8, *without your knowledge*.

1416. subter, *under*, is used in poetry, once by Catullus and once by Vergil, with the locative ablative: as, Rhoetēō subter litore, Cat. 65, 7, *beneath Rhoeteum's strand*.

### PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE.

1417. The ablative is accompanied by the following prepositions:

abs, ab, or ā, *from*, cōram, *face to face*, dē, *down from, from, of*, ex or ē, *out of*, prae, *at the fore, in front of*, prō, *before*, quom or cum, *with*, sine, *without*. In official or legal language, also sēd or sē, *without*. For the different classes of ablatives with these prepositions, see 1297-1300; for the various shades of meanings and applications, see the dictionary.

1418. Prepositions which accompany the ablative may be easily remembered in this order:

abs (ab, ā), cum, cōram, dē,  
prae, prō, sine, ex (or ē).

1419. The ablative *fīnī*, *as far as*, is used in old Latin as a preposition with the ablative: as, *osse fīnī*, Pl. *Men.* 859, *down to the bone*. *operitō terrā rādīcibus fīnī*, Cato, *RR.* 28, 2, *cover with loam the length of the roots*. Also, as a real substantive, with a genitive (1255): as, *ānsārum infimārum fīnī*, Cato, *RR.* 113, 2, *up to the bottom of the handles*. Rarely *fīne*, and before the genitive: as, *fīne genūs*, O. 10, 537, *as far as the knee*.

1420. *tenus*, *the length*, was originally a substantive accusative (1151). From Cicero on, it is used as a preposition with the ablative, and standing after its case: as, *Taurō tenus*, D. 36, *not further than Taurus*. *pectoribus tenus*, L. 21, 54, 9, *quite up to the breast*. *hāctenus*, *thus far, only thus far*. Also, as a real substantive, with a genitive, usually a plural, mostly in verse (1232): as, *labrōrum tenus*, Lucr. 1, 940, *the length of the lips, up to the lips*. *Cūmārum tenus*, Cael. in *Fam.* 8, 1, 2, *as far as Cumae*.

1421. The adverbs *palam*, *in presence of*, *procul*, *apart from*, either *near* or *far*, *simul*, *with*, are rarely used in poetry and late prose as prepositions with the ablative. For the peculiar use of *absque* or *apsque* in a coordinate protasis, see the dictionary and 1701.

### PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE ABLATIVE.

1422. Two cases, the accusative and the ablative, are accompanied by the prepositions *in*, older *endo*, *indu*, *into*, *in*, *sub*, *under*, and *super*, *over*, *on*.

1423. (1.) *in* and *sub* accompany the accusative of the end of motion, the locative ablative of rest: as,

(a.) *in cūriam vēnimus*, V. 4, 138, *we went to the senate-house*. *in vincla coniectus est*, V. 5, 17, *he was put in irons*. *hīc pāgus ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat*, 1, 12, 5, *this canton had sent his army under the yoke*. (b.) *erimus in castrīs*, Ph. 12, 28, *we shall be in camp*. *viridī membra sub arbutō strātus*, H. 1, 1, 21, *stretched out — his limbs — all under an arbute green*.

1424. Verbs of rest sometimes have *in* with the accusative, because of an implied idea of motion. And, conversely, verbs of motion sometimes have *in* with the ablative, because of an implied idea of rest: as,

(a.) *mihi in mentem fuit*, Pl. *Am.* 180, *it popped into my head*, i. e. came in and is in (compare *venit hōc mī in mentem*, Pl. *Aul.* 226. *in ēius potestātem venīre nōlēbant*, V. 1, 150. *in eōrum potestātem portum futūrum intellegēbant*, V. 5, 98, *they knew full well the haven would get under the control of these people*). (b.) *Caesar exercitum in hibernīs conlocāvit*, 3, 29, 3, *Caesar put the army away in winter quarters*, i. e. put them into and left them in. *eam in lectō conlocārun*t, T. *Eu.* 593, *they laid the lady on her couch*. So commonly with *locō*, *conlocō*, *statuō*, *cōstituō*, *pōnō*, and its compounds. For *expōnō* and *impōnō*, see the dictionary.



## The Noun : Preposition. [1425-1430.

**1425.** (2.) *super* accompanies the ablative when it has colloquially the sense of *dē*, *about*, *in reference to*: as, *hāc super rē scribam ad tē Rēgiō*, *Att.* 16, 6, 1, *I'll write you about this from Regium*. In other senses, the accusative, but sometimes in poetry the ablative, chiefly in the sense of *on*: as, *ligna super focō largē repōnēns*, *H.* 1, 9, 5, *piling on hearth the faggots high*. *nocte super mediā*, *V.* 9, 61, *at dead of night*. *paulum silvae super his*, *H. S.* 2, 6, 3, *a bit of wood to crown the whole*.

### COMBINATION OF SUBSTANTIVES BY A PREPOSITION.

**1426.** (1.) Two substantives are sometimes connected by a preposition, to indicate certain attributive relations (1043); such are particularly:

- (a.) Place: as, *illam pūgnam nāvālem ad Tenedum*, *Mur.* 33, *the sea-fight off Tenedus*. *excessum ē vitā*, *Fin.* 3, 60, *the departure from life*.  
(b.) Source, origin, material: as, *ex Aethiopiā ancillulam*, *T. Eu.* 165, *a lady's maid from Aethiopia*. *pōcula ex aurō*, *V.* 4, 62, *bowls of gold* (1314).  
(c.) Direction of action, connection, separation: as, *amor in patriam*, *Fl.* 103, *love of country*. *vestra ergā mē voluntās*, *C.* 4, 1, *your good will towards me*. *proelium cum Tūscis ad Iāniculum*, *L.* 2, 52, 7, *the battle with the Tuscans at Janiculum*. *vir sine metū*, *TD.* 5, 48, *a man devoid of fear* (1043).

**1427.** (2.) Very commonly, however, other constructions are used, even to indicate the relations above: as,

*bellum Venetōrum*, 3, 16, 1, *war with the Venetans* (1231). *bellō Cassiānō*, 1, 13, 2, *in the war with Cassius* (1233). *in aureis pōculis*, *V.* 4, 54, *in golden bowls* (1233). *scūtis ex cortice factis*, 2, 33, 2, *with long shields made out of bark* (1314). *post victōriam eius bellī, quod cum Persis fuit*, *Off.* 3, 49, *after the victory in the war with the Persians*.

**1428.** Prepositional expressions are sometimes used predicatively: as, *sunt omnēs sine maculā*, *Pl.* 6, 14, *they are all without spot or blemish*. And sometimes they are equivalent to adjectives: as, *contrā nātūram*, *TD.* 4, 11, *unnatural*, *suprā hominem*, *DN.* 2, 34, *superhuman*. Or to substantives: as, *sine pondere*, *O.* 1, 20, *things without weight*. Or to adverbs: as, *sine labōre*, *Pl. R.* 461, *easily*.

### REPETITION OR OMISSION OF A PREPOSITION WITH SEVERAL SUBSTANTIVES.

**1429.** (1.) A preposition is often repeated with emphasis before two or more substantives: as,

*in labōre atque in dolōre*, *Pl. Ps.* 685, *in toil and in trouble*. Particularly so with *et . . . et*, *aut . . . aut*, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, *nōn minus . . . quam*, &c., &c.: as, *et ex urbe et ex agris*, *C.* 2, 21, *from Rome and from the country too*.

**1430.** (2.) A preposition is often used with the first only of two or more substantives: as, *in labōre ac dolōre*, *TD.* 5, 41, *in toil and trouble*. *incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus*, *N.* 5, 3, 1, *he fell under the selfsame ban as his father*. Particularly when the second is in apposition: as, *cum duōbus ducibus, Pyrrhō et Hannibale*, *L.* 28, *with two commanders, Pyrrhus and Hannibal*.



## TWO PREPOSITIONS WITH ONE SUBSTANTIVE.

1431. (1.) When two prepositions belong to one and the same substantive, the substantive is expressed with the first. With the second, the substantive is repeated, or its place is taken by a pronoun : as,

*contrā lēgem prōque lēge*, L. 34, 8, 1, *against the law and for the law*. *partim contrā Avitum, partim prō hōc*, *Chu.* 88, *partly against Avitus, partly for him*. If, however, the two prepositions accompany the same case, the substantive need not be repeated : as, *intrā extrāque mūnitiōnēs*, *Caes. C.* 3, 72, 2, *inside and outside the works*.

1432. (2.) The second preposition is often used adverbially, without any substantive : as, *et in corpore et extrā*, *Fin.* 2, 68, *both in the body and outside*.

## POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1433. In general a preposition precedes its case : see 178.

1434. Disyllabic prepositions sometimes follow their substantives. Thus, in Cicero, *contrā*, *ultrā*, and *sine*, sometimes stand after a relative ; so likewise *inter* in Cicero, Caesar, and Sallust ; occasionally also *penes* and *propter*. For *versus*, see 1414 ; for *finī*, 1419 ; for *tenus*, 1420.

1435. Of monosyllables, *ad* and *dē* often follow a relative. Also *cum* often in Cicero and Sallust, and regularly in Caesar. With a personal or a reflexive pronoun, *cum* regularly follows, as *mēcum*, *nōbiscum*, *sēcum*.

1436. In poetry and late prose, prepositions are freely put after their cases.

1437. In oaths and adjurations, *per* is often separated from its proper accusative by the accusative of the object : as, *per tē deōs orō*, *T. Andr.* 538, *I beg thee by the gods, in the gods' name*.

---

## USE OF ADVERBS.

1438. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.

(a.) With verbs, all sorts of adverbs are used : as, of Place : *quis istīc habet?* *Pl. B.* 114, *who lives in there?* Time : *tum dentēs mihi cadēbant prīmulum*, *Pl. Men.* 1116, *my teeth were just beginning then to go*. Number : *bis cōsul fuerat P. Africānus*, *Mur.* 58, *Africanus had twice been consul*. Degree, Amount : *Ubiī māgnopere orābant*, 4, 16, 5, *the Ubiāns earnestly entreated*. *Dumnorīx plūrimum poterat*, 1, 9, 3, *Dumnuorix was all-powerful*. Manner : *bene quiēvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit*, *Plin. Ep.* 3, 16, 4, *he has slept beautifully, he has relished his food*. (b.) With adjectives and adverbs, oftenest adverbs of degree or amount only, or their equivalents, such as *bene*, *ēgregiē*, &c. : as, *valdē diligēns*, *Ac.* 2, 98, *very particular*. *ēgregiē fortis*, *DO.* 2, 268, *exceptionally brave*. Adverbs of manner, however, are also used, especially in poetry : as, *turpiter hīrtum*, *H. E.* 1, 3, 22, *disreputably rough*, i. e. disreputable and rough.

1439. An adverb is sometimes used with the meaning of an adjective: as,

*rēliquīs deinceps diēbus*, 3, 29, 1, *the remaining successive days*. *dē suīs privātim rēbus*, 5, 3, 5, *in relation to their personal interests*. *undique silvae*, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 6, 2, *the surrounding woods*. Particularly when the substantive expresses character, like an adjective: as, *vērē Metellus*, *Sest.* 130, *a trueblooded Metellus*. *rūsticānus vir*, *sed plānē vir*, *TD.* 2, 53, *a country man, but every inch a man*.

1440. Perfect participles used as substantives are commonly qualified by an adverb, and not by an adjective. Particularly so *dictum*, *factum*, *inventum*, *respōsum*, with *bene* and *male*, and their synonyms: as, *rēctē ac turpiter factum*, 7, 80, 5, *heroism and cowardice*. *bene facta male locāta male facta arbitror*, *E. in Off.* 2, 62, *good deeds ill put, bad deeds I count*. In superlative qualifications, however, the adjective is preferred.

1441. Other substantives also may be qualified by an adverb, when a verb construction or a participle is implied: as, *C. Flāminius cōsul iterum*, *Div.* 1, 77, *Flaminius in his second consulship*. *ō totiēns servos*, *H. S.* 2, 7, 70, *time and again a slave*. *ictū cominus*, *Caecin.* 43, *by a hand-to-hand blow*. *pūblicē testem*, *V.* 2, 156, *a government witness*. *populum lātē rēgem*, *V.* 1, 21, *a nation regnant wide*. *lātē tyrannus*, *H.* 3, 17, 9, *lord paramount far and near*.

1442. An adverb sometimes takes the place of a substantive: as, *cum amīcī partim dēseruerint mē, partim etiam prōdiderint*, *QFr.* 1, 3, 5, *since my friends have some of them abandoned me, and others again have actually betrayed me*, i. e. *aliī . . . aliī*. *postquam satis tūta circā vidēbantur*, *L.* 1, 58, 2, *finding every thing round about looked pretty safe*, i. e. *quae circā erant*. *palam laudārēs, sēcrēta male audiēbant*, *Ta. H.* 1, 10, *his outward walk you would have admired; his private life was in bad odour*, i. e. *quae palam fiēbant*.

## NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

1443. (1.) The negative oftenest used in declaration or interrogation is *nōn*, *not*: as,

*nōn metuō mihi*, *Pl. B.* 225, *I fear not for myself*. *nōn semper imbrēs nūbibus hispīdōs mānant in agrōs*, *H.* 2, 9, 1, *not always from the clouds do showers on stubbly fields come dripping dropping down*. *nōn dicēs hodiē?* *H. S.* 2, 7, 21, *will you not say without delay?*

1444. *nōn* is a modification of *noenum* or *noenu*, compounded of *ne*, *no*, and the accusative *oinom* or *oenum*, the older form of *ūnum*, *one thing*. *noenum* occurs in Plautus twice, in Ennius, Lucilius, Afranius, and Varro, once each, and *noenu* occurs twice in Lucretius (140).

1445. Negation is often expressed by other compounds of *ne*. In such cases the Latin idiom frequently differs from the English, and a transfer of the negative is required in translation.

Such compounds are: (a.) Verbs, such as *negō*, *nequeō*, *nesciō*, *nōlō*: as, *negat vērū esse*, *Mur.* 74, *he maintains it is not true*. (b.) Nouns, such as *nēmō*, *neuter*, *nūllus*, *nihil*: as, *nēminī meus adventus labōrī fuit*, *V.* 1, 16, *my visit did not trouble anybody*. (c.) Adverbs, such as *numquam*, *nusquam*. (d.) Similarly, the conjunction *neque* is used for *and not*, *but not*, unless a single word is to be emphasized or contrasted: as, *nec frūstrā*, 8, 5, 3, *and not in vain*.



## 1446-1454.] Sentences: The Simple Sentence.

1446. A form **nec** is used rarely in old Latin in the sense of **nōn**: as, **tū dīs nec rēctē dīcis**, Pl. *B.* 119, *thou dost abuse the gods*, i. e. **nōn rēctē** or **male dīcis**. After Plautus's time, **nec** for **nōn** occurs in a few set combinations, such as **nec opīnāns**, *not expecting*, and, from Livy on, **necdum**, *not yet*, i. e. **nōndum**.

1447. The form **nē** usually introduces an imperative or a subjunctive, as will be explained further on. But **nē** is also used in the combination **nē . . . quidem**, *not even, not . . . either*, with the emphatic word between **nē** and **quidem**: as, **nē tum quidem**, 1, 50, 2, *not even then*. **nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō continet**, 5, 44, 6, *Vorenius did not keep inside the palisade either*.

1448. The adjective **nūllus** is sometimes used, chiefly in colloquial language, for **nōn** or **nē** (1051): as, **Philotīmus nūllus vēnit**, Att. 11, 24, 4, *no Philotimus has shown himself*. **nūllus crēduās**, Pl. *Tri.* 606, *you needn't believe it at all*.

1449. (2.) The negative **haut** or **haud**, *not*, is used principally with adjectives and adverbs, less frequently with verbs: as,

(a.) **haud mediocris vir**, *RP.* 2, 55, *no ordinary man*. **rem haud sānē difficilem**, *CM.* 4, *a thing not particularly hard*. **haud procul**, *CM.* 15, *not far*. In all periods of the language often combined with **quisquam**, **ūllus**, **umquam**, **usquam**. (b.) In old Latin **haud** is freely used with all sorts of verbs, especially with **possum**. In Cicero, it occurs here and there with a few verbs, such as **adsentior**, **errō**, **ignōrō**, **nītor**, **amō**, but is principally confined to **sciō**, in the combination **haud sciō an**, *I don't know but* (3026). Caesar uses **haud** once only, and then in this combination.

1450. A shorter form, **hau**, occurs often in old Latin, and a few times in the classical period: as, **heic est sepulcrum hau pulcrum pulcrai fēminae**, CIL. I, 1007, 2, on the burial site of a woman, *here is the site not sightly of a sightly dame*. In Plautus it is juxtaposed with **sciō**, making **hausciō**, i. e. **nesciō**.

1451. (3.) Negation may also be intimated by such words as **vix**, *hardly*, **parum**, *not . . . enough, not quite*, **minus**, *less, not*, **minimē**, *least of all*, **male**, &c.

1452. Two negatives in the same sentence are usually equivalent to an affirmative.

Thus, with **nōn** first, an indefinite affirmative: as, **nōn nēmō**, *somebody, a certain gentleman, one or another*. **nōn nūllus**, *some*. **nōn nihil**, *something, somewhat*. **nōn numquam**, *sometimes*. With **nōn** second, a universal affirmative: as, **nēmō nōn**, *everybody, every human being*. **nūllus nōn**, *every*. **nihil nōn**, *everything*. **numquam nōn**, *always*. **nōn possum nōn cōfiteri**, *Fam.* 9, 14, 1, *I must confess*. **nēmō ignōrat**, *V.* 2, 111, *everybody knows*.

1453. Sometimes, however, in old Latin, a second negation is used merely to emphasize the negative idea: as, **lapideō sunt corde multī, quōs nōn miseret nēmīnis**, E. in Fest. p. 162, *there's many a man with heart of stone, that feels for nobody*. For doubled negatives in compound sentences, see 1660.

---

## USE OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

### THE POSITIVE.

1454. The positive sometimes expresses an idea of disproportion: as, **prō multitūdine hominum angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrābantur**, 1, 2, 5, *in view of their large numbers they thought they had a cramped place to live in*. Generally, however, disproportion is expressed as in 1460 or 1461.



THE COMPARATIVE.

1455. When two things only are compared, the comparative is used: as,

uter igitur melior? *Div. 2, 133, which of the two then is the better?* uter est insānior hōrum? *H. S. 2, 3, 102, which of these two is crazier?* uter erātis, tūn an ille, māior? *Pl. Men. 1119, you were — which of the two the bigger, thou or he?*

1456. The superlative is sometimes loosely used when only two things are meant: as, Numitōrī, quī stirpis māximus erat, rēgnum lēgat, *L. 1, 3, 10, to Numitor, who was the eldest of the family, he bequeaths the crown, of two brothers, Numitor and Amulius. id meā minumē rēfert, quī sum nātū māxumus, T. Ad. 881, that is of small concern to me, who am the eldest son, says Demea, who has only one brother.*

1457. From Cicero on, an adjective or adverb is sometimes compared with another adjective or adverb. In such comparisons quam is always used.

In this case: (a.) Both members may have the positive form, the first with magis: as, Celer disertus magis est quam sapiēns, *Att. 10, 1, 4, Celer is more eloquent than wise. magis audācter quam parātē, Br. 241, with more assurance than preparation.* Or (b.) Both members may have the comparative suffix: as, lubentius quam vērīus, *Mil. 78, with greater satisfaction than truth. pestilentia mināciōr quam perniciōsior, L. 4, 52, 3, a plague more alarming than destructive.*

1458. Tacitus sometimes puts the second member in the positive, even when the first has the comparative suffix: as, ācrius quam cōnsiderātē, *H. 1, 83, with more spirit than deliberation.* And sometimes both members: as, clārīs māiōribus quam vetustīs, *4, 61, of a house famous rather than ancient.*

1459. The comparative may be modified by ablatives of difference, such as multō, *far, aliquantō, considerably, paullō or paulō, a little, nimīō, too much, ever so much (1393).* Also by etiam, *even, still,* and in late Latin by longē, *far, adhūc, still.*

1460. The comparative of an adjective or adverb often denotes that which is more than usual or more than is right: as,

solēre aiunt rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre, *V. 3, 76, they say the Persian kings generally have several wives. senectūs est nātūrā loquāciōr, CM. 55, age is naturally rather garrulous. stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram, DN. 1, 93, the old gentleman always got provoked if I said anything a bit rough.*

1461. The comparative of disproportion is often defined by some added expression: as,

prīvātīs māiōra focīs, *J. 4, 66, something too great for private hearths (1321). flāgrantior aequō nōn dēbet dolor esse virī, J. 13, 11, the indignation of a man must not be over hot (1330).* In Livy and Tacitus by quam prō with the ablative: see the dictionary. Sometimes a new sentence is added: as, sum avidior, quam satis est, glōriae, *Fam. 9, 14, 2, I am over greedy of glory.* For quam ut or quam quī, see 1896.

1462. The comparative with a sentence of negative import is often preferred to the superlative with a positive sentence: as,

elephantō bēluārum nūlla prūdentior, *DN.* 1, 97, *of the larger beasts not one is more sagacious than the elephant, or the elephant is the most sagacious of beasts.* sequāmur Polybium, quō nēmō fuit dīligentior, *RP.* 2, 27, *let us follow Polybius, the most scrupulous of men.* For nēmō or quis, the more emphatic nihil or quid is often used: as, Phaedrō nihil ēlegantius, nihil hūmānius, *DN.* 1, 93, *Phaedrus was the most refined and sympathetic of men.*

1463. In colloquial language, a comparative suffix is sometimes emphasized by the addition of magis: as, mollior magis, *Pl. Aul.* 422, *more tenderer.* And sometimes by a mixture of construction, the comparative is modified by aequē, like the positive: as, homo mē miserior nūllus est aequē, *Pl. Mer.* 335, *there's not a man so woebegone as I, for miserior alone, or aequē miser.*

1464. The comparative with the ablative is particularly common, when a thing is illustrated by some striking typical object, usually an object of nature. In such illustrations, the positive with *as* is commonly used in English: as, lūce clārius, *V.* 2, 186, *plain as day.* ō fōns Bandusiae, splendidior vitrō, *H.* 3, 13, 1, *ye waters of Bandusia, as glittering as glass.* melle dulcior ōrātiō, *E. in CM.* 31, *words sweet as honey.* ventis ōcior, *V.* 5, 319, *quick as the winds.* vacca candidior nivibus, *O. Am.* 3, 5, 10, *a cow as white as driven snow.* caelum pice nigrius, *O. H.* 17, 7, *a sky as black as pitch.* dūrior ferrō et saxō, *O.* 14, 712, *as hard as steel and stone.*

## THE SUPERLATIVE.

1465. When more than two things are compared, the superlative is used to represent a quality as belonging in the highest degree to an individual or to a number of a class: as,

proximī sunt Germānis, 1, 1, 3, *they live the nearest to the Germans.* hōrum omnium fortissimī, 1, 1, 3, *the bravest of these all.*

1466. The superlative may be strengthened by the addition of such words as ūnus, *preeminently*, usually with a genitive, māximē, quam, with or without a form of possum, *as possible*, &c., &c. (1892). From Cicero on, by longē, *far*, and vel, *perhaps, even*: as,

cōfirmāverim rem ūnam esse omnium difficillimam, *Br.* 25, *I am not afraid to avouch it is the one hardest thing in the world.* longē nōbilissimus, 1, 2, 1, *the man of highest birth by far.* quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam contendit, 1, 7, 1, *he pushes into Gaul by the quickest marches he can.* quam mātūrrimē, 1, 33, 4, *as early as possible.*

1467. The superlative is also used to denote a very high degree of the quality.

This superlative, called the *Absolute Superlative*, or the *Superlative of Eminence*, may be translated by the positive with some such word as *most*, *very*: as, homo turpissimus, *V.* 4, 16, *an utterly unprincipled man.* Often best by the positive alone: as, vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, 4, 12, 4, *the heroic Piso of Aquitain* (1044).

1468. In exaggerated style, the superlative of eminence may be capped by a comparative: as, stultior stultissumō, *Pl. Am.* 907, *a greater than the greatest fool.* ego miserior sum quam tū, quae es miserrima, *Fam.* 14, 3, 1, *I am myself more unhappy than you, who are a most unhappy woman.*



## (B.) USE OF THE VERB.

### VOICE.

#### THE ACTIVE VOICE.

**1469.** In the active voice, the subject is represented as performing the action of the verb.

**1470.** By action is meant the operation of any verb, whether active or passive, and whether used intransitively or transitively.

**1471.** The active of one verb sometimes serves as the passive of another: thus, *pereō*, *go to destruction, die*, serves as the passive of *perdō*, *destroy*, and *vēneō*, *go to sale, am sold*, as the passive of *vēndō*, *put for sale, sell*. Similarly *fiō*, *become, get to be, am made*, is used in the present system as the passive of *faciō*, *make* (788).

#### THE PASSIVE VOICE.

**1472.** In the passive voice, the subject is represented as acted upon.

**1473.** The object accusative of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive voice (1125); and the predicate accusative of the active voice becomes a predicate nominative with the passive voice (1167).

Thus (a.) in the active construction: *illum laudābunt bonī, hunc etiam ipsī culpābunt malī*, Pl. B. 397, *the one the good will praise, the other e'en the bad themselves will blame*. In the passive: *laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illis*, H. S. I, 2, 11, *he's praised by some, by others blamed*. Active: *civēs Rōmānōs interficiunt*, 7, 3, 1, *they slay some citizens of Rome*. Passive: *Indutiomarus interficitur*, 5, 58, 6, *Indutiomarus is slain*. (b.) Active: *militēs certiōrēs facit*, 3, 5, 3, *he informs the soldiers*. Passive: *certior factus est*, 2, 34, *he was informed*.

**1474.** Verbs which have two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing in the active voice, generally have the person as subject in the passive, less frequently the thing: see 1171.

**1475.** An emphasizing or defining accusative, or an accusative of extent or duration, is occasionally made the subject of a passive: as,

*haec illic est pūgnāta pūgna*, Pl. Am. 253, *this fight was fought off there* (1140). *tōta mihī dormitur hiems*, Mart. 13, 59, 1, *all winter long by me is slept*, i. e. *tōtam dormiō hiemem* (1151).



1476. The person by whom the action is done is put in the ablative with **ab** or **ā** (1318); the thing by which it is done is put in the instrumental ablative (1377); as,

(a.) *nōn numquam latrō ā viātōre occīditur*, *Mil.* 55, *once in a while the robber gets killed by the wayfarer.* *respondit, ā cīve sē spoliārī māllem quam ab hoste vēnīre*, *Quintil.* 12, 1, 43, *he said in reply that he would rather be plundered by a Roman than sold by an enemy* (1471). (b.) *ūnūs virī prūdentiā Graecia liberāta est*, *N.* 2, 5, 3, *Greece was saved from slavery by the sagacity of a single man, i. e. Themistocles.* Very often, however, the person or thing is not expressed, particularly with impersonals.

1477. When the person is represented as a mere instrument, the ablative is used without **ab** (1378); and when collectives, animals, or things without life are personified, the ablative takes **ab** (1318): as,

(a.) *neque vērō minus Platō dēlectātus est Diōne*, *N.* 10, 2, 3, *and Plato on his part was just as much bewitched with Dion.* (b.) *ēius ōrātiō ā multitudīne et ā forō dēvorābātur*, *Br.* 283, *his oratory was swallowed whole by the untutored many and by the bar.*

1478. Sometimes the person by whom the action is done is indicated by the dative of the possessor: see 1216. And regularly with the gerund and gerundive construction (2243).

1479. Only verbs of transitive use have ordinarily a complete passive. Verbs of intransitive use have only the impersonal forms of the passive (1034): as,

*diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum est*, 1, 26, 1, *there was long and sharp fighting.* *tōtīs trepidātur castrīs*, 6, 37, 6, *all through the camp there was tumult and affright.* *mihī quidem persuādērī numquam potuit, animōs ēmori*, *CM.* 80, *for my part, I never could be convinced that the soul becomes extinct at death* (1181). Similarly verbs which have a transitive use may also be used impersonally: as, *diēs noctisque ēstur, bibitur*, *Pl. Most.* 235, *there is eating and drinking all day and all night* (1133).

1480. The complementary dative of a verb in the active voice is in poetry very rarely made the subject of a passive verb: as, *invideor*, *H. AP.* 56, *I am envied.* *imperor*, *H. E.* 1, 5, 21, *I charge myself.*

1481. The passive had originally a reflexive meaning, which is still to be seen in the passive of many verbs: as,

*exercēbātur plūrimum currendō et lūctandō*, *N.* 15, 2, 4, *he took a great deal of exercise in running and wrestling.* *dēnsōs fertur in hostīs*, *V.* 2, 511, *he tries to charge upon the serried foes.* *quod semper movētur, aeternum est*, *TD.* 1, 53, *anything that is always moving, is eternal.*

1482. The present participle of reflexives is sometimes used in a reflexive sense: as, *exercēns*, *exercising oneself, exercising*, *ferēns*, *tearing along*, *vehēns*, *riding*, and *invehēns*, *mounted on*, *pāscēns*, *browsing*, *versāns*, *playing*, *being*, *volvēns*, *rolling*. Also the gerund: as, *iūs vehendi*, *the privilege of riding*.

1483. Passive forms of *coepī* and *dēsinō* are commonly used in the perfect system, when a dependent infinitive is passive: as,

**litteris orātiō est coepta mandārī**, *Br.* 26, *oratory began to be put in black and white*. **veterēs orātiōnēs legī sunt dēsitae**, *Br.* 123, *the old speeches ceased to be read*. But the active forms are sometimes used by Cornificius, Sallust, and Livy, and regularly by Tacitus. The active forms are used with **fierī** also, which is not passive (788); but even with **fierī**, Livy uses the passive forms.

**1484.** Similar attractions with a passive infinitive occur in **potestur**, &c., **quī-tur** and **quitus sum**, **nequītur**, &c., rarely, and mostly in old Latin: as, **fōrma in tenebris nōscī nōn quitast**, *T. Hec.* 572, *her shape could hardly be distinguished in the dark*.

**1485.** Some perfect participles have an active meaning: as, **adultus**, *grown up*. See 907, and also in the dictionary **cautus**, **cōsultus**, **concrētus**, **dēflāgrātus**, **incōnsiderātus**, **occāsus**, **nūpta**.

### DEPONENTS.

**1486.** Many verbs have only passive inflections, but with the meaning of active inflections. Such verbs are called *Deponents*.

**1487.** In many deponents, a reflexive, passive, or reciprocal action is still clearly to be seen: as,

**nāscor**, *am born*; **moror**, *delay myself, get delayed*; **ūtor**, *avail myself*; **amplectimur**, *hug each other*; **fābulāmur**, *talk together*; **partimur**, *share with one another*.

**1488.** Some verbs have both active and deponent inflections: as, **adsentiō**, *agree*, more commonly **adsentior**. **mereō**, *earn*, and **mereor**, *deserve*. See also in the dictionary **altercor**, **auguror**, **comitor**, **cōnflīctor**, **fabricor**, **faeneror**, **mūneror**, **ōscitor**, **palpor**, **populor**, **revertor**. The following have active inflections in the present system and deponent inflections in the perfect system: **audeō**, **cōnfidō** and **diffidō**, **gaudeō**, **soleō**: see also 801.

**1489.** In old Latin especially, many verbs which afterwards became fixed as deponents occur with active inflections also: as, **adūlō**, **arbitrō**, **aucupō**, **auspicō**, **lūctō**, **lūdificō**, **morō**, **partiō**, **venerō**, &c., &c.

**1490.** Verbs which are usually deponent are rarely found with a passive meaning: as, **Sūllānās rēs dēfendere crīminor**, *LAgr.* 3, 13, *I am charged with defending Sulla's policy*.

**1491.** When it is desirable to express the passive of a deponent, a synonyme is sometimes used: thus, the passive of **mīror**, *admire*, may sometimes be represented by **laudor**, *am praised*. Or some circumlocution: as, **habet venerātiōnem quidquid excellit**, *DN.* 1, 45, *anything best in its kind is looked on with respect*, as passive of **veneror**. **familia in suspiciōnem est vocāta**, *V.* 5, 10, *the household was suspected*, as passive of **suspīcor**.

**1492.** The perfect participle of deponents is sometimes used with a passive meaning. Some of the commonest of these participles are: **adeptus**, **commentus**, **complexus**, **cōfessus**, **ēmentitus**, **expertus**, **meditātus**, **opīnātus**, **pāctus**, **partitus**, **testātus**, &c., &c.



M O O D.

---

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

DECLARATIONS.

**1493.** The indicative mood is used in simple, absolute declarations : as,

*arma virumque canō*, V. 1, 1, *arms and the man I sing*. *leve fit quod bene fertur onus*, O. A. 4, 2, 10, *light gets the load that's bravely borne*.

**1494.** The negative used with the indicative is commonly *nōn*, *not* (1443). For other negative expressions, see 1445-1451.

**1495.** Certain verbs and verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, and the like, mostly with an infinitive, are regularly put in the indicative, even when the action of the infinitive is not performed.

This applies to declarations, questions, or exclamations : as, (a.) *possum dē ichneumonum ūtilitāte dīcere, sed nōlō esse longus*, DN. 1, 101, *I might expatiate on the usefulness of the ichneumon, but I do not care to be long-winded*. *inter ferās satius est aetātem dēgere quam in hāc tantā immanitāte versārī*, RA. 150, *it would be better to pass your days in the midst of howling beasts than to live and move among such brutish men*. (b.) *stultī erat sperāre*, Ph. 2. 23, *it would have been folly to hope*. *quid enim facere poterāmus?* Pis. 13, *for what else could we have done?* (c.) *licuit uxōrem genere summō dūcere*, Pl. MG. 680, *I might have married a wife of high degree*. *nōn potuit pīctor rēctius dēscribere ēius fōrmam*, Pl. As. 402, *no painter could have hit his likeness more exactly*. (d.) *quantō melius fuerat prōmissum patris nōn esse servātum*, Off. 3, 94, *how much better it would have been, for the father's word not to have been kept*.

**1496.** The principal verbs and verbal expressions thus used are: (a.) *possum, licet, dēbeō, oportet, convenit, decet*. (b.) *aequum, aequius, iūstum, fās, necesse est; cōsentāneum, satis, satius, optābile, optābilius est; ūtilius, melius, optimum, pār, rēctum est; facile, difficile, grave, infīnitum, longum, māgnū est; est* with the predicative genitive, or a possessive pronoun (1237). (c.) Similarly, but without an infinitive, *sum* with a gerund, a gerundive, or a future participle.

**1497.** The imperfect of most of the above verbs and verbal expressions often relates to action not performed at the present time : as,

*hīs aliās poteram subnectere causās; sed eundum est*, J. 3, 315, *to these I might add other grounds; but I must go*. The context must determine whether the imperfect relates (a.) to action not performed either in the present as here, or in the past as in 1495, or (b.) to action performed in the past : as, *sollicitāre poterat, audēbat*, C. 3, 16, *he had at once the assurance and the ability to play the tempter's part*.



1498. Forms of **possum** are sometimes put in the subjunctive (1554). Thus, **possim**, &c., often (1556), also **possem**, &c., usually of present time (1560), less frequently of past time (1559), **potuissem**, &c., particularly in sentences of negative import (1561), rarely **potuerim**, &c. (1558). Sometimes also **dēbērem**, &c., of present time (1560), **dēbuissem**, &c., chiefly in apodosis.

## QUESTIONS.

1499. The indicative is the mood ordinarily used in enquiries and in exclamations : as,

(a.) *huic ego 'studēs ?' inquam. respondit 'etiam.' 'ubī ?' 'Mediōlānī.' 'cūr nōn hīc ?' 'quia nūllōs hīc praeceptōrēs habēmus,' Plin. Ep. 4, 13, 3, said I to the boy, 'do you go to school ?' 'yes, sir,' said he ; 'where ?' 'at Mediolanum ;' 'why not here ?' 'oh because we haven't any teachers here.'* (b.) *ut ego tuum amōrem et dolōrem dēsiderō, Att. 3, 11, 12, how I always feel the absence of your affectionate sympathy.*

1500. Questions and exclamations are used much more freely in Latin than in English. Particularly common are two questions, of which the first is short and general, leading up to the real question : as,

*sed quid ais ? ubi nunc adulēscēns habet ? Pl. Tri. 156, but tell me, where is the youngster living now ? estne ? vīcī ? et tibi saepe litterās dō ? Cael. in Fam. 8, 3, 1, is it true ? have I beaten ? and do I write to you often ?* The real question is often preceded by **quid est**, **quid dicis**, or by **quid**, **quid vērō**, **quid tum**, **quid postea**, **quid igitur**, **quid ergō**, &c., &c. : as, *quid ? canis nōnne similis lupō ? DN. 1, 97, why, is not the dog like the wolf ?*

1501. There are two kinds of questions : (1.) Such questions as call for the answer *yes* or *no* in English : as, *is he gone ?* These may conveniently be called *Yes or No Questions*. (2.) Questions introduced by an interrogative pronoun, or by a word derived from an interrogative pronoun : as, *who is gone ? where is he ?* These are called *Pronoun Questions*.

## YES OR NO QUESTIONS.

1502. (1.) Yes or No questions are sometimes put without any interrogative particle : as,

*Thraex est Gallina Syrō pār ? H. S. 2, 5, 44, of two gladiators, is Thracian Bantam for the Syrian a match ?* Often intimating censure : as, *rogās ? Pl. Aul. 634, dost ask ? or what an absurd question. prōmpsi tū illi vīnum ? : nōn prōmpsi, Pl. MG. 830, thou hast been broaching wine for him ? : not I.* Especially with **nōn** : as, *patēre tua cōsilia nōn sentīs ? C. 1, 1, you don't see that your schemes are out ?* It is often doubtful whether such sentences are questions, exclamations, or declarations.

1503. (2.) Yes or No questions are usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles **-ne** or **-n**, **nōnne**, **num**, **an**, **anne**.

1504. A question with **-ne** or **-n** may enquire simply, without any implication as to the character of the answer, or it may either expect an affirmative answer like **nōnne**, or less frequently a negative answer like **num** : as,

(a.) *valen?* Pl. *Tri.* 50, *art well?* *habētīn aurum?* Pl. *B.* 269, *have you got the gold?* (b.) *iūssīn in splendōrem darī bullās hās foribus?* Pl. *As.* 426, *didn't I give orders to polish up the bosses of the door?* *facitne ut dixī?* Pl. *Am.* 526, *isn't he acting as I said?* (c.) *istō immēnsō spatiō quaerō, Balbe, cūr Pronoea vestra cessāverit. labōremne fugiēbat?* DN. 1, 22, *I want to know, Balbus, why your people's Providence lay idle all that immeasurable time; it was work she was shirking, was it?* *quid, mundum praeter hunc umquamne vīdistī?* *negābis,* DN. 1, 96, *tell me, did you ever see any universe except this one? you will say no.*

1505. Sometimes the *-ne* of an interrogative sentence is transferred to a following relative, chiefly in Plautus and Terence: as, *rogās? quīne arrabōnem ā mē accēpistī ob mulierem?* Pl. *R.* 860, *how can you ask, when you have got the hansel for the girl from me?* Similarly, *ō sērī studiōrum, quīne putētis difficile,* H. *S.* 1, 10, 21, *what laggards at your books, to think it hard,* i. e. *nōnne estis sērī studiōrum, quī putētis difficile?* Compare 1569.

1506. To a question with *nōnne*, a positive answer is usually expected, seldom a negative: as,

(a.) *nōnne meministī? :: meminī vērō,* TD. 2, 10, *don't you remember? :: oh yes.* Sometimes a second or third question also has *nōnne*, but oftener *nōn*: as, *nōnne ad tē L. Lentulus, nōn Q. Sanga, nōn L. Torquātus vēnit?* Pis. 77, *did not Lentulus and Sanga and Torquatus come to see you?* (b.) *nōnne cōgitās?* RA. 80, *do you bear in mind?* *nōnne* is rare in Plautus, comparatively so in Terence, but very common in classical Latin.

1507. To a question with *num* a negative answer is generally expected. Less frequently either a positive or a negative answer indifferently: as,

(a.) *num negāre audēs?* C. 1, 8, *do you undertake to deny it?* *num, tibi cum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pōcula?* H. *S.* 1, 2, 114, *when thirst thy throat consumes, dost call for cups of gold?* Rarely *numne*: as, *quid, deum ipsum numne vīdistī?* DN. 1, 88, *tell me, did you ever see god in person?* (b.) *sed quid ais? num obdormivistī dūdum?* Pl. *Am.* 620, *but harkee, wert asleep a while ago?* *numquid vīs?* Pl. *Tri.* 192, *hast any further wish?*

1508. A question with *an*, less often *anne*, or if negative, with *an nōn*, usually challenges or comments emphatically on something previously expressed or implied: as,

*an habent quās gallīnae manūs?* Pl. *Ps.* 29, *what, what, do hens have hands?* *an* is also particularly common in argumentative language, in anticipating, criticising, or refuting an opponent: as, *quid dīcis? an bellō Siciliam virtūte tuā liberātam?* V. 1, 5, *what do you say? possibly that it was by your prowess that Sicily was rid of the war?* *at vērō Cn.\* Pompēi voluntātem ā mē aliēnābat ōrātiō mea. an ille quemquam plūs dilēxit?* Ph. 2, 38, *but it may be urged that my way of speaking estranged Pompey from me. why, was there anybody the man loved more?* In old Latin, *an* is oftener used in a single than in an alternative question, while in classical Latin it is rather the reverse.

1509. (3.) Yes or No questions are sometimes introduced by *ecquis*, *ecquō*, *ecquandō*, or *ēn umquam*: as,

*heus, ecquis hīc est?* Pl. *Am.* 420, *hollo, is e'er a person here?* *ecquid animadvertis hōrum silentium?* C. 1, 20, *do you possibly observe the silence of this audience?* (1144). *ō pater, ēn umquam aspiciam tē?* Pl. *Tri.* 588, *O father, shall I ever set mine eyes on thee?*



**1510.** (4.) In Plautus, *satin* or *satin ut*, *really, actually*, sometimes becomes a mere interrogative or exclamatory particle: as, *satin abiit ille?* Pl. *MG.* 481, *has that man really gone his way?*

### POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE ANSWERS.

**1511.** There are no two current Latin words corresponding exactly with *yes* and *no* in answers.

**1512.** (1.) A positive answer is expressed by some emphatic word of the question, repeated with such change as the context may require: as,

*an nōn dixi esse hōc futūrum? :: dixi, T. Andr.* 621, *didn't I say that this would be? :: you did.* *hūc abiit Clitiphō :: sōlus? :: sōlus, T. Hau.* 904, *here Clitiphō repaired :: alone? :: alone.* The repeated word may be emphasized by *sānē, vērō*: as, *dāsne manēre animōs post mortem? :: dō vērō, TD.* 1, 25, *do you grant that the soul lives on after death? :: oh yes.* Often, however, adverbs are used, without the repetition, such as *certē, certō, etiam, factum, ita, ita enim vērō, ita vērō, sānē, sānē quidem, scilicet, oh of course, vērō, rarely vērūm.*

**1513.** (2.) A negative answer is expressed by a similar repetition, with *nōn* or some other negative added: as,

*estne frāter intus? :: nōn est, T. Ad.* 569, *is brother in? :: he's not.* Or, without repetition, by such words as *nōn, nōn ita, nōn quidem, nōn hercle vērō, minimē, minimē quidem, minimē vērō, nihil minus.*

**1514.** *immō* introduces a sentence rectifying a mistake, implied doubt, or understatement in a question: as, *nūllane habēs vitia? :: immō alia, et fōrtasse minōra, H. S.* 1, 3, 20, *have you no faults? :: I beg your pardon, other faults, and peradventure lesser ones.* *causa igitur nōn bona est? immō optima, Att.* 9, 7, 4, *is n't the cause a good one then? good? yes, more than good, very good.*

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS.

**1515.** The alternative question belongs properly under the head of the compound sentence. But as the interrogative particles employed in the single question are also used in the alternative question, the alternative question is most conveniently considered here.

**1516.** In old English, the first of two alternative questions is often introduced by the interrogative particle *whether*, and the second by *or*: as, *whether is it easier to say, Thy sins be forgiven thee, or to say Arise?* In modern English, *whether* is not used thus.

**1517.** The history of the Latin alternative question is just the reverse of the English. In old Latin, the first question is very often put without any interrogative particle. Later, in the classical period, the use of *-ne*, or oftener of *utrum*, etymologically the same as *whether*, is overwhelmingly predominant.

**1518.** In the simplest form of the alternative sentence, neither question is introduced by an interrogative particle: as,

*quid agō? adeō, maneō?* T. *Ph.* 736, *what shall I do? go up and speak, or wait?* (1531).



**1519.** Of two alternative questions, the first either has no interrogative particle at all, or is more commonly introduced by **utrum**, **-ne**, or **-n**. The second is introduced by **an**, rarely by **anne**, or if it is negative, by **an nōn**: as,

(a.) **album an ātrum vinum pōtās?** Pl. *Men.* 915, *do you take light wine or dark?* **Tacitus es an Plīnius?** Plin. *Ep.* 9, 23, 3, *are you Tacitus or Pliny?* **sortiētur an nōn?** PC. 37, *will he draw lots or not?* (b.) **iam id porrō utrum libentēs an invitī dabant?** V. 3, 118, *then furthermore did they offer it voluntarily or did they consent to give it under stress?* **utrum cētera nōmina in cōdicem acceptī et expēnsī dīgesta habēs an nōn?** RC. 9, *have you all other items methodically posted in your ledger or not?* (c.) **servosne ēs an liber?** Pl. *Am.* 343, *art bond or free?* **ēsne tū an nōn ēs ab illō militī Macedoniō?** Pl. *Ps.* 616, *art thou or art thou not the Macedonian captain's man?* **videōn Clīniam an nōn?** T. *Hau.* 405, *do I see Clinia or not?*

**1520.** **necne** for **an nōn** is rare: as, **sēmina praetereā linquontur necne animāi corpore in exanimō?** Lucr. 3, 713, *are seeds moreover left or not of soul within the lifeless frame?* Twice in Cicero: as, **sunt haec tua verba necne?** TD. 3, 41, *are these your words or not?* But **necne** is common in indirect questions.

**1521.** Instead of a single second question with **an**, several questions may be used if the thought requires it, each introduced by **an**.

**1522.** Sometimes an introductory **utrum** precedes two alternative questions with **-ne** and **an**: as, **utrum tū māsne an fēmina's?** Pl. *R.* 104, *which is it, art thou man or maid?* This construction has its origin in questions in which **utrum** is used as a live pronoun: as, **utrum māvīs? statimne nōs vēla facere an paululum rēmigāre?** TD. 4, 9, *which would you rather do, have us make sail at once, or row just a little bit?* In Horace and late prose, **utrumne . . . an** is found a few times.

**1523.** Sometimes a second alternative question is not put at all: as, **utrum hōc bellum nōn est?** Ph. 8, 7, in old English, *whether is not this war?*

**1524.** Two or more separate questions asked with **-ne . . . -ne**, or with **num . . . num**, must not be mistaken for alternative questions: as, **num Homērum, num Hēsiodum coēgit obmūtēscere senectūs?** CM. 23, *did length of days compel either Homer or Hesiod to hush his voice?* (1692).

**1525.** An alternative question is answered by repeating one member or some part of it, with such changes as the context may require.

## PRONOUN QUESTIONS.

**1526.** Pronoun questions or exclamations are introduced by interrogative pronouns, or words of pronoun origin.

Such words are: (a.) **quis quī, quōdus, uter, quālis, quantus, quotus**: as, **quid rīdēs?** H. S. 2, 5, 3, *why dost thou laugh?* (1144). **uter est insānior hōrum?** H. S. 2, 3, 102, *which of these is the greater crank?* **hōra quota est?** H. S. 2, 6, 44, *what's o'clock?* (b.) Or **unde, ubī, quō, quōr** or **cūr, quī** ablative, *how, quīn, why not, quam, how, quāndō, quotiēns*: as, **unde venīs et quō tendis?** H. S. 1, 9, 62, *whence dost thou come, and whither art thou bound?* **deus falli quī potuit?** DN. 3, 76, *how could a god have been taken in?* (1495). **quam bellum erat cōfiterī nescīre,** DN. 1, 84, *how pretty it would have been to own up that you did not know* (1495).

1527. Sometimes *quīn* loses its interrogative force, and introduces an impatient imperative, particularly in Plautus and Terence, or an indicative of sudden declaration of something obvious or startling : as,

(a.) *quīn mē aspice*, Pl. *Most.* 172, *why look me over, won't you?* i. e. *mē aspice, quīn aspicias?* (b.) *quīn discupiō dīcere*, Pl. *Tri.* 932, *why I am bursting with desire to tell.*

1528. In Plautus, Terence, Horace, and Livy, *ut*, *how*, also is used in questions : as, *ut valēs?* Pl. *R.* 1304, *how do you do?* *ut sēsē in Samniō rēs habent?* L. 10, 18, 11, *how is every thing in Samnium?* Very commonly, and in Cicero only so, in exclamations also : as, *ut fōrtūnātī sunt fabrī ferrārīī, quī apud carbōnēs adsident; semper calent*, Pl. *R.* 531, *what lucky dogs the blacksmiths be, that sit by redhot coals; they're always warm.*

1529. In poetry, *quis*, *uter*, and *quantus* are found a few times with *-ne* attached ; as, *uterne ad cāsus dubiōs fīdet sibi certius?* H. *S.* 2, 2, 107, *which of the two in doubtful straits will better in himself confide?*

1530. Two or more questions or exclamations are sometimes united with one and the same verb : as,

*unde quō vēnī?* H. 3, 27, 37, *whence whither am I come?* *quot diēs quam frīgidīs rēbus absūmpsi*, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 9, 3, *how many days have I frittered away in utter vapidity.* *quantae quotiēns occāsionēs quam praeclārae fuērunt*, Mil. 38, *what great chances there were, time and again, splendid ones too.*

## SOME APPLICATIONS OF QUESTIONS.

1531. A question in the indicative present or future may be used to intimate command or exhortation, deliberation, or appeal : as,

(a.) *abin hinc?* T. *Eu.* 861, *will you get out of this?* *abin an nōn?* :: *abeō*, Pl. *Aul.* 660, *will you begone or not?* :: *I'll go.* *quīn abīs?* Pl. *MG.* 1087, *why won't you begone?* or *get you gone, begone.* *nōn tacēs?* T. *Ph.* 987, *won't you just hold your tongue?* *ecquis currit pollinctōrem arcēssere?* Pl. *As.* 910, *won't some one run to fetch the undertaker man?* *quīn cōnscendimus equōs?* L. 1, 57, 7, *why not mount?* or *to horse, to horse.* (b.) *quid est, Crasse, imusne sessum?* DO. 3, 17, *what say you, Crassus, shall we go and take a seat?* *quoi dōnō lepidum novum libellum?* Cat. 1, 1, *unto whom shall I give the neat new booklet?* *quid agō?* *adeō, maneō?* T. *Ph.* 736, *what shall I do? go up and speak, or wait?* (c.) *eōn?* *vocō hūc hominem?* :: *ī, vocā*, Pl. *Most.* 774, *shall I go, and shall I call him here?* :: *go call him.* See also 1623. Such indicative questions occur particularly in old Latin, in Catullus, in Cicero's early works and letters, and in Vergil.

1532. Some set forms occur repeatedly, especially in questions of curiosity, surprise, incredulity, wrath, or captiousness : as,

*sed quid ais?* T. *Andr.* 575, *but apropos, or but by the way* (1500). *quid istīc?* T. *Andr.* 572, *well, well, have it your way:* compare *quid istīc verba facimus?* Pl. *E.* 141. *ain tū?* Br. 152, *no, not seriously?* *itane?* T. *Eu.* 1058, *not really?* Frequently *egone* : as, *quid nunc facere cōgitās?* :: *egone?* T. *Hau.* 608, *what do you think of doing now?* :: *what, I?* In Plautus, threats are sometimes introduced by *scīn quō modō?* *do you know how?* i. e. at your peril.



1533. A question is sometimes united with a participle, or an ablative absolute, or thrown into a subordinate sentence: as,

quem fructum petentēs scīre cupimus illa quō modō moveantur? *Fin. 3, 37, with what practical end in view do we seek to know how yon bodies in the sky keep in motion?* quā frequentīā prōsequente crēditis nōs illinc profectōs? *L. 7, 30, 21, by what multitudes do you think we were seen off when we left that town?* 'hominēs' inquit 'ēmistī.' quid utī faceret? *Sest. 84, 'you bought up men' says he; with what purpose?*

---

### THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION.

1534. The infinitive is principally used in subordination, and will be spoken of under that head. One use, however, of the present infinitive in main sentences, as a kind of substitute for a past indicative, requires mention here.

1535. In animated narration, the present infinitive with a subject in the nominative sometimes takes the place of the imperfect or perfect indicative: as,

interim cōtīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *I, 16, 1, there was Caesar meantime every day dunning and dunning the Aeduans for the grain.* Diodōrus sordidātus circum hospitēs cursāre, rem omnibus nārrāre, *V. 4, 41, Diodorus kept running round in sackcloth and ashes from friend to friend, telling his tale to everybody.* intereā Catilīna in primā acīē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, *S. C. 60, 4, Catiline meantime bustling round in the forefront of battle, helping them that were sore bestead.* tum vērō ingentī sonō caelum strepere, et micāre ignēs, metū omnēs torpēre, *L. 21, 58, 5, at this crisis the welkin ringing with a dreadful roar, fires flashing, everybody paralyzed with fear.* This infinitive occurs in almost all writers, for instance, Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Horace, and particularly Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus. Less commonly in Caesar. Usually two or more infinitives are combined, and infinitives are freely mixed with indicatives. The subject is never in the second person.

1536. This infinitive is used to sketch or outline persistent, striking, or portentous action, where description fails; and as it merely *intimates* the action, without distinct declaration, and without notation of time, number, or person, it is called the *Infinitive of Intimation*. It cannot be adequately represented in English.

1537. The infinitive of intimation is sometimes used without a subject, when emphasis centres in the action alone; as,

ubī turrīm procul cōstituī vidērunt, inridēre ex mūrō, *2, 30, 3, when they saw the tower planted some way off, jeer after jeer from the wall.* tum spectāculum horribile in campīs patentibus: sequī fugere, occidī capī, *S. I. 101, 11, then a heartrending spectacle in the open fields: chasing and racing, killing and catching.*

1538. This infinitive has rarely an interrogative implication: as, rēx tē ergō in oculis: : scīlicet: : gestāre? : : vērō, *T. Eu. 401, your king then always bearing you: : of course, of course: : in eye? : : oh yes.*



1539. It may be mentioned here, that the infinitive of intimation is sometimes used from Sallust on with *cum*, *when*. Also by Tacitus in a temporal protasis with *ubi*, *ut*, or *postquam*, coordinated with a present or imperfect indicative protasis: as,

(a.) *cingēbātur interim milite domus, cum Libō vocāre percussōrem*, Ta. 2, 31, *the house meantime was encompassed with soldiers, when Libo called for somebody to kill him* (1869). (b.) *ubi crūdēscere sēditiō et ā conviciis ad tēla trānsībant, inīci catēnās Flāviānō iubet*, Ta. H. 3, 10, *when the riot was waxing hot, and they were proceeding from invectives to open violence, he orders Flavian to be clapped in irons* (1933).

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### DECLARATIONS.

#### I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

##### (A.) WISH.

1540. The subjunctive may be used to express a wish.

Wishes are often introduced by *utinam*, in old and poetical Latin also by *utī*, *ut*, and curses in old Latin by *quī*; these words were originally interrogative, *how*. Sometimes the wish is limited by *modo*, *only*. In negative wishes *nē* is used, either alone, or preceded by *utinam* or *modo*; rarely *nōn*, or the old-fashioned *nec*, *not* (1446).

1541. (1.) The present and perfect represent a wish as practicable; although a hopeless wish may, of course, if the speaker chooses, be represented as practicable: as,

(a.) *tē spectem, suprēma mihi cum vēnerit hōra*, Tib. 1, 1, 59, *on thee I'd gaze, when my last hour shall come*. *utinam illum diem videam*, Att. 3, 3, *I hope I may see the day*. (b.) *utinam cōnēre*, Ph. 2, 101, *I hope you may make the effort*. (c.) *dī vortant bene quod agās*, T. Hec. 196, *may gods speed well whate'er you undertake*. *quī illum dī omnēs perduint*, T. Ph. 123, *him may all gods fordo*. *ō utinam hibernae duplicentur tempora brūmae*, Prop. 1, 8, 9, *oh that the winter's time may doubled be*. *utinam reviviscat frāter*, Gell. 10, 6, 2, *I hope my brother may rise from his grave*. *nē istūc Iuppiter sirit*, L. 28, 28, 11, *now Jupiter forefend*. The perfect is found principally in old Latin.

1542. The present is very common in asseveration: as,

*peream, nisi sollicitus sum*, Fam. 15, 19, 4, *may I die, if I am not worried*. *sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua valētūdō*, Fam. 16, 20, *your state of health worries me, as I hope to live*. *ita vivam, ut māximōs sūmptūs faciō*, Att. 5, 15, 2, *as I hope to be saved, I am making great outlays*. See also 1622.

1543. The perfect subjunctive sometimes refers to past action now completed: as, *utinam abierit malam crucem*, Pl. *Poen.* 799, *I hope he's got him to the bitter cross* (1165). *utinam spem implēverim*, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 10, 3, *I hope I may have fulfilled the expectations.*

1544. (2.) The imperfect represents a wish as hopeless in the present or immediate future, the pluperfect represents it as unfulfilled in the past: as,

(a.) *tēcum lūdere sicut ipsa possem*, Cat. 2, 9, *could I with thee but play, e'en as thy mistress' self*, to Lesbia's sparrow. *utinam ego tertius vō-bis amicus adscriberer*, TD. 5, 63, *would that I could be enrolled with you myself, as the third friend*, says tyrant Dionysius to Damon and Phintias. (b.) *utinam mē mortuum prius vīdissēs*, QFr. 1, 3, 1, *I wish you had seen me dead first.* (c.) *utinam nē in nemore Pēliō secūribus caesa accēdisset abiēgna ad terram trabēs*, E. in Cornif. 2, 34, *had but, in Pelion's grove, by axes felled, ne'er fallen to the earth the beam of fir*, i. e. for the Argo. *utinam ille omnis sēcum cōpiās ēdūxisset*, C. 2, 4, *I only wish the man had marched out all his train-bands with him.*

1545. In old or poetical Latin, the imperfect sometimes denotes unfulfilled past action, like the usual pluperfect; as, *utinam in Siciliā perbiterēs*, Pl. *R.* 494, *would thou hadst died in Sicily.* *utinam tē dī prius perderent*, Pl. *Cap.* 537, *I wish the gods had cut thee off before.*

1546. In poetry, a wish is sometimes thrown into the form of a conditional protasis with *sī* or *ō sī*: as, *ō sī urnam argenti fōrs quae mihi mōnstret*, H. *S.* 2, 6, 10, *oh if some chance a pot of money may to me reveal.*

## (B.) EXHORTATION, DIRECTION, STATEMENT OF PROPRIETY.

1547. The subjunctive may be used to express an exhortation, a direction, or a statement of propriety.

The subjunctive of exhortation is sometimes preceded in old Latin by *utī* or *ut*, originally interrogative. In negative exhortations or directions, *nē*, *nēmō*, *nihil*, or *numquam*, &c., is used, rarely *nōn*.

1548. (1.) The present expresses what is to be done or is not to be done in the future: as,

(a.) *hōc quod coepī primum ēnārrem*, T. *Hau.* 273, *first let me tell the story I've begun.* *taceam nunc iam*, Pl. *B.* 1058, *let me now hold my tongue.* *cōsīdāmus hīc in umbrā*, Leg. 2, 7, *let us sit down here in the shade.* *nē difficilia optēmus*, V. 4, 15, *let us not hanker after impossibilities.* (b.) HAICE · VTEI · IN · COVENTIONID · EXDEICATIS, CIL. I, 196, 23, *this you are to proclaim in public assembly.* (c.) *nōmina dēclīnāre et verba in prīmīs puerī sciant*, Quintil. 1, 4, 22, *first and foremost boys are to know how to inflect nouns and verbs.* *utī adserventur māgnā diligentiā*, Pl. *Cap.* 115, *let them be watched with all due care.* *nē quis tamquam parva fastīdiat grammaticēs elementa*, Quintil. 1, 4, 6, *let no man look down on the rudiments of grammar, fancying them insignificant.*



1549. (2.) The perfect subjunctive is rare: as, *idem dictum sit*, Quintil. 1, 1, 8, *the same be said, once for all*. Mostly in prohibitions: as, *morātus sit nēmō quō minus abeant*, L. 9, 11, 13, *let no man hinder them from going away*.

1550. In positive commands, the second person singular often has a definite subject in old or epistolary Latin, and particularly *sīs*, for the imperative *es* or *estō*. Usually however an indefinite subject (1030): as,

(a.) *eās*, Pl. R. 519, *be off*. *hīc apud nōs hodiē cēnēs*, Pl. Most. 1129, *dine here with us today*. *cautus sīs, mī Tirō*, Fam. 16, 9, 4, *you must be careful, dear Tiro*. (b.) *istō bonō ūtāre, dum adsit*, CM. 33, *enjoy this blessing while you have it with you*.

1551. In prohibitions, the second person singular of the present is often used in old Latin with a definite subject. Usually however the perfect is employed, either with a definite or with an indefinite subject: as,

(a.) *nē illum verberēs*, Pl. B. 747, *you mustn't thrash the man*. Once in Horace: *nē sīs patruos mihī*, S. 2, 3, 88, *don't play stern governor to me*. (b.) *nē trānsierīs Ibērum*, L. 21, 44, 6, *do not cross the Iberus*. *quod dubitās nē fēcerīs*, Plin. Ep. 1, 18, 5, *what you have doubt about, never do*.

1552. (3.) The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used to express past obligation or necessity: as,

(a.) Imperfect: *quae hīc erant cūrārēs*, T. Hec. 230, *thou shouldst have looked to matters here*. *paterētur*, T. Hau. 202, *he should have stood it*. *quod sī meis incommodīs laetābantur, urbis tamen periculō commovērentur*, Sest. 54, *well, if they did gloat over my mishaps, still they ought to have been touched by the danger to Rome*. *crās irēs potius*, Pl. Per. 710, *you'd better have gone tomorrow, i. e. have resolved to go tomorrow*. *poenās penderēs*, Pl. B. 427, *thou hadst to pay a penalty*. (b.) Pluperfect: *restitissēs, rēpūgnāssēs, mortem pūgnāns oppetissēs*, Poet. in Sest. 45, *thou shouldst have made a stand, fought back, and fighting met thy fate*. *quid facere dēbuistī? frumentum nē ēmissēs*, V. 3, 195, *what ought you to have done? you should not have bought any wheat*. Usually, however, past obligation or necessity is expressed by the gerundive construction, or by some separate verb meaning *ought* (1496).

### (C.) WILLINGNESS, ASSUMPTION, CONCESSION.

1553. The subjunctive of desire may be used to denote willingness, assumption, or concession: as,

*oderint dum metuant*, Poet. in Suet. Cal. 30, *they are welcome to hate, as long as they fear*. *nē sit sānē summum malum dolor, malum certē est*, TD. 2, 14, *grant for aught I care that pain is not the worst evil, an evil it certainly is*. *nīl fēcerit, estō*, J. 6, 222, *he may be guiltless, be it so*.

### II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ACTION CONCEIVABLE.

1554. The subjunctive is often used to represent action as conceivable, without asserting that it actually takes place.



In some of its applications, this subjunctive is often more exactly defined by an expression of doubt or of assurance: as, *fōrs fuat an* in Plautus, *fōrsitan* from Terence on (rarely *fōrsan*, *fōrs*), *fōrtasse*, *may be, perhaps*; *opīnor*, *haud sciō an*, *I fancy*; *facile*, *easily*, *sine ūllā dubitātiōne*, *unhesitatingly*, &c., &c. The negative used with this subjunctive is *nōn*.

1555. This subjunctive is particularly common in guarded or diffident statements: thus, *velim*, *I could wish*, *nōlim*, *I should not be willing*, *mālim*, *I would rather*, *dīxerim*, *I should say*, are often preferred to a blunter *volō*, *I insist*, *nōlō*, *I won't*, *mālō*, *I prefer*, or *dīcō*, *I say*.

1556. The present denotes action in an indefinite future: as,

(a.) *ego fōrsitan in grege adnumerer*, *RA. 89*, *as for me, I might perhaps be counted in the common herd*. *mūtuom argentum rogem*, *Pl. Tri. 758*, *money I might borrow*. *haud sciō an rēctē dicāmus*, *Sest. 58*, *I rather think we may say with propriety*. (b.) The second person singular generally has an imaginary subject (1030): as, *dīcās hīc fōrsitan*, *J. 1, 150*, *here peradventure thou mayst say*, i. e. anybody may say. *rogēs mē quid sit deus, auctōre ūtar Simōnidē*, *DN. 1, 60*, *you may ask me what god is; I should follow the lead of Simonides*. *migrantis cernās*, *V. 4, 401*, *thou canst descry them on the move* (1635). Often with some generalizing word, such as *saepe*, *numquam*, *plūrēs*: as, *saepe videās*, *H. S. 1, 4, 86*, *thou oft canst see*. *Fōrtūnam citius reperiās quam retineās*, *Publil. Syr. 168*, *dame Fortune thou mayst sooner find than bind*. (c.) *nunc aliquis dīcat mihi*, *H. S. 1, 3, 19*, *now somebody may say to me* (more commonly *dīcet aliquis*, *dīcēs*, 1620). *fōrsitan aliquis dīcat*, *L. 5, 52, 5*, *perhaps somebody may say*. *mīrum fōrtasse hōc vōbīs videātur*, *V. 3, 109*, *perhaps this may seem strange to you*.

1557. (1.) The perfect is rarely used of past time. In this use it resembles the perfect of concession (1553): as,

(a.) *fōrsitan temere fēcerim*, *RA. 31*, *peradventure I may have acted rashly*. *errāverim fōrtasse*, *Plin. Ep. 1, 23, 2*, *I may have been mistaken perhaps*. (b.) *concēdō; fōrsitan aliquis aliquandō ēius modī quippiam fēcerit*, *V. 2, 78*, *I grant it; perhaps somebody, at some time or other, may have done something of the sort*. *haec ipsa fōrsitan fuerint nōn necessāria*, *Br. 52*, *even this may perhaps have been superfluous*.

1558. (2.) The perfect is oftenest used with a future meaning, and particularly the first person singular active of verbs meaning *think* or *say*: as,

(a.) *nōn facile dīxerim*, *TD. 5, 121*, *I could not readily say*. *hōc sine ūllā dubitātiōne cōfirmāverim*, *Br. 25*, *this I can assert without any hesitation*. *pāce tuā dīxerim*, *TD. 5, 12*, *by your leave I would say*. The first person plural occurs first in Cornificius, and is rare: as, *hunc deum rīte beātum dīxerīmus*, *DN. 1, 52*, *such a god we should be right in pronouncing happy*. (b.) *plānē perfectum Dēmōsthenem facile dīxerīs*, *Br. 35*, *you would readily pronounce Demosthenes absolutely perfect* (1030). *tū vērō eum nec nimis valdē umquam nec nimis saepe laudāverīs*, *Leg. 3, 1*, *oh no, rest assured you never can praise him too emphatically nor too often*. *conluviem istam nōn nisi metū coērcuerīs*, *Ta. 14, 44*, *such a motley rabble you can only keep under by terrorism*. (c.) *fōrsitan quispiam dīxerit*, *Off. 3, 29*, *perhaps somebody may say*.

**1559.** (1.) The imperfect sometimes denotes action which might have taken place in the past: as,

(a.) *nōn ego hōc ferrem calidus iuventā cōnsule Plancō*, H. 3, 14, 27, *this I should not have brooked in my hot youth, in Plancus' consulate.* (b.) The second person singular, particularly of verbs meaning *see, make out, think, say*, generally has an imaginary subject (1030): as, *vidērēs*, H. S. 2, 8, 77, *thou mightst have seen.* *cernērēs*, L. 22, 7, 12, *you might have described.* *nescērēs*, L. 3, 35, 3, *you could not have told.* *tē columen rēi pūblicae dicerēs intuērī*, Sest. 19, *you would have sworn you were gazing on a pillar of the state.* (c.) *quī vidēret, urbem captam diceret*, V. 4, 52, *anybody who saw it, would have said it was a captured city.* *dicī hōc in tē nōn potest, posset in Tarquiniō, cum rēgnō esset expulsus*, TD. 1, 88, *this cannot be said in your case; it might have been said in Tarquin's, when he was driven from the throne.*

**1560.** (2.) The imperfect often denotes action not performed at the present time; so especially *vellem* (*nōllem*, *māllem*): as,

(a.) *nimis vellem habēre perticam*, Pl. As. 589, *I wish so much I had a stick.* *vellem adesse posset Panaetius; quaererem ex eō*, TD. 1, 81, *I only wish Panaetius could be with us: I should ask him* (Panaetius was dead). *cuperem voltum vidēre tuum*, Att. 4, 16, 7, *I should like to see the expression of your face.* *māllem Cerberum metuerēs*, TD. 1, 12, *I would rather you stood in dread of Cerberus.* *possem idem facere*, TD. 1, 84, *I could do the same.* (b.) *melius sequerēre cupīdine captam*, O. 14, 28, *better for thee it were a loving bride to woo.* (c.) *in hāc fōrtūnā perūtilis ēius opera esset*, Att. 9, 17, 2, *in the present pinch his services would be extremely valuable.*

**1561.** The pluperfect represents action which did not take place in the past: as,

(a.) *vellem quidem licēret: hōc dīxissem*, RA. 138, *I only wish it were allowed; I should have said so and so.* (b.) *dedissēs huic animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat*, Plin. Ep. 1, 12, 8, *you might have given this spirit a body to match; he would have done what he craved to do.* (c.) *urbēs et rēgna celeriter tanta nēquitia dēvorāre potuisset*, Ph. 2, 67, *such colossal prodigality might have been capable of swallowing down cities and kingdoms speedily.* *vīcissent inprobōs bonī; quid deinde?* Sest. 43, *the good might have overpowered the bad; what next?*

**1562.** It may be mentioned here, that the subjunctive of action conceivable often extends to subordinate sentences: see 1731.

## QUESTIONS.

**1563.** I. The subjunctive is often used to ask what action or whether any action is desired, commanded, proper, or necessary.

In many instances a negative answer or no answer at all is expected. The negative is *nē*, sometimes *nōn*.



(a.) quō mē vertam? *Scaur.* 19, *which way shall I turn?* quid faciam, praescribere :: quiēscās :: nē faciam, inquis, omnīnō versūs? *H. S.* 2, 1, 5, *lay down the law, what I'm to do :: keep still :: wilt have me write, sayst thou, no verse at all?* quid igitur faciam? nōn eam? *T. Eu.* 46, *what then am I to do? not go?* quid nī meminerim? *DO.* 2, 273, *why should not I remember?* or of course I remember. huic cēdāmus? hūius condiciōnēs audiāmus? *Ph.* 13, 16, *shall we bow the knee to him? shall we listen to his terms?* (b.) quid tandem mē facere decuit? quiēscerem et paterer? *L.* 42, 41, 12, *what in the world ought I to have done? keep inactive and stand it?*

1564. Such questions sometimes have the alternative form: as, **Corinthiīs bellum indicāmus, an nōn?** *Inv.* 1, 17, *are we to declare war against Corinth, or not?* utrum indicāre mē ei thēnsaurum aequom fuit, an ego alium dominum paterer fieri hīsce aedibus? *Pl. Tri.* 175, *should I have pointed out the hoard to him, or should I have allowed another to become the owner of this house?* here paterer is equivalent to aequom fuit patī (1495).

1565. II. The subjunctive is often used to ask whether action is conceivable: as,

(a.) quis putet celeritātem ingenii **L. Brūtō dēfuisse?** *Br.* 53, *who can suppose that Brutus lacked ready wit?* i. e. nēmō putet (1556), putābit (1620), or putāre potest. sī enim Zēnōnī licuit, cūr nōn liceat Catōnī? *Fin.* 3, 15, *for if it was allowed Zeno, why should not it be allowed Cato?* (b.) hōc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre cōnfici posse? *IP.* 31, *who would ever have dreamed that this stupendous war could be brought to a close by a single commander?* The imperfect sometimes denotes action not performed at the present time (1560): quis enim cīvis rēgī nōn favēret? *D.* 6, *for what Roman would not feel for the king?* (c.) ego tē vidēre nōluerim? *QFr.* 1, 3, 1, *I have objected to seeing you?*

1566. The subjunctive is often used in interrogative outbursts of surprise, disapprobation, indignation, or captious rejoinder. In such questions a pronoun, **ego, tū (ille)**, is usually expressed. The negative is **nōn**.

This subjunctive occurs in Plautus and Terence, in Cicero, oftenest the letters, in Horace, Vergil, and Livy. Not in Caesar nor Sallust.

1567. (I.) The question may have no interrogative word, or may have **-ne**, especially in comedy: as,

(a.) nōn tacēs? :: taceam? *T. Ph.* 987, *you hold your tongue :: I hold my tongue?* nē flē :: egone illum nōn fleam? *Pl. Cap.* 139, *weep not :: what, I not weep for him?* tū pulsēs omne quod obstat? *H. S.* 2, 6, 30, *what, you, sir, punch whatever's in your way?* faveās tū hostī? ille litterās ad tē mittat? *Ph.* 7, 5, *you, sir, sympathize with the enemy? he correspond with you?* sapiēnsne nōn timeat? *Ac.* 2, 135, *a sage not be afraid?* (b.) ego mihī umquam bonōrum praesidium dēfutūrum putārem? *Mil.* 94, *could I have dreamed that I should ever lack the protection of the patriotic?* (c.) 'apud exercitum mihī fueris' inquit 'tot annōs?' *Mur.* 21, 'to think of your having been with the army, bless my soul,' says he, 'so many years.' (d.) mihī cūiusquam salūs tantī fuisset, ut meam neglegerem? *Sull.* 45, *could anybody's safety have been so important in my eyes as to make me disregard my own?*



1568. (2.) The question may have *utī* or *ut*: as,

*tē ut ūlla rēs frangat? tū ut umquam tē corrigās?* C. 1, 22, *any thing break you down? you ever reform?* *pater ut obesse filiō dēbeat?* Planc. 31, *a father morally bound to work against his son?*

1569. (3.) The question with *utī* or *ut* is sometimes attended by a remnant of another question with *-ne* or *-n*. In this combination, *-ne* either precedes, joined to an emphatic word, or it is attached directly to *utī* or *ut*: as,

(a.) *egone ut tē interpellem?* TD. 2, 42, *what I? interrupt you?* *illīne ut impūne concitent finitima bella?* L. 4, 2, 12, *what, they be allowed to stir up border warfare with impunity?* *virgō haec liberast :: meane ancilla libera ut sit, quam ego numquam ēmisī manū?* Pl. Cur. 615, *this girl is free :: my servant-girl? she to be free, when I have never set her free?* (b.) *utne tegam spurcō Dāmae latus?* H. S. 2, 5, 18, *what, I'm to shield a nasty Dama's side?* *somnium. utine haec ignōrāret suōm patrem?* T. Ph. 874, *oh bosh, not to have known the father that begat her?* See 1505 and 1532.

1570. It may be mentioned here, that the interrogative subjunctive is often used in subordinate sentences: see 1731.

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### COMMAND.

1571. The second person of the imperative mood is used in commands, either particular or general.

Commands are very often attended by a vocative or vocative nominative, or by *tū*, *sir*, *sirrah*, or *vōs*, *gentlemen*, *you people* (1118). They are of various kinds, as follows: (a.) Order, often to an inferior: thus, to an official: *lictor*, *conligā manūs*, Rab. 13, L. 1, 26, 7, Gell. 12, 3, 2, *lictor, tie up his wrists*. To soldiers: as, *dēsilitē militēs*, 4, 25, 3, *overboard, my men*. *signifer*, *statue signum*, L. 5, 55, 1, *standardbearer, plant your standard*. *infer miles signum*, L. 6, 8, 1, *advance your standard, man, or charge*. To sailors: as, *hūc dirigite nāvēs*, L. 29, 27, 13, *head your galleys this way*. To slaves: as, *convorrite aedēs scōpīs*, *agite strēnuē*, Pl. B. 10, *sweep up the house with brooms, be brisk*. Also to an equal: as, *aperite aliquis*, Pl. Mer. 130, *open the door there somebody* (1080). Or to a superior: as, *heus, exī*, Phaedrome, Pl. Cur. 276, *ho Phaedromus, come out*. (b.) Exhortation, entreaty, summons, request, prayer, imprecation, wish, concession, &c.: as, *vōs vōbīs cōsulite*, 7, 50, 5, *every man of you for himself*. *ēs, bibe, animō obsequere*, Pl. MG. 677, *eat, drink, and be merry*. *sperne voluptātēs*, H. E. 1, 2, 55, *scorn thou delights*. *quīn tū ī intrō*, Pl. Most. 815, *go in, go in, won't you go in?* (1527). *patent portae, proficiscere, ēdūc tēcum etiam omnis tuōs*, C. 1, 10, *the gates are open, march forth; take out all your myrmidons with you too*. *audī, Iuppiter*, L. 1, 32, 6, *bow down thine ear, Jupiter*. *ī in crucem*, Pl. As. 940, *get you gone to the cross*. *vive valēque*, H. S. 2, 5, 109, *long live and thrive, or farewell*. *tibī habē*, Pl. Men. 690, *you keep it yourself*.

## 1572-1579.] Sentences : The Simple Sentence.

1572. The imperative is often softened by the addition of *amābō*, *obsecrō*, *quaesō*, *pr̄itheē*, *I beg*, or *sīs*, *sultis*, *sōdēs*, *please* (774). It is sharpened by *age*, *agedum* or *agidum*, *age sīs*, *mark me*, or *ī*, *go*, *come on*, or by *modo*, *only*. The concessive imperative sometimes has *sānē*, *for all me*.

1573. In Plautus and Terence, the enclitic *dum*, *a while*, *a minute*, *just*, is often attached to the imperative: as, *manedum*, Pl. *As.* 585, *wait a minute*. In classical Latin, *dum* is retained with *age* and *agite*: as, *agedum cōnferte cum illius vitā P. Sūllae*, Sull. 72, *come now, compare Sulla's life with that man's* (1075).

1574. It may be mentioned here, that the imperative is often used in the protasis of a conditional sentence: as,

*tolle hanc opīniōnem, lūctum sustuleris*, TD. 1, 30, *do away with this notion, and you will do away with mourning for the dead*. Once only in old Latin, but often in late Latin, with a copulative: as, *perge, ac facile ecfēceris*, Pl. *B.* 695, *start on, and you will do it easily*.

1575. (1.) The third person, and the longer forms of the second person, are used particularly in laws, legal documents, and treaties, and also in impressive general rules and maxims: as,

(a.) *rēgiō imperiō duō suntō*, Leg. 3, 8, *there shall be two men vested with the power of kings*. *amīcitia rēgī Antiochō cum populō Rōmānō his lēgibus estō*, L. 38, 38, 1, *there shall be amity between king Antiochus and Rome on the following terms*. (b.) *vicinīs bonus estō*, Cato, RR. 4, *always be good to your neighbours*. *mōribus vivitō antiquis*, Pl. *Tri.* 295, *live thou in old-time ways*. The longer forms are often called the *Future Imperative*.

1576. (2.) The longer forms of the second person are also sometimes used in the ordinary speech of everyday life: as, *cavētō*, QFr. 1, 3, 8, *beware*. In old Latin, often *ēs*, *be thou*, but in classical Latin, oftener *estō* (or *sīs*). Usually *habētō*, meaning *keep*, or *consider*, regularly *scītō*, *scītōte*, *you must know* (846). In verse, the long forms may sometimes be due to the metre: as, *hic hodiē cēnātō*, Pl. *R.* 1417, *take dinner here today*. *pār prō pari refertō*, T. *Eu.* 445, *pay tit for tat*. But also without such necessity: as, *aufertō intrō*, Pl. *Tru.* 914, *take it within*. *quiētus estō, inquam*, T. *Ph.* 713, *be not concerned, I say*.

1577. (3.) It may be mentioned here, that the longer forms are very often used in the apodosis of a complex sentence, particularly with a future or a future perfect protasis: as,

*sī iste ibit, itō*, Pl. *Ps.* 863, *if he shall go, go thou*. *medicō mercēdis quantum poscet, prōmittī iubētō*, Fam. 16, 14, 1, *you must order your medical man to be promised all he shall charge in the way of a fee*. *ubī nihil erit quod scribās, id ipsum scribitō*, Att. 4, 8 b, 4, *when you don't have anything to write, then write just that*. *cum ego P. Grānium testem prōdūxerō, refellitō, sī poteris*, V. 5, 154, *when I put Granius on the witness stand, refute him if you can*.

1578. In such combinations, however, the shorter forms are sometimes found: as, *ubi volēs, accerse*, T. *Andr.* 848, *fetch me when you will*. And conversely the longer forms are also found with a present protasis: as, *ūnum illud vidētō, sī mē amās*, Fam. 16, 1, 2, *attend to this one thing, an thou lovest me*.

1579. A command is sometimes expressed by the subjunctive, accompanying *fac*, *facitō*, *fac ut*, *facitō ut*, *cūrā ut*, *cūrātō ut*, *vidē*, *vidē ut*, *volō*, or particularly *velim*: as,



**māgnūm fac animum habeās et spem bonam**, *QFr.* 1, 2, 16, *see that you keep up an heroic soul and unabated hope* (1712). **fac cōgitēs**, *Fam.* 11, 3, 4, *see that you bear in mind*. **cūrā ut valeās**, *Fam.* 12, 29, 3, *take good care of yourself*. **velim exīstimēs**, *Fam.* 12, 29, 2, *I should like to have you consider*. For commands in the subjunctive alone, *see* 1547; in the future indicative, 1624; in the form of a question, 1531.

**1580.** A periphrastic perfect passive form is rare: as, **iūre caesus estō**, Twelve Tables in *Macrobius. Sat.* 1, 4, 19, *he shall be regarded as killed with justifying circumstances*. **probē factum estō**, *L.* 22, 10, 6, *let it be considered justified*. **at vōs admonitī nostrīs quoque cāsibus este**, *O. Tr.* 4, 8, 51, *but be ye warned by our misfortunes too*.

### PROHIBITION.

**1581.** (1.) In prohibitions with the second person, the imperative with **nē** is used in old Latin, and with **nēve** as a connective, rarely **neque**: as,

**nē flē**, *Pl. Cap.* 139, *weep not*. **nē saevī tantō opere**, *T. Andr.* 868, *be not thus wroth*. Sometimes in classical poetry also, in imitation of old style: as, **nē saevī, māgna sacerdos**, *V.* 6, 544, *rave not, thou priestess grand*. Once in *Livy*: **nē timēte**, 3, 2, 9, *be not afraid*.

**1582.** From *Ovid* on, **nōn** is used a few times for **nē**: as, **nōn cārīs aurēs onerāte lapillīs**, *O. AA.* 3, 129, *load not with precious stones your ears*.

**1583.** (2.) Prohibitions in the second person are usually expressed by **nōlī** or **nōlite** with the infinitive, particularly in classical prose: as,

**obiurgāre nōlī**, *Att.* 3, 11, 2, *don't scold*. **nōlite id velle quod fierī nōn potest**, *Ph.* 7, 25, *don't yearn after the unattainable*.

**1584.** In poetry, equivalents for **nōlī** are sometimes used with the infinitive, such as **fuge**, **parce** or **comperce**, **conpesce**, **mitte** or **omitte**, **absiste**: as, **quid sit futūrum crās, fuge quaerere**, *H.* 1, 9, 13, *what fate the morrow brings, forbear to ask*. *Livy* has once **parce**, 34, 32, 20.

**1585.** (3.) A prohibition in the second person is often expressed by the subjunctive accompanying **cavē**, **cavē nē**, **cavētō nē**, **fac nē**, **vidē nē**, **vidētō nē**, **cūrā nē**, **cūrātō nē**, or **nōlim**: as,

**cavē festīnēs**, *Fam.* 16, 12, 6, *don't be in a hurry*. **cavētō nē suscēnseās**, *Pl. As.* 372, *see that thou beest not wroth*. **hōc nōlim mē iocārī putēs**, *Fam.* 9, 15, 4, *I should hate to have you think I am saying this in fun*. For prohibitions in the second person with **nē** and the present or perfect subjunctive, *see* 1551. For the subjunctive coordinated with **cavē**, *see* 1711.

**1586.** In law language, prohibitions are expressed by the third person of the imperative with **nē**, and with **nēve** as a connective: as,

**hominem mortuom in urbe nē sepelītō nēve ūritō**, Twelve Tables in *Leg.* 2, 58, *he shall not bury nor yet shall he burn a dead man in town*. **mulieres genās nē rāduntō nēve lessum fūneris ergō habentō**, Twelve Tables in *Leg.* 2, 59, *women shall not tear their cheeks nor shall they keen in lamentation for the dead* (1257). Likewise with **nēmō**: as, **nēminī pārentō**, Twelve Tables in *Leg.* 3, 8, *they shall not be subject to anybody*. *See also* 1548.



## TENSE.

### THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

#### THE PRESENT TENSE.

**1587.** The present indicative represents action as going on at the time of speaking or writing : as,

*scribō, I write, or I am writing. nunc primum audiō, T. Andr. 936, for the first time I hear. notat ad caedem ūnum quemque nostrū, C. 1, 2, he is marking us out for death, each and all. domus aedificātur, Att. 4, 2, 7, the house is building.*

**1588.** The present is used to denote action customary or repeated at any time, or a general truth : as,

*agrī cultūrae nōn student, 6, 22, 1, they do not apply themselves to farming. virī in uxōrēs vitae necisque habent potestātem, 6, 19, 3, the married men have power of life and death over their wives. probitās laudātur et alget, J. 1, 74, uprightness gets extolled, and left out in the cold. dum vitant stultī vitia, in contrāria currunt, H. S. 1, 2, 24, while fools essay a vice to shun, into its opposite they run. mors sōla fatētur quantula sint hominum corpuscula, J. 10, 172, death is the only thing that tells what pygmy things men's bodies be. stultōrum plēna sunt omnia, Fam. 9, 22, 4, the world is full of fools. risū ineptō rēs ineptior nūllast, Cat. 39, 16, there's nothing sillier than a silly laugh.*

**1589.** The present, when accompanied by some expression of duration of time, is often used to denote action which has been going on some time and is still going on.

This present is translated by the English perfect : as, *Lilybaei multōs iam annōs habitat, V. 4, 38, he has lived at Lilybaeum this many a year. iam dūdum auscultō, H. S. 2, 7, 1, I have been listening for an age. satis diū hōc iam saxum vorsō, T. Eu. 1085, I've trundled at this boulder long enough as 'tis. nimium diū tē castra dēsiderant, C. 1, 10, the camp has felt your absence altogether too long. iam diū ignōrō quid agās, Fam. 7, 9, 1, I have not known this long time how you are getting on.* This use extends to the subjunctive and to nouns of the verb also. But if the action is conceived as completed, the perfect is used : as, *sērō resistimus ēī, quem per annōs decem aluimus, Att. 7, 5, 5, it is too late to oppose a man whom we have been supporting ten long years.*

**1590.** The present is often used to represent past action as going on now. This is called the *Present of Vivid Narration* : as,

*trānsfigitur scūtum Pulīōni et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. āvertit hīc cāsus vāginam, inpeditumque hostēs circumstant, 5, 44, 7, Pulio has his shield run through, and a javelin sticks fast in his sword belt. This mischance puts his scabbard out of reach, and the enemy encompass him in this hampered condition.* This present often stands side by side with a past tense. It is common in subordinate sentences also.

1591. The present is sometimes used in brief historical or personal memoranda, to note incidents day by day or year by year as they occur. This is called the *Annalistic Present*: as,

*Proca deinde rēgnat. is Numitōrem prōcreat. Numitōrī rēgnum vetustum Silviae gentis lēgat, L. 1, 3, 9, after this Proca is king; this man begets Numitor; to Numitor he bequeaths the ancient throne of the Silvian race. duplicātur cīvium numerus. Caelius additur urbī mōns, L. 1, 30, 1, number of citizens doubled; Mt. Caelius added to city. in Māmurrārū lassī deinde urbe manēmus, H. S. 1, 5, 37, in the Mamurras' city then forspent we sleep. Particularly common with dates: as, A. Vergīnius inde et T. Vetusius cōsulātum ineunt, L. 2, 28, 1, then Verginius and Vetusius enter on the consulship. M. Silānō L. Nōrbānō cōsulibus Germānicus Aegyptum proficiscitur, Ta. 2, 59, in the consulship of Silanus and Norbanus, Germanicus leaves for Egypt.*

1592. Verbs of hearing, seeing, and saying are often put in the present, even when they refer to action really past: as,

*audiō Valerium Mārtiālem dēcessisse, Plin. Ep. 3, 21, 1, I hear that Martial is dead, i. e. the epigrammatist, 102 A. D. Particularly of things mentioned in books, or in quoting what an author says: as, Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī nōtam esse videō, 6, 24, 2, the Hercynian forest, which I see was known to Eratosthenes. Platō 'ēscam malōrum' appellat voluptātem, CM. 44, Plato calls pleasure the 'bait of sin.'*

1593. The present is sometimes loosely used of future action: as,

*crās est mihi iūdicium, T. Eu. 338, tomorrow I've a case in court. ego sycophantam iam condūcō dē forō, Pl. Tri. 815, for me, a sharper from the market place I'll straight engage. quam mox inruimus? T. Eu. 788, how soon do we pitch in? This present is also used in subordinate sentences with antequam and priusquam (1912, 1915), with dum, until (2006), and sometimes with sī.*

## THE IMPERFECT TENSE.

1594. The imperfect indicative represents action as going on in past time: as,

*scribēbam, I was writing, or I wrote. ei mihi quālis erat, V. 2, 274, woe's me, how ghastly he appeared. multōsque per annōs errābant actī fātis, V. 1, 31, and they for many a year were roaming round, by fates pursued.*

1595. The imperfect often denotes past action lasting while something else occurred: as,

*an tum erās cōsul, cum mea domus ārdēbat? Pis. 26, were you perhaps consul at the time my house was burning down? neque vērō tum ignōrābat sē ad exquisita supplicia proficisci, Off. 3, 100, and all the time he knew perfectly well that he was starting off to suffer studied torments.*

1596. The imperfect is used to denote repeated or customary past action or condition: as,

*commentābar dēclāmitāns cōtīdiē, Br. 310, I always practised speaking my compositions every day. noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs, TD. 4, 44, Themistocles used to promenade the streets nights.*



**1597.** The imperfect, when accompanied by some expression of duration of time, is used to denote action which had been going on for some time, and was still going on.

This imperfect, which is translated by the English pluperfect, is analogous to the present in 1589: as, *pater grandis nātū iam diū lectō tenēbatur*, *V.* 5, 16, *his aged father had long been bedridden*. *hōram amplius iam permultī hominēs mōliēbantur*, *V.* 4, 95, *something over an hour a good many men had been prizing away*. But if the action is conceived as completed at a past time, the pluperfect is used: as, *diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat*, 6, 38, 1, *four whole days he had gone without eating*.

**1598.** In a few examples, the imperfect is used to denote action suddenly recognized, though going on before: as, *ehem, Parmenō, tūn hīc erās?* *T. Hec.* 340, *why bless me, Parmeno, were you here all this time?*

**1599.** In descriptions of place or in general truths, where the present might be expected, the imperfect is sometimes used, by assimilation to past action in the context: as, *ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō*, 7, 69, 1, *Alesia proper was situated on the top of a hill*. Often also in subordinate sentences.

**1600.** For the imperfect indicative of certain verbs relating to action not performed at the present time, see 1497.

**1601.** In letters, the imperfect may denote action at the time of writing, the writer transferring himself to the time of the reader: as,

*haec tibi dictābam post fānum putre Vacūnae*, *H. E.* 1, 10, 49, *I dictate this for thee behind Vacuna's crumbling shrine*. *nihil habēbam quod scriberem*, *Att.* 9, 10, 1, *I have nothing to write*. Similarly in the delivery of messages: as, *scribae orābant*, *H. S.* 2, 6, 36, *the clerks request*. The present, however, is very often used where the imperfect would be applicable. Compare 1616.

## THE PERFECT TENSE.

**1602.** The Latin perfect indicative represents two English tenses: thus, the preterite, *I wrote*, and the perfect, *I have written*, are both expressed by the perfect *scripsī*. In the first sense, this perfect is called the *Historical Perfect*; in the second sense, it is called the *Perfect Definite*.

## THE HISTORICAL PERFECT.

**1603.** The historical perfect simply expresses action as having occurred at an indefinite past time, without implying anything as to the duration of the action: as,

*scripsī*, *I wrote*. *vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*, Caesar in *Suet. Iul.* 37, *came, saw, overcame*. *apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx*, 1, 2, 1, *among the Helvetians, the man of highest birth by all odds was Orgetorix*. *Diodōrus prope triennium domō caruit*, *V.* 4, 41, *for nearly three years Diodorus had to keep away from home*. *in Graeciā mūsicī flōruērunt, discēbantque id omnēs*, *TD.* 1, 4, *in Greece musicians stood high, and everybody studied the art* (1596).



1604. It may be mentioned here, that in subordinate sentences the historical perfect is sometimes loosely used from the writer's point of view, instead of the more exact pluperfect demanded by the context : as, *aliquantum spatii ex eō locō, ubi pugnatum est, aufugerat*, L. 1, 25, 8, *he had run off some distance from the spot where the fighting had occurred*.

## THE PERFECT DEFINITE.

1605. The perfect definite expresses action already completed at the present time, and whose effects are regarded as continuing : as,

*scripsi*, *I have written*. *dixerunt*, *Clu.* 73, *dixere*, *Quintil.* 1, 5, 43, *they have finished speaking*. *spectatōrēs, fābula haec est ācta*, *Pl. Most.* 1181, *ladies and gentlemen, this play is done*.

1606. In old Latin, *habeō* with the perfect participle is sometimes equivalent to a periphrastic perfect : as, *illa omnia missa habeō*, *Pl. Ps.* 602, *I've dropped all that*, i. e. *misi*. But in classical Latin, the participle and a tense of *habeō* are more or less distinct in their force : as, *Caesar aciem instructam habuit*, 1, 48, 3, *Caesar kept his line drawn up*, not *had drawn up*. Compare 2297.

1607. With verbs of inceptive meaning the perfect definite is equivalent to the English present : as,

*cōsistō*, *take my stand*, *cōstiti*, *stand*, *cōnsuēscō*, *get used*, *cōnsuēvi*, *am used*, *nōscō*, *learn*, *nōvi*, *know*. Similarly *memini*, *remember*, and *ōdi*, *hate*. The pluperfect of such verbs is represented by the English imperfect, and the future perfect by the English future.

1608. The perfect often denotes a present resulting state : as, *vīcīne, perii, interii*, *Pl. Most.* 1031, *my neighbour, I am dead and gone*. Particularly in the passive voice : as, *Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs*, 1, 1, 1, *Gaul, including everything under the name, is divided into three parts*. Compare 1615.

1609. In the perfect passive, forms of *fuī*, &c., are sometimes used to represent a state no longer existing : as, *monumentō statua superimposita fuit, quam dēiectam nūper vidimus ipsi*, L. 38, 56, 3, *on the monument there once stood a statue which I saw not long ago with my own eyes, lying flat on the ground*. Similarly, in the pluperfect, *fueram*, &c. : as, *arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humi inventa*, *Div.* 1, 74, *the arms which had once been fastened on the walls were found on the floor*. Sometimes, however, forms of *fuī*, &c., *fueram*, &c., and *fuerō*, &c., are used by Plautus, Cicero, especially in his letters, Nepos, Sallust, and particularly Livy, in passives and deponents, quite in the sense of *sum*, &c.

1610. The perfect sometimes implies a negative idea emphatically by understatement : as,

*fuit Ilium*, V. 2, 325, *Ilium has been*, i. e. *Ilium is no more*. *viximus, flōruimus*, *Fam.* 14, 4, 5, *we have lived our life, we have had our day*. *filium unicū adulēscēntulū habeō*. *āh, quid dīxi? habēre mē? immō habui*, T. *Hau.* 93, *I have one only son, a growing boy*. *Āh me, what did I say, I have? Oh no, have had*.

1611. The perfect may denote an action often done, or never done: as,

iam saepe hominēs patriam cārōsque parentēs prōdiderunt, *Lucr.* 3, 85, *time and again have men their land betrayed and parents dear.* nōn aeris acervus et auri dēdūxit corpore febrīs, *H. E.* 1, 2, 47, *no pile of brass and gold hath fevers from the body drawn.* multī, cum obesse vellent, prōfuērunt et, cum prōdesse, obfuērunt, *DN.* 3, 70, *many a man has done good, when he meant to do harm, and when he meant to do good, has done harm.* Common from Cicero, Sallust, and Catullus on, especially in poetry.

1612. The perfect is sometimes used as a lively future perfect to express completed future action: as,

quam mox coctumst prandium? *Pl. R.* 342, *how soon is lunch all cooked?* cui sī esse in urbe licēbit, vīcimus, *Att.* 14, 20, 3, *if he shall be allowed to stay in town, the day is ours.* perīi, sī mē aspexerit, *Pl. Am.* 320, *I'm gone, if he lays eyes on me.*

1613. It may be mentioned here, that the perfect is regularly used in a subordinate sentence denoting time anterior to a present of repeated action (1588). In such sentences the present is preferred in English: as,

rēliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt, 4, 1, 5, *the others, that stay at home, always support themselves and the above-mentioned also.* sī quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt, 6, 13, 6, *if any man or any community does not abide by their decree, they always debar them from sacrifices.* So also with quom or cum, quotiēns, simul atque, ubī. Compare 1618.

### THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

1614. The pluperfect indicative expresses past action, completed before another past action expressed or understood: as,

scripseram, *I had written.* Pyrrhī temporibus iam Apollō versūs facere dēsierat, *Div.* 2, 116, *in Pyrrhus's day Apollo had quite given up making poetry.* mortuus erat Āgis rēx. filium reliquerat Leōtychidem, *N.* 17, 1, 4, *Agis the king had died; he had left a son Leotyichides.*

1615. The pluperfect often expresses a past resulting state: as,

castra oportūnīs locīs erant posita, 7, 69, 7, *the camp was pitched on favourable ground.* ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs aestus complēverat, et onerāriās tempestās adflīctābat, 4, 29, 2, *thus at one and the same time the tide had filled the men-of-war, and the gale of wind kept knocking the transports about.* This use is analogous to that of the perfect in 1608.

1616. In letters, the pluperfect is sometimes used to denote action occurring previous to the time of writing, the writer transferring himself to the time of the reader: as,

ūnam adhūc ā tē epistolam accēperam, *Att.* 7, 12, 1, *I have only had one letter from you thus far.* This use is analogous to that of the imperfect in 1601, and very often, where this pluperfect would be applicable, the perfect is used.



1617. The pluperfect is sometimes used where the perfect would be expected. Particularly so when it anticipates a past tense to follow in a new sentence: as, **quod factum primō popularis coniūrātiōnis concusserat. neque tamen Catilinae furor minuēbātur**, S. C. 24, 1, *this terrified the conspirators at first; and yet Catiline's frenzy was not getting abated*. Verbs of saying are also often put in the pluperfect in subordinate sentences referring to a preceding statement: as, **Epidamniēnsis ille, quem dūdum dixeram, adoptat illum puerum surrupticiū**, Pl. Men. prol. 57, *said man of Epidamnus that I named erewhile adopts said kidnapped boy*.

1618. It may be mentioned here, that the pluperfect is used in a subordinate sentence denoting time anterior to a past tense of repeated action. In such sentences the preterite is preferred in English: as,

**hostēs ubī aliquōs singulārēs cōspexerant, incitātis equīs adoriēbantur**, 4, 26, 2, *every time the enemy caught sight of detached parties, they would always charge full gallop*. Compare the analogous perfect in 1613.

### THE FUTURE TENSE.

1619. The future indicative expresses future action, either momentary or continuous: as,

**scribam**, *I shall write, I shall be writing, or I will write, I will be writing*. The future commonly expresses either prediction, or will, determination, promise, threat: as, (a.) **tuās litterās exspectābō**, Att. 5, 7, *I shall be on the lookout for letters from you*. (b.) **vivum tē nōn relinquam; moriēre virgīs**, V. 4, 85, *I will not leave you alive; you shall die under the rod*. But the sharp distinction which exists between *shall* and *will* in the English future and future perfect is utterly unknown in Latin: thus, in **occīdar equidem, sed victus nōn perībō**, Cornif. 4, 65, *I shall be murdered, to be sure, but I will not die a vanquished man*, the difference between the prediction contained in *I shall*, and the determination contained in *I will*, cannot be expressed in Latin.

1620. The future is often used in diffident assertion, to express an assumption, a belief, conviction, or concession, of the speaker himself, without implying its universal acceptance: as,

**dīcēs**, TD. 2, 60, *you will say*. **dīcet aliquis**, TD. 3, 46, *somebody will say* (1556). **dabit hōc Zēnōnī Polemō**, Fin. 4, 51, *Polemo will concede this point to Zeno*. **excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera, crēdō equidem**, V. 6, 847, *with greater grace, I will believe, shall others shape the brouze that breathes*. Particularly in conclusions: as, **sequētur igitur vel ad supplicium beāta vīta virtūtem**, TD. 5, 87, *happiness then will walk with goodness even to the scaffold*. Or in general truths: as, **cantābit vacuus cōram latrōne viātor**, J. 10, 22, *the pourē man whan he goth by the weye, bifore the thevēs he may syuge and pleye*.

1621. The future sometimes predicts that a thing not yet known to be true will prove to be true: as, **haec erit bonō genere nāta**, Pl. Per. 645, *this maid, you'll find, is come of honest stock*, i.e. **esse reperietur**. Compare the imperfect in 1598.

1622. In Plautus and Terence, the future is sometimes used in protestations or thanks: as, **ita mē dī amābunt**, T. Hau. 749, *so help me heaven*. **dī tē amābunt**, Pl. Men. 278, *the gods shall bless thee*. Usually, however, the subjunctive: see 1542 and 1541.



1623. The future is sometimes used in questions of deliberation or appeal: as, *dēdēmus ergō Hannibalem?* L. 21, 10, 11, *are we then to surrender Hannibal?* *hancine ego ad rem nātam memorābō?* Pl. R. 188, *am I to say that I was born for such a fate?* Oftener the present subjunctive (1563), or sometimes the present indicative (1531).

1624. The future is sometimes used, particularly in the second person, to express an exhortation, a direction, a request, a command, or with *nōn* a prohibition: as,

*crās ferrāmenta Teānum tollētis*, H. E. 1, 1, 86, *tomorrow to Teanum you will take your tools.* *bonā veniā mē audiēs*, DN. 1, 59, *you will listen to me with kind indulgence.* *tū intereā nōn cessābis*, Fam. 5, 12, 10, *mean-time you will not be inactive.* *haec igitur tibi erunt cūrae*, Fam. 3, 9, 4, *you will attend to this then, i. e. haec cūrābis.*

1625. It may be mentioned here, that the future is used in sentences subordinate to a future, an imperative, or a subjunctive implying a future: as,

*profectō nihil accipiam iniūriae, si tū aderis*, Att. 5, 18, 3, *I am sure I shall suffer no harm, if you are with me.* *ut mēd esse volēs, ita erō*, Pl. Ps. 239, *as you will have me be, so will I be.* *ut is quī audiet, cōgitet plūra, quam videat*, DO. 2, 242, *so that the hearer may imagine more than he sees.* But sometimes a present is used (1593).

## THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

1626. The future perfect indicative expresses completed future action: as,

*scripserō*, *I shall have written, or I will have written.* The future perfect is very common in Latin, particularly in protasis with a relative, with *cum*, *ubi*, &c., with *antequam* or *priusquam*, with *ut* (. . . *ita*), *as* (. . . *so*), or with *si*, to express action anterior in time to a future; in English, this future perfect is usually represented by a loose present or perfect: as, *quicquid fēceris, adprobābō*, Fam. 3, 3, 2, *whatever you do, I shall think right.* Examples will be given further on, in speaking of the complex sentence.

1627. It may be mentioned here that the future perfect in protasis and apodosis both denotes two actions occurring at one and the same time; these actions are usually identical: as,

*quī Antōnium opprēsserit, is hōc bellum taeterrimum cōnfēcerit*, Fam. 10, 19, 2, *the man that puts down Antony will put an end to this cruel war, i. e. putting down Antony will be ending the war.* *respīrārō, si tē viderō*, Att. 2, 24, 5, *I shall take breath again, if I set eyes on you.*

1628. The future perfect sometimes denotes a future resulting state: as,

*molestus certē ei fuerō*, T. Andr. 641, *at all events I shall have proved a bane to him.* *meum rēi pūblīcae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō*, 4, 25, 3, *I will have my duty all done to country and commander too.*

1629. The future perfect is sometimes used to express rapidity of future action, often with the implication of assurance, promise, or threat: as,

*abierō*, Pl. Most. 590, *I'll instantly be gone.* *iam hūc revēnerō*, Pl. MG. 863, B. 1066, *I'll be back here again forthwith.* *prīmus impetus castra cēperit*, L. 25, 38, 17, *the first rush will see the camp carried.*

1630. The future perfect often denotes action postponed to a more convenient season, or thrown upon another person.

Often thus with **post**, **aliās**, and particularly **mox**: as, **vōbīs post nār-rāverō**, Pl. *Ps.* 721, *I'll tell you by and by*, i. e. I won't tell you now. **ad frātre[m] mox ierō**, Pl. *Cap.* 194, *I'll to my brother's by and by*, i. e. not yet. **fuerit ista ēius dēliberātiō**, L. 1, 23, 8, *that is a question for him to settle*, i. e. not me. Especially **vīderō**: as, **quae fuerit causa, mox vīderō**, *Fin.* 1, 35, *what the reason was, I won't consider now*. **rēctē secusne aliās vīderimus**, *Ac.* 2, 135, *whether right or not, we will consider some other time*, i. e. never. **vōs videritis**, L. 1, 58, 10, *that is a question for you*, i. e. not me.

1631. The future perfect sometimes denotes action which will have occurred while something else takes place: as,

**nōn erō vōbīs morae: tībīcen vōs intereā hīc dēlectāverit**, Pl. *Ps.* 573<sup>a</sup>, *I will not keep you long; meantime the piper will have entertained you here*. **tū invitā mulierēs, ego accīverō puerōs**, *Att.* 5, 1, 3, *do you, sir, invite the ladies, and I will meantime have fetched the children*.

1632. The future perfect is often not perceptibly different from the future, especially in the first person singular in old Latin: as,

**ego mihī prōvīderō**, Pl. *Most.* 526, *I'll look out for myself*. **erōs in obsidiōne linquet, inimicūm animōs auxerit**, Pl. *As.* 280, *he'll leave his owners in a state of siege, he'll swell the courage of the enemy*. Similarly Cicero, in the protases **sī potuerō, sī voluerō, sī licuerit, sī placuerit**.

## THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE WITH **sum**.

1633. The future active participle combined with the tenses of **sum** expresses action impending, resolved on, or destined, at the time indicated by the tense of the verb: as,

**cum hōc equite pūgnātūrī estis**, L. 21, 40, 10, *with this kind of cavalry are you going to fight*. **bellum scriptūrus sum, quod populus Rōmānus cum Iugurthā gessit**, *Sall. I.* 5, 1, *I purpose to write the history of the war that the people of Rome carried on with Jugurtha*. **fiet illud, quod futurum est**, *Div.* 2, 21, *whatever is destined to be, will be*. **Delphōs petiit, ubī columnās, quibus impositūrī statuās rēgis Perseī fuerant, suis statuīs dēstināvit**, L. 45, 27, 6, *he went to Delphi, where he appropriated for his own statues the pillars on which they had intended to put statues of king Perses*.

## THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1634. In simple sentences, the tenses of the subjunctive correspond in general to the same tenses of the indicative. But the present has a future meaning; the imperfect sometimes expresses past, sometimes present action; and the perfect sometimes expresses past action, and sometimes future action.

1635. The present subjunctive is sometimes used in reference to past action, like the indicative present of vivid narration (1590): as, **migrantis cernās**, *V.* 4, 401, *you can descry them swarming out* (1556). **comprehendī iūssit; quis nōn pertimēscat?** *V.* 5, 14, *he ordered them to be arrested; who would not be thoroughly scared?* (1565).



THE COMPOUND SENTENCE, OR COORDINATION.

**1636.** Two or more independent simple sentences may be coordinated to form a compound sentence in one of two ways: either without a connective, or with a connective.

What applies to the coordination of sentences, also applies to the coordination of the parts of sentences in abridged sentences (1057).

(A.) WITHOUT A CONNECTIVE.

**1637.** When simple sentences or parts of sentences are coordinated without any connective, this mode of arrangement is called *Asyndetic Coordination* or *Asyndeton*.

Asyndeton, whether in unabridged or in abridged sentences, is more usual with three or more members than with two. It occurs particularly often in Plautus, Terence, Ennius, and Cato, also in Cicero, especially in his early works and letters.

**1638.** The sentences in which asyndeton occurs are commonly such as might be connected by words meaning *and* or *but*; less often by words meaning *as*, *for*, &c. Asyndeton is especially common:

**1639. (a.)** In animated narration of events happening at the same moment, in description, and in climaxes. Also in mention of colleagues in office, and in many set phrases and formulas: as,

*vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*, Caesar in Suet. *Iul.* 37, *came, saw, overcame*. *nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōscendunt*, 5, 39, 3, *our men rush speedily to arms, clamber up the palisade*. *huic s. c. intercessit C. Caelius, C. Pansa, tribūnī pl.*, *Fam.* 8, 8, 7, *this decree of the senate was objected to by Caelius and Pansa, tribunes of the commons*. *hī ferre agere plēbem*, *L.* 3, 37, 7, *there were these people worrying and harrying the commons* (1535).

**1640. (b.)** In contrasts or antitheses: as,

*opīniōnis commenta dēlet diēs, nātūrae iūdicia cōfirmat*, *DN.* 2, 5, *the fictions of speculation are swept away by time, but the judgements of nature are confirmed*. Particularly when either member is positive, the other negative: *vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescīs*, *L.* 22, 51, 4, *you know how to conquer, Hannibal, but not how to use victory*, says Maharbal after Cannae, 216 B. C.

**1641.** Asyndeton is very common with two or more imperatives: as, *ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium proficiscere*, *C.* 1, 20, *go forth from Rome, Catiline, relieve the commonwealth from its fear, depart into exile*. Particularly when the first is *age*, *come on*, *mark me*, or *ī*, *go* (1572). But from Horace on, *ī nunc*, *go to now*, is followed by *et* with a second imperative in derisive orders.



1642. Asyndeton is also common with parentheses. These often take the place of a modern foot-note: as, *lēgātus capite vėlātō filō (lānae vėlāmen est) 'audī, Iuppiter,' inquit, L. 1, 32, 6, the envoy with his head covered with a 'filum' (that is to say a wrap of wool) says 'bow down thine ear, Jupiter.'* Parentheses however are often introduced, from Terence on by *nam*, and from Sallust and Cicero on, by *et, neque, autem, enim, &c.*

(B.) WITH A CONNECTIVE.

(1.) CONJUNCTIONS AS CONNECTIVES.

1643. Simple sentences or parts of sentences may be connected by copulative, disjunctive, or adversative conjunctions.

(a.) COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

1644. Copulative conjunctions denote union, and connect both the sentences and their meaning. They are *et, -que, atque* or *ac, and, and neque* or *nec, neither.*

1645. (1.) *et, and,* is the commonest copulative, and connects either likes or unlikes; with two members only, it is either used between them, or is prefixed for emphasis to both: as,

*Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, 1, 9, 3, Dumnorix was very influential among the Sequani and a friend to the Helvetians. Dēmocritus alba discernere et ātra nōn poterat, TD. 5, 114, Democritus could not tell white and black apart. et discipulus et magister perhibēbantur inprobī, Pl. B. 425, both pupil and master were rated as knaves.*

1646. With three or more members, *et* is either used between the members or, frequently, prefixed for emphasis to all. Often, however, it is omitted throughout (1637), or a third member is appended by *-que* (1651): as,

*persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovicīs utī ūnā cum hīs proficiscantur, 1, 5, 4, they induce the Rauricans, Tulingans, and Latovicans to join them in their march. is et in custōdiam civēs Rōmānōs dedit et supplicātiōnem mihī dēcrēvit et indicēs māximīs praemiīs adfēcit, C. 4, 10, this person voted in the first place to put Roman citizens in ward, then to decree a thanksgiving in my honour, and lastly to reward the informers with liberal gifts.*

1647. Two members belonging closely together as a pair, and connected by *et, atque, or -que,* are sometimes put asyndetically with another member or members: as,

*Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs principātū; queruntur fōrtūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requirunt, 7, 63, 8, the Aeduans set forth that they were cast down from the chief place; they complain of the change of fortune, and say they miss Caesar's former kindness to them. nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre; lapidēs in nostrōs conicere, 1, 46, 1, it was reported that Ariovistus's cavalry were moving nearer the hillock and galloping up to the Romans; that they were throwing stones at our men.*

1648. **et** has sometimes the meaning of *also* or of *and also*, particularly when there is a change of speakers, or before a pronoun: as, **et hōc sciō**, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 12, 11, *I know that too*. Sometimes also after **vērūm**, **nam**, and **simul**, especially when a pronoun follows. Not in Caesar.

1649. (2.) **-que**, *and*, combines members which belong together and make a whole, though they may be different or opposed to each other; the second member is often a mere appendage: as,

**rogat ōratque tē**, RA. 144, *he begs and entreats you*, or *he earnestly entreats you*. **libertī servolique nōbīlium**, RA. 141, *the freedmen and slaves of the great*, or *retainers, bond and free*. **omnēs ea, quae bona videntur, sequuntur fugiuntque contrāria**, TD. 4, 12, *everybody runs after what seems good and avoids the opposite*. **-que** is usually put after the first word of the new member. It is particularly common in old or legal style.

1650. The combination **-que . . . -que**, *both . . . and*, is very common in poetry: as, **noctēsque diēsque**, E. in CM. 1, *both night and day*. In prose, it is used by Sallust when the first word is a pronoun: as, **mēque rēgnumque meum**, I. 10, 2, *both myself and my throne*; and by Livy to connect two relative sentences: as, **omnēs quīque Rōmae quīque in exercitū erant**, 22, 26, 5, *everybody, both people in Rome and people in the army*.

1651. After two members without a connective, a third member is sometimes appended by **-que**: as,

**satis habēbat hostem rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre**, 1, 15, 4, *he was satisfied with keeping the enemy from plundering, foraging, and ravaging*.

1652. (3.) **atque**, or before any consonant except **h** often **ac**, *and*, *and besides*, adds something belonging essentially to what goes before, but more important as a supplement or extension: as,

**sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit**, 4, 25, 4, *he sprang overboard and furthermore proceeded to bear the eagle upon the enemy*. **māgna dīs immortalibus habenda est atque huic Iovī Statōrī grātia**, C. 1, 11, *we owe a great debt of gratitude to the gods immortal in general, and to you Jove the Stayer in particular*. **atque . . . atque** occurs for **et . . . et** once in Vergil, and once in Silius Italicus.

1653. **atque** is used in comparisons, after words of likeness and unlikeness: as,

**parī spatiō trānsmīssus, atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam**, 5, 13, 2, *the journey across is just as long as it is from Gaul to Britain*. **īdemque iūs-sērunt simulācrum Iovis facere māius et contrā, atque antea fuerat, ad orientem convertere**, C. 3, 20, *and they furthermore gave orders to make a statue of Jupiter, a bigger one, and to turn it round to the east, the opposite of the way it originally faced*. Sometimes **et** is thus used after **alius**, **aliter**, **aequē**, **pariter**, &c.: see the dictionary.

1654. With adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree, **atque** sometimes takes the place of **quam** *than*, when the first member of comparison is negative (1895): as, **amīcior mihi nūllus vīvit atque is est**, Pl. *Mer.* 897, *I have no greater friend alive than that man is*. So in Plautus, Terence, Catullus, Vergil, rarely in Cicero. Horace uses **atque** thus, even when the first member is positive.



1655. A sentence is often introduced by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, where *but* would be used in English, particularly so when a positive sentence follows a negative one: as,

*Sōcratēs nec patrōnum quaesīvit nec iūdicibus supplex fuit adhibuitque liberam contumāciam*, *TD.* 1, 71, *Socrates did not try to find an advocate nor bow the knee to his judges, but he was plain-spoken and defiant.* *nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga verterunt*, 4, 35, 2, *the enemy could not stand the dash of our people, but turned their backs.* *hominis nē Graecī quidem ac Mysi potius*, *QFr.* 1, 1, 19, *a creature who is not even a Greek, but more of a Mysian.*

1656. Two sentences, one of which would ordinarily be introduced by a subordinating temporal conjunction, are sometimes, mostly in poetry, coordinated by *et* or *-que*: as, *dixit et in silvam pennīs ablāta refūgit*, *V.* 3, 258, *she spake, and on her pinions sweeping, vanished to the wood*, i.e. *simul atque dixit, refūgit*.

1657. (4.) *neque* or *nec*, *neither, nor, and . . . not, but . . . not*, is used as a negative copulative, sometimes as a negative adversative: as,

*opīniōnibus volgi rapimur in errōrem nec vēra cernimus*, *Leg.* 2, 43, *we are swept into error by the delusions of the world and cannot make out the truth.* *nōn enim temere nec fōrtuītō creati sumus*, *TD.* 1, 118, *for we were not created at adventure nor by accident.* *subsidiō suis iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum impetum sustinēre potuērunt*, 7, 62, 8, *they went to aid their people and carried the hill, but they could not stand the fiery onset of our soldiers.* *neque* or *nec* is often repeated: as, *nec meliōrēs nec beātiōrēs esse possumus*, *RP.* 1, 32, *we can neither be better nor wiser.*

1658. *nec* is rarely used in the sense of *nē . . . quidem*, *not even, not . . . either*: as, *nec nunc*, *H. S.* 2, 3, 262, *not even now*, a free quotation of *nē nunc quidem*, *T. Eu.* 46. *nec . . . quidem*, *and not even*, is used once or twice for the common *ac nē . . . quidem* or *et nē . . . quidem*.

1659. Instead of *neque* or *nec*, *and not*, the copulatives *et*, *atque*, rarely *-que*, followed by a negative, *nōn*, *nēmō*, *nihil*, &c., are sometimes used in Cicero and Livy, less often in old Latin, and rarely in Caesar and Sallust: as, *quid tū fēcissēs, si tē Tarentum et nōn Samarobrīvam mīsissem?* *Fam.* 7, 12, 1, *what would you have done, if I had sent you to Tarentum, and not to Samarobriva?* Particularly thus *et nōn*, or oftener *ac nōn*, in corrections. But ordinarily *neque* or *nec* is preferred to *et nōn*, and *nec quisquam*, &c., to *et nēmō*, &c. (1445).

1660. When *neque* is followed by another negative, the assertion is positive (1452): as,

*nec hōc ille nōn vīdit*, *Fin.* 4, 60, *and the man did not fail to see this.* This positive use begins with Varro. In old Latin two negatives, and particularly *neque . . . haud*, are often used, as in old English, to strengthen the negation (1453).

1661. After a general negative, a word may be emphasized by *nē . . . quidem* or *nōn modo*, or the parts of a compound sentence may be distributed by *neque . . . neque*, without destroying the negation: as,



nihil in locīs commūnibus, nē in fānīs quidem, nihil istum neque privātī neque publicī tōtā in Siciliā reliquisse, *V. 4, 2*, that the defendant has left nothing untouched in public places, no, not even in the temples, nothing either in the way of private or of public property, in all Sicily. Similarly when a coordinate member is appended with **neque**: as, **nequeō** satis mīrārī neque conicere, *T. Eu. 547*, I can't quite puzzle out or guess.

---

#### COMBINATION OF DIFFERENT COPULATIVES.

**1662.** Different copulatives are sometimes combined, as follows.

**1663.** (1.) The affirmative copulatives **et** and **-que** are sometimes combined, particularly in abridged sentences: as,

**et Epaminōndās praeclārē cecinisse dīcitur, Themistoclēsque est habitus indoctior**, *TD. 1, 4*, Epaminondas in the first place is said to have played beautifully, and Themistocles was not considered exactly an educated man. This combination occurs in Ennius, is used by Cicero rarely, and by Horace in the satires.

**1664.** The sequence **-que . . . et** is rare in old Latin, and not used by Caesar, Vergil, or Horace. **-que . . . atque** is first used by Lucretius, then by Vergil, Ovid, Livy, and Tacitus. **atque . . . et**, or **atque . . . -que**, does not occur.

**1665.** (2.) Affirmative and negative copulatives are sometimes combined. Thus **neque** or **nec** combined with **et**, in the sequences **neque . . . et** and **et . . . neque**, which is rare in old Latin, is common in Cicero: as,

**nec mīror et gaudeō**, *Fam. 10, 1, 4*, in the first place I am not surprised, and in the second place I feel glad; **neque . . . et nōn**, however, is rare. **patēbat via et certa neque longa**, *Ph. 11, 4*, there lay a road open at once plain and not long. **neque . . . -que** begins with Cicero, but is rare (1655), **neque . . . ac** begins with Tacitus.

**1666.** Of all the Latin writers, Tacitus aims most at variety by combination of asyndeton and by the use of different copulatives: as, **rēgem Rhamsēn Libyā Aethiopiā Mēdisque et Persis et Bactriānō ac Scythā potitum**, 2, 60, that king Rhamses got control of Libya and Aethiopia and the Medes and Persians, and the Bactrian and Scythian.

#### (b.) DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

**1667.** Disjunctive conjunctions connect the sentences, but disconnect the meaning. They are **aut**, **vel**, **sive** or **seu**, **-ve**, and **an**, or. Of these conjunctions, **aut**, **vel**, and **sive**, are often placed before two or more members of a sentence in the sense of *either . . . or*. And in poetry, **-ve . . . -ve** sometimes occurs.

**1668.** (1.) **aut**, or, sometimes *or even*, or *at least*, is used between two members which are to be represented as essentially different in meaning, and of which one excludes the other: as,

*hic vincendum aut moriendum, militēs, est*, L. 21, 43, 5, *here you must conquer, my men, or die*. *hōrae mōmentō cita mors venit aut vīctōria laeta*, H. S. 1, 1, 7, *within an hour's brief turn comes speedy death or victory glad*. *aut vīvam aut moriar*, T. Ph. 483, *I shall either live or die*. *sīderibus dubiis aut illō tempore quō sē frīgida circumagunt pigri serrāca Boōtae*, J. 5, 22, *when stars blink faint, or even at the time when round rolls slow Boōtes' frigid wain*. *quā rē vī aut clam agendum est*, Att. 10, 12, 5 [10, 12 b, 2], *so we must use force, or at any rate secrecy*. Sometimes *aut* connects kindred ideas: *as, equī ictī aut vulnerātī cōsternābantur*, L. 21, 33, 6, *the horses kept getting frantic from being hit or wounded*.

1669. *aut*, in the sense of *otherwise, or else*, sometimes introduces a statement of what necessarily follows, if something else is not done: *as*,

*audendum est aliquid ūniversīs, aut omnia singulīs patiēda*, L. 6, 18, 7, *you must make some bold dash collectively, or else you must suffer every thing individually*. *vel* is also occasionally used in this sense.

1670. (2.) *vel*, *or*, introduces an alternative as a matter of choice or preference, and often relates merely to the selection of an expression: *as*,

*ēius modī coniūctiōnem tēctōrum oppidum vel urbem appellāvērunt*, RP. 1, 41, *such a collection of dwelling-houses they called, well, a town or a city, whichever you please*. *vel imperātore vel milite mē ūtiminī*, S. C. 20, 16, *use me as your generalissimo or as a private, whichever you will*. *Catilinam ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsīmus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbis prōsecūtī sumus*, C. 2, 1, *we have — what shall I say? — driven Catiline out of town, or allowed him to go out, or, when he was going out of his own accord, wished him a pleasant journey*. *vel* is often followed by *etiam, potius, or dicam*. From Tacitus on, *vel* is sometimes used in the sense of *aut*: *as, vincendum vel cadendum esse*, Ta. 14, 35, *they must do or die* (1668).

1671. *vel* is sometimes used in the sense of *if you will, even, or perhaps*, especially before superlatives, or in the sense of *for instance*: *as*,

*hūius domus est vel optima Messānae, nōtissima quidem certē*, V. 4, 3, *this gentleman's house is perhaps the finest in all Messina, at any rate the best known*. *amant tēd omnēs mulierēs, neque iniūriā: vel illae, quae here palliō mē reprehendērunt*, Pl. MG. 58, *the girls all idolize you, well they may; for instance those that buttonholed me yesterday*.

1672. (3.) *sive* or *seu*, *or*, used as a disjunctive conjunction, denotes a distinction which is not essential, or the speaker's uncertainty as to some matter of detail; when used once only, it is chiefly in corrections, often with *potius, rather*, added; *as*,

*is Ascanius urbem mātī seu novercae reliquit*, L. 1, 3, 3, *said Ascanius left the city to his mother, or his stepmother, if you prefer*. *dixit Pompēius, sive voluit*, QFr. 2, 3, 2, *Pompey made a speech, or rather attempted to make one*.

1673. *sive* is often repeated in the sense of *either, or no matter whether . . . or*: *as*,



## 1674-1680.] Sentences : The Coordinate Sentence.

ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, quae pars calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit, 1, 12, 6, *thus, no matter whether from chance or through special providence, the part which had done damage to Rome was the first to pay penalty in full.*

1674. (4.) -ve rarely connects main sentences, usually only the less important parts of the sentence, or, oftener still, subordinate sentences : as,

cūr timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere ? J. 1, 103, *why should I fear or hesitate to stand my ground ?* Appius ad mē bis terve litterās mīserat, Att. 6, 1, 2, *Appius had written me two or three times.* With nē it forms nēve or neu, which is used as a continuation of nē or ut : see 1581 ; 1586 ; 1947.

1675. (5.) The interrogative particle an sometimes becomes a disjunctive conjunction, or, or possibly, or perhaps : as, Simōnidēs an quis alius, Fin. 2, 104, *Simonides or possibly somebody else.* Common in Cicero, though not so in his speeches, and in Livy, commonest in Tacitus.

### (c.) ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

1676. Adversative conjunctions connect the sentences, but contrast the meaning. They are autem, *on the other hand*, sed, vērū, cēterum, *but*, vērō, *but, indeed*, at, *but*, tamen, nihilō minus, *nevertheless*.

Of these conjunctions, autem and vērō are put after one word, or sometimes after two closely connected words ; tamen is put either at the beginning, or after an emphatic word.

1677. (1.) autem, *again, on the other hand, however*, simply continues the discourse by a statement appended to the preceding, without setting it aside : as,

hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, civitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur, 7, 64, 8, *to the chieftains of this nation on the one hand he promises moneys, and to the community on the other hand the hegemony of the whole province.* The opposition in a sentence introduced by autem, *again*, is often so weak that a copulative, *and*, might be used : as, ille quī Dīogenem adulēscēns, post autem Panaetium audierat, Fin. 2, 24, *the man who in his early youth had sat at the feet of Diogenes, and afterwards of Panaetius.* autem is oftenest used in philosophical or didactic discourse, less frequently in history, oratory, or poetry.

1678. autem is often used in questions : as, metuō crēdere :: crēdere autem ? Pl. Ps. 304, *I am afraid to trust :: trust, do you say ?*

1679. (2.) sed or set, and vērū, *but*, are used either in restriction, or, after a negative, in direct opposition : as,

vēra dīcō, sed nēquiquam, quoniam nōn vīs crēdere, Pl. Am. 835, *I tell the truth, but all in vain, since you are bent not to believe.* nōn ego erus tibi, sed servos sum, Pl. Cap. 241, *I am not your master, but your slave.*

1680. nōn modo, or nōn solum, *not only, not alone*, is followed by sed etiam or vērū etiam, *but also*, by sed . . . quoque, *but . . . as well*, or sometimes by sed or vērū alone : as,



quī nōn solum interfuit hīs rēbus, sed etiam praefuit, *Fam.* 1, 8, 1, *who has not had a hand only in these matters, but complete charge.* quī omnibus negōtiis nōn interfuit solum, sed praefuit, *Fam.* 1, 6, 1. nōn tantum is sometimes used by Livy, and once or twice by Cicero, but not by Caesar or Sallust, for nōn modo. Livy and Tacitus sometimes omit sed or vērū.

1681. nōn modo has sometimes the meaning of nōn dicam : as, nōn modo ad certam mortem, sed in māgnū vitāe discrimen, *Sest.* 45, *I won't say to certain death, but to great risk of life.*

1682. nōn modo or nōn solum, when attended by another negative, may also be followed by sed nē . . . quidem, *but not even*, or sed vix, *but hardly*: as,

nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum, *Sull.* 50, *so far from being angry with you I do not even criticise your action.* When both members have the same predicate, usually placed last, the negation in nē . . . quidem or vix usually applies to the first member also : as, tālis vir nōn modo facere, sed nē cōgitāre quidem quicquam audēbit, quod nōn audeat praedicāre, *Off.* 3, 77, *a man of this kind will not only not venture to do, but not even to conceive anything which he would not venture to trumpet to the world, or will not venture to conceive, much less do.*

1683. (3.) cēterum is sometimes used in the sense of sed, in Terence, Sallust, and Livy. Sometimes also in the sense of sed rē vērā, in Sallust and Tacitus, to contrast reality with pretence.

1684. (4.) vērō, *but, indeed*, introduces an emphatic contrast or a climax: as,

sed sunt haec leviōra, illa vērō gravia atque māgna, *Pl.* 86, *however, all this is less important, but the following is weighty and great.* scimus mūsicēn nostris mōribus abesse ā principis persōnā, saltāre vērō etiam in vitiis pōnī, *N.* 15, 1, 2, *we know that, according to our Roman code of ethics, music is not in keeping with the character of an eminent man, and as to dancing, why that is classed among vices.* In Plautus, vērō is only used as an adverb; its use as an adversative conjunction begins with Terence. In the historians, vērō is often equivalent to autem.

1685. (5.) at, *but*, denotes emphatic lively opposition, an objection, or a contrast: as,

brevis ā nātūrā nōbīs vīta data est; at memoria bene redditae vitāe sempiterna, *Ph.* 14, 32, *a short life hath been given by nature unto man; but the memory of a life laid down in a good cause endureth for ever.* at is often used before a word indicating a person or a place, to shift the scene, especially in history. In law language, ast sometimes occurs, and ast is also sometimes used, generally for the metre, in Vergil, Horace, and late poetry.

1686. (6.) tamen, nihilō minus, *nevertheless.*

accūsātus capitis absolvitur, multātur tamen pecūniā, *N.* 4, 2, 6, *he is accused on a capital charge and acquitted, but is nevertheless fined in a sum of money.* minus dolendum fuit rē nōn perfectā, sed poeniendum certē nihilō minus, *Mil.* 19, *there was less occasion for sorrow because the thing was not done, but certainly none the less for punishment.*

## 1687-1692.] Sentences : The Coordinate Sentence.

### (2.) OTHER WORDS AS CONNECTIVES.

**1687.** Instead of a conjunction, other words are often used as connectives: as, **pars . . . pars, aliī . . . aliī**; adverbs of order or time: as, **primum, first**, or **prīmō, at first . . . deinde . . . tum**, &c.; and particularly adverbs in pairs: as, **modo . . . modo, tum . . . tum**, less frequently **quā . . . quā, simul . . . simul**: as,

**multitūdō pars prōcurrit in viās, pars in vestibulis stat, pars ex tēctīs prōspectant**, L. 24, 21, 8, *part of the throng runs out into the streets, others stand in the fore-courts, others gaze from the house-tops.* **prōferēbant aliī purpuram, tūs aliī, gemmās aliī**, V. 5, 146, *they produced some of them purple, others frankincense, others precious stones.* **prīmō pecūniae, deinde imperī cupidō crēvit**, S. C. 10, 3, *at first a love of money waxed strong, then of power.* **tum hōc mihi probābilius, tum illud vidētur**, Ac. 2, 134, *one minute this seems to me more likely, and another minute that.*

**1688.** Simple sentences may also be coordinated by words denoting inference or cause, such as **ergō, igitur, itaque, therefore**; **nam, namque, enim, for, etenim, for you see**: as,

**adfectus animī in bonō virō laudābilis, et vīta igitur laudābilis bonī virī, et honesta ergō, quoniam laudābilis**, TD. 5, 47, *the disposition in a good man is praiseworthy, and the life therefore of a good man is praiseworthy, and virtuous accordingly, seeing it is praiseworthy.* Of these words, **nam, namque**, and **itaque** are usually put first in the sentence; **enim** and **igitur**, usually after one word, rarely after two. But in Plautus regularly, and generally in Terence, **enim** has the meaning of *indeed, verily, truly, depend upon it*, and may stand at the beginning.

**1689.** In Plautus, the combination **ergō igitur** occurs, and in Terence and Livy, **itaque ergō**: as, **itaque ergō cōsulibus diēs dicta est**, L. 3, 31, 5, *accordingly then a day was set for the trial of the consuls.*

**1690.** The interrogative **quippe, why?** losing its interrogative meaning, is also used as a coordinating word, *why, or for*: as, **hōc genus omne maestum ac sollicitum est cantōris morte Tigellī : quippe benignus erat**, H. S. 1, 2, 2, *such worthies all are sad, are woebegone over Tigellius the minstrel's death; why he was generosity itself.*

**1691.** Simple sentences may also be coordinated by pronominal words, such as **hinc, inde, hence, eō, ideō, idcirco, propterea, so, on that account**, &c.: as,

**nocte perveniēbant; eō custodiās hostium fallēbant**, L. 23, 19, 10, *they got there in the night; in that way they eluded the enemy's pickets.* But **eō** and **ideō** are not used thus by Cicero, Caesar, or Sallust, or **idcirco** and **propterea** by Cicero or Caesar.

**1692.** In animated rhetorical discourse any word repeated with emphasis may serve as a copulative; this is called *Anaphora*: as,

**mīles in forum, mīles in cūriam comitābātur**, Ta. 1, 7, *soldiers went with him to the forum, soldiers to the senate chamber.* **ērepti estis ex interitū, ērepti sine sanguine, sine exercitū, sine dīmiciātiōne**, C. 3, 23, *you are rescued from death, rescued without bloodshed, without an army, without a struggle.*



THE INTERMEDIATE COORDINATE SENTENCE.

**1693.** A sentence coordinate in form with another sentence is often equivalent in meaning to a subordinate sentence. Such sentences are called *Intermediate Coordinate Sentences*.

The most varied relations of a subordinate sentence may be thus expressed by a coordinate sentence, and the combination of the two coordinate sentences is in sense equivalent to a complex sentence.

**1694.** Such coordinated sentences are a survival of a more primitive state of the language. They occur oftenest in Plautus and Terence, in Cicero's philosophical works and letters, in Horace's satires and epistles, and in Juvenal. In general they have been superseded by complex sentences, even in the oldest specimens of the language.

---

**1695. I.** The relation of the two members may not be indicated by the mood, but left to be determined from the context.

Thus, in the combination **amat, sapit**, Pl. *Am.* 995, *he is in love, he shows his sense*, the two members **amat** and **sapit** are alike in form. But in sense, **sapit** is the main member and **amat** is the subordinate member. Just what the relation of the **amat** is, whether it is **sī amat**, *if he is in love*, **cum amat**, *when he is in love*, **quod amat**, *because he is in love*, or **etsī amat**, *though he is in love*, &c., &c., is left to the reader to make out. The following are some of the commonest combinations of this class :

**1696. (1.)** The coordinated member may stand instead of the commoner accusative and infinitive with a verb of perceiving, thinking, knowing, or saying (2175). Such are **crēdō, fateor, opinor, putō, certum est**, &c. : as,

**lūdōs mē facitis, intellegō**, Pl. *Per.* 802, *you are making game of me, I am aware*. **nārrō tibi: plānē relēgātus mihi videor**, Att. 2, 11, 1, *I tell you what, I seem to myself regularly banished*. **spērō, servābit fidem**, Pl. *E.* 124, *I hope he'll keep his word* (2235).

**1697. (2.)** The coordinated member may be a direct question or an exclamation.

Thus (a.) in enquiries calling for an answer : as, **signī dīc quid est**, Pl. *Am.* 421, *tell me, what is there in the shape of seal?* (1251). Or (b.) in ejaculation : as, **viden ut astat furcifer?** Pl. *Most.* 1172, *seest how the knave is bosing there?* **vidēte quaesō, quid potest pecūnia**, Pl. *St.* 410, *see pray how all-commanding money is*. This construction occurs oftenest in comedy, and with an imperative meaning *say, tell, or look*. The subordinate construction is the rule : see 1773.

**1698. (3.)** The coordinated member rarely represents a relative sentence (1816) : as,

**urbs antiqua fuit, Tyrii tenuēre colōnī**, V. 1, 12, *there was an ancient town, which Tyrian settlers held*. **est locus, Hesperiam Grāi cōgnōmine dicunt**, V. 1, 530, *there is a place, the Greeks by name Hesperia call*, imitated from **est locus Hesperiam quam mortālēs perhibēbant**, E. in Macrob. *Sat.* 6, 1, *there is a place which sons of men Hesperia called*.



1699. (4.) The coordinated member may represent a subordinate temporal member: as,

*vēnit hiemps, teritur Sicuōnia bāca trapētis*, V. G. 2, 519, *has winter come, in mills is Sicyon's olive ground* (1860). *vix prōram attigerat, rumpit Sātūrnia fūnem*, V. 12, 650, *scarce had he touched the prow, Saturnia snaps the rope*, i. e. *cum rumpit* (1869). *lūcēbat iam ferē, prōcēdit in medium*, V. 5, 94, *it was just about light, when he presents himself before them*. *fuit ōrnandus in Māniliā lēge Pompēius; temperatā ōrātiōne ōrnandī cōpiam persecūtī sumus*, O. 102, *when I had to glorify Pompey in the matter of the Manilius law, I went through the ample material for glorification in moderate language*.

1700. (5.) The coordinated member may be equivalent to a member with *ut*, expressing result (1965): as,

*iam faxō sciēs*, T. Eu. 663, *I'll let you know at once*, i. e. *sciās* (1712) or *ut sciās* (1965). *iam faxō hīc erunt*, Pl. B. 715, *I'll warrant they shall soon be here*. *adeō rēs rediit, adulēscēntulus vīctus est*, T. Hau. 113, *things came to such a pass the youngster was put down*. *cētera dē genere hōc, adeō sunt multa, loquācem dēlassāre valent Fabium*, H. S. 1, 1, 11, *the other cases of the kind, so plentiful are they, might tire the gabbling Fabius out*. *ita haec ūmōre tīgna pūtent, nōn videor mihi sarcīre posse aedīs meās*, Pl. Most. 146, *so sopping rotten are these joists, I don't think I can patch my house*. *ita avidō ingeniō fuit, numquam indicāre id filiō voluit suō*, Pl. Aul. prol. 9, *so niggardly was he, he'd never point it out to his own son*. *tanta incepta rēs est, haud somnīculōsē hōc agundumst*, Pl. Cap. 327, *so big a job have we begun, not drowsily must this be done*.

1701. (6.) The coordinated member may be equivalent to a conditional protasis: as,

(a.) *fīliam quis habet, pecūniā opus est*, Par. 44, *a man has a daughter, he needs money*. *trīstis es, indīgnor*, O. Tr. 4, 3, 33, *if you are sad, I feel provoked*. (b.) *sī iste ībit, itō; stābit, astātō simul*, Pl. Ps. 863, *if he shall move, move thou; but shall he stand, stand by his side*. *in caelum, iūsseris, ībit*, J. 3, 78, *say but the word, he'll mount the sky*. (c.) *subdūc cibum ūnum diem āthlētae, Iovem Olympium inplōrābit*, TD. 2, 40, *cut off an athlete from his food just a day, he will pray to Jupiter aloft in Olympus* (1574). (d.) *Zēnōnem rogēs, respondeat totidem verbis*, Fin. 4, 69, *you may ask Zeno, he would answer in just as many words* (1556). (e.) *tū quoque māgnam partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Icare, habērēs*, V. 6, 31, *thou too a goodly space in work so vast, had grief allowed, O Icarus, hadst filled* (1559). *at darēs hanc vim M. Crassō, in forō saltāret*, Off. 3, 75, *but had you given this chance to Crassus, he would have capered in the market place* (1559). *nam absque tē esset, hodiē numquam ad sōlem occāsum vīverem*, Pl. Men. 1022, *for were it not for you, I ne'er should live this blessed day till set of sun* (1560). (f.) *ūnā fuissēmus, cōnsilium certē nōn dēfuisset*, Att. 9, 6, 6, *had we been together, we certainly should not have lacked a programme* (1561).

1702. (7.) The coordinated member may be equivalent to a concession: as,

*vincere scīs, Hannibal, vīctōriā ūtī nescīs*, L. 22, 51, 4, *though you know how to conquer, Hannibal, you do not know how to reap the good of victory*. *ergō illī intellegunt quid Epicūrus dīcat, ego nōn intellegō?* Fin. 2, 13, *do those gentlemen then understand what Epicurus means, and I not?*

## *The Intermediate Coordinate Sentence.* [1703-1707.]

1703. (8.) The coordinated member may denote efficient cause or reason: as,

peregrīnus ego sum, Sauream nōn nōvī, Pl. *As.* 464, *I am a stranger, and I don't know Saurea.* mulier ēs, audācter iūrās, Pl. *Am.* 836, *because you are a woman, you are bold to swear.* tacent, satis laudant, T. *Eu.* 476, *their silence is sufficient praise.*

1704. (9.) The coordinated member may represent the protasis of a comparative sentence with ut (1937): as,

ita mē dī ament, honestust, T. *Eu.* 474, *so help me heaven, he is a proper man.* sollicitat, ita vivam, mē tua, mī Tirō, valētūdō, *Fam.* 16, 20, *your health, dear Tiro, keeps me fidgety, as I hope to live.*

1705. II. The subordinate idea is often indicated by the subjunctive of desire coordinated with another verb, usually with one which has a different subject.

Thus, the combination amēs: oportet, *you should love; it is right* (1547), in which the two verbs are used separately, blends into one whole, amēs oportet, *Fin.* 2, 35, *it is right you should love.* The verb with which the subjunctive is coordinated specifies more exactly the general idea of desire contained in the subjunctive itself. The tense of the coordinate subjunctive is regulated by that of the other verb.

1706. The negative employed with coordinated subjunctives is the adverb nē, *not.*

Thus, the combination vidē: nē mē lūdās, *see to it; don't you fool me* (1547), in which the two verbs are used separately, blends into one whole, vidē nē mē lūdās, Pl. *Cur.* 325, *see to it you don't fool me.* Similarly, metuō: nē peccet, *I am afraid; let her not slip up* (1548), becomes metuō nē peccet, Pl. *Per.* 624, *I am afraid she may slip up.* From its frequent use in sentences of subordinate meaning, nē came at an early period to be regarded as a subordinating conjunction also, *lest, that . . . not*, as well as an adverb, and took the place of the less usual ut nē. Hence members with nē are more conveniently treated under the head of subordination (1947).

1707. (1.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of wishing. Such are volō, nōlō, rarely mālō, optō, placet, &c.: as,

animum advortās volō, Pl. *Cap.* 388, *I wish you would pay heed* (1548). quid vīs faciam? T. *Hau.* 846, *what wilt thou I should do?* (1563). vin conmutēmus? tuam ego dūcam et tū meam? Pl. *Tri.* 59, *would you like to swap? I take your wife, and you take mine?* (1563). mālō tē sapiēns hostis metuat, quam stultī cīvēs laudent, L. 22, 39, 20, *I would rather a wise enemy should fear you, than stupid fellow-citizens admire you* (1548). Coordination is the rule with velim, vellem, &c., used in the sense of utinam (1540): as, dē Menedēmō vellem vērūm fuisset, dē rēgīnā velim vērūm sit, *Att.* 15, 4, 4, *about Menedemus I could wish it had been true, about the queen I hope it may be true.* tellūs optem prius īma dehīscat, V. 4, 24, *I would the earth to deepest depths might sooner yawn.* L. Domitius dīxit placēre sibi sentiētiās dē singulis ferrent, *Caes. C.* 3, 83, 3, *Domitius said his view was they should vote on the men separately.*



1708. (2.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of request, entreaty, encouragement, exhortation, charge, direction, command. Such are *precor*, *rogō*, *ōrō*, *petō*, *hortor*, *postulō*, *moneō*, *cēnseō*; *mandō*, *imperō*, *praecipio*, *dēcernō*; and chiefly in old Latin, *iubeō*: as,

(a.) *reddās incolumem precor*, II. 1, 3, 7, *deliver him up safe I pray*. *rogat finem ōrandī faciat*, I, 20, 5, *he requests him to make an end of entreaty*. *ā tē id quod suēstī petō, mē absentem dēfendās*, *Fam.* 15, 8, *I ask you to do as you always do, stand up for me when I am away*. *nōn hortor solum sed etiam rogō atque ōrō, tē colligās virumque praebeās*, *Fam.* 5, 18, 1, *I not only exhort you, but more than that I beg and entreat you, pull yourself together and quit you like a man*. *postulō etiam atque etiam cōsiderēs quō prōgrediāre*, L. 3, 45, 10, *I charge you think again and again what you are coming to*. *tē moneō videās, quid agās. māgnō opere cēnseō, dēsistās*, V. 5, 174, *I advise you to consider what you are doing. I earnestly recommend you to stop*. *hunc admonet iter cautē faciat*, 5, 49, 3, *he warns him he must pursue his march with care*. (b.) *huic mandat Rēmōs adeat*, 3, 11, 2, *he directs him to go to the Remans*. *praecipit ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarus*, 5, 58, 5, *he says they must all concentrate their attack on Indutiomarus*. *huic imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs*, 4, 21, 8, *he orders him to visit such communities as he can*. *senātus dēcrēvit darent operam cōsulēs nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet*, S. C. 29, 2, *the senate decreed the consuls must see to it that the commonwealth received no harm*. *iube maneat*, T. Hau. 737, *tell her she must stay*. *militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium*, 3, 5, 3, *he tells the soldiers they must stop fighting a little while*. *abī, nūntiā patribus urbem Rōmānam mūniant*, L. 22, 49, 10, *go tell the fathers they must fortify Rome town*. *dixī equidem in carcerem irēs*, Pl. St. 624, *I'm sure I told you you must go to jail*. *scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat*, 5, 46, 3, *he writes to Labienus he must come with a legion*. *lēgatiōnem mittunt si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat*, 3, 8, 5, *they send an embassy, if he wishes to get his own men back, he must send back the hostages to them*.

1709. (3.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with expressions of propriety or necessity. Such are *oportet*, *optumum est*, *opus est*, *decet*, *necesse est*.

*mē ipsum amēs oportet, nōn mea*, *Fin.* 2, 85, *it is myself you should love, not my possessions*. *quoniam habēs istum equum, aut ēmerīs oportet, aut hērēditātē possideās, aut surripuerīs necesse est*, *Inv.* 1, 84, *since you are in possession of that horse, you must either have bought him or inherited him, or else you must necessarily have stolen him*. *sed taceam optumumst*, Pl. E. 60, *but I'd best hold my tongue*. *nihil opust resciscat*, Pl. Mer. 1004, *she need n't find it out at all*. *condemnētur necesse est*, RA. 111, *be condemned he needs must*.

1710. (4.) The subjunctive is sometimes coordinated with verbs of permission or concession. Such are *permittō* in Sallust and Livy, *concēdō*, also *sinō*, mostly in the imperative, chiefly in old Latin and poetry, and the impersonal *licet*: as,

*supplēmentum scriberent cōsulēs, permissum*, L. 27, 22, 11, *leave was given that the consuls might fill up the army*. *sine sciam*, L. 2, 40, 5, *let me know*. *sine modo adveniat senex*, Pl. Most. 11, *let but the old man come*. *fremant omnēs licet, dicam quod sentiō*, DO. 1, 195, *though everybody may growl, I will say what I think*.



**1711.** (5.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with the imperative *avē, cavētō, cavēte, beware*, used in the sense of *nē* (1585): as,

*cavē faciās, Att. 13, 33, 4, don't do it. cave dīrumpātis, Pl. Poen. prol. 17, don't break it off* (1075). Often, however, with *nē*.

**1712.** (6.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of giving, persuading, accomplishing, taking care. In this case the subjunctive has the meaning of purpose or result. Such are the imperative *cedo*, and *dō, persuādēō, impetrō, cūrō*, also *faciō*, particularly *fac* and *facitō*: as,

*cedo bibam, Pl. Most. 373, give me to drink. date bibat tībīcinī, Pl. St. 57, give the piper to drink. huic Sp. Albīnus persuādet rēgnū Numīdīae ā senātū petat, S. I. 35, 2, Albinus induces him to ask of the senate the throne of Numidia. tandem inpetrāvī abīret, Pl. Tri. 591, at last I've coaxed him to clear out. fac sciam, Fam. 7, 16, 3, let me know. faxō sciās, Pl. Men. 44, I'll let you know, much oftener sciēs or scībīs (1700). fac bellus evertāre, Fam. 16, 18, 1, mind you come back a beauty* (1579).

**1713.** A subjunctive is now and then loosely coordinated with verbs in general, to indicate the purpose of the action: as,

*ēvocāte hūc Sōsiam, Blepharōnem arcēssat, Pl. Am. 949, call Sosia here, let him fetch Blepharo. clārē advorsum fābulābor, hīc auscultet tuae loquar, Pl. Am. 300, I'll speak distinctly face to face, that he may hear what I shall say. operam hanc subrupuī tībī, ex mē scīrēs, Pl. Am. 523, I did this secretly for you, that you might learn from me. manibus date līlia lēnīs, purpureōs spargam flōrēs, V. 6, 883, lilies in handfals give, I fain would scatter purple flowers, that is, that I may scatter.*

#### THE COMPLEX SENTENCE, OR SUBORDINATION.

**1714.** In a complex sentence, that is one consisting of a main and a subordinate sentence, the subordinate member is introduced by some subordinating word: such are,

I. Interrogative words, in indirect questions; II. Relative pronouns; III. Relative conjunctive particles, or conjunctive particles not of relative origin.

**1715.** Subordinate sentences may have the value of a substantive, usually as subject or as object; of an attributive; or of an adverb or adverbial adjunct: as,

(a.) *eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, 4, 29, 1, it came to pass the same night that there was a full moon. videō quid agās, Fam. 16, 17, I see what you are driving at. (b.) fundus quī est in agrō, quī Sabīnus vocātur, eum meum esse aiō, Mur. 26, the estate which is in the territory which is called Sabine, that I maintain is mine, lawyers' wordiness for fundus Sabīnus. (c.) cum advesperāsceret, ad pōntem Mulvium pervēnērunt, C. 3, 5, when it was getting dark, they reached the Mulvius bridge, i. e. vesperī, or primō vespere.*

1716. Subordinate sentences which express time or place, are called *Temporal* or *Local* sentences; comparison or manner, *Comparative* or *Modal* sentences; condition, cause, or concession, *Conditional*, *Causal*, or *Concessive* sentences; purpose, *Final* sentences; result, *Consecutive* sentences.

1717. In a main sentence, the indicative present, future, and future perfect, and the imperative, are called *Primary Tenses*; the indicative imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect, and the infinitive of intimation, are called *Secondary Tenses*. The perfect definite and the present of vivid narration are sometimes regarded as primary tenses, oftener as secondary tenses.

1718. Verbs which have an implication of futurity, such as those meaning *can*, *ought*, *must*, &c., with an infinitive, also subjunctives of wish (1540) or of exhortation (1547), may be called *Virtual Futures*.

1719. Sometimes the subjunctive serves as a main sentence: see 1762; sometimes a noun of the verb: see 1766.

---

## MOOD OF THE SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.

1720. The indicative and the subjunctive are both used in subordinate sentences, as will be shown in the treatment of the several words of subordination. Some general uses may be mentioned collectively here.

---

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1721. The indicative is ordinarily used in sentences introduced by a relative pronoun, or by a causal conjunctive word other than *cum*.

*pōntem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī, 1, 7, 2, he orders the bridge which was near Geneva torn up. concēdō, quia necesse est, RA. 145, I give up, because I have to.* In sentences of this class, however, the subjunctive is often required, particularly in indirect discourse (1722), or in cases of attraction (1728).

---

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE AND OF ATTRACTION.

1722. The subjunctive is used in relative, causal, temporal, and conditional sentences in indirect discourse, and in cases of attraction.



## Mood of the Subordinate Sentence. [1723-1728.]

1723. A direct quotation or question gives the words of the original speaker without alteration. When the original words of a quotation or question are changed to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted, it is called *Indirect Discourse*.

1724. In the complete form of indirect discourse, the subjunctive is subordinate to an infinitive or an accusative with the infinitive, dependent on a verb of saying or thinking (2175): as,

negat Epicūrus iūcundē posse vivī, nisi cum virtūte vivātur, *TD*. 3, 49, *Epicurus avers there is no living happily, without living virtuously*; directly, iūcundē vivī nōn potest, nisi cum virtūte vivitur. Sōcratēs dicere solēbat, omnēs in eō quod scirent, satis esse ēloquentēs, *DO*. 1, 63, *Socrates used to maintain that all men were eloquent enough in a matter they knew*; directly, omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.

1725. The idea of saying or thinking is often not formally expressed in the main sentence, and the indirect discourse is intimated by the subordinate subjunctive only: as,

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset, *TD*. 4, 44, *Themistocles used to walk the streets nights, 'because he could not sleep,' given as Themistocles's reason*; the writer's would be poterat. Paetus omnēs librōs, quōs frāter suus reliquisset, mihi dōnāvit, *Att*. 2, 1, 12, *Paetus made me a present of all the books 'that his brother had left.'* dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, in ancoris expectāvit, 4, 23, 4, *he waited at anchor till the rest of the vessels should gather there* (2005). pervēnit priusquam Pompēius sentire posset, *Caes*. C. 3, 67, 4, *he got there before Pompey should be able to learn of his coming* (1919). Xerxēs praemium prōposuit, quī invēnisset novam voluptātem, *TD*. 5, 20, *Xerxes offered a reward to anybody who should devise a new form of entertainment* (2110).

1726. A speaker or writer may quote his own thoughts in the indirect form, like another person's: as, haec tibi dictābam post fānum putre Vacūnae, exceptō quod nōn simul essēs, cētera laetus, *H. E.* 1, 10, 49, *I write thee this behind Vacuna's mouldering pile, in all else well, except that thou'rt not here the while* (1601).

1727. Instead of an intimation of indirect discourse by a mere subjunctive, a verb of thinking or saying is sometimes introduced by quī, or especially quod, sometimes by cum, and put illogically itself in the subjunctive: as, litterās, quās mē sibi mīsisse diceret, recitāvit, *Ph*. 2, 7, *he read off a letter, which he said I sent him, i. e. quās mīsissem*. impetrāre nōn potuī, quod religiōne sē impediri dicerent, *Sulpicius in Fam*. 4, 12, 3, *I could not get leave, because they said they were hampered by religious scruple, i. e. quod impedirentur*. cum diceret, *DN*. 3, 83, *saying as he did*. This construction is common in Cicero, somewhat so in Caesar, rare in Sallust.

1728. The subjunctive is used in sentences expressing an essential part of the thought, which are subordinate to another subjunctive, or to an infinitive. This is called the *Subjunctive of Attraction*, or of *Assimilation*: as,



## 1729-1731.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

vereor nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, *Leg. 1, 12, I am afraid I may make the work harder, while I am aiming to make it less.* sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs, quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum, quī vīverent exciperēs, *TD. 1, 9, if you should pronounce only such people unhappy as had to die, you would not except one of those who were living.* mōs est Syrācūsīs, ut sī quā dē rē ad senātum referātur, dīcat sententiam quī velit, *V. 4, 142, it is the custom at Syracuse, that if any question is discussed in the senate, anybody who pleases may express his opinion.* sapiēns nōn dubitat, sī ita melius sit, migrāre dē vītā, *Fin. 1, 62, the sage does not hesitate, if this be the better course, to withdraw from life.* mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in cōntiōne eōs, quī sint in proeliis interfectī, *O. 151, it is the custom in Athens to eulogize in public assembly such as have fallen in action.*

1729. The indicative is kept in subordinate statements added or vouched for by the person reporting, and also in circumlocutions equivalent to a substantive: as,

nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, *1, 38, 1, it was reported that Ariovistus was pressing on to seize Vesontio, which is the most considerable town of the Sequans.* prūdentissima civitās Athēniēnsium, dum ea rērum potita est, fuisse trāditur, *RA. 70, Athens is said to have been passing wise, as long as she held the hegemony.* vīs, quae restant, mē loquī? *T. Andr. 195, wilt have me tell the rest? i. e. rēlicua.* fieri potest, ut id quod sentit politē ēloquī nōn possit, *TD. 1, 6, it may be that he cannot express his thought in polished style, i. e. sententiam suam.*

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.

1730. The subjunctive is sometimes used in relative, temporal, or conditional sentences, to express action repeated or occurring at no particular time: as,

(a.) neque aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem, *6, 11, 4, and if he does not do this, he never has any ascendancy at all over his people.* With the present and perfect, however, this subjunctive is confined principally to the indefinite second person singular (1030): as, bonus sēgnior fit, ubī neglegās, *S. I. 31, 28, the good man always gets slacker, when you are neglectful.* sīquōi mūtuum quid dederis, fit prō propriō perditum, *Pl. Tri. 1050, if you've lent anything to any man, 't is not your own, but lost.* (b.) The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive begin with Catullus and Caesar, and get to be common with Livy and Tacitus: as, sī quis prehenderētur, cōsensū militum ēripiēbātur, *Caes. C. 3, 110, 4, every time a man was taken up, he was rescued by the joint action of the rank and file.* quemcumque lictor prēndisset, tribūnus mitti iubēbat, *L. 3, 11, 2, every man the lictor arrested, a tribune would order released.*

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE AS IN THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1731. The subjunctive of wish, of action conceivable, or of interrogation, is sometimes used in a subordinate sentence exactly as in main sentences: as,

## Tense of the Subordinate Sentence. [1732-1735.]

haec diē nātālī meō scrīpsī, quō utinam susceptus nōn essem, *Att.* 11, 9, 3, *this I have written on my birthday, on which day I wish I had never been lifted from the ground* (1544). ut videās, *Lucr.* 3, 348, *so that you can see* (1556). neque id faciō, ut fōrsitan quibusdam videar, simulātiōne, *Fam.* 1, 8, 2, *nor do I do it, as perhaps I may seem to some to do, from hypocrisy* (1556). etiamst paucīs vōs quod monitōs voluerim, *Pl. Cap.* 53, *there's one point more, on which I'd have you briefly warned* (1558). erant ēiusmodī sitūs oppidōrum, ut neque pedibus aditum habērent neque nāvibus, quod minuyente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur, 3, 12, 1, *the towns were so situated that there was no access to them by land, nor by boat either, because at ebb tide vessels would pound on the shoals* (1559). vix erat hōc imperātum, cum illum spoliātum vidērēs, *V.* 4, 86, *hardly was the order from his lips, when you might have seen the man stript* (1559). quō mē vertam nesciō, *Clu.* 4, *I don't know which way to turn* (1563).

### TENSE OF THE SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.

#### THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

**1732.** I. The tense of a subordinate indicative often indicates a close relation of time with the tense of the leading verb, particularly in cases of repeated contemporaneous or antecedent action. The subordinate sentence in such combinations is said to have *Relative* time.

**1733.** (1.) The subordinate indicative tense may express action concurrent with the main action. Two concurrent sentences are usually put in the same tense.

Concurrent action is said to be (a.) *congruent*, when two actions merely cover the same time: as, dum legō, adsentior, *TD.* 1, 24, *as long as I am reading, I assent.* dum necesse erat, ūnus omnia poterat, *RA.* 139, *so long as it had to be, one man controlled the world.* dum Latinae loquentur litterae, quercus huic locō nōn deerit, *Leg.* 1, 2, *as long as Latin literature has the gift of speech, this spot will not lack its oak.* vixit, dum vixit, bene, *T. Hec.* 461, *he lived well all the time he lived.* quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, 4, 12, 5, *as long as he could, he made a manful stand.* Or (b.) *coincident*, when one action is virtually the same as the other: as, cum tacent, clāmant, *C.* 1, 21, *while they are dumb, they cry out, i. e. their silence is as telling as a shout.* fēcistī mihi pergrātum, quod Serāpiōnis librum misistī, *Att.* 2, 4, 1, *you have obliged me very much by sending Serapio's book.*

**1734.** (2.) The subordinate indicative tense may express action contemporaneous, antecedent, or subsequent, in relation to the main action.

**1735.** (a.) Action contemporaneous with a main present is expressed by a present, with a main future or virtual future, by a future, with a main secondary tense by an imperfect: as,



quod est, eō decet ūtī, *CM.* 27, *what you have, that you should avail yourself of.* hōrologium mittam, sī erit sūdum, *Fam.* 16, 18, 3, *I will send the clock, if it is pleasant* (1625). paulātīm dabis, sī sapiēs, *T. Hau.* 870, *you'll give in driblets, if you are wise.* cum relaxāre animōs volent, caveant intemperantiam, *Off.* 1, 122, *when they want to unbend, let them beware of excess* (1625; 1718). omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, 4, 29, 4, *they were out of everything that was serviceable for repairing their vessels.*

1736. (b.) Action antecedent to a main present is expressed by a perfect, to a main future or virtual future by a future perfect, to a main secondary tense by a pluperfect: as,

quōcumque aspexistī tuae tibi occurrunt iniūriae, *Par.* 18, *wherever you turn your gaze, you are confronted by your own abominable acts.* cum posuī librum, adsēnsiō omnis ēlābitur, *TD.* 1, 24, *when I drop the book, all assent melts away* (1860). quicquid fēceris, adprobābō, *Fam.* 3, 3, 2, *no matter what you do, I shall think it well* (1626). ut quisque istius animū offenderat, in lautumiās statim coniciēbātur, *V.* 5, 143, *any man that wounded his sensibilities was always flung into the quarries without any ado.*

1737. (c.) Action subsequent to a main present is expressed by the future participle with a present form of **sum**, to a main future or virtual future by the future participle with a future form of **sum**, and to a main secondary tense by the future participle with an imperfect form of **sum**: as,

decem diēs sunt ante lūdōs, quōs Cn. Pompēius factūrus est, *V. a. pr.* 31, *there are ten days before the shows which Pompey is to manage.* attentōs faciēmus, sī dēmōnstrābimus ea, quae dictūrī erimus, māgna esse, *Inv.* 1, 23, *we shall make people attentive if we show that what we are going to say is important.* rēx, quia nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat, Māgnēsiam concessit, *L.* 36, 43, 9, *as the king was not to have a hand in the action at sea, he moved off to Magnesia.*

1738. II. A subordinate indicative tense is said to be *Independent* when it simply expresses time of its own, without any close relation to the time of the main action.

Such independent tenses may denote general present action: as, **ibam** fōrte viā sacrā, sicut meus est mōs, *H. S.* 1, 9, 1, *in Sacred Street, as is my wont, I happened to be promenading* (relatively, **erat** mōs, 1735). **nōn** mē appellābis, sī sapis, *Pl. Most.* 515, *you won't address me, if you have sense* (relatively, sī sapiēs, 1735). Or past action, either continuous, completed, or indefinite: as, **ut** mōs fuit Bīthyniae rēgibus, lecticā ferēbātur, *V.* 5, 27, *he regularly rode in a litter, as was the practice of the despots of Bithynia*; here **fuit** denotes action simply as past, without further definition of time (1603), whereas **erat**, relative to the time of **ferēbātur**, would imply *which was then the practice* (1595).

1739. With **dum**, *in the time while*, an independent present is used: see 1995. With **postquam**, &c., *after*, an independent perfect is used of a single action; see 1925.



## *Tense of the Subordinate Sentence.* [1740–1746.]

### THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1740. Subordinate subjunctive sentences were originally independent coordinate sentences, in the tense required to express the thought. By degrees the subordinate sentence blended closely with the main sentence, and the combination of the two was regarded as one whole.

1741. I. The time of the subordinate subjunctive is usually *Relative*, that is either contemporaneous, antecedent, or subsequent, in relation to that of the main action.

1742. Action contemporaneous with the main action is expressed by a present or imperfect subjunctive. Action antecedent is expressed by a perfect or a pluperfect subjunctive. Action subsequent is expressed by the future participle with a form of **sim** or of **essem**.

1743. Subordinate sentences with verbs of will or aim, with verbs of fear, also final sentences and many consecutive sentences are expressed in Latin as contemporaneous with the main action, not as subsequent to it.

1744. II. The main and subordinate sentences may express wholly different spheres of time by tenses not commonly used together, when the thought requires it. In such cases the tense of the subordinate member is called *Independent*, like the analogous tenses of the indicative (1738).

1745. The use of subordinate subjunctive tenses relatively to the main tense, or what is commonly called the *Sequence of Tenses*, is as follows :

### TENSE SUBORDINATE TO AN INDICATIVE.

1746. (1.) The present, or perfect subjunctive, or the future participle with a form of **sim**, is used in sentences subordinate to a primary tense (1717): as,

(a.) *tē hortor, ut Rōmam pergās, QFr. 1, 3, 4, I urge you to repair to Rome. cūrā, ut quam primum veniās, Fam. 4, 10, 1, mind that you come as soon as you can. ego quid accēperim sciō, RA. 58, I know what I have received. quam sum sollicitus quidnam futūrum sit, Att. 8, 6, 3, how anxious I am to know what in the world is to come.* (b.) *in eum locum rēs dēducta est ut salvī esse nequeāmus, Fam. 16, 12, 1, to such a pass has it come that we cannot be saved. an oblītus es quid initiō dīxerim? DN. 2, 2, have you possibly forgotten what I said at the start? quoniam in eam ratiōnem vitāe nōs fōrtūna dēdūxit, ut sempiternus sermō dē nōbīs futūrus sit, caveāmus, QFr. 1, 1, 38, since fortune has set us in such a walk of life that we are to be eternally talked about, let us be on our guard.* (c.) *efficiam, ut intellegātis, Clu. 7, I will see that you understand. dīcent quid statuerint, V. 2, 175, they will tell what they decided on. quae fuerit causa, mox viderō, Fin. 1, 35, what the reason was I won't consider till by and by (1630). tē disertum putābō, sī ostenderis quō modō sis eōs inter sicāriōs dēfēnsūrus, Ph. 2, 8, I shall think you a most effective speaker, if you show how you are going to defend them on the charge of murder.*

## 1747-1751.] Sentences : The Subordinate Sentence.

**1747.** (2.) The imperfect, or pluperfect subjunctive, or the future participle with a form of **essem**, is used in sentences subordinate to a secondary tense (1717) : as,

(a.) *hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut minus lātē vagārentur*, 1, 2, 4, *so it came to pass that they did not roam round much.* *docēbat, ut tōtius Galliae principātum Aeduī tenuissent*, 1, 43, 6, *he showed how the Aeduans had had the mastery over all Gaul.* *Flaccus quid aliī posteā factūrī essent scīre nōn poterat*, *Fl.* 33, *Flaccus could not tell what other people would do in the future.* (b.) *is cīvitatī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent*, 1, 2, 1, *this man prevailed on his community to emigrate from their place of abode, bag and baggage.* *quās rēs in Hispāniā gessisset, disseruit*, *L.* 28, 38, 2, *he discoursed on his military career in Spain.* *an Lacedaemoniī quaesivērunt num sē esset morī prohibitūrus?* *TD.* 5, 42, *did the Spartans ask whether he was going to prevent them from dying?* (c.) *Ariovistus tantōs sibī spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur*, 1, 33, 5, *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs that he seemed intolerable.* *hīc pāgus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, *L.* Cassium cōsulem interfēcērat, 1, 12, 5, *this canton, sallying out from home in our fathers' recollection, had put Cassius, the consul, to death.* *illud quod mihi extrēmum prōposueram, cum essem de bellī genere dictūrus*, *IP.* 17, *the point I had reserved till the end, when I was going to discourse on the character of the war.*

**1748.** With any kind of a secondary main sentence, a subordinate general truth usually stands in the past, contrary to the English idiom : as,

*hīc cōgnōscī licuit, quantum esset hominibus praesidiī in animī firmitūdine*, *Caes. C.* 3, 28, 4, *here there was a chance to learn what a bulwark man has in courage.* In the direct form *est* (1588).

**1749.** A subsequent relation is sometimes loosely suggested by a simple subjunctive; necessarily so with verbs which lack the future participle, or which are in the passive : as, *sum sollicitus quidnam dē prōvinciīs dēcernātur*, *Fam.* 2, 11, 1, *I am anxious to see what in the world may be decided on about the provinces.*

**1750.** In a single example, a future perfect of resulting state is represented in subordination as follows : *nec dubitō quīn cōfecta iam rēs futūra sit*, *Fam.* 6, 12, 3, *and I have no doubt the job will soon be completely finished up*, directly, *sine dubiō cōfecta iam rēs erit.*

**1751.** (1.) An imperfect subjunctive expressing a particular past result, cause, reason, &c., is sometimes connected with a main general present tense (1744) : as,

*cūius praeceptī tanta vīs est, ut ea Delphicō deō tribuerētur*, *Leg.* 1, 58, *the power of this rule is so mighty that it was ascribed to the Delphic god.* *cūius rēi tanta est vīs, ut Ithacam illam sapientissimus vir immortalitātī antepōneret*, *DO.* 1, 196, *so irresistible is the power of this sentiment that the shrewdest of men loved his little Ithaca better than life eternal ;* of Ulixes. *laudantur orātōrēs veterēs quod crīmina diluere dilucidē solērent*, *V.* 2, 191, *the orators of old are admired 'because they were always clear in explaining accusations away.'* The secondary sequence is also sometimes exceptionally used with ordinary presents.



## *Tense of the Subordinate Sentence.* [1752-1756.]

**1752. (2.)** The present of vivid narration is commonly regarded as a secondary tense, especially when the subordinate sentence precedes, and regularly with narrative *cum*. Sometimes however as a primary tense: as,

(a.) *servīs suīs Rubrius, ut iānuam clauderent, imperat, V. 1, 66, Rubrius orders his slaves to shut the front door. Aeduī, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, I, 11, 2, the Aeduans, finding they could not defend themselves, send some envoys to Caesar. (b.) hortātur, ut arma capiant, 7, 4, 4, he urges them to fly to arms. Sometimes the two sequences stand side by side, or a subjunctive of primary sequence has itself a second subordinate subjunctive of secondary sequence. Either sequence is used with the present of quotation also (1592).*

**1753. (3.)** Subordinate sentences of past action conceivable, of action non-occurrent, or dubitative questions of the past, retain their past unchanged with a main primary tense: as,

(a.) *vērī simile nōn est, ut ille monumentīs māiōrum pecūniam antepōneret, V. 4, 11, it is not conceivable that the man would have thought more of money than of his heirlooms, i. e. nōn antepōneret (1559). (b.) omnia sic erunt inlūstria, ut ad ea probanda tōtam Siciliam testem adhibēre possem, V. 5, 139, everything will be so self-evident, that I could use all Sicily as a witness to prove it (1560). taceō, nē haec quidem conligō, quae fōrtasse valērent apud iūdicem, Lig. 30, I'll hold my tongue, I won't even gather together the following arguments, which might perhaps be telling with a juryman (1560). (c.) quaerō ā tē cūr C. Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem, Vat. 5, I put the question to you, why I was not to defend Cornelius (1563).*

**1754.** A final subjunctive subordinate to a perfect definite sometimes has the primary sequence, but more commonly the secondary: as,

(a.) *etiamne ad subsellia cum ferrō vēnistis, ut hīc iugulētis Sex. Rōscium? RA. 32, have you actually come to the court-room knife in hand, to cut Roscius's throat on the spot? (b.) nē ignōrārētis esse aliquās pācis vōbīs condiōnēs, ad vōs vēnī, L. 21, 13, 2, I have come to you to let you know that you have some chances of peace. addūxī hominem in quō satis facere exteris nātiōibus possētis, V. a. pr. 2, I have brought up a man in whose person you can give satisfaction to foreign nations.*

**1755.** An independent present or perfect subjunctive is sometimes exceptionally put with a main secondary tense (1744):

**1756. (1.)** In relative, causal, or concessive sentences: as,

*cum in cēteris colōniīs duūm viri appellentur, hī sē praetōrēs appellārī volēbant, Agr. 2, 93, though they are styled in all other colonies The Two, these men wanted to be styled praetors. quī adulēscēns nihil umquam nisi sevērissimē et gravissimē fēcerit, is eā aetāte saltāvit? D. 27, did the man who in his growing years invariably behaved with austere propriety, dance and caper round in his old age? hōc tōtō proeliō cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, I, 26, 2, during the whole of this engagement, though the fighting went on from an hour past noon till evening, nobody could catch a glimpse of an enemy's back.*



1757. (2.) In consecutive sentences: as,

(a.) in prōvinciā Siciliā, quam iste per triennium ita vēxāvit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit, *V. a. pr. 12, in the province of Sicily, which the defendant so effectually tormented three years running that it cannot be restored at all to its original estate.* priōrēs ita rēgnārunt, ut omnēs conditōrēs partium certē urbis numerentur, *L. 2, 1, 2, such was the administration of the monarchs preceding, that they are all accounted founders of parts at least of Rome.* (b.) The perfect subjunctive sometimes represents the time of the perfect definite: as, tantum in aerarium pecuniae invēxit, ut ūnius imperatōris praeda finem attulerit tribūtōrum, *Off. 2, 76, he conveyed such quantities of money into the treasury, that the plunder turned in by a single commander has put an end to tribute for good and all.* eō ūsque sē praebēbat patientem atque impigrum, ut eum nēmō umquam in equō sedentem viderit, *V. 5, 27, he showed himself so indefatigably active that no human being has ever seen him astride a horse.* Sometimes the time of the historical perfect: as, temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, ut ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit, *2, 21, 5, so scant was the time that they had not time to put their helmets on.* hīc ita quiēvit, ut eō tempore omnī Neāpolī fuerit, *Sull. 17, this man held so quiet that he staid all that time at Neapolis.* In Cicero a negative subordinate perfect is not uncommon; an affirmative one is very rare. This construction is more common in Nepos, Livy, and Tacitus, and is the prevalent one in Suetonius.

1758. The imperfect only is used in complementary sentences with past verbs of happening, such as accidit, contigit, &c. (1966).

1759. When two consecutive subjunctives are coordinated, they usually have the same tense. Sometimes however the first is perfect and the second imperfect, or the reverse.

1760. (3.) An indirect question in the present or perfect sometimes retains its original tense with a main secondary tense (1744): as,

hīc quantum in bellō fōrtūna possit, cōgnōscī potuit, *6, 35, 2, here there was a chance to see how potent dame Fortune is in war.* Here possit represents potest of a general truth (1588); but usually general truths have the regular sequence (1748). cūr abstinuerit spectāculō ipse, variē trahēbant, *Ta. 1, 76, why the emperor did not go to the show, they accounted for in this way and that,* representing cūr abstinuit? quō cōsiliō redierim initiō audistis, post estis expertī, *Ph. 10, 8, what my idea was in coming back, you learned first by hearsay, afterwards by personal observation,* representing quō cōsiliō rediī?

1761. The subordinate subjunctive has sometimes the sequence of the nearest verb, instead of that of its proper verb: as, cūrāvit, quod semper in rē publicā tenendum est, nē plūrimum valeant plūrimī, *RP. 2, 39, he arranged it so, a point which is always to be held fast in government, that the greatest number may not have the greatest power.*

## TENSE SUBORDINATE TO A SUBJUNCTIVE.

1762. When the leading verb is a subjunctive, the present is regarded as primary, and the imperfect and pluperfect as secondary: as,

## Tense of the Subordinate Sentence. [1763-1766.]

(a.) *exspectō ēius modī litterās ex quibus nōn quid fiat, sed quid futūrum sit sciam*, *Att.* 5, 12, 2, *I am expecting a letter of a kind to let me know not what is going on, but what will be going on.* *quid prōfēcērim faciās nē velim certiōrem*, *Fam.* 7, 10, 3, *how far I have succeeded I wish you would let me know.* (b.) *quālis esset nātūra mōntis quī cōgnōscerent nīsīt*, *I.* 21, 1, *he sent some scouts to find out what the character of the mountain was.* *quid mē prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, sī probārem quae dīceret*, *Fin.* 1, 27, *what would prevent me from being an Epicurean, if I accepted what he said?* *quae sī bis bīna quot essent didicisset Epicūrus, certē nōn dīceret*, *DN.* 2, 49, *Epicurus would certainly not say this, if he had ever been taught how much twice two is* (1748).

1763. An imperfect subjunctive of action non-occurrent at the present time has occasionally the present sequence: *as, mīrārēris, sī interessēs, quā patientiā valētūdinem toleret*, *Plin. Ep.* 1, 22, 7, *you would be amazed to find, if you were with him, with what dogged endurance he bears up under his illness.* But the secondary sequence is far more common.

1764. (1.) The perfect subjunctive in independent main sentences of prohibition (1551) or of action conceivable (1558) is regarded as a primary tense: *as,*

*nē dubitārīs quīn id mihī futūrum sit antīquius*, *Att.* 7, 3, 2, *don't entertain any doubt that this course will be preferable in my eyes.* *quid nōn sit citius quam quid sit dīxerim*, *DN.* 1, 60, *I could sooner tell what is not, than what is.*

1765. (2.) In subordinate sentences, the perfect subjunctive has the main sequence when it represents the indicative perfect definite, and the secondary when it represents the indicative historical perfect or the imperfect: *as,*

(a.) *nēmō ferē vestrūm est, quīn, quem ad modum captae sint Syracūsae saepe audierit*, *V.* 4, 115, *there is hardly a man of your number but has heard over and over again how Syracuse was taken.* (b.) *quā rē acciderit ut id suspicārēre quod scrībīs nesciō*, *Fam.* 2, 16, 1, *how it came to pass that you suspected what you write, I can't imagine.*

### TENSE SUBORDINATE TO A NOUN OF THE VERB.

1766. (1.) A subjunctive subordinate to one of the nouns of the verb, except the perfect infinitive or the perfect participle, follows the sequence of the verb: *as,*

*dēsīnō quaerere cūr ēmerīs*, *V.* 4, 10, *I cease to ask why you bought.* *nēmīnem tam āmentem fore putāvērunt, ut emeret argentum*, *V.* 4, 9, *they did not dream anybody would be crazy enough to buy plate.* *secūrī percussī, adeō torpentibus metū quī aderant, ut nē gemitus quidem exaudīrētur*, *L.* 28, 29, 11, *they were beheaded, everybody there being so completely paralyzed with fear that not even a groan could be heard.* *Q. Fabius Pictor Delphōs missus est scīscitātum, quibus precibus deōs possent plācāre*, *L.* 22, 57, 5, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi to find out by what sort of prayers they could get the ear of the gods.* *cupīdō incessit animōs iuvenū scīscīandī ad quem eōrum rēgnūm esset ventūrum*, *L.* 1, 56, 10, *the youths were possessed with a desire to find out to which one of their number the throne was to fall.*



1767. (2.) With a perfect infinitive or perfect participle, the subordinate subjunctive may be in the imperfect or pluperfect, even with a primary leading verb: as,

satis mihi multa verba fecisse videor, quā rē esset hōc bellum necessārium, *IP. 27, I fancy I have said enough to show why this war is unavoidable.* hunc isti aiunt, cum taurum immolāvisset, mortuum concidisse, *Br. 43, your gentlemen say that this man, after sacrificing a bull, tumbled down dead.* viātor bene vestitus causa grassatōri fuisse dicētur cūr ab eō spoliārētur, *Fat. 34, a well-dressed traveller will be said to have been a temptation for a footpad to rob him.* versābor in rē saepe quaesitā, suffrāgia clam an palam ferre melius esset, *Leg. 3, 33, I shall be working on a question that has often been put, whether it was better to vote secretly or openly.*

1768. The sequence with a perfect infinitive is, however, often primary: as, hīc sī finem faciam dicendī, satis iūdicī fecisse videar cūr secundum Rōscium iūdicārī dēbeat, *RC. 14, if I should stop speaking here, I should feel I had made it plain enough to the court why a judgement should be rendered for Roscius.*

1769. The secondary sequence is used with meminī, *remember*, even when it has the present infinitive (2220): as, L. Metellum meminī ita bonis esse viribus extrēmō tempore aetātis, ut adulescentiam nōn requireret, *CM. 30, I can remember Metellus's being so good and strong in the very last part of his life that he did not feel the want of youth.*

---

1770. Sentences with a subjunctive due to another subjunctive or to an infinitive are put as follows:

1771. (1.) Sentences of relative time express contemporaneous, antecedent, and subsequent action like corresponding indicative sentences, with the appropriate sequence: as,

vereor, nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, *Leg. 1, 12, I am afraid that while I wish to make the work less, I may make it more.* crocodilōs dicunt, cum in terrā partum ediderint, obruere ova, *DN. 2, 129, they say that the crocodile, after laying on land, buries her eggs.* dicēbam quoad metuerēs, omnia tē prōmissūrum: simul ac timēre desissēs, similem tē futurum tuī, *Ph. 2, 89, I said that as long as you were afraid, you would promise everything; the moment you ceased to fear, you would be just like yourself.* cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, *I, 3, 1, they resolved to get such things ready as were necessary for the march.* erat scriptum: nisi domum reverterētur, sē capitis eum damnātūrōs, *N. 4, 3, 4, it stood written that, if he did not come back home, they would condemn him to death* (direct form nisi revertēris, damnābimus). lēgātī vērē-runt, quī sē ea, quae imperāset, factūrōs pollicērentur, *4, 22, 1, some envoys came, to engage to do what he ordered* (direct form quae imperāris, faciēmus). Venetī cōfidēbant Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubī bellum gestūrī essent portūs nōvisse, *3, 19, 6, the Venetians felt assured that the Romans had not any proper supply of ships, and were not acquainted with the ports in the places where they were to fight.*

1772. (2.) Sentences with independent time retain the independent time in the subjunctive in primary sequence (1744); in secondary sequence the present becomes imperfect, and the perfect becomes pluperfect: as,



(a.) quamquam opīniō est, eum quī multīs annīs ante hōs fuerit, Pisistratum, multum valuisse dīcendō, *Br.* 27, *though there is an impression that the man who lived years and years before these people, Pisistratus, was a very telling orator* (direct form, quī fuit, 1738). dīcitur, postea quam vēnerit, paucīs diēbus esse mortuus, *Clu.* 175, *he is said to have died a few days after he came* (1739). (b.) cōgnōvit Suēbōs, postea quam pōntem fierī comperissent, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, 4, 19, 2, *he ascertained that after the Suebians had learned of the building of the bridge, they had sent out messengers in every direction.*

## THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

**1773.** The subjunctive is used in indirect questions or exclamations.

Thus, when the direct question, quī scīs, *how do you know?* is subordinated to a main sentence, such as quaerō, *I ask*, the scīs becomes sciās: quaerō quī sciās, *RA.* 59, *I ask how you know.* Questions or exclamations thus subordinated are called *Indirect* (1723). In English, indirect questions are usually characterized simply by the position of the words, the subject standing before the verb.

**1774.** The indirect question is one of the commonest of constructions. It depends on verbs or expressions meaning not only *ask*, but also *tell*, *inform*, *ascertain*, *see*, *hear*, *know*, *consider*, *deliberate*, *doubt*, *wonder*, *fear*, &c., &c.

## YES OR NO QUESTIONS.

**1775.** Indirect Yes or No questions are introduced by the same interrogative particles that are used in direct questions (1503). But in indirect questions, num and -ne are used without any essential difference, in the sense of *whether*, *if*. nōnne is used thus only by Cicero, and by him only with quaerō: as,

quaeris num disertus sit? *Planc.* 62, *do you ask whether he is a good speaker?* quaesivī cōgnōsceretne signum, *C.* 3, 10, *I asked if he recognized the seal.* quaerō nōnne tibi faciendum idem sit, *Fin.* 3, 13, *I ask whether you ought not to do the same.* vidēte num dubitandum vōbīs sit, *IP.* 19, *consider whether you ought to have any hesitation.*

**1776.** The combinations -ne . . . -ne, and an . . . an, introducing two separate questions, are rare; -ne . . . -ne is mostly confined to poetry. In a few instances such questions can hardly be distinguished from alternatives.

**1777.** A conditional protasis with sī, *if*, *to see if*, or sī fōrte, *if perchance*, sometimes takes the place of an indirect question in expressions or implications of trial, hope, or expectation: as, ibō, visam sī domist, *T. Hau.* 170, *I'll go and see if he's at home.* Usually with the subjunctive: as, expectābam, sī quid scriberēs, *Att.* 16, 2, 4, *I was waiting to see whether you would write anything.* circumfunduntur hostēs, sī quem aditum reperire possent, 6, 37, 4, *the enemy came streaming round, to see if they could find any way of getting in.*

## ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS.

1778. Indirect alternative questions are introduced like direct questions (1519). But when the second member is negative, it has oftener **necne** than **an nōn**: as,

**hōc quaerāmus, vērū sit an falsum**, *Clu.* 124, *let us ask this question, whether it is true or false.* **quaesivī ā Catilinā in conventū fuisset, necne**, *C.* 2, 13, *I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting or not.* **permultum interest utrum perturbātiōne animī, an cōsultō fiat iniūria**, *Off.* 1, 27, *it makes a vast difference whether wrong be done in heat of passion, or with deliberate intent.* **quaerō, eum Brūtine similem mālīs an Antōnīi**, *Ph.* 10, 5, *I ask whether you would rather have him like Brutus or like Antony.*

1779. An introductory **utrum** preceding an alternative question with **-ne** and **an** occurs a few times in Plautus and Cicero; **utrumne . . . an** occurs once in Cicero, and twice in Horace and Tacitus each; compare 1522. After **utrum**, a second alternative is sometimes suppressed, as in the direct question (1523).

1780. **-ne** in the second member only of an alternative question is rare, and not used by Caesar or Sallust: as, **sine sciam captīva māterne sim**, *L.* 2, 40, 5, *let me know whether I am a captive or a mother.*

1781. (1.) A few times in Plautus and Terence, the second member only of an alternative question is expressed with **quī sciō an?** or **quī scīs an?** equivalent to *perhaps*: as, **quī scīs an quae iubeam faciat?** *T. Eu.* 790, *perhaps she'll do as I direct.* Horace has once **quī scīs an**, *AP.* 462, in the sense of *perhaps*, and once **quis scit an**, 4, 7, 17, in the sense of *perhaps not*.

1782. (2.) The second member only of an alternative question is often expressed after **haud sciō an**, *I don't know but, possibly, perhaps*, with **nōn**, **nēmō**, **nūllus**, &c., if the sentence is negative: as,

**haud sciō an fierī possit**, *V.* 3, 162, *I don't know but it is possible.* Similarly, though not often, with **nesciō an**, **haud sciam an**, **dubitō an**, **dubitārim an**, **dubium an**, **incertum an**, &c.: as, **ēloquentiā nesciō an habuisset parem nēmīnem**, *Br.* 126, *in oratory I fancy he would have had no peer.* This use, in which **haud sciō an** becomes adverbial, and the subjunctive approaches closely that of modest assertion, is principally confined to Cicero. In later Latin, **haud sciō an**, &c., sometimes has a negative sense, *I don't know whether*, with **ūllus**, &c.

1783. From Curtius on, **an** is used quite like **num** or **-ne**, in a single indirect question, without implication of alternatives.

1784. Two alternatives are rarely used without any interrogative particles at all: as, **velit nōlit scīre difficile est**, *QFr.* 3, 8, 4, *will he nill he, it is hard to know*, i. e. whether he will or not. Compare 1518.

## PRONOUN QUESTIONS.

1785. Indirect pronoun questions are introduced by the same pronominal words that are used in direct pronoun questions (1526): as,

**cōgnōscit, quae gerantur**, 5, 48, 2, *he ascertains what is going on.* **vidētis ut omnēs dēspiciat**, *RA.* 135, *you can see how he looks down on everybody.* **quid agās et ut tē oblectēs scīre cupiō**, *QFr.* 2, 3, 7, *I am eager to know how you do and how you are amusing yourself.*



ORIGINAL SUBJUNCTIVES.

1786. Questions already in the subjunctive may also become indirect.

Thus, *quō mē vertam?* *V.* 5, 2, *which way shall I turn?* (1563) becomes indirect in *quō mē vertam nesciō*, *Clu.* 4, *I don't know which way I am to turn.* *quid faciam?* *H. S.* 2, 1, 24, *what shall I do?* (1563) becomes indirect in *quid faciam*, *praescribe*, *H. S.* 2, 1, 5, *lay down the law, what I'm to do.* *neque satis cōstābat quid agerent*, 3, 14, 3, *and it was not at all clear what they had best do.* *dubitāvī hōsce hominēs emerem an nōn emerem*, *Pl. Cap.* 455, *I had my doubts, whether to buy these men or not to buy* (1564).

INDICATIVE QUESTIONS APPARENTLY INDIRECT.

1787. In old Latin, the indicative occurs often in connections where the subjunctive would be used in classical Latin: as,

*dīc, quis est*, *Pl. B.* 558, *say, who is it?* whereas *dīc quis sit* would mean *say who it is*. In such cases the question is not subordinate, but coordinate, usually with an imperative (1697), or with some such expression as *tē rogō*, *volō scīre*, *scīn*, or the like. Such coordination occurs exceptionally in the classical period: as, *et vidē, quam conversa rēs est*, *Att.* 8, 13, 2, *and observe, how everything is changed.* *adspice, ut ingreditur*, *V.* 6, 856, *see, how he marches off.*

1788. The indicative is used with *nesciō* followed by a pronominal interrogative, when this combination is equivalent to an indefinite pronoun or adverb: as,

*prōdit nesciō quis*, *T. Ad.* 635, *there's some one coming out.* This is a condensed form for *prōdit nesciō quis sit*, *there's coming out I don't know who it is*, the real question, *sit*, being suppressed, and *nesciō quis* acquiring the meaning of *aliquis*, *somebody*. Similarly *nesciō* with *unde*, *ubī*, *quandō*, *quot*, &c., in writers of all ages. Plautus uses *sciō quid*, *sciō ut*, &c., somewhat in this way once or twice with the indicative: as, *scio quid agō*, *B.* 78, *I'm doing I know what.*

1789. This combination often expresses admiration, contempt, or regret: as, *contendō tum illud nesciō quid praeclārum solēre existere*, *Arch.* 16, *I maintain that in such a combination the beau ideal of perfection always bursts into being.* *paulum nesciō quid*, *RA.* 115, *an unconsidered trifle.* *dīvīsa est sententia, postulante nesciō quō*, *Mil.* 14, *the question was divided, on motion of what's his name.* *nesciō quō pactō*, *C.* 31, *unfortunately.*

1790. The indicative is used in like manner with many expressions, originally exclamatory, which have become adverbs: such are *immāne quantum*, *prodigiously*, *mīrum quantum*, *wonderfully*, *sānē quam*, *immensely*, &c., &c. See 712 and the dictionary.

1791. Relative constructions often have the appearance of indirect questions, and care must be taken not to confound the two. Thus, *ut* is a relative in *hanc rem, ut factast, ēloquar*, *Pl. Am.* 1129, *I'll tell this thing as it occurred*, i. e. not *how it occurred*. *nōstī quae sequuntur*, *TD.* 4, 77, *you know the things that follow*, i. e. not *what follows*.



## THE RELATIVE SENTENCE.

**1792.** Relative sentences are introduced by relative words, the most important of which is the pronoun **quī**, *who*, *which*, or *that*. The relative pronoun may be in any case required by the context, and may represent any of the three persons.

**1793.** The relative adverbs, **ubī**, **quō**, **unde**, often take the place of a relative pronoun with a preposition, chiefly in designations of place, and regularly with town and island names. Less frequently of persons, though **unde** is not uncommonly thus used.

**1794.** In a wider sense, sentences introduced by any relative conjunctive particle, such as **ubī**, *when*, are sometimes called relative sentences. Such sentences, however, are more conveniently treated separately, under the head of the several conjunctive particles.

**1795.** (1.) The relative pronoun, like the English relative *who*, *which*, was developed from the interrogative. Originally, the relative sentence precedes, and the main sentence follows, just as in question and answer.

Thus, **quae mūtāt, ea corrumpit**, *Fin. 1, 21, what he changes, that he spoils*, is a modification of the older question and answer: **quae mūtāt? ea corrumpit**, *what does he change? that he spoils*. With adjective relatives, the substantive is expressed in both members, in old or formal Latin: as, **quae rēs apud nostrōs nōn erant, eārum rērum nōmina nōn poterant esse ūsitāta**, *Cornif. 4, 10, what things did not exist among our countrymen, of those things the names could not have been in common use*.

**1796.** (2.) The relative sentence may also come last. As early as Plautus, this had become the prevalent arrangement, and the substantive of the main sentence is called the *Antecedent*: as,

**ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, castrīs idō-neum locum dēlēgit**, *1, 49, 1, beyond the place in which place the Germans had established themselves, he selected a suitable spot for his camp*. The three words **diēs**, **locus**, and **rēs**, are very commonly expressed thus both in the antecedent and the relative sentence. This repetition is rare in Livy, and disappears after his time.

**1797.** In old Latin, rarely in classical poetry, a sentence sometimes begins with an emphasized antecedent put before the relative, and in the case of the relative: as, **urbem quam statuō vostra est**, *V. 1, 573, the city which I found is yours*; for **quam urbem statuō, ea vostra est**. In the main sentence, **is**, **hīc**, **iste**, or **ille**, is often used; less frequently, as in this example, an appellative.

**1798.** The main sentence often has the determinative or demonstrative, or the substantive, or both omitted: as,

(a.) **ubī intellēxit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīri oportēret**, *1, 16, 5, when he saw the day was drawing nigh, on which day the grain was to be measured out to his men*. (b.) **quōs amīsimus cīvīs, eōs Mārtis vīs perculit**, *Marc. 17, what fellow-citizens we have lost, those the fury of the War-god smote down*. (c.) **Sabīnus quōs tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat, sē sequī iubet**, *5, 37, 1, Sabinus ordered what tribunes of the soldiers he had about him, to follow him*.

1799. The antecedent is often omitted when it is indefinite, or is obvious from the context: as,

sunt quī mīrentur, *V.* 1, 6, *there be who wonder.* dēlēgistī quōs Rōmae relinquerēs, *C.* 1, 9, *you picked out people to leave in Rome.* quod periit, *Pl. Cist.* 703, *gone is gone.* Caesar cōgnōvit Cōnsidium, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse, 1, 22, 4, *Caesar ascertained that Considius had reported to him as seen what he had not seen.*

1800. An ablative or nominative abstract in the relative sentence sometimes represents an ablative of manner or quality omitted from the main sentence: as, quā prūdentiā es, nihil tē fugiet, *Fam.* 11, 13, 1, *with what sense you have, nothing will elude you,* i. e. eā quā es prūdentiā, nihil tē fugiet. spērō, quae tua prūdētia est, tē valēre, *Att.* 6, 9, 1, *I hope that, with your characteristic caution, you are well.* at Āiāx, quō animō trāditur, mīlliēs oppetere mortem quam illa perpeti māluisset, *Off.* 1, 113, *Ajax, on the contrary, with his traditional vehemence, would have chosen rather to die a thousand deaths than to submit to such indignities.* This ellipsis begins with Cicero, and is found a few times only in later writers.

## AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE.

1801. The agreement of the relative has already been spoken of in a general way (1082-1098). For convenience, however, it may be set forth here more explicitly.

1802. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the sentence in which it stands: as,

Hippiās glōriātus est ānulum quem habēret, pallium quō amictus, soccōs quibus indūtus esset, sē suā manū cōnfēcisse, *DO.* 3, 127, *Hippias prided himself that he had made with his own hand the ring that he wore, the cloak in which he was wrapped, and the slippers that he had on.* This holds of all relatives with inflected form, such as quicumque, quālis, quantus, &c., &c.

1803. When the relative refers to two or more antecedents of different gender, its gender is determined like that of a predicate adjective (1087): as,

mātrēs et liberī, quōrum aetās misericordiam vestram requirēbat, *V.* 5, 129, *mothers and babies, whose years would appeal to your sympathy* (1088). ōtium atque dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant, *S. C.* 36, 4, *peace and prosperity, which the sons of men count chiefest of blessings* (1089). fōrtūna, quam nēmō ab incōstantiā et temeritātē sēiunget, quae dīgna nōn sunt deō, *DN.* 3, 61, *fortune, which nobody will distinguish from caprice and hazard, qualities which are not befitting god* (1089). Sometimes the relative agrees with the nearest substantive: as, eās frūgēs atque frūctūs, quōs terra gīgnit, *DN.* 2, 37, *the crops, and the fruits of the trees that earth produces.*

1804. The relative is sometimes regulated by the sense, and not by the form of the antecedent: as,



equitatum praemittit quī videant, 1, 15, 1, *he sends the cavalry ahead, for them to see* (1095). ūnus ex eō numerō, quī ad caedem parātī erant, S. I. 35, 6, *one of the number that were ready to do murder* (1095). duo prōdigia, quōs improbitās tribūnō cōstrictōs addixerat, Sest. 38, *a pair of monstrosities, whom their depravity had delivered over in irons to the tribune*. scriba pōntificis, quōs nunc minōrēs pōntificēs appellant, L. 22, 57, 3, *a clerk of the pontiff, which clerks they call nowadays lesser pontiffs, i. e. quōs scribās*. Vēiens bellum exortum, quibus Sabīnī arma cōiūnxerant, L. 2, 53, 1, *a Vejan war broke out, with whom the Sabines had allied themselves, i. e. bellum cum Vēientibus*.

1805. A relative referring to a proper name and explanatory appellative combined, may take the gender of either: as, flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, 1, 2, 3, *by the river Rhine, which is the boundary between Helvetians and Germans*. ad flūmen Scaldem quod influit in Mosam, 6, 33, 3, *to the river Scheldt, that empties itself into the Maas*.

1806. With verbs of indeterminate meaning (1035), the relative pronoun sometimes agrees with the predicate substantive: as, Thēbae ipsae, quod Boeōtiae caput est, L. 42, 44, 3, *Thebes itself, which is the capital of Boeotia*. Often, however, with the antecedent: as, flūmen quod appellātur Tamesis, 5, 11, 8, *the river which is called the Thames*.

1807. When the relative is subject, its verb agrees with the person of the antecedent: as,

haec omnia is fēcī, quī sodālis Dolābellae eram, Fam. 12, 14, 7, *all this I did, I that was Dolabella's bosom friend*. inīquos ēs, quī mē tacēre postulēs, T. Hau. 1011, *thou art unfair, expecting me to hold my tongue*. So also when the antecedent is implied in a possessive: as, cum tū nostrā, quī remānsissēmus, caede tē contentum esse dīcēbās, C. 1, 7, *when you said you were satisfied with murdering us, who had staid behind*.

1808. For an accusative of the relative with an ablative antecedent the ablative is rarely used: as, notante iūdice quō nōstī populō, H. S. 1, 6, 15, *the judge condemning — thou know'st who — the world*. This represents the older interrogative conception: notante iūdice — quō? — nōstī, populō (1795).

1809. A new substantive added in explanation of an antecedent is put after the relative, and in the same case: as, ad Amānum contendī, quī mōns erat hostium plēnus, Att. 5, 20, 3, *I pushed on to Amanus, a mountain that was packed with the enemy*. This use begins with Cicero; but from Livy on, the explanatory word is also put as an appositive, with the relative following: as, Decius Magius, vir cui nihil dēfuit, L. 23, 7, 4, *Magius, a man that lacked nothing*.

1810. An adjective, especially a comparative, superlative, or numeral, explanatory of a substantive in the main sentence, is often put in the relative sentence: as,

palūs quae perpetua intercēdēbat Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat, 7, 26, 2, *a morass, that lay unbroken between, hindered the Romans from pursuit*.

1811. When reference is made to the substance of a sentence, the neuter quod is used, or more commonly id quod, either usually in parenthesis: as,



intellegitur, id quod iam ante dīxī, imprūdente L. Sūllā scelera haec fierī, *RA.* 25, *it is plain, as I have said once before, that these crimes are committed without the cognizance of Sulla.* In continuations, quae rēs : as, nāvēs removērī iūssit, quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit, 4, 25, 1, *he ordered the vessels to be withdrawn, a course which proved very advantageous for our people.*

### MOODS IN THE RELATIVE SENTENCE.

**1812.** The relative is sometimes equivalent to a conditional protasis. When thus used, it may have either the indicative or the subjunctive, as the sense requires : as,

(a.) quod beātum est, nec habet nec exhibet cuiquam negōtium, *DN.* 1, 85, *whatsoever is blessed, has no trouble and makes none to anybody.* quisquis hūc vēnerit, pūgnōs edet, *Pl. Am.* 309, *whoever comes this way, shall have a taste of fists* (1796). omnia mala ingerēbat quemquem adspexerat, *Pl. Men.* 717, *she showered all possible bad names on every man she saw* (1795). (b.) haec quī videat, nōne cōgātur cōnfītērī deōs esse, *DN.* 2, 12, *whoso should see this would be forced, wouldn't he? to admit the existence of gods.* quī vidēret, equum Trōiānum intrōductum dīceret, *V.* 4, 52, *whoever saw it would have sworn it was the Trojan horse brought in* (1559).

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

**1813.** The indicative is used in simple declarations or descriptions introduced by a relative : as,

quem dī diligunt, adulēscēns moritur, *Pl. B.* 816, *whom the gods love, dies young.* rēliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē alunt, 4, 1, 5, *the others, that stay at home, support themselves* (1736). quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat, 4, 26, 4, *to such as he saw in stress, he kept sending reinforcements* (1736). tū quod volēs faciēs, *QFr.* 3, 4, 5, *do what you like* (1735).

**1814.** The indicative is also used with indefinite relative pronouns and adverbs : as, quidquid volt, valdē volt, *Att.* 14, 1, 2, *whatever he wants, he wants mightily.* quisquis est, *TD.* 4, 37, *whoever he may be.* quācumque iter fēcit, *V.* 1, 44, *wherever he made his way.* In later writers the imperfect or pluperfect is often in the subjunctive : see 1730.

**1815.** An original indicative often becomes subjunctive, particularly in indirect discourse (1722) ; or by attraction (1728) ; or to indicate repeated action (1730). See also 1727 and 1731.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**1816.** Relative pronoun sentences take the subjunctive to denote (1.) a purpose, (2.) a characteristic or result, (3.) a cause, reason, proof, or a concession.

SENTENCES OF PURPOSE.

1817. (1.) Relative sentences of purpose are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by *ut, in order that, to* (1947): as,

*ea quī cōficeret. C. Trebōnium relinquit, 7, 11, 3, he left Trebonius to manage this. quālis esset nātūra mōntis, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit, 1, 21, 1, he sent some scouts to ascertain what the character of the mountain was. haec habuī dē amīcitiā quae dīcerem, L. 104, this was what I had to say of friendship.* Sentences of purpose are an extension of the subjunctive of desire (1540).

SENTENCES OF CHARACTERISTIC OR RESULT.

1818. (2.) Relative sentences of characteristic or result are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by *ut, so as to, so that* (1947).

The main sentence sometimes has a word denoting character, such as *is, ēius modī, rarely tālis*: as, *neque is sum, quī mortis periculō terrear, 5, 30, 2, but I am not the man to be scared by danger of death, no not I.* Often, however, character is intimated by the mood alone: as, *secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent, 4, 34, 4, there followed a succession of storms to keep our people in camp. quod miserandum sit labōrātis, DN. 3, 62, you struggle away to a pitiable degree.* Sentences of result are an extension of the subjunctive of action conceivable (1554).

1819. The subjunctive with *quī* is often used with *dīgnus, indīgnus, or idōneus*, usually with a form of *sum*: as, *Līviānae fābulae nōn satis dīgnae quae iterum legantur, Br. 71, Livy's plays are not worth reading twice. nōn erit idōneus quī ad bellum mittātur, IP. 66, he will not be a fit person to be sent to the war.* Twice thus, *aptus*, once in Cicero, once in Ovid. In poetry and late prose these adjectives sometimes have the infinitive. *dīgnus* and *indīgnus* have also *ut* in Plautus, Livy, and Quintilian.

1820. Relative subjunctive sentences are sometimes coordinated by *et* or *sed*, with a substantive, adjective, or participle: as, *audāx et coetūs possit quae ferre virōrum, J. 6, 399, a brazen minx, and one quite capable of facing crowds of men.*

1821. Relative sentences after assertions or questions of existence or non-existence, take the subjunctive: as,

*sunt quī putent, TD. 1, 18, there be people to think, there be who think, or some people think. nēmō est quī nesciat, Fam. 1, 4, 2, there is nobody that does n't know. sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat ex animīs, Fin. 1, 43, wisdom is the only thing to drive sadness from the soul.*

1822. Such expressions are: *est (exsistit, exortus est), quī; sunt (reperiuntur, nōn dēsunt), quī; nēmō est, quī; quis est, quī; sōlus or ūnus est, quī; est, nihil est, quod; quid est, quod? habeo, nōn habeo, nihil habeo, quod, &c., &c.* Indefinite subjects are sometimes used with these verbs: as, *multī, quīdam, nōnnūllī, aliī, paucī*; sometimes appellatives: as, *hominēs, philosophī.*

1823. The indicative, however, is not infrequently found in affirmative sentences, particularly in old Latin and in poetry: as, *sunt quōs sciō esse amīcōs. Pl. Tri. 91, some men there are I know to be my friends. interdum volgus rēctum videt, est ubi peccat, H. E. 2, 1, 63, sometimes the world sees right, there be times when it errs. sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs, 6, 27, 1, then again there are what they call elks.*



SENTENCES OF CAUSE OR CONCESSION.

1824. (3.) Relative sentences of cause, reason, proof, or of concession, are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by *cum*, *since*, *though* (1877): as,

(a.) *hospes, quī nihil suspicārētur, hominem retinēre coepit*, *V. 1, 64*, the friend, suspecting nothing, undertook to hold on to the man. Often justifying the use of a single word: as, *ō fōrtūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris*, *Arch. 24*, oh youth thrice-blest, with Homer trumpeter of thy prowess. *ad mē vēnit Hēraclius, homo nōbilis, quī sacerdos Iovis fuisset*, *V. 4, 137*, I had a call from Heraclius, a man of high standing, as is proved by his having been a priest of Jupiter. (b.) *Cicerō, quī milites in castris tenuisset, quīnque cohortēs frumentātum mittit*, *6, 36, 1*, though Cicero had kept his men in camp, he sends five cohorts foraging.

1825. With *quī tamen*, however, the indicative is usual: as, *alter, quī tamen sē continuerat, nōn tenuit eum locum*, *Sest. 114*, the other, though he had observed a quiet policy, did not hold the place.

1826. Oftentimes, where a causal relation might be expected, a simple declaratory indicative is used: as,

*habeō senectūtī māgnam grātiā, quae mihī sermōnis aviditātem auxit*, *CM. 46*, I feel greatly indebted to age, which has increased my eagerness for conversation. Particularly thus in old Latin: as, *sed sumne ego stultus, quī rem cūrō pūblicā?* *Pl. Per. 75*, but am I not a fool, who bother with the common weal? Compared with: *sed ego sum insipientior, quī rēbus cūrem pūblicis*, *Pl. Tri. 1057*, but I'm a very fool, to bother with the common weal. Often of coincident action (1733): as, *stultē fēcī, quī hunc amisi*, *Pl. MG. 1376*, I've acted like a fool, in letting this man off.

1827. The causal relative is often introduced by *quippe*, less frequently by *ut*, or *ut pote*, *naturally*: as,

'*convivia cum patre nōn inibat*;' *quippe quī nē in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō veniret*, *RA. 52*, 'he never went to dinner-parties with his father;' why, of course not, since he never went to a simple country town even, except very rarely. *dictātor tamen, ut quī magis animis quam viribus frētus ad certāmen dēscenderet, omnia circumspicere coepit*, *L. 7, 14, 6*, but the dictator, naturally, since he went into the struggle trusting to mind rather than muscle, now began to be all on the alert. With *quippe quī*, the indicative only is used by Sallust, and is preferred by Plautus and Terence. Cicero has, with one exception, the subjunctive, Tacitus and Nepos have it always. Livy has either mood. Not in Caesar. *ut quī* has the subjunctive. It occurs a few times in Plautus, Cicero, once in Caesar, oftenest in Livy. With the indicative once in Cicero, and once in Tacitus. *ut pote quī* has the subjunctive. It is used by Plautus, by Cicero, once with the indicative, by Sallust, and Catullus.

1828. The indefinite ablative *quī*, *somehow*, *surely*, sometimes follows *quippe* or *ut* in old Latin, in which case it must not be confounded with the relative: as, *quippe quī ex tē audīvī*, *Pl. Am. 745*, why, sure I've heard from you; it cannot be the relative here, as the speaker is a woman.

1829. The subjunctive is used in parenthetical sentences of restriction: as,



## 1830-1834.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

quod sciam, Pl. Men. 500; T. Ad. 641; RA. 17, to the best of my knowledge and belief. quod sine molestiā tuā fiat, Fam. 13, 23, 2, as far as may be without trouble to yourself. quī is often followed by quidem: as, omnium orātōrum, quōs quidem ego cōgnōverim, acūtissimum iūdicō Q. Sertōrium, Br. 180, of all orators, at least of all that I have made the acquaintance of myself, I count Sertorius the sharpest.

1830. The indicative, however, is used in quod attinet ad, as to, and usually with quantum, and with forms of sum and possum: as, quod sine molestiā tuā facere poteris, Att. 1, 5, 7, as far as you can without troubling yourself.

### CORRELATIVE SENTENCES.

1831. Sentences are said to be *correlative*, when a relative pronoun or adverb has a corresponding determinative or demonstrative pronoun or adverb in the main sentence.

Thus, the ordinary correlative of quī is is, less frequently hīc, ille, īdem. Similarly tot . . . quot are used as correlatives; also quō . . . eō, quantō . . . tantō; quantum . . . tantum; tam . . . quam; totiēns . . . quotiēns; tālis . . . quālis; ubī . . . ibī; ut . . . ita, sic, or item; cum . . . tum.

### RELATIVE SENTENCES COMBINED.

#### (A.) COORDINATION OF A RELATIVE.

1832. (1.) When two coordinate relative sentences would have the second relative in the same case as the first, the second relative is usually omitted: as,

Dumnorīgī quī prīncipātum optinēbat, ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet, 1, 3, 5, he prevails with Dumnorix, who held the headship, and was popular with the commons.

1833. (2.) When two coordinate relative sentences require two different cases of the relative, the relative is usually expressed with both, or else the second relative, which is usually nominative or accusative, is omitted, or is, hīc, ille, or īdem, is substituted for it: as,

(a.) cūr loquimur dē eō hoste, quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem, et quem nōn timeō? C. 2, 17, why am I talking about an enemy who admits himself he is an enemy, and whom I do not fear? (b.) Bocchus cum pedibus, quōs Volux addūxerat, neque in priōre pūgnā adfuerant, S. I. 101, 5, Bocchus with the infantry whom Volux had brought up, and who had not been engaged in the first skirmish. (c.) Viriāthus, quem C. Laelius frēgit, ferōcitatēque ēius repressit, Off. 2, 40, Viriathus, whom Laelius crushed, and curbed his fiery soul. This last use is chiefly limited to old Latin, Cicero, and Lucretius.

#### (B.) SUBORDINATION OF A RELATIVE.

1834. A sentence consisting of a main and a relative member, may be further modified by a more specific relative sentence: as,

proximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt (general), quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt (specific), 1, 1, 3, *they are nearest to the Germans that live beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on uninterrupted hostilities*. idem artifex Cupīdinem fēcit illum quī est Thespiīs (general), propter quem Thespieae visuntur (specific), V. 4, 4, *the selfsame artist made the world-renowned Cupid at Thespieae, which is the attraction for tourists in Thespieae*.

---

#### THE RELATIVE INTRODUCING A MAIN SENTENCE.

1835. Besides the ordinary use of the relative, to introduce a subordinate sentence, it is often used like *hīc*, or *is*, or like *et is*, *is autem*, *is enim*, or *is igitur*, to append a fresh main sentence or period to the foregoing: as,

cōnsiliō convocātō sentiētiās exquirere coepit, quō in cōnsiliō nōnnullae hūius modī sentiētiāe dicēbantur, 3, 3, 1, *calling a council of war, he proceeded to ask their opinion, and in this council some opinions of the following import were set forth*. centuriōnēs hostēs vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō, 5, 43, 6, *the officers proceeded to call the enemy; but not a man of them ventured to step forward*. perūtilēs Xenophōntis librī sunt; quos legite studiōsē, CM. 59, *Xenophon's works are extremely profitable reading; so do read them attentively*. In Plautus this use is rare; but it becomes more and more prevalent, and in the time of Cicero the relative is one of the commonest connectives.

1836. From this use of the relative come many introductory formulas, such as *quō factō*, *quā rē cōgnitā*, *quae cum ita sint*, &c., &c.

1837. A connective *quod* is often used before *sī*, *nisi*, or *etsī*, less frequently before *quia*, *quoniam*, *utinam*, *quī*, &c.

This *quod* may be translated *so*, *but*, *now*, *whereas*, *as to that*, &c., or it is often best omitted in translation. See 2132.

---

#### THE CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE SENTENCE.

##### *quod*.

1838. The conjunctive particle *quod*, originally the neuter of the relative pronoun, has both a declarative sense, *that*, and a causal sense, *because*. In both senses it regularly introduces the indicative (1721). For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is often used, and particularly in indirect discourse (1722).

1839. In some of its applications, particularly in old Latin, the conjunctive particle *quod* can hardly be distinguished from the pronoun *quod*, as follows:



## 1840-1845.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

1840. (1.) In old Latin, *quod*, *why*, *for what*, is sometimes used with *veniō* and *mittō*. Thus, as in *id vēnimus*, Pl. *MG.* 1158, *that's why we've come*, *id* is used to define the purpose of the motion (1144), so also *quod*, in *quod vēnī, ēloquar*, T. *Hau. prol.* 3, *what I've come for, I'll set forth*. Instead of *quod*, more explicitly *quam ob rem*: as, *quam ob rem hūc sum missa*, Pl. *R.* 430, *what I am sent here for*.

1841. (2.) *quod*, *why*, *for what*, is used in such expansions as *quid est quod?* *quid habēs quod?* or *nihil est quod*: as,

*quid est quod mē excīvistī?* Pl. *E.* 570, *why is it that you've called me out?* (1144). Usually with the subjunctive (1563): as, *quid est quod plūra dīcāmus?* Clu. 59, *what reason is there for saying more?* For *quod*, sometimes *quā rē*, *quam ob rem*, *cūr*, &c. — The question itself is also sometimes varied: as, *quid fuit causae, cūr in Africam Caesarem nōn sequerēre?* Ph. 2, 71, *what earthly reason was there, why you should not have followed Caesar to Africa?*

1842. (3.) *quod*, *as to what*, or *that*, is used, especially at the beginning of a sentence, to introduce a fact on which something is to be said, often by way of protest or refutation: as,

*vērūm quod tū dīcis, nōn tē mī irāscī decet*, Pl. *Am.* 522, *but as to what you say, it is n't right that you should get provoked with me*. *quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī causā facere*, 1, 44, 6, *as to his moving a great many Germans over to Gaul, that he did for self-protection* (1722). This construction is particularly common in Caesar, and in Cicero's letters.

1843. When *quod*, *in case*, *suppose*, *although*, introduces a mere conjecture or a concession, the subjunctive is used (1554): as, *quod quispiam ignem quaerat, extingui volō*, Pl. *Aul.* 91, *in case a man may come for fire, I want the fire put out*. This use is principally found in old Latin, but once or twice also in Cicero.

1844. *quod*, *that*, *the fact that*, is often used in subordinate sentences which serve to complete the sense of the main sentence.

1845. The sentence with *quod* may represent a subject, as with *accēdit*; an object, as with *praetereō*, &c.; or any case of a substantive; frequently it is in apposition with a demonstrative or an appellative: as,

(a.) *accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs dolēbant*, 3, 2, 5, *there was added this fact, that they lamented that their own children were torn from them*; or less clumsily, *then too they lamented*. *praetereō, quod eam sibi domum sēdemque dēlēgit, in quā cōtīdiē viri mortis indicia vidēret*, Clu. 188, *I pass over the fact that she picked out a house to live in, in which she would see, day in day out, things to remind her of her husband's death*. *illud minus cūrō, quod conguessistī operāriōs omnēs*, Br. 297, *I am not particularly interested in the fact that you have lumped together all sorts of cobblers and tinkers*. (b.) *Caesar senātūs in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū*, 1, 43, 4, *Caesar told off the kindnesses of the senate to the man, the fact that 'he had been styled king by the senate'* (1722). *quō factō duās rēs cōsecūtus est, quod animōs centuriōnum*



## Conjunctive Sentences : quod. [1846-1852.

dēvinxit et militum voluntātēs redēmit, *Caes. C. 1, 39, 4, thus he killed two birds with one stone : he won the hearts of the officers, and he bought golden opinions of the rank and file.* hōc ūnō praestāmus vel māximē ferīs, quod conloquimur inter nōs, *DO. 1, 32, in this one circumstance do we perhaps most of all surpass brutes, that we can talk with each other.* labōre et industriā et quod adhibēbat grātiā, in prīncipibus patrōnis fuit, *Br. 233, thanks to his untiring industry, and to his bringing his winning manners to bear, he figured among the leaders of the bar.*

1846. accēdit, as the passive of addō, often has the subjunctive with ut : see 1965. addō quod, especially in the imperative form adde quod, occurs in Accius, Terence, Lucretius, Horace, and Ovid. adiciō quod begins with Livy.

1847. The sentence with quod is often introduced by a prepositional expression, such as eō with dē, ex, in, prō, rarely with cum ; or id with ad in Livy, super in Tacitus.

1848. nisi quod, or in Plautus and Terence nisi quia, but for the fact that, except, only that, and praeter quam quod, besides the fact that, are used in limitations : as, nihil peccat, nisi quod nihil peccat, *Plin. Ep. 9, 26, 1, he erreth naught, save that he naught doth err.* Livy has also super quam quod. tantum quod in the sense of nisi quod is rare ; more commonly of time, just, hardly.

1849. quid quod ? for quid dē eō dicam quod ? what of the fact that, or nay more, marks an important transition : as, quid quod salūs sociōrum in periculum vocātur ? *IP. 12, nay more, the very existence of our allies is endangered.*

1850. With verbs of doing or happening, accompanied by some word of manner, quod introduces a verb of coincident action (1733) : as,

bene facis quod mē adiuvas, *Fin. 3, 16, you are very kind in helping me.* videor mihi grātum fēcisse Siculīs, quod eōrum iniūriās sum persecutus, *V. 2, 16, I flatter myself that I have won the gratitude of the Sicilians in acting as avenger of their wrongs.* In this sense quī (1826) or cum (1874) is often used, or in Plautus quia.

1851. quod, that, because, is used to denote cause with verbs of emotion.

Thus, as with id in id gaudeō, *T. Andr. 362, I'm glad of that (1144),* so with an object sentence, as gaudeō quod tē interpellāvi, *Leg. 3, 1, I'm glad that I interrupted you.* Such verbs are : gaudeō, laetor ; miror ; doleō, maereō, angor, indignor, suscēseō, irāscor, molestē ferō, &c. In Plautus, these verbs have usually quia, sometimes quom (1875). For the accusative with the infinitive, see 2187.

1852. Verbs of praising, blaming, accusing, and condemning, often take quod : as,

quod bene cōgitāstī aliquandō, laudō, *Ph. 2, 34, that you have ever had good intentions, I commend.* laudat Africānum Panaetius, quod fuerit abstinēns, *Off. 2, 76, Panaetius eulogizes Africanus, 'for being so abstinent' (1725).* ut cum Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumpere iuventūtem, *Quintil. 4, 4, 5, as when Socrates was charged with 'demoralizing the rising generation' (1725).* grātulor, congratulate, and grātiās agō, thank, have regularly quod or cum (1875). Verbs of accusing sometimes have cūr.

**1853.** Causal *quod*, *owing to the fact that, because*, introduces an efficient cause, or a reason or motive: as,

(a.) in *hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs*, 4, 20, 1, *in these parts the winter sets in early, owing to the fact that Gaul in general lies to the north. Helvētiī rēliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cōtīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt*, 1, 1, 4, *the Helvetians outshine the rest of the Gauls in bravery, because they do battle with the Germans almost every day. hōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod a cultū prōvinciae longissimē absunt*, 1, 1, 3, *of these the stoutest fighting-men are the Belgians, for the reason that they live furthest away from the comforts of the province.* (b.) *T. Mānlius Torquātus filium suum, quod is contrā imperium in hostem pūgnāverat, necārī iūssit*, S. C. 52, 30, *Torquatus ordered his own son to be put to death, because the young man had fought with the enemy contrary to orders. exōrāvit tyrannum ut abire liceret, quod iam beātus nōllet esse*, TD. 5, 62, *he induced the monarch to let him go, 'because he didn't care to be Fortune's pet any longer'* (1725). *Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō arbitriō bellum esse gestūrōs dicerent*, 7, 75, 5, *the Bellovacans would not put in their proper quota, saying they meant to make war on their own responsibility* (1727).

**1854.** *quod* often has a correlative in the main sentence, such as *eō, ideō, idcirco, proptereā*. In Sallust, *eā grātiā*. In Plautus, *quia* is commonly used in the sense of *quod, because*.

**1855.** An untenable reason is introduced by *nōn quod, nōn quō*, or in Plautus, by *nōn eō quia*, in Terence, by *nōn eō quō*. From Livy on, *nōn quia*. The valid reason follows, with *sed quod, sed quia*, or with *sed* and a fresh main sentence.

The mood is usually subjunctive (1725): as, *pugilēs ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia prōfundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur*, TD. 2, 56, *boxers grunt and groan, not because they feel pain, but because by explosion of voice the whole system gets braced up*. Sometimes the indicative. Correlatives, such as *idcirco, ideō, &c.*, are not uncommon. Reversed constructions occur, with *magis* followed by *quam*, as: *magis quod, quō, or quia*, followed by *quam quō, quod, or quia*. The negative *not that . . . not*, is expressed by *nōn quod nōn, nōn quō nōn, or nōn quīn*.

---

### *quia.*

**1856.** *quia* has the same general use as *quod*. It is, however, more prevalent in Plautus, less so from Terence on.

**1857.** For *quia* with verbs of doing or happening, see 1850; with verbs of emotion, 1851.

**1858.** With or without a correlative, such as *ideō, eō, proptereā, &c.*, *quia* is used in the sense of *because*, especially in old Latin.



quom or cum.

**1859.** quom or cum (112, 711), used as a relative conjunctive particle (1794), has a temporal meaning, *when*, which readily passes over to an explanatory or causal meaning, *in that, since* or *although*. In both meanings it introduces the indicative in old Latin. In classical Latin, temporal cum in certain connections, and causal cum regularly, introduces the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also used with cum for special reasons, as in the indefinite second person (1731), by attraction (1728), and commonly by late writers to express repeated past action (1730). cum, when, is often used as a synonym of sī, if, and may then introduce any form of a conditional protasis (2016, 2110).

(A.) TEMPORAL cum.

WITH THE INDICATIVE.

**1860.** cum, when, whenever, if, of indefinite time, may introduce any tense of the indicative required by the context: as,

facile omnēs, quom valēmus, rēcta cōsilia aegrōtīs damus, T. Andr. 309, *we all, when well, give good advice to sick folk easily*. Rōmae videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō, Att. 2, 15, 1, *I always fancy myself in Rome, when I am reading a letter from you*. cum posuī librum, adsēnsiō omnis ēlābitur, TD. 1, 24, *when I drop the book, all assent melts away* (1613). incenderis cupiditāte libertātis, cum potestātem gustandī fēceris, RP. 2, 50, *you will inspire them with a passion for freedom, when you give them a chance to taste it* (1627). hīs cum fūnēs comprehēnsī adductīque erant, praerumpēbantur, 3, 14, 6, *every time the lines were caught by these and hauled taut, they would part* (1618). The subjunctive is used, chiefly by late writers, rarely by Cicero and Caesar, to express repeated past action (1730): as, cum in convīvium vēnisset, sī quicquam caelātī adspexerat, manūs abstinēre nōn poterat, V. 4, 48, *when he went to a dinner party, if he ever caught sight of a bit of chased work, he never could keep his hands off* (2050).

**1861.** cum, when, of definite time, regularly introduces the indicative in old Latin, even where the subjunctive is required in classical Latin (1872): as,

nam illa, quom tē ad sē vocābat, mēmet esse crēdidit, Pl. Men. 1145, *for when that lady asked you in, she thought 'twas I*. posticulum hōc recēpit, quom aedīs vēndidit, Pl. Tri. 194, *this back part he excepted, when he sold the house*.

**1862.** cum, when, of definite time, regularly introduces the indicative of any action, not of past time: as,

sed dē hīs etiam rēbus, ōtiōsī cum erimus, loquēmur, Fam. 9, 4, *but we will talk of this when we have time*. cum ego P. Grānium testem prōdūxerō, refellitō, sī poteris, V. 5, 154, *when I put Granius on the witness stand, refute him if you can*.



## 1863-1868.] Sentences : The Subordinate Sentence.

**1863.** With **cum**, *when*, the indicative is used of definite past time when the reality of the action is to be emphasized, as follows :

**1864.** (1.) The indicative imperfect is regularly used with **cum**, *when*, to denote a continued action parallel and coincident in duration with another continued action, also in the imperfect : as,

quom pūgnābant māxumē, ego tum fugiēbam māxumē, Pl. Am. 199, *while they were fighting hardest, then I was running hardest.* tum cum rem habēbās, quaesticulus tē faciēbat attentiorē, Fam. 9, 16, 7, *as long as you were a man of substance, the fun of making money made you a little close.* The imperfect subjunctive is exceptional and lacks the implication of coincidence in duration : as, Zēnōnem, cum Athēnīs essem, audiēbam frequenter, DN. 1, 59, *Zeno's lectures I often attended, when I was in Athens.*

**1865.** (2.) The indicative imperfect is often used with **cum**, *when*, denoting a continued action, to date an apodosis in the perfect : as,

legiōnēs quom pūgnābant māxumē, quid in tabernāclō fēcistī? Pl. Am. 427, *what did'st thou in the tent what time the legions fought their mightiest?* hīs librīs adnumerandī sunt sex dē rē publicā, quōs tum scripsimus cum gubernācula rēi publicae tenēbāmus, Div. 2, 3, *to these books are to be added the six On the State, which I wrote at the time I was holding the helm of state.* But when the object of the clause is not distinctly to date the apodosis, its verb is in the subjunctive (1872).

**1866.** (3.) The indicative perfect or present of vivid narration is used with **cum**, *when*, to date an apodosis in the perfect or present of vivid narration : as,

'per tuās statuās' vērō cum dīxit, vehementius rīsīmus, DO. 2, 242, *but when he uttered the words 'by your statues,' we burst into a louder laugh.* cum occiditur Sex. Rōscius, ibīdem fuērunt, RA. 120, *when Roscius was murdered, they were on the spot.* cum diēs vēnit, causā ipse prō sē dictā, damnātur, L. 4, 44, 10, *when the day of the trial came, he spoke in his own defence and was condemned.* The present is particularly common in old colloquial Latin : as, vivom, quom abīmus, liquimus, Pl. Cap. 282, *we left him alive when we came away.* For cum primum in narration, see 1925; for cum extemplō, 1926.

**1867.** (4.) The indicative perfect or present of vivid narration is regularly used with **cum**, *when*, to denote a momentary action when the apodosis denotes continued action : as,

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī, 6, 12, 1, *when Caesar came to Gaul, the leaders of one party were the Aeduans, of the other the Sequanians.* eō cum veniō, praetor quiēscēbat, V. 4, 32, *when I got there, the praetor was taking a nap.*

**1868.** An emphatic indicative clause with **cum**, *while*, often follows the main action.

The clause with **cum** is usually inconsistent with the main action, and **cum** is often attended by *intereā*, *interim*, *all the time*, *etiam tum*, *still*, *nōndum*, *haudum*, *not yet*, *no longer*, *quidem*, *by the way*, or *tamen*, *nihilominus*, *nevertheless* : as,

## Conjunctive Sentences : cum. [1869-1871.

caedēbātur virgīs in mediō forō Messānae cīvis Rōmānus, cum intereā nūllus gemitus audiēbātur, *V. 5, 162, there was flogged with rods in open market place at Messana a citizen of Rome, while all the time not a groan was to be heard. ēvolārat iam ē cōspectū quadrirēmīs, cum etiam tum cēterae nāvēs ūnō in locō mōliēbantur, V. 5, 88, she had already sped out of sight, the four-banker, while the rest of the vessels were still struggling round in one and the same spot.* This use is very rare in old Latin. Not in Caesar. With the infinitive of intimation, see 1539.

**1869.** An indicative clause with **cum**, usually expressing sudden or unexpected action, sometimes contains the main idea, and is put last.

In this case **cum** is often attended by **subitō** or **repente**, *suddenly*, and the first clause contains **iam**, *already, by this time*, **vix**, *aegrē, hardly*, **vixdum**, *hardly yet*, or **nōndum**, *not yet*. The first verb is commonly in the imperfect or pluperfect, and the second in the perfect or present of vivid narration: as,

dixerat hōc ille, cum puer nūntiāvit venīre Laelium, *RP. 1, 18, scarcely had he said this, when a slave announced that Laelius was coming. vix ea fātus eram, gemitū cum tālia reddit, V. 2, 323, scarce had I spoke the words, when with a groan he answers thus. Hannibal iam subibat mūrōs, cum repente in eum patēfactā portā ērumpunt Rōmānī, L. 29, 7, 8, Hannibal was already moving up to the walls, when all of a sudden the gate flies open and the Romans come pouring out upon him. iamque hōc facere apparābant, cum mātres familiae repente prōcurrerunt, 7, 26, 3, they were already preparing to do it, when suddenly the married women rushed forward.* This use is very rare in old Latin. From Sallust on, it is found occasionally with the infinitive of intimation (1539).

**1870.** A clause with **cum** is often used attributively with words denoting time, or with **est**, **fuit**, or **erit**.

The mood is the same as with a relative pronoun, sometimes the indicative, and regularly in old Latin, but usually the subjunctive: as, **fuit quoddam tempus cum in agrīs hominēs vagābantur**, *Inv. 1, 2, there was an age of the world when men roved round in the fields* (1813, 1823). **fuit tempus cum rūra colerent hominēs**, Varro, *RR. 3, 1, 1, there was a time when men dwelt in the fields* (1818, 1821). **est cum exōrnātiō praetermittenda est**, Cornif. 2, 30, *sometimes ornamentation should be avoided. fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, 6, 24, 1, there was a time when the Gauls outdid the Germans in valour.* The subjunctive is also used with **audiō cum** (1722), but with **meminī cum** the indicative: as, **saepe ex socerō meō audīvī, cum is diceret**, *DO. 2, 22, I have often heard my father-in-law saying. meminī cum mihi dēsipere vidēbare, Fam. 7, 28, 1, I remember when I thought you showed bad taste.*

**1871.** The indicative present or perfect with **cum** is used in expressions equivalent to an emphasized accusative or ablative of time, the main verb being **est** or **sunt**: as, **annī prope quadringentī sunt, cum hōc probātur**, *O. 171, it is nearly four hundred years that this has been liked. nōndum centum et decem annī sunt, cum lāta lēx est, Off. 2, 75, it is not a hundred and ten years yet since the law was passed.* In old Latin, the clause with **cum** is made the subject of **est**, and the substantive of time is put in the accusative: as, **hanc domum iam multōs annōs est quom possideō**, *Pl. Aul. 3, 't is many years now I have occupied this house.*



## WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**1872.** The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used with temporal **cum**, when a subordinate event is mentioned merely as one in a more or less complex series of past events: as,

**cum** rēx Pyrrhus populō Rōmānō bellum intulisset **cumque** dē imperiō certāmen esset **cum** rēge potenti, perfuga ab eō vēnit in castra Fabriciī, *Off. 3, 86, king Pyrrhus having made war on the Roman nation, and there being a struggle for sovereignty with a powerful king, a deserter from him came into Fabricius's camp.* eōdem tempore Attalus rēx moritur alterō et septuāgēsīmō annō, **cum** quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs rēgnāset, *L. 33, 21, 1, the same year Attalus the king dies, in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.* hīc pāgus, **cum** domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, *L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, 1, 12, 5, this canton, sallying out from home in our fathers' recollection, had put Cassius, the consul, to death.* nam **cum** inambulārem in xystō, *M. ad mē Brūtus vēnerat, Br. 10, for as I was pacing up and down my portico, Brutus had come to see me.* Antigonus in proeliō, **cum** adversus Seleucum et Lysimachum dīmīcāret, occisus est, *N. 21, 3, 2, Antigonus was killed in battle fighting against Seleucus and Lysimachus.* haec **cum** Crassus dīxisset, silentium est cōsecūtum, *DO. 1, 160, a deep silence ensued after Crassus had finished speaking.* **cum** annōs iam complūris societās esset, moritur in Galliā Quīnctius, **cum** adesset Naevius, *Quīnct. 14, the partnership having lasted several years, Quīnctius died in Gaul, Naevius being there at the time.*

In this use, as the examples show, **cum** with the subjunctive is often equivalent to a participle or an ablative absolute. The use is not found in Plautus (1861). Ennius and Terence have possibly each an instance (disputed) of it, but it was certainly rare until the classical period, when it became one of the commonest of constructions. It must not be confounded with the special uses of the subjunctive mentioned in 1859.

**1873.** The difference in meaning between **cum** with the indicative and **cum** with the subjunctive may be illustrated by the following examples:

Gallō nārrāvī, **cum** proximē Rōmae fuī, quid audīssem, *Att. 13, 49, 2, I told Gallus, when I was last in Rome, what I had heard (1866).* a. d. III kal. Māiās **cum** essem in Cūmānō, accēpī tuās litterās, *Fam. 4, 2, 1, I received your letter on the twenty-eighth of April, being in my villa at Cumae (1872).* **cum** vāricēs secābantur C. Mariō, dolēbat, *TD. 2, 35, while Marius was having his varicose veins lanced, he was in pain (1864).* C. Marius, **cum** secārētur, ut suprā dīxī, vetuit sē adligārī, *TD. 2, 53, Marius being under the surgeon's knife, as above mentioned, refused to be bound (1872).* num P. Decius, **cum** sē dēvoveret et in mediam aciem inruēbat, aliquid dē voluptātibus suis cōgitābat? *Fin. 2, 61, did Decius, offering himself up, and while he was dashing straight into the host, have any thought of pleasures of his own? (1872, 1864).*



## Conjunctive Sentences: cum. [1874-1877.

### (B.) EXPLANATORY AND CAUSAL cum.

**1874.** The indicative is often used with explanatory **cum** when the action of the protasis is coincident with that of the apodosis (1733).

In this use **cum** passes from the meaning of *when* to *that*, *in that*, or *in* or *by* with a verbal in *-ing*: as, **hōc verbum quom illī quoidam dīcō, prae-mōstrō tibi**, Pl. Tri. 342, *in laying down this lesson for your unknown friend I'm warning you.* **cum quiēscunt, probant**, C. 1, 21, *their inaction is approval.* Denoting the means: as, **tūte tibi prōdēs plūrumum, quom servitūtem ita fers ut ferrī decet**, Pl. Cap. 371, *you do yourself most good by bearing slavery as it should be borne.* For similar uses of **quod**, **quia**, and **quī**, see 1850.

**1875.** Explanatory **cum** is also used with verbs of emotion; likewise with **grātulor** and **grātiās agō**: as, **quom tu's liber, gaudeō**, Pl. Men. 1148, *that you are free, I'm glad.* **grātulor tibi, cum tantum valēs apud Dolābellam**, Fam. 9, 14, 3, *I give you joy that you stand so well with Dolabella.* **tibi māmimās grātiās agō, cum tantum litterae meae potuērunt**, Fam. 13, 24, 2, *I thank you most heartily in that my letter had such influence.* For similar uses of **quod** and **quia**, see 1851, 1852.

**1876.** Explanatory **cum** is also used in the sense of *since*, *although*, or *even though*. In these meanings it introduces the indicative in old Latin (1878): as,

Denoting cause: **istō tū pauper ēs, quom nimis sāmctē piu's**, Pl. R. 1234, *that's why you are poor yourself, since you are over-scrupulously good.* **quom hōc nōn possum, illud minus possem**, T. Ph. 208, *since this I can't, that even less could I.* Adversative cause: **īnsānīre mē āiunt, quom ipsī īnsāniunt**, Pl. Men. 831, *they say I'm mad, whereas they are mad themselves.* Concession: **sat sīc suspectus sum, quom careō noxiā**, Pl. B. 1005, *I am enough distrusted as it is, even though I'm void of wrong.*

**1877.** **cum**, *since*, *although*, *even though*, usually introduces the subjunctive: as,

Denoting cause: **cum in commūnibus suggestīs cōsistere nōn audēret, contionārī ex turri altā solēbat**, TD. 5, 59, *since he did not dare to stand up on an ordinary platform, he always did his speaking from a lofty tower*, of Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse. **Aeduī cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt**, 1, 11, 2, *since the Aeduians could not defend themselves, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.* Adversative cause: **fuit perpetuō pauper, cum dīvitissimus esse posset**, N. 19, 1, 2, *he was always poor, whereas he might have been very rich*, of Phocion. **Pyladēs cum sīs, dīcēs tē esse Orestē**? Fin. 2, 79, *whereas you are Pylades, will you declare yourself Orestes?* Concession: **ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relin-quēbat**, 5, 40, 7, *Cicero himself, though he was in extremely delicate health, did not allow himself even the night-time for rest.* **ille Catō, cum esset Tusculī nātus, in populī Rōmānī cīvitatē susceptus est**, Leg. 2, 5, *the great Cato, though born at Tusculum, was received into the citizenship of the Roman nation.*

## 1878-1882.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

1878. This use of the subjunctive is not found in Plautus. It is thought to have begun in the time of Terence, who may have a couple of instances (disputed). Thereafter, it grew common and was the regular mood used with explanatory and causal **cum** in the classical period.

1879. Explanatory **cum** is sometimes introduced by **quippe**, rarely by **ut pote**, *naturally*: as,

**tum vērō** *gravior cūra patribus incessit, quippe cum prōdī causam ab suis cernerent*, L. 4, 57, 10, *then the senators were still more seriously concerned, and naturally enough, since they beheld their cause betrayed by their own people.* **valētūdō, ē quā iam ēmerseram, ut pote cum sine febri labōrāssem, Att. 5, 8, 1, *an illness from which I had already recovered, naturally, since it was unaccompanied by fever.* **quippe cum** occurs in Cicero, Nepos, and Livy; **ut pote cum** is used twice in Cicero's letters, and in late writers. For **quippe** and **ut pote** with a causal relative, see 1827.**

1880. The adversative idea is often emphasized by the use of **tamen** in the main clause: as, **cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant**, 7, 62, 4, *though the front ranks of the enemy had fallen, yet the rest made a most spirited resistance.*

### (C.) cum . . . tum.

1881. A protasis with **cum** is often followed by an emphatic apodosis introduced by **tum**.

The protasis denotes what is general or common or old; the apodosis what is special or strange or new. In classical Latin **tum** is often emphasized by **māximē**, in **primīs**, **vērō**, &c.

The mood with **cum** is regularly indicative in old Latin, and usually when the time of the two verbs is identical: as, **quom mihi paveō, tum Antiphō mē excruciat animī**, T. Ph. 187, *whilst for myself I tremble, Antiphō puts me in a perfect agony of soul.* **cum collēgae levāvit infāmiam, tum sibī glōriam ingentem peperit**, L. 6, 25, 6, *he relieved his colleague from disgrace, and what is more he won mighty glory for himself.* Less frequently the subjunctive, and usually when the verbs refer to different periods of time: as, **cum tē ā pueritiā tuā dilēxerim, tum hōc multō ācrius diligō**, Fam. 15, 9, 1, *I have always loved you from your boyhood, but for this I love you with a far intenser love.* By abridgement of the sentence (1057), **cum . . . tum** come to be copulative conjunctions (1687): as, **mōvit patrēs cōnscriptōs cum causa tum auctor**, L. 9, 10, 1, *both the cause and its supporter touched the conscript fathers.*

### quoniam.

1882. **quoniam**, compounded of **quom** and **iam**, *when now*, refers primarily to time, but is seldom so used and only by early writers. The temporal meaning passed early into an exclusively causal meaning, *since*. In both meanings it regularly introduces the indicative (1721). For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as in indirect discourse (1725), or by attraction (1728).



## Conjunctival Sentences : quotiens. [1883-1887.

1883. (1.) *quoniam*, *when now*, used of time in early Latin, has sometimes as a correlative *continuō*, *subitō*, or *extemplō*; it usually introduces the present indicative (1590): as,

is *quoniam* *moritur*, *numquam indicāre id filiō voluit suō*, Pl. *Aul.* 9, *when he was on his dying bed, he ne'er would point it out to his own son*, of a hidden treasure. *quoniam sentiō quae rēs gererētur, nāvem extemplō statuimus*, Pl. *B.* 290, *when now I saw what was doing, we stopped the ship at once*.

1884. (2.) *quoniam*, *since, seeing that, now that*, with the indicative, introduces a reason, usually one known to the person addressed, or one generally known: as,

*vēra dicō, sed nēquiquam, quoniam nōn vīs crēdere*, Pl. *Am.* 835, *the truth I speak, but all in vain, since thou wilt not believe*. *vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discēdite*, C. 3, 29, *do you, citizens, since it is now grown dark, depart and go to your own several homes*. *quoniam in eam ratiōnem vitāe nōs fōrtūna dēdūxit, ut sempiternus sermō dē nōbīs futūrus sit, caveāmus*, Q*Fr.* 1, 1, 38, *since fortune has set us in such a walk of life that we are to be eternally talked about, let us be on our guard*. Often in transition: as, *quoniam dē genere bellī dixī, nunc dē māgnitūdine pauca dicam*, IP. 20, *since I have finished speaking about the character of the war, I will now speak briefly about its extent*. With the subjunctive in indirect discourse (1725): as, *crēbris Pompēi litterīs castigābantur, quoniam prīmō venientem Caesarem nōn prohibuissent*, Caes. C. 3, 25, 3, *they were rebuked in numerous letters of Pompey, 'because they had not kept Caesar off as soon as he came.'*

---

### quotiēns, quotiēnscumque.

1885. The relative particle *quotiēns* (711), or *quotiēnscumque*, *every time that, whenever*, introduces the indicative: as,

*quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat*, 5, 34, 2, *as the cohorts successively charged, a great number of the enemy fell every time*. *quōiūs quotiēns sepulcrum vidēs, sacrificās*, Pl. *E.* 175, *every time you see her tomb, you offer sacrifice*. *nec quotiēnscumque mē viderit, ingemiscet*, Sest. 146, *neither shall he fall a-groaning whenever he sees me* (1736).

1886. *quotiēns* has sometimes as a correlative *totiēns*, or a combination with *tot* which is equivalent to *totiēns*: as, *quotiēns dicimus, totiēns dē nōbīs iūdicātur*, DO. 1, 125, *every time we make a speech, the world sits in judgement on us*. *sī tot cōsulibus meruisset, quotiēns ipse cōsul fuit*, Balb. 47, *if he had been in the army as many years as he was consul*.

1887. The subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect are common in the later writers to indicate repeated action (1730): as, *quotiēns super tālī negōtiō cōsul-tāret, ēditā domūs parte ac libertī ūnīus cōnscentiā ūtēbātur*, Ta. 6, 27, *whenever he had recourse to astrologers, it was in the upper part of his house and with the cognizance of only a single freedman*.



quam.

1888. *quam*, *as* or *than*, introduces an indicative protasis in periods of comparison. For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as by attraction (1728), or of action conceivable (1731); see also 1896, 1897.

But usually periods of comparison are abridged (1057) by the omission of the verb or of other parts in the protasis (1325).

### WITH THE INDICATIVE.

1889. (1.) *quam*, *as*, is used in the protasis of a comparative period of equality, generally with *tam* as correlative in the apodosis: as,

*tam facile vincēs quam pirum volpēs comēst*, Pl. *Most.* 559, *you'll beat as easily as Reynard eats a pear.* *tam excoctam reddam atque ātram quam carbōst*, T. *Ad.* 849, *I'll have her stewed all out and black as is a coal.* From Cicero on, the apodosis is in general negative or interrogative: as, *quōrum neutrum tam facile quam tū arbitrāris concēditur*, *Div.* 1, 10, *neither of these points is as readily granted as you suppose.* *quid est ōrātōrī tam necessārium quam vōx?* *DO.* 1, 251, *what is so indispensable to the speaker as voice?* Otherwise *nōn minus . . . quam*, *no less than, just as much*, or *nōn magis . . . quam*, *just as little or just as much*, is often preferred to *tam . . . quam*: as, *accēpī nōn minus interdum ōrātōrium esse tacēre quam dīcere*, Plin. *Ep.* 7, 6, 7, *I have observed that silence is sometimes quite as eloquent as speech.* *nōn magis mihī deerit inimicus quam Verri dēfuit*, V. 3, 162, *I shall lack an enemy as little as Verres did.* *domus erat nōn dominō magis ōrnāmētō quam civitātī*, V. 4, 5, *the house was as much a pride to the state as to its owner.*

1890. Instead of *tam*, another correlative is sometimes used in the apodosis. Thus, *aequē . . . quam* occurs in Plautus and in Livy and later writers, generally after a negative expression; *perinde . . . quam* in Tacitus and Suetonius; *iūxtā . . . quam* once in Livy. Sometimes the apodosis contains no correlative.

1891. *tam . . . quam* become by abridgement coordinating words: as, *tam vēra quam falsa cernimus*, *Ac.* 2, 111, *we make out things both true and false.*

1892. The highest possible degree is expressed by *tam . . . quam quī* and a superlative without a verb; or by *quam* and a superlative with or without a form of *possum* (1466); sometimes by *quantus* or *ut*: as,

(a.) *tam sum misericors quam vōs*; *tam mītis quam quī lēnissimus*, Sull. 87, *I am as tender-hearted as you; as mild as the gentlest man living.* *tam sum amicus rēi pūblicae quam quī māximē*, *Fam.* 5, 2, 6, *I am as devoted a patriot as anybody can be.* (b.) *quam māximis potest itineribus in Galliam contendit*, 1, 7, 1, *he pushes into Gaul by as rapid marches as he can.* *cōstituērunt iūmentōrum quam māximum numerum cōēmere*, 1, 3, 1, *they determined to buy up the greatest possible number of beasts of burden.* (c.) *tanta est inter eōs, quanta māxima potest esse, mōrum distantia*, L. 74, *there is the greatest possible difference of character between them.* Or without any superlative: *fuge domum quantum potest*, Pl. *Men.* 850, *run home as quick as e'er you can.* *ut potuī accūrātissimē tē tūtātus sum*, *Fam.* 5, 17, 2, *I defended you as carefully as I could.*

## Conjunctive Sentences: *quam*. [1893–1896.]

1893. *quam* . . . *tam*, with two comparatives or superlatives, is equivalent to the more common *quō* . . . *eō* with two comparatives (1973): as,

(a.) *magis quam id reputō, tam magis ūror*, Pl. *B.* 1091, *the more I think it over, the sorer do I feel*. This use is found in Plautus, Lucretius, and Vergil. (b.) *quam quisque pessumē fēcit, tam māxumē tūtus est*, S. *I.* 31, 14, *the worse a man has acted, the safer he always is*. This use is found in Plautus, Terence, Cato, Varro, and Sallust.

1894. (2.) *quam*, *than*, is used in the protasis of a comparative period of inequality, with a comparative in the apodosis: as,

*meliōrem quam ego sum suppōnō tibi*, Pl. *Cu.* 256, *I give you in my place a better man than I am*. *plūra dixi quam volui*, V. 5, 79, *I have said more than I intended*. *Antōniō quam est, volō pēius esse*, Att. 15, 3, 2, *I hope Antony may be worse off than he is*. *doctrīna paulō dūrior quam nātūra patitur*, Mur. 60, *principles somewhat sterner than nature doth support*. *potius sērō quam numquam*, L. 4, 2, 11, *better late than never*. *corpus patiēns algōris suprā quam cuiquam crēdibile est*, S. *C.* 5, 3, *a constitution capable of enduring cold beyond what anybody could believe*. *suprā quam* is found in Cicero, Sallust, and often in late writers; *īnfrā* and *ultrā quam* in Cicero, Livy, and late writers (*īnfrā quam* also in Varro); *extrā quam* in Ennius, Cato, and in legal and official language in Cicero and Livy.

1895. *quam* is also used with some virtual comparatives: thus, *nihil aliud, nōn aliud quam*, *no other than*, often as adverb, *only*; *secus quam* with a negative, *not otherwise than*; *bis tantō quam*, *twice as much as*; and *prae quam* in old Latin, *in comparison with how*; and similar phrases: as,

(a.) *per bīduum nihil aliud quam stetērunt parātī ad pūgnandum*, L. 34, 46, 7, *for two days they merely stood in battle array*. This use occurs first in Sallust, then in Nepos, Livy, and later writers. (b.) *mihī erit cūrae nē quid fiat secus quam volumus*, Att. 6, 2, 2, *I will see to it that nothing be done save as we wish*. This use occurs in Plautus, Terence, Sallust, Cicero, Livy, and later writers. With both *aliud* and *secus* the clause is rarely positive, with *aliud* not before Livy. For *atque* (*ac*) instead of *quam* when the first clause is negative, see 1654. (c.) *bis tantō valeō quam valui prius*, Pl. *Merc.* 297, *I am twice as capable as I was before*. (d.) *nīl hōc quidem est trīgintā minae, prae quam aliōs sūmptūs facit*, Pl. *Most.* 981, *oh, this is nothing, thirty minae, when you think what other sums he spends*. *prae quam* is found only in Plautus rarely. Similar phrases are: *contrā quam*, in Cicero, Livy, and later writers; *praeter quam*, in Plautus, Naeavius, and frequently in other writers when followed by *quod* (1848); *super quam quod* (1848) and *īnsuper quam* in Livy; *prō quam* in Lucretius; *advorsum quam*, once in Plautus. *prae quam* is sometimes followed by a relative clause: as, *prae quam quod molestumst*, Pl. *Am.* 634, *compared with what is painful*. For *ante* (or *prius*) and *post quam*, see 1911, 1923.

### WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1896. The subjunctive is used with *quam* or *quam ut* after comparatives denoting disproportion (1461): as,



quicquid erat oneris Segestānis impōnēbat, aliquantō amplius quam ferre possent, *V. 4, 76, he would impose every possible burden on the Segestans, far too much for them to bear.* quis nōn intellegit Canachī sīgna rigidiora esse, quam ut imitentur vērītatem? *Br. 70, who does not feel that the statues of Canachus are too stiff to be true to nature?* clārior rēs erat quam ut dissimulārī posset, *L. 26, 51, 11, the thing was too notorious to be hushed up.* Instead of *ut*, *quī* is also used by Livy and later writers: as, māior sum quam cui possit Fōrtūna nocēre, *O. 6, 195, too strong am I for Fortune to break down*, says infatuated Niobe. All these sentences are extensions of the subjunctive of action conceivable (1554, 1818).

1897. The subjunctive is used in clauses introduced by *potius quam*, *rather than*, to denote action merely assumed. *citius*, *ante*, or *prius*, *sooner*, is sometimes used in the sense of *potius*: as,

*potius quam tē inimicum habeam, faciam ut iūsseris*, *T. Eu. 174, rather than make you my enemy, I will do as you tell me.* *dēpūgnā potius quam serviās*, *Att. 7, 7, 7, fight it out rather than be a slave.* *potius vituperātiōnem incōstantiae suscipiam, quam in tē sim crūdēlis*, *V. 5, 105, I will submit to the charge of inconsistency rather than be cruel towards you.* *animam omittunt prius quam locō dēmigrent*, *Pl. Am. 240, they lose their lives sooner than yield their ground.* Livy has also *potius quam ut*. All these sentences are extensions of the subjunctive of desire (1540, 1817).

## WITH THE INFINITIVE.

1898. When the main clause is an infinitive, *quam* is often followed by an infinitive: as,

*mālim morīrī meōs quam mendicārier*, *Pl. Vid. 96, better my bairns be dead than begging bread.* *vōcēs audiēbantur prius sē cortice ex arboribus vīctūrōs, quam Pompēium ē manibus dīmissūrōs*, *Caes. C. 3, 49, 1, shouts were heard that they would live on the bark of trees sooner than let Pompey slip through their fingers.*

## quamquam.

1899. (1) *quamquam* is used in old Latin as an indefinite adverb, *ever so much, however much*: as,

*quamquam negōtiumst, sī quid veis, Dēmiphō, nōn sum occupātus umquam amīcō operam dare*, *Pl. Mer. 287, however busy I may be (1814), if anything you wish, dear Demipho, I'm not too busy ever to a friend mine aid to lend.* *id quoque possum ferre, quamquam iniūriumst*, *T. Ad. 205, that also I can bear, however so unfair.* From an adverb, *quamquam* became a conjunction, *although*.

1900. (2.) *quamquam*, *although*, introduces the indicative in the concession of a definite fact. In the later writers it is also sometimes used with the subjunctive, sometimes with a participle or an adjective: as,



(a.) *quamquam* premuntur aere aliēnō, dominātiōnem tamen expectant, *C. 2, 19, though they are staggering under debt, they yet look forward to being lords and masters. quamquam* nōn vēnit ad finem tam audāx inceptum, tamen haud omnīnō vānum fuit, *L. 10, 32, 5, though the bold attempt did not attain its purpose, yet it was not altogether fruitless.* This is the classical use; but see 1901. (b.) *nam et tribūnīs plēbis senātūs habendī iūs erat, quamquam senātōrēs nōn essent*, Varro in Gell. 14, 8, *for even the tribunes of the people, though they were not senators, had the right to hold a meeting of the senate. haud cunctātus est Germānicus, quamquam fingī ea intellexeret*, *Ta. 2, 26, Germanicus did not delay, though he was aware this was all made up.* This use is found first in Varro, often in the Augustan poets, sometimes in Livy, always in Juvenal. It does not become common before Tacitus and the younger Pliny. (c.) *secente, quamquam nōn probante, Amynandrō*, *L. 31, 41, 7, Amynander accompanying though not approving* (1374). *nē Aquitānia quidem, quamquam in verba Othōnis obstricta, diū mānsit*, *Ta. H. 1, 76, Aquitania, though bound by the oath of allegiance to Otho, did not hold out long either.* This use is found once each in Cicero and Sallust, half a dozen times in Livy, oftener in Tacitus.

1901. The subjunctive is also used often with *quamquam* for special reasons, as by attraction (1728), in indirect discourse (1725), and of action conceivable (1731).

1902. For *quamquam* appending a fresh main sentence, see 2153; for its use with the infinitive, 2317.

### —◆—

*quam vis* or *quamvis*.

1903. *quam vis* or *quamvis* is used as an indefinite adverb (712), as *as much as you please*, and is often joined with an adjective or other adverb to take the place of a superlative: as,

*quam vis ridiculus est, ubī uxor nōn adest*, *Pl. Men. 318, he's as droll as you please when his wife isn't by. quamvis insipiēns poterat perscrutari*, *Pl. Merc. 687, the veriest dullard could detect. quamvis paucī adire audent*, *4, 2, 5, the merest handful dares attack. quamvis callidē*, *V. 2, 134, never so craftily. quamvis* is also sometimes used to strengthen a superlative (1466).

1904. (1.) The indefinite adverb *quam vis*, *as much as you please*, is often used in subjunctive clauses of concession or permission; such subjunctives are sometimes coordinated with *licet*: as,

*quod turpe est, id quam vis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nūllō modō potest*, *Off. 3, 78, if a thing is base, let it be hidden as much as you will, yet it cannot be made respectable* (1553). *locus hīc apud nōs, quam vis subito veniās, semper liber est*, *Pl. B. 82, our house is always open, come as sudden as you may* (1553). *praeter eōs quam vis enumerēs multōs licet, nōnnūllōs reperiēs perniciosōs tribūnōs*, *Leg. 3, 24, besides these you may tell off as many as you please, you will still find some dangerous tribunes* (1710). The combination with *licet* occurs first in Cicero.

Instead of *vīs*, other forms are sometimes used: as, *volumus*, *volent*, *velit*, &c.: thus, *quam volent facētī sint*, *Cael.* 67, *they may be as witty as they please* (1735). *quam volet Epicūrus iocētur et dicat sē nōn posse intellegere, numquam mē movēbit*, *DN.* 2, 46, *Epicurus may joke and say he can't understand it as much as he likes, he will never shake me*. From an adverb, *quam vīs* became a conjunction, *however much, even if*.

**1905.** (2.) The subjunctive with the conjunction *quamvīs*, *however much, even if, though*, denotes action merely assumed; when the action is to be denoted as real, *ut* or *sicut* or the like, with the indicative, usually follows in the best prose (1943): as,

(a.) *quamvīs sint hominēs quī Cn. Carbōnem ōderint, tamen hī dēbent quid metuendum sit cōgitāre*, *V.* 1, 39, *though there may be men who hate Carbo, still these men ought to consider what they have to fear*. *nōn enim possīs, quamvīs excellās*, *L.* 73, *you may not have the power, however eminent you may be*. This use begins with Cicero and Varro, and gets common in late writers. Not in Livy. (b.) *illa quamvīs rīdīcula essent, sicut erant, mihī tamen rīsum nōn mōvērunt*, *Fam.* 7, 32, 3, *droll as this really was, it nevertheless did not make me laugh*. *quamvīs enim multis locīs dicat Epicūrus, sicutī dicit, satis fortiter dē dolōre, tamen nōn id spectandum est quid dicat*, *Off.* 3, 117, *even though Epicurus really does speak in many places pretty heroically about pain, still we must not have an eye to what he says*. In the Augustan poets rarely, and often in Tacitus, the younger Pliny, and late writers, the subjunctive, without a parenthetical phrase introduced by *ut* or the like, is used of an action denoted as real: as, *expalluit notābiliter, quamvīs palleat semper*, *Plin. Ep.* 1, 5, 13, *he grew pale perceptibly, though he is always a pale man*. *maestus erat, quamvīs laetitiam simulāret*, *Ta.* 15, 54, *sad he was, though he pretended to be gay*.

**1906.** *quamvīs*, *even if, though*, is also sometimes used with the indicative (1900): as,

*erat dīgnitāte rēgiā, quamvīs carēbat nōmine*, *N.* 1, 2, 3, *he had the authority of a king, though not the title*. *quamvīs tacet Hermogenēs, cantor est*, *H. S.* 1, 3, 129, *though he open not his mouth, Hermogenes remains a singer still*. This use occurs twice in Lucretius, once in Cicero, Nepos, and Livy each, in Varro, in the Augustan poets, and sometimes in late writers. Not in Tacitus, Pliny the younger, Juvenal, Martial, or Suetonius.

**1907.** It may be mentioned here that the indefinite adverb *quamlibet*, *however you please*, is used in subjunctive clauses of concession or permission (1904) once or twice by Lucretius and Quintilian. Ovid uses it with the participle, a construction sometimes found with *quamvīs* in late writers.

### —◆— tamquam.

**1908.** *tamquam*, *just as*, introduces an indicative protasis in periods of comparison.

The *tam* properly belongs to the apodosis and is attracted to the protasis. *tamquam* has sometimes as correlative *sic* or *ita*.



## Conjunctive Sentences : *antequam*. [1909-1912.

*tē hortor ut tamquam poētae bonī solent, sic tū in extrēmā parte mūneris tuī dīligentissimū sīs*, *QFr.* 1, 1, 46, *I urge you to be very particular at the end of your task, just as good poets always are.* *tamquam philosophōrum habent disciplīnae ex ipsīs vocābula, parasitī ita ut Gnathōnicī vocentur*, *T. Eu.* 263, *that so parasites may be called Gnathonites even as schools of philosophy are named from the masters.* Usually, however, *ut* (1944) or *quemadmodum* is used in this sense; and *tamquam* occurs oftenest in abridged sentences (1057), particularly to show that an illustration is untrue or figurative: as, *Odyssia Latīna est sic tamquam opus aliquod Daedalī*, *Br.* 71, *the Odyssey in Latin is, you may say, a regular work of Daedalus.* *oculī tamquam speculātōrēs altissimū locum obtinent*, *DN.* 2, 140, *the eyes occupy the highest part, as a sort of watchmen.*

1909. In late writers, especially in Tacitus, *tamquam* is often used like *quod* (1853) to introduce a reason or motive: as,

*invisus tamquam plūs quam cīvilia agitāret*, *Ta.* 1, 12, *hated on the ground that his designs were too lofty for a private citizen* (1725). *lēgātōs increpuit, tamquam nōn omnēs reōs perēgissent*, *Plin. Ep.* 3, 9, 36, *he reproved the embassy 'for not having completed the prosecution of all the defendants'* (1852, 1725).

1910. For *tamquam* instead of *tamquam sī*, see 2118; with a participle, 2121.

---

### *antequam*, *priusquam*.

1911. *antequam* and *priusquam* accompany both the indicative and the subjunctive.

*ante* and *prius* properly belong to the apodosis, and regularly stand with it if it is negative; but otherwise they are usually attracted to the protasis.

*antequam* is very seldom found in old Latin, and it is in general much rarer than *priusquam*, except in Tacitus.

#### IN GENERAL STATEMENTS.

1912. In general present statements, *antequam* and *priusquam* regularly introduce the perfect indicative or the present subjunctive: as,

*membris ūtimur priusquam didicimus cūius ea causā ūtilitātis habēamus*, *Fin.* 3, 66, *we always use our limbs before we learn for what purposes of utility we have them* (1613). *priusquam lūcet, adsunt*, *Pl. MG.* 709, *before 'tis light they're always here*; here *lūcet* is equivalent to *inlūxit*. *ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus*, *Sen. QN.* 2, 12, 6, *we always see the flash before we hear the sound.* *priusquam sēmen mātūrum siet, secātō*, *Cato, RR.* 53, *always cut before the seed is ripe* (1575). With the perfect subjunctive in the indefinite second person (1030): as, *hōc malum opprimit antequam prōspicere potueris*, *V.* 1, 39, *this calamity always overwhelms you before you can anticipate it* (1731, 1558). For *priusquam*, sooner than, see 1897.



## 1913-1917.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

1913. The future indicative is used a few times in general statements by old and late writers, and the perfect subjunctive after a negative clause rarely by Tacitus: as, *bovēs priusquam in viam agēs, pice cornua infima unguītō*, Cato, *RR.* 72, *always smear the hoofs of your oxen with pitch before you drive them on the road* (1625, 1577). *deūm honor principī nōn ante habētur quam agere inter hominēs dēsierit*, Ta. 15, 74, *divine honours are not paid to an emperor before he has ceased to live among men*. Cicero has the perfect subjunctive in a definition: thus, *prōvidentia, per quam futūrum aliquid vidētur antequam factum sit*, *Inu.* 2, 160, *foresight is the faculty through which a future event is seen before it has taken place*.

1914. In general past statements *antequam* and *priusquam* introduce the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect; but this use is very rare: as, *dormīre priusquam somni cupidō esset*, S. C. 13, 3, *a-sleeping always before they felt sleepy*. *ita saepe māgna indolēs virtūtis, priusquam rēi pūblīcae prōdesse potuisset, extincta est*, *Ph.* 5, 47, *thus character of unusual promise was oftentimes cut off, before it could do the government any good*.

### IN PARTICULAR STATEMENTS.

1915. In particular present or future statements, *antequam* and *priusquam* introduce a present, either indicative or subjunctive; in future statements the future perfect is also used, and regularly when the main verb is future perfect: as,

*antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam*, C. 4, 20, *before I come back to the motion, I will say a little about myself* (1593). *est etiam prius quam abīs quod volo loquī*, Pl. *As.* 232, *there's something else I want to say before you go*. *antequam veniat in Pontum, litterās ad Cn. Pompēium mittet*, *Agr.* 2, 53, *before he reaches Pontus, he will send a letter to Pompey*. *prius quam ad portam veniās, est pistrilla*, T. *Ad.* 583, *there's a little bakery just before you get to the gate*. *nihil contrā disputābō priusquam dīxerit*, *Fl.* 51, *I will not argue to the contrary before he has spoken* (1626). *neque prius, quam dēbellāverō, absistam*, L. 49, 39, 9, *and I will not leave off before I have brought the war to an end*. *sī quid mihī acciderit priusquam hōc tantum malī viderō*, *Mil.* 99, *if anything shall befall me before I see this great calamity*. *neque prōmittō quicquam neque respondeō prius quam gnātum viderō*, T. *Ph.* 1044, *I'm not promising anything nor making any answer before I see my son* (1593). Tacitus uses neither the present indicative nor the future perfect.

1916. In old Latin the future and the perfect subjunctive also occur: as, *prius quam quoiquam convīvae dabis, gustātō tūte prius*, Pl. *Ps.* 885, *before you help a single guest, taste first yourself*; but Terence does not use the future, and it is found only once or twice later. *nūllō pactō potest prius haec in aedīs recipī, quam illam amiserim*, Pl. *MG.* 1095, *on no terms can I take my new love to the house, before I've let the old love drop*; but usually the perfect subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

1917. In particular past statements *antequam* and *priusquam* introduce the perfect indicative, especially when the apodosis is negative; or, less frequently, an imperfect subjunctive: as,

## Conjunctival Sentences : *antequam*. [1918-1922.]

omnia ista ante facta sunt quam iste *Ītaliā* attigit, *V.* 2, 161, *all these incidents occurred before the defendant set foot in Italy*. neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad *Rhēnum* pervēnērunt, *I.* 53, 1, *and they did not stay their flight before they fairly arrived at the Rhine*. prius quam hinc abiit quīdecim mīles minās dederat, *Pl. Ps.* 53, *the captain had paid down fifteen minae before he left here*. *antequam* cōsulēs in *Etrūriā* pervenīrent, *Gallī* vērunt, *L.* 10, 26, 7, *before the consuls arrived in Etruria, the Gauls came*. This use of the imperfect subjunctive, not to be confounded with that mentioned in 1919, is not found in old Latin, Cicero, or Caesar. It is not uncommon in Livy.

1918. The present indicative also occurs in particular past statements in old Latin: as, is priusquam moritur mihi dedit, *Pl. Cu.* 637, *before he died he gave it me*. The indicative imperfect occurs four times in Livy and once in late Latin, the pluperfect once in old Latin and once in Cicero.

1919. When the action did not occur, or when purpose is expressed, priusquam regularly introduces the imperfect subjunctive in particular past statements: as,

(a.) plērique interfecti sunt, priusquam occultum hostem vidērent, *L.* 35, 29, 3, *most of them were slain before they could see the hidden enemy*. This use is not found in old Latin. It occurs chiefly in Livy, but also in later writers. (b.) pervēnit priusquam Pompēius sentīre posset, *Caes. C.* 3, 67, 4, *he arrived before Pompey should be able to learn of his coming* (1725). The present and perfect subjunctive occur rarely, generally when the main clause contains a present of vivid narration (1590). The imperfect is not found in old Latin.

1920. The perfect indicative or imperfect subjunctive with *antequam* is often used attributively with nouns denoting time: as,

fābulam docuit, annō ipsō ante quam nātus est Ennius, *Br.* 72, *he exhibited a play just a year before Ennius was born*. ducentis annis ante quam Rōmā caperent, in *Ītaliā* Gallī trāscendērunt, *L.* 5, 33, 5, *two hundred years before they took Rome, the Gauls crossed over to Italy*. The pluperfect also occurs, when the main verb is pluperfect: as, Staiēnus bienniō *antequam* causam recēpisset, sēscentis mīllibus nummūm sē iūdicium conruptūrum dixerat, *Chu.* 68, *Stajenus had said two years before he undertook the case, that he would bribe the court for six hundred thousand sesterces*.

1921. The pluperfect subjunctive is rarely introduced by *antequam* or priusquam except in indirect discourse: as,

*antequam* dē meō adventū audīre potuissent, in *Macedoniā* per-rēxi, *Pl.* 98, *before they should be able to hear of my arrival, I proceeded to Macedonia* (1725). āvertit equōs in castra priusquam pābula gustāssent *Trōiae* Xanthumque bibissent, *V.* 1, 472, *he drove the horses off to camp, or ever they should taste of Troja's grass and Xanthus drink* (1725).

1922. It may be mentioned here that postrīdiē quam and prīdiē quam occur a few times in Plautus and Cicero with the indicative; postrīdiē quam with the indicative in Suetonius; and prīdiē quam with the subjunctive in Livy, Valerius Maximus, and Suetonius.



postea quam or postquam.

ubi, ut, cum primum, simul atque.

1923. With *postea quam*, *postquam* (*posquam*), *after*, the following words may conveniently be treated: *ubi*, *ut*, *when*; *ubi primum*, *ut primum*, *cum primum*, *when first*, and in Plautus *cum extemplō*; *simul atque* (or *ac*, less frequently *et* or *ut*, or *simul* alone), *at the same time with*, *as soon as*.

*postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *cum primum*, *simul atque*, accompany the indicative.

For examples of the use of tenses, see 1924-1934.

1924. In clauses introduced by *postea quam* or *postquam*, the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is rarely used, chiefly by Cicero, not in old Latin: as, *quī postea quam m̄ximās aedificāset classēs et sē Bosporānis bellum inferre simulāret, lēgātōs m̄sit*, *IP. 9*, *after building enormous fleets, pretending he was going to make war on the Bosporani, he sent envoys*. So once or twice in clauses introduced by *ubi*. The subjunctive is also used for special reasons, as with the indefinite second person (1731), by attraction (1728), and in indirect discourse (1725). For the subjunctive of repeated past action with *ubi* and *ut*, see 1932. The infinitive of intimation occurs in Tacitus (1539): as, *postquam exui aequālītās, prōvērēre dominātiōnēs*, *Ta. 3, 26*, *after equality between man and man was dropped, there came a crop of tyrants*.

1925. In narration the perfect indicative is regularly used in clauses introduced by *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *cum primum*, *simul atque* (1739): as,

*postquam tuās litterās lēgī, Postumia tua mē convēnit*, *Fam. 4, 2, 1*, *after I read your letter, your Postumia called on me*. *postquam aurum abstulimus, in nāvem cōnscendimus*, *Pl. B. 277*, *after we got away the money, we took ship*. *ubi ad ipsum vēnī dēvorticulum, cōstitī*, *T. Eu. 635*, *when I came exactly to the side street, I pulled up*. *ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit, graviter eōs accūsāt*, *1, 16, 5*, *when he came to see that he was put off a good while, he takes them roundly to task*. *quī ut perōrāvit, surrēxit Clōdīus*, *QFr. 2, 3, 2*, *when he had finished speaking, up jumped Clodius*. *ut abiī abs tē, fit fōrte obviam mihi Phormiō*, *T. Ph. 617*, *when I left you, Phormio happened to fall in my way*. *crimen ēius modī est, ut, cum primum ad mē dēlātum est, ūsūrum mē illō nōn putārem*, *V. 5, 158*, *the charge is of such a sort that, when first it was reported to me, I thought I should not use it*. *cum primum Crētae litus attigit, nūtiōs m̄sit*, *L. 37, 60, 4*, *as soon as he touched the shore of Crete, he sent messengers*. *ut primum loquī posse coepī, inquam*, *RP. 6, 15*, *as soon as I began to be able to speak, I said*. *quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt, mūrum complēre coepērunt*, *7, 12, 5*, *as soon as the garrison espied him, they began to man the wall*. *at hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt*, *4, 12, 1*, *but as soon as the enemy caught sight of our cavalry, they attacked and threw our men into disorder*. The conjunction *simul atque* is very rarely found in old Latin.

1926. The present indicative of vivid narration (1590) sometimes occurs: as,



## Conjunctional Sentences : postquam. [1927-1930.]

postquam iam puerī septuennēs sunt, pater onerāvit nāvim māgnam, Pl. Men. prol. 24, *after the boys were seven year olds, their father freighted a big ship.* quid ait, ubi mē nōminās, T. Hau. 303, *what sayeth she when you name me?* ubī neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit, 2, 9, 2, *neither party taking the initiative in crossing, Caesar marched his men back to camp.* Verbs of perceiving, especially *videō*, occur oftenest in this use, which is common in Plautus and Terence: as, *postquam videt nūptiās adparārī, missast ancilla ilicō*, T. Andr. 513, *after she sees a marriage on foot, her maid is sent forthwith.* *abeō ab illīs, postquam videō mē lūdificārier*, Pl. Cap. 487, *seeing myself made game of, I leave them.* *quem posteā quam videt nōn adesse, ārdēre atque furere coepit*, V. 2, 92, *seeing that the man does not appear, he began to rage and fume.* *ubī hōc videt, init cōnsilium importūnī tyrannī*, V. 5, 103, *seeing this, he adopted the policy of a savage tyrant.* Plautus uses also *cum extemplō*. Such protases often take on a causal sense (see also 1930).

1927. The present or perfect with *postquam* or *ut* is sometimes used in expressions equivalent to an emphasized accusative or ablative of time, the main verb being *est* or *sunt*: as, *septingentī sunt annī postquam inclita condita Rōma est*, E. in Varro, KR. 3, 1, 2, *'tis seven hundred years since glorious Rome was founded.* *domō ut abiērunt hīc tertius annus*, Pl. St. 29, *this is the third year since they left home.* *annus est octāvus ut imperium obtinēs*, Ta. 14, 53, *it is the eighth year since you acquired empire.* For a similar use of *cum*, see 1871.

1928. The pluperfect with *postquam*, denoting resulting state (1615), occurs less frequently: as,

*tum cum P. Africānus, posteā quam bis cōnsul fuerat, L. Cottam in iūdicium vocābat*, Caecil. 69, *at the time when Africanus, after he had twice been consul, was bringing Cotta to judgement.* *postquam omnium oculōs occupāverat certāmen, tum āversam adoriuntur Rōmānam aciem*, L. 22, 48, 4, *when every eye was fairly riveted on the engagement, that instant they fell upon the Romans in the rear.* Not in Plautus, once in Terence, and rare in classical writers.

1929. The pluperfect, less frequently the perfect, with *postquam* is used attributively with nouns denoting time.

In this use *post* is often separated from *quam*, and two constructions are possible: (a) Ablative: *annō post quam vōta erat aedēs Monētae dēdicātur*, L. 7, 28, 6, *the temple of Moneta is dedicated a year after it was vowed.* Without *post*: *quadringentēsīmō annō quam urbs Rōmāna condita erat, patriciī cōsulēs magistrātum iniēre*, L. 7, 18, 1, *four hundred years after Rome town was founded, patrician consuls entered into office.* (b.) Accusative, with an ordinal, and *post* as a preposition, or, sometimes, *intrā*: *post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dīxerat*, Mil. 44, *the deed was done the next day but one after he said it.* See 2419.

1930. The imperfect with *postquam* expresses action continuing into the time of the main action. Such a protasis, especially when negative, usually denotes the cause of the main action: as,

*Appius, postquam nēmō adibat, domum sē recēpit*, L. 3, 46, 9, *Appius finding that nobody presented himself, went back home.* *posteā quam ē scaenā explōdēbātur, cōnfūgit in hūius domum*, RC. 30, *after being repeatedly hissed off the stage, he took refuge in my client's house.*

In old Latin this use is found only once, in Plautus; it is most common in Livy, but occurs frequently in Tacitus. So occasionally the present, generally when the main action is present (see also 1926): as, *postquam nec ab Rōmānīs vōbīs ūlla est spēs, nec vōs moenia dēfendunt, pācem adferō ad vōs*, L. 21, 13, 4, *now that it has become plain that you have no hope from the Romans, and that your walls are no protection to you, I bring peace unto you.* *postquam liberast, ubī habitet dicere admodum incertē sciō*, Pl. *E.* 505, *now that she's free, I'm quite too ill informed to say where she lives.* *quae omnia intellegit nihil prōdesse, postea quam testibus convincitur*, V. 5, 103, *he knows that all this is fruitless, now that he is being refuted by witnesses.* The perfect with *postquam* or *ut* occurs occasionally in this use with the present in the main clause: as, *animus in tūtō locōst, postquam iste hinc abiit*, Pl. *Ps.* 1052, *my mind is easy, now that fellow's gone.* *nam ut in nāvī vēcta's, crēdō timida's*, Pl. *B.* 106, *for after your voyage, of course you're nervous.*

1931. *postquam* and *ut* have sometimes the meaning of *ever since* or *as long as*: as,

*postquam nātus sum, satur numquam fui*, Pl. *St.* 156, *since I was born I've never had enough to eat.* *tibī umquam quicquam, postquam tuos sum, verbōrum dedī?* Pl. *Most.* 925, *have I once ever cheated you as long as I have been your slave?* *neque meum pedem intulī in aedīs, ut cum exercitū hinc profectus sum*, Pl. *Am.* 733, *I have n't set foot in the house ever since I marched out with the army.* *ut illōs dē rē publicā librōs ēdidistī, nihil ā tē postea accēpimus*, Br. 19, *we have had nothing from you since you published the work On the State.*

### *ubī, ut, simul atque.*

1932. *ubī, ut, or simul atque* often introduces a clause denoting indefinite or repeated action: as,

*adeō obcaecat animōs fōrtūna, ubī vim suam refringī nōn vult*, L. 5, 37, 1, *so completely does fortune blind the mind when she will not have her power thwarted.* *ubī salūtatiō dēflūxit, litterīs mē involvō*, Fam. 9, 20, 3, *when my callers go, I always plunge into my book* (1613). *omnēs profectō mulierēs tē amant, ut quaeque aspexit*, Pl. *MG.* 1264, *all the ladies love you, every time one spies you.* *simul atque sē inflēxit hīc rēx in dominātum iniūstiōrem, fit continuō tyrannus*, RP. 2, 48, *for the moment our king turns to a severer kind of mastery, he becomes a tyrant on the spot.* *Messānam ut quisque nostrūm vēnerat, haec vīsere solēbat*, V. 4, 5, *any Roman, who visited Messana, invariably went to see these statues* (1618). *hostēs, ubī aliquōs singulārēs cōspexerant, adoriēbantur*, 4, 26, 2, *every time the enemy saw some detached parties, they would charge.* The imperfect in this use is not common in classical writers, and occurs but once, with *ubī*, in old Latin; the pluperfect is rare before the silver age. Clauses with *ut* generally contain some form of *quisque* (2396). Plautus uses *cum extemplō* with the present and perfect. The subjunctive is found with *ubī* and *ut quisque* in cases of repeated past action (1730).

1933. *ubī, ut, or simul atque* rarely introduces an imperfect or pluperfect of definite time: as,



## Conjunctive Sentences: *ut*. [1934-1937.]

quid ubi reddēbās aurum, dīxistī patrī, Pl. B. 685, *what did you tell your father when you were returning the money?* ubī lūx adventābat, tubicinēs signa canere, S. I. 99, 1, *when daylight was drawing on, the trumpeters sounded the call.* ubī nēmō obvius ibat, plēnō gradū ad hostium castra tendunt, L. 9, 45, 14, *finding nobody came to meet them, they advanced double quick upon the enemy's camp* (1930). The use of these tenses referring to definite time is very rare in old Latin, and found only with *ut* in Cicero.

1934. *ubī* or *simul atque*, referring to definite time, introduces the future or future perfect, when the apodosis is also future: as,

*simul et quid erit certī, scribam ad tē*, Att. 2, 20, 2, *as soon as there is anything positive, I will write to you.* *ego ad tē statim habēbō quod scribam, simul ut viderō Cūriōnem*, Att. 10, 4, 12, *I shall have something to write you, as soon as ever I see Curio.* *nam ubī mē aspiciet, ad carnificem rapiet continuō senex*, Pl. B. 688, *when the old man sees me, he'll hurry me off to Jack Ketch without any ado.* *ubi primum poterit, sē illinc subducet*, T. Eu. 628, *she'll steal away as soon as she can.* Plautus has also *cum extemplō* in this use.

### *utī* or *ut*.

1935. The relative adverb *utī* or *ut* (711) is found in the oldest Latin in the form *utei*, but *ut* was the prevalent form even in the time of Plautus. As a conjunctive particle, it accompanies both the indicative and the subjunctive.

### WITH THE INDICATIVE.

#### (A.) *ut*, *where*.

1936. *utī* or *ut* in the rare signification of *where*, accompanies the indicative: as, *atque in eōpse adstās lapide, ut praecō praedicat*, Pl. B. 815, *and there you stand right on the auction block, just where the crier always cries.* *sive in extrēmōs penetrābit Indōs, litus ut longē resonante Eōā tunditur undā*, Cat. 11, 2, *or shall he pierce to farthest Ind., where by the long-resounding eastern wave the strand is lashed.* In classical Latin, *ut* in this sense is used only by the poets, as here and there in Lucilius, Catullus, Cicero's *Aratēā*, Vergil, and Ovid. *ubī* is the word regularly used. For *ut*, *when*, see 1923.

#### (B.) *ut*, *as*.

1937. The indicative is used in the protasis of a comparative period introduced by *utī* or *ut*, *as*.

*ut* often has as a correlative *ita*, *item*, *itidem*, *sic*, *perinde*, or *similiter*, and sometimes in old Latin and poetry *aequē*, *adaequē*, *pariter*, *nōn aliter*, *nōn secus*, *idem*. *sic* is sometimes drawn to the protasis, making *sicutī*, *sicut*; *utī* is sometimes strengthened by *vel*, making *velutī*, *velut*, *even as*, *just as*. *quemadmodum* often, and *quōmodo* sometimes, stands for *ut*. In old Latin, the correlative is omitted only in sentences which have the appearance of an indirect question (1791). For coordinated comparative sentences without *ut*, see 1704.



## 1938-1941.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

perge ut instituisti, *RP.* 2, 22, *go on as you have begun.* ut volēs mēd esse, ita erō, *Pl. Ps.* 240, *as you will have me be, so will I be* (1625). ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs, *DO.* 2, 261, *as you sow, y'are like to reap* (1626). ut nōn omnem frūgem in omnī agrō reperire possis, sic nōn omne facinus in omnī vitā nāscitur, *RA.* 75, *every crime does not start into being in every life, any more than you can find every fruit in every field* (1731). Also in asseverations: ita mē dī amābunt, ut ego hunc auscultō lubēns, *Pl. Aul.* 496, *so help me heaven, as I am glad to hear this man* (1622).

1938. ut . . . ita or sic, as . . . so, often stand where concessive and adversative conjunctions might be used; while . . . nevertheless, although . . . yet, certainly . . . but: as,

ut nihil bonī est in morte, sic certē nihil malī, *L.* 14, *while there is nothing good after death, yet certainly there is nothing bad.* quō factō sicut glōriam auxit, ita grātiā minuit, *Suet. Oth.* 1, *by this action he increased his reputation, but lessened his popularity.* nec ut iniūstus in pāce rēx, ita dux bellī prāvus fuit, *L.* 1, 53, 1, *but while he was an unjust king in peace, he was not a bad leader in war.* This adversative correlation is found sometimes in Cicero, but is far more common in late writers.

1939. ut quisque, commonly with a superlative expression, is used in the protasis of a comparative period of equality, with ita or sic and commonly another superlative expression in the apodosis: as,

ut quaeque rēs est turpissima, sic māximē vindicanda est, *Caec.* 7, *the more disgraceful a thing is, the more emphatically does it call for punishment.* ut quisque optimē Graecē sciret, ita esse nēquissimum, *DO.* 2, 265, *that the better Greek scholar a man was, the greater rascal he always was* (1722). This construction is often abridged: as, sapientissimus quisque aequissimō animō moritur, *CM.* 83, *the sage always dies with perfect resignation.* optimus quisque praeceptor frequentiā gaudet, *Quint.* 1, 2, 9, *the best teachers always revel in large classes.* See 2397.

1940. ut often introduces a parenthetical idea, particularly a general truth or a habit which accounts for the special fact expressed in the main sentence: as,

nēmō, ut opīnor, in culpā est, *Chu.* 143, *nobody, as I fancy, is to blame.* excitābat flūctūs in simpulō, ut dīcitur, *Grātidiū*, *Leg.* 3, 36, *Gratidius was raising a tempest in a teapot, as the saying is.* paulisper, dum sē uxor, ut fit, comparat, commorātus est, *Mil.* 28, *he had to wait a bit, as is always the case, while his wife was putting on her things.* hōrum auctōritāte adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita cōsilia, *Trebiū* retinent, 3, 8, 3. *influenced by these people they detain Trebius, as might have been expected, sudden resolutions being always characteristic of the Gauls.* sēditione nūntiātā, ut erat laenā amictus, ita vēnit in cōntiōnem, *Br.* 56, *an outbreak was reported, and he came to the meeting all accoutred as he was, with his sacrificial robe on.* Often elliptically: as, acūtī hominis, ut Siculī, *TD.* 1, 15, *a bright man, of course, being a Sicilian.* Aequōrum exercitus, ut quī permultōs annōs imbellēs ēgissent, trepidāre, *L.* 9, 45, 10, *the army of the Aequians alarmed and irresolute, and naturally, since they had passed a great many years without fighting* (1824, 1827).

1941. ut, as for example, is used in illustrations, particularly in abridged sentences (1057): as,

## Conjunctional Sentences : ut. [1942-1946.

genus est quod plūrēs partēs amplectitur, ut 'animal.' pars est, quae subest generi, ut 'equus,' *Inv.* 1, 32, a class is what embraces a number of parts, as 'living thing'; a part is what is included in a class, as 'horse.' sunt bēstiae in quibus inest aliquid simile virtūtis, ut in leōnibus, ut in canibus, *Fin.* 5, 38, there are brutes in which there is a something like the moral quality of man, as for instance the lion and the dog.

1942. The parenthetical clause with **ut** or **prout** sometimes makes an allowance for the meaning of a word, usually an adjective, in the main sentence : as,

cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum, 4, 3, 3, a grand and prosperous community, that is according to German conceptions. ut captus est servōrum, nōn malus, *T. Ad.* 480, not a bad fellow, as slaves go. Sthenius ab adulēscentiā haec comparārat, supellēctilem ex aere ēlegantiōrem, tabulās pīctās, etiam argentī bene factī prout Thermī-tānī hominīs facultātēs ferēbant, satis, *V.* 2, 83, Sthenius had been a collector from early years of such things as artistic bronzes, pictures; also of curiously wrought silver a goodly amount, that is as the means of a *Thermae* man went. Often in abridged sentences : as, scriptor fuit, ut temporibus illīs, lūculentus, *Br.* 102, he was a brilliant historian for the times. multae etiam, ut in homine Rōmānō, litterae, *CM.* 12, furthermore, extensive reading, that is for a Roman. ut illīs temporibus, praedives, *L.* 4, 13, 1, a millionaire, for those times.

1943. **ut**, as *indeed*, as *in fact*, with the indicative, is used to represent that an action supposed, conceded, or commanded, really occurs : as,

sit Ennius sānē, ut est certē, perfectior, *Br.* 76, grant, for aught I care, that Ennius is a more finished poet, as indeed he is. utī erat rēs, Metellum esse ratī, *S. I.* 69, 1, supposing that it was Metellus, as in fact it was. This use begins in the classical period. It is found particularly with **quamvis**, 1905; with **sī**, see 2017.

1944. **ut**, as *like*, sometimes shows that a noun used predicatively is not literally applicable, but expresses an imputed quality or character : as,

Cicerō ea quae nunc ūsū veniunt cecinit ut vātēs, *N.* 25, 16, 4, Cicero foretold what is now actually occurring, like a bard inspired. canem et faelem ut deōs colunt, *Leg.* 1, 32, they bow the knee to dog and cat as gods. quod mē sicut alterum parentem dīligit, *Fam.* 5, 8, 4, because he loves me like a second father. rēgiae virginēs, ut tōnstrīculae, tondēbant barbā patris, *TD.* 5, 58, the princesses used to shave their father, just like common barber-girls. In an untrue or a merely figurative comparison **tamquam** (1908) or **quasi** is used.

1945. In old Latin, **prae** is combined with **ut**: **praeut**, compared with *how* : as, parum etiam, praeut futūrumst, praedicās, *Pl. Am.* 374, you say too little still compared with how 'twill be. **praeut** is sometimes followed by a relative clause: as, lūdum iocumque dīcet fuisse illum alterum, praeut hūius rabiēs quae dabit, *T. En.* 300, he'll say the other was but sport and play, compared with what this youth will in his frenzy do.

1946. In Plautus **sicut**, with the indicative, has once or twice the meaning of *since*: as, quīn tū illam iubē abs tē abire quō lubet : sicut soror eius hūc gemina vēnit Ephesum, *MG.* 974, why, bid her go away from you wherever she may choose, since her twin sister here to Ephesus is come.



## WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

utī or ut.

NEGATIVE ut nē, nē, or ut nōn.

1947. The subjunctive with *ut* is: (A.) That of action desired (1540), in clauses of purpose; in these the negative is *nē*, or sometimes *ut nē*, and *and that not*, *nēve* or *neu*, rarely *neque* or *nec*. *ut nē*, though used at all periods (not by Caesar, Sallust, or Livy), is chiefly found in older Latin; afterwards *nē* alone took its place (1706). *ut nōn* is used when the negative belongs to a single word. (B.) That of action conceivable (1554), in clauses of result; in these the negative is *ut nōn*, *ut nēmō*, *ut nūllus*, &c.; or with emphasis on the negative, *nēmō ut*, *nūllus ut*, *nihil ut*; also *vix ut*, *paene ut*, *prope ut*.

1948. Final and consecutive clauses with *ut* are of two classes: I. Complementary clauses, that is, such as are an essential complement of certain specific verbs or expressions; such clauses have the value of a substantive, and may represent a subject, an object, or any oblique case. II. Pure final or consecutive clauses, in which the purpose or result of any action may be expressed, and which are not essential to complete the sense of a verb.

### (A.) PURPOSE.

#### I. COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES.

1949. (1.) The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of verbs of will or aim.

1950. (a.) Verbs of will include those of desire, request, advice, resolution, stipulation, command, or permission.

Will may be suggested by a general verb or expression: as, *dīcō*, *respondeō*, *nūntiō*, &c.; or denoted by specific ones, of which some of the commonest are: desire: *volō* (*mālō*), *concupiscō*, *optō*. request: *petō*, *postulō*, *flāgitō*, *orō*, *rogō*, *precor*, *obsecrō*, *implōrō*, *instō*, *urge*, *invitō*. advice: *suādeō*, *persuādeō*, *persuade*, *moneō*, *bid*, *admoneō*, *hortor*, *cēnseō*, *propose*, *vote*. resolution, stipulation: *dēcernō*, *statuō*, *decree*, *cōstituō*, *placet*, *sanciō*, *paciscor*, *pepigī*. command: *imperō*, *praecipio*, *praescribō*, *mandō*, *negōtium dō*, *ēdicō*, *ferō*, *caveō*, *interdicō*. permission: *concēdō*, *allow*, *permittō*, *committō*, *potestātem faciō*, *veniam dō*, *sinō*, *nōn patior*.

1951. (b.) Verbs of aim include those of striving, accomplishing, or inducing; such are:

striving: *agō* or *id agō*, *animum indūcō*, *temptō*, *operam dō*, *labōrō*, *nītor*, *ēnītor*, *mōlior*, *videō*, *prōspiciō*, *cūrō*, *nihil antiquius habēō* *quam*, *contendō*, *studeō*, *pūgnō*. accomplishing: *faciō* (*efficiō*, *perficiō*), *praestō*; *mereō*; *impetrō*, *adsequor*, *cōsequor*, *adipiscor*. inducing: *moveō*, *excitō*, *incitō*, *impellō*, *perpellō*, *cōgō*.



## Conjunctive Sentences: *ut*. [1952-1956.]

(a.) *optāvit ut in currum patris tolleretur*, *Off.* 3, 94, *he asked to be lifted into his father's chariot.* *optō nē sē illa gēns moveat*, *Fam.* 12, 19, 2, *I hope and pray that that nation may not stir.* *Ubiī ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret*, 4, 16, 5, *the Ubians begged that he would help them.* *Pausaniās ōrāre coepit nē ēnūntiāret*, *N.* 4, 4, 6, *Pausanias began to beg that he would not tell.* *hortātus est utī in officiō maneret*, 5, 4, 2, *he urged him to remain steadfast in duty.* *hortatur eōs nē animō dēficiant*, *Caes. C.* 1, 19, 1, *he urges them not to get disheartened* (1752). *suīs, ut idem faciant, imperat*, 5, 37, 1, *he orders his men to do the same.* *suīs imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum rēicerent*, 1, 46, 2, *he ordered his men not to throw any weapon at all back.* *huic permisit, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem conlocāret*, 3, 1, 3, *he allowed this man to quarter his legion in these parts.* *neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī, utī sociōs dēsereret*, 1, 45, 1, *that his practice and that of the Roman nation would not allow him to desert his allies.*

(b.) *neque id agere ut exercitum teneat ipse, sed nē illī habeant quō contrā sē utī possint*, *Caes. C.* 1, 85, 11, *and that his object was not to hold the army himself, but to prevent the other side from having an army which they could use against him.* *XII nāvibus āmissis, rēliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset effēcit*, 4, 31, 3, *a dozen vessels were lost, but he managed to sail comfortably with the rest.* *ēius bellī fāma effēcit nē sē pūgnae committerent Sappinātēs*, *L.* 5, 32, 4, *the story of this war prevented the Sappinadians from hazarding an engagement.* *sī ā Chrēsogonō nōn imetrāmus ut pecūniā nostrā contentus sit, vitam nē petat*, *RA.* 150, *if we do not succeed in making Chrysogonus satisfied with our money without his aiming at our life.* *Aulum spē pactiōnis perpulit, utī in abditās regiōnēs sēsē insequeretur*, *S. I.* 38, 2, *Aulus he induced by the hope of a pecuniary settlement to follow him to distant regions.* *Antōnium pactiōne prōvinciae perpulerat, nē contrā rem pūblicam sentīret*, *S. C.* 26, 4, *by agreeing to let Antony have a province, he had induced him not to be disaffected toward the government.*

1952. Many of these verbs often have a coordinated subjunctive (1705-1713), or, according to the meaning, admit other constructions, which must in general be learned by reading, or from the dictionary. The following points may be noticed:

1953. (a.) The verbs of resolving, *statuō*, *cōstituō*, and *dēcernō*, and of striving, *nītor*, and *temptō*, have usually the complementary infinitive (2169), unless a new subject is introduced. For *volō* (*mālō*), and *cupiō*, see also 2189; for *iubeō*, *vetō*, *sinō*, and *patior*, 2198. *postulō*, *expect*, often has the same construction as *volō*, especially in old Latin (2194). For *imperō*, see 2202.

1954. (b.) Some of the above verbs, with the meaning *think* or *say*, have the accusative with the infinitive (2175, 2195): as, *volō*, *contendō*, *maintain*, *concēdō*, *admit*, *statuō*, *assume*, *dēcernō*, *judge*, *moneō*, *remind*, *persuādeō*, *convince*.

1955. (c.) Verbs of accomplishing sometimes express result rather than purpose, and when the result is negative, are completed by a clause with *ut nōn* (1965). For the infinitive with such verbs, see 2196.

1956. *est* with a predicate noun is sometimes equivalent to a verb of will or aim, and has the same construction.

So with words like *iūs*, *lēs*, *mūnus*, &c.: as, *iūs esse bellī ut quī vicissent hīs quōs vicissent imperārent*, I, 36, 1, *that rules of war entitled conquerors to lord it over conquered*. *quis nescit prīmam esse historiae lēgem, nē quid falsī dīcere audeat?* DO. 2, 62, *who does not know that the first rule of history is that it shall not venture to say anything false?* *iūstī-tiae prīmum mūnus est ut nē cui quis noceat*, Off. I, 20, *the first duty of justice is that a man harm nobody*. *nam id arbitror adprīmē in vitā esse ūtile, 'ut nē quid nimis,'* T. Andr. 60, *for this I hold to be a rule in life that's passing useful, 'naught in overplus.'*

1957. (2.) The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used in clauses which complete expressions of fear, anxiety, or danger.

*ut*, *that not*, *may not*, and *nē*, *lest*, *may*, were originally signs of a wish (1540): thus, *vereor, ut fiat*, *I am afraid; may it come to pass*, acquires the meaning of *I am afraid it may not come to pass* (1706); and *vereor, nē fiat*, *I am afraid; may it not come to pass*, of *I am afraid it may come to pass*. *metuō ut* is common in old Latin, and is used by Horace, but not by Caesar or Sallust, once by Cicero in the orations. *timeō ut* is rare, and first used by Cicero. *vereor ut* is not uncommon.

*at vereor ut plācārī possit*, T. Ph. 965, *but I'm afraid she can't be reconciled*. *nē uxor resciscat metuīt*, Pl. As. 743, *he is afraid his wife may find it out*. *ō puer, ut sis vitālis metuō, et māiōrum nē quis amīcus frīgore tē feriat*, H. S. 2, 1, 60, *my boy, you'll not see length of days I fear, and that some grander friend may with his coldness cut you dead*. *nēquid summā dēperdat metuēns aut ampliēt ut rem*, H. S. 1, 4, 31, *in dread lest from his store he something lose or may not add to his estate*. *metuō nē nōs nōs-met perdiderīmus uspiam*, Pl. MG. 428, *I'm afraid we've lost ourselves somewhere*. *sollicitus nē turba perēgerit orbem*, J. 5, 20, *apprehensive that the throng may have finished its round*. *nē nōn* is often, though rarely in old Latin, used for *ut*, and regularly when the expression of fear is negative: as, *nōn vereor nē hōc officium meum P. Serviliō nōn probem*, V. 4, 82, *I have no fear but I may make my services acceptable in the eyes of Servilius*. For *nōn metuō quīn*, see 1986.

1958. *vereor nē* is often equivalent to *I rather think*, and *vereor ut* to *hardly*. *vidē* (*videāmus*, *videndum est*) *nē*, and similar expressions, are sometimes used for *vereor nē*, to introduce something conjectured rather than proved: as,

*vereor nē barbarōrum rēx fuerit*, RP. 1, 58, *I rather think he was king over savages*. *vidē nē mea coniectūra multō sit vērīor*, Clu. 97, *I rather think my conjecture is in better keeping with the facts*.

1959. Other constructions with expressions of fear are: (a.) Indirect question. (b.) Accusative with infinitive. (c.) Complementary infinitive: as,

(a.) *erī semper lēnitās verēbar quorsum ēvāderet*, T. Andr. 175, *I was afraid how master's always gentleness would end*. *timeō quid sit*, T. Hau. 620, *I have my fears what it may be*. *timeō quid rērum gesserim*, Pl. MG. 397, *I am concerned to think what capers I have cut*. *metuō quid agam*, T. Hau. 720, *I'm scared and know not what to do* (1731). (b.) *ego mē cupiditātis rēgnī crīmen subitūrum timērem?* L. 2, 7, 9, *was I to fear being charged with aspiring to a throne?* (c.) *vereor cōram in ōs tē laudāre*, T. Ad. 269, *I am afraid to disgrace you with praise to the face* (2168).



1960. (3.) The subjunctive with *nē* is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of verbs of avoiding, hindering, and resisting.

Such are : avoiding : *caveō, mē ēripiō, vitō*. hindering : *intercedō, interdico, recuso, repugno, tempero* ; also the following which often have *quominus* (1977) : *deterreo, impediō, obsisto, obsto, officio, prohibeo, teneo*. resisting : *resisto, repugno, recuso* ; with these last often *quominus*. Some of the above verbs when preceded by a negative also take *quin* (1986) ; *prohibeo* and *impediō* have also the accusative with the infinitive (2203). For the subjunctive coordinated with *cavē*, see 1711.

*nē* quid eis noceatur neu quis invitus sacramentum dicere cogatur a Caesare cavetur, *Caes. C. 1, 86, 4, all precaution is taken by Caesar that no harm be done them, and that nobody be compelled to take the oath against his will. per eos, nē causam diceret, se eripuit, 1, 4, 2, thanks to this display of retainers he succeeded in avoiding trial. plura nē scribam, dolore impediō, Att. 11, 13, 5, grief prevents me from writing more. nē qua sibi statua poneretur restitit, N. 25, 3, 2, he objected to having a statue erected in his honour.*

## II. PURE FINAL CLAUSES.

1961. The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used to denote the purpose of the main action.

The purpose is often indicated in the main sentence by an expression like *ideō, idcirco, propterea, eā mente, &c.*

*vigilās de nocte, ut tuis consultiōibus respondeās, Mur. 22, you have to get up early in the morning to give advice to your clients. maiōres nostri ab aratro adduxerunt Cincinnatum, ut dictator esset, Fin. 2, 12, our fathers brought Cincinnatus from his plough, to be dictator. dicam auctiōnis causam, ut damnō gaudeant, Pl. St. 207, I'll tell the reason for the sale, that o'er my losses they may gloat. quin etiam nē tonsori collum committeret, tondere filias suas docuit, TD. 5, 58, why, he actually taught his own daughters to shave, so as not to trust his throat to a barber. Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, ad exercitum proficiscitur, 4, 6, 1, to avoid facing war on a more formidable scale, Caesar goes to the army. te ulciscar, ut nē inpune in nos inluseris, T. Eu. 941, I'll be revenged on you, so that you shan't play tricks on me for nothing (1947). nē ignoraretis esse aliquas pacis vobis conditiones, ad vos veni, L. 21, 13, 2, I have come to you to let you know that you have some chances of peace (1754). ita me gessi nē tibi pudori essem, L. 40, 15, 6, I comported myself in such a way that I might not be a mortification to you. Mariōnem ad te eo misi, ut tecum ad me veniret, Fam. 16, 1, 1, I sent Mario to you with the intention of having him come with you to me. idcirco nemō superiorum attigit, ut hic tolleretur? ideō C. Claudius rettulit, ut C. Verrēs posset auferre? V. 4, 7, was that the reason why no former officials laid a finger on it, that this man might swoop it away? was that why Claudius returned it, that a Verres might carry it off? danda opera est, ut etiam singulis consulatur, sed ita, ut ea res aut prosit aut certē nē obsit rei publicae, Off. 2, 72, we must be particular in regarding the interests of individuals as well, but with this restriction, that our action may benefit, or at any rate may not damage the country.*



## 1962-1965.] Sentences : The Subordinate Sentence.

1962. The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is often used not to express the purpose of the main action, but to explain, parenthetically, why it is mentioned : as,

**ut in pauca cōferam, testāmentō factō mulier moritur**, *Caec.* 17, *to cut a long story short, the woman makes her will and dies.* **vērē ut dīcam**, *V.* 5, 177, *sooth to say.* **ut plūra nōn dīcam**, *IP.* 44, *to skip a great deal.* **sed ut hic nē ignōret, quae rēs agātur : dē nātūrā agēbāmus deōrum**, *DN.* 1, 17, *but that our friend here may know what is up : we were just on the nature of the gods.* **scūta sī quandō conquīruntur ā privātis in bellō, tamen hominēs invītī dant ; nē quem putētis sine māximō dolōre argentum domō prōtulisse**, *V.* 4, 52, *why, if shields are ever exacted of private citizens in war-time, still people hand them in with reluctance ; which I mention that you may not imagine that anybody brought his silver ware out of his house without great distress of mind.* The tense is present. The use of the perfect in late writers, as **ut sīc dīxerim**, *Quint.* 1, 6, 1, seems to be founded on **dīxerim** of action conceivable (1558).

1963. The subjunctive is used in an assumption or concession with **ut** or **nē**, or if the negation belongs to a single word, with **ut nōn**, **nēmō**, &c. : as,

**ut taceam, quovīs facile scītū est quam fuerim miser**, *T. Hec.* 296, *even supposing I say nothing, anybody can understand how unhappy I was.* **sed ut haec concēdantur, rēliqua quī concēdī possunt ?** *DN.* 3, 41, *but even supposing this be admitted, how can the rest be admitted ?* **nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est**, *TD.* 2, 14, *grant that suffering is not the chiefest evil, an evil it assuredly is* (1553). **vērūm ut hōc nōn sit, tamen praeclārum spectāculum mihī prōpōnō**, *Att.* 2, 15, 2, *but suppose this be not the case, still I anticipate a gorgeous show.* **ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse perspiciebant**, 3, 9, 6, *and even supposing everything turned out contrary to expectation, still they saw clearly that they had the advantage by sea.* **ut enim nēmīnem alium nisi T. Patinam rogāset, scīre potuit prōdī flāminem necesse esse**, *Mil.* 46, *for even supposing he had asked nobody but Patina, he might have known that a priest must be appointed.* This use is common in Cicero ; not found in Plautus or Sallust.

1964. The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**, generally with **ita** as a correlative, sometimes has the force of a proviso : as,

**ita probanda est clēmētia, ut adhibeātur sevērītās**, *Off.* 1, 88, *mercy is to be commended, provided that strictness is employed.* **satis memoriae meae tribuent, ut mājōribus meis dīgnum crēdant**, *Ta.* 4, 38, *they will pay respect enough to my memory, provided they consider me worthy of my ancestors.*

### (B.) RESULT.

#### I. COMPLEMENTARY CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1965. The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of certain verbs and expressions, chiefly of bringing to pass, happening, and following.

## Conjunctional Sentences : ut. [1966-1968.

Such are : (a.) *faciō*, *efficiō* (unless they imply purpose, 1951); *fit*, *accidit*, *contingit*, *evenit*, *est*, *it is the case*; similarly *mōs est*, *cōnsuētūdō est*, &c. (b.) *proximum est*, *rēliquum est*, *extrēmum est*, *relinquitur*, *restat*, *accēdit*. Or, of logical sequence, *sequitur*, *efficitur*.

(a.) *fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur*, 2, 11, 1, *they made their march look exactly like a stampede*. *splendor vester facit ut pec-cāre sine summō periculō nōn possitis*, V. 1, 22, *your conspicuous position makes it impossible for you to do wrong without great peril*. *hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut minus lātē vagārentur*, 1, 2, 4, *so it came to pass that they did not rove round much*. *fit ut nātūrā ipsā ad ōrnātius dīcendī genus excitēmur*, DO. 2, 338, *it is sometimes the case that we are roused to a loftier style in oratory by sheer circumstance*. *potest fieri ut fallar*, Fam. 13, 73, 2, *it is possible that I am mistaken*. *fieri nōn potest ut eum tū nōn cōgnōveris*, V. 2, 190, *it must be the case that you have made his acquaintance yourself*. *eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna*, 4, 29, 1, *it came to pass on the same night that there was a full moon* (1758). *negāvit mōris esse Graecōrum ut in conviviō virōrum accumberent mulierēs*, V. 1, 66, *he said it was not etiquette among the Greeks for women to go to men's dinner parties*. *est hōc commūne vitium in liberis civitatibus, ut invidia glōriae comes sit*, N. 12, 3, 3, *this is a common trouble in free communities, that envy is the attendant of a great name*.

(b.) *proximum est, ut doceam*, DN. 2, 73, *my next task is to prove*. *relinquebātur ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur*, 5, 19, 3, *the consequence was that Caesar could not allow any very distant excursion from the main line of march*. *restat ut doceam omnia hominum causā facta esse*, DN. 2, 154, *lastly, I must prove that everything is made for man*. *accēdēbat ut tempestātem ferrent*, 3, 13, 9, *then, too, they could stand the gale*. *accēdit ut* is not found in old Latin; for *accēdit quod*, see 1845. *ita efficitur ut omne corpus mortāle sit*, DN. 3, 30, *thus it follows that every bodily substance is mortal*. *sequitur* and *efficitur*, *it follows*, often have the accusative with the infinitive (2207). For the subjunctive with *quam ut* after a comparative of disproportion, see 1896. For *fore* and *futūrum esse ut* as the periphrasis for the future infinitive, see 2233.

1966. Verbs of happening may often be rendered best by compacter expressions: thus, *hīs rēbus fiēbat ut*, *consequently*; *fit ut*, *once in a while*, *sometimes*, *often*; *fieri potest ut*, *possibly*; *accidit ut*, *accidentally*, *unfortunately*.

1967. *faciō ut*, or with a negative, commonly *committō ut*, is used in circumlocutions for emphasis: as,

*faciundum mihi putāvī, ut tuīs litteris brevī respondērem*, Fam. 3, 8, 1, *I thought I ought to take hold and write a few lines in answer to your letter*. *ego vērō nōn committam, ut tibi causam recūsandī dem*, DO. 2, 233, *no, no, sir, I will not be guilty, not I, of giving you an excuse to back out*. So particularly with *invitus*, *libenter*, *prope*: as, *invitus fēcī ut L. Flāminīum ē senātū ēicerem*, CM. 42, *it was with great reluctance that I expelled Flaminius from the senate*.

1968. A subjunctive clause with *ut* is often used to define a preceding idea indicated in a general way by a neuter pronoun: as,



post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant, 1, 5, 1, *after his death the Helvetians attempted just the same to carry out their resolution of moving out of their abodes* (1752). omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētīi fēcērint, ut domō ēmigrent, 1, 31, 14, *that all the Gauls must do just as the Helvetians had done and move away from home*. Helvētīi, cum id, quod ipsi diēbus XX aegerrimē cōfēcērant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs mittunt, 1, 13, 2, *when the Helvetians learned that the Roman commander had done in a single day what they had found it hard themselves to do in twenty, namely cross the river, they sent deputies* (1752). id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī cōnsilium caperent, 3, 2, 2, *it was due to a variety of reasons that the Gauls suddenly conceived the idea of making war again* (1758). Caesar idem quod superioribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritātē periculum effugerent, 4, 35, 1, *Caesar saw that if the enemy were routed the experience would be as on former days: they would escape danger by rapidity of movement*.

1969. tantum abest, *so far from*, is sometimes followed by a double ut, the first introducing an unreal, and the second a real action: as,

tantum abest ut haec bēstiārum causā parāta sint, ut ipsās bēstiās hominum grātiā generātās esse videāmus, DN. 2, 158, *so far from these things being made for brutes, we see that brutes themselves were created for man*. This use, very rarely personal, begins with Cicero, and is common in his writings and in Livy. Not in Caesar, Sallust, or Tacitus. Sometimes instead of ut the second sentence is coordinated (1700): tantum abfuit ut inflammārēs nostrōs animōs, somnum vix tenēbāmus, Br. 278, *so far from your firing our heart, we could hardly keep awake*. Or, the idea is expressed by ita nōn . . . ut: as, erat ita nōn timidus ad mortem, ut in aciē sit ob rem pūblicam interfectus, Fin. 2, 63, *so far from being afraid of death, he fell in battle for his country*.

## II. PURE CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1970. The subjunctive is used with ut or ut nōn to denote result.

The result may be the result of an action or of a thing named in the main sentence. The main sentence often has a correlative to ut, expressing (a.) degree: as, tantus, *so great*, tam, *so* (with adjectives or adverbs). adeō, tantopere. (b.) quality: as, is (hic, ille, iste), *such*, tālis, ita, sic.

mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent, 1, 6, 1, *an exceeding high mountain hung over, so that a very few could block the way*. dictitābant sē domō expulsōs, omnibus necessāriīs egēre rēbus, ut honestā praescriptiōne rem turpissimam tegerent, Caes. C. 3, 32, 4, *they stoutly declared that they were driven out of house and home, and lacked the necessities of life, thus veiling dishonour under the name of respectability*.

(a.) Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur, 1, 33, 5, *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs as to seem intolerable*. adeō angustō marī cōflīxit, ut ēius multitudō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit, N. 2, 4, 5, *he went into action in such cramped sea-room, that his armada could not deploy*, of Xerxes (1757).



## Conjunctional Sentences : quō. [1971-1973.

(b.) eōs dēdūxī testēs ut dē istius factō dubium esse nēminī possit, *V. 4, 91, I have brought such witnesses that nobody can entertain a doubt of the defendant's guilt.* ita sē recipiēbat ut nihil nisi dē perniciē populī Rōmānī cōgitāret, *Ph. 4, 4, he retreated, it is true, but retreated with his mind running on nothing but how to ruin the country.* illa, ex tūribulīs quae ēvellerat, ita scītē in aureīs pōculīs inligābat, ut ea ad illam rem nāta esse dīcerēs, *V. 4, 54, what he had torn from the censers he attached to golden cups so cunningly that you would have said it was just made for that very purpose (1731, 1559).*

For the imperfect subjunctive connected with a main general present, see 1751; for the independent present or perfect subjunctive with a main secondary tense, see 1757.

---

### ubī.

1971. ubī, in the sense of *where* (709), has the ordinary construction of a relative (1812-1831). For ubī, *when*, see 1923-1926 and 1932-1934; as a synonym of sī, *if*, see 2110.

---

### quō or quī.

1972. quō, *whereby, wherewith*, or in old Latin sometimes quī (689), is the instrumental ablative from the relative and interrogative stem qui-. Combined with minus, *the less, not*, quō gives quōminus.

### WITH THE INDICATIVE.

1973. The indicative is used with quō and a comparative in the protasis of a comparative period, with eō or hōc and a comparative as correlative (1393): as,

quō dēlīctum māius est, eō poena est tardior, *Caec. 7, the greater the sin is, the slower is the punishment.* The eō or hōc is sometimes omitted: as, quō plūrēs sumus, plūribus rēbus egēbimus, *L. 34, 34, 6, the more numerous we are, the more things we shall need.* In late writers, the comparative is sometimes omitted in the main clause, very rarely in the subordinate clause. quantō . . . tantō are also used like quō . . . eō: as, quantō diūtius cōnsiderō, tantō mihī rēs vidētur obscurior, *DN. 1, 60, the longer I puzzle over it, the more incomprehensible the question seems to me.* quantō magis exergeō, tenuius fit, *Pl. R. 1301, the more I polish, the slimmer it gets.* This form is sometimes used with quisque or quis of indefinite persons, instead of the commoner ut . . . ita or sīc (1939): as, quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet labōriōsius, *RC. 31, the brighter a man is, the more wearisome he finds teaching.* quō quisque est māior, magis est plācābilis īrae, *O. Tr. 3, 5, 31, the greater be the man, the easier 'tis his anger to appease.*

## WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1974. The subjunctive is used with **quō** to express purpose.

**quō** differs but little in meaning from **ut** of purpose. It is used (a.) particularly in clauses containing a comparative expression, or (b.) in solemn law language.

(a.) **equitēs omnibus in locīs pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent**, 2, 27, 2, *the troopers fought on every kind of ground, hoping to out-shine the regular infantry thereby.* **medicō putō aliquid dandum esse, quō sit studiōsior**, *Fam.* 16, 4, 2, *I think it would be well to fee your medical man, to make him more attentive.* **id amābō adiūtā mē quō id fiat facilius**, *T. Eu.* 150, *help me in that, I pray, that it may be the easier done.* **sublāta erat celebrītās virōrum ac mulierum, quō lāmentātiō minuerētur**, *Leg.* 2, 65, *the large attendance of both sexes was done away with, to make the weeping and wailing less harrowing.* (b.) **hominī mortuō nē ossa legitō, quō pos fūnus faciat**, *Twelve Tables in Leg.* 2, 60, *he shall not gather up the bones of a dead man, with intent to celebrate the funeral a second time* (1586). **quī eōrum coiit, coierit, quō quis iūdiō pūblicō condemnārētur**, *law in Clu.* 148, *whosoever of that number conspired or shall have conspired to have anybody condemned in a criminal court.* Otherwise rarely used without a comparative expression, yet occasionally found thus in Plautus, Terence, Sallust, and Ovid: as, **hanc simulant parere quō Chremētem absterreant**, *T. Andr.* 472, *they're pretending that she's lying in, to frighten Chremes off.*

1975. **quō nē**, in a negative clause of purpose, is found in a disputed passage in Horace, but not again until late Latin. For **nōn quō**, **nōn eō quō**, introducing an untenable reason, see 1855.

1976. In old Latin **quī**, *whereby, wherewith, withal*, is partly felt as a live relative pronoun in the ablative, and partly as a mere conjunction of purpose; as a pronoun it may even take a preposition; as a conjunction, it may refer to a plural antecedent (689): as, **quasi patriciīs puerīs aut monērulāe aut anitēs aut cōturnicēs dantur, quicum lūsitent: itidem mī haec upupa, quī mē dēlectem datast**, *Pl. Cap.* 1002, *as to the sons of gentlemen or daws or ducks or quails are given, wherewith to play; just so to me this crow is given, to entertain myself withal.* **enim mihi quidem aequomst dari vehicla quī vehar**, *Pl. Aul.* 500, *in sooth 't were fair that carriages be given me, to ride withal.* The indicative occurs where the subjunctive would be used in classical Latin: as, **multa concurrunt simul, quī coniectūram hanc faciō**, *T. Andr.* 511, *a thousand things combine whereby I come to this conjecture.*

---

**quōminus.**

1977. The subjunctive with **quōminus** (1972) is used to complete the sense of verbs of hindering or resisting.

Such verbs are: **impediō, teneō, hinder, interclūdō, dēterreō, obstō, obsistō, resistō, repūgnō, nōn recūsō**; these verbs often have a subjunctive with **nē** (1960). Cicero rarely and Caesar never uses **quōminus** with **impediō** or **prohibeō**. For the accusative and infinitive with these verbs, see 2203. **quōminus** is also used with **moveor, am influenced, fit, it is owing to, stat per aliquem, somebody is responsible**, or indeed any expression implying hindrance. When the verb of hindering has a negative with it, **quīn** is often used; see 1986.



## Conjunctional Sentences: quīn. [1978-1983.

nōn dēterret sapientem mors, quōminus rēi pūblicaē suisque cōsulat, *TD. 1, 91, death does not hinder the wise man from working for country and friends.* quid obstat, quōminus sit beātus? *DN. 1, 95, what is to hinder his being happy?* neque recūsāvit quōminus lēgis poenam subīret, *N. 15, 8, 2, and he did not decline to submit to the penalty of the law.* Caesar, ubi cōgnōvit per Afrānium stāre quōminus proeliō dīmīcārētur, castra facere cōstituit, *Caes. C. 1, 41, 3, when Caesar learned that owing to Afranius there was no battle, he resolved to build a camp.* sī tē dolor corporis tenuit, quōminus ad lūdōs venīrēs, fōrtūnae magis tribuō quam sapientiae tuae, *Fam. 7, 1, 1, if it was bodily suffering that kept you from coming to the performances, I think more highly of your luck than of your sense.* Terence first uses quōminus thus, but only rarely. He also sometimes uses the parts separately so that the true relative and negative forces appear: as, sī sēnsērō quicquam in hīs tē nūptiīs fallāciae cōnārī, quō fiant minus, *T. Andr. 196, if I catch you trying on any trick in the matter of this marriage through which it may not come off (1451).*

1978. In Tacitus, quōminus is sometimes found where quīn would be used in classical Latin (1986): as, nec dubitātum quōminus pācem concēderent, *Ta. H. 2, 45, there was no hesitation in granting peace.*

1979. It may be mentioned here that quō sētius with the subjunctive, instead of quōminus, is found twice in Cicero's earliest extant prose, and a few times in older Latin.

---

### quīn.

1980. quīn is composed of quī, the ablative or locative of the interrogative and relative stem qui- (689), and -ne, *not*. It is used in simple sentences and as a conjunctive particle.

1981. For the use of quīn, *why not*, in questions with the indicative, see 1526. Such questions have the sense of an affirmative command or exhortation (1531): as, quīn abīs, *Pl. MG. 1087, why won't you begone? or get you gone.* quīn cōnscendimus equōs, *L. 1, 57, 7, why not mount, or to horse, to horse.* For the use of quīn without interrogative force with the imperative or the indicative, see 1527.

1982. quīn is found once with the subjunctive in a direct question: thus, quīn ego hōc rogem? *Pl. MG. 426, why should n't I ask this? (1563).*

1983. The subjunctive with the conjunctive particle quīn is used, particularly in old Latin, in connection with the common formula nūlla causa est or its equivalents.

Such a subjunctive may be regarded as original (1786) or as due to the indirect form of question (1773).

nūlla causast quīn mē condōnēs crucī, *Pl. R. 1070, there's no reason why you should n't deliver me up to execution.* quīn dēcēdam, nūlla causa est, *Fam. 2, 17, 1, there is no reason why I should not retire.* quid causaest quīn in pistrīnum rēctā proficīscar viā? *T. Andr. 600, what's the reason I don't march straight into the mill?* haud causificor quīn eam habeam, *Pl. Aul. 755, I don't quibble against keeping her.*



## 1984-1988.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

1984. *mīrum quīn* with the subjunctive is used by Plautus in sarcastic expressions where *mīrum* is ironical: as, *mīrum quīn tū illō tēcum dīvitias ferās*, Pl. *Tri.* 495, *strange enough, how you can't take your money there with you, that is to Hades.*

1985. The subjunctive with *quīn* (or *ut nōn*) is used after *nōn possum*, or *nōn possum* with an infinitive, usually *facere*, and with *fieri nōn potest*: as,

*nōn enim possum quīn exclāmem, eugē, eugē, Lysitelēs, πάλιν*, Pl. *Tri.* 705, *upon my word I must cry bravo, bravo, Lysiteles; encore!* *facere nōn potui quīn tibi sententiam dēclārārem*, Pl. *Fam.* 6, 13, 1, *I could not help giving you my views.* *fieri nūllō modō poterat, quīn Cleomenī parceretur*, Pl. *V.* 5, 104, *it was impossible not to spare Cleomenes.* *ēheu, nequeō quīn fleam, quom abs tē abeam*, Pl. *MG.* 1342, *O well-a-day, I needs must weep, for that from thee I part.* *nōn potuisti ūllō modō facere, ut mihi illam epistulam nōn mitterēs*, Att. 11, 21, 1, *you could not get along at all without writing me that letter* (1965).

1986. The subjunctive with *quīn* is used in clauses which complete the sense of verbs of restraining, abstaining, delaying, or doubting, when such verbs have a negative, expressed or implied.

Such verbs are (a.) restraining: *temperō mihi, teneō, restrain, retineō, contineō, deterreō, reprimō.* abstaining: *praetermittō, intermittō.* delaying: *cunctor, differō, exspectō, recūsō; nōn multum, nihil, paulum abest.* (b.) doubting: *dubitō, dubium est*; a doubt may also be implied in other words, or forms of words: as, *nōn metuō, nōn abest suspiciō, &c.*

(a.) *neque sibi hominēs barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quīn in prōvinciam exirent*, Pl. *1, 33, 4, and he thought, as they were savages, they would not restrain themselves, but would sally out into the province.* *vix mē contineō quīn involem mōnstrō in capillum*, T. *Eu.* 859, *I scarce can keep from flying at the catiff's hair.* *nihil praetermisi, quīn Pompēium a Caesaris coniūctiōne avocārem*, Pl. *Ph.* 2, 23, *I left no stone unturned to prevent Pompey from joining Caesar.* *abstinere quīn attingās nōn queās*, Pl. *B.* 915, *you can't keep from touching it.* (b.) *nōn dubitat, quīn tē ductūrum negēs*, T. *Andr.* 405, *he does n't doubt that you'll refuse to marry.* *quis dubitet, quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint?* Pl. *Par.* 48, *who can doubt that there is money in virtue?* *neque abest suspiciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit*, Pl. *1, 4, 4, and ground is not wanting for the belief that he made away with himself.*

1987. *nōn dubitō* has other constructions: (a.) Indirect question. (b.) Accusative with the infinitive (in some authors: chiefly Nepos and Livy and later writers). (c.) Meaning *not hesitate*, the infinitive alone (2169). *quīn* seldom follows this meaning.

(a.) *nōn dubitō, quid nobis agendum putēs*, Att. 10, 1, 2, *I have no doubt about what you think is our duty to do.* (b.) *neque enim dubitābant hostem ventūrum*, L. 22, 55, 2, *for they firmly believed the enemy would come.* (c.) *quid dubitāmus pultāre?* Pl. *B.* 1117, *why do we hesitate to knock?* *nōlite dubitare quīn huic crēdātis omnia*, Pl. *IP.* 68, *do not hesitate to trust all to him.*

1988. The subjunctive with *quīn* is often used after general negative assertions, or questions implying a negative: as,

nēmō fuit omnīnō militum quī vulnerārētur, *Caes. C. 3, 53, 3, there was absolutely not a single soldier but was wounded.* nūllus Ephesī quī sciat, *Pl. B. 336, there's not a soul at Ephesus but knows.* quis in circum vēnit, quī is ūnōquōque gradū dē avāritiā tuā commonērētur? *V. 1, 154, who came to the circus without being reminded of your avarice at each and every step?* nūlla fuit civitās quī partem senātūs Cordubam mitteret, nōn civis Rōmānus quī conveniret, *Caes. C. 2, 19, 2, there was not a community but sent a part of its local senate to Corduba, not a Roman citizen, but went to the meeting.* For quī nōn after such expressions, see 1821. The main sentence often has tam, ita, sic, or tantus : as, nēmō est tam fortis, quī rēi novitāte perturbētur, *6, 39, 3, there was nobody so brave but was demoralized by the strangeness of the situation.* nīl tam difficīlest quī quaerendō investigārī possiet, *T. Hau. 675, there's naught so hard but may by searching be tracked out.* Instead of quī, ut nōn or quī nōn is often used in such combinations (1821).

1989. The subjunctive in an untenable reason, negatively put, is sometimes introduced by nōn quī instead of nōn quod nōn or nōn quō nōn (1855) : as, nōn quī parī virtūte aliī fuerint, *Ph. 7, 6, not that others may not have been his peers in virtue.*

1990. quī is used very rarely instead of quōminus to introduce clauses completing the sense of verbs which have no negative expressed or implied : as, once each in the *Bellum Alexandrīnum*, in Tacitus, and in Seneca's prose.

## dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū.

1991. With the temporal particles dum, *while, until*, and dōnec, *until* (in old Latin dōnicum and in Lucretius dōnique), may be conveniently treated the relative quoad (that is quō combined with ad), *while, until*, and the comparative quamdiū, *as long as*.

1992. dum, *while*, means originally *a while* (1151) : as, circumspice dum, *Pl. Tri. 146, look round you a while, a minute, just look round* (1573). dum servī mēi perplacet mihi cōsiliū, dum haud placet, *Pl. Merc. 348, one while my slave's plan suits me completely, another while it does n't suit.* dum . . . dum, Accius in *DN. 2, 89, one while . . . another.*

1993. As a pure conjunctive particle, dum, *while*, means either (A.) *in the time while*, or (B.) *all the time while* ; in the latter sense quoad and quamdiū are also used. From *all the time while*, dum comes to mean (C.) *as long as, provided* ; and (D.) *until* ; in this sense quoad and dōnec are also used.

1994. The indicative is used in a protasis introduced by dum, quoad, or quamdiū, *while* ; and the subjunctive in a protasis introduced by dum, *provided, or until*.

The subjunctive is also used for special reasons, as in indirect discourse (1725), by attraction (1728), of action conceivable (1731), or by late writers to express repeated past action (1730).



(A.) *dum, in the time while.*

1995. The present indicative is regularly used with *dum*, *in the time while* (1739).

*dum* sometimes has as correlative *subitō, repente* ; *iam, intereā, &c.*

The main verb may be present, future, or past ; as, *dum haec dicit, abiit hōra*, T. *Eu.* 341, *while he thus prated, sped an hour away.* *infici dēbet iīs artibus quās sī, dum est tener, combiberit, ad māiōra veniet parā-tior*, *Fin.* 3, 9, *he should be imbued with such arts as will, if absorbed while he is young, render him the better equipped to deal with weightier business.* *nunc rem ipsam, ut gesta sit, dum breviter vōbīs dēmōnstrō, attendite*, *Tul.* 13, *now give your attention to the case itself, while I set forth to you briefly how it occurred.* *dum in hīs locīs Caesar morātur, ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt*, 4, 22, 1, *while Caesar tarried in these regions, some envoys came to him.* *dum haec aguntur, vōce clārā exclāmat*, *Pl. Am.* 1120, *while this was going on, with clarion voice he cries aloud.* *haec dum aguntur, intereā Cleomenēs iam ad Helōrī lītus pervēnerat*, *V.* 5, 91, *while this was going on, Cleomenes meantime had already arrived at the shore of Helorum.* The phrase *dum haec geruntur*, *meanwhile*, is often used by the historians to shift the scene : as, *dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit*, 3, 17, 1, *while this was going on among the Veneti, Sabinus arrived in the territory of the Venelli.* The present indicative is sometimes retained in indirect discourse, chiefly in poetry or late prose : as, *dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentīs, dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur*, *TD.* 1, 101, *tell it at Sparta, friend, that thou hast seen us lying here, obedient to our country's holy laws.* *dicit sēsē illī ānulum, dum lūctat, dētrāxisse*, *T. Hec.* 829, *he says that, in the struggle, he pulled off her ring.*

1996. The future is rare and chiefly confined to old Latin : as,

*animum advortite, dum hūius argūmentum ēloquar cōmoediae*, *Pl. prol. Am.* 95, *attention lend, while I set forth the subject of this comedy.* *dum pauca dīcam, breviter attendite*, *V.* 3, 163, *while I speak briefly, give me your attention a few moments.*

1997. The imperfect indicative is rare ; the imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used, chiefly by the historians : as,

(a.) *dum haec Vēīs agēbantur, interim capitōlium in ingentī periculō fuit*, *L.* 5, 47, 1, *while this was going on at Vei, the capitol meanwhile was in terrible peril.* The pluperfect of resulting state is rarer : as, *dum in ūnam partem oculōs hostium certāmen āverterat, plūribus locīs capitur mūr-us*, *L.* 32, 24, 5, *while the eyes of the enemy were turned away in one direction toward the fight, the wall is carried in several places* (1615). (b.) *dum sē rēx āverteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dēiēcit*, *L.* 1, 40, 7, *while the king was looking another way, the second man raised his axe and brought it down on his head.*

1998. The clause with *dum* often denotes the cause of the main action, particularly when the subjects of both verbs are the same and the action of the protasis is coincident with that of the apodosis (1733).



dum docent, discunt, Sen. *E.* 7, 8, *while they are teaching, they are learning, or, by teaching they learn.* nimirum didici etiam, dum in istum inquirō, artificum nōmina, *V.* 4, 4, *preposterous as it may seem, in hunting up evidence against the defendant, I have actually learned artists' names.* The main action is often one not anticipated or desired: as, ita dum pauca mancipia retinere volt, fōrtūnās omnīs libertātemque suam perdidit, *Caecil.* 56, *so in her attempt to keep a few human chattels, she sacrificed all her possessions and her own liberty.* dum vitant stultī vitia, in contrāria currunt, *H. S.* 1, 2, 24, *while fools essay a vice to shun, into its opposite they run.* Sometimes with the perfect: as, dum Alexandrī similis esse voluit, L. Crassī inventus est dissimilimus, *Br.* 282, *from his desire to be like Alexander, he came out just the opposite of Crassus.*

(B.) dum, quoad, quamdiū (dōnec), *all the time while.*

1999. dum, quoad, or quamdiū, *all the time while*, often has as correlative tamdiū, tantum, tantummodo, tantisper, ūsque, or ita. When tamdiū is used, quam often stands for quamdiū.

2000. (1.) When the main verb is present or future, the protasis with dum, quoad, or quamdiū, *all the time while*, is usually in the same tense as the main verb: as,

mane dum scribit, *Pl. B.* 737, *wait while he writes.* aegrōtō dum anima est, spēs esse dicitur, *Att.* 9, 10, 3, *as long as a sick man has breath he is said to have hope.* vidua vivitō vel ūsque dum rēgnum optinēbit Iuppiter, *Pl. Men.* 727, *may'st widowed live e'en long as Jupiter shall reign.* ego tē meum esse dīcī tantisper volō, dum quod tē dīgnumst faciēs, *T. Hau.* 106, *I'll have thee called my son but just so long as thou shalt act as doth become thee.* dum Latīnae loquentur litterae, quercus huic locō nōn deerit, *Leg.* 1, 2, *as long as Latin literature has the gift of speech, this spot will not lack its oak* (1733). quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, *C.* 1, 6, *as long as there shall be a soul who will venture to defend you, you shall live on.* discēs quamdiū volēs, tamdiū autem velle dēbēbis quoad tē quantum prōficiās nōn paenitēbit, *Off.* 1, 2, *you shall study as long as you want to, and it will be proper for you to want to, as long as you are satisfied with your progress.* quoad vixit, crēdidit ingēns pauperiem vitium, *H. S.* 2, 3, 91, *all his life long he fancied narrow means were monstrous sin.* quoad, *as long as*, is not found in Terence.

2001. (2.) With quamdiū the perfect is used when the main verb is perfect; with dum or quoad the perfect or imperfect is used when the main verb is perfect or pluperfect, and the imperfect usually when the main verb is imperfect: as,

(a.) quōrum quamdiū mānsit imitātiō, tamdiū genus illud dīcendī vixit, *DO.* 2, 94, *as long as the imitation of these men lasted, so long was that style in vogue.* tenuit locum tamdiū quam ferre potuit labōrem, *Br.* 236, *he held the position as long as he could stand the work.* In this use quamdiū is found first in Cicero.

(b.) vixit, dum vixit, bene, *T. Hec.* 461, *he lived well all the time he lived* (1733). avus noster quoad vixit, restitit M. Grātidiō, *Leg.* 3, 36, *our grandfather as long as he lived, opposed Gratidius.*

(c.) *Massiliēnsēs quoad licēbat, circumvenīre nostrōs contendēbant*, *Caes. C. 1, 58, 1, as long as the Massilia people had a chance, they kept trying to surround our men.* *dum necesse erat, rēsq̄ ipsa cōgēbat, ūnus omnia poterat*, *RA. 139, as long as it had to be, and circumstances demanded, one man controlled the world (1733).* From Sallust on, the present of vivid narration (1590) is occasionally found with *dum* in this sense.

2002. In poetry and in late prose writers, beginning with Lucretius and Livy, *dōnec* is used in the sense of *all the time while*, usually with the indicative, but sometimes with the subjunctive of repeated past action: as, *dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vigui rēge beātor*, *H. 3, 9, 1, as long as I was loved of thee, I flourished happier than the Persians' king.* *dōnec armātī cōfertīque abībant, peditum labor in persequendō fuit*, *L. 6, 13, 4, as long as they were moving off under arms and in close array, the task of pursuit fell to the infantry.* *vulgus trucidātum est dōnec ira et diēs permānsit*, *Ta. 1, 68, the rank and file were butchered as long as wrath and daylight held out.* *nihil trepidābant, dōnec continentī velut pōnte agerentur*, *L. 21, 28, 10, the elephants were not a bit skittish as long as they were driven along what seemed a continuous bridge (1730).* The future is rare: as, *nātus enim dēbet quicumque est velle manēre in vitā, dōnec retinēbit blanda voluptās*, *Lucr. 5, 177, whoe'er is born must wish in life to abide, so long as him fond pleasure shall detain.* *dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs*, *O. Tr. 1, 9, 5, as long as fortune smiles, thou troops shalt count of friends.*

(C.) *dum, as long as, provided, so.*

2003. The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in *provisos* introduced by *dum*, *as long as, provided, so.*

*dum* is sometimes accompanied by *modo*, *only*, or *quidem*, *that is*; or (from Terence on) *modo* is used without *dum*. The negative is *nē* (in late Latin *nōn*); *nē* sometimes has as correlative *ita*.

*ōderint dum metuant*, *Poet. in Suet. Cal. 30, let them hate, so they fear.* *absit, dum modo laude partā domum recipiat sē*, *Pl. Am. 644, let him go, so only he come home with glory won.* *postulābant prō homine miserrimō, quī vel ipse sēsē in cruciātum darī cuperet, dum dē patris morte quæreretur*, *RA. 119, they made the request in behalf of a pitiable wretch, who would be only too glad to be put to the rack himself, so his father's death might be investigated.* *itaque dum locus comminus pūgnandī darētur, aequō animō singulās binīs nāvibus obiciēbant*, *Caes. C. 1, 58, 4, therefore, so a chance was given to fight hand to hand, they did not mind pitting one of their vessels against two of the enemy's.* *sī ēī permissum esset, ita id sacrum faceret, dum nē plūs quīnque sacrificiō interessent*, *L. 39, 18, 9, if he were allowed, he might perform the sacrifice far better, provided that not more than five people should have a part in the ceremonial.* *dum quidem nēquid percontēris quod nōn lubeat prōloquī*, *Pl. Aul. 211, provided at least you ask nothing that I may not like to disclose.* *volet, cīvis modo haec sit*, *T. Eu. 889, he'll consent, only let her be a free born maid.* *māgnō mē metū liberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit*, *C. 1, 10, you will relieve me of great fear, provided only there be a wall interposed between you and myself.*

(D.) *dum, quoad, dōnec, until.*

2004. *dum, quoad* or *dōnec, until*, often has as correlative *ūsque*, *ūsque eō, ūsque ad eum finem* or *tamdiū*.



*dum, until.*

**2005.** The subjunctive present is used in a protasis introduced by *dum, until*, when the main verb denotes either indefinite or present time, and the subjunctive imperfect when the main verb is past.

The subjunctive is an extension of the subjunctive of desire (1540); the clause denotes something expected or proposed.

is *dum veniat sēdēns ibi opperībere*, Pl. *B.* 48, *you shall sit there waiting till he comes*. *ōrandi sunt, ut si quam habent ulciscendī vim, differant in tempus aliud, dum dēfervēscat ira*, *TD.* 4, 78, *we must always ask such people, if they have any chance to take vengeance, to put it off to some other time, till their rage cool down*. *cēseō latendum tantisper ibidem, dum effervēscit haec grātulātiō et simul dum audiāmus, quemadmodum negōtium cōfectum sit*, *Fam.* 9, 2, 4, *I advise lying low where you are, while the present congratulation excitement is cooling off, and at the same time till we may hear how the job was done*. *dum rēliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, in ancoris exspectāvit*, 4, 23, 4, *he waited at anchor till the rest of the vessels should gather there* (1725). *Verginius dum collēgam cōsuleret morātus, dictātōrem dīxit*, L. 4, 21, 10, *Verginius, after waiting till he should consult his colleague, appointed a dictator*. *observāvit dum dormitāret canēs*, Pl. *Tri.* 170, *he watched till the dog should be napping*.

**2006.** The present indicative with *dum, while*, is sometimes used where the subjunctive might be expected with *dum, until* (1593). Other indicative tenses are rarely thus used: as,

(a.) *expectābō, dum venit*, T. *Eu.* 206, *I will wait while he comes*. *ego hīc tantisper, dum exīs, tē opperiar*, Pl. *Most.* 683, *I'll wait for you here a while till you come out*. *ego in Arcanō opperior, dum ista cōgnōscō*, *Att.* 10, 3, *for myself I am waiting at the Arcae place, till I ascertain this*. (b.) *mihi quidem ūsque cūrae erit, quid agās, dum quid ēgerīs, scierō*, *Fam.* 12, 19, 3, *for me I shall be anxious all the time to know what you are doing, till I know what you have done*. *mānsit in condiōne ūsque ad eum finem dum iūdicēs rēiecti sunt*, *V. a. pr.* 16, *he stuck to his bargain till the jurors were challenged*.

*quoad, dōnec, until.*

**2007.** *quoad* or *dōnec, until*, introduces a protasis in the present subjunctive when the main verb is present or future; and in the perfect indicative when the main verb is past.

*quoad* is found once in Plautus with the imperfect subjunctive (2008); in other authors here and there with both moods; not in Tacitus. With *dōnec* the present subjunctive is found once in Plautus, rarely in late Latin and in poetry; the perfect indicative is found at all periods; the present indicative (1590), found once in Plautus, is poetic and late. But *dōnec* is rarely used by Cicero, and never by Caesar or Sallust. *dōnicum* is found in old Latin (not in Terence) with the indicative (2009), and once in Nepos with the subjunctive of indirect discourse. *dōnique* is found four times in Lucretius with the indicative, always before vowels (2009). *dōneque* and *dōneque cum* seem to occur a few times in Vitruvius.



(a.) *ego hīc cōgitō commorārī, quoad mē reficiam, Fam. 7, 26, 2, I am thinking of staying here till I feel better. ea continēbis, quoad ipse tē videam, Att. 13, 21, 4, you will keep this back till I see you myself. expergēfactique secuntur inānia saepe cervōrum simulācra, dōnec discussis redeant errōribus ad sē, Lucr. 4, 995, and when awakened, often they still keep hunting the shadowy forms of stags, until the delusion is shaken off and they come to themselves. māgnus mirandusque cliēns sedet ad praetōria rēgis, dōnec Bīthynō libeat vigilāre tyrannō, J. 10, 160, a vassal great and strange he sits in the king's gate, till it may suit his oriental majesty to wake. inter eadem pecora dēgunt, dōnec aetās sēparet ingenuōs, Ta. G. 20, they always live among the same flocks and herds, till maturity puts the free-born by themselves.*

(b.) *nostrī reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad equitēs praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, 5, 17, 3, our people routed them and did not give up the pursuit till the cavalry drove the enemy headlong. Milō cum in senātū fuisset eō diē quoad senātus est dīmissus, domum vēnit, Mil. 28, after staying in the senate that day till the senate adjourned, Milo went home. numquam dēstitit ōrāre ūsque adeō dōnec perpulit, T. Andr. 660, he never ceased to tease until he gained his point. ūsque eō timuī, dōnec ad rēciundōs iūdicēs vēnimus, V. 1, 17, I was afraid all the time till we came to challenging jurors. The present indicative of vivid narration (1590) is found in Vergil and Livy: as, sociī cōnsurgere tōnsīs, dōnec rōstra tenent siccum et sēdēre carīnae omnēs innocuae, V. 10, 299, with one accord the shipmates rose to oars, until the beaks dry land attain, and keels all sat unscathed.*

2008. An imperfect subjunctive is rarely found with *quoad*, until (1725): *as. haec diēs praestitūtast, quoad referret, Pl. Ps. 623, this day was set by which he was to pay. exercēbātur currendō et lūctandō ad eum finem, quoad stāns complectī posset, N. 15, 2, 5, he used to practise running and wrestling, till he could give a grip standing.*

2009. Other constructions occur, chiefly in old Latin or poetry, with *dōnec*, or *dōnicum*, until. (a.) The future perfect: *as, haud dēsīnam, dōnec perfēcērō hōc, T. Ph. 419, I shall not stop till I have finished this. dēlicta māiōrum luēs, dōnec templa refēcēris, H. 3, 6, 1, for sins of sires thou shalt atone, till thou hast shrines repaired. (b.) The future: coquitō ūsque dōnec conmadēbit bene, Cato, RR. 156, 5, boil until it is very soft. ter centum rēgnābitur annōs, dōnec geminam partū dabit Ilia prōlem, V. 1, 272, for thrice a hundred years there will be kings, till Ilia gives birth to twins. (c.) The perfect indicative, less frequently the present, introductory to a general present: impedit piscīs ūsque adeō, dōnicum ēdūxit forās, Pl. Tru. 38, he always draws his net about the fish, until he's brought them out (1613). ūsque mantant neque id faciunt, dōnicum parietēs ruont, Pl. Most. 116, they keep waiting and don't do it until the walls are falling. (d.) The pluperfect indicative: horriferīs accībant vōcibus Orcum, dōnique eōs vitā privārant vermina saeva, Lucr. 5, 996, with horrid cries on Death they'd call till gripings sore had set them free from life. The imperfect indicative is found once in Tacitus, who also has the infinitive of intimation (1539) once or twice. An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive sometimes occurs where purpose is intimated, and in Livy and late Latin to express repeated past action: *as, dōnec ēgregius properāret exsul, H. 3, 5, 45, till he could hasten forth a peerless exile. trepidatiōnis aliquantum ēdēbant, dōnec quiētem ipse timor fēcisset, L. 21, 28, 11, the elephants always displayed some nervousness, till terror itself restored quiet (1730).**

*quandō*.

**2010.** *quandō*, originally a temporal particle, has the meaning *when*, which readily passes over to a causal meaning, *since, because*. In both meanings it introduces the indicative. For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as in indirect discourse (1725) or of action conceivable (1731). *quandō* is also used to introduce a conditional protasis (2110).

In simple sentences, temporal *quandō* is used in pronoun questions (1526). As an indefinite adverb it has the meaning *ever*.

(A.) TEMPORAL *quandō*.

**2011.** *quandō*, *when*, introduces a temporal clause with the indicative.

The time is often indefinite or iterative ; so usually in old Latin. *quandō* often has *tum* as correlative.

*fiō Iuppiter quandō lubet*, Pl. *Am.* 864, *I turn into Jupiter at my sweet will.* *laudātō quandō illud quod cupis effēcerō*, Pl. *Cu.* 364, *cry your bravo when I've done what you desire.* *quandō occāsiō illaec periit, post sērō cupit*, Pl. *Aul.* 249, *when that chance is lost, he wants it all too late* (1613). *quandō omnēs creati sunt, tum ad eōs deus fatur*, *Tim.* 40, *when all were created, then to them spake the god.* *quandō pars māior in eandem sententiam ibat, bellum erat cōsēsum*, L. 1, 32, 12, *when the majority voted for the same motion, war was always agreed upon.* Temporal *quandō* is found sporadically at all periods ; not in Terence or Caesar.

**2012.** *quandōque*, *whenever*, is found once in the Twelve Tables, a few times in Cicero (chiefly in legal formulae), three times in Horace, and here and there in later authors. Not in Caesar.

(B.) CAUSAL *quandō*.

**2013.** *quandō*, *since, seeing that*, introduces a causal clause with the indicative.

The reason is usually one known to the person addressed or one generally known (1884). *quandō* is often strengthened by *quidem*.

*quandō hīc serviō, haec patriast mea*, Pl. *Per.* 641, *now that I am a slave here, this is my country.* *quīn ergō abeis, quandō respōnsumst?* Pl. *MG.* 1085, *why don't you go then, since you've had your answer?* *melius est, quandōquidem hōc numquam mī ipse voluit dicere*, T. *Ad.* 639, *better so, since he would n't ever tell me about it of his own accord.* *quandō mē in hunc locum dēdūxit orātiō, docēbō*, *DN.* 3, 43, *seeing that my discourse has brought me to this point, I will show.* *haec dētur cūra cēnsōribus, quandōquidem eōs in rē pūblicā semper volumus esse*, *Leg.* 3, 47, *let this be the charge of the censors, seeing that we want such officers always in our state.* *prō urbe ac penātibus dimicandum esse, quandō Ītaliā tuērī nequissent*, L. 22, 8, 7, *that they must fight for home and country, now that they had failed to preserve Italy* (1724). Causal *quandō* is found at all periods, though not in Caesar, and in Cicero's orations only with *quidem*.



## 2014-2019.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

---

2014. *quandōque*, *inasmuch as*, is used a few times in a formal or legal sense in Cicero and Livy: *as, quandōque hīsce hominēs iniūssū populī Rōmānī Quirītiū foedus ictum irī spopondērunt*, L. 9, 10, 9, *inasmuch as these persons have promised that a covenant should be made, without the order of the Roman nation of Quirites*.

---

### sī.

2015. *sī*, in early Latin *sei*, is originally a locative, meaning *under those circumstances, so*. With the enclitic *-ce*, it forms *sīce* or *sīc*, *so*. The two are sometimes found as correlatives in colloquial style: *as, sīc scribēs aliquid, sī vacābis*, *Att.* 12, 38, 2, *so you shall have time, so you will write something*.

### CONDITIONAL PERIODS.

2016. A protasis introduced by *sī*, *so, if*, or *nisi*, *unless, if not*, states a condition; the apodosis states action occurring under that condition. The conditional protasis and apodosis combined make a *Conditional Period*.

Thus, *sī diēs est*, *if it is day*, is a conditional protasis; combined with an apodosis, *lūcet*, *it is light*, it makes a conditional period: *sī diēs est, lūcet*, *Inv.* 1, 86, *if it is day, it is light*.

2017. A parenthesis with *ut* (1943) is added when the speaker asserts that the action of the protasis is not only assumed, but actually occurs: *as, sī virtūs dīgna est glōriātiōne, ut est, beātus esse poterit virtūte unā praeditus*, *Fin.* 4, 51, *if virtue is entitled to glorification, as it really is, he will find it possible to be happy in the possession of virtue alone*. *sī nox opportūna est ēruptiōnī, sicut est, haec profectō noctis aptissima hōra est*, L. 7, 35, 10, *if night is always favourable for a sortie, and it always is, this particular hour of the night is surely the very best time*.

2018. The apodosis is usually declarative. Often, however, it is interrogative, exclamatory, or imperative, or it may take any other form which the thought or the context may require. The apodosis has rarely a correlative to *sī*: *as, igitur, it follows that, idcirco, for all that, tum, then, ita, sīc, only, eā condiōne, on condition; at, but, tamen, nevertheless, certē, saltem, at any rate, tum dēnique, tum dēmum, then and not till then*.

2019. *sī* is sometimes followed by *quidem* or, from Cicero on, by *modo*: *sī quidem, that is if, since, even if, sī modo, if only. sī tamen, at least if*, is found in the Augustan poets and in late writers. *sīve . . . sīve (seu . . . seu)* or, in old Latin, *sī . . . sīve, whether . . . or*, with the indicative or the subjunctive of the indefinite second person (1556), leaves a choice between two cases possible. By abbreviation of the protasis *sīve* becomes a coordinating particle: see 1672.



2020. The negative of *sī* is *sī nōn*, *if not* (*sī nēmō*, *sī nūllus*, &c.), or *nisi*, *unless, if not*, used especially of an exception or after a negative. *nisi sī*, chiefly in old, colloquial, or late Latin, or, particularly in solemn language or poetry, *nī* is sometimes used for *nisi*. A restriction, usually an ironical afterthought, may be introduced by *nisi fōrte* (rare before Cicero) or *nisi vērō* (only in Cicero) with the indicative.

*nisi* is sometimes found in an adversative sense in old and colloquial Latin, especially after *nesciō*; from Cicero on, it may be strengthened by *tamen*. For *nisi quod*, see 1848.

2021. When a second conditional period is opposed to a first, it is sometimes introduced by *sī* (or *sī autem*), but usually by *sīn* (or *sīn autem*). If the second period is negative, and its verb is not expressed, *minus* or *aliter* is preferred to *nōn*.

## CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL PROTASES.

2022. Conditional protases may be divided into two classes:

2023. I. INDETERMINATE protases, that is such as merely suppose an action, without implying either its occurrence or its non-occurrence; these may take:

(A.) Any tense of the indicative required by the sense; or (B.) the present subjunctive, less frequently the perfect subjunctive, to express a condition in the future.

2024. II. Protases of ACTION NON-OCCURRENT, that is such as suppose action not taking place. These take the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

Thus, in the period *sī diēs est, lūcet*, *Inv. 1, 86, if it is day, it is light*, the protasis *if it is day* is indeterminate, neither implying that *it is*, or *is not day*. But in *sī vīveret, verba ēius audīrētis*, *if he were alive, you would hear his evidence*, *RC. 42*, the protasis denotes action non-occurrent, *if he were alive*, implying *but he is not*. The whole period, like the protasis, is either an *Indeterminate Period* or a *Period of Action non-occurrent*.

## I. INDETERMINATE PROTASES.

### (A.) INDICATIVE USE.

2025. The indicative in a conditional protasis may state present, past, or future time.

The mood and tense of the apodosis are determined by the sense. The following combinations occur:

## 2026-2028.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

### (1.) PROTASIS IN THE PRESENT.

2026.

#### (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

sī sunt dī, benefici in hominēs sunt, *Div. 2, 104, if there are gods, they are kind to men.* sī nescīs, tibi ignōscō, *Fam. 10, 26, 3, if you do not know, I pardon you.* deus sum, sī hōc itast, *T. Hec. 843, I am a god, if this is so.* erus sī tuos domist, quī prōvocās? *Pl. Ps. 638, in case your master is at home, why don't you call him out?* hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, dē principātū contendunt, *6, 13, 9, when this man dies, if there is any one of the rest superior in position, he always takes his place; or if there are several with equal claims, they have a contest about the supremacy.* sī vīs, potes, *H. S. 2, 6, 39, you can, if you will.* in corpore sī quid ēius modī est quod reliquō corpori noceat, id ūrī secārīque patimur, *Ph. 8, 15, in the human body if there is anything likely to damage the rest of the body, we always allow it to be cauterized and cut.* sī cui vēnae sic moventur, is habet febrim, *Fat. 15, if a man's pulse beats thus and so, he always has fever.* The present is sometimes loosely used of future time (1593): as, sī illum relinquō, ēius vitae timeō, *T. Andr. 210, if I desert him, I tremble for his life.* assequor omnia, sī properō; sī cunctor, amittō, *Att. 10, 8, 5, I shall compass all my ends, if I hurry; if I delay, I shall lose everything.* castra nunc vōbīs hostium praedae dō, sī mihi pollicemini vōs fortiter operam nāvātūrōs, *L. 7, 16, 4, I give you the camp of the enemy as booty now, if you promise me you will quit you like men.*

2027.

#### (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

sī hominēs ratiōnem ā dīs datam in fraudem convertunt, nōn dari illam quam dari hūmānō generī melius fuit, *DN. 3, 78, if men apply reason, the gift of the gods, to purposes of mischief, it would have been better it should not be given to the human race than given* (1495). The perfect of the apodosis is ordinarily used of future time (1612): as, occidī, sī tū vēra memorās, *Pl. Most. 369, I'm a dead man, if what you say is true.* nunc sī indicium faciō, interiī; sī taceō, interiī tamen, *Pl. MG. 306, now if I tell, I'm dead and gone; if I keep dark, I'm dead and gone the same.* nī illōs hominēs expellō, ego occidī plānissumē, *Pl. St. 401, if I don't drive those people off, all's up with me.* nam sī argentum prius adfert, continuō nōs ambō exclūsumus, *Pl. As. 360, for if he brings the money first, then we're at once left out in the cold.*

2028.

#### (c.) Apodosis in the Imperfect.

sed sī domist, Dēmaenetum volēbam, *Pl. As. 452, but if he is at home, Demaenetus I wanted.* iam tum erat senex, senectūs sī verēcundōs facit, *T. Ph. 1023, he was already old, if age is what makes shamefastness.* sī singula vōs fōrte nōn movent, ūniversa certē tamen movēre dēbēbant, *DN. 2, 163, if these points taken severally do not affect you, yet collectively they surely should have done so* (1495).



2029. (d.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect.

cesseram, sī aliēnam ā mē plēbem fuisse voltis, quae nōn fuit, invidiae, *Sest.* 64, *I had yielded, if you will have it that the commons were opposed to me, though they were not, to hatred.* hōc mī ūnum relicuom fuerat malum, sī puerum ut tollam cōgit, *T. Hec.* 570, *this was the only evil left in store for me, if he compels me to adopt the child.*

2030. (e.) Apodosis in the Future.

sī interpellās, ego tacēbō, *Pl. Men.* 1121, *if you persist in breaking in, I'll hold my tongue.* hīc tū sī laesum tē esse dīcis, patiar et concēdam; sī iniūriam tibi factam quereris, dēfendam et negābō, *Caecil.* 58, *if you assert that you are hurt in this matter, I am perfectly willing to admit it; but if you complain that it is a violation of your rights, I shall stoutly maintain the contrary.* Often in this combination the present is loosely used of future time (1593): as, nunc sī ille hūc salvos revenit, reddam suom sibi; sī quid eō fuerit, habēō dōtem unde dem, *Pl. Tri.* 156, *now if our absent friend comes safely back, I'll give him back his own again; if anything befalls him, I've wherewith a dower to give.* nisi id cōnfestim facis, ego tē trādam magistrātuī, *N.* 15, 4, 3, *if you do not do it at once, I will hand you over to a magistrate.* sī pāce fruī volumus, bellum gerendum est; sī bellum omittimus, pāce numquam fruēmur, *Ph.* 7, 19, *if we wish to enjoy peace, we shall have to make war; if we give up war, we never shall enjoy peace.* convincam, sī negās, *C.* 1, 8, *I will bring it home to you, if you deny it.* tibi dīvitiās dabō, sī impetrās, *Pl. MG.* 1213, *I'll make you rich, if you succeed.*

2031. (f.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

sī nequeō facere ut abeās, egomet abierō, *Pl. Poen.* 442, *if I can't make you go, I'll instantly begone myself* (1629). sī id nōn facis, ego quod mē in tē sit facere dignum invēnerō, *T. Hau.* 107, *if you don't do it, I will have a proper course devised to use with you.*

2032. (g.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

dā mihī hōc, mel meum, sī mē amās, *Pl. Tri.* 244, *give me this, honey mine, an thou lov'st me.* redargue mē, sī mentior, *Clu.* 62, *refute me, if I am not speaking the truth.* dēsilīte, mīlitēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere, 4, 25, 3, *jump overboard, men, unless you choose to abandon your eagle to the enemy,* nī iūdicātum facit, sēcum dūcitō, vincitō compedibus, *Twelve Tables* in *Gell.* 20, 1, 45, *unless he satisfies the judgement, the complainant shall take him with him, and put him in gyves* (1593, 1575). quā rē, sī haec ita sunt, sīc mē colitōte ut deum, *CM.* 81, *therefore, if this is so, you are to honour me as a god.*



## 2033. (h.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

sī quid habēs certius, velim scīre, *Att.* 4, 10, 1, if you have anything more definite, I should like to know (1554). sīn aliter animātus ēs, bene, quod agās, ēveniat tibi, *Pl. Tri.* 715, but if you're minded otherwise, may all you do betide you well (1540). quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur, *Ph.* 7, 14, if we cannot do it, let us die (1547). sī mihī filius genitur, isque prius moritur, et cētera, tum mihī ille sit hērēs, *DO.* 2, 141, if a son is born to me, and the boy dies before &c., &c., then so and so is to be my heir (1593, 1548). sī est spēs nostrī reditūs, eam cōfirmēs, *Fam.* 14, 4, 3, if there is a hope of my coming back, strengthen that hope (1550). eum sī reddis mihi, praetereā ūnum nummum nē duīs, *Pl. Cap.* 331, if you restore my boy to me, you need n't give one penny more (1551). sī hīc pernoctō, causae quid dīcam? *T. Ad.* 531, if I sleep here, what reason can I give (1563)?

## (2.) PROTASIS IN THE PERFECT.

## 2034. (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

sī quid vēnāle habuit Hēius, sī id quantī aestimābat, tantī vēndidit, dēsino quaerere cūr ēmeris, *V.* 4, 10, if Hejus had anything for sale, if he sold it at his own valuation, I stop enquiring why you bought. sī vēre est ā nōbīs philosophia laudāta, eius trāctātiō optimō quōque dīgnissima est, *Ac.* 2, 6, if philosophy has been extolled by me with justice, its study is eminently worthy of the good. sī honōris causā statuam dedērunt, inimīcī nōn sunt, *V.* 2, 150, if they contributed a statue as a compliment, they are not enemies. postēs quōiusmodī? . . . etiam nunc satis bonī sunt, sī sunt inductī pice, *Pl. Most.* 818, what think you of the posts? . . . they're pretty good even now, if they are only smeared with pitch. This combination is common in general conditional periods (1613): as, hominēs aegrī sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevārī videntur, *C.* 1, 31, if sick people drink cold water, at first they always seem refreshed. sī quod est admissum facinus, idem dēcernunt, *6, 13, 5*, if a crime has been committed, they also act as judges. abiūrant, sī quid crēditumst, *Pl. Cur.* 496, they always swear they haven't it, if anything is trusted them. sī puer parvus occidit, aequō animō ferendum putant, *TD.* 1, 93, if a baby dies, they always think the affliction should be borne with resignation.

## 2035. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

sī peccāvī, insciēns fēcī, *T. Hau.* 631, if I've done wrong, it was in ignorance. haec bona in tabulās pūblicās sī rediērunt, tabulae pūblīcae conruptae sunt, *RA.* 128, if this property has been entered on the state books, then the state books have been tampered with. quō in bellō sī fuit error, commūnis ēī fuit cum senātū, *Ph.* 11, 34, if there was a mistake in this war, it was common to him and the senate. interii, sī abiit, *Pl. Ps.* 910, I'm lost, if he has gone (1608). Also in general periods (1613): as, animī sī quandō vēra vidērunt, ūsī sunt fōrtūnā atque cāsū, *Div.* 2, 108, if the mind has ever seen the truth, it has used in every case luck and chance. studiōsē equidem ūtor nostris poētis, sed sicubi illi dēfēcērunt, vertī multa dē Graecis, *TD.* 2, 26, I use our own poets carefully, it is true; but whenever they have failed me, I have always translated a great deal from Greek.

2036. (c.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect.

sī illud iūre rogātum dicere ausī sunt, oblitīne erant? *PC. 45, if they ventured to say that that measure was brought forward in due form, had not they forgotten?*

2037. (d.) Apodosis in the Future.

sī quis oriente caniculā nātus est, is in marī nōn moriētur, *if anybody is born when the dogstar is rising, he will never die at sea (general)*: sī Fabius oriente caniculā nātus est, Fabius in marī nōn moriētur, *Fat. 12, if Fabius was born when the dogstar was rising, Fabius will not die at sea (particular)*. sī parum intellēxtī, dicam dēnuō, *Pl. R. 1102, if you don't understand, I'll say again*. nōn ūtar eā cōsuētūdine, sī quid est factum clēmēter, ut dissolūtē factum crīminer, *V. 5, 19, I will not avail myself of the common practice, and if a thing has been done in a spirit of mercy, charge that it was done in a lax way*. nisi iam factum aliquid est per Flaccum, fiet ā mē, *Fam. 3, 11, 3, unless something or other has been done already through Flaccus, it will be done by me*.

2038. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

sī plūs minusve secuērunt, sē fraude estō, *Twelve Tables in Gell. 20, 1, 49, if they cut too much or too little, it shall be without penalty (1613)*. sī vidistis, dīcite, *Pl. R. 323, if ye have seen, declare*. sī quid est peccātum ā nōbīs, prōfer, *T. Hec. 253, declare it, if we've erred at all*. sī numquam avārē pretium statuī artī meae, exemplum statuīte in mē, *T. Hau. 48, if never like a miser I have set a price upon my art, a pattern set in me*. sī quōs propīnquus sanguīs patrōnōs dedit, iuvāte perīclitāntem, *Ta. 3, 12, if relationship has made any of you his advocates, help him in his straits*.

2039. (f.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

sī nūlla colōris prīncipiīs est reddita nātūra, extēplō ratiōnem reddere possīs, *Lucr. 2, 757, if atoms have no colour, you might explain at once (1556)*. meritō maledīcās mī, sī nōn id ita factumst, *Pl. Am. 572, you might with perfect right abuse me, if it is not so (1556)*.

2040. (g.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

sī nēmō hāc praeteriit, postquam intrō abiī, cistella hīc iacēret, *Pl. Cist. 683, if nobody has passed along this way, since I went in, a casket should be lying here (1560)*. nam cūr tam variae rēs possent esse requirō, ex ūnō sī sunt ignī pūrōque creatae? *Lucr. 1, 645, for how could things so motley be, I ask, if they are made of pure and simple fire (1565)?*

2041. (h.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

sī Antōniō Crassus ēloquēns vīsus nōn est, tibi numquam Cotta vīsus esset, *O. 106, if Antony did not hold Crassus eloquent, you would never have held Cotta so (1561)*.



## 2042-2047.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

---

### (3.) PROTASIS IN THE IMPERFECT.

#### 2042. (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

sī tum nōn pertimēscēbās, nē nunc quidem perhorrēscis? *V. 4, 78, if you were not getting afraid then, are you not getting scared even now?* sī quī senēs āc dēfōrmēs erant, eōs in hostium numerō dūcit, *V. 5, 64, if any were old and homely, he considers them in the light of enemies (1590).* sī ad illum hērēditās veniēbat, vērī simile est ab illō necātum, *Inv. 1, 89, if the inheritance was coming to so and so, it is likely that the murder was committed by that man.* adulēscētī nihil est quod suscēseam, sī illum minus nōrat, *T. Ph. 361, I have no cause for anger with the youth, if he was not acquainted with the man.*

#### 2043. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

sed sī properābās magis, prīdiē nōs tē hūc dūxisse oportuit, *Pl. Poen. 525, but if you were in greater haste, you should have brought us here the day before.*

#### 2044. (c.) Apodosis in the Imperfect.

This combination is used chiefly of contemporaneous action (1732), in general conditional periods: as, sī quod erat grande vās, laetī adferēbant, *V. 4, 47, if any good-sized vase was ever found, they would always bring it to him in high glee.* atque ea sī erant, māgnam habēbās dīs grātiā, *Pl. As. 143, and if them you ever had, you were monstrous grateful to the gods.* sī quae rēs erat māior, populus commovēbātur, *Sest. 105, if a thing of more than ordinary importance occurred, the populace was always aroused.* hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, *1, 48, 6, whenever there was any pretty sharp work, these men would always fall to.* For the subjunctive in such protases, see 2071.

#### 2045. (d.) Apodosis in the Future.

flēbunt Germānicum etiam ignōtī: vindicābitis vōs, sī mē potius quam fōrtūnam meam fovēbātis, *Ta. 2, 71, as for weeping for Germanicus, that will be done by strangers too; vengeance will be yours, if you honoured in me more the man than the position.*

#### 2046. (e.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

fac animō māgnō sis, et sī turbidissima sapienter ferēbās, tranquillōra laetē ferās, *Fam. 6, 14, 3, be of great heart, and if you bore anarchy like a stoic, bear a more orderly condition of things with good cheer (1550).*

#### 2047. (f.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

sī amābās, invenīrēs mūtuom, *Pl. Ps. 286, you should have borrowed, if you were in love (1559).* quod sī meīs incommodīs laetābantur, urbis tamen periculō commovērentur, *Sest. 54, if they did exult over my mishaps, still they ought to have been touched by the danger to Rome (1559).*



(4.) PROTASIS IN THE PLUPERFECT.

2048.

(a.) Apodosis in the Present.

sī hōc ita fātō datum erat, ut ad pācē petendam venīrem, laetor tē mihī sorte potissimum datum, ā quō peterem, L. 30, 30, 3, *if it was so ordained by fate that I should come to sue for peace, I am glad that you are allotted me, of all men in the world, to sue from.*

2049.

(b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

tum id, sī falsum fuerat, filius quōr nōn refellit? T. Ph. 400, *if that had been untrue, why did not at the time your son disprove it?* vel officiō, sī quid dēbuerat, vel errōrī, sī quid nescierat, satis factum esse dūxit, D. 13, *he thought he had done enough for duty, if he had been under any obligation, enough for delusion, if he had been acting under mistaken ignorance.*

2050.

(c.) Apodosis in the Imperfect.

sed in aedibus quid tibi meīs nam erat negōtī mē absente, nisi ego iūsseram? Pl. Aul. 427, *but what business had you in my house in my absence, unless I had ordered?* sī nihil in istā pūgnā Rōscii fēcerant, quam ob causam tantis praemiis dōnābantur? RA. 108, *if the Rosciuses had not done service in that fight, why were they presented with such rewards?* Often of antecedent action, in general conditional periods: as, sī quicquam caelātī adspexerat, manūs abstinēre, iūdicēs, nōn poterat, V. 4, 48, *if he ever caught sight of a bit of chased work, why, gentlemen, he never could keep his hands off.* stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dīxeram, DN. I, 93, *the old gentleman was always nettled, if I said anything harsh.* ac seu longum post tempus vēnerat hospes, sive convīva per imbrem vicīnus, bene erat nōn piscibus urbe petitis, H. S. 2, 2, 118, *and if a friend dropped in, after an absence long, or neighbour, come to take pot-luck upon a rainy day, we feasted not on fish brought out from town.* For the subjunctive in such protases, see 2071.

2051.

(d.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

ante sōlem exorientem nisi in palaestram vēnerās, haud mediocris poenās penderēs, Pl. B. 426, *ere sunrise so you came not to the wrestling school, amercement strong you had to pay* (1552).

(5.) PROTASIS IN THE FUTURE.

2052.

(a.) Apodosis in the Present.

eam sei cūrābeis, perbonast, Pl. Merc. 526, *if you'll take care of her, she is first-rate.* quod sī perferre nōn poterō, opprimī mē mālō, RA. 10, *if I cannot succeed in bearing it, I would rather be crushed.*

## 2053-2056.] Sentences : The Subordinate Sentence.

2053.

(b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

quam nisi dēfendēs, Rōmulus nōn bene vīdit avēs, Prop. 4 (5), 6, 43, *unless thou savest her, 'twas ill that Romulus espied his birds.* āctumst, sī quidem tū mē hīc lūdificābere, T. Eu. 717, *all's up, that is in case you fool me here* (1612). cui sī esse in urbe licēbit, vīcimus, Att. 14, 20, 3, *if he shall be allowed to stay in town, the day is ours* (1612).

2054.

(c.) Apodosis in the Future.

sī erum insimulābis malitiae, male audiēs, T. Ph. 359, *you'll hear what you won't like, if you insinuate anything wrong against master.* vīcīnīs bonus estō : sī tē libenter vīcīnitās vidēbit, facilius tua vēndēs ; sī aedificābis, operīs, iūmentīs, māteriē adiuuvābunt, Cato, RR. 4, *be obliging to your neighbours : if the neighbourhood looks on you with favour, you will find a readier sale for your produce ; if you fall to building, they will help you with labour, draught animals, and building material.* sī id audēbis dīcere, causam inimīcī tuī sublevābis, Caecil. 12, *if you venture to say that, you will promote the cause of your enemy.* sī fōrtūna volet, fiēs dē rhētore cōnsul ; sī volet haec eadem, fiēs dē cōnsule rhētor, J. 7, 197, *if fortune shall ordain, a magnate from a teacher thou shalt be ; again shall she ordain, a teacher from a magnate shalt thou be.* nōn modo nōn laedētur causa nōbilitātis, sī istīs hominibus resistētis, vērū etiam ōmābitur, RA. 138, *the interests of the nobility will not be damaged, if you resist those creatures ; oh no, on the contrary, they will be promoted.* The clause with sī is apt to take the future perfect (2061). The future in the apodosis often denotes action holding good at all times : as, dēfēnsor prīmum, sī poterit, dēbēbit vītā ēius, quī insimulābitur, quam honestissimā dēmōnstrāre, Inv. 2, 35, *the advocate ought in the first place, if he can, to prove that the life of the accused is eminently respectable.* quod adsequēmur, sī cavēbimus nē in perturbātiōnēs incidāmus, Off. 1, 131, *we shall attain this end if we take care not to be subject to fits of passion.* Sometimes in exemplifications : sī patriam prōdere cōnābitur pater, silēbitne filius ? Off. 3, 90, *if a father shall try to betray his country, will the son keep silent ?* But see 2090.

2055.

(d.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

oculum ego ecfodiam tibi : dīcam tamen ; nam sī sic nōn licēbit, luscus dīxerō, Pl. Tri. 463, *I'll dig your eye out : but I'll speak, nathless ; for if I may not as I am, I'll say my say as one-eyed man.* sed sī tē aequō animō ferre accipiet, neclegentem fēceris, T. Andr. 397, *but if he sees you take it placidly, you'll have him off his guard.* The more usual combination is as in 2062.

2056.

(e.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

vir tuos sī veniet, iube domī opperīrī, Pl. Cist. 592, *in case your husband comes, tell him to wait at home.* Almost always the second imperative is used (1577) : as, sī volet, suō vīvītō, Twelve Tables in Gell. 20, 1, 45, *if the prisoner wish, he may subsist on his own food.* sī veniet nūntius, facitō ut sciam, Pl. St. 148, *if a messenger shall come, be sure you let me know.* sī dē mē ipsō plūra dīcere vidēbor, ignōscitōte, Sest. 31, *if I seem to harp too much on myself, you must excuse me.*



2057. (f.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

sī quid erit, quod scribendum putēs, velim faciās, *Att.* 11, 13, 5, *if there shall be anything which you think worth writing, I wish you would write* (1555). nam sī altera illaec magis instābit, fōrsitan nōs reiciat, *T. Ph.* 717, *for if the other lady presses more, perhaps he'll throw us out* (1554). peream, sī tē ferre poterunt, *Brut. in Fam.* 11, 23, 2, *may I die, if they shall find it possible to endure you* (1541). sī quandō illa dicet 'Phaedriam intrō mittāmus,' Pamphilam cantātum prōvocēmus, *T. Eu.* 441, *if ever she shall say 'let us have Phaedria in,' then let us call out Pamphila to sing* (1548). habeat, sī argentum dabit, *Pl. R.* 727, *she's welcome to them, if she pays the cash* (1548).

2058. (g.) Apodosis in the Perfect Subjunctive.

sī mē audiētis, adulēscētēs, sōlem alterum nē metuerītis, *RP.* 1, 32, *if you will hearken to me, my young friends, never fear a double sun* (1551). sīn erit ille gemitus ēlāmentābilis, vix eum virum dixerim, *TD.* 2, 57, *but if his groan be a long-drawn wail, I could scarcely call him a man* (1558).

(6.) PROTASIS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT.

2059. (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

salvae sunt, sī istōs flūctūs dēvītāverint, *Pl. R.* 168, *they are saved, if they escape those waves* (1593). rēx sum, sī ego illum hominem adlexerō, *Pl. Poen.* 671, *I'm a millionaire, if I allure the man* (1593). crīmen probāre tē cēnsēs posse, sī nē causam quidem maleficiī prōtuleris? *RA.* 72, *do you think you can prove your charge, if you do not even bring forward a motive for the crime?* quod sī meam spem vīs improbōrum fefellerit, commendō vōbīs meum parvum filium, *C.* 4, 23, *but if the might of the wicked disappoints my hope, unto your keeping do I commend the little son of mine.*

2060. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

victus sum, sī dixeris, *Pl. Am.* 428, *I am beaten if you tell* (1612). sī sēnserit, periī, *T. Andr.* 213, *if he scents it, I'm done for* (1612). sī cōn-servātus erit, vicimus, *Fam.* 12, 6, 2, *if he is saved, our success is assured* (1612). tum, hercule, illō diē quō ego cōnsul sum creātus, male gesta rēs pūblica est, sī tuleritis, *L.* 3, 19, 11, *in that case it was indeed a bad day for the country when I was made consul, if you make the proposition* (1608).

2061. (c.) Apodosis in the Future.

peribō, sī nōn fēcērō, sī faxō vāpulābō, *Pl. in Gell.* 3, 3, 8, *I shall be done for if I don't do it, if I do, I shall be done up too* (1626). oculum ego ecfo-diam tibi, sī verbum addideris, *Pl. Tri.* 463, *I'll gouge your eye out for you, if you say another word.* sī tē interfici iūsserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā rēliqua coniūrātōrum manus, *C.* 1, 12, *if I order you to be dispatched, the rest of the gang of conspirators will be left in the state.*



## 2062. (d.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

*sī dixerō mendācium, solēns meō mōre fēcerō*, Pl. Am. 198, *if fiction I relate, I shall have done but in my usual way.* *sī tū argentum attuleris, cum illō perdiderō fidem*, Pl. Ps. 376, *if you, sir, bring the cash, I'll break my word to him.* *respirārō, sī tē viderō*, Att. 2, 24, 5, *I shall be myself again, if I see you.* *pergrātum mihi fēceris, sī dē amicitia disputāris*, L. 16, *you will do me a very great favour, if you will discourse on friendship.*

## 2063. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

Generally the longer forms of the imperative are used (1577): *patrōnus sī clientī fraudem fēcerit, sacer estō*, Twelve Tables in Serv. to V. 6, 609, *if a patron shall cheat his client, let him be doomed.* *servitum tibi mē abdūcitō, nī fēcerō*, Pl. Ps. 520, *if I don't do it, take me off to be your slave.* *hōc sī effēceris, quodvis dōnum ā mē optātō*, T. Eu. 1056, *if you do this, ask any gift you please of me.* *sī mē adsequi potueris, ut tibi vidēbitur, sepelītō*, TD. 1, 103, *if you can ever find me, then bury me as you think best.* Rarely the shorter forms: *inpinge pūgnum, sī muttiverit*, Pl. B. 800, *drive your fist into him if he says booh.* *sī tumidōs accēdere fastūs sēnsēris, inceptō parce referque pedem*, O. AA. 1, 715, *if thou shalt see disdain come swelling high, give o'er and beat retreat.*

## 2064. (f.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*sibi habeat, sī nōn extemplō ab eō abdūxerō*, Pl. Per. 164, *he may keep her, if I don't carry her off that minute* (1548). *caecum mē ferri cōnfitear, sī tē potuisse superārī dixerō*, Planc. 6, *if I say that you can be surpassed, I should own myself swept along like a blind man* (1556). *tum magis adsentiāre, sī ad māiōra pervēnerō*, RP. 1, 62, *you would agree all the more if I come at once to weightier points* (1556).

## SOME SPECIAL USES.

2065. An indicative protasis with *sī* is often used to assume a general truth as a proof either for another general truth, or for a particular fact.

(a.) *sī voluptātis sēnsū capit, dolōrēs etiam capit*, DN. 3, 32, *if it is susceptible of pleasure, it is also susceptible of pain.* *sī omnēs, quī rēi publicae cōsulunt, cārī nobis esse dēbent, certē in primis imperātōrēs.* *sī ferae partūs suōs diligunt, quā nōs in liberōs nostrōs indulgentiā esse dēbēmus*, DO. 2, 168, *if all people who are devoted to the public service are dear to us, then assuredly our military men ought always to be particularly dear.* *If wild beasts always love their young, how kind ought we always to be to our own children.* (b.) *sī pietātī summa tribuenda laus est, dēbētis movērī, cum Q. Metellum tam piē lūgēre videātis*, DO. 2, 167, *if filial affection is always to be held in high honour, you ought to be touched in this instance, seeing such affectionate grief in Metellus.* *sī nox opportūna est ēruptiōnī, sicut est, haec profectō noctis aptissima hōra est*, L. 7, 35, 10, *if night is always favourable for a sortie, and it always is, this particular hour of the night is the very best time.*

2066. An indicative protasis with *sī* often assumes a fact, past or present, as an argument for another fact, or for a general truth.

In this case the apodosis, which is usually a question, often takes the subjunctive (1565).

*sī Sūlla potuit efficere, ut dictātor dīcerētur, cūr hīc nōn possit?* Att. 9, 15, 2, *if Sulla could succeed in being appointed dictator, why cannot this man?* *sī Zēnōnī licuit inauditum rēi nōmen impōnere, cūr nōn liceat Catōnī?* Fin. 3, 15, *if Zeno was allowed to give a new name to a thing, why should not Cato be allowed?* *quod sī Graecī leguntur ā Graecīs, quid est cūr nostrī ā nostrīs nōn legantur?* Fin. 1, 6, *but if Greeks are read by Greeks, why should not Romans be read by Romans?*

2067. An indicative protasis with *sī* often assumes a fact which is declared in the apodosis to be no reason for another fact.

In this case the negative usually begins the period. *sī*, for which *quia* or *etsī* is sometimes substituted, sometimes has *idcircō*, *ilicō*, or *continuō*, rarely *propterea* or *ideō*, as correlative in the apodosis.

*nōn, sī tibi antea prōfuit, semper prōderit*, Ph. 8, 12, *even if it has done you good in the past, that is no reason why it always will in the future.* *nōn sī Opīmiū dēfendisti, idcircō tē istī bonum civem putābunt*, DO. 2, 170, *suppose you did defend Opimius, that is no reason why your friends will think you a patriot.* *nec sī omne ēnūntiātum aut vērū aut falsū est, sequitur ilicō, esse causās immūtābilis, quae prohibeant secus cadere atque cāsūrum sit*, Fat. 28, *and even if every declaration is either true or false, it does not follow without any further ado that there are unchangeable causes to prevent a thing falling out different from the way it promises to fall out.* *nōn continuō, sī mē in gregem sicāriōrum contulī, sum sicārius*, RA. 94, *it does not forthwith follow that if I have joined a band of bravoos, I am a bravo.*

*mīror, mīrum sī.*

2068. *mīror* or *mīrum est* (*mīra sunt*) may introduce a conditional protasis, instead of a clause with *quod* (1851) or the accusative with the infinitive (2190).

Generally the main clause is actually or virtually negated: as, *minus mīrandū est, illaec aetās sī quid illōrum facit*, Pl. B. 409, *'tis not to be wondered at, if youth does things like that.* *idne tū mīrāre, sī patrissat fīlius?* Pl. Ps. 442, *can you, sir, wonder at it if the son plays the father?* *nec mīrum sī ūtēbātur cōnsiliō*, Quinct. 18, *and it is no wonder if he followed the advice.* *mīrer, sī vāna vestra auctōritās est?* L. 3, 21, 4, *can I think it strange if your influence is of no account* (1565)? Rarely the main clause is positive: as, *mīrābar hōc sī sic abiret*, T. Andr. 175, *I wondered if it was going to end so* (1773). *mīror sī quemquam amīcum habēre potuit*, L. 54, *I wonder if he could have had a friend in the world.* In old colloquial style *mīrum nī* is found: as, *mīrum nī hīc mē exossāre cōgitat*, Pl. Am. 319, *strange that he does n't think of boning me.* *ubi nunc ipsus?* :: *mīrum nī domist*, T. Andr. 598, *where is he now?* :: *at home of course.* So once in Livy: *mīrum esse nī castra hostium oppūgnentur*, L. 3, 28, 5, *that he should n't be surprised if the enemy's camp were being stormed* (1724). *gaudeō sī* is found once in Cicero, and *terreō*, *metus est sī*, or the like occurs a few times in Tacitus. For *sī* in expressions of trial, hope, expectation, &c., see 1777.



## THE SUBJUNCTIVE FOR THE INDICATIVE.

2069. The indicative in the protasis is occasionally replaced by the subjunctive, as follows :

2070. (1.) The present or perfect subjunctive is sometimes used in general present suppositions, regularly in the indefinite second person singular, rarely with other persons (1730) : as,

(a.) *nam dolī nōn dolī sunt nisi astū colās, sed malum māximum, sī id palam prōvenit*, Pl. *Cap.* 221, *for tricks are never tricks, unless you handle them with craft, but damage dire, in case the thing gets out* ; here the indicative *prōvenit* shows that *colās* is due to the person. *nec calidae citius dēcēdunt corpore febrēs, textilibus sī in pīctūrīs ostrōque rubentī iactēris, quam sī in plēbēiā veste cubandum est*, Lucr. 2, 34, *nor sooner will hot fevers leave the limbs, if on gay tapestries and blushing purple you should toss, than if perforce your bed you make on pallet rude*. *quod est difficile, nisi speciem prae tē bonī virī ferās*, Off. 2, 39, *and this is a hard thing, unless you have the exterior of a good man*. *nec habēre virtūtem satis est nisi ūtāre*, RP. 1, 2, *and to have virtue is not enough, unless one use it*. *sīquoi mūtuum quid dederīs, fit prō propriō perditum*, Pl. *Tri.* 1051, *if aught you've lent to anyone, 't is not your own, but lost*. *nam nullae magis res duae plūs negōtī habent, sī occēperīs exōrnāre*, Pl. *Poen.* 212, *for no two things give more trouble if you once begin to fit them out*. *nulla est excūsātiō peccātī, sī amīcī causā peccāverīs*, L. 37, *it is no excuse for a sin if you have sinned from friendship*.

(b.) *suōs quisque opprimī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem*, 6, 11, 4, *nobody suffers his vassals to be put down, and if he ever act otherwise, he has no influence among his people*. *laeduntur artēriae, sī ācrī clāmōre compleantur*, Cornif. 3, 21, *it always hurts the windpipe, if it be filled out with a sharp scream*. *turpis excūsātiō est, sī quis contrā rem pūblicam sē amīcī causā fēcisse fateātur*, L. 40, *it is always a discreditable apology, if a man confess that he has been unpatriotic from motives of friendship*. *Britannī iniūncta imperiī mūnera impigrē obeunt, sī iniūriae absint*, Ta. Agr. 13, *the Britons are always perfectly ready to perform the duties enjoined on them by the Roman government, if they be not maltreated*.

2071. (2.) The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used in general past suppositions (1730).

This use begins with Catullus and Caesar, the indicative being the regular classical construction (2044, 2050).

*chommoda dicēbat, sī quandō commoda vellet dicere* Arrius, Cat. 84, 1, *had advantages said Arrius, if advantages he ever meant to say*. *sī quis prehenderētur, cōsēnsū militum ēripiēbātur*, Caes. C. 3, 110, 4, *every time a man was taken up, he was rescued by the joint action of the rank and file*. *sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquēbātur, neque coniecta tēla vitāre poterant*, 5, 35, 4, *but if on the other hand they undertook to hold their position, there was never any opening for bravery, nor could they ever dodge the shower of missiles*. *sīn Numidae propius accessissent, ibī virtūtem ostendere*, S. I. 58, 3, *they showed forth their valour every time the Numidians drew near* (1535).



(B.) SUBJUNCTIVE USE.

2072. The present or perfect subjunctive may be used in a conditional protasis of future time.

2073. The apodosis is usually in the present subjunctive, less frequently in the perfect subjunctive. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are rare (2089).

2074. The indicative is sometimes used in the apodosis, especially in expressions of ability, duty, &c. (1495); **nōn possum** is regularly in the indicative when the protasis is also negative. For the future indicative the periphrastic form is sometimes used.

2075. An action not occurring, or from the nature of things actually impossible, may of course be represented as of possible occurrence. In old Latin, in particular, the present subjunctive is very commonly used of action not expected to occur, in preference to the blunter imperfect (2091): thus, *sī hercle habērem, pollicērer*, Pl. E. 116, *in sooth, I'd offer if I had*, is afterwards put by the same man, *sī hercle habeam, pollicear*, 331, *in sooth I'm fain to offer, if I have*.

(1.) PROTASIS IN THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

2076. (a.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*at pigeat postea nostrum erum, sī vōs eximat vinculis*, Pl. Cap. 203, *but it may rue our master by and by, if he should take you out of bonds. quid sī eveniat dēsubitō prandium, ubī ego tum accumbam?* Pl. B. 79, *suppose a lunch should suddenly come off, where is your humble servant then to lie* (1563)? *hanc viam sī asperam esse negem, mentiar*, Sest. 100, *if I say that this path is not rough, I should not tell the truth. sī deus tē interroget, quid respondeās?* Ac. 2, 80, *if a god ask you, what would you answer?* *haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat?* C. 1, 19, *if thy country plead with thee thus, ought she not to carry her point?* *sī existat hodiē ab inferis Lycūrgus, sē Spartam antiquam agnōscere dicat*, L. 39, 37, 3, *if Lycurgus rise this day from the dead, he would say that he recognized the Sparta of yore. vocem tē ad cēnam, nisi egomet cēnem foris*, Pl. St. 190, *I fain would ask you home to dine, unless perchance I should dine out myself. pol sī mihi sit, nōn pollicear :: sciō, darēs*, Pl. B. 635, *depend upon it, if I have the wherewithal, I shall not offer merely :: yes, I know, you'd give. sī honestē cēseam tē facere posse, suādeam; vērūm nōn potest; cave faxis*, Pl. MG. 1371, *if I should think that you could do the thing with credit to yourself, I should advise you to: but 'tis impossible; so don't you do it. eōs nōn cūrāre opīnor, quid agat hūmānum genus; nam sī cūrent, bene bonis sit, male malis, quod nunc abest*, E. in Div. 2, 104, DN. 3, 79, *but little care the gods, I trow, how fares the race of man; for should they care, the good were blest, the wicked curst; a thing that really cometh not to pass*.

## 2077-2080.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

### 2077. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect Subjunctive.

*sī* aequom siet *mē plūs sapere quam vōs*, *dederim vōbīs cōnsilium catum*, Pl. *E.* 257, *if it becoming be for me to have more wit than ye, sage counsel might I give* (1558). *aufūgerim potius quam redeam, sī eō mihi redeundum sciam*, T. *Hec.* 424, *I'd run away sooner than go back, if I should hear I had to* (1558). *nec satis sciō, nec sī sciam, dicere ausim*, L. *praef.* 1, *in the first place I do not know very well, and secondly if I should know, I should not venture to say* (1555). *iniūssū tuō extrā ordinem numquam pūgnāverim, nōn sī certam victōriam videam*, L. 7, 10, 2, *without orders from you I never should fight out of ranks, no, not if I saw victory was certain* (1558). *tum vērō nēquiquam hāc dextrā capitōlium servāverim, si civem commilitōnemque meum in vincula dūcī videam*, L. 6, 14, 4, *upon my word, in that case I should prove to have saved the capitol in vain, if I saw a townsman and brother-in-arms of mine haled to jail*. *multōs circā ūnam rem ambitūs fēcerim, sī quae variant auctōrēs omnia exequī velim*, L. 27, 27, 12, *I should make a long story about one subject, if I should undertake to go through all the different versions of the authorities*.

### 2078. (c.) Apodosis in the Present Indicative.

*quī sī decem habeās linguās, mūtum esse addecet*, Pl. *B.* 128, *if you should have a dozen tongues, 'tis fit you should be dumb* (2074). *sī prō peccātis centum dūcat uxōrēs, parumst*, Pl. *Tri.* 1186, *if he should wed a hundred wives in payment for his sins, 'tis not enough*. *intrāre, sī possim, castra hostium volō*, L. 2, 12, 5, *I propose to enter the camp of the enemy, if I be able*. *tē neque dēbent adiuvāre, sī possint, neque possunt, sī velint*, V. 4, 20, *they ought not to help you, if they could, and cannot, if they would*. *sī vōcem rerum nātūra repente mittat, quid respondēmus?* Lucr. 3, 931, *if Nature of a sudden lift her voice, what answer shall we make?* *sī quaerātur, idemne sit pertinācia et perseverantia, dēfīnitiōnibus iūdicandum est*, T. 87, *if it be asked whether obstinacy and perseverance are the same, it must be settled by definitions* (2074).

### 2079. (d.) Apodosis in the Future.

*quadrīgās sī incendās Iovis atque hinc fugiās, ita vix poteris effugere infōrtūnium*, Pl. *Am.* 450, *Jove's four-in-hand if you should mount, and try to flee from here, even so you'll scarce escape a dreadful doom*. *siquidem summum Iovem tē dicās dētīnuisse, malam rem effugiēs numquam*, Pl. *As.* 414, *e'en shouldst thou say imperial Jove detained thee, chastisement thou'lt ne'er avoid*. *sī frāctus inlābātur orbis, inpavidum ferient ruinae*, H. 3, 3, 7, *should heaven's vault crumbling fall, him all undaunted will its ruin strike*. *neque tū hōc dicere audēbis, nec sī cupiās, licēbit*, V. 2, 167, *you will not dare to say this, sir, nor if you wish, will you be allowed*.

### 2080. (e.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

*nōn tantum, sī proeliō vincās, glōriae adiēceris, quantum adēmeris, sī quid adversī eveniat*, L. 30, 30, 21, *you will not acquire as much glory, if you succeed in battle, as you will lose, if any reverse occur*.



2081. (f.) Apodosis in the Periphrastic Future.

nōn latūrus sum, sī iubeās māxumē, Pl. B. 1004, *I don't intend to be the bearer, should you urge me e'er so much.* quid, sī hostēs ad urbem veniant, factūrī estis? L. 3, 52, 7, *suppose the enemy march on the town, what do you intend to do?*

2082. (g.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

compellārem ego illum, nī metuam nē dēsinat memorāre mōrēs mulierum, Pl. Aul. 523, *I would address him, suppose I fear not he'd cease to tell of women's ways* (1560). nē sī nāvigāre quidem velim, ita gubernārem, ut somniāverim; praesēns enim poena sit, Div. 2, 122, *again, suppose I undertake to go sailing, I should not lay my course as I may have dreamed; for the penalty would be swift* (1560). sī hodiē bella sint, quāle Etrūscum fuit, quāle Gallicum; possētisne ferre Sextium cōsulem esse? L. 6, 40, 17, *suppose there be wars to-day like the Etruscan and the Gallic wars; could you bear to see Sextius consul* (1565)?

2083. (h.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

carmina nī sint, ex umerō Pelopis nōn nituisset ebur, Tib. 1, 4, 63, *suppose there be no verse; from Pelops' shoulder ne'er had ivory gleamed* (1561).

(2.) PROTASIS IN THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

2084. (a.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

dēbeam, crēdō, istī quicquam furciferō, sī id fēcerim, T. Eu. 861, *I should be, forsooth, responsible to the rogue, if I should do it* (1556). sī dē caelō villa tācta siet, dē eā rē verba utī fiant, Cato, RR. 14, 3, *if the villa be struck by lightning, let there be utterances about the case* (1547). sī ā corōnā relictus sim, nōn queam dicere, Br. 192, *if I should ever be abandoned by my audience, I should not be able to speak.* id sī acciderit, sīmus armātī, TD. 1, 78, *if this have happened, let us be on our guard* (1548). cūr ego similem mē, sī quid in hīs studiis operae posuerim, perdidisse? Par. 33, *why should I have the affectation to say that if I have spent any time in these pursuits, I have thrown it away* (1563)? See also 2090.

2085. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect Subjunctive.

sī paululum modo quid tē fūgerīt, ego perierim, T. Hau. 316, *should you have missed the smallest point, a dead man I should be.* See also 2090.

2086. (c.) Apodosis in the Future Indicative.

sī fōrte liber fieri occēperim, mittam nūntium ad tē, Pl. MG. 1362, *if haply I should be by way of getting free, I'll send you word.* sī fōrte morbus amplior factus siet, servom intrō iisse dicent Sōstratae, T. Hec. 330, *if her illness should get worse, they'll say a slave of Sostrata's went in there.*



## 2087-2090.] Sentences : The Subordinate Sentence.

### 2087. (d.) Apodosis in the Periphrastic Future.

sī Vēis incendium ortum sit, Fīdēnās inde quaesītūrī sumus? L. 5, 54, 1, *if a fire break out at Vei, are we going to move from there to Fidenae?*

### 2088. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

sīquis hōc gnātō tuō tuos servos faxit, quālem habērēs grātiam? Pl. Cap. 711, *suppose a slave of yours has done this for a son of yours, how grateful should you be?*

## CONVERSION TO PAST TIME.

2089. An indeterminate subjunctive protasis is rarely thrown into the past, the present and perfect becoming respectively imperfect and pluperfect. In this case the form is the same as that of a protasis of action non-occurrent (2091), and the conversion occurs only when it is evident from the context that past action is supposed, which may or may not have occurred: as,

cūr igitur et Camillus dolēret, sī haec post trecentōs et quīnquāgintā ferē annōs ēventūra putāret, et ego doleam, sī ad decem milia annōrum gentem aliquam urbe nostrā potītūram putem? TD. 1, 90, *why then would Camillus have fretted, if he thought this would occur after a lapse of some three hundred and fifty years, and why should I fret, if I think that some nation may seize Rome some ten thousand years hence?* erat sōla illa nāvis cōstrāta; quae sī in praedōnum pūgnā versārētur, urbis instar habēre inter illōs pīraticōs myoparōnēs vidērētur, V. 5, 89, *this was the only vessel with a deck; and supposing she figured in the engagement with the corsairs, she would have loomed up like a town, surrounded by those pirate cock-boats.* Sardus habēbat ille Tīgellius hōc; Caesar sī peteret nōn quicquam prōficeret, H. S. 1, 3, 4, *Tigellius the Sardinian had this way; supposing Caesar asked him, naught had he availed.*

## PERIODS OF EXEMPLIFICATION.

2090. The present subjunctive is particularly common in exemplification. The perfect is sometimes used in the protasis, rarely in the apodosis: as,

sī pater fāna expilet, indicetne id magistrātibus filius? Off. 3, 90, *if a father should plunder temples, would the son report it to the magistrates?* sī quis pater familiās supplicium nōn sūmpserit, utrum is clēmēns an crūdēlissimus esse videātur? C. 4, 12, *assume for the sake of argument that a householder have not inflicted punishment, would he seem merciful, or a monster of cruelty?* sī scieris aspidem occultē latēre uspiam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam adsidere, improbē fēceris, nisi monueris nē adsidat, Fin. 2, 59, *suppose a man should know, e.g. that there was a snake hiding somewhere, and that somebody was going to sit down on the snake unawares; he would do wrong, if he did not tell him he must not sit down there.* In such periods the future is also used, but less frequently: see 2054.

## II. PROTASES OF ACTION NON-OCCURRENT.

**2091.** A conditional period in which the non-occurrence of the action is implied takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive both in the protasis and in the apodosis. The imperfect usually denotes present or indefinite time, and the pluperfect denotes past time.

**2092.** The imperfect sometimes denotes past time. When future time is referred to, the protasis is usually in the imperfect of the periphrastic future, commonly the subjunctive, but sometimes the indicative (2108).

**2093.** The apodosis is very rarely in the present subjunctive (2096). The periphrastic future is sometimes used, commonly in the indicative (2097, 2100).

### (I.) PROTASIS IN THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### 2094. (a.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

(a.) Protasis and apodosis both denoting present action; this is the usual application: *sī intus esset, ēvocārem*, Pl. Ps. 640, *I should call him out, if he were in.* *is iam pridem est mortuus. sī viveret, verba eius audirētis*, RC. 42, *that person has long been dead; if he were alive, you would hear his evidence.* *adnuere tē videō; prōferrem librōs, sī negārēs*, DN. I, 113, *I see you nod assent; I should bring out the books, if you maintained the opposite.* *sī L. Mummius aliquem istōrum vidēret Corinthium cupidissimē trāctantem, utrum illum cīvem excellentem, an ātriēnsē diligētem putāret?* Par. 38, *if Mummius should see one of your connoisseurs nursing a piece of Corinthian, and going into perfect ecstasies over it, what would he think? that the man was a model citizen or a thoroughly competent indoor-man?* *quod sī semper optima tenēre possēmus, haud sānē cōnsiliō multum egērēmus*, OP. 89, *now if we could always be in possession of what is best, we should not ever stand in any special need of reasoning.*

(b.) Protasis and apodosis both denoting past action: *haec sī neque ego neque tū fēcimus, nōn siit egestās facere nōs; nam sī esset unde id fieret, facerēmus; et tū illum tuom, sī essēs homō, sinerēs nunc facere*, T. Ad. 103, *if neither you nor I have acted thus, 'twas poverty that stinted us; for if we'd had the means, we should have done so too; and you would let that boy of yours, if you were human, do it now.* Here *esset* refers to past time, *essēs* to present. *num igitur eum, sī tum essēs, temerārium cīvem putārēs?* Ph. 8, 14, *would you therefore have thought him, if you had lived then, a hotheaded citizen?* *sī ūniversa prōvincia loquī posset, hāc vōce ūterētur; quoniam id nōn poterat, hārum rērum āctōrem ipsa dēlēgit*, Caecil. 19, *if the collective province could have spoken, she would have used these words; but since she could not, she chose a manager for the case herself.*



2095. (b.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

invēnissēmus iam diū, sei vīveret, Pl. *Men.* 241, *were he alive, we should have found him long ago.* sī mihi secundae rēs dē amōre meō essent, iam dūdum sciō vēnissent, T. *Hau.* 230, *if everything were well about my love, I know they would have been here long ago.* quae nisi essent in senibus, nōn summum cōsilium māiōrēs nostri appellāssent senātum, CM. 19, *unless the elderly were in general characterized by these qualities, our ancestors would not have called the highest deliberative body the body of elders.*

2096. (c.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.\*

vocem ego tē ad mē ad cēnam, frāter tuos nisi dīxisset mihi tē apud sē cēnātūrum esse hodiē, Pl. *St.* 510, *I should like to invite you home to dinner, if my brother had n't told me that you were to dine with him to-day.*

2097. (d.) Periphrastic Apodosis.

quibus, sī Rōmae esset, facile contentus futūrus erat, Att. 12, 32, 2, *with which, if he were in Rome, he would readily be satisfied* (2093). quōs ego, sī tribūnī mē triumphāre prohibērent, testēs citātūrus fui rērum ā mē gestārum, L. 38, 47, 4, *the very men whom I was to call to bear witness to my deeds, if the tribunes had refused me a triumph.*

(2.) PROTASIS IN THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

2098. (a.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

(a.) Protasis denoting past, apodosis present action: sī ante voluissēs, essēs; nunc sērō cupis, Pl. *Tri.* 568, *if you had wished it before, you might be; as it is, you long too late.* sī nōn mēcum aetātem ēgisset, hodiē stulta vīveret, Pl. *MG.* 1320, *if she had n't spent her life with me, she'd be a fool to-day.* sī tum illī respondēre voluissem, nunc rēi pūblīcae cōsulere nōn possem, Ph. 3, 33, *if I had chosen to answer the man then, I should not be able to promote the public interest now.* quō quidem tempore sī meum cōsilium valuisset, tū hodiē egērēs, nōs liberī essēmus, Ph. 2, 37, *if by the way at that time my counsel had been regarded, you, sir, would be a beggar to-day and we should be free.*

(b.) Protasis and apodosis both referring to past: ōlim sī advēnissem, magis tū tum istūc dīcerēs, Pl. *Cap.* 871, *if I had come before, you'd have said so then all the more.* num igitur, sī ad centēsimum annum vīxisset, senectūtis eum suae paenitēret? CM. 19, *suppose therefore he had lived to be a hundred, would he have regretted his years?* Indōs aliāsque sī adiūnxisset gentēs, impedimentum māius quam auxilium traheret, L. 9, 19, 5, *if he had added the Indians and other nations, he would have found them a hindrance rather than a help in his train.*

\* This section should follow 2099, since the protasis is in the pluperfect. The error is mine. M. H. M.



2099. (b.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

*sī appellāssēs, respondisset nōminī, Pl. Tri. 927, if you had called him, he'd have answered to his name. nisi fūgissem, medium praemorsisset, Pl. in Gell. 6, 9, 7, if I had n't run away, he'd have bitten me in two. sī vēnissēs ad exercitum, ā tribūnīs vīsus essēs; nōn es autem ab hīs vīsus; nōn es igitur ad exercitum profectus, Inv. 1, 87, if you had come to the army, you would have been seen by the tribunes; but you have not been seen by them; therefore you have not been to the army. sī beātus umquam fuisset, beātam vitā ūsque ad rogum pertulisset, Fin. 3, 76, if he had ever been a child of fortune, he would have continued the life of bliss to the funeral pyre. nisi milītēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent, 7, 88, 6, unless the soldiers had been utterly exhausted, the entire force of the enemy might have been exterminated (2101). quod sī Catilīna in urbe remānsisset, dīmīcandum nōbīs cum illō fuisset, C. 3, 17, but if Catiline had staid in town, we should have had to fight with the villain (2101).*

2100. (c.) Periphrastic Apodosis.

(a.) *sī tacuisset, ego eram dictūrus, Pl. Cist. 152, if she had held her peace, I was going to tell (2093). sī P. Sēstius occīsus esset, fuistisne ad arma itūrī? Sest. 81, if Sestius had been slain, were you disposed to rush to arms? conclāve illud, ubī erat mānsūrus, sī ire perrēxisset. conruit, Div. 1, 26, the suite of rooms where he was going to spend the night, if he had pushed on, tumbled down. Teucrās fuerat mersūra carīnās, nī prius in scopulum trānsfōrmāta foret, O. 14, 72, she had gone on to sink the Trojan barks unless she had been changed into a rock. (b.) quem sī vīcisset, habitūrus esset impūnitātem sempiternam, Mil. 84, and if he overcame him, he would be likely to have exemption from punishment forever and ever (2093). aut nōn fātō interiīt exercitus, aut sī fātō, etiā sī obtemperāssset auspiciīs, idem ēventūrum fuisset, Div. 2, 21, the destruction of his army was either not due to fate, or if to fate, it would have happened all the same, even if he had conformed to the auspices.*

INDICATIVE APODOSIS.

2101. (1.) The apodosis of verbs of ability, duty, &c. (1495-1497), including the gerundive with **sum**, usually takes the indicative, the imperfect taking the place of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect that of the pluperfect subjunctive. But the subjunctive is also found (2099).

2102. (a.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Indicative.

(a.) Of present action: *quod sī Rōmae Cn. Pompēius prīvātus esset, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat mittendus, IP. 50, now if Pompey were at Rome, in private station, still he would be the man to send to this important war. quem patris locō, sī ūlla in tē pietās esset, colere dēbēbās, Ph. 2, 99, whom you ought to honour as a father, if you had any such thing as affection in you.*

(b.) Of past action: *quid enim poterat Hēius respondēre, sī esset improbus?* *V. 4, 16, for what answer could Hejus have given, if he were an unprincipled man?* *sī sordidam vestem habuissent, lūgentium Persei cāsum praebere speciem poterant,* *L. 45, 20, 5, if they had worn dark clothing, they might have presented the mien of mourners for the fall of Perseus.*

2103. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect Indicative.

*nōn potuit reperire, sī ipsī sōlī quaerendās darēs, lepidiōrēs duās,* *Pl. MG. 803, if you assigned the search to Sol himself, he could n't have found two jollier girls.* *quō modo pultāre potuī sī nōn tangerem?* *Pl. Most. 462, how could I have knocked, if I had n't touched the door?* *licitumst, sī vellēs,* *Pl. Tri. 566, you might have been, if you'd wished.* *sī meum imperium exsequi voluissēs, interemptam oportuit,* *T. Hau. 634, if you had been willing to follow my commands, she should have been dispatched.* *cōsul esse quī potuī, nisi eum vītae cursum tenuissem ā pueritiā?* *RP. 1, 10, how could I have been consul unless from boyhood I had taken that line in life?* *sī eum captivitās in urbem pertrāxisset, Caesarem ipsum audire potuit,* *Ta. D. 17, if captivity had carried him to the city, he could have heard Caesar himself.* *Antōnī gladiōs potuit contemnere, sī sic omnia dixisset,* *J. 10, 123, Antonius' swords he might have scorned, if all things he had worded so.* *sī ūnum diem morātī essētis, moriendum omnibus fuit,* *L. 2, 38, 5, if you had staid one day, you must all have died.*

2104. (2.) Other verbs also sometimes have a past indicative apodosis, usually an imperfect or pluperfect, to denote an action very near to actual performance, which is interrupted by the action of the protasis.

Naturally such a protasis generally contains an actual or a virtual negative; but positive protases are found here and there, chiefly in late writers.

2105. (a.) Apodosis in the Perfect Indicative.

*paene in foveam dēcidī, nī hīc adessēs,* *Pl. Per. 594, I had almost fallen into a snare, unless you were here.* *nec vēnī, nisi fāta locum sēdemque dedissent,* *V. 11, 112, nor had I come, unless the fates a place and seat had given.* *pōns sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset* *Horātius Cocles,* *L. 2, 10, 2, the pile-bridge all but gave a path to the enemy, had it not been for one heroic soul, Horatius Cocles.*

2106. (b.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Indicative.

*quīn lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem,* *Leg. 1, 52, why, I was going to drift on still further, if I had not checked myself.* *sī per L. Metellum licitum esset, mātērēs illōrum veniēbant,* *V. 5, 129, if Metellus had not prevented, the mothers of those people were just coming;* here the protasis may be held to contain a virtual negative; so in the last example on this page. *castra excindere parābant, nī Mūciānus sextam legiōnem opposuisset,* *Ta. H. 3, 46, they were preparing to destroy the camp, had not Mucianus checked them with the sixth legion.* *sī dēstināta prōvēnissent, rēgnō imminēbat,* *Ta. H. 4, 18, had his schemes succeeded, he was close upon the throne.*



2107. (c.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Indicative.

quīgentōs simul, nī hebes machaera foret, ūnō ictū occiderās, Pl. MG. 52, *five hundred, had your glaive not blunted been, at one fell swoop you'd slain.* praeclārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium, Fam. 12, 10, 3, *we had gained a splendid victory, if Lepidus had not taken Antony under his protection.* quod ipsum fōrtūna ēripuerat, nisi ūnius amīcī opēs subvēnissent, RabP. 48, *even this boon fortune had wrenched from him, unless he had been assisted by a single friend.* sī gladium nōn strinxissem, tamen triumphum merueram, L. 38, 49, 12, *if I had not drawn my sword, I had still earned my triumph.* perierat imperium, sī Fabius tantum ausus esset quantum ira suādēbat, Sen. de Ira, 1, 11, 5, *the empire had been lost, if Fabius had ventured as far as passion urged.*

2108. (3.) PERIPHRASTIC PROTASIS.

(a.) ac sī tibi nēmō respōnsūrus esset, tamen causam dēmōstrāre nōn possēs, Caecil. 43, *and even supposing that nobody were going to answer you, still you would not be able to make the case good* (2092). plūribus vōs, militēs, hortārer, sī cum armātis dīmīcātiō futūra esset, L. 24, 38, 9, *I should exhort you at greater length, my men, if there was to be a tug with armed men* (2092). (b.) sī domum tuam expūgnātūrus eram, nōn temperāssem vīnō in ūnum diem? L. 40, 14, 4, *if I intended to capture your house, should I not have abstained from wine for a day* (2092)?

VARIATION OF THE PROTASIS.

2109. Instead of a conditional protasis with sī or nisi, equivalents are often used.

2110. Thus, the protasis may be coordinated (1701), or be introduced by a relative pronoun (1812), by quod (1843), cum (1859, 1860), ubī (1932), ut or nē (1963), dum, dum modo, modo (2003), or quandō (2011). Or the protasis may be intimated by sine, *without*, cum, *with*, by a participle or ablative absolute, by a wish, or otherwise: as,

(a.) nēmō umquam sine māgnā spē immortālītātis sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem, TD. 1, 32, *nobody would ever expose himself to death for his country without a well-grounded conviction of immortality.* cum hāc dōte poteris vel mendicō nūbere, Pl. Per. 396, *with such a dowry you can e'en a beggar wed.* Sūlla, crēdō, hunc petentem repudiāset, Arch. 25, *Sulla, I suppose, would have turned my client away, if he petitioned him.* quae legentem fefellissent, trānsferentem fugere nōn possunt, Plin. Ep. 7, 9, 2, *what would have escaped a reader can't escape a translator.* vivere ego Britannicō potiente rērum poteram? Ta. 13, 21, *as for me, could I live, if Britannicus were on the throne* (2102)? nisi tē salvō salvī esse nōn possumus, Marc. 32, *without you safe, safe we cannot be.* aspicerēs utinam, Sātūrnīa: mītiōr essēs, O. 2, 435, *wouldst thou couldst see, Saturnia: thou wouldst gentler be.*



(b.) habet orationem talem consul, qualem numquam Catilina victor habuisset, *Sest.* 28, *he makes a speech — yes, and he a consul — such as a Catiline would never have made, if flushed with success.* *revereāris occursum, nōn reformidēs*, *Plin. Ep.* 1, 10, 7, *you might well be abashed in his presence, but you would not be afraid.* *dī immortalēs mentem illī perditō ac furiōsō dedērunt ut huic faceret insidiās; aliter perire pestis illa nōn potuit*, *Mil.* 88, *the immortal gods inspired that mad miscreant to waylay my client; otherwise, that monster could not have been destroyed.* For the use of *absque* in a coordinate protasis in Plautus and Terence, see 1701, 1421.

2111. The verb of the protasis is sometimes omitted: as in abridged sentences (1057), or when it may be easily supplied (1036).

*aut enim nēmō, aut sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit*, *L.* 9, *for either nobody or, if anybody, that was a wise man.* *sī ēveniet, gaudēbimus: sīn secus, patiēmur*, *Pl. Cas.* 377, *if it shall come to pass, glad shall we be; if else, we shall endure.* *mē voluisse, sī haec civitās est, civem esse mē; sī nōn, exsullem esse*, *Fam.* 7, 3, 5, *that I wished, if this is a commonwealth, to be a citizen of it; if it is not, to be an exile.* *sūmeret alicunde . . . sī nūllō aliō pactō, faenore*, *T. Ph.* 299, *he could have got it from somebody or other . . . if in no other way, on usury* (2113).

#### VARIATION OF THE APODOSIS.

2112. The apodosis is sometimes represented by the accusative of exclamation (1149), or the vocative: as,

*mortālem graphicum, sī servat fidem*, *Pl. Ps.* 519, *O what a pattern creature, if he keeps his word.* *ō miserum tē, sī intellegis, miserīōrem, sī nōn intellegis, hōc litterīs mandārī*, *Ph.* 2, 54, *wretched man if you are aware, more wretched if you are not aware, that all this is put down in black and white.* *inimīce lāmnae, Crispe Sallustī, nisi temperātō splendeat ūsū*, *H.* 2, 2, 2, *thou foe to bullion, Crispus Sallustius, so it shine not with tempered use.*

2113. The verb of the apodosis, or the entire apodosis, is often omitted. In the latter case an appended verb might easily be mistaken for the apodosis.

*quid sī caelum ruat?* *T. Hau.* 719, *what if the sky should fall?* *quō mihi fōrtūnam, sī nōn concēditur ūtī?* *H. E.* 1, 5, 12, *why wealth for me, if wealth I may not use?* *nisi restituissent statuās, vehementer minātur*, *V.* 2, 162, *he threatens vengeance dire, if they did not put the statues back in their place.* *quae supplicatiō sī cum cēterīs cōferātur, hōc interest*, *C.* 3, 15, *if this thanksgiving be compared with all others, there would be found the following difference.* *nōn edepol ubi terrārum sim sciō, sī quis roget*, *Pl. Am.* 336, *upon my word I don't know where on earth I am, if anyone should ask.* *sī Valeriō quī crēdat, quadrāgintā milia hostium sunt caesa*, *L.* 33, 10, 8, *if anybody believe such a man as Valerius, there were forty thousand of the enemy slain.* A clause with *sī* or *nisi* is often used parenthetically: as, *sī placet, sī vidētur, sis, sultis*, *if you please, sī quaeris*, *if you must know, in fact, sī dīs placet, please heaven, nisi mē fallit*, *if I am not mistaken, &c., &c.* For wishes introduced by *ō sī*, without an apodosis, see 1546.

2114. The apodosis is sometimes expanded by inserted expressions. So particularly by *vereor nē*, equivalent to *fōrtasse* (1958), *nōn dubitō quīn*, to *profectō* (1986), or a form of *sum* with a relative pronoun: as,

*quae cōnētur sī velim commemorāre, vereor nē quis exīstimet mē causam nōbilitātis voluisse laedere*, *RA.* 135, *if I should undertake to set forth his high and mighty schemes, possibly it might be thought that I wished to damage the cause of the conservatives.* *sī tum P. Sēstius animam ēdidisset, nōn dubitō quīn aliquandō statua huic statuerētur*, *Sest.* 83, *if Sestius had given up the ghost then, a statue would doubtless at some day have been set up in his honour.* *quod ille sī repudiāset, dubitātis quīn ēī vīs esset adlāta?* *Sest.* 62, *if he had rejected this, have you any doubt that violent hands would have been laid on him?* *sēscenta sunt quae memorem, sī sit ōtium*, *Pl. Aul.* 320, *there are a thousand things that I could tell, if I had time.*

2115. For expressions of trial, hope, or expectation, followed by a conditional protasis with *sī*, see 1777.

#### CONCESSIVE PROTASES.

*etsī, tametsī (tamenetsī), etiamsī.*

2116. *etsī, tametsī, though, etiamsī, even if*, or sometimes simple *sī, if*, is used to introduce a concessive protasis. The verb of the protasis is either indicative or subjunctive; but the indicative is the prevailing construction, especially with *etsī*. The apodosis often has *tamen* as an adversative correlative, even with *tametsī*.

*etsī* is rare in poetry; not in Sallust. Sometimes it is used like *quamquam* to append a fresh main sentence (2153). *tametsī* belongs chiefly to colloquial style, though Sallust often uses it; not in the Augustan poets or Tacitus.

(a.) *nōn vīdī eam, etsī vīdī*, *Pl. MG.* 407, *I saw her not, although I saw her.* *quō mē habeam pactō, tametsī nōn quaeris, docēbō*, *Lucilius* in *Gell.* 18. 8, 2, *I'll tell you how I am, though you do not inquire.* *etiamsī multī mēcum contendēt. tamen omnīs superābō*, *Fam.* 5, 8, 4, *though I shall have many rivals, yet I will outdo them all.* *tametsī causa postulat, tamen praeteribō*, *Quinct.* 13, *though the case calls for it, still I will let it pass.* *Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit*, 4, 20, 1, *though the winter always sets in early in these parts, nevertheless Caesar made haste to proceed to Britain.* *Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dicerentur, Indutiomarum ad sē venīre iūssit*, 5, 4, 1, *though Caesar was aware of his motives in saying so, he directed Indutiomarus to come to him.*

(b.) *etsī taceās, palam id quidem est*, *Pl. Aul.* 418, *though you should hold your tongue, still that at least is plain.* *etsī nihil aliud Sūllae nisi cōsulātum abstulissētis, tamen eō contentōs vōs esse oportēbat*, *Sull.* 90, *even though you had robbed Sulla of nothing but the consulship, still you ought to be satisfied with that.* *equidem, etiamsī oppetenda mors esset, in patriā māllem quam in externīs locīs*, *Fam.* 4, 7, 4, *for my part, even though death wēre to be faced, I should prefer it in my native land rather than abroad.*



### CONDITIONAL COMPARISONS.

**quasi (quam sī), tamquam sī, ut or velut sī.**

**2117.** *sī* following a word meaning *than* or *as* is used with the subjunctive in conditional comparisons.

In this use, *quasi* (*quam sī* twice in Tacitus) and *tamquam sī* are found at all periods. *ut sī* is found in Terence once, in Cicero (not in the orations), once in Livy, sometimes in later writers. *velut sī* begins with Caesar; not in Cicero.

**2118.** *sī* is often omitted after *tamquam*, and (from Livy on) sometimes after *velut*. After *quasi* it is sometimes inserted in Plautus, Lucretius, and late Latin. *ceu* is sometimes used, chiefly in poetry, for *tamquam sī*. The main clause often has as correlative *ita*, *sic*, *perinde*, *proinde*, *similiter*, or *nōn secus*.

**2119.** The tense of the subjunctive is usually regulated by the sequence of tenses: as,

*quid mē sic salūtās quasi dūdum nōn videris?* Pl. *Am.* 682, *why dost thou greet me thus as if but now thou hadst not looked on me?* *quid ego his testibus ūtor, quasi rēs dubia sit?* Caecil. 14, *why do I employ these witnesses, as if it were a case involving doubt?* *tamquam sī claudus sim, cum fūstist ambulandum,* Pl. *As.* 427, *I have to take my walks with a stick, as if I were a lame man.* *tamquam extrūderētur, ita cucurrit,* Ph. 10, 10, *he rushed away as if he had been kicked out.* *quod absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent,* 1, 32, 4, *because they trembled at Ariovistus's barbarity, absent as he was, just as if he stood before their eyes.* *mē quoque iuvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculī fuerim, ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse,* L. 31, 1, 1, *I feel glad myself at having finally reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had had a direct hand in the work and the danger.*

**2120.** The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used, even when the leading verb is in a primary tense, to mark action more distinctly as non-occurrent (2091): as,

*ēius negōtium sic velim suscipiās, ut sī esset rēs mea,* Fam. 2, 14, *I wish you would undertake his business, just as if it were my own affair.* *mē audiās, precor, tamquam sī mihī quirītanti intervēnissēs,* L. 40, 9, 7, *listen to me, I pray you, as if you had come at a cry from me for help.* *iūs iūrandum perinde aestimandum quam sī Iovem fefellisset,* Ta. 1, 73, *as for the oath, it must be counted exactly as if he had broken one sworn on the name of Jupiter.*

**2121.** *quasi*, *tamquam*, *ut*, or *velut*, as *if*, is sometimes used with participle constructions, nouns, and abridged expressions: as,

*quasi temere dē rē publicā locūtus in carcerem coniectus est,* DN. 2, 6, *on the ground that he had been speaking without good authority about a state matter, he was clapped in jail.* *restitēre Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce iūssī,* L. 1, 12, 7, *the Romans halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven.* *laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, ad castra pergunt,* 3, 18, 8, *in high spirits, as if victory were assured, they proceeded to the camp.*



2122. In old Latin, *quasi* is found a few times for the original *quam si* after a comparative: as, *mē nēmō magis respiciet, quasi abhinc ducentōs annōs fuerim mortuos*, Pl. *Tru.* 340, *nobody will pay any more attention to me than if I had been dead two centuries*. It is also used (but not in classical Latin) in periods of actual comparison, like *tamquam* (1908), with the indicative: as, *spūmat quasi in aequore salsō fervescunt undae*, Lucret. 3, 493, *he foams just as the waters boil in the salt sea*. For its use in figurative comparisons, see 1908, 1944. For *tamquam* introducing a reason, see 1909.

## CONNECTION OF SEPARATE SENTENCES OR PERIODS.

2123. Separate sentences or periods have a connective more commonly in Latin than in English. Sometimes, however, like the members of single periods, they are for special reasons put *asyndetically* (1637).

### (A.) WITHOUT A CONNECTIVE.

2124. Asyndeton is common with two or more separate sentences or periods:

2125. (a.) To represent a series of actions as occurring at the same moment: as,

*hic diffusus suae salutis ex tabernaculo prodit; videt imminere hostes; capit arma atque in portam consistit; consequuntur hunc centuriones; relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus*, 6, 38, 2, *despairing of his life, he comes out of the tent; sees the enemy close at hand; seizes arms and takes his stand at the gate; the centurions rally round him; Sextius becomes unconscious, receiving severe wounds*.

2126. (b.) When an occurrence is represented as consisting of many successive actions: the *Enumerative Asyndeton*: as,

*peroravit aliquando, adsedit. surrexi ego. respirare visus est, quod non alius potius diceret. coepi dicere. usque eo animadverti, iudices, eum alias res agere, antequam Chrysogonum nominavi; quem simul atque attigi, statim homo se erexit, mirari visus est. intellexi quid eum pupugisset*, *RA.* 60, *after a while he wound up, took his seat; up rose your humble servant. He seemed to take courage from the fact it was nobody else. I began to speak. I noticed, gentlemen, that he was inattentive all along till I named Chrysogonus; but the moment I touched on him, the creature perked up at once, seemed to be surprised. I knew what the rub was*.

2127. (c.) When the last sentence sums up the result of the preceding with emphasis: the *Asyndeton of Summary*: as,

hī dē suā salūte dēspērāntēs, aut suam mortem miserābantur, aut parentēs suōs commendābant. plēna erant omnia timōris et lūctūs, *Caes. C. 2, 41, 8, despairing of their lives, they either bewailed their own death, or strove to interest people in their parents. In short, it was one scene of terror and lamentation.*

## (B.) WITH A CONNECTIVE.

2128. Separate sentences or periods may be connected: (1.) by pronominal words: (a.) demonstrative or determinative; (b.) relative; (2.) by conjunctions and adverbs.

### (I.) PRONOMINAL WORDS.

#### (a.) DEMONSTRATIVE AND DETERMINATIVE WORDS AS CONNECTIVES.

2129. *hic* and *is* serve as connectives at the beginning of a new period. In English the equivalent word is usually placed not at the beginning as a connective, but after some words.

Gallia est dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Celtae. hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt, 1, 1, 1, *Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which is occupied by Belgians, another by Aquitanians, and the third by Kelts. In language, customs, and laws these are all different from each other.* apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. is M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, 1, 2, 1, *among the Helvetians the man of highest rank was Orgetorix. In the consulship of Messala and Piso he got up a conspiracy among the nobles.* angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrābantur. hīs rēbus adductī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre. ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. is sibi lēgātiōnem suscepit, 1, 2, 5, *they thought they had a narrow territory; so they resolved in consequence to make such preparations as were necessary for a move. They considered two years ample to do this. Orgetorix is chosen to do this. He took upon himself the office of envoy.*

2130. Particularly common are demonstrative words at the beginning of a new period, to show that the first action necessarily took place or was natural.

Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat; ūsque eō imperiō carere nōn poterat, *TD. 3, 27, after his expulsion from Syracuse, the tyrant Dionysius kept school at Corinth; so incapable was he of getting along without governing.*

## Copulative and Disjunctive. [2131-2135.]

### (b.) RELATIVES AS CONNECTIVES.

2131. **quī** serves to connect a new period when it may be translated by a demonstrative, or when it is equivalent to **et is, is autem, is enim, is igitur**: as,

perpetrāret Anicētus prōmissa. **quī** nihil cunctātus poscit summam sceleris, Ta. 14, 7, *Anicetus must carry out his agreement. Without any ado he asks to have the entire management of the crime.* For other examples, see 1835.

2132. The neuter accusative **quod**, *as to that, as to which, whereas, now, so*, is used to connect a new period, especially before **sī, nisi, etsī, utinam** (1837): as,

**quod sī tū valērēs, iam mihī quaedam explōrāta essent**, Att. 7, 2, 6, *whereas if you were well yourself, some points would have been clear to me before this.* **quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte civitātis cōflīgat**, 7, 32, 5, *now if the dispute be kept up any longer, one half of the community would quarrel with the other.* **quod nisi milītēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent**, 7, 88, 6, *so if the soldiers had not been utterly spent, all the forces of the enemy might have been exterminated.*

### (2.) CONJUNCTIONS AND ADVERBS.

2133. The conjunctions and adverbs used to coordinate sentences are: (a.) copulative and disjunctive; (b.) concessive and adversative; (c.) causal and illative.

#### (a.) COPULATIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE.

**et, neque or nec, -que, atque or ac, aut.**

**et.**

2134. **et**, *and*, simply adds, as in English (1645). But it is often used in such a connection that a modification of the translation is required to bring out the sense.

2135. **et** may continue the discourse with a concessive sentence, which is to be followed by an adversative. In such cases **quidem** often stands in the concessive sentence: as,

primōrēs civitātis eadem ōrant. **et cēterī quidem movēbant minus**; postquam Sp. Lucrētius agere coepit, cōsul abdicāvit sē cōsulātū, L. 2, 2, 8, *the head men of the state make the same request. Now the others did not influence him much. But when Lucretius began to take steps the consul resigned his consulship.*



## 2136-2142.] Sentences : Connection of Sentences.

**2136. et**, and strange to say, and if you'd believe it, introduces something unexpected: as,

iamque trēs laureātae in urbe statuae, et adhūc raptābat Āfricam Tacfarinās, Ta. 4, 23, *there were already three triumphal statues in Rome, and, strange to say, Tacfarinas was still harrying Africa.*

**2137. et**, and really, and in fact, and to be sure; in this sense it is usually followed immediately by the verb: as,

multa quae nōn volt videt. et multa fōrtasse quae volt! CM. 25, *one sees much that one would not. Aye, and much perhaps that one would!*

**2138. et** introducing a sentence explaining in detail a general idea before given may be translated *namely*: as,

cōsulēs religiō tenēbat, quod prōdigiis aliquot nūntiātis, nōn facile litābant. et ex Campāniā nūntiāta erant Capuae sepulchra aliquot dē caelō tācta, L. 27, 23, 1, *the consuls were detained by scruple, because several prodigies were reported, and they could not readily obtain good omens; namely from Campania it was reported that at Capua several tombs were struck by lightning.*

**2139. et**, and also, and besides: as,

Pūnicæ quoque victōriæ sīgnum octō ductī elephantī. et nōn minimum fuēre spectāculum praecedentēs Sōsis et Moericus, L. 26, 21, 9, *as an emblem of the Punic victory also, elephants to the number of eight marched in parade. And furthermore not the least attractive part of the pageant were Sosis and Moericus, moving at the head of the line.*

**2140. et**, and yet, introduces a contrast or opposition: as,

canōrum illud in vōce splendēscit etiam in senectūte, quod equidem adhūc nōn āmisī; et vidētis annōs, CM. 28, *the musical element in the voice actually improves in old age, and this I have not yet lost. And yet you see my years.*

### neque or nec.

**2141. nec**, and really . . . not, and in fact . . . not: as,

māgnō cum periculō suō, quī fōrte patrum in forō erant, in eam turbam incidērunt. nec temperātum manibus foret, nī properē cōsulēs intervēnissent, L. 2, 23, 9, *it was with great personal risk to such of the fathers as happened to be in the market place, that they got into the crowd. And in fact acts of violence would have occurred, unless the consuls had made haste to interfere.*

**2142. nec**, and to be sure . . . not: as,

centum vīgintī lictōrēs cum fascibus secūrēs inligātās praeferēbant. nec attinuisse dēmī secūrem, cum sine prōvocātiōne creati essent, interpretābantur, L. 3, 36, 4, *a hundred and twenty lictors with rods displayed axes bound in them. And to be sure they explained the matter thus, that there would have been no propriety in having the axe taken out, since the officers were appointed without any appeal.*

## Concessive and Adversative. [2143-2150.]

2143. *nec, not . . . either, nor either, neither : as,*

*eō annō vīs morbi levāta. neque ā pēnūriā frūmentī perīculum fuit, L. 4, 25, 6, that year the violence of the plague grew less. Nor was there any danger from lack of grain either.*

2144. *nec, but . . . not : as,*

*missī tamen fētiālēs. nec eōrum verba sunt audīta, L. 4, 30, 14, however the fetials were sent. But they were not listened to.*

-que.

2145. -que, *and likewise : as,*

*huic duōs flāminēs adiēcit. virginēsque Vestae lēgit, L. 1, 20, 2, to this god he assigned two special priests. And he likewise chose maids for Vesta.*

2146. -que, *and in fact, and so, and in general : as,*

*tum quoque male pūgnātum est. obsessaque urbs foret, nī Horātius esset revocātus, L. 2, 51, 2, then also there was an unsuccessful engagement. And in fact Rome would have been besieged, unless Horatius had been recalled.*

atque or ac.

2147. *atque, and besides, and more than that, and actually : as,*

*ex quō efficitur animantem esse mundum. atque ex hōc quoque intellegī poterit in eō inesse intellegentiam, quod certē est mundus melior quam ūlla nātūra, DN. 2, 32, from which it follows that the universe is alive. And more than that, we can see that it has sense from the following circumstance, that the universe is certainly superior to any element of the universe.*

2148. *atque, and so, and consequently : as,*

*impedior religiōne quōminus expōnam quam multa P. Sēstius sēnsērit. atque nihil dīcō praeter ūnum, Sest. 8, I am prevented by scruples from setting forth how much Sestius was aware of. And so I will only say one thing.*

aut.

2149. *aut* is used to add a new sentence in the sense of *aliōquī, or else, otherwise, or as if nisi, unless, preceded : as,*

*omnia bene sunt ēī dīcenda, aut ēloquentiae nōmen relinquendum est, DO. 2, 5, he must be able to speak well on all subjects, or else he must waive the name of an eloquent man.*

### (b.) CONCESSIVE AND ADVERSATIVE.

2150. A new concessive period is introduced by *sānē, quidem, omnīnō, to be sure, or fōrtasse, perhaps : as,*



Plinius et Cluvius nihil dubitātum dē fidē praefecti referunt. sānē Fabius inclināt ad laudēs Senecae, Ta. 13, 20, *Pliny and Cluvius say that there was no doubt about the loyalty of the prefect. Fabius, it must be admitted, is always inclined to eulogize Seneca.* id fōrtasse nōn perfēcimus; cōnātī quidem saepissimē sumus, O. 210, *perhaps we have not attained to it; still we have very often made the attempt.*

**2151.** A new adversative sentence is introduced by **autem**, *again*, **sed**, *but*, **vērū**, *but*, **vērō**, *but, indeed*, **at**, *but*, or **tamen**, *nevertheless*, **nihilō minus**, *nevertheless*.

These words when used to connect sentences have the same meaning as when used to connect the parts of a sentence (1676).

**2152.** **atquī**, rarely **atquīn**, and *yet, but*, is used chiefly in dialogue. It introduces a strong objection, sometimes in the form of a conditional protasis. From Cicero on, it is sometimes found after a question, to introduce an earnest denial.

**nōn sum apud mē : : atquī opus est nunc quom māxumē ut sis**, T. Ph. 204, *I'm all abroad : : but that's just exactly where you must n't be now.* **nōn vereor condiscipulōrum nē quis exaudiat : : atquī cavendum est**, Leg. 1, 21, *I'm not afraid of being overheard by any of my fellow-students : : and yet you must be on your guard.* **sine veniat. atquī sī illam digitō attigerit ūnō, oculi ilicō ecfodientur**, T. En. 739, *let him come on. But if he lays a finger on the maid, we'll scratch his eyes out on the spot.* **quid vērō? modum statuārum habērī nūllum placet? atquī habeātur necesse est**, V. 2, 144, *what? is there, think you, to be no end to your statues? Yet there must be.*

**2153.** **quamquam**, **etsī**, **tametsī**, *though*, and **nisi**, *but*, are sometimes used to coordinate a new period, correcting the preceding: as,

**carēre sentientis est, nec sēnsus in mortuō, nē carēre quidem igitur in mortuō est. quamquam quid opus est in hōc philosophārī?** TD. 1, 88, *foregoing requires a sentient being, and there is no sensation in a dead man; therefore there is no foregoing either in a dead man. And yet what is the use of philosophizing over this?* **utram mālīs vidē; etsī cōnsilium quod cēpī rēctum esse sciō**, T. Hau. 326, *of these two states choose which you will; though I am sure my plan's the right one.* **cūr ego nōn adsum? tametsī hōc minimē tibi deest**, Fam. 2, 7, 2, *why am I not with you? though this is the very last thing you need.* **spērābam dēfervisse adulēscēntiam: ecce autem dē integrō! nisi quidquid est, volō hominem convenīre**, T. Ad. 152, *I hoped his youthful passion had cooled down; yet here it is afresh! But be it what it may, I want to see the fellow.*

### (c.) CAUSAL AND ILLATIVE.

**2154.** **nam**, *enim*, *for*, or **namque**, *et enim*, *for you see*, introduces a new period which gives the reason of the foregoing: as,

**quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cōgnōscī potuit: nam minus hōris tribus mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt**, 5, 42, 4, *and from this by the way their numbers could be gauged; for they made a breastwork in less than three hours.* **quem meminisse potestis: annō enim ūndēvicēsimo post eius mortem hī cōsulēs factī sunt**, CM. 14, *you can remember him: for the present consuls were created only nineteen years after his death.*



**2155.** The originally asseverative meaning of **nam** appears, even in the classical period, in colloquial language: as, *tibī ā mē nūlla ortast iniūria :: nam hercle etiam hōc restat*, T. *Ad.* 189, *I've ne'er done you a wanton wrong :: aye verily that's still to come.* In old Latin, it sometimes introduces a question: as, *nam quae haec anus est?* T. *Ph.* 732, *why, who's this old woman?* Frequently it introduces an explanation or illustration, and, from Cicero on, a remark or question made in passing: as, *sic enim sēsē rēs habet: nam Odyssīa Latīna est sic tamquam opus Daedalī*, Br. 71, *the case stands thus: the Odyssey in Latin is, you may say, a regular work of Daedalus* (1908). *vivō Catōne multī ōrātōrēs flōruērunt: nam A. Albīnus*, Br. 81, *many orators flourished in Cato's lifetime: for example, Albinus.* *nam quid dē aedile loquar?* Sest. 95, *for why speak of the aedile?* **enim** does not differ essentially in use from **nam**; for its meaning in old Latin, see 1688. **namque** is rare until Livy, and usually (always in old Latin) stands before a vowel. **etenim** is common only in classical Latin.

**2156.** For **quippe**, *why*, often used as a coordinating word, see 1690.

**2157.** **proinde** or **proin**, *therefore, so*, introduces a command or direction based upon the foregoing: as,

*ōrātiōnem spērat invēnisse sē, quī differat tē: proin tū fac apud tē ut siēs*, T. *Andr.* 407, *he trusts he's found some phrase wherewith he may confound you: so see you have your wits about you.* *frūstrā meae vītae subvenire cōnāminī. proinde abīte, dum est facultās*, 7, 50, 6, *in vain ye try to save my life. So away, while ye have the power.* *iam undique silvae et sōlitūdō māgna cōgitātiōnis incitāmenta sunt. proinde cum vēnābere, licēbit pugillārēs ferās*, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 6, 2, *then again the surrounding woods and the loneliness are powerful stimulants to meditation. So when you go hunting, you can take a note book with you.*

**2158.** A conclusion is denoted by **ergō**, **itaque** or **igitur**, *therefore, so*, introducing a new period: as,

*nihil est praestantius deō; ab eō igitur mundum necesse est regi. nūllī igitur est nātūrae subiectus deus. omnem ergō regit ipse nātūram*, DN. 2, 77, *nothing is more excellent than god. Therefore the universe must be governed by him. Therefore god is in no respect subject to nature. Consequently he rules all nature himself.* For the position of these words in their clauses, see 1688; for **ergō igitur** and **itaque ergō**, 1689. For **hinc**, **inde**, **eō**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **propterea**, as coordinating words, see 1691.

#### AFFIRMATIVE COORDINATION.

**2159.** A new sentence affirmative of a foregoing is often introduced by an emphatic **sic** or **ita**.

These words often introduce a general truth which is deduced from the first statement.

*vīsne igitur tē inspiciāmus ā puerō? sic opīnor; ā principiō ōrdiāmur*, Ph. 2, 44, *would you like to have us look into your record from boyhood? Yes, I think it would be well; let us begin at the beginning.* *quī diligēbant hunc, illī favēbant. sic est volgus: ex vērītate pauca, ex opīniōne multa aestimat*, RC. 29, *everybody who loved him, smiled on the other man. Yes, that is always the way of the world: it seldom judges by truth, often by hearsay.*

## NOUNS OF THE VERB.

### THE INFINITIVE.

**2160.** The infinitive is in its origin a verbal substantive.

**2161.** The present infinitive active is an ancient dative, closely resembling in meaning and use the English infinitive with *to*. It originally marked action merely in a general way, without indication of voice or tense. In virtue of this original timeless character, the present often represents action which is really past or future; in such cases the time must be inferred from the context.

**2162.** The present infinitive active gradually approached the character of a verb, and the original substantive nature being forgotten, it was supplemented by a passive, and by forms for completed and for future action, active and passive.

**2163.** The infinitive has furthermore two other properties of the verb: (*a.*) it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; and (*b.*) it is followed by the construction of its verb.

---

## OLD AND POETICAL USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

### THE INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE.

**2164.** The infinitive denotes purpose: (*a.*) when loosely added to a substantive in old Latin, (*b.*) with verbs of motion, *eō*, *veniō*, *currō*, *mittō*, in old or poetical Latin, and (*c.*) in the combination *dō bibere*, *give to drink*, in old, colloquial, or poetical Latin: as,

(*a.*) *occāsio benefacta cumulāre*, Pl. *Cap.* 423, *a chance to pile up kindnesses*. Parallel with a gerund: *summa elūdendī occāsio*st mihi nunc senēs et Phaedriae cūram adimere argentāriam, T. *Ph.* 885, *I've now a splendid chance the greybeards of eluding and Phaedria to rescue from his money cares*. (*b.*) *recurre petere rē recentī*, Pl. *Tri.* 1015, *run back to get it ere it is too late*. *voltisne eāmus visere?* T. *Ph.* 102, *do you think we'd better go to call?* *parasitum mīsi nudiusquārtus Cāriam petere argentum*, Pl. *Cur.* 206, *my parasite I sent four days ago to Caria, to fetch the cash*. *nec dulcēs occurrent ōscula nātī praeripere*, Lucr. 3, 895, *nor shall thy children dear come running kiss on kiss to snatch*. *nōn nōs ferrō Libycōs populāre penātis vēnimus*, V. 1, 527, *we are not come with steel to harry Libya's hearths*. (*c.*) *bibere dā ūsque plēnis cantharis*, Pl. *Per.* 821, *keep giving on to drink with brimming bowls*. *bibere* is thus used by Plautus, Terence, Cato, and Livy, and by Cicero once with *ministrō*. In classical prose, purpose is expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or a relative pronoun, or by a gerund or gerundive with *ad* or *causā*.

**2165.** In poetry, the infinitive of purpose is used with synonymes of *dō* also, and with verbs of leaving, taking away, taking up, &c.



huic lōricam dōnat habēre, V. 5, 259, *on him a corselet he bestows to wear*. trīstitiam et metūs trādam protervīs in mare Crēticum portāre ventīs, H. 1, 26, 1, *sadness and fears I'll to the wanton winds consign, to sweep into the Cretic sea*. quis sibi rēs gestās Augustī scribere sūmit? H. E. 1, 3, 7, *who takes it on himself Augustus' deeds to pen?* quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācrī tibiā sūmis celebrāre? H. 1, 12, 1, *what hero or what demigod dost thou take up, to ring his praises on the rebec or the piercing pipe?*

### THE INFINITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

2166. The infinitive is sometimes used with adjectives, chiefly by poets of the Augustan age, and late prose writers, often in imitation of a Greek idiom: as,

indoctum iuga ferre nostra, H. 2, 6, 2, *not taught our yoke to bear*. avidī committere pūgnam, O. 5, 75, *hot to engage in fight*. sōlī cantāre perītī Arcades, V. E. 10, 32, *Arcadians alone in minstrelsy are skilled*. vitulus niveus vidērī, H. 4, 2, 59, *a bullock snow-white to behold*, i. e. vīsū (2274). These infinitives are of different kinds, some of them resembling a complementary infinitive, others a gerund or gerundive construction, the supine in -tū (-sū), &c., &c.

### THE ORDINARY USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

2167. The infinitive is ordinarily used either as object or as subject of a verb.

#### (A.) THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.

##### THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

2168. The present infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of certain kinds of verbs which imply another action of the same subject: as,

prō Pompēiō ēmorī possum, Fam. 2, 15, 3, *I could die the death for Pompey* (1495). quid habēs dīcere? Balb. 33, *what have you to say?* scīre volēbat, V. 1, 131, *he wanted to know*. hōc facere dēbēs, RabP. 7, *you ought to do this*. Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat, 4, 17, 1, *Caesar had resolved to cross the Rhine*. fugā salūtem petere contendērunt, 3, 15, 2, *they tried to save themselves by flight*. num negāre audēs? C. 1, 8, *do you dare deny it?* vereor dīcere, T. Andr. 323, *I am afraid to tell*. num dubitās id facere? C. 1, 13, *do you hesitate to do that?* mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, 1, 7, 1, *he makes haste to leave Rome*. Dīviciācus Caesarem obsecrāre coepit, 1, 20, 1, *Diviciacus began to entreat Caesar*. Dolābella iniūriam facere persevērat, Quint. 31, *Dolabella persists in doing wrong*. illī pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt, 6, 2, 1, *these people did not stop offering money*. diem ēdictī obīre neglēxit, Ph. 3, 20, *he failed to keep the day named in the edict*. irāscī amīcīs nōn temere soleō, Ph. 8, 16, *I am not apt to get provoked with friends without just cause*. illī rēgibus pārere didicerant, Ph. 3, 9, *the men of old were trained to bow the knee to kings* (1615). dextram cohibēre mementō, J. 5, 71, *remember that you keep hands off*.



## 2169-2174.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

2169. The verbs or verbal expressions which are supplemented by an infinitive are chiefly such as mean *can, will or wish, ought, resolve, endeavour, dare, fear, hesitate, hasten, begin, continue, cease, neglect, am wont, learn, know how, remember, forget, seem*. The infinitive in this combination contains the leading idea. For the occasional use of the perfect infinitive with some of these verbs, see 2223.

Some of the commonest of these verbs are *possum, queō, nequeō; volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō, studeō; dēbeō; cōgitō, meditor, statuō. cōstituō, dēcernō, parō; cōnor, nītor, contendō; audeō; vereor; cunctor, dubitō, festinō, mātūrō, instituō, coepī, incipiō, pergō, persevērō, dēsino, dēsistō, omittō, supersedeō, neglegō, nōn cūrō; soleō, adsuēscō, cōsuēscō; discō, sciō, nesciō, recordor, meminī, oblivīscor; videor*.

2170. The infinitive is also used with many verbal expressions equivalent to the above verbs, such as *habeō in animō, cōsiliū est, certū est, parātus sum, &c., &c.*, or with *parātus* alone, *adsuēfactus, &c., &c.* Furthermore, in poetry and late prose, the place of many of the above verbs is often taken by livelier or fresher synonymes, such as *valeō* for *possum*, from Lucretius on, *ārdeō, burn*, for *volō, cupiō*, or *absiste, fuge, parce, &c.*, for *nōlī* (1584), &c., &c.

2171. A predicate noun used in the construction of the complementary infinitive, is put in the nominative: as,

*Aelius Stōicus esse voluit, Br. 206, Aelius wanted to be a Stoic. esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, S. C. 54, 6, he chose to be good rather than seem good.*

### THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

2172. A very common form of a dependent sentence is that known as the *Accusative with the Infinitive*.

Thus, of the two coordinate sentences *sciō: iocāris tū nunc, Pl. Most. 1081, I know: you are jesting now*, the second may be put in a dependent form, the two sentences blending into one: *sciō iocārī tē nunc, I know you to be jesting now*.

2173. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative.

Thus, in *eum vident, they see him*, *eum* is the object of *vident* (1134). If *sedēre* is added, *eum vident sedēre, V. 5, 107, they see him sit, or they see that he is sitting*, *eum* is at the same time the object of *vident* and the subject of *sedēre*. But the accusative by degrees becoming detached from the main verb, and closely interlocked with the infinitive, the combination is extended to cases where the main verb is intransitive or passive.

2174. A predicate noun referring to a subject accusative is itself put in the accusative: as,

*tē esse arbitror puerum probum, Pl. Most. 949, I think you are a good boy. nēminem vīvum capī patiuntur, 8, 35, 5, they do not allow anybody to be made prisoner alive* (2198).

VERBS OF PERCEIVING, KNOWING, THINKING, AND SAYING.

**2175.** The accusative with the infinitive is used with active verbs or verbal expressions of perceiving, knowing, thinking, and saying: as,

*patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs?* C. 1, 1, *you don't feel that your plots are all out?* *huic filium scīs esse?* T. Hau. 181, *you are aware that this man has a son?* *Pompēiōs cōnsēdisse terrae mōtū audīvimus*, Sen. NQ. 6, 1, 1, *we have heard that Pompei has been swallowed up by an earthquake*, 63 A. D., 17 years before its utter destruction. *saepe audīvī inter ōs atque offam multa intervenīre posse*, Cato in Gell. 13, 18 (17), 1, *I have often heard 'twixt cup and lip there's many a slip.'* *dīcit mōntem ab hostibus tenērī*, 1, 22, 2, *he says the hill is held by the enemy.* *dīxtin dūdum illam dīxisse, sē expectāre filium?* T. Hec. 451, *did n't you say a while ago the woman said that she was looking for her son?*

Some of the commonest of these verbs are: (a.) *audiō*, *animadvertō*, *sentiō*, *videō*. (b.) *accipiō*, *intellegō*, *sciō*, *nesciō*. (c.) *arbitror*, *cēnseō*, *cōgitō*, *crēdō*, *existimō*, *meminī*, *opinor*, *putō*, *recordor*, *suspīcor*. (d.) *adfirmō*, *aiō*, *dēmōnstrō*, *dīcō*, *disputō*, *doceō*, *fateor*, *nārrō*, *negō*, *nūntiō*, *ostendō*, *prōmittō*, *scribō*, *significō*, *spērō*, *trādō*. (e.) *rūmor est*, *nōn mē fugit*, *certus sum*, *nōn nescius sum*, &c., &c. Also occasionally verbs used in the sense of *think* or *say*, as *mittō*, *send word*, and substantives or pronouns expressing a thought or judgement.

**2176.** The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes introduced by a neuter pronoun, or by *sic* or *ita*: as, *illud negābis, tē dē rē iūdicātā iūdicāvisse?* V. 2, 81, *will you deny this, that you sate in judgement on a matter that was already decided?* *sic accēpimus, nūllum bellum fuisse*, V. 5, 5, *we have been told this, that there was not any war.* Sometimes by an ablative with *dē*: as, *dē hōc Verri dīcitur, habēre eum perbona toreumata*, V. 4, 38, *about this man report is made to Verres that he had some choice bits of embossed work.*

**2177.** (1.) Passive verbs of this class are commonly used personally in the third person of the present system, with the subject, and the predicate noun, if used, in the nominative: as,

*hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur*, 4, 1, 4, *these people are said to have a hundred cantons.* *nūlla iam existimantur esse iūdicia*, V. a. pr. 43, *there are thought to be no courts of law any longer.* *pōns prope effectus nūntiābātur*, Caes. C. 1, 62, 3, *the bridge was reported to be well-nigh done.*

**2178.** Such personal passives are much more common in the writers of Cicero's day than in old Latin. Particularly so *arguō*, *audiō*, *cōgnōscō*, *comperiō*, *concēdō*, *dēfendō*, *dēmōnstrō*, *dīcō*, *doceō*, *excūsō*, *existimō*, *inveniō*, *iūdicō*, *liberō*, *memorō*, *negō*, *nūntiō*, *ostendō*, *postulō*, *putō*, *reperiō*, *trādō*.

**2179.** (2.) With the first or second person the personal construction is rare: as, *quod nōs bene ēmissee iūdicātī sumus*, Att. 1, 13, 6, *that we are thought to have made a good bargain.* *cum inveniāre improbissimā ratiōne esse praedātus*, V. 4, 3, *when you prove to have been robbing most abominably.* But with *videor*, *seem*, the personal construction is the rule in all three persons, and in the perfect system as well as the present.



## 2180-2186.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

2180. (3.) In the perfect system, and also usually in the gerundive construction (2246), verbs of this class are commonly impersonal: as,

*trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse*, *TD.* 5, 114, *the tradition is that Homer was blind.* *ubī tyrannus est, ibī dīcendum est nūllam esse rem pūblicam*, *RP.* 3, 43, *wherever there is an absolute ruler, there we must maintain there is no commonwealth.*

2181. (4.) With some verbs of this class, the impersonal construction is preferred even in the present system. Thus, commonly *intellegitur*, *it is understood*, as impersonal; regularly in classical Latin *crēditur*; with a dative in Cicero and Caesar *dīcitur*, *nūntiātur*. The impersonals *cernitur*, *fertur*, *memorātur*, *prōditur*, *vidētur*, are rare.

2182. The personal construction is sometimes extended to other verbs or verbal expressions, especially in poetry: as, *colligor*, *O. A.* 2, 6, 61, *I am inferred*, for *colligitur*. *nōnnūllis magistrātūs veniēbant in suspiciōnem nōs dē-morātī esse*, *Lentulus in Fam.* 12, 15, 5, *the magistrates were suspected by some of having delayed us* (1491).

2183. With verbs of thinking and saying the subject accusative is sometimes omitted.

(a.) Oftenest thus *mē nōs*, *tē vōs*, or *sē*: as, *stultē fēcisse fateor*, i. e. *mē*, *Pl. B.* 1013, *I own I've acted like a fool.* *cōnfītēre vēnisse*, i. e. *tē*, *RA.* 61, *confess you came.* *quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt*, i. e. *sē*, 2, 32, 3, *they said they would do as ordered* (2221). Often the future without *esse*: as, *refrāctūrōs carcerem minābantur*, i. e. *sē*, *L.* 6, 17, 6, *they threatened to break the jail open.* (b.) Less frequently an accusative of *is*: as, *oblītum crēdidī*, i. e. *eum*, *Fam.* 9, 2, 1, *I imagined he had forgotten.* Such omissions are common in old Latin, Cicero, Caesar, Livy, and in poetry.

2184. When the accusative is not expressed, a predicate noun is sometimes put in the nominative, chiefly in poetry, in imitation of a Greek idiom: as,

*phasēlus ille quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus*, *Cat.* 4, 1, *the clipper you see yonder, friends, says she was once the fleetest of the fleet.* *uxor invictī Iovis esse nescīs*, *H.* 3, 27, 73, *thou knowest not thou art the bride of the unconquerable Jove.* Similarly with verbs of emotion (2187): as, *gaudent esse rogātae*, *O. AA.* 1, 345, *they are glad to have been asked.* *gaudent perfūsī sanguine frātrum*, *V. G.* 2, 510, *they're glad to have been imbued with brothers' blood.*

### VERBS OF ACCUSING.

2185. The verbs of accusing, *arguō* and *īnsimulō*, take the accusative with the infinitive like verbs of saying: as,

*cīvīs Rōmānōs necātōs esse arguō*, *V.* 5, 149, *my accusation is that Romans have been slain.* *occīdisse patrem Sex. Rōsciū arguitur*, *RA.* 37, *Roscius is charged with the murder of his father.* *īnsimulāre coepērunt Epicratē litterās pūblicās corrūpisse*, *V.* 2, 60, *they began to accuse Epicrates of having falsified records of state.*

### VERBS OF HOPING, PROMISING, AND THREATENING.

2186. The accusative with the infinitive is used with verbs of hoping, promising, and threatening: as,



id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, 7, 26, 2, *they hoped to carry it out.* pol-  
licentur sēsē ēī dēditūrōs, 5, 20, 2, *they volunteer to surrender to him.* But  
sometimes the present infinitive alone: see 2236.

### VERBS OF EMOTION.

2187. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used with  
verbs of joy, grief, surprise, or wonder: as,

venīre tū mē gaudēs, Pl. B. 184, *thou art glad I'm come.* doluī pācem  
repudiārī, Marc. 14, *I felt sorry peace was rejected.* These verbs often have  
the construction with quod, or in old Latin with quia (1851).

2188. Some of the commonest of these verbs are doleō, gaudeō, laetor,  
mīror, &c., &c.; and from Cicero on, angor, indignor, lūgeō, sollicitō.

### VERBS OF DESIRE.

2189. (1.) The accusative with the infinitive is commonly used  
with volō (mālō, nōlō), and cupiō, when the subject of the infinitive  
is not the same as that of the verb: as,

Catilinam perīre voluī, Ph. 8, 15, *I wished Catiline to die.* māluit ho-  
minēs peccāre quam deōs, V. 2, 22, *he wanted men to sin rather than gods.*  
tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus, Br. 331, *we wish you to reap the benefit of your  
high character.*

2190. (2.) Even when the subjects denote the same person, the accusa-  
tive is sometimes used with the infinitive: as,

ēmori mē mālim, Pl. As. 810, *morī mē mālim*, T. Eu. 66, *I'd rather  
die.* magnificē volō mē virōs summōs accipere, Pl. Ps. 167, *I'm going  
to entertain some highborn gentlemen in style.* Oftenest when the infinitive  
is esse, vidērī, putārī, or dīcī: as, cupiō mē esse clēmentem, cupiō mē  
nōn dissolutum vidērī, C. 1, 4, *I wish to play the man of mercy, and yet I  
do not wish to seem over lax.* Rarely thus with dēsiderō, nōlō, optō, and  
studeō, and in Sallust with properō.

2191. For the perfect active with these verbs, see 2228; for the perfect passive,  
2229.

2192. volō, mālō, and cupiō are often coordinated with the subjunctive of  
desire (1707). volō and mālō often have the subjunctive with ut, particularly in  
old Latin (1950).

2193. Verbs of resolving sometimes take the accusative with the infinitive: as,  
certum offirmāre est viam mē, T. Hec. 454, *I am resolved to hold the way.*  
So, from Cicero on, sometimes cēseō, dēcernō, and sentiō, in the exceptional  
sense of volō or iubeō, *think it best*: as, velle et cēseere eōs ab armīs dis-  
cēdere, S. I. 21, 4, *that they wished and thought it best for those people to give up  
fighting.*

2194. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used with verbs of demand-  
ing: as, hau postulō equidem mēd in lectō accumbere, Pl. St. 488, *I  
can't expect, not I, to sprawl upon a couch.* hīc postulat sē absolvi? V. 3, 138,  
*does this man ask to be acquitted?* Similarly with orō and praecipio in late  
writers.

2195. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes found with *suādeō* and *persuādeō* in Terence, Lucretius, and Vergil, and with *precor* in Ovid and late prose.

### VERBS OF ACCOMPLISHING.

2196. Verbs of accomplishing rarely have the accusative with the infinitive: as, *tālīs ōrātōrēs vidērī facit, quālīs ipsī sē vidērī volunt*, *Br.* 142, of delivery, *it makes orators appear just as they wish to appear themselves*. Oftenest in poetry. In prose usually the subjunctive with *ut* (1951).

### VERBS OF TEACHING AND TRAINING.

2197. The verbs of teaching and training, *doceō* and *adsuēfaciō*, may take an accusative of a substantive and an infinitive expressing the thing taught: as,

*quīn etiam tondēre filiās suās docuit*, *TD.* 5, 58, *why more than that, he actually taught his own daughters to shave*, of Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse. *equōs eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt*, 4, 2, 3, *they have their horses trained to stand stock-still* (1608). Compare 1169.

### VERBS OF BIDDING AND FORBIDDING AND OF ALLOWING.

2198. The accusative with the infinitive is used with *iubeō* and *vetō*, *sinō* and *patior*: as,

*mīlitēs ex oppidō exīre iūssit*, 2, 33, 1, *he ordered the soldiers to go out of the town*. *pōntem iubet rescindī*, 1, 7, 2, *he orders the bridge torn up*. *lēx peregrīnum vetat in mūrū ascendere*, *DO.* 2, 100, *it is against the law for a foreigner to get up on the wall*. *castra vāllō mūnīrī vetuit*, *Caes.* *C.* 1, 41, 4, *he gave orders that the camp should not be fortified with a palisade*. *vīnum ad sē inportārī nōn sinunt*, 4, 2, 6, *wine they will not allow to be brought into their country*. Cicero is the first to use *vetō* thus. Other constructions also occur with these words: see 1708, 1950, 1953, &c.

2199. The person ordered or forbidden is often omitted, when stress is laid on the action merely, or when the person is obvious from the context: as, *castra mūnīre iubet*, i. e. *mīlitēs*, 2, 5, 6, *he gives orders to construct a camp*. *iūs-sērunt prōnūntiāre*, i. e. *tribūnōs et centuriōnēs*, 5, 33, 3, *they gave orders to proclaim*. *īdemque iūssērunt simulācrum Iovis facere māius*, i. e. *cōsulēs*, *C.* 3, 20, *and they furthermore gave directions to make a statue of Jupiter, a bigger one*.

2200. *iubeō* is sometimes coordinated with the subjunctive, especially in old Latin (1708). Sometimes it has the subjunctive with *ut*, especially in resolves of the people.

2201. In the passive, *iubeō*, *vetō*, and *sinō* are used personally, the accusative of the person ordered or forbidden becoming nominative: as, *iubentur scribere exercitum*, *L.* 3, 30, 3, *they are ordered to raise an army*. *Nōlānī mūrōs adīre vetitī*, *L.* 23, 16, 9, *the men of Nola were not allowed to go to the walls*. *hīc accūsāre eum nōn est situs*, *Sest.* 95, *this man was not allowed to accuse him*.



2202. *imperō* often has the accusative with a passive or deponent infinitive, or with *fierī*: as, *praesentem pecūniam solvī imperāvī*, *Att.* 2, 4, 1, *I have given orders for ready money to be paid.* Rarely with an active infinitive parallel with a passive: as, *eō partem nāvium convenīre commeātumque comportārī imperat*, *Caes. C.* 3, 42, 2, *he orders part of the vessels to rendezvous there, and grain to be brought.* In the passive, a personal *imperor* occurs, like *iubeor* (2201): as, *in lautumiās dēdūcī imperantur*, *V.* 5, 68, *orders are given for them to be taken to the quarries.* See also 1950. *permittō* has sometimes the accusative with the infinitive from Tacitus on, usually the subjunctive with *ut* (1950).

2203. The verbs of hindering, *prohibeō* and *impediō*, sometimes have the accusative with the infinitive: as, *barbarī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant*, 4, 24, 1, *the savages undertook to prevent our people from disembarking.* The infinitive used with *prohibeō* is usually passive or deponent. *quid est igitur quod mē impediat ea quae probābilis mihi videantur sequi?* *Off.* 2, 8, *what is there then to hinder me from following what seems to me to be probable?* See also 1960 and 1977.

## THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE ACCUSATIVE.

2204. The accusative with the infinitive, or the infinitive alone, regarded as a neuter substantive, may be used as the object of a verb, or in apposition with the object: as,

(a.) *leporem gustāre fās nōn putant*, 5, 12, 6, *tasting hare they count a sin.* *errāre malum dūcimus*, *Off.* 1, 18, *going astray we hold a bad thing.* (b.) *ad id quod instituisti, orātorum genera distinguere aetātibus, istam diligentiam esse accommodatam putō*, *Br.* 74, *I think your accurate scholarship is just the thing for your projected task — classifying public speakers chronologically.*

2205. The infinitive as a substantive is rarely preceded by the preposition *inter* in prose: as, *multum interest inter dare et accipere*, *Sen. Ben.* 5, 10, 2, *there is a vast difference between 'give' and 'take.'* In poetry also by *praeter*.

2206. In poetry, the infinitive is used as a substantive object with such verbs as *dō*, *reddō*, *adimō*, *perdō*: as, *hīc verērī perdidit*, *Pl. B.* 158, *this youth has lost his sense of shame.*

## (B.) THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

2207. The accusative with the infinitive, or the infinitive alone, present or perfect, may be used as the subject of a verb, in apposition with the subject, or as a predicate nominative: as,

(a.) *mendācem memorem esse oportēre*, *Quintil.* 4, 2, 91, *that a liar should have a good memory.* (b.) *sequitur illud, caedem senātum iudicāsse contrā rem publicam esse factam*, *Mil.* 12, *next comes this point, that the senate adjudged the homicide an offence against the state.* (c.) *exitus fuit orationis, sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse*, 4, 8, 1, *the end of the speech was that he could not have any friendship with these people.*



## 2208-2214.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

**2208.** The infinitive is used as the subject (*a.*) with impersonal verbs, (*b.*) with *est*, *putātur*, *habētur*, &c., and an abstract substantive, a genitive, or a neuter adjective in the predicate.

**2209.** (*a.*) Some of the commonest impersonal verbs are *appāret*, *decet*, *expedit*, *licet*, *lubet*, *oportet*, *praestat*, *pudet*, *rēfert*. Also in classical Latin, *attinet*, *condūcit*, *cōstat*, *dēdecet*, *exsistit*, *fallit*, *interest*, *iuvat*, *liquet*, *obest*, *paenitet*, *patet*, *pertinet*, *placet*, *displicet*, *prōdest*, which are used as live verbs by Lucretius and Sallust also. Similarly in Plautus and Terence *fōrtasse*.

**2210.** The infinitive is occasionally used as a subject with verbs other than the above (2209): as, *nōn cadit invidēre in sapientem*, *TD.* 3, 21, *envy does not square with our ideas of a sage*. *carēre hōc significat, egēre eō quod habēre velīs*, *TD.* 1, 88, *careō means not having what you would like to have*.

**2211.** (*b.*) Some of the commonest abstracts used thus with *est* are *fāma*, *fās* and *nefās*, *fidēs*, *iūs*, *laus*, *opus*, *mōs*, *tempus*. From Cicero on, *opiniō* and *prōverbium*. In Plautus, *audācia*, *cōfidentia*, *miseria*, *negōtium*, *sce-lus*, &c. For genitives, see 1237. Neuter adjectives are such as *aequum*, *iniquum*, *cōsentāneum*, *crēdibile*, *incrēdibile*, *manifestum*, *necesse*, *pār*, *rēctum*, &c., &c.

**2212.** The accusative is not expressed when it is indefinite, *you*, *a man*, *a person*, *anybody*, frequently also when it is implied in some other case in the sentence: as,

*nōn tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre*, *Br.* 140, *it is not so creditable to be a Latin scholar as it is disreputable not to be*. *mihī inter virtūtēs grammaticī habēbitur aliqua nescīre*, *Quintil.* 1, 8, 21, *in my eyes it will be one merit in a classical scholar not to be omniscient*. *temporī cēdere semper sapientis est habitum*, *Fam.* 4, 9, 2, *bowing to the inevitable has always passed as a mark of wisdom*. *peccāre licet nēminī*, *Par.* 20, *no man is at liberty to sin*. An indefinite *hominem*, *aliquem*, or *tē*, is rare: as, *illa laus est, liberōs hominem educāre*, *Pl. MG.* 703, *it is a crown of glory for a man a family to rear*.

**2213.** (1.) A predicate noun referring to the unexpressed indefinite subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative: as,

*nōn esse cupidum pecūnia est, nōn esse emācem vectīgal est, contentum vērō suis rēbus esse māximae sunt dīvitiae*, *Par.* 51, *for a man not to have desires, is money down, not to be eager to buy is an income; but to be satisfied with what you have is the greatest possible wealth*. A plural predicate is rare: as, *esset ēgregium domesticīs esse contentōs*, *O.* 22, *it would be a grand thing for people to be satisfied with home examples*.

**2214.** (2.) When the subject of the infinitive is implied in a dative, a predicate noun may also be in the dative: as,

*mihī negligentī esse nōn licet*, *Att.* 1, 17, 6, *it will not do for me to be careless*. With a dative and *licet*, however, the predicate is sometimes in the accusative: as, *quod sī civī Rōmānō licet esse Gādītānum*, *Balb.* 29, *now if a Roman is allowed to be a Gaditanian*. Regularly so, when the subject is indefinite and not expressed (2212): as, *haec praescripta servantem licet māgnificē vivere*, *Off.* 1, 92, *a man who holds to these rules may live a noble life*.

2215. The infinitive, used as a substantive in the nominative or accusative sometimes has a neuter attribute.

Chiefly thus ipsum, hōc ipsum, tōtum hōc : as, ipsum Latīnē loquī est in māgnā laude pōnendum, *Br.* 140, *just the mere ability of talking good Latin is to be accounted highly creditable.* Rarely a possessive, meum, tuum : as, ita tuom cōnfertō amāre nē tibi sit probrō, *Pl. Cur.* 28, *so shape thy wooing that it be to thee no shame.*

### THE INFINITIVE OF EXCLAMATION.

2216. The infinitive alone, or the accusative with the infinitive, is sometimes used in exclamations of surprise, incredulity, disapproval, or lamentation : as,

nōn pudēre, *T. Ph.* 233, *not be ashamed.* sedēre tōtōs diēs in villā, *Att.* 12, 44, 2, *sitting round whole days and days at the country place.* at tē Rōmae nōn fore, *Att.* 5, 20, 7, *only to think you won't be in Rome.* hōc posterīs memoriae trāditum irī, *L.* 3, 67, 1, *to think this will be passed down to generations yet unborn.* Often with a -ne, transferred from the unexpressed verb on which the infinitive depends (1503) : as, tēne hōc, Accī, dīcere, tālī prūdentiā praeditum, *Clu.* 84, *what? you to say this, Accius, with your sound sense.* The exclamatory infinitive is chiefly confined to Plautus, Terence, and Cicero.

### THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION.

2217. This infinitive has already been spoken of ; see 1535-1539.

### THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

2218. The present infinitive represents action as going on, the perfect as completed, and the future as not yet begun, at the time of the action of the verb to which the infinitive is attached.

The forms of the infinitive are commonly and conveniently called tenses, though this designation is not strictly applicable.

### THE PRESENT TENSE.

2219. In itself, the present infinitive denotes action merely as going on, without any reference to time. With some verbs, however, which look to the future, the present relates to action in the immediate future. With verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, and saying, it denotes action as going on at the time of the verb : as,



## 2220-2223.] Sentences : Nouns of the Verb.

(a.) *facinus est vincire civem Rōmānum*, *V.* 5, 170, *it is a crime to put a Roman in irons.* (b.) *audire cupiō*, *Caec.* 33, *I am eager to hear.* *Antium mē recipere cōgitō a. d. v Nōn. Māi.*, *Att.* 2, 9, 4, *I am meditating going back to Antium the third of May.* (c.) *errare eōs dicunt*, *5, 41, 5,* *they say those people are mistaken.* *tempus dixi esse*, *T. Hec.* 687, *I said it was time.* *dicēs tibi Siculōs esse amicōs?* *V.* 2, 155, *will you say the Sicilians are friends of yours?*

**2220.** The present infinitive is sometimes used with *meminī*, *recordor*, *memoriā teneō*, and with some analogous expressions, such as *accēpimus*, *fertur*, &c., to represent merely the occurrence of action really completed, without indicating its completion : as,

*meminī ad mē tē scribere*, *D.* 38, *I remember your writing to me.* *meministis fieri senātūs cōsultum*, *Mur.* 51, *you remember a decree of the senate being passed.* *sed ego idem recordor longē omnibus anteferre Dēmōsthenem*, *O.* 23, *and yet I remember putting Demosthenes far above everybody else.* *hanc accēpimus agrōs et nemora peragrāre*, *HR.* 24, *we have heard of this goddess's scouring fields and groves.* *Q. Māximum accēpimus facile cēlāre, tacēre*, *Off.* 1, 108, *we have heard of Fabius's ready cleverness in keeping dark and holding his tongue.* But the perfect is used when the action is to be distinctly marked as completed : as, *meministis mē ita distribuisse causam*, *RA.* 122, *you remember that I arranged the case thus.* Sometimes present and perfect are united : as, *Helenē capere arma fertur, nec frātrēs ērubuisse deōs*, *Prop.* 3, 14, 19 (4, 13, 19), *Helen is said to fly to arms, and not to have blushed in presence of her brother gods.* Here *capere* relates to the same completed action as the more exact *ērubuisse*.

**2221.** With verbs of saying, used in the narrower sense of promising, the present infinitive sometimes stands for the future (2236) : as,

*crās māne argentum mihī miles dare sē dixit*, *T. Ph.* 531, *the soldier spoke of paying me the money early in the morning.* *mē āibat accersere*, *Pl. Ps.* 1118, *he said he'd fetch me* (2186). *quae imperārentur facere dixerunt*, 2, 32, 3, *they agreed to do what was commanded.*

**2222.** The present infinitive dependent on a past tense of *dēbeō*, *oportet*, *possum*, often requires the English perfect infinitive in translation : as, *quid enim facere poterāmus?* *Pis.* 13, *for what else could we have done?* See, however, 1495. For the infinitive perfect, see 2230.

## THE PERFECT TENSE.

**2223.** (1.) The perfect active infinitive sometimes serves as a complement of *dēbeō*, *volō*, *possum*, &c. (2168) : as,

*tametsi statim viciisse dēbeō, tamen dē meō iūre dēcēdam*, *RA.* 73, *though I am entitled to come off victorious at once, yet I will waive my right ; compare vici, I am victorious*, 1608. *nīl vetitum fēcisse volet*, *J.* 14, 185, *nothing forbidden will he wish to have done ; compare feci, I am guilty.* *unde illa potuit didicisse?* *Div.* 2, 51, *from what source could he have all that information acquired?* *bellum quod possumus ante hiemem perfēcisse*, *L.* 37, 19, 5, *the war which we can have ended up before winter.*



2224. (2.) In prohibitions, the perfect active infinitive often serves as a complement of *nōlō* or *volō* (2168).

Thus, in old Latin, *nōlītō dēvellisse*, Pl. *Poen.* 872, *do not have had it plucked*. Particularly so when dependent on *nē velit* or *nē vellet*, in legal style: as, *nē quis convēnisse sacrōrum causā velit*, L. 39, 14, 8, *that nobody may presume to have banded with others for the observance of the mysteries*. BACAS · VIR · NEQVIS · ADIESE · VELET, CIL. I, 196, 7, inscription of 186 B. C., *that no male should presume to have had resort to the Bacchants* (765; 48). *nē quid ēmissee velit īnsciente dominō*, Cato, *RR.* 5, 4, *he must not venture to have bought anything without his master's knowledge*, of a head farm-steward.

2225. In poetry of the Augustan age, the complementary perfect infinitive active is sometimes dependent on a verb of will or effort, such as *cūrō*, *labōrō*, *tendō*: as, *tendentēs opācō Pēlion inposuisse Olympō*, H. 3, 4, 51, *on shadowy Olympus striving Pelion to have piled*.

2226. Any past tense of the indicative, when made dependent on a verb of perceiving, knowing, thinking, or saying, is represented by the perfect infinitive.

Thus, in Theophrastus scribit *Cīmōnem hospitālem fuisse*: *ita enim vīlicīs imperāvisse, ut omnia praeberentur*, Off. 2, 64, *Theophrastus says in his book that Cimon was the soul of hospitality: he had directed his stewards to furnish everything required*; the *fuisse* represents *erat* or *fuit*, and the *imperāvisse* may represent *imperābat*, *imperāvit*, or perhaps *imperāverat*, of direct discourse. *praecō dīxisse prōnūntiat*, V. 2, 75, *the crier proclaims 'speaking finished'* (1605).

2227. The perfect infinitive passive with *fuisse* denotes a past resulting state: as,

*dīcō Mithridātī cōpiās omnibus rēbus ōrnātās atque īnstrūctās fuisse, urbemque obsessam esse*, IP. 20, *I must tell you that Mithridates's troops were completely armed and equipped, and that the town was under siege*. Here *ōrnātās fuisse* represents *ōrnātae erant* (1615), and *obsessam esse* represents *obsidēbātur* (1595).

2228. (1.) The perfect active infinitive is sometimes used with *nōlō* or *volō*, especially in poetry, when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the verb (2189): as,

*hanc tē ad cēterās virtūtēs adiēcisse velim*, L. 30, 14, 6, *I only wish you had this good quality added to the rest*.

2229. (2.) *volō* often has an emphatic perfect passive infinitive, usually without *esse* (2230); less frequently *cupiō* and rarely *nōlō*: as,

*factum volō*, Pl. *B.* 495, *As.* 685, *I want it done*, i. e. *I will*. *illōs monitōs etiam atque etiam volō*, C. 2, 27, *I want those people cautioned over and over*. Particularly common in Cicero, not in Caesar or Sallust. Also with impersonal infinitives (1479): as, *oblīvīscere illum adversāriō tuō voluisse cōnsultum*, Att. 16, 16<sup>c</sup>, 10, *you must forget that the man wanted your enemy provided for*.

## 2230-2236.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

---

**2230.** The perfect infinitive passive or deponent, commonly without **esse**, is often used in Plautus, Terence, and Cicero, by assimilation with past tenses of verbs of propriety, such as **aequum est, convenit, decet, and oportet**: as, **nōn oportuit relictās**, T. *Hau.* 247, *they should n't have been left*. **tē Iovī precātam oportuit**, Pl. *Am.* 739, *you should have said your prayers to Jove*. The perfect active is less common: as, **cāvisse oportuit**, Pl. *Am.* 944, *you should have been upon your guard*. For **volō, cupiō, nōlō**, see 2229.

**2231.** The perfect infinitive of completed action is very common with such expressions as **satis est, satis habeo, iuvat, melius est, paenitet, &c.**, also with verbs of emotion, such as **gaudeō, &c.**: as, **mē quoque iuvat ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse**, L. 31, 1, 1, *I am delighted myself to have reached the end of the Punic war*. Oftentimes, however, in verse, the use of the perfect is often partly due to the metre.

### THE FUTURE TENSE.

**2232.** The future infinitive is only used as a representative of the indicative, and not as a substantive.

**2233.** For the future infinitive active or passive, a circumlocution with **fore** or **futūrum esse** with **ut** and the subjunctive present or imperfect is often used. This construction is necessary when the verb has no future participle or supine: as,

**spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs**, TD. 1, 82, *I hope we may be so fortunate*. **clāmābant fore ut ipsī sē dī ulciscerentur**, V. 4, 87, *they cried out that the gods would avenge themselves*.

**2234.** **fore** with the perfect participle of a passive or deponent, represents the future perfect of direct discourse: as, **dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur**, L. 23, 13, 6, *they thought the war would soon be over*.

**2235.** (1.) The future infinitive is commonly used with **iūrō, minor, polliceor, prōmittō, and spērō**, especially when the leading verb and the infinitive have the same subject: as,

**iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum**, Caes. C. 3, 87, 5, *he swore he would not come back to camp except as a victor*. **quod sē factūrōs minābantur**, Caes. C. 2, 13, 4, *which they threatened they would do*. **obsidēs datūrōs pollicitī sunt**, 4, 27, 1, *they volunteered to give hostages*.

**2236.** (2.) A looser present infinitive is sometimes used with the above verbs, especially in old Latin, generally without a subject accusative. Thus with **iūrō** by Cato and Plautus, and with **minor**, *proclaim with threats*, by Lucretius. Similarly **dare pollicentur**, 6, 9, 7, *they offer to give*. **rēliquōs dēterrērī spērāns**, Caes. C. 3, 8, 3, *hoping that the rest were scared*. **spērō nostram amicitiam nōn egēre testibus**, Fam. 2, 2, *I trust our friendship needs no witnesses*. As **possum** has no future infinitive, the present of this verb is necessarily used: as, **tōtīus Galliae sēsē potirī posse spērant**, 1, 3, 8, *they hope to be able to get the control of the whole of Gaul*.



## THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND.

2237. The gerundive is a verbal adjective (899). The gerund is a neuter verbal substantive, used only in the oblique cases of the singular. Both gerundives and gerunds express, in a noun form, the uncompleted action of the verb.

2238. Gerundives and gerunds, like the English verbal in *-ing*, were originally neither active nor passive (288), but might stand for either an active or a passive. In time a prevailing passive meaning grew up in the gerundive, and a prevailing active meaning in the gerund.

A gerund may be followed by the same case as its verb; but for the gerund of verbs of transitive use, see 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265.

2239. Both gerundives and gerunds are modified like verbs, by adverbs, not by adjectives.

### (1.) THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

2240. The gerundive expresses, in an adjective form, the uncompleted action of a verb of transitive use exerted on a substantive object, the substantive standing in the case required by the context, and the gerundive agreeing with it.

In this construction, which is called the *gerundive construction*, the substantive and gerundive blend together in sense like the parts of a compound.

*male gerendō negōtiō in aere aliēnō vacillant*, C. 2, 21, *owing to bad business-managing they are staggering under debts.* *studium agrī colendī*, CM. 59, *the occupation of land-tilling.* *vir regendae rēi pūblicae scientissimus*, DO. 1, 214, *a man of great experience in state-managing.*

### (2.) THE GERUND.

2241. The gerund expresses, in a substantive form, the uncompleted action of a verb which has no direct object.

*ars vivendī*, Fin. 1, 42, *the art of living.* *nōn est locus ad tergiversandum*, Att. 7, 1, 4, *'tis no time for shill-I-shall-I-ing.* *sum dēfessus quæritandō*, Pl. Am. 1014, *I'm all worn out with hunting.* *sē experiendō didicisse*, Ta. 1, 11, *he had learned by experience.*



2242. Gerunds of verbs of transitive use are exceptionally found with a substantive object (2255, 2259, 2265), and regularly with neuter pronouns and neuter plural adjectives to avoid ambiguity (1106).

agendī aliquid discendīque causā, *Fin.* 5, 54, *for the sake of doing or learning something.* faciendī aliquid vel nōn faciendī vērā ratiō, *Plin. Ep.* 6, 27, 4, *the true ground for doing or not doing a thing.* artem sē trādere vērā ac falsa diiudicandī, *DO.* 2, 157, *that he passed along the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.* regendī cūncta onus, *Ta.* 1, 11, *the burden of governing the world.*

## CASES OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

### NOMINATIVE.

2243. The nominative of the gerundive construction, as the subject of *sum*, denotes action which is to be done.

The combination acquires the meaning of obligation or propriety, and this meaning also passes over to the accusative with *esse*. The person who has the action to do is put in the dative of the possessor (1215). Instead of the dative, the ablative with *ab* is sometimes used, particularly where the dative would be ambiguous.

tibī haec cūra suscipienda est, *V.* 4, 69, *the undertaking of this care exists for you, i.e. you must undertake this charge.* Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum, 2, 20, 1, *for Caesar there was everything to be done at the same moment: the standard to be raised, bugle call given, soldiers summoned in from their work, line of battle to be formed, soldiers harangued, signal given for engagement.* quaerenda pecūnia primum est; virtūs post nummōs, *H. E.* 1, 1, 53, *there is money-making to be the first aim: character second to dollars.* adeundus mihi illic est homō, *Pl. R.* 1298, *I must draw near this fellow.* Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse transeundum, 4, 16, 1, *Caesar made up his mind that he must cross the Rhine.* ego istum iuvenem domi tenendum censeō, *L.* 21, 3, 6, *for my part, I think that young man ought to be kept at home.* ēi ego ā mē referendam grātiā nōn putem? *Planc.* 78, *should I not think that I ought to show my gratitude to him?* quid ā mē amplius dicendum putātis? *V.* 3, 60, *what more do you think that I need say?*

2244. fruendus, fungendus, potiendus, ūtendus, vēscendus, are also used in this construction, chiefly in the oblique cases; in the nominative the impersonal construction (2246) is usual. These verbs sometimes have a transitive use in old Latin (1380).

nōn paranda nōbīs solum ea, sed fruenda etiam est, *Fin.* 1, 3, *that is a thing which we must not only obtain, but enjoy as well, of wisdom.* nec tamen est potiunda tibi, *O.* 9, 754, *she is not to be won by thee.* Examples of the oblique cases in this use are cited below.

## The Gerundive and Gerund. [2245-2249.

2245. *habeō* with the gerundive, as an equivalent of *est mihi, est tibi*, &c. (2243), is sometimes found, chiefly in late writers and particularly in Tacitus: as,

*multi habent in praediis, quibus frumentum aut vinum aliudve quid desit, inportandum*, Varro, *RR.* 1, 16, 2, *many on whose estates corn or wine or something else is lacking, have to bring it in.* *multum interest utrumne de furtō dicendum habeās an de civibus trucidātis*, Ta. *D.* 37, *it makes a great difference whether you have to speak about a theft or about the murder of Romans.* *sī nunc primum statuendum habērēmus*, Ta. 14, 44, *if we had to decide the point to-day for the first time.*

2246. The neuter of verbs of intransitive use takes the impersonal construction with *est*. Verbs ordinarily transitive also take the impersonal construction when used without an object.

*nunc est bibendum*, H. 1, 37, 1, *now drinking exists, i.e. now we must drink.* *inambulandumst*, Pl. *As.* 682, *I must be moving on.* *ego amplius delibendum censeō*, T. *Ph.* 457, *I opine there must be more pondering.* *linguae moderandumst mihi*, Pl. *Cu.* 486, *I must check my tongue.* *omne animal confitendum est esse mortale*, DN. 3, 32, *it must be admitted that every living thing is destined to die.* *nēmō umquam sapiens proditori credendum putavit*, V. 1, 38, *no wise man ever held that a traitor was to be trusted.*

2247. The impersonal construction with an object in the accusative, is old-fashioned and rare.

*canēs paucos habendum*, Varro, *RR.* 1, 21, *one should keep but few dogs.* *aeternās quoniam poenās in morte timendumst*, Lucr. 1, 111, *since punishment eterne they have in death to fear.* This construction occurs oftenest in Lucretius and Varro; once in Plautus, a few times in Cicero for special reasons, and here and there in later writers. Not in Caesar or Horace.

2248. The gerundive sometimes acquires, in itself, the meaning of obligation or propriety, which it properly has only when combined with *sum*, and becomes a mere adjective, used in any case.

*fōrmā expetendā liberālem virginem*, Pl. *Per.* 521, *a freeborn maid of shape delectable.* *L. Brūtō, principe huius maximē cōservandī generis et nōminis*, Ph. 3, 11, *Brutus, the first of this most highly cherished house and name.* *huic timendō hosti obviū fui*, L. 21, 41, 4, *I met this dreadful foe.* *Athēnās, multa visenda habentis*, L. 45, 27, 11, *Athens, which contains many sights worth a visit.*

2249. The attributive gerundive (2248), particularly with a negative, *in-* privative, or *vix*, may denote possibility, like the verbal in *-bilis*: as,

*labōrēs nōn fugiendōs*, Fin. 2, 118, *inevitable labours.* *Polybius, haudquāquam spernendus auctor*, L. 30, 45, 5, *Polybius, an authority by no means despicable.* *infandum, rēgīna, iubēs renovāre dolōrem*, V. 2, 3, *thou bidst me, queen, rehearse that woe unspeakable.* *vix erat credendum*, 5, 28, 1, *it was hardly credible.* *praedicābile aliquid et glōriandum ac prae sē ferendum*, TD. 5, 49, *something laudable and vauntable and displayable as well.*



## ACCUSATIVE.

2250. (1.) The accusative of the gerundive construction is used with *locō* and *condūcō*, with *suscipiō*, *habeō*, and *cūrō*, and with verbs of giving or assigning.

With the verbs of giving or assigning (such as *dō*, *trādō*, *committō*, *attribuō*, *dīvidō*, *relinquō*, *permittō*, *dēnotō*), the emphasis often gravitates towards the substantive, and the gerundive, as an explanatory appendage, acquires the meaning of purpose. So in Plautus with the verbs of asking (*rogō* and *petō*).

(a.) *caedundum condūxī ego illum :: tum optumumst locēs efferendum*, Pl. *Aul.* 567, *I engaged him for killing :: then you'd better contract for his funeral* (1709). *signum conlocandum cōsulēs locāvērunt*, Cat. 3, 20, *the consuls let out the erecting of the statue*. *redemptor quī columnam illam condūxerat faciendam*, Div. 2, 47, *the contractor who had undertaken the making of that pillar*. *vellem suscēpissēs iuvenem regendum*, Att. 10, 6, 2, *I wish you had undertaken training the young man*. *aedem habuit tuendam*, V. 1, 130, *he had the looking after the temple*. *agrum dē nostrō patre colendum habēbat*, T. Ph. 364, *he had the tilling of a farm from my father*.

(b.) *COIRAVIT · BASILICAM · CALECANDAM*, CIL. I, 1166, *he superintended the town hall plastering*. *pōntem faciendum cūrat*, I, 13, 1, *he attends to a bridge's being made, i. e. has it made*. *cōsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit*, Ph. 8, 15, *the senate entrusted the defence of the state to the consuls*. *agrōs plēbī colendōs dedit*, RP. 3, 16, *he gave lands to the common people to till*. *Antigonus Eumenem propīnquīs sepeliendum trādīdit*, N. 18, 13, 4, *Antigonus delivered Eumenes to his kinsfolk to be buried*. *attribuit nēs trucīdandōs*, C. 4, 13, *us he handed over to be slaughtered*. *sauciōs militēs cūrandōs dīvidit patribus*, L. 2, 47, 12, *he apportioned the wounded soldiers among the senators to cure*. *haec porcīs comedenda relinquēs*, H. E. 1, 7, 19, *you'll leave them to the pigs to eat*. *civīs Rōmānōs trucīdandōs dēnotāvit*, IP. 7, *he specified Romans for slaughter*.

(c.) *quae ūtenda vāsa semper vicinī rogant*, Pl. *Aul.* 96, *traps that the neighbours are always asking the use of*. *artoptam ex proxumō ūtendam petō*, Pl. *Aul.* 400, *I'm going for the use of a breadpan from next door*.

2251. When such a verb is passive, the accusative becomes nominative.

*simulācrum Dīānae tollendum locātur*, V. 4, 76, *the moving of the statue of Diana is let out*. *dīlaceranda ferīs dabor ālitibusque praeda*, Cat. 64, 152, *I shall be given a prey for beasts and birds to tear*. *trādītique fētiālībus Caudium dūcendī*, L. 9, 10, 2, *and they were delivered to the fetials to be taken to Caudium*.

2252. (2.) The accusative of the gerundive construction or gerund is used with a preposition, usually *ad*. If the verb is of transitive use, the gerundive is proper, not the gerund (2240).

This construction is used with verbs (including verbs of hindering), with substantives generally to denote purpose, and with adjectives which have the meaning of *capable*, *fit*, *easy*, *useful*, &c., &c.



## The Gerundive and Gerund. [2253-2255.]

(a.) *hīc in noxiāst, ille ad dīcendam causam adest*, T. Ph. 266, *when A's in trouble, B turns up to make excuses for him.* *ad pācem petendam ad Hannibalem vēnit*, L. 21, 13, 1, *he is come to Hannibal to sue for peace.* *ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur*, 1, 3, 3, *Orgetorix is chosen to do this.* *dant sē ad lūdendum*, Fin. 5, 42, *they devote themselves to playing.* *palūs Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat*, 7, 26, 2, *a morass hindered the Romans from pursuit.* *ut peditēs ad trānseundum impedirentur*, Caes. C. 1, 62, 2, *so that the infantry were hampered in crossing.* (b.) *causa ad obiūrgandum*, T. Andr. 150, *a reason for finding fault.* *spatium sūmāmus ad cōgitandum*, Fin. 4, 1, *let us take time for thought.* *alter occāsiōnem sibi ad occupandam Asiam oblātam esse arbitrātur*, IP. 4, *the other thinks a chance is given him for seizing all Asia.* (c.) *homo nōn aptissimus ad iocandum*, DN. 2, 46, *a man not very well fitted to be a joker.* *nimis doctus ille ad male faciendum*, Pl. E. 378, *too well the fellow's trained at playing tricks.* *ūtēbātur eō cibō quī esset facillimus ad concoquendum*, Fin. 2, 64, *he made use of the sort of food which was easiest to digest.*

2253. Other prepositions are sometimes used: *as*, *inter*, in old Latin, Livy, and later writers; *ob*, once in Ennius, rarely in Cicero and Sallust; *in* and *ante*, very rarely, but even in the classical period; *circā*, *propter*, and *super*, late and very rare.

*mōrēs sē inter lūdendum dētegunt*, Quintil. 1, 3, 12, *character discovers itself during play.* *ob rem iūdicandam pecūniam accipere*, V. 2, 78, *to take money for passing judgement on a case.*

### DATIVE.

2254. The dative of the gerundive construction is used with adjectives, verbs, and phrases of ability, attention, and adaptation, with titles of office, and with *comitia*, *election*.

This construction is not very common in classical Latin, where few verbs and substantives take it instead of the usual *ad* and the accusative (2252). In old Latin, it is also joined to adjectives and participles; in Cicero it is thus used only with *accommodātus*, in Caesar only with *pār*. From Livy on, the construction becomes a very favourite one.

*tālīs iactandīs tuae sunt cōsuētae manūs*, Pl. Vid. 33, *your hands are used to throwing dice.* *optimum operī faciundō*, Pl. R. 757, *most suitable for carrying on his trade.* *praeesse agrō colendō*, RA. 50, *to superintend farm managing.* *cum diēs vēnisset rogātiōnī ferendae*, Att. 1, 14, 5, *when the day came for proposing the bill.* *hibernīs oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem*, 5, 27, 5, *that this was the day set for attacking the winter quarters.* *cōsul plācandīs dīs habendōque dīlētū dat operam*, L. 22, 2, 1, *the consul devotes himself to propitiating the gods and raising troops.* *Dēmōsthenēs cūrātor mūrīs reficiendīs fuit*, OG. 19, *Demosthenes was commissioner for repairing the walls.* *īīvirī rēi pūblīcae cōstituendae*, L. Epit. 120, *a commission of three for reorganizing the state.* *comitia collēgae subrogandō habuit*, L. 2, 8, 3, *he held an election for appointing a colleague.*

2255. In the dative, a transitive gerund with an object in the accusative is found two or three times in Plautus.

## 2256-2259.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

2256. Late writers sometimes use the dative of the gerundive construction instead of a final clause (1961): as,

subdūcit ex aciē legiōnem faciendīs castrīs, *Ta. 2, 21, he withdraws a legion from the field to build a camp.* nīdum mollibus plūmīs cōnsternunt tepēfaciendīs ōvīs, simul nē dūrus sit infantibus pullīs, *Plin. NH. 10, 92, they line the nest with soft feathers to warm the eggs, and also to prevent it from being uncomfortable to their young brood.*

2257. The dative of the gerund is used chiefly by old and late writers, and is confined in the best prose to a few special phrases.

ōsculandō meliust pausam fierī, *Pl. R. 1205, 'tis better that a stop be put to kissing.* tū nec solvendō erās, *Ph. 2, 4, you were neither solvent.* SC · ARF, i. e. scribendō arfuērunt, *CIL. I, 196, 2, there were present when the document was put in writing.* quod scribendō adfuistī, *Fam. 15, 6, 2, because you were present at the writing.*

### GENITIVE.

2258. (1.) The genitive of the gerundive construction or gerund is used with substantives or adjectives.

(a.) tacendī tempus est, *Pl. Poen. 741, it's time to be still.* spēs potiundī oppidī, 2, 7, 2, *the hope of overpowering the town* (2244). summa difficultās nāvigandī, 3, 12, 5, *the greatest difficulty in sailing.* proeliū committendī signum dedit, 2, 21, 3, *he gave the signal for beginning the battle.* exemplō eōrum clādēs fuit ut Mārsī mitterent ōrātōrēs pācis petendae, *L. 9, 45, 18, their downfall was a warning to the Marsians to send envoys to sue for peace.* sive nāvēs dēciendī operis essent missae, 4, 17, 10, *or if vessels for breaking down the works had been sent.* Particularly with causā, grātiā, or rarely ergō (1257), to denote purpose: as, frūmentandī causā, 4, 12, 1, *for foraging.* vitandae suspiciōnis causā, *C. 1, 19, to avoid suspicion.* mūneris fungendī grātiā, *RP. 1, 27, for the sake of doing one's duty.* illiusce sacri coercendī ergō, *Cato, RR. 139, because of thinning out you hallowed grove.*

(b.) quam cupida eram hūc redeundī, *T. Hec. 91, how eager I was to return here.* homine peritō dēfīniendī, *Off. 3, 60, a man accomplished in drawing distinctions.* perpessus est omnia potius quam cōnsciōs dēlendae tyrannidis indicāret, *TD. 2, 52, he stood out against the worst sooner than betray his confederates in the overthrow of the tyranny.* insuētus nāvigandī, 5, 6, 3, *unused to sailing.* studiōsus audiendī, *N. 15, 3, 2, an eager listener.* nescia tolerandī, *Ta. 3, 1, ignorant what patience was.* nandī pavidus, *Ta. H. 5, 14, afraid to swim.* With adjectives, the gerundive construction is not found in Plautus and Terence, and the gerund not in Plautus. Terence has the gerund with cupidus, Cato with studiōsus. The construction is of slow growth before Tacitus, who greatly developed it.

2259. In the genitive, a transitive gerund with an object in the accusative is rare; ordinarily the gerundive is used (2240).



## The Gerundive and Gerund. [2260-2264.]

tē dēfrūdandī causā, Pl. Men. 687, *for the purpose of cheating you*. cupidus tē audiendī, DO. 2, 16, *eager to hear you*. summa ēlūdendī occāsiōst mihi nunc senēs, T. Ph. 885, *I've now a splendid chance the graybeards of eluding*. nē suī liberandī (2260) atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs occāsiōnem dīmittant, 5, 38, 2, *that they should not let slip the chance of freeing themselves and taking vengeance on the Romans*. sīgnum colligendī vāsa dedit, L. 24, 16, 14, *he gave the signal to pack their things*.

2260. nostrī, vostri (or vestrī), and suī, being singular in form (649) have often a singular gerundive.

nōn tam suī cōservandī quam tuōrum cōsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profūgērunt, C. 1, 7, *they fled, not so much to protect themselves as to crush your plans*. vēnisse tempus ulciscendī suī, Sest. 28, *that the time was come for them to revenge themselves*. vestrī adhortandī causā, L. 21, 41, 1, *for the purpose of encouraging you*.

2261. This gerundive, being mistaken for a gerund, is occasionally used with a real plural, rarely with a singular. This use is found in old Latin, Lucretius, Varro, and here and there in Cicero, as well as in late Latin.

nōminandī istōrum tibi erit cōpia, Pl. Cap. 852, *you will have a chance to name them*. poenārum solvendī tempus, Lucr. 5, 1225, *the time of paying penalties*. exemplōrum ēligendī potestās, Inv. 2, 5, *a chance of picking out examples*. lūcis tuendī cōpiam, Pl. Cap. 1008, *a chance to look upon the light*.

2262. (2.) The genitive of the gerundive construction is used predicatively with sum.

rēgium imperium, quod initiō cōservandae libertātis fuerat, S. C. 6, 7, *the authority of the king, which had originally served to uphold freedom*. cētera in XII minuendī sūmptūs sunt lāmentātiōnisque fūnebris, Leg. 2, 59, *the rest of the contents of the Twelve Tables are conducive to the abating of extravagance and keening at funerals*. concordiam ōrdinum, quam dissolvendae tribūniciae potestātis rentur esse, L. 5, 3, 5, *the union of the classes, which they believe serves to break down the power of the tribunes*. This use is not common. It is found rarely in Sallust and Cicero; chiefly in Livy.

2263. The genitive of the gerundive construction, without a substantive or adjective (2258) or the verb sum (2262), is occasionally used to denote purpose: as,

quae ille cēpit lēgum ac libertātis subvortundae, S. Fr. Phil. 10, *which he began in order to overthrow freedom and the laws*, of civil war. ūnum vinciri iubet, magis ūsurpandī iūris quam quia ūnūs culpa foret, Ta. H. 4, 25, *he ordered one into irons, more to vindicate his authority than because an individual was to blame*. This use occurs very rarely in Sallust, chiefly in Tacitus and late Latin. Once in Terence with the gerund.

2264. Tacitus has the genitive of the gerundive construction two or three times with a judicial verb (1280) to denote the charge: as, occupandae rēi pūblicae arguī nōn poterant, Ta. 6, 10, *they could not be charged with an attempt on the throne*.



## ABLATIVE.

2265. In the ablative a transitive gerund with a substantive object is not uncommon.

*frātre* *laudandō*, *Leg.* 1, 1, *in quoting your brother.* *largē partiendō praedam*, *L.* 21, 5, 5, *by a lavish distribution of the spoil.* This use is particularly common in Livy.

2266. (1.) The ablative of the gerundive construction or gerund denotes means, less often cause, rarely manner and circumstances, or time, or respect.

Means: *Caesar dandō sublevandō ignoscundō*, *Catō nihil largiundō glōriam adeptus est*, *S. C.* 54, 3, *Caesar gained reputation by giving, helping, and pardoning, Cato by lavishing no gifts.* *opprimi sustentandō ac prōlātandō nullō pactō potest*, *C.* 4, 6, *it cannot be crushed by patience and procrastination.* Livy has this ablative with the adjective *contentus* (1377): *nec iam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse*, 6, 14, 11, *that they were no longer satisfied with the occupation of the public lands.* Cause: *aggerundā curvom aquā*, *Pl. Cas.* 124, *bowed with water carrying.* *flendō turgiduli rubent ocelli*, *Cat.* 3, 18, *with weeping red and swollen are her eyne.* Manner and circumstances: rare in old Latin: not in Caesar or Cicero: *bellum ambulandō cōfēcērunt*, *Caelius in Fam.* 8, 15, 1, *they strolled through the war.* *senex vincendō factus*, *L.* 30, 28, 5, *maturing in victories.* Time: *cum plausum meō nōmine recitandō dedissent*, *Att.* 4, 1, 6, *when they had applauded on the reading of my name.* *partibus dividendis ipsi regiō ēvenit*, *L.* 25, 30, 6, *at the distribution, the district fell to him.* Respect: *Latinē loquendō cuivis erat pār*, *Br.* 128, *in his use of Latin he was a match for anybody.*

2267. (2.) The ablative of the gerundive construction or gerund is also accompanied by a preposition, *ab*, *dē*, *in*, or *ex*; rarely by *prō*.

*nullum tempus illi umquam vacābat aut ā scribendō aut ā cōgitandō*, *Br.* 272, *he never had any time free from writing or from thinking.* *quod verbum ductum est ā nimis intuendō fōrtūnam alterius*, *TD.* 3, 20, *a word which is derived from 'looking too closely at' another's prosperity, of the word invidia.* *cōnsilium illud dē occlūdendis aedibus*, *T. Eu.* 784, *that idea about barring up the house.* *nihil dē causā discendā praecipiant*, *DO.* 2, 100, *they give no instruction about studying up a case.* *vostra orātiō in rē incipiundā*, *T. Ph.* 224, *your remarks when we started in with this affair.* *Āfricāni in rē gerundā celeritātem*, *V.* 5, 25, *Africanus's swiftness in execution.* *vix ex grātulandō ēminēbam*, *Pl. Cap.* 504, *I barely got my head above their congratulations.* *quae virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdētia*, *Leg.* 1, 60, *a virtue which from 'foreseeing' is called foresight.* *prō liberandā amīcā*, *Pl. Per.* 426, *for setting free a leman.* *prō ope ferendā*, *L.* 23, 28, 11, *instead of going to the rescue.* In this use *ab* is not found in Plautus or Terence, nor *dē* in Plautus, nor *prō* in Terence. *cum* is found in Quintilian, *super* once in Horace, then in Tacitus, *sine* once in Varro.

2268. With a comparative expression, the ablative of the gerundive is found once: *nūllum officium referendā grātiā magis necessārium est*, *Off.* 1, 47, *no obligation is more binding than the returning of a favour*. The gerundive construction in the ablative of separation (1302) is found rarely in Livy and Pliny the younger; Livy has also the gerund: as, *Verminam absistere sequendō coēgit*, *L.* 29, 33, 8, *he forced Vermina to abandon his pursuit*.

## THE SUPINE.

2269. The supine is a verbal substantive. The form in **-um** is an accusative. The form in **-ū** is used sometimes as a dative, sometimes as an ablative.

### THE SUPINE IN **-um**.

2270. The supine in **-um** denotes purpose with verbs of motion (1166): as,

*abiit piscātum*, *Pl. R.* 898, *he's gone a fishing*. *neu noctū irem obambulātum*, *Pl. Tri.* 315, *not to go a prowling by night*. *legiōne ūnā frumentātum missā*, 4, 32, 1, *one legion being sent a foraging*. *sessum it praetor*, *DN.* 3, 74, *the praetor is going to take his seat*. *spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae*, *O. AA.* 1, 99, *they come to see and eke for to be seen*. This use is very common in Plautus and Terence, less common in Cicero and Caesar. It is found not infrequently in Sallust and particularly in Livy; sporadically in the Augustan poets. In late prose it is almost confined to archaistic writing. In classical Latin, purpose is more commonly expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or a relative pronoun, or by a gerundive or gerund with *ad* or *causā*. See also 2164.

2271. The most common supines in **-um** are *cubitum*, *dormitum*, *ēreptum*, *frumentātum*, *gratulātum*, *nūntiātum*, *oppugnātum*, *orātum*, *pāstum*, *perditum*, *petitum*, *salūtātum*, *sessum*, *supplicātum*. They are found chiefly with *eō* and *veniō*. *nūptum* is also common with *dō*, *collocō*, &c.

2272. The supine in **-um** may be followed by the same construction as its verb: as,

(a.) Accusative: *deōs salūtātum atque uxōrem modo intrō dēvortor domum*, *Pl. St.* 534, *I'll just turn in home to greet my gods and my wife*. *lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium*, 1, 11, 2, *they send envoys to Caesar to beg aid*. *oppugnātum patriam nostram veniunt*, *L.* 21, 41, 13, *they come to assail our country*. Classical writers generally avoid this use of the accusative. (b.) Dative: *servitum tibi mē abdūcitō*, *Pl. Ps.* 520, *take me away to slave for you*. *nōn ego Grāis servitum mātribus ibō*, *V.* 2, 786, *not I shall go to be the serf of Grecian dames*. (c.) Subordinate clause: *lēgātī veniēbant: Aeduī questum quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum populārentur*, 1, 37, 1, *envoys came: the Aeduians to complain 'because the Harudians were laying their country waste'* (1853). *lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt orātum nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret*, 6, 32, 1, *they sent envoys to Caesar to beg that he would not regard them in the light of enemies*.



## 2273-2277.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

2273. The supine in -um followed by *īrī* forms the future passive infinitive: as,

*eum exceptum īrī putō*, *Att.* 7, 22, 1, *I think that there is a going to capture him*, i. e. *that he is going to be captured*. Here *īrī* is used impersonally and *eum* is the object of *exceptum*. This infinitive is found half a dozen times in old Latin, oftenest in Cicero, rarely in other writers; not in the Augustan poets. For the common periphrasis, see 2233.

### THE SUPINE IN -ū.

2274. The supine in -ū is used with *fās*, *nefās*, and adjectives, chiefly of such meaning as *easy*, *good*, *pleasant*, *strange*, or their opposites.

Only a few supines in -ū are found; the commonest are *audītū*, *cōgnitū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *inventū*, *memorātū*, *nātū*, *vīsū*.

*sī hōc fās est dictū*, *TD.* 5, 38, *if heaven allows us to say so*. *difficile dictū est dē singulīs*, *Fam.* 1, 7, 2, *it is hard to say in the case of individuals*. *quaerunt quod optimum factū sit*, *V.* 1, 68, *they ask what the best thing is to do*. *quid est tam iocundum cōgnitū atque audītū?* *DO.* 1, 31, *what pleasure is greater to mind and ear?* *palpebrae mollissimae tāctū*, *DN.* 2, 142, *the eyelids are very soft to the touch*. With such adjectives the dative is commonly used (1200); or, particularly with *facilis* or *difficilis*, the gerundive construction with *ad* (2252); for the infinitive, see 2166. The supine in -ū is found chiefly in Cicero and Livy. Very rare in old Latin, Sallust, Caesar (who has only *factū* and *nātū*), and the poets. From the elder Pliny and Tacitus on, it gets commoner.

2275. The supine in -ū sometimes introduces a subordinate sentence, but it is never used with an object in the accusative.

*quoivīs facile scītū est quam fuerim miser*, *T. Hec.* 296, *anybody can easily understand how unhappy I was*. *incrēdibile memorātū est quam facile coaluerint*, *S. C.* 6, 2, *it is an incredible tale how readily they grew into one*. *vidētis nefās esse dictū miseram fuisse tālem senectūtem*, *CM.* 13, *you see that it were a sin to say that an old age like his was unhappy*.

2276. The supine in -ū is found rarely with *opus est* (1379), *dīgnus* and *indīgnus* (1392): as,

*ita dictū opus est*, *T. Hau.* 941, *thus thou must needs say*. *nihil dīgnum dictū āctum hīs cōsulibus*, *L.* 4, 30, 4, *nothing worth mentioning was done this year*. For *dīgnus* with *quī* and the subjunctive, see 1819; for *opus est* with the infinitive, 2211.

2277. In Plautus and Cato, the supine in -ū is very rarely used like an ablative of separation (1302): as, *nunc opsonātū redeō*, *Pl. Men.* 288, *I'm only just back from the caterer's*. *prīmus cubitū surgat*, *postrēmus cubitum eat*, Cato, *RR.* 5, 5, *let him be first to get up from bed and last to go to bed*.



## THE PARTICIPLE.

2278. The participle is a verbal adjective. Like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive. Like the verb, it may be modified by an adverb, it is active or passive, and it expresses action as continuing, completed, or future. It may also be followed by the same case as its verb.

## TIME OF THE PARTICIPLE.

2279. (1.) The time to which the participle refers is indicated by the verb of the sentence.

*āēr effluēns hūc et illūc ventōs efficit*, *DN. 2, 101, the air by streaming to and fro produces winds.* *convēnī hodiē adveniēns quendam*, *T. En. 234, I met a man as I was coming to-day.* *manūs tendentēs vītam ōrābant*, *L. 44, 42, 4, with hands outstretched they begged their lives.* *Croesus Halyn penetrāns māgnam pervertet opum vīm*, oracle in *Div. 2, 115, Croesus, when Halys he shall cross, will overthrow a mighty realm.* *benīgnitātem tuām mihī expertō praedicās*, *Pl. Merc. 289, thou vauntest to me who've proved thy courtesy.* *cōsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat, receptuī canī iūssit*, *7, 47, 1, having accomplished what he had designed, he gave orders to sound the retreat.* *Dionysius Syracūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat*, *TD. 3, 27, after his expulsion from Syracuse, Dionysius kept school at Corinth.* *lēgātī dixerunt sē rē dēliberātā ad Caesarem reversūrōs*, *4, 9, 1, the envoys said that they would come back to Caesar after they had thought the matter over.*

2280. (2.) The perfect participle of deponents is sometimes used with past tenses or their equivalents to denote incomplete contemporaneous action. So occasionally a perfect passive.

(a.) *Metellum esse ratī portās clausēre*, *S. I. 69, 1, supposing that it was Metellus, they closed their gates.* *gāvīsus illōs retinērī iūssit*, *4, 13, 6, with pleasure he gave orders for their detention.* *persuādent Rauracīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō proficīscantur*, *1, 5, 4, they coaxed the Rauraci to adopt the same plan and go.* *sōlātus iūssit sapientem pāscere barbā*, *H. S. 2, 3, 35, consoling me he bade me grow a philosophic beard.* This use is not found in old Latin, very rarely in Cicero. Sallust and Caesar use a few verbs thus. It is not uncommon in the Augustan poets and Livy. In late writers, especially Tacitus, it is frequent. (b.) *servum sub furcā caesum mediō ēgerat circō*, *L. 2, 36, 1, he had driven a slave round, flogged under the fork, right in the circus.* With this compare *servus per circum, cum virgīs caedēretur, furcam ferēs ductus est*, *Div. 1, 55, a slave with the fork on his neck was driven through the circus, flogged with rods the while* (1872). But the perfect passive has its ordinary force (2279) in *verberibus caesum tē in pistrīnum dēdam*, *T. Andr. 199, I'll give you a flogging and then put you in the mill.*

2281. For the perfect participle with forms of *sum* and *fuī*, see 1608, 1609; for the conative present participle, 2301; reflexive, 1482.

### THE ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLE.

2282. The present or perfect participle is often used as an adjective to express a permanent condition : as,

ācrem ōrātōrem, incēsum et agentem et canōrum forī strepitus dēsiderat, *Br.* 317, *the noisy forum requires an impetuous speaker, inspired and dramatic and sonorous.* L. Abuccius, homo adprimē doctus, Varro, *RR.* 3, 2, 17, *Abuccius, an eminently learned man.* alii facētī, flōrentēs etiam et ōrnātī, *O.* 20, *others are brilliant, even bright and elegant.* id tibi renūntiō futūrum ut sis sciēs, *T. Andr.* 508, *I give you notice this will happen, that you may be prepared.*

2283. The future participle is found as an adjective in the Augustan poets and in late writers. Cicero, however, has futūrus in this use with rēs and a few other words.

dā mānsūram urbem, *V.* 3, 85, *grant a city that shall abide.* firmus pariēs et dūrātūrus, *Ta. D.* 22, *a strong and durable wall.* signa ostenduntur ā dīs rērum futūrārum, *DN.* 2, 12, *signs of future events are disclosed by the gods.* For the future participle with forms of sum, see 1633.

2284. Many participles have become complete adjectives, and as such are capable of composition or comparison, or take the case required by an adjective.

(a.) nōmen invictī imperātōris, *V.* 4, 82, *the invincible general's name.* pūrus et insōns sī vivō, *H. S.* 1, 6, 69, *pure and guiltless if I live* (749). (b.) solūtus venēficae scientiōris carmine, *H. Epod.* 5, 71, *freed by some craftier witch's charm.* homo ērudītissimus, Verrēs, *V.* 4, 126, *Verres, most accomplished of men.* (c.) tibi sum oboediēs, *Pl. MG.* 806, *I'm your obedient* (1200). tē cōnfidō ea factūrum quae mihi intellegēs māximē esse accommodāta, *Fam.* 3, 3, 2, *I feel confident that you will do what you shall feel most appropriate to my interests* (1201). For the genitive with such participles, see 1266.

2285. A perfect participle in agreement with a substantive often contains the leading idea, and may be translated like an abstract substantive with a genitive dependent. The nominative is rarely thus used.

This construction expresses the completed action of the verb in precisely the same way that the gerundive construction (2240) expresses uncompleted action.

(a.) Joined with substantives: iniūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, 3, 10, 2, *the outrages of Roman knights detained, i. e. in the detention of Roman knights.* servātī cōnsulis decus, *L.* 21, 46, 10, *the credit of saving the consul.* male administrātae prōvinciae urgēbātur, *Ta.* 6, 29, *he was charged with maladministration of his province.* ō quid solūtis est beātius cūris? *Cat.* 31, 7, *oh what is sweeter than the putting off of care?*

(b.) Joined with prepositions: ab conditā urbe ad liberātam, *L.* 1, 60, 3, *from the foundation of the city to the liberation thereof.* post nātōs hominēs improbissimus, *Br.* 224, *the greatest reprobate since the creation of man.* ante civitātem datam, *Arch.* 9, *before the gift of the citizenship.*



(c.) In the nominative: very rare before Livy: *dēpressa hostium classis*, *Arch.* 21, *the sinking of the enemy's fleet*. *angēbant ingentis spirītūs virum Sicilia Sardiniaque āmissae*, *L.* 21, 1, 5, *what tortured the high-souled hero was the loss of Sicily and Sardinia*. *cūius turbāvit nitidōs extinctus passer ocellōs*, *J.* 6, 7, *whose sparkling eyne the sparrow's death bedimmed*.

2286. This use of the participle, though old, is not common before Livy, who, like Tacitus, has it frequently, both with substantives and with prepositions. Very rare in Caesar, rare in Cicero, who, however, uses it both with substantives and with a few prepositions. In old Latin (not in Terence), it is found with the substantives *opus* and *ūsus*, in Cato with *post*, in Varro with *propter*: as, *mī homine conventōst opus*, *Pl. Cur.* 302, *I needs must see the man*. *propter mare congelātum*, Varro, *RR.* 1, 2, 4, *by reason of the freezing of the sea water*. For the participle alone with *ūsus est* and *opus est*, see 1382.

## THE SUBSTANTIVE PARTICIPLE.

2287. Participles sometimes become substantives, especially the perfect participle: as,

*vīvit gnāta*, *T. Ph.* 749, *your daughter's alive*. *dē dēmēnsō suō*, *T. Ph.* 43, *out of his allowance*. *institūtum tenēbimus*, *TD.* 4, 7, *we will hold to our fundamental idea*. Adverbs, not adjectives, are commonly used to qualify perfect participles used as substantives; for examples, see 1440. The masculine singular is rarely used as a substantive; the neuter, both singular and plural, is common, particularly with prepositions.

2288. The masculine plural of the perfect participle, when used as a substantive, generally denotes a definite class of persons: as,

*ut damnātī in integrum restituantur, vinctī solvantur*, *V.* 5, 12, *that the condemned go scot-free, the imprisoned are set at liberty*. *Catilīna cum expeditīs in primā aciē vorsārī*, *S. C.* 60, 4, *Catiline bustling round in the van with the light infantry*. *ēvocātīs equōs sūmit*, 7, 65, 5, *he took away the veterans' horses*. Rarely not denoting a definite class: as, *missī intercipiuntur*, 5, 40, 1, *the men who had been sent* (i.e. on a particular occasion) *are cut off*.

2289. The perfect participle alone sometimes serves as the subject of a sentence instead of an abstract substantive (2285): as,

*nōtum furēns quid fēmina possit*, *V.* 5, 6, *the knowledge of what a woman in her wrath can do*. *prōnūntiātum repente nē quis violārētur, multitudinem exuit armīs*, *L.* 4, 59, 7, *the sudden proclamation that nobody was to be harmed, deprived the people of their weapons*. This use is found chiefly in Livy, once or twice in Cicero; not in Caesar or Sallust.

2290. The present participle is rarely a substantive in the nominative and ablative singular, but often in the other cases.

*in cōstituentibus rem pūblicam*, *Br.* 45, *among the founders of a state*. *multae insectantēs dēpellunt*, *DN.* 2, 127, *many drive off their pursuers*. *nec praeterita nec praesentia abs tē, sed futūra exspectō*, *Fam.* 2, 8, 1, *I do not expect from you the past or the present, but the future*.



## 2291-2295.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

2291. The genitive plural of the present participle is often best translated by an English abstract: as,

*cachinnōs inridentium commovēbat*, *Br.* 216, *he provoked guffaws of derision.* *mixtōs terrentium paventiumque clāmōrēs*, *L.* 22, 5, 4, *mingled cries of exultation and terror.* *prīmō gaudentium impetū*, *Ta. H.* 1, 4, *in the first outburst of joy.*

2292. The future participle is very rarely used as a substantive.

*audītūrum dictūrī cūra dēlectat*, *Quintil.* 11, 3, 157, *deliberation on the part of one who is on the point of speaking attracts his prospective hearer.* *havē, imperātor, moritūrī tē salūtant*, *Suet. Claud.* 21, *emperor, all hail! the doomed give thee greeting.* This use is found in late writers, as in Tacitus and Curtius once each, and half a dozen times in Pliny the younger. Cicero and Sallust have *futūrus* thus (2283): as, *abs tē futūra exspectō*, *Fam.* 2, 8, 1, *from you I expect the future.* *supplicia in post futūrōs composuit*, *S. Fr. Lep.* 6, *he invented penalties for men unborn.*

### THE APPOSITIVE PARTICIPLE.

2293. The appositive participle is a loose substitute for a subordinate sentence introduced by a relative or by a conjunctive particle.

2294. (1.) The appositive participle may represent a relative sentence: as,

*nōvī ego Epicūrēōs omnia sigilla venerantēs*, *DN.* 1, 85, *why, I know Epicureans who bow the knee to all sorts of graven images.* *Conōn mūrōs dīrutōs ā Lysandrō reficiendōs cūrat*, *N.* 9, 4, 5, *Conon superintended the rebuilding of the walls which had been destroyed by Lysander.* The future participle is poetic and late (2283): as, *servēs itūrum Caesarem in Britan-nōs*, *H.* 1, 35, 29, *guard Caesar who against the Britons is to march.*

2295. (2.) The appositive participle, representing other sentences, may express various relations: as, (a.) time, (b.) cause or means, (c.) purpose, (d.) concession, (e.) hypothesis, (f.) description or the manner of an action, like an adverb.

For the ablative absolute in such relations, see 1362-1374, particularly 1367.

(a.) Time: *vehemēns sum exoriēns, quom occidō vehementior*, *Pl. R.* 71, *furious am I at my rising, when I set more furious still.* *occīsus est ā cēnā rediēns*, *RA.* 97, *he was murdered on his way home from a dinner-party.* *ūnam noctem sōlam praedōnēs commorātī, accēdere incipiunt Syracūsās*, *V.* 5, 95, *the freebooters, after tarrying but one night, began to draw near Syracuse.* The future is late (2283): as, *prīmum omnium virōrum fortium itūrī in proelia canunt*, *Ta. G.* 3, *as the chief of all brave heroes, they sing of him when they are on the point of going to battle, of Hercules.*

(b.) Cause or means: *mōtum expectāns dilectum habēre instituit*, 6, 1, 1, *since he anticipated a rising, he determined on recruiting troops. moveor tālī amīcō orbātus*, L. 10, *I am certainly affected at being bereaved of such a friend. dextrā datā fidem futūrae amicitiae sanxisse*, L. 1, 1, 8, *by giving his right hand he gave a pledge of future friendship. quae contuēns animus accēdit ad cōgnitiōnem deōrum*, DN. 2, 153, *through the contemplation of these, the mind arrives at a knowledge of the gods. The future participle is late: as, neque illis iūdicium aut vērītās, quippe eōdem diē diversa parī certāmine postulātūrīs*, Ta. H. 1, 32, *they had neither sound judgement nor sincerity, since on the same day they were to make conflicting demands with equal vehemence.*

(c.) Purpose: the future participle, commonly with a verb of motion: *ad Clūsium vēnērunt, legiōnem Rōmānam castraque oppūgnātūrī*, L. 10, 26, 7, *they came to the neighbourhood of Clusium, to assail the Roman legion and camp. ascendit ipse, lātūrus auxilium*, Plin. Ep. 6, 16, 9, *he went aboard in person to go to the rescue. laetō complērant litora coetū visūrī Aeneadas*, V. 5, 107, *in happy company they'd filled the strand to see Aeneas' men. rediēre omnēs Bonōniam, rursus cōnsiliātūrī*, Ta. H. 2, 53, *they all went back to Bologna for a second consultation. This use appears first in C. Gracchus as cited by Gellius, then once in Cicero and Sallust each, and a few times in the poets. From Livy on, it grows commoner. In the poets, Livy, and Tacitus, it is sometimes joined with a conditional idea or protasis: as, ēgreditur castris Rōmānus, vāllum invāsūrus nī cōpia pūgnae fieret*, L. 3, 60, 8, *the Roman marches out of camp, proposing to assault the stockade unless battle were offered.*

(d.) Concession: *quī mortālis nātus condiciōnem postulēs immortalium*, TD. 3, 36, *thou who, though born to die, layest claim to the state of the deathless. bēstiīs, quibus ipsa terra fundit pāstūs abundantis nihil labōrantibus*, Inn. 2, 111, *the beasts, on which, though they toil not, earth lavishes sustenance in profusion. Often with tamen or the like accompanying the verb: as, ibī vehementissimē perturbātus Lentulus tamen et signum et manum suam cōgnōvit*, C. 3, 12, *thereupon Lentulus, though thrown into the most extreme confusion, did yet recognize his own hand and seal. For quamquam and quamvis, see 1900, 1907. Ovid and Propertius sometimes have licet: as, isque, licet caelī regiōne remōtōs, mente deōs adiit*, O. 15, 62, *he in the spirit to the gods drew nigh, though they are far away in heaven's domain. The future participle is rare and late.*

(e.) Hypothesis: *quid igitur mihī ferārum laniātus oberit nihil sentientī?* TD. 1, 104, *what hurt will the clawing of wild beasts do me if I have no feeling? appārēbat nōn admissōs prōtinus Carthāginem itūrōs*, L. 21, 9, 4, *it grew obvious that, if not given audience, they would go to Carthage forthwith. For other examples, see 2110. For the participle with quasi or ut, and in late writers with tamquam or velut, see 2121. The future participle is rare and late.*

(f.) Description or manner: *haec properantēs scripsimus*, Att. 4, 4<sup>a</sup>, *I have written this hastily, i. e. in haste yours truly. dictātor et magister equitum triumphantēs in urbem rediēre*, L. 2, 20, 13, *the dictator and his master of the horse returned to the city in triumph. incendēbat haec flētū et pectus verberāns*, Ta. 1, 23, *he lent passion to his words with tears and beating of his breast. vinctōs aspiciunt catēnis liberōs suōs*, V. 5, 108, *they behold their own children held in bondage.*



## 2296-2299.] Sentences : Nouns of the Verb.

2296. The participle with a negative may be translated by *without*: as,  
 id illa ūnivorsum abripiet haud existumāns quantō labōre partum,  
 T. Ph. 45, *my lady'll grab it all without a thought of all the toil it cost to get.*  
 nōn rogātōs ūltrō offerre auxilium, L. 34, 23, 3, *that without being asked,*  
*they offer assistance of their own accord.*

### THE PREDICATIVE PARTICIPLE.

2297. *habeō* is sometimes used with certain perfect participles to express an action continuing in its consequences. *faciō*, *dō*, and in old Latin *reddō* and *cūrō*, with a perfect participle, are emphatic substitutes for the verb to which the participle belongs.

(a.) quae nōs nostramque adulēscēntiam habent dēspicātam et quae nōs semper omnibus cruciant modis, T. Eu. 383, *who hold us and our youth in scorn and torment us in every way.* in eā prōvinciā pecūniās māgnās collocātās habent, IP. 18, *they have invested large funds in that province.* Clōdiū animum perspectum habeō, cōgnitum, iūdicātum, ad Br. I, 1, 1, *Clodius's mind I have looked into thoroughly, probed, formed a judgement on.* clausum lacū ac mōntibus et circumfūsum suis cōpiis habuit hostem, L. 22, 4, 5, *his enemy he had shut in by lake and mountains and surrounded by his troops.* See also 1606.

(b.) missa haec face, T. Ad. 906, *let this pass.* vērū haec missa faciō, RA. 76, *but I let this pass.* Mānlium missum fēcit, Off. 3, 112, *he let Manlius go.* factum et cūrātum dabō, Pl. Cas. 439, *I'll have it done and seen to.* strātās legiōnēs Latinōrum dabō, L. 8, 6, 6, *I will lay the Latin legions low.* ego iam tē commōtum reddam, T. Andr. 864, *I'll soon have you worked up.* inventum tibi cūrābō tuōm Pamphilum, T. Andr. 684, *I'll have your Pamphilus looked up for you.* In classical writers, *faciō* only is found in this use and only with the participle of *mittō*; *dō* occurs in late writers; *reddō* and *cūrō* only in old Latin. All these verbs are usually in the future tense or its equivalent. For *volō*, *cupiō*, and *nōlō* with the infinitive passive without *esse*, see 2229.

2298. The present participle is used predicatively with verbs signifying *represent*, and with verbs denoting the exercise of the senses or mind: as,

facit Sōcratem disputantem, DN. 1, 31, *he represents Socrates discussing.* quasi ipsōs indūxī loquentēs, L. 3, *I have brought on the men themselves as speaking.* nōn illum miserum, ignārum cāsū suū, redeuntem ā cēnā vidētis? RA. 98, *do you not see the poor man, little dreaming of his fate, returning from the dinner?* nōn audīvit dracōnem loquentem, Div. 2, 141, *he did not hear the serpent speaking.* This use is found in Cicero, Sallust, Horace, Nepos, Vitruvius, and Livy. Once in Piso (consul 133 B. C.), as cited by Gellius, 7, 9, 6. Verbs denoting the exercise of the senses or mind take the accusative with the infinitive to denote the fact or action; see 2175. For *audiō* with *cum*, see 1870. For the infinitive without *esse* with verbs of emotion, see 2184.

2299. A passive with a verb meaning *represent* is expressed, for lack of a present passive participle, by the infinitive (2175). The infinitive active is rare.



(a.) cōstruī ā deō atque aedificārī mundum facit, *DN.* 1, 19, *he represents the world being put together and built by the gods.* (b.) poētae impendēre saxum Tantalō faciunt, *TD.* 4, 35, *the poets represent a rock hanging over Tantalus.* Rarely the participle (2298) and the infinitive are united: as, Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit ēiusque laudāre fōrtūnās, *TD.* 5, 115, *Homer represents Polyphemus chatting with the ram and his envy of the ram's estate.* But the perfect infinitive active must be used when the action is to be distinctly marked as completed, for lack of a perfect active participle: as, fēcit Dolābella Verrem accēpisse, *V.* 1, 100, *Dolabella represented Verres as having received.*

---



## APPENDIX.

### (A.) SOME OCCASIONAL PECULIARITIES OF VERBS.

2300. In many cases where in English a verb like *wish* or *try to have* a thing done, *can*, *must*, or *am allowed to*, is used, the equivalent Latin verb is omitted. As this use generally extends through the entire system of the verb, examples of the nouns of the verb and of subordinate sentences thus used, are conveniently included here.

#### THE CONATIVE USE.

2301. A verb is sometimes used to denote action proposed, attempted, or begun, but not necessarily carried out. This is called the *Conative Use* of the verb: as,

ancillās dēdō, T. *Hec.* 773, *I try to give, or I offer up the servant girls.* sine ūllā dubitātiōne condemnant, *Clu.* 75, *without a moment's hesitation they vote to condemn.* dum id impetrant, Pl. *Cap.* 233, *as long as they're trying to get it.* sī plācēs inlacrimābilem Plūtōna, II. 2, 14, 5, *shouldst thou the stonyhearted Pluto strive to melt.* sī discēdās, J. 7, 50, *should you attempt to leave.* in cūriam abiēcit, quam vivus ēverterat, *Mil.* 90, *he shoved the corpse into the senate house, which the man in his lifetime had done his best to overthrow.* adsurgentem rēgem umbōne resupīnat, L. 4, 19, 5, *with the boss of his shield he put the king flat on his back, when he tried to get up.*

2302. This use is particularly common in the imperfect indicative: as,

nostrōs ingredi prohibēbant, 5, 9, 6, *they tried to stop our people from getting in.* Apellēs faciēbat, Plin. *NH. praef.* 26, *Apelles undertook to do this, or an attempt of Apelles's.* sēdābant tumultūs, sēdandō interdum movēbant, L. 3, 15, 7, *they tried to quell the riotings, but by trying they started them once in a while afresh.* num dubitās id mē imperante facere, quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās? C. 1, 13, *do you possibly hesitate to do at my command what you wanted to do, as it was, yourself?* The conative use is not very common in old Latin, but more frequent from Cicero and Caesar on.

2303. When the conative use is to be expressed more distinctly, a form of *volō* or *cōnor* is used, or a frequentative, like *vēnditō*, *try to sell*, *adventō*, *strive to come*.



## THE CAUSATIVE USE.

2304. A verb is sometimes used to denote not what the subject actually does himself, but what he has another do. This is called the *Causative Use* of the verb: as,

animī causā mihi nāvem faciam, Pl. R. 932, *just for diversion I'll build me a yacht.* cum vellet sibi ānulum facere, aurificem iūssit vocārī, V. 4, 56, *wanting to make him a ring, he ordered a goldsmith to be called.* complūrēs pauperēs mortuōs suō sūmptū extulit, N. 5, 4, 3, *he buried a good many poor dead people at his own expense, i. e. had them buried.* Also in the passive: as, tondēmur, Quintil. 1, 6, 44, *we get shaved.* When greater exactness is required, having a thing done may be expressed more distinctly by faciō (1965), by cūrō (2250), or by iubeō.

## THE POTENTIAL USE.

2305. A verb is sometimes used to indicate action that can be done, and especially action that can be done at any time. This is called the *Potential Use* of the verb: as,

clārē oculis videō, Pl. MG. 630, *I can see distinctly.* proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllis locis vadō trānsitur, 1, 6, 2, *because the Rhone runs between the district of the Helvetians and Allobrogans, and the river in some places can be forded, or is fordable.* Particularly with a negative: as, apertē adūlantem nēmō nōn videt, L. 99, *an open flatterer anybody can see through.* nōn facile diiūdicātur amor vērus et fictus, Fam. 9, 16, 2, *real love and pretended love cannot easily be told apart.* ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās nōn facile didūci, nōn cunctandum existimāvit, 3, 23, 7, *when Crassus saw that his forces could not easily be divided, he thought he ought to lose no time.* quoniam prōpositum nōn tenuerat, Caes. C. 3, 65, 4, *seeing that he had not succeeded in carrying out his plan.* Sometimes this idea is expressed by the subjunctive (1554).

## THE OBLIGATORY USE.

2306. A verb is sometimes used to denote obligatory action. This is called the *Obligatory Use* of the verb: as,

paulisper commorātus est, Mil. 28, *he had to wait.* aegra trahēbant corpora, V. 3, 140, *they had to drag their sickly frames along.* carui patriā, Sest. 145, *I had to keep away from the country of my birth.* senātor populī Rōmānī pernoctāvit in pūblicō, V. 4, 25, *a senator of Rome was fain to sleep in the streets.* serēmus aliquid in dērelictō solō, Br. 16, *we shall have to sow something in an abandoned field.* erat summa inopia pābuli, adeō ut foliis equōs alerent, Caes. C. 3, 58, 3, *there was an utter lack of fodder, so that they were fain to feed their horses on leaves.*

## THE PERMISSIVE USE.

2307. A verb is sometimes used to denote permitted action. This is called the *Permissive Use* of the verb: as,

Verrēsne habēbit domī suae candēlābrum Iovis? *V. 4, 71, shall Verres be allowed to have at his house a candelabra of Jupiter?* petit ut ipse dē eō statuāt, 1, 19, 5, *he asks to be allowed to sit in judgement himself on the man.* Pisō ōrāvit ut manēret, *Ta. 2, 81, Piso asked to be allowed to stay.*



## (B.) INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

### (Ōrātiō Oblīqua.)

2308. The speech or thought of another, quoted in his own words, is called *Direct Discourse* (1723).

2309. The speech or thought of another, dependent on a verb of saying or thinking, is called *Indirect Discourse* (1723).

One may, of course, quote his own words or thoughts indirectly, as well as those of another (1726).

2310. The verb of thinking or saying is often not distinctly expressed, but only implied in the context (1725).

2311. The principles which govern the change of direct discourse into indirect discourse have been already set forth in the foregoing pages; but, for the convenience of the learner, they are here put together.

## MOOD.

### (A.) MAIN SENTENCES.

2312. Declarative sentences of direct discourse are put in the accusative with the infinitive, and interrogative and imperative sentences of direct discourse are put in the subjunctive, in indirect discourse.

(a.) For examples of declarative sentences, see 2175-2184.

(b.) Interrogative (1773): *quid vellet? cūr in suās possessionēs venīret?* I, 44, 7, *what did he mean? why this movement into his property?* from Ariovistus's reply to Caesar. *dictātor litterās ad senātum mīsit: deum benignitāte Vēiōs iam fore in potestāte populī Rōmānī; quid dē praedā faciendum cēnsērent?* L. 5, 20, 1, *the dictator sent this letter to the senate: through the bounty of the gods Vei would soon belong to the Roman nation; what did they think should be done about the booty?*

(c.) Imperative (1547): *Cicerō respondit: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant,* 5, 41, 7, *Cicero replied: if they wished to lay down their arms, let them take his advice and send envoys to Caesar. nūntius ēī domō vēnit: bellum Athēniēnsēs et Boeōtōs indīxisse Lacedaemoniīs; quārē venīre nē dubitāret,* N. 17, 4, 1, *a message reached him from home: the Athenians and Boeotians had declared war on the Lacedaemonians; so he was to come without delay.* See also 1707, 1708.

**2313.** Rhetorical questions (that is, declarations made for effect in the form of questions) in the first or third person in the direct discourse are put in the accusative with the infinitive in indirect discourse: as,

*sī veteris contumēliae oblivīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum memoriam dēpōnere posse?* I, 14, 3, *if he were inclined to disregard the old affront, could he also forget their fresh insults?* from Caesar's reply to the Helvetians. *haud mirum esse Superbō ēī inditum Rōmae cōgnōmen: an quicquam superbius esse quam lūdificārī sīc omne nōmen Latinum? cui nōn appārēre adfectāre eum imperium in Latīnōs?* L. 1, 50, 3, *no wonder Rome dubbed him 'the Proud': could there be a greater sign of pride than this mockery of the whole Latin nation? who did not see that he aspired to dominion over the Latins?* This use is not found in old Latin. It occurs once or twice in Cicero's letters and a few times in Caesar. In Livy and late writers, it is not uncommon. Such questions in the second person require the subjunctive (2312).

**2314.** Questions which are in the subjunctive in direct discourse retain the subjunctive in indirect discourse: as,

*quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset?* I, 43, 8, *who could allow them to be stripped of what they had possessed when they became the friends of the Roman nation?* (1565).

## (B.) SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

**2315.** The verb of a subordinate sentence, introduced by a relative word or a conjunctive particle, stands in the subjunctive in indirect discourse (1722).

For the indicative with *dum*, *in the time while*, retained in indirect discourse, see 1995.



sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui quod opus sit ipsi veniat in mentem; proximē accēdere illum quī alterius bene inventis obtemperet, *Clu.* 84, *they say he is the wisest man who thinks out of himself what is expedient; and that the man who avails himself of the wise devices of another comes next.* ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut quī vicissent iīs quōs vicissent, quemadmodum vellent imperārent, *1, 36, 1, to this Ariovistus answered: that it was the right of war for the conquerors to dictate to the conquered such terms as they pleased.*

2316. Relative sentences equivalent to main sentences (1835) may be put in the accusative with the infinitive: as,

ūnum medium diem fuisse, quem tōtum Galbam in cōsiderandā causā compōnendāque posuisse, *Br.* 87, *that a single day intervened and that this whole day Galba employed in studying up and arranging the case.* This use is found in Cicero, Caesar, Livy, and a few times in other authors. Not in old Latin.

2317. So also sentences introduced by certain conjunctive particles are occasionally put in the accusative with the infinitive: as,

id quod saepe dictum est: ut mare ventōrum vī agitārī atque turbārī, sic populum Rōmānum hominum sēdiōsōrum vōcibus concitārī, *Clu.* 138, *the oft-repeated saying: as the sea is ruffled and tossed by the mighty winds, so the people of Rome are stirred up by the talk of agitators.* honorificum id militibus fore, quōrum favōrem ut largitiōne et ambitū male adquirī, ita per bonās artēs haud spernendum, *Ta. H.* 1, 17, *that would be a mark of respect to the troops, and their good will, though usually won by bribery and corruption, was certainly no small gain if honourably come by.* fugere senātum testēs tabulās pūblicās cēnsūs cūiusque, cum interim obaerātam plēbem obiectārī aliīs atque aliīs hostibus, *L.* 6, 27, 6, *that the senate sought to avoid evidence of each man's property through making public returns, while at the same time the commons lay bankrupt and at the mercy of one enemy after another.* ut and quemadmodum are found with this infinitive in Cicero, Livy, and Tacitus; cum interim and sī nōn in Livy; quia in Livy and Seneca; quamquam in Livy and Tacitus; nisi fōrte in Tacitus. For quam with the infinitive, see 1898.

2318. Relative sentences which are not a part of the quotation, but an addition of the writer's, or which are a circumlocution equivalent to a substantive, are marked by the indicative (1729): as,

Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL milia, 2, 4, 10, *that they reckoned the Condrusians, Eburonians, Caeroesians and Paemanians (who are all called by one name Germans) at forty thousand.* For other examples of such sentences, see 1729.

2319. Sentences containing the thought of another, introduced by a relative pronoun or by causal, temporal, or other conjunctive particles, take the subjunctive, though not appended to the accusative with the infinitive (1725): as,

numquis, quod bonus vir esset, grātiās dīs ēgit umquam? *DN.* 3, 87, *did anybody ever thank the gods 'because he was a good man'?* (1853). *mihī loquitur nec rēctē quia tibi aurum reddidī et quia nōn tē dēfraudāverim*, *Pl. B.* 735, *he's always pitching into me because I returned you the money and 'because I did n't do you out of it'* (1856, 1853). *aedem Dīiovi vōvit, sī eō diē hostēs fūdisset*, *L.* 31, 21, 12, *he vowed a temple to infernal Jove, 'if he should rout the enemy on that day.'* For other examples, see 1725, 1852, 1853, 1884, &c.

2320. Sometimes a verb of saying or thinking is added, and is itself irrationally put in the subjunctive. For examples, see 1727.

## (2.) TENSE.

### (A.) OF THE INFINITIVE.

2321. The tenses of the infinitive follow their usual law (2218), representing the action as present, past, or future, from the speaker's point of view.

*nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendere trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōfēcisse*, *I.* 38, 1, *it was reported that Ariovistus was pressing on (2219) to seize Vesontio, and that he had done a three days' journey from his own borders (2226).* *fāma est āram esse in vestibulō templī*, *L.* 24, 3, 7, *rumour has it that there is an altar in the vestibule of the temple (2219).* *lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt*, *4.* 9, 1, *the envoys said they would report this to their countrymen (2232).* For other examples, see 2175-2203; for the infinitive equivalent of the indicative imperfect and pluperfect, see 2226, 2227.

### (B.) OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

2322. The tenses of the subjunctive follow the law of the sequence of tenses; see 1745.

The tenses are usually imperfect or pluperfect, as the verb introducing a quotation is usually past.

*Sōcratēs dicere solēbat, omnēs in eō quod scirent, satis esse eloquentēs*, *DO.* 1, 63, *Socrates used to maintain that all men were eloquent enough in a matter which they understood (1766).* *dicēbam quoad metuerēs, omnia tē prōmissūrum*, *Ph.* 2, 89, *I said that as long as you were afraid, you would promise everything (1771).* *cōgnōvit Suēbōs postea quam pōntem fieri comperissent, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse*, *4.* 19, 2, *he ascertained that after the Suebans had learned of the building of the bridge, they had sent out messengers in every direction (1772).* For other examples, see 1746-1772.

2323. But the present and perfect subjunctive are often used, especially when the main verb is present.



Alexandrum Philippus accūsat quod largitiōne benevolentiam Macedonum cōsectetur, *Off.* 2, 53, *Philip accuses Alexander of courting the favour of the Macedonians by the use of money* (1746, 1853). initium quod huic cum mātē fuerit simultātis audistis, *Clu.* 17, *you have heard the origin of the enmity which was between the defendant and his mother* (1746). Ariovistus respondit: stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod vīctōrēs vīctis imponere cōsuerint, 1, 44, 1, *Ariovistus answered that it was by the laws of war that he took the tribute which victors were wont to lay upon the vanquished* (1755). For other examples, see 1746-1772.

2324. The future of direct discourse is represented in indirect discourse by the imperfect, and the future perfect by the pluperfect subjunctive.

sē quod ē rē pūblicā esset factūrum, L. 28, 45, 3, *that he would do what should be for the interests of the state* (1766). sē nōn ante coeptūrum quam ignem in rēgiīs castrīs conspexisset, L. 30, 5, 5, *that he would not begin before he saw fire in the royal camp* (1766, 1921). The present or perfect subjunctive also is found when the main verb requires. For other examples, see 1746-1772.

### (3.) PRONOUN.

2325. ego and nōs, of direct discourse, are represented by sē in indirect discourse, and meus and noster by suus. tū and vōs, of direct discourse, are represented in indirect discourse by ille, or, when less emphatic, by is.

For the use of the reflexive pronoun, see 2338-2342.

sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum, 1, 44, 7, *that he came into Gaul before the Roman nation*, said Ariovistus of himself. sē ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, 1, 13, 6, *that they had learned from their fathers and ancestors*, said the Helvetians of themselves. trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, 1, 44, 1, *that he had crossed the Rhine not of his own accord*, was the assertion of Ariovistus. quī nisi dēcēdat, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō sed hoste habitūrum. quod sī eum interfecerit, multis sēsē principibus populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, 1, 44, 11, *that unless he withdrew, he should consider him not a friend but a foe. Why, if he killed him, he should do a favour to numerous leading men in the Roman nation.* Here Ariovistus is reported as speaking to Caesar.

## CONDITIONAL PERIODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

### (A.) PROTASIS.

2326. The protasis of every kind (2023, 2024) has the verb in the subjunctive in indirect discourse (2315).

2327. The tense of the protasis is generally imperfect or pluperfect (2322) : as,



Ariovistus respondit: sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō impediri, I, 36, I, *Ariovistus answered: if he did not dictate to the Roman nation, no more ought the Roman nation to interfere with him* (2026). quae sī fēcisset, Pompēium in Hispāniās itūrum, Caes. C. I, 10, 3, *if he did that, Pompey would go to the Spains* (2061).

2328. But indeterminate protases (2023) are sometimes put in the present or perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, even with a main secondary tense: as,

Ariovistus respondit: sī iterum experiri velint, sē parātum esse dēcertāre, I, 44, I, *Ariovistus answered that if the Romans wanted to try again, he was ready to fight it out* (2026). quī nisi dēcēdat, sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum, I, 44, II, *that unless he withdrew, he should consider him an enemy* (2054).

2329. Protases of action non-occurrent (2024) remain in the imperfect or pluperfect, even with a main primary tense.

licet Varrō Mūsās, Aelī Stilōnis sententiā, Plautinō dicat sermōne locutūrās fuisse sī Latīnē loquī vellent, Quintil. 10, I, 99, *though Varro, following Stilo's dictum, may say that the Muses would have spoken in the style of Plautus, if they had wanted to speak Latin* (2095). quaeret ab accūsātōribus quid factūrī essent, sī in eō locō fuissent, Cornif. 2, 22, *he will ask the accusers what they would have done if they had been in that predicament* (2099).

## (B.) APODOSIS.

2330. In indeterminate conditional periods (2023), the apodosis simply follows the general rule (2312): as,

Iovem sic aiunt philosophi, sī Graecē loquātur, loquī, Br. 121, *the philosophers say that this is Jove's style of speaking, if Jove speaks Greek* (2026). sīn bellō persequi perseverāret, reminisceretur pristinae virtutis Helvētiōrum, I, 13, 4, *if he persisted in following them up with war, let him call to mind the old time valour of the Helvetians* (2056). in prōvinciis intellegēbant sī is quī esset cum imperiō emere vellet, fore uti quod quisque vellet quantū vellet auferret, V. 4, 10, *in the provinces they saw that if a man clothed in authority should wish to be a buyer, he would carry off every time whatever he wished at what he wished* (2233; 2054 or 2076). futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperetur, Div. I, 101, *that unless precaution was taken, Rome would be captured* (2233, 2061). sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēpōnere posse? I, 14, 3, *if he were inclined to disregard the old affront, could he also forget their late insults?* (2313). For other examples, see 2327, 2328.

2331. In conditional periods of action non-occurrent (2024), the future participle, with *esse*, is used to represent the imperfect subjunctive active of direct discourse, and the future participle with *fuisse* to represent the pluperfect subjunctive active: as,

(a.) *Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā ; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiundī Tasgetiī cōnsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, ad castra ventūrōs esse*, 5, 29, 2, *that he thought Caesar was gone into Italy ; otherwise, the Carnutes would not have formed their design of killing Tasgetius, and the Eburones, if he were at hand, would not be assaulting the camp*. The use of the future participle with *esse* is very rare. (b.) *an Cn. Pompēiū cēnsēs māmārum rērum glōriā laetātūrum fuisse, sī scīret sē in sōlitūdine Aegyptiōrum trucidātum irī*, *Div.* 2, 22, *do you suppose that Pompey would have taken any pleasure in the fame which his peerless exploits brought him if he had known that he was going to be butchered in the wilds of Egypt?*

2332. The perfect infinitive is exceptionally used ; this is based upon the indicative in apodosis (2104).

*memoriā teneō solitū ipsum nārārē sē studium philosophiae ācrius hausisse, nī prūdētia mātis incēsum animū cōercuisset*, *Ta. Agr.* 4, *I remember that he used to say that he had drunk in the study of philosophy with greater eagerness, had not his discreet mother checked his ardent soul* (2105 or 2107).

2333. *possum*, in the apodosis of a conditional period of action non-occurrent (2101), is regularly put in the perfect infinitive in indirect discourse : as,

*Platōnem existimō, sī genus forēse dīcendī trāctārē voluisset, gravissimē potuisse dīcere*, *Off.* 1, 4, *I think that if Plato had only chosen to cultivate forensic eloquence, he might have been a most impressive speaker* (2103). *cum dicerent sē potuisse in amplissimū locū pervenīre, sī sua studia ad honōrēs petendōs cōferre voluissent*, *Clu.* 153, *saying they might have risen to the proudest position, if they had only chosen to apply their energies to a political career* (2103).

2334. *futūrum fuisse ut* with the imperfect subjunctive is often used in the passive instead of the future participle with *fuisse* (2331) : as,

*Theophrastus accūsāsse nātūram dīcitur quod hominibus tam exiguam vitā dedisset : quōrum sī aetās potuisset esse longinquior, futūrum fuisse ut omnī doctrinā hominū vitā ērudīrētur*, *TD.* 3, 69, *it is said that Theophrastus took nature to task 'for giving man such a short life ; if the period could have been longer, man's life would have been informed with knowledge of every sort'* (2099).

## (C.) PRONOUNS.

### THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

2335. For the use of the nominatives *ego tū, nōs vōs*, see 1029. The genitive plurals *nostrū* and *vestrū* are used as partitive, *nostrī* and *vestrī* as objective genitives : as,



nēmō nostrūm, *RA.* 55, *not one of us* (1242). ab utrīsq̄ vestrūm, *Fam.* 11, 21, 5, *by each of you* (1243). grāta mihī vehementer est memoria nostrī tua, *Fam.* 12, 17, 1, *your remembrance of me is exceedingly agreeable to me* (1260). nostrī nōsmet paenitet, *T. Ph.* 172, *we're discontented with our lot* (1283). For the adjective instead of the possessive or objective genitive, see 1234, 1262.

### THE REFLEXIVE sē AND suus.

**2336.** The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the verb: as,

fugae sēsē mandābant, 2, 24, 2, *they betook themselves to flight*. animō servit, nōn sibi, *Pl. Tri.* 308, *he serves his passions, not his better self*. est amāns suī virtūs, *L.* 98, *virtue is fond of itself*. dūcit sēcum ūnā virginem, *T. Eu.* 229, *he is leading a girl along with him*. Caesar cōpiās suās dīvisit, *Caes. C.* 3, 97, 3, *Caesar divided his forces*. For sē ipse, see 2376; for sē or suus quisque, 2397.

**2337.** The reflexive sometimes refers to a word not the subject, when that word is specially emphasized or easily made out from the context. This holds chiefly of **suus**, which is used with great freedom: as,

Alexandrum uxor sua occīdit, *Inv.* 2, 144, *Alexander was murdered by his own wife*. dēsinant insidiārī domī suae cōsuli, *C.* 1, 32, *let them cease to waylay the consul in his own house and home*. suās rēs Syrācūsānīs restituit, *L.* 29, 1, 17, *he restored their property to the Syracuse people*.

**2338.** In the construction of the accusative with the infinitive (2175), the reflexive is regularly used when the subject of the infinitive refers to the subject of the verb: as,

Vārus imperium sē habēre dīxit, *Lig.* 22, *Varus said that he had authority*. id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, 7, 26, 2, *they hoped to accomplish it* (2235).

**2339.** The reflexive, in this construction, sometimes refers to an emphasized word not the formal subject of the verb: as,

canum custōdia quid significat aliud nisi sē ad hominum commoditātēs esse generātōs? *DN.* 2, 158, *the watchfulness of the dog—does not it show that he was created for the convenience of man?*

**2340.** When the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the verb, the reflexive sometimes refers to the subject of the verb, sometimes to that of the infinitive: as,

Ariovistus respondit omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse, 1, 44, 1, *Ariovistus answered that all the states of Gaul had come to attack him, i.e. Ariovistus*. nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, 1, 36, 6, *that no man had contended with him without his own undoing*; sēcum refers to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb respondit, suā to nēminem.



**2341.** In subordinate subjunctive clauses of purpose, indirect discourse, or indirect question, the reflexive refers to the subject of the main sentence : as,

huic mandat, ut ad sē quam primum revertātur, 4, 21, 2, *he instructs him to come back to himself as soon as possible.* excruciābit mē erus, quia sibi nōn dixerim, Pl. MG. 859, *my master'll torture me 'because I have not told him.'* Paetus omnīs librōs, quōs frāter suus reliquisset, mihī dōnāvit, Att. 2, 1, 12, *Paetus made me a present of all the books 'that his brother left.'*

**2342.** The reflexive, in such subordinate clauses, sometimes refers to an emphatic word not the main subject : as,

identidem fēlicem Priamum vocābat, quod superstes omnium suōrum exstitisset, Suet. Tib. 62, *he was for ever calling Priam 'Fortune's darling, because he outlived all his kith and kin.'*

**2343.** The reflexive referring to the main subject is sometimes irregularly used in subordinate indicative clauses.

Epaminōndās ēī, quī sibi successerat, exercitum nōn trādidit, Inv. 1, 55, *Epaminondas did not deliver the army to his successor.* centum bovēs militibus dōnō dedit, quī sēcum fuerant, L. 7, 37, 3, *he gave a hundred oxen to the soldiers who had been with him.*

### EQUIVALENTS FOR A RECIPROCAL PRONOUN.

**2344.** The place of a reciprocal pronoun, *each other*, is supplied by *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*, *inter sē*, or by *alter* or *alius* followed by another case of the same word : as,

*inter nōs nātūrā cōniūctī sumus*, Fin. 3, 66, *we are united with each other by nature.* *Cicerōnēs puerī amant inter sē*, Att. 6, 1, 12, *the Cicero boys are fond of each other.* *cum alius aliī subsidium ferret*, 2, 26, 2, *when they were helping each other.* For *uterque*, see 2400. The reciprocal idea is sometimes expressed by the form of the verb : as, *fulvā lūctantur harēnā*, V. 6, 643, *they wrestle with each other on the yellow sand* (1487).

**2345.** From Livy on, *invicem inter sē*, *invicem sē*, or *invicem* alone, is often used in the expression of reciprocal relations : as,

*invicem inter sē grātantēs*, L. 9, 43, 17, *mutually congratulating each other.* *invicem sē antepōnendō*, Ta. Agr. 6, *mutually preferring one another.* *ut invicem ārdentius diligāmus*, Plin. Ep. 7, 20, 7, *that we may love each other more ardently.*

### THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

**2346.** The possessive of the personal and reflexive pronoun is regularly omitted, unless it is required for emphasis or contrast : as,

*ōra manūsque tuā lavimus*, Fērōnia, lymphā, H. S. 1, 5, 24, *our hands and faces in thy rill, Feronia, we bathe.* The possessive sometimes has the meaning of *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable* ; as, *suō locō dīcam*, Quintil. 1, 1, 36, *I shall tell in the proper place.* For the possessive pronoun used instead of the possessive or objective genitive, see 1234, 1262.

## THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

## hīc.

2347. hīc points out what is near the speaker in place, time, or thought: as,

hī domum mē ad sē auferent, *Pl. Men.* 847, *these fellows will hale me off to their house.* nōn mē existimāvi in hōc sermōne ūsque ad hanc aetātem esse ventūrum, *Br.* 232, *I did not think that in this discourse I should get down to the present generation.* rēliquum omne tempus hūius annī, *V.* 1, 30, *all the rest of this year.*

2348. hīc sometimes points out the speaker with pathos, or with emphasis, particularly in comedy.

haec arma et hunc militem propitiō flūmine accipiās, *L.* 2, 10, 11, *receive these arms and this soldier in thy gracious stream,* the prayer of Horatius Cocles to Father Tiber. tibī erunt parāta verba, huic hominī verbera, *T. Hau.* 356, *you'll get a chiding, this child a hiding.* fēcisset nī haec praesēnsisset canēs, *Pl. Tri.* 172, *and he'd have done it, unless this dog had got scent of it in time,* where the speaker means himself.

2349. The neuter plural haec sometimes means *the realm, our country, our state, the [Roman] world*: as,

haec, quae iam pridem vastāre studēs, *C.* 1, 21, *the realm which you have long sought to lay in ruins.* quī haec dēlēre cōnātī sunt, *C.* 4, 7, *who have tried to destroy the state.* servus est nēmō quī nōn haec stāre cupiat, *C.* 4, 16, *there lives no slave that wills not our country should abide.*

2350. hīc, as expressing a familiar, every-day thing, occasionally has a shade of contempt, either alone, or with volgāris, cottidiānus or the like: as,

mittit hominī mūnera satis largē, haec ad ūsum domesticum, *V.* 4, 62, *he sent him some presents — pretty liberal ones, commonish things for household use.* mittō hāsce artis volgāris, coquōs, pistōrēs, *RA.* 134, *I'll skip your everyday common occupations — such as cooks, bakers, &c., &c.* taedet cottidiānārum hārum fōrmārum, *T. Eu.* 297, *I'm sick of your everyday beauties.*

2351. When hīc relates to the words of a sentence, it points out what has preceded or is to follow, or emphasizes a word referred to by a preceding relative.

For hīc used to introduce a new sentence, see 2129.

haec habuī dē senectūte quae dicerem, *CM.* 85, *this was what I had to say on Old Age.* sed haec hāctenus; nunc ad ostenta veniāmus, *Div.* 2, 53, *so much for this; let us now go on to portents.* fēcit pācem hīs condiciōnibus, *N.* 8, 3, 1, *he made peace on the following terms.* dicitur locūtus in hanc ferē sententiam esse, *L.* 6, 40, 2, *it is said that he spoke to somewhat the following effect.* quaesierat ex mē Scīpiō quidnam sentirem dē hōc quod duo sōlēs vīsōs esse cōstāret, *RP.* 1, 19, *Scipio had asked me what I thought about this, that it was generally agreed that two suns had been seen.*



**2352.** *hic* and *ille* are often opposed, particularly in contrasts of classes: as,

*laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illis*, H. S. 1, 2, 11, *one side praises him, the other condemns. illud est album, hōc dulce, canōrum illud, hōc bene olēns, hōc asperum*, Ac. 2, 21, *that is white, this is sweet, that sonorous, this fragrant, this rough. ōrātor, nōn ille volgāris sed hic excellēns*, O. 45, *an orator, not of the common sort, but the superior one of whom we are speaking.*

**2353.** In transitions, *ille* introduces a new thing, *hic* denotes the *forementioned*: as,

*sed haec vetera; illud vērō recēns, Caesarem meō cōnsiliō interfectum*, Ph. 2, 25, *but this is all ancient history; here, however, is something new, that Caesar was killed at my suggestion.*

**2354.** When *hic* and *ille* refer to two different persons or things named in the sentence, *hic* commonly refers to the nearer word, *ille* to the remoter word; or *hic* sometimes refers to what is nearer the mind of the speaker, even though it be remoter in the sentence.

(a.) *Caesar beneficiis ac mūnificentiā māgnus habēbātur, integritāte vitāe Catō. Ille mānsuētūdine et misericordiā clārus factus, huic sevērītās dignitātem addiderat*, S. C. 54, 2, *Caesar was esteemed great for his liberality and generosity, Cato for his unsullied life. The former became famous through his humanity and mercy, the latter's dignity was heightened by his austerity.* (b.) *cavē Catōnī antepōnās nē istum quidem ipsum quem Apollō, ut ais, sapientissimum iūdicāvit: hūius enim facta, illius dicta laudantur*, L. 10, *suffer not Cato to find a rival even in your man himself, whom, as you say, Apollo declared wisest of mankind; for our Cato is renowned for deeds, the other for doctrines.*

**2355.** *hic* and *ille* are used together, chiefly in poetry, to explain something past by a present thing: as,

*hunc illum poscere fāta reor*, V. 7, 272, *this I think is he whom the fates require. hunc illum fātis externā ab sēde profectum portendī generum*, V. 7, 255, *this was the man whom destiny foretold should fare from foreign home to be his son-in-law.*

### iste.

**2356.** *iste* points out something near to, belonging to, or imputed to the person addressed: as,

*cum istā sis auctōritāte, nōn dēbēs adripere maledictum ex triviō*, Mur. 13, *carrying the influence that you do, you ought not to take to street-corner abuse. multae istārum arborum meā manū sunt satae*, CM. 59, *many of the trees you see there were planted by my own hand. salem istum quō caret vestra nātiō, inridendīs nōbīs nōlītōte cōnsūmere*, ND. 2, 74, *do not waste in ridiculing us that wit which your fraternity sadly needs.* Often with *tuus* or *vester*: as, *isdem hic sapiēns dē quō loquor oculis quibus iste vester intuēbitur*, Ac. 2, 105, *the sage of whom I speak will look with the same eyes as the sage you boast of.*



2357. From its use in addressing opponents or in talking at them, *iste* often expresses contempt: as,

*tū istīs faucibus, istīs lateribus, istā gladiatōriā tōtius corporis firmitate*, *Ph.* 2, 63, *you with that gullet of yours, those swollen flanks, that prizefighter's bulky make-up. nōn erit ista amicitia, sed mercatūra quaedam*, *ND.* 1, 122, *such a thing will not be a friendship, but a sort of traffic.*

*ille.*

2358. *ille* points to what is remote in place, time, or thought: as,

*ergō illi intellegunt quid Epicūrus dicat, ego nōn intellegō?* *Fin.* 2, 13, *do those gentlemen then understand what Epicurus means and I not?* *populus Rōmānus nihil aequē atque illam veterem iūdiciorum vim gravitatemque requirit*, *Caecil.* 8, *the Roman people miss nothing so much as the ancient vigour and firmness attaching to public trials. his autem de rebus sol mē ille admonuit ut brevior essem*, *DO.* 3, 209, *but on these topics yonder sun has warned me to be pretty brief.* For other examples, see 2352-2355.

2359. *ille* is used to point out a celebrity, often one of the past. So, particularly without a proper name, in allusive style, referring to what is famed in story.

(a.) *hic est ille Dēmōsthenēs*, *TD.* 5, 103, *this is the famous Demosthenes. Athēniēnsis ille Themistoclēs*, *DO.* 2, 299, *Themistocles the great, of Athens. illud Solōnis*, *CM.* 50, *Solon's memorable words. Mēdēa illa*, *IP.* 22, *Medea famed in story.* (b.) *viribus ille cōfisis periit*, *J.* 10, 10, *the man in the story lost his life through confidence in his strength. illae regiæ lacrimæ*, *Plin. Ep.* 3, 7, 13, *the monarch's historic tears, of Xerxes.*

2360. Indicating change of subject, *ille* is *this other man*. In such cases it is often best expressed in English by a proper name or a descriptive word.

*ad sē adulēscētem iūssit venīre. at ille, ut ingressus est, cōfestim gladium dēstrinxit*, *Off.* 3, 112, *he gave orders to admit the young man. But this other, the moment he entered, drew his sword. rūsticus expectat dum dēfluat amnis: at ille lābitur et lābētur*, *H. E.* 1, 2, 42, *he is a peasant waiting for the river to go down: but the river flows and will flow on.*

2361. In concessions, *ille* often precedes *quidem*; in translation no pronoun is required.

*librī scripti incōnsideratē ab optimis illis quidem viris, sed nōn satis ēruditis*, *TD.* 1, 6, *books rashly written by men respectable enough but of insufficient education. est tarda illa medicīna, sed tamen magna*, *TD.* 3, 35, *it is a powerful remedy, though slow in its working. hic, is, and iste* are used rarely in this way.

2362. In poetry *ille* may serve: (1.) To repeat a thing with emphasis: as,

*arma virumque canō Trōiæ quī prīmus ab ōris Italiam vēnit, multum ille et terris iactātus et altō*, *V.* 1, 1, *arms and the man I sing, from Troja's shore the first to come to Italy, much tossed that man by land and sea.*

2363. (2.) To emphasize the second of two ideas : as,

nunc dextrā ingemināns ictūs, nunc ille sinistrā, V. 5, 457, *now with his right redoubling blows, now mighty with his left.* nōn tamen Euryalī, non ille oblitus amōrum, V. 5, 334, *still not Euryalus forgetting, no, not he his love!*

2364. (3.) As a provisional subject, to anticipate the real subject, and keep the attention in suspense till the real subject comes with emphasis : as,

ac velut ille canum morsū dē mōntibus altīs āctus aper substitit, V. 10, 707, *and e'en as he, goaded by bite of hounds from mountains high, the boar hath paused.*

## THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN.

is.

2365. *is* refers to something named in the context. When some feeling is to be expressed, such as admiration, or oftener contempt, *homo* is often put for *is*.

(a.) petit ā rēge et eum plūribus verbīs rogat ut id ad sē mittat, V. 4, 64, *he solicits the king and begs him at considerable length to send it to him.* nōndum mātūrus imperiō Ascanius erat, tamen id imperium ēī ad pūberem aetātem incolume mānsit, L. 1, 3, 1, *Ascanius was not yet old enough for the throne, but that throne was kept safe for him till he came of age.* (b.) ego hominem callidiōrem vidī nēminem quam Phormiōnem. veniō ad hominem, ut dicerem argentum opus esse, T. Ph. 591, *a shrewder man than Phormio I never saw, not I! I went to him to tell him that I needed money.* nēquam esse hominem et levem sciēbam, Sest. 22, *I knew the fellow was worthless and frivolous.*

2366. (1.) *is* refers to something named before or after : as,

ēius omnis ōrātiō versāta est in eō, ut scriptum plūrimum valēre oportēre dēfenderet, DO. 1, 244, *his whole speech turned on the contention that the written word should be paramount.* Melitēnsis Diodōrus est; *is* Lilybaei multōs iam annōs habitat, V. 4, 38, *Diodorus is from Melita; he has lived many years at Lilybaeum.* For other examples of *is* used to connect sentences, see 2129.

2367. With a connective, *is* denotes an important addition : as,

vincula et ea sempiterna, C. 4, 7, *imprisonment and that too perpetual.* annum iam audientem Cratippum idque Athēnīs, Off. 1, 1, *after a year's study under Cratippus, and that too in Athens.* erant in eō plūrimae litterae nec eae volgārēs, Br. 265, *he was a man of very deep reading and that of no common sort either.*

2368. (2.) *is* indicates something explained or restricted by a relative or indefinite, *quī, quicumque, sī quis* : as,

haec omnia is fēcī, quī sodālis Dolābellae eram, *Fam.* 12, 14, 7, *all this I did, I that was Dolabella's bosom friend* (1807). ūnus ex eō numerō quī ad caedem parātī erant, *S. I.* 35, 6, *one of the number that were ready to do murder* (1804). neque is sum quī mortis periculō terreor, 5, 30, 2, *but I am not the man to be scared by danger of death, no, not I* (1818). quicumque is est, ēī mē profiteor inimicum, *Fam.* 10, 31, 3, *whoever he may be, I proclaim myself his enemy* (1814). cum ipse Aliēnus ex eā facultāte, si quam habet, aliquantum detrāctūrus sit, *Caecil.* 49, *seeing that even Alienus is to suppress some part of that eloquence, if any he may have.* See also 1795, 1798. For id quod, see 1811.

2369. For the use of is instead of a relative repeated in a different case, see 1833.

2370. is sometimes is loosely used for the reflexive sē (2341); here the point of view of the writer shows itself.

Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit, quae eum Myndum prōsequerētur, *V.* 1, 86, *he asked the Milesians for a ship to escort him to Myndus.* suōs omnēs castris continuit ignēsque fieri prohibuit, quō occultior esset eius adventus, *Caes. C.* 3, 30, 5, *he confined his troops to camp and forbade the kindling of fires, in order to keep his coming a greater secret.*

## THE PRONOUN OF IDENTITY.

### īdem.

2371. īdem, *the same*, often connects two different predicates to the same person or thing. In this case, it may be variously rendered by *likewise*, *also*, *all the same*, *on the other hand*, *at once*, *very*, *nevertheless*.

ūtēbātur eō cibō quī et suāvissimus esset et īdem facillimus ad concoquendum, *Fin.* 2, 64, *he made use of such food as was both very dainty and likewise very easy to digest.* ita fiet ut nōn omnēs quī Atticē, eīdem bene dīcant, *Br.* 291, *so it will be found that not all who speak Attic are also good speakers.* multī quī ut iūs suum et libertātem tenērent volnera excēpērunt fortiter et tulērunt, īdem omissā contentiōne dolōrem morbi ferre nōn possunt, *TD.* 2, 65, *many who have met heroically and endured wounds, to preserve their rights and their freedom, are nevertheless, when no contest is involved, unable to bear the pain of a disease.*

2372. īdem is often used with other pronouns, hīc, iste, istūc, ille : as,

haec eadem centuriōnibus mandābant, 7, 17, 8, *they confided these same sentiments to their centurions.* multae aliae idem istūc cupiunt, *Pl. MG.* 1040, *many other ladies want just what you want.*

2373. *The same as* is expressed by īdem followed by quī, atque or ac, ut, quasi, cum, sometimes in poetry by the dative.



*idem* sum quī semper fui, Pl. *Am.* 447, *I'm the same man I've always been.* *pōmārium sēminārium ad eundem modum atque oleāgineum facitō*, Cato, *RR.* 48, *make your fruit-tree nursery in the same way as your nursery for olive-trees* (1653). *eīdem ferē verbīs ut disputātum est*, *TD.* 2, 9, *in pretty much the same words as were used in the actual argument* (1937). *ut eōdem locō rēs sit quasi ea pecūnia lēgāta nōn esset*, *Leg.* 2, 53, *so that the position is the same as if the money had not been bequeathed* (2120). *tibī mēcum in eōdem est pistrīnō vivendum*, *DO.* 2, 144, *you must live in the same mill as I.* *Homērus eādē aliīs sōpītu' quiētest*, *Lucr.* 3, 1037, *Homer sleeps the same sleep as others.*

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

### *ipse.*

2374. *ipse*, *self*, is used in contrasts.

2375. *ipse* may contrast the chief person with subordinates, or a person with any thing belonging to him.

*Catilīna ipse pertimuit, profūgit; hī quid exspectant?* *C.* 2, 6, *Catiline, their head, has fled in abject terror; his minions here, what wait they for?* *ēī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam māgnīs itineribus contendit*, *I.* 10, 3, *he put Labienus, his lieutenant, in charge of the fortification he had made; he hurried, himself, to Italy with forced marches.* *tēmētī nihil adlātum intellegō: : at iam adferētur, sī ā forō ipso redierit*, Pl. *Aul.* 355, *I see there's no wine brought: : but it soon will be, if the governor comes back from down town.* '*ipse dixit;*' '*ipse*' autem erat *Pythagorās*, *DN.* 1, 10, '*the old man said so;*' now '*the old man*' was *Pythagoras.* *nāvis tantum iactūrā factā, incolumēs ipsī ēvāsērunt*, *L.* 30, 25, 8, *the vessel only was lost, and the sailors escaped in safety.*

2376. *ipse* is often used with personals and reflexives agreeing with the emphatic word. But the nominative is usually preferred, especially when *ipse* stands before the other pronoun, or when it stands after *per mē*, *per sē*. After *mēmet*, *nōbīsmet*, *nōsmet*, &c., it agrees with these words.

(a.) *neque enim potest exercitum is continēre imperātor, quī sē ipsum nōn continet*, *IP.* 38, *for no commander can keep his army under control who does not keep his own self under control.* *mīles frātre suum, dein sē ipsum interfēcit*, *Ta. H.* 3, 51, *a soldier slew his own brother, then himself.* (b.) *ipse sē quisque diligit*, *L.* 80, *every man loves himself.* *bellum per sē ipse, iniūssū populī ac senātūs, fēcit*, *L.* 1, 49, 7, *he made war on his own responsibility, without orders from the people and senate.* *Iūnius necem sibi ipse cōnscivit*, *DN.* 2, 7, *Junius killed himself.* *nōn egeō medicīnā, mē ipse cōnsolor*, *L.* 10, *I need no medicine, I am my own comforter.* (c.) *ut nōbīsmet ipsis imperēmus*, *TD.* 2, 47, *that we should govern ourselves.*

2377. *ipse* alone sometimes stands for an emphatic *sē* or *suus*: as,

pertimuērunt nē ab ipsīs dēscīsceret et cum suīs in grātiā redīret, N. 7, 5, 1, *they were much afraid that he would abandon them and come into favour with his compatriots again.* ea molestissimē ferre hominēs dēbent, quae ipsōrum culpā contrācta sunt, QFr. 1, 1, 2, *people should be most vexed at things which are brought about through fault of their own.*

2378. ipse is used in many combinations where *self* is an inadequate translation. It may sometimes be translated by:

2379. (1.) *Actual, positive, even.*

habet certōs suī studiōsōs, quōs valētūdō modo bona sit, tenuitās ipsa dēlectat, Br. 64, *he has a clique of admirers, who are charmed by positive scragginess, provided the health be good.* hōc ipsum ēlegantius pōnī meliusque potuit, Fin. 2, 100, *even this might have been put more logically and better.*

2380 (2.) *Regular, proper, real.*

flagrantem invidiā propter interitum C. Gracchī ipse populus Rōmānus periculō liberāvit, Sest. 140, *though greatly detested in consequence of the death of Gracchus, he was acquitted by the Roman people proper.* cīvēs Rōmānī permulti in illō oppidō cōniūctissimō animō cum ipsīs Agrigentīnis vivunt, V. 4, 93, *a great many Romans live in that town in most friendly relations with the natives of Agrigentum.*

2381. (3.) *As well, likewise, too, for which, from Livy on, et ipse is used.*

hōc Rīpheus, hōc ipse Dymās, omnisque iuventūs laeta facit, V. 2, 394, *this Rīpheus doth, this Dymas too, and all the youth alert.* cōgitatiō Locrōs urbem recipiendī, quae sub dēfectiōnem Ītaliae dēscīverat et ipsa ad Poenōs, L. 29, 6, 1, *a project for recovering the city of Locri, which, on the revolt of Italy, had likewise gone over to the Carthaginians.*

2382. (4.) *Alone, mere.*

nōn solum adventus malī, sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem, IP. 15, *not only the coming of misfortune, but even the mere dread of it brings disaster.*

2383. (5.) *Exactly, just, with numerals and dates, or right, of place.*

annīs LXXXVI ipsīs ante mē cōnsulem, Br. 61, *exactly 86 years before my consulship.* Kalendīs ipsīs Novembribus, C. 1, 8, *on the 1st of November precisely.* in ipsō vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomarus interficitur, 5, 58, 6, *right at the ford Indutiomarus is caught and killed.* suprā ipsum balneum habitō, Sen. Ep. 56, 1, *I live right over a bath.*

2384. (6.) *Of oneself, voluntarily, of one's own motion.*

valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuērunt, Div. 1, 74, *the temple-door suddenly opened of itself.* Catilinam vel ēiēcimus vel ēmisimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus, C. 2, 1, *we have driven Catiline out, or let him out, or, when he was going out of his own motion, wished him god-speed.*

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

## uter and quis.

2385. *uter*, *whether? which?* is used in questions about two things; *quis* and *quī*, *who? what?* in questions about more than two, though sometimes loosely of two things.

*uter est insānior hōrum?* H. S. 2, 3, 102, *which of these is the greater crank?* *praeclārē apud eundem est Platōnem, similiter facere eōs quī inter sē contenderent uter potius rem pūblicam administrāret, ut sī nautae certārent quis eōrum potissimum gubernāret,* Off. 1, 87, *in the same Plato is the excellent saying that for people to fall out with one another about which of two men should manage a state, were just as if the crew of a ship should quarrel about which of them should be pilot.* *ut quem velīs, nesciās,* Att. 16, 14, 1, *so that you don't know which to choose,* as between Octavian and Antony.

2386. *quis* and *quid* ask to have a thing named; *quī* and *quod* to have it described. But see 685.

*quis Diōnem Syracosium doctrīnīs omnibus expolīvit? nōn Platō?* DO. 3, 139, *who refined Syracusan Dio with learning of every sort? was it not Plato?* *quid rīdēs,* H. S. 2, 5, 3, *why dost thou laugh?* (1144). *quis fuit igitur? : : iste Chaerea. : : quī Chaerea?* T. Eu. 823, *who was he then? : : your precious Chaerea. : : what Chaerea?* *quem frūctum petentēs scīre cupimus illa quō modō moveantur?* Fin. 3, 37, *with what practical end in view do we seek to know how you bodies in the sky keep in motion?*

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

2387. The relative pronoun has already been treated; see 1792-1837.

## THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

*quis* or *quī*; *quispiam*.

2388. *quis* or *quī*, *a, some, somebody*, always stands after one or more words of the sentence. *quis* or *quī* is used after *sī* (*nisi, sīve*), *nē*, *num*, *utrum*, *an*, *quō*, or *quandō*, in preference to *aliquis*, unless emphasis is intended.

*dixerit quis,* Off. 3, 76, *somebody may say.* *malum quod tibi dī dabunt,* Pl. Am. 563, *some curse the gods will bring upon thee.* *hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant,* 1, 48, 6, *if there was ever any sharpish work, these men would rally; if a man fell from his horse, they would close round him.* *praecipit atque interdicit ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem vulneret,* 5, 58, 4, *he charges them and forbids them; they were all to assail Indutiomarus alone; and nobody was to wound anybody* (2402).



2389. *quispiam*, *a*, some, one or another.

*fōrsitan quispiam dixerit*, *Off.* 3, 29, *peradventure somebody may say*. *quispiam dīcet*, *V.* 3, 111, *somebody will say*. *cum quaequam cohors impetum fēcerat*, *hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant*, 5, 35, 1, *every time one or another cohort charged, the enemy fled back quick speed* (2394).

*aliquis*.

2390. *aliquis* or *aliquī* *some one, some one or other*, has always some affirmative emphasis, and is opposed to the idea of *all, much, none* : as,

*nōn enim dēclāmātōrem aliquem dē lūdō, sed perfectissimum quaerimus*, *O.* 47, *for it is not some spouter from school that we aim to find, but the ideal orator*. *omnēs ut aliquam perniciosam bēstiam fugiēbant*, *Clu.* 41, *everybody avoided him, like some dangerous wild animal or other*. *audē aliquid Gyarīs dīgnum sī vīs esse aliquid*, *J.* 1, 73, *venture some deed that deserves transportation, if you care to be something grand*. *nōn sine aliquā spē*, *D.* 7, *not without some hope*. *quaerō sitne aliqua actiō an nūlla*, *Caec.* 33, *I ask whether there is some ground for an action or none*. *num igitur aliquis dolor post mortem est?* *TD.* 1, 82, *is there, then, some sense of pain after death?* With emphasis after *sī* (2388) : *sī aliquid dē summā gravitatē Pompēius, multum de cupiditatē Caesar remississet, aliquam rem pūblicam nōbīs habēre licuisset*, *Ph.* 13, 2, *if Pompey had sacrificed really something of his importance, and Caesar a good deal of his ambition, we might have had what would have been to some degree a common-wealth*.

2391. *aliquis* is sometimes equivalent to *aliquis alius* : as,

*cum M. Pisōne et cum Q. Pompēiō aut cum aliquō*, *Br.* 310, *with Piso or Pompey or some other man*. *ea mihi cottidiē aut tūre aut vīnō aut aliquī semper supplicat*, *Pl. Aul. prol.* 23, *she always offers me incense or wine or something else every day*.

*quīdam*.

2392. *quīdam*, *a*, *a certain*, denotes a thing which we cannot describe or do not care to.

*nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit* : *plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere*, 1, 42, 6, *one of the privates of the Tenth said a very dry thing: that 'Caesar was doing more than he engaged to.'* *accurrit quīdam nōtus mihi nōmine tantum*, *H. S.* 1, 9, 3, *up trots a man I knew by name alone*. *assimilis quīdam mūgituī sonus*, *Suet. Galb.* 18, *a mysterious sound like the lowing of a cow*. *vidēmus nātūram suō quōdam itinere ad ūltimum pervenīre*, *DN.* 2; 35, *nature reaches perfection by a kind of road of her own*. Often in translations from Greek : as, *aliis librīs ratiōnem quandam per omnem nātūram rērum pertinentem vī dīvinā esse adfectam putat*, *DN.* 1, 36, *in other works he supposes 'a kind of Reason pervading all nature and endowed with divine power, of Zeno's doctrine*.

**2393.** *quīdam* is often used to soften an exaggeration or a metaphor, sometimes to denote contempt.

*ēloquentissimōs hominēs innumerābilis quōsdam nōminābat, DO. I, 91, great speakers he named, absolutely without number. ad omnīs enim meōs impetūs quasi mūrus quīdam boni nōmen imperātōris oppōnitur, V. 5, 2, for against all assaults of mine the name of a good commander is set up, like a regular wall. sed aliud quoddam filum ōrātiōnis tuae, L. 25, but there is quite a different fibre to your speech. nōn est eōrum urbānitāte quādam quasi colōrāta ōrātiō, Br. 170, their language lacks the tinge of an indefinable metropolitan element. Theomnāstus quīdam, homo ridiculē insānus, V. 4, 148, a person of the name of Theomnastus, an absurd, crack-brained creature.*

### quisque.

**2394.** *quisque*, each, each in particular, each by himself, applies what is stated of all to each several case, out of a number more than two.

*laudātī prō cōntiōne omnēs sunt, dōnātique prō meritō quisque, L. 38, 23, 11, they were collectively commended in assembly convened, and received presents, each in proportion to his deserts. quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat, 5, 34, 2, as the cohorts successively charged, a great number of the enemy fell every time (2389). mēns cūiusque, is est quisque, nōn ea figūra quae digitō dēmōnstrārī potest, RP. 6, 26, the mind of a man is always the man, and not that shape which can be pointed out by the finger.*

**2395.** *quisque* is sometimes used in a relative and demonstrative sentence both.

*quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat, Off. I, 21, let every man keep what he has got. id enim est cūiusque proprium, quō quisque fruitur atque ūtitur, Fam. 7, 30, 2, for that is always a man's property which he has the enjoyment and use of.*

**2396.** In a complex sentence, consisting of a main and a relative sentence, *quisque* is usually expressed but once, and then in the unemphatic relative sentence. In English, the equivalent of *quisque* goes with the main sentence.

*nēmō fuit quī nōn surrēxerit, tēlumque quod cuique fōrs offerēbat, adriperit, V. 4, 95, not a man but sprang from his bed, and seized in every instance such a weapon as chance threw in his way. theātrum cum cōmūne sit, rēctē tamen dīcī potest, ēius esse eum locum, quem quisque occupārit, Fin. 3, 67, though the theatre is open to all, still it may be said with perfect propriety, that each spectator is entitled to the seat he has taken. Messānam ut quisque nostrūm vēnerat, haec vīsere solēbat, V. 4, 5, any Roman, who went to Messana, invariably went to see these statues (1939). eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat, 7, 48, 2, as they successively arrived, each man of them took his stand under the wall.*

**2397.** *quisque* is often used with *sē* or *suus*, superlatives, and ordinals, holding an unemphatic place *after* these words: as,



ipse sē quisquē dīligit, *L. 80, a man always loves his own self.* suos quoique mōs, *T. Ph. 454, every man his own way.* huic prō sē quisque nostrū medērī velle dēbēmus, *L. Agr. 1, 26, this evil we ought to wish to remedy, according to our several abilities.* optimum quidque rārissimum est, *Fin. 2, 81, ever the fairest is the rarest.* nam in forō vix decumus quisquest, quī ipse sēsē nōverit, *Pl. Ps. 973, for in the marketplace there's scarce one man in every ten that knows himself.* quīntō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cēnsētur, *V. 2, 139, at the end of every four years all Sicily is assessed.* quamquam prīmum quidque explicēmus, *Fam. 12, 1, 1, but stay — let me explain things successively; or, one thing after another.* litterās mīsit, ut is ānulus ad sē prīmō quōque tempore adferrētur, *V. 4, 58, he sent a letter directing said ring to be sent to him without delay.*

2398. In old Latin quisque is sometimes equivalent to quicumque or quisquis, *whoever*: as, quisque obviam huic occesserit irātō, vāpulābit, *Pl. As. 404, whoever meets him in his wrath will catch it.* In cūiusque generis and cūiusque modī, it means *any and every*: as, tot hominēs cūiusque modī, *V. 4, 7, so many people of every sort, i. e. cuicuiusmodī.* quisquis for quisque is sometimes found in old Latin, in Cicero rarely: as, cum prōcessit paulum et quātenus quicquid sē attingat perspicere coepit, *Fin. 5, 24, when it has progressed a little and has begun to discover how far each thing affects it.*

### uterque.

2399. *uterque, each*, is used of two individuals, and *utriūque* of two sets or parties. But sometimes *utriūque* is used of two individuals.

(a.) ut illa nātūra caelestis et terrā vacat et ūmōre, sic utriusque hārum rērum hūmānus animus est expers, *TD. 1, 65, even as the heavenly nature is free from the earthy and the humid, so the soul of man has no part in either of these qualities (1243).* nūtū tremefactus uterque est polus, *O. F. 2, 489, at his nod trembled each pole (1243).* Aetoliōrum utraeque manūs Hēraclēam sēsē inclūsērunt, *L. 36, 16, 5, both bands of the Aetolians shut themselves up in Heraclea.* (b.) sex filii nōbīs, duae filiae sunt, utraeque iam nūptae, *L. 42, 34, 4, we have six sons and two daughters, both already married.*

2400. Reciprocal relations (2344) are sometimes expressed by *uterque* followed by a different case of *alter*; rarely by *uterque* and a different case of the same word.

(a.) quōrum uterque contempsit alterum, *Off. 1, 4, each of whom lightly esteemed the other.* (b.) abdūcī nōn potest :: quī nōn potest? :: quia uterque utriūquest cordī, *T. Ph. 799, she's not to be taken from him :: why is n't she? :: because they're heart to heart.* This doubling of *uterque* is found only half a dozen times; not in Cicero.

### quivīs and quilibet; utervīs and uterlibet.

2401. *quivīs* and *quilibet*, *any you please*, are used either in affirmative or negative sentences. When two are spoken of, *utervīs* or *uterlibet* is used.



(a.) ut quivīs intellegere posset, *V. 5, 17, so that any fool might know.* faciat quidlibet, *T. Hau. 464, let him do anything he likes.* (b.) quī utramvīs rēctē nōvit, ambās nōverit, *T. Andr. prol. 10, who knows either well, knows both.* utrumlibet ēlige, *Quinct. 81, choose either you like.*

### quisquam and ūllus.

**2402.** quisquam (692), a single one, any one at all, and ūllus, a bit of a, any at all, any, are used chiefly in negative, interrogative, conditional, and comparative sentences, or with sine.

vēnī Athēnās, neque mē quisquam ibī adgnōvit, *TD. 5, 104, I came to Athens and not a person there knew me (1659).* interdicit omnibus, nē quemquam interficiant, *7, 40, 4, he warns them collectively against killing any man at all (2388).* hunc suā quisquam sententiā ex hāc urbe expellet? *Mil. 104, will anybody at all, by his vote, banish this man from Rome?* quis hōc fēcit ūllā in Scythiā tyrannus? *Pis. 18, what tyrant ever did this in any Scythia?* sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum, *Fam. 6, 14, 1, if anybody is timid, I am the man.* quī saepius cum hoste cōflīxit quam quisquam cum inimicō concertāvit, *IP. 28, who has measured swords oftener with the enemy than anybody ever wrangled with an opponent in private life.* sine ūllō metū in ipsum portum penetrāre coepērunt, *V. 5, 96, without a bit of fear they began to make their way right into the harbour.* nēmō quisquam and nihil quicquam are old and late: as, lepidiōrem uxōrem nēmō quisquam habet, *Pl. Cas. 1008, nobody has a jollier wife.* noster malī nīl quicquam prīmō, *T. Ph. 80, our young master did n't make any trouble at first.*

**2403.** nēmō is generally used for nōn quisquam, nēmō umquam for numquam quisquam, nihil for nōn quicquam, and nūllus for nōn ūllus. If only two are spoken of, neuter is used. The plural neutri is used of two parties.

nēmōst miserior mē, *T. Hau. 263, no man's unhappier than I.* nēmō igitur vir māgnus sine aliquō adflātū divinō umquam fuit, *DN. 2, 167, nobody who is a great man was ever without some divine inspiration.* ab nūllō ille liberālius quam ā Cluentiō trāctātus est, *Clu. 161, by no man has he been treated more generously than by Cluentius.* neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvāre, *Caes. C. 1, 35, 5, to help neither of them against the other.* neutri alterōs prīmō cernēbant, *L. 21, 46, 4, neither party saw the others at first.*

### (D.) NUMERALS.

**2404.** Numerals are divided into Adjectives: Cardinal, ūnus, one, duo, two, &c.; Ordinal, prīmus, first, secundus, second, &c.; Distributive, singulī, one each, binī, two each, &c.; and Numeral Adverbs: semel, once, bis, twice, &c.

For the inflection of numerals, see 637-643.

ARABIC.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	ūnus, <i>one</i> (638)	prīmus, <i>first</i> (643)
2	duo, <i>two</i> (639)	secundus, <i>second</i>
3	trēs, <i>three</i> (639)	tertius, <i>third</i>
4	quattuor, <i>four</i>	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>
5	quīnque, <i>five</i>	quīntus, <i>fifth</i>
6	sex, <i>six</i>	sextus, <i>sixth</i>
7	septem, <i>seven</i>	septimus, <i>seventh</i>
8	octō, <i>eight</i>	octāvus, <i>eighth</i>
9	novem, <i>nine</i>	nōnus, <i>ninth</i>
10	decem, <i>ten</i>	decimus, <i>tenth</i>
11	ūndecim, <i>eleven</i>	ūndecimus, <i>eleventh</i>
12	duodecim	duodecim
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimum
19	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimum
20	vīgintī, <i>twenty</i>	vicēsimum, <i>twentieth</i>
21	vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī	vicēsimum prīmus or ūnus et vicēsimum
22	vīgintī duo or duo et vīgintī	vicēsimum alter or alter et vicēsimum
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimum
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsimum
30	trīgintā	tricēsimum
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimum
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum
80	octōgintā	octōgēsimum
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum
99	ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsimum
100	centum, <i>one hundred</i>	centēsimum, <i>one hundredth</i>
101	centum ūnus or centum et ūnus	centēsimum prīmus or cen- tēsimum et prīmus
200	ducentī (641)	ducentēsimum
300	trecentī	trecentēsimum
400	quadringentī	quādringentēsimum
500	quīngentī	quīngentēsimum
600	sēscentī	sēscentēsimum
700	septingentī	septingentēsimum
800	octingentī	octingentēsimum
900	nōngentī	nōngentēsimum
1,000	mille, <i>thousand</i> (642)	mīllēsimum, <i>thousandth</i>
2,000	duo mīllia	bis mīllēsimum
5,000	quīnque mīllia	quīnquiēns mīllēsimum
10,000	decem mīllia	deciēns mīllēsimum
50,000	quīnquāgintā mīllia	quīnquāgiēns mīllēsimum
100,000	centum mīllia	centiēns mīllēsimum
1,000,000	deciēns centēna mīllia	deciēns centiēns mīllēsimum

DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVERBS.	ROMAN.
singulī, <i>one each</i> (643)	semel, <i>once</i>	I
bīnī, <i>two each</i>	bis, <i>twice</i>	II
ternī, <i>three each</i>	ter, <i>thrice</i>	III
quaternī, <i>four each</i>	quater, <i>four times</i>	IIII or IV
quīnī, <i>five each</i>	quīnquiēns, <i>five times</i>	V
sēnī, <i>six each</i>	sexiēns, <i>six times</i>	VI
septēnī, <i>seven each</i>	septiēns, <i>seven times</i>	VII
octōnī, <i>eight each</i>	octiēns, <i>eight times</i>	VIII
novēnī, <i>nine each</i>	noviēns, <i>nine times</i>	VIIII or IX
dēnī, <i>ten each</i>	deciēns, <i>ten times</i>	X
ūndēnī, <i>eleven each</i>	ūndeciēns, <i>eleven times</i>	XI
duodēnī	duodeciēns	XII
ternī dēnī	terdeciēns	XIII
quaternī dēnī	quater deciēns	XIIII or XIV
quīnī dēnī	quīndeciēns	XV
sēnī dēnī	sēdeciēns	XVI
septēnī dēnī	septiēns deciēns	XVII
duodēvīcēnī	octiēns deciēns	XVIII
ūndēvīcēnī	noviēns deciēns	XVIIII or XIX
vīcēnī, <i>twenty each</i>	vīciēns, <i>twenty times</i>	XX
vīcēnī singulī or singulī et vīcēnī	vīciēns semel or semel et vīciēns	XXI
vīcēnī bīnī or bīnī et vīcēnī	vīciēns bis or bis et vīciēns	XXII
duodētrīcēnī	ducdētrīciēns	XXVIII
ūndētrīcēnī	*ūndētrīciēns	XXVIIII or XXIX
trīcēnī	trīciēns	XXX
quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēns	XXXX or XL
quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēns	L
sexāgēnī	sexāgiēns	LX
septuāgēnī	septuāgiēns	LXX
octōgēnī	octōgiēns	LXXX
nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēns	LXXXX or XC
ūndēcentēnī	*ūndēcentiēns	LXXXXVIIII or XCIX
centēnī, <i>a hundred each</i>	centiēns, <i>a hundred times</i>	C
centēnī singulī	centiēns semel or centiēns et semel	CI
ducēnī	ducentiēns	CC
trecēnī	trecentiēns	CCC
quadrīngēnī	quadrīngentiēns	CCCC
quīngēnī	quīngentiēns	D
sēscēnī	sēscentiēns	DC
septīngēnī	septīngentiēns	DCC
octīngēnī	octīngentiēns	DCCC
nōngēnī	nōngentiēns	DCCCC
singula mīllia, <i>a thousand</i>	mīlliēns, <i>a thousand times</i>	∞
bīna mīllia [each]	bis mīlliēns	∞∞∞
quīna mīllia	quīnquiēns mīlliēns	Ⓣ
dēna mīllia	deciēns mīlliēns	Ⓢ
quīnquāgēna mīllia	quīnquāgiēns mīlliēns	Ⓣ
centēna mīllia	centiēns mīlliēns	Ⓢ
deciēns centēna mīllia	deciēns centiēns mīlliēns	Ⓢx



## NOTATION.

2406. Numbers are noted by combinations of the characters  $I = 1$ ;  $V = 5$ ;  $X = 10$ ;  $\downarrow$ , later  $\text{𐌵}$ ,  $\text{𐌶}$ , or  $\text{𐌷} = 50$ ;  $\text{𐌸} = 100$ ;  $\text{𐌹} = 500$ ;  $\text{𐌺}$  or  $\text{𐌻}$ , post-Augustan  $M = 1000$ .

2407. Of these signs,  $V$  seems to be the half of  $X$ , which may be Etruscan in origin. The original signs for 50 and 1000 were taken from the Chalcidian alphabet of Cumae (17), in which they represented sounds unknown to early Latin. Thus,  $\downarrow$ , in the Chalcidian alphabet representing *ch* (49), was used by the early Romans for 50, and became successively  $\text{𐌵}$ ,  $\text{𐌶}$ , and  $\text{𐌷}$ . The form  $\downarrow$ , is found very rarely,  $\text{𐌵}$  oftener, in the Augustan period;  $\text{𐌶}$  is common during the last century of the republic and in the early empire;  $\text{𐌷}$ , due to assimilation with the Roman letter, appears in the last century of the republic. The sign for 1000 was originally  $\text{𐌺}$  (Chalcidian *ph*); it became  $\text{𐌻}$  (the common classical form),  $\text{𐌼}$ , or  $\text{𐌽}$ ; the form  $M$  as a numeral appears in the second century A. D., although  $M$  is found much earlier as an abbreviation for *millia* in  $M \cdot P$ , that is *millia passuum*. For 100, the sign  $\text{𐌸}$  (Chalcidian *th*) may have been used originally; but  $\text{𐌹}$  (the abbreviation for *centum*) came into use at an early period. The sign  $\text{𐌹} = 500$ , is the half of  $\text{𐌺}$ .

2408. To denote 10,000 the sign for 1000 was doubled: thus,  $\text{𐌺𐌺}$ , written also  $\text{𐌺𐌶}$ ,  $\text{𐌶𐌶}$ ,  $\text{𐌶𐌷}$ . Another circle was added to denote 100,000: thus,  $\text{𐌺𐌺𐌺}$ , written also  $\text{𐌺𐌶𐌶}$ ,  $\text{𐌶𐌶𐌶}$ . The halves of these signs were used for 5000 and 50,000: thus,  $\text{𐌶𐌸}$  and  $\text{𐌶𐌹}$ ; variations of these last two signs are found, corresponding to the variations of the signs of which they are the halves.

2409. From the last century of the republic on, thousands are sometimes indicated by a line drawn above a numeral, and hundreds of thousands by three lines enclosing a numeral: as,  $\overline{V} = 5000$ ;  $\overline{\overline{X}} = 1,000,000$ .

2410. To distinguish numerals from ordinary letters, a line is often drawn above them: as,  $\overline{VI} = 6$ . This practice is common in the Augustan period; earlier, a line is sometimes drawn across the numeral, as,  $\text{𐌹} = 2$ ;  $\text{𐌹} = 500$ .

2411. Of the two methods of writing the symbols for 4, 9, 14, 19, &c., the method by subtraction (*IV*, *IX*, *XIV*, *XIX*, &c.) is rarer, and is characteristic of private, not public inscriptions.

## SOME FORMS OF NUMERALS.

2412. *quīctus*, the older form of *quīntus* (135) is sometimes found in old and even in classical writers. Instead of *septimus* and *decimus*, the older *septumus* and *decumus* are not uncommon (78).

2413. In the ordinals from *twentieth* upwards, the older forms *vīcēsumus* or *vīcēnsimus*, *trīcēsumus* or *trīcēnsimus*, &c., &c., are not infrequently found instead of *vīcēsīmus*, *trīcēsīmus*, &c., &c. (131, 78).

2414. In the numeral adverbs from *quīnquiēns* upwards, later forms in *-iēs* (131) are often found: as, *quīnquiēs*, *deciēs*, &c., &c.

2415. In cardinals and ordinals from *thirteen* to *seventeen* inclusive, the larger number sometimes comes first, and in cardinals *et* is sometimes used, though rarely in Cicero.

*decem trēs*, L. 37, 30, 7, *thirteen*. *fundōs decem et trēs reliquit*, *RA.* 20, *he left thirteen farms*. Rarely the smaller number comes first with *et*: as, *dē tribus et decem fundīs*, *RA.* 99, *of the thirteen farms*.

2416. Numbers from 18 to 99 inclusive which end in 8 or 9 are usually expressed by subtraction, as in the list (2405); less frequently (not in Cicero, rarely in classical writers) by addition: as, *decem et octō*, 4, 19, 4; *decem novem*, *Ta. H.* 2, 58.

2417. In compound numbers from *twenty-one* to *ninety-seven* inclusive, except those which end in *eight* or *nine* (2416), the smaller number with *et* usually comes first or the larger number without *et*, as in the list. But rarely the larger number comes first with *et*: as, *vīgintī et septem*, *V.* 4, 123, *twenty and seven*.

2418. In numbers from a *hundred and one* upwards, the larger number comes first, either with or without *et*; but with distributives *et* is not used. With cardinals and ordinals the smaller number sometimes comes first with *et*; as, *iīs rēgiīs quadrāgintā annīs et ducentīs praeteritis*, *RP.* 2, 52, *after these two hundred and forty years of monarchy were ended*.

## SOME USES OF NUMERALS.

### CARDINALS AND ORDINALS.

2419. Dates are expressed either by cardinals with a plural substantive or by ordinals with a singular substantive: as,

*dictātor factus est annīs post Rōmam conditam ccccxv*, *Fam.* 9, 21, 2, *he was made dictator 415 U. C. (1393)*. *annō trecentēsīmō quinquāgēsīmō post Rōmam conditam, Nōnīs Iūnīs*, *RP.* 1, 25, *on the 5th of June, 350 U. C. (1350)*. The ordinal is also used with a substantive not used in the singular: as, *mancipia vēnībant Sātūrnālibus tertiīs*, *Att.* 5, 20, 5, *the slaves were sold on the third day of the Saturnalia*. As the Romans, however, had no fixed official era, they had no dates in the modern sense, and marked the year by the names of the consuls.

### DISTRIBUTIVES.

2420. Distributives are used to denote an equal division among several persons or things, and in expressions of multiplication: as,

*bīnī senātōrēs singulis cohortibus praepositī*, L. 3, 69, 8, *two senators were put over every cohort*: sometimes when *singulī* is added, the cardinal is used, thus: *singulis cēnsōribus dēnārii trecentī imperātī sunt*, *V.* 2, 137, *every censor was assessed 300 denars*. *bis bīna*, *DN.* 2, 49, *twice two*. Poets use multiplication freely, partly for variety, but mainly from metrical necessity.

2421. Distributives are also used with substantives which have no singular, or which have a different meaning in the singular; but in this use *one* is always *ūnī*, not *singulī*, and *three* *trīnī*, not *ternī*: as,

ut *ūna* castra iam facta ex *bīnīs* vidērentur, Caes. C. 1, 74, 4, so that one camp seemed now to have been formed out of two. *trīnīs* catēnīs vinctus, 1, 53, 5, in triple irons. Similarly with things in pairs, as: *bovēs bīnī*, Pl. Pers. 317, a yoke of oxen.

2422. Poets sometimes use the singular of distributives: as, *centēnāque* arbore flūctum verberat, V. 10, 207, and with a hundred beams at every stroke the wave he smites. *duplicī* nātūrā et corpore *bīnō*, Lucr. 5, 879, twynatured and of body twain. The plural is sometimes used in verse for the cardinal: *centum* bracchia . . . *centēnāsque* manūs, V. 10, 565, a hundred arms . . . and hundred hands.

### OTHER NUMERALS.

2423. Other numerical adjectives are *multiplicatives*, ending in *-plex*; they are: *simplex*, *onefold*, *simple*, *sēscuplex*, *one and a half fold*, *duplex*, *triplex*, *quadruplex*, *quīncuplex*, *septemplex*, *decemplex*, *centuplex*; and *proportionals*, used mostly in the neuter as substantives: *duplus*, *twice as great*, *triplus*, *three times as great*, *quadruplus*, *septuplus*, *octuplus*. Besides these there are other adjectives derived from numerals: as, *prīmānus*, *soldier of the first*: *prīmārius*, *first rate*: *bīmus*, *twinter*, *two-year-old*; &c., &c.

### EXPRESSION OF FRACTIONS.

2424. *One half* may be expressed by *dīmidium* or *dīmidia pars*; other fractions with 1 as a numerator by ordinals, with or without *pars*: as, *tertia pars* or *tertia*,  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

2425. If the numerator is greater than 1 it is usually expressed by the cardinal feminine, with the ordinal feminine for the denominator: as, *duae septimae*,  $\frac{2}{7}$ . But besides these forms there are others, namely:

2426. (1.) Fractions with a numerator less by 1 than the denominator, except  $\frac{1}{2}$ , may be expressed by cardinals with *partēs*, as, *duae partēs*,  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; *trēs partēs*,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ; *quattuor partēs*,  $\frac{4}{5}$ .

2427. (2.) Fractions with 12 or its multiples as a denominator are expressed in business language by the parts of an *ās*: thus,

$\frac{1}{12}$ , uncia	$\frac{1}{3}$ , triēns	$\frac{7}{12}$ , septunx	$\frac{5}{6}$ , dextāns
$\frac{1}{6}$ , sextāns	$\frac{5}{12}$ , quīncunx	$\frac{2}{3}$ , bēs	$\frac{11}{12}$ , deūnx
$\frac{1}{4}$ , quadrāns	$\frac{1}{2}$ , sēmis	$\frac{3}{4}$ , dōdrāns	$\frac{12}{12}$ , ās

ex *āsse* hērēs, Quintil. 7, 1, 20, *heir to the whole*; reliquit hērēdēs ex bēsse nepōtem, ex *tertiā* parte neptem, Plin. Ep. 7, 24, 2, *she left her grandson heir to  $\frac{2}{3}$ , her granddaughter to  $\frac{1}{3}$* . hērēdem ex dōdrante, N. 25, 5, 2, *heir to  $\frac{3}{4}$* .

2428. Sometimes fractions are expressed by addition: as, *dīmidia et quarta*,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ; *pars tertia et septima*,  $\frac{10}{11}$ ; sometimes by division of the denominator: as, *dīmidia quinta*,  $\frac{1}{10}$ .



(E.) PROSODY.

I. RULES OF QUANTITY.

(A.) IN CLASSICAL LATIN.

**2429.** The length of the vowel in some classes of syllables, as used in the classical period, may be conveniently fixed in the memory by the following rules. For the usage of older writers, see 57-68 and 2464-2472. For the general principles of length of vowels and syllables, see 156-169.

MONOSYLLABLES.

**2430.** Monosyllables ending in a vowel or a single consonant have the vowel long: as,

dōs, sōl; ā for ab; ē for ex or ec-, pēs for \*peds; ablative quā, quī; quīn for \*quīne; locative sei, commonly sī; sīc (708); dative and ablative plural quīs (688).

Exceptions.

**2431.** The vowel is short in:

**2432.** (a.) Monosyllables ending in b, d, m, and t: as, ab, ad, dum, dat.

**2433.** (b.) The indefinite qua, N. and Ac.; the enclitics -que (rarely -quē), -ne, -ve, -ce; and in the words cor, fel, mel; os, bone; ac, vir, is, pol, quīs (N.); fac, fer, per, ter; an, bis, in, cis; nec, vel. N. hīc is rarely short (664). For ēs or es, see 747.

POLYSYLLABLES.

PENULTS.

**2434.** Disyllabic perfects and perfect participles have the vowel of the penult long when it stands before a single consonant: as,

vēnī, vidī, vīcī (862); fōvī (864), fōtus (917).

Exceptions.

**2435.** (*a.*) Nine perfects have the penult short (859-861):  
bibī, -fidī dedī, scidī stetī, stitī tulī, -tudī, per-culī.

**2436.** (*b.*) Ten perfect participles have the penult short (918; see also 919):

citus, datus itum, ratus -rutus, satus situs, status litus, quitus.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

(1.) ENDING IN A VOWEL.

**2437.** In words of more than one syllable, final **a** and **e** are short; final **o**, **u**, and **i**, are long: as,

(*a.*) N. aquila; Pl. N. and Ac. oppida, cētera, omnia (65, 57).

(*b.*) N. ille; N. and Ac. rēte; impūne (701); V. bone; Ab. tempore (65, 57); Inf. prōmere (65, 57); Imperat. rege (826); Pres. Ind. and Imperat. querere; Perf. rēxere.

(*c.*) N. sermō; D. and Ab. verbō; vērō (704). iō. regō, erō, amābō, rēxerō (826); estō.

(*d.*) N. and Ac. cornū (587); D. and Ab. metū (590, 425, 593); diū.

(*e.*) G. frūmentī; V. Vergilī (459); G. domī (594); D. nūllī, orbī; Ab. sitī (554). Imperat. vestī (845). Inf. querī, locārī; Ind. Perf. rēxī (856), rēxistī.

Exceptions in **a**.

**2438.** (*a.*) Final **a** is long in the ablative, in indeclinable words, and in the imperative: as,

(*a.*) Ab. mēnsā (426).

(*b.*) quadrāgintā; many indeclinable words are ablatives: as, contrā, iūxtā, (707). The indeclinable hēia, ita, and quia (701), have short **a**.

(*c.*) Imperat. locā (845). But puta, for instance, has short **a**.

**2439.** (*b.*) Final **a** is long in some Greek nominatives and vocatives: as, N. Electrā; V. Aenēā, Pallā.

Exceptions in **e**.

**2440.** (*a.*) Final **e** is long in cases of nouns with stems in -ē- (596), in adverbs from stems in -o-, and in the imperative singular active of verbs in -ēre: as,

(*a.*) diē (G., D., or Ab.), hodiē, prīdiē; see also 603.

(*b.*) altē (705); also ferē, fermē and ohē or ōhē; but **e** is always short in bene and male; inferne and superne.

(*c.*) docē (845); for cave, see 61.

2441. (*b.*) Final **e** is long in the endings of some Greek nouns: as, N. **crambē**, **Circē**; V. **Alcidē**; Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. **cētē**, **melē**, **pelagē**, **tempē**.

#### Exceptions in o.

2442. (*a.*) Final **o** is short in the nominatives **ego**, **duo**, and **homo**. **o** is sometimes shortened in the nominative of stems in **-n-** (484, 485): as, **mentio**, **Nāso**, **virgo**. **o** is regularly short in **endo**, in the ablatives **cito** and **modo**, used as adverbs, and in many other words in late poetry: as, **ilico**, **immo**, **ergo**, **quando**, **octo**, &c.; very rarely in the ablative of the gerund.

2443. (*b.*) Before Ovid, **o** of the present indicative is regularly long (61). It is shortened only in the following words: in

**volo**, six times (Cat., 4 times; Hor., Prop.).

**scio**, twice (Verg.).

**nescio**, six times (Verg., twice; Hor., twice; Tib., Prop.);

and once each in **eo** and **veto** (Hor.), **dēsino** (Tib.), and **findo** (Prop.). From Ovid on, short **o** is not uncommon.

Short **o** in other forms of the verb is rare: as, **dīxero** (Hor.); **esto**, **ero**, **dabo** (Ov.); but **o** is always short in the imperative **cedo**, *give, tell*.

#### Exceptions in u.

2444. Final **u** is short in **indu** and **noenu**.

#### Exceptions in i.

2445. (*a.*) Final **i** is short in **nisi**, **quasi**, and **sīcuti**; also in the endings of some Greek nouns: as N. and Ac. **sināpi**; V. **Pari**, **Amarylli**; D. **Paridi**, **Minōidi**; Pl. D. **Trōasi**.

2446. (*b.*) Final **i** is common in **mihī**, **tibī**, **sibī**; **ibī**, **ubī** (60).

#### (2.) ENDING IN A SINGLE CONSONANT NOT S.

2447. A final syllable ending in a single consonant not **s** has its vowel short: as,

**dōnec**. **illud**. **animal** (536); **semel**. **agmen**. **calcar** (537); **soror**, **stultior** (66, 57). **moror**, **loquar**, **fatēbor** (68, 57); **regitur**, **regimur**, **reguntur**. **regit** (826); **amat**, **sciat**, **pōnēbat**; **tinnit**, **possit**; **iacet**, **neget**, **esset** (68, 57).

#### Exceptions.

2448. (*a.*) The last vowel is long in **allēc**, and in compounds of **pār**; in the contracted genitive plural of stems in **-u-**: as **currūm**; in all cases of **illic** and **istic** except the nominative masculine, in the adverbs **illūc** and **istūc**, and sometimes in **nihīl**. Also in the endings of some Greek nouns: as, N. **āēr**, **aethēr**, **sīrēn**; Ac. **Aenēān**.

2449. (*b.*) In the short form of the genitive plural of stems in **-o-** and **-ā-**, the vowel was originally long, but afterwards short: as, **divōm** (462), **caelicolūm** (439).

2450. (*c.*) The last vowel is long in **iīt** and **petiīt** and their compounds.



(3.) ENDING IN **s**.

**2451.** Final syllables in **is** and **us** have the vowel short; those in **as**, **es**, and **os**, have the vowel long: **as**,

(*a.*) **N. lapis, finis**; **G. lapidis, finis**; **magis**. Indic. Pres. **regis** (826); Fut. **eris** (851, 826), **eritis, locābis** (853, 826), **locābitis**.

(*b.*) **N. dominus**; **currus**; **N. and Ac. tempus**; **prius** (67, 57); **rēgibus** (67, 57). **regimus**.

(*c.*) **aetās**; **Pl. Ac. mēnsās** (424). Indic. Pres. **locās** (840); Imp. **erās** (848); **regēbās** (847); Plup. **rēxerās** (880); Subj. Pres. **regās, vestiās, doceās** (842).

(*d.*) **N. hērēs**; **sēdēs**; **nūbēs**; **Cerēs**; **fidēs**; **Pl. N. and Ac. rēgēs** (424); Indic. Pres. **docēs** (840); Fut. **regēs** (852); Subj. Pres. **siēs** (841); **locēs** (843); Imp. **essēs** (850); **regerēs** (849); Plup. **rēxissēs** (881).

(*e.*) **N. custōs**; **arbōs**; **Pl. Ac. ventōs** (424).

Exceptions in **is**.

**2452.** (*a.*) Final **is** has **ī** in all plural cases: **as**,

**N. and Ac. omnīs**; **D. and Ab. viīs** (86), **locīs** (87), **vōbīs**. Also in the nominatives singular **Quirīs** and **Samnīs**, usually in **sanguīs** (486), and twice in **pulvīs**.

**2453.** (*b.*) Final **is** has **ī** in the second person singular of verbs in **-ire**, in **māvis**, in compounds of **sīs**, and in all present subjunctives singular: **as**, **duīs, edīs, velīs, mālīs, nōlīs**. For **-rīs** of the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect, see 877, 878, 883, 884.

Exceptions in **us**.

**2454.** **u** is long in the nominative singular of consonant stems with **ū** before the final stem consonant: **as**, **tellūs**, stem **tellūr-**; **palūs**, once **palus** (Hor.), stem **palūd-**; in the genitive singular and nominative and accusative plural of nouns with stems in **-u-**: **as**, **frūctūs**; and in the ending of some Greek names: **as**, **N. Panthūs**; **G. Sapphūs**.

Exceptions in **as**.

**2455.** Final **as** has short **a** in **anas** and in the ending of some Greek nouns: **as**, **N. Īlīas**; **Pl. Ac. cratēras**.

Exceptions in **es**.

**2456.** Final **es** has short **e** in the nominative singular of stems in **-d-** and **-t-** which have the genitive in **-idis, -itis, and -etis** (475, 476): **as**, **praeses, teges, comes** (but **ē** in **abiēs, ariēs, and pariēs**), also, in **penes**, in compounds of **es**, *thou art*, and in the endings of some Greek nouns: **as**, **N. Cynosarges**; **Pl. N. Arcades, cratēres**.

Exceptions in **os**.

**2457.** Final **os** has short **o** in the nominative of stems in **-o-**: **as**, **servos, suos, Dēlos**; also in **compos, impos, and exos**; and in the endings of some Greek nouns: **as**, **N. and Ac. epos**; **G. chlamydos, Erīnyos**.

POSITION.

**2458.** For the general rule of position, see 168, 169; but, except in the thesis of a foot, a final syllable ending with a short vowel generally remains short before a word beginning with two consonants or a double consonant: as, **molliā strāta, nemorōsā Zacȳnthos, lūcē smaragdī.**

In Horace such a final syllable is never lengthened before a word beginning with two consonants.

HIDDEN QUANTITY.

**2459.** A vowel which stands before two consonants, or a double consonant, belonging to the same word, so that its natural quantity cannot be determined from the scansion of the word, is said to possess *Hidden Quantity*.

**2460.** The natural quantity of such a vowel may sometimes be ascertained: (*a.*) from the statements of ancient writers; (*b.*) from the way in which the vowel is written in Latin inscriptions (see 28-30); (*c.*) from the transliteration of the word into other languages, especially Greek; (*d.*) from the etymology of the word, or from a comparison of it with kindred words in other Indo-European languages; (*e.*) from comparison with derived words in the Romance languages. But all these kinds of evidence must be used with great caution.

**2461.** For the length of a vowel before **ns, nf**, consonantal **i**, and often before **gn**, see 167.

**2462.** In inceptive verbs (834) the ending **-scō** is thought to be always preceded by a long vowel: as, **crēscō, nāscor, proficīscor.**

**2463.** In the perfect indicative active, perfect participle passive and kindred formations of verbs in **-gō** preceded by a short vowel, as **agō, regō**, the theme syllable shows a long vowel: as, **lēxī, rēxī, tēxī; āctus, lēctus; rēctor; āctitō.**

(B.) SOME PECULIARITIES OF QUANTITY IN OLD LATIN.

**2464.** For the preservation of a long vowel in certain specific endings in old Latin, see 64-68.

**2465.** Final **-āl** is sometimes preserved long in the nominative singular: as, **bacchānāl** (Plaut.); also **-ēs** in the nominative singular of stems in **-t-** which have the genitive in **-itis** (477): as **mīlēs** (Plaut.).

**2466.** **Hic, illic** and **istic**, when adverbs, have a long final syllable; but when nominative singular masculine, have the final syllable regularly short.

**2467.** In Plautus **frūstrā** always (six times) has the final syllable short. **contrā** sometimes has a short final syllable in old Latin.

2468. In Latin poetry down to the time of Cicero, final *s* often does not "make position" before a following consonant (47); as, *tempŭs fert* (Plaut.); *magĭs stetisse* (Ter.).

2469. The first syllable of *ille*, *illic* (the pronoun), *quippe*, *immō*, *inde*, *unde*, *nempe*, *omnis*, and perhaps *iste*, is sometimes shortened.

In *ille*, *illic*, *quippe* and *immō* the shortening is probably due to the fact that in common speech one of the double consonants was often pronounced faintly or not at all (48); while in *inde*, *unde*, *nempe*, and *omnis* the nasal was very faintly sounded before the following consonant. But some authorities hold that always in *nempe*, and sometimes in *ille*, *quippe*, *inde*, *unde*, and perhaps *iste*, before an initial consonant final *e* disappears (see 96), and the word becomes a monosyllable.

## LAW OF IAMBIC SHORTENING.

2470. A long syllable, preceded by a short monosyllable or by a short initial syllable, and immediately preceded or followed by the verse-ictus, may be shortened: as, *ét hŭnc*, *dómō mē*, *ad ŭxōrem*, *volŭntāte*.

The short monosyllable may be a word which has become monosyllabic by elision: as, *ég(o) hānc*.

2471. If the syllable to be shortened is the first of a word of more than one syllable, or the second of a polysyllable, it must be one which is long by position, not by nature. There are some possible exceptions to this rule, such as *verēbāminī* (T. *Ph.* 902); but these are few and doubtful.

2472. Iambic shortening took place not only in verse, but also to a considerable extent in common speech, particularly in iambic words (see 61), in which the accent coöperated with the verse-ictus to produce the shortening.

---

## II. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### HIATUS.

2473. For hiatus within a word, and the means by which it is avoided, see 97-101.

2474. Hiatus between two words is much more common in old Latin than in writers of the classical period. The precise extent to which it is allowed by the early dramatists is matter of dispute. The following cases may be mentioned in which the Latin poets admit hiatus:

2475. (1.) After interjections: as, *hahahae homo*, T. *Ph.* 411; *ō et praesidium*, H. 1, 1, 2.

2476. (2.) After proper names, and words of Greek origin: as, *ancillam ferre Venerī aut Cupīdinī*, Pl. *As.* 804; *Thrēiciō Aquilōne*, H. *Epod.* 13, 3.



2477. (3.) In the principal caesura of a verse. So especially in Plautus and Terence after the fourth foot of the iambic septenarius, and in Plautus in the principal break in the iambic octonarius, trochaic septenarius and trochaic octonarius.

2478. (4.) Often in the dramatists where there is a change of speakers: as, *quī potuit vidēre ? : : oculis : : quō pactō ? : : hiantibus*, Pl. *Merc.* 182.

2479. (5.) Probably sometimes in cases of repetition, enumeration, or sharp antithesis, and where there is an important pause in the sense: as, *eam volt meretricem facere : ea mē dēperit*, Pl. *Cur.* 46; *sī pereō, hominum manibus periisse iuvābit*, V. 3, 606.

2480. Vergil sometimes admits hiatus when the final syllable ending in a vowel is preceded or followed (or both) by two short syllables: as, *lāmentīs gemitūque et fēmīnēō ūlūlātū*, V. 4, 667.

## ELISION.

2481. For elision within a word, see 102.

2482. In verse a final vowel is generally elided before a vowel or *h*: as,

*quidve moror, s(i) omnīs ūn(ō) ōrdin(e) habētis Achīvōs*, V. 2, 102. Such a vowel was probably faintly sounded, not dropped altogether.

2483. Elision is frequent in most of the early poets; but writers of the Augustan and succeeding ages regarded it with increasing disfavour. The elision of a long vowel before a short was in general avoided; but there are numerous exceptions.

2484. Monosyllabic interjections do not suffer elision.

2485. Monosyllables ending in a diphthong seldom suffer elision before a short vowel.

2486. Diphthongs arising from Synizesis (2499) are sometimes elided in early Latin verse, but not in verse of the classical period.

2487. The monosyllables *quī* (plural), *dō*, *stō*, *rē*, *spē*, are thought never to suffer elision before a short vowel.

2488. The dactylic poets very rarely admit elision in an iambic (∪ —) or Cretic (— ∪ —) word before a short vowel.

2489. Elision seldom occurs if the syllable to be elided is immediately preceded by a vowel: as in *de(um) et*.

2490. The final syllable of a Greek word is rarely elided.

2491. Elision is more common toward the beginning of a verse than toward the end.

2492. Elision rarely occurs in the first syllable or last syllable of a verse; but see under Synapheia (2510), and for the elision of the enclitic *-que* or *-ve* at the end of a dactylic hexameter, see 2568.

**2493.** ECTHLIPSIS (Gr. ἐκθλιψις, *a squeezing out*). Final **m** and a preceding short vowel are usually elided before a vowel or **h**: as,

mōnstr(um) horrend(um) īnform(e) ingēns, cui lūmen adēmp(um)tum,  
V. 3, 658.

In such cases the ending was probably not cut off altogether, but was given a faint nasal sound.

**2494.** Sometimes a monosyllable ending in a short vowel and **m** is not elided before a vowel: as quā̄m ego (Ter.); súnt cūm odōre (Lucr.).

Such unelided monosyllables are most frequent in the early dramatists, and in them usually fall under the verse-ictus.

**2495.** The monosyllables **dem**, **stem**, **rem**, **spem**, **sim**, are thought never to be elided before a short vowel.

**2496.** After a final vowel, final **m** preceded by a vowel, or final **-us**, the verb **est** often loses its **e**: as, bonast, bonumst, bonust, vīsust. So, too, **es** sometimes loses its vowel: as, homo's, adeptus'. This usage reflects the actual pronunciation of common speech.

**2497.** SEMI-HIATUS OR SEMI-ELISION. A long final vowel is sometimes shortened before a vowel. This may occur either in the arsis (2520), or in a resolved thesis: as, án quī amant (Verg.); léctulō ērudītulī (Cat.); nam quī aget (Ter.).

This kind of shortening is not frequent except in the early dramatists, who often shorten under the verse-ictus a monosyllable ending in a long vowel and followed by an initial vowel (as in the third example above).

**2498.** SYNALOEPHA (Greek συναλοιφή, *a smearing together*) is a general term used to denote the means of avoiding hiatus. It includes elision and synizesis, though some grammarians use it in the same sense as synizesis.

**2499.** Synizesis (Greek συνίησις, *a settling together*). Two vowels (or a vowel and a diphthong) which belong to different syllables sometimes coalesce so as to form one syllable. This is called *Synizesis*, and is especially common in the early dramatists. Examples are: meō̄, eādem, cuius, aureī̄.

Some grammarians would include under Synizesis only cases in which a short vowel is subordinated to a following long; as tūō̄.

**2500.** The term *Synaeresis* (Greek συναίρεσις, *a taking together*) is sometimes used as a synonym for Synizesis. The ancient grammarians, however, used it in the sense of Contraction (99).

**2501.** DIALYSIS (Greek διάλυσις, *a breaking up*). Conversely, two vowels which usually form a diphthong are sometimes separated so as to form two syllables: as coëpī̄ (Lucr.) for coepī̄.

This, however, is really the survival of the original forms (99).

2502. The name DIAERESIS (Greek διαίρεσις, *a separating*) is sometimes used as a synonym for Dialysis; but it is better to restrict it to the meaning defined in 2542.

2503. HARDENING. A vocalic *i* or *u* is sometimes made consonantal before another vowel: as, *abiēte*, *ariēte* (Verg.); *cōnsilium* (Hor.); *omnia* (Lucr.).

This usage is sometimes included under Synizesis (2499), while some grammarians term it Synaeresis (2500).

2504. SOFTENING. Conversely, a consonantal *i* or *u* sometimes becomes vocalized before a vowel, thus giving an additional syllable: as, *silūae* for *silvae* (Hor.); *ēvolūisse* for *ēvolvisse* (Ov.). See 113.

This usage is sometimes included under the name Dialysis (2501).

2505. DIASTOLÉ (Greek διαστολή, *a drawing asunder*). A syllable which in verse of the classical period is generally short is sometimes used as long for metrical convenience. The syllable so employed generally falls under the verse-ictus, and in most cases is immediately followed by the principal caesura, or by a pause in the sense. Examples are:

*terga fatīgāmūs hastā, nec tarda senectus*, V. 9, 610.  
*tum sic Mercurium adloquitūr ac tālia mandat*, V. 4, 222.  
*caeca timēt aliunde fāta*, H. 2, 13, 16.

In nearly all cases this lengthening is not arbitrary, but the "lengthened" syllable is one that was originally long (see 63 ff.).

2506. The enclitic *-que* is sometimes lengthened under the ictus when another *-que* precedes or follows in the arsis: as, *cālōnēs famulique metalliquē caculaeque* (Accius).

2507. SYSTOLÉ (Greek συστολή, *a drawing together*). Conversely a syllable which in verse is regularly long is sometimes shortened for metrical convenience: as, *dedērunt* (Hor.), *nūllius* (Hor.), *imperat. commodā* (Cat.).

In most cases this shortening is not arbitrary, but represents a pronunciation which was in actual use, especially among the common people.

2508. SYNCOPÉ (Greek συγκοπή, *a cutting short*). A short vowel is often dropped between two consonants: as, *surpīte* for *surripite* (Hor.), *repositum* for *repositum* (Verg.).

This usage doubtless reflects the common pronunciation; see 93-5.

2509. TMESIS (Greek τμήσις, *a cutting*) is the separation of the parts of a word: as, *septem subiecta triōnī* = *septemtriōnī subiecta* (Verg.).

This usually occurs only in compounds; but early poets sometimes divided other words: as, *saxō cere comminuit brum* for *saxō cerebrum comminuit* (Ennius).



2510. SYNAPHEIA (Greek *συνάφεια*, a joining together) is the linking together by elision or word division of two lines belonging to the same system: as,

Iōve nōn probante u-  
xōrius amnis, H. 1, 2, 19.

Iam licet veniās marīt(e),  
uxor in thalamō tibi est, Cat. 61, 191.

---

### III. VERSIFICATION.

BY HERMAN W. HAYLEY, PH.D.

2511. RHYTHM (Gr. *ῥυθμός*, from *ῥεῖν*, to flow) is the effect of regularity produced by the discrimination of a movement or sound into uniform intervals of time. It is often marked by a stress or *ictus* recurring at fixed intervals.

Rhythm is by no means confined to verse. Music, dancing, and even the regular beat of a trip-hammer, have rhythm. Particular kinds of movement are often called rhythms, as anapaestic rhythms, dactylic rhythms, &c.



2512. METRE (Gr. *μέτρον*, a measure) is the definite measurement of verse by feet, lines, strophes, systems, &c.

2513. Latin verse is quantitative, the rhythm depending upon the quantity of the syllables (but see 2548). The ictus naturally falls upon a long syllable (or its equivalent). English verse, on the other hand, is accental, its rhythm depending upon the accent of words.

### QUANTITY.

2514. SIGNS OF QUANTITY. A long syllable is indicated by —, a short one by ∪. A syllable which varies in quantity, being sometimes long, sometimes short, is indicated by ∽ or ⊃.

In the following metrical schemes, ∽ indicates that the long is more usual or more strictly in accordance with the rhythm than the short. The reverse is indicated by ⊃.

**2515.** The UNIT OF MEASURE is the duration of a short syllable and is called a *Time*, *Tempus*, or *Mora*. The *mora* did not have an absolute length, but varied with the nature of the rhythm. For greater convenience, however, it is assumed that its length was uniform, and equalled that of an eighth note . A long syllable, being equal to two shorts, has a length of two *morae*, which is assumed to be the same as that of our quarter-note . Hence in notation  $\cup = \text{eighth note}$  and  $- = \text{quarter note}$ .

**2516.** PROTRACTION. A long syllable may be prolonged (*Protraction*) so as to have a length of three *morae*, in which case it is called a *triseme* (marked  $\sqcup$ ), or of four *morae*, when it is termed a *tetraseme* (marked  $\sqcup$ ). See 2537 and 2541.

**2517.** CORREPTION. A long or short syllable may be shortened so as to occupy less than its normal time. This is called *Correption* (Lat. *correptiō*, a shortening). See 2523 and 2524.

**2518.** RESOLUTION AND CONTRACTION. In some kinds of verse a long syllable may be, as it were, broken up (*Resolution*) into the equivalent two shorts; and conversely two short syllables may in some cases be united (*Contraction*) into the equivalent long.

## FEET.

**2519.** FEET. Latin verse (like English) is measured by groups of syllables called *Feet*. Each of these groups has a definite length of so many *morae* (2515).















It is theoretically more accurate to make the foot purely a time-division, as some authorities do; but the definition given above is sanctioned by established usage.

**2520.** ARSIS and THESIS. Every complete foot consists of two parts, an accented and an unaccented. The part on which the rhythmical accent or *ictus* falls is called the *Thesis* (Gr. *θέσις*, a setting down). The unaccented part of the foot is termed the *Arsis* (Gr. *ἀρσις*, a raising).

The name *Thesis* originally referred to the setting down of the foot in beating time or marching, or to the movement of the leader's hand in making the downward beat; and *Arsis* in like manner meant the raising of the foot or hand. But the Roman grammarians misunderstood the Greek terms, supposing them to refer to the lowering and raising of the voice, and so interchanged them. Hence many modern writers prefer to use *Arsis* to denote the accented, and *Thesis* the unaccented, part of the foot.

## KINDS OF FEET.

**2521.** The feet in common use are the following:—

FEET OF THREE MORAE.			
Name.	Sign.	Musically.	Example.
Trochee	— ∪		dūcit
Iambus	∪ —		legunt
Tribrach	∪ ∪ ∪		hominis
FEET OF FOUR MORAE.			
Dactyl	— ∪ ∪		dūcimus
Anapaest	∪ ∪ —		regerent
Spondee	— —		fēcī
Proceleusmatic	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪		hominibus
FEET OF FIVE MORAE.			
Cretic	— ∪ —		fēcerint
First Paeon	— ∪ ∪ ∪		lēgeritis
Fourth Paeon	∪ ∪ ∪ —		celeritās
Bacchīus	∪ — —		regēbant
FEET OF SIX MORAE.			
Choriambus	— ∪ ∪ —		horribilēs
Ionic <i>ā māiōre</i>	— — ∪ ∪		dēdūcimus
Ionic <i>ā minōre</i>	∪ ∪ — —		relegēbant

2522. Other feet mentioned by the ancient grammarians are : —

Name.	Sign.	Name.	Sign.
Pyrrhic . . . .	∪ ∪	Antispast . .	∪ — — — ∪
Amphibrach . .	∪ — ∪	Second Paeon .	∪ — — ∪ ∪
Antibacchīus or } .	— — —	Third Paeon .	∪ ∪ — — ∪
Palimbacchīus } .	— — —	First Epitrite .	∪ — — — —
Molossus . . . .	— — — —	Second Epitrite	— ∪ — — —
Dispondee . . .	— — — — —	Third Epitrite .	— — — — —
Ditrochee . . .	— ∪ — — ∪	Fourth Epitrite	— — — — —
Diambus . . . .	∪ — — — —		



But these are of little practical importance, as most of them never are employed in Latin poetry, and the few which do occur are used only as substitutes for other feet.

### CYCLIC FEET.

2523. A dactyl occurring in  $\frac{3}{8}$  time did not have the value of 2 *morae* + 1 + 1, but was given instead that of  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{3}{4}$ ; in other words both arsis and thesis suffered correption (2517), but the ratio between them remained unchanged. Such a dactyl is called *cyclic*, and is marked — ∪, or musically ♪. ♪. ♪. There is also a *cyclic anapaest*, marked ∪ ∪ — or ♪. ♪. ♪.

Some scholars, however, hold that the cyclic dactyl had approximately the value  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1$ , or ♪. ♪. ♪, and mark it — ∪ ∪. In like manner they mark the cyclic anapaest ∪ ∪—. The true nature of these cyclic feet is very uncertain.

### IRRATIONAL SYLLABLES AND FEET.

2524. A long syllable sometimes stands in place of a short. A syllable thus used is called *irrational* (marked >) because it destroys the normal ratio between arsis and thesis. The foot which contains such a syllable is itself called irrational. The most common irrational foot is the *irrational spondee* (— > when it stands for a trochee; > — when it replaces an iambus), which is found in iambic, trochaic, and logaoedic rhythms.

Probably the irrational long suffered a slight correption (2517), so that its duration was between that of the ordinary long and that of a short syllable.

### RHYTHMS.

2525. The different rhythms or metres are named trochaic, iambic, &c., according to their fundamental feet.

2526. Much of the Latin poetry (though not by any means all) was written to be sung. The Greeks and Romans employed in their music not only common (or  $\frac{2}{4}$ ) time and triple ( $\frac{3}{8}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ) time, but also  $\frac{5}{8}$  time, which last is very rarely used in modern music.

2527. The Greek and Roman metricians divided the rhythms into three classes, according to the ratio between arsis and thesis in their fundamental feet. These classes were: — (a.) the *Equal Class* (γένος ἴσον, *genus p̄ar*) in which thesis and arsis are equal in duration, as in dactyls, anapaestics, &c.; (b.) the *Double Class* (γένος διπλάσιον, *genus duplex*) in which the thesis has twice the duration of the arsis, as in trochaics, iambics, &c.; (c.) the *Hemiotic Class* (γένος ἡμιόλιον, *genus s̄escuplex*) in which the thesis has one and a half times the duration of the arsis, as in bacchiacs, cretics, etc.

2528. ASCENDING AND DESCENDING RHYTHMS. Rhythms in which the thesis follows the arsis (as in iambics) are called *ascending*; those in which it precedes the arsis (as in trochaics) are termed *descending*.

## ANACRUSIS.

2529. The ancients recognized both ascending and descending rhythms (2528), and regarded the former class as at least equal in importance to the latter; but many modern scholars since the time of Bentley have preferred to treat all rhythms as descending, regarding the first arsis of an ascending rhythm as merely answering to a preliminary upward beat in music. Such an initial arsis was named by Gottfried Hermann *Anacrūsis* (Gr. ἀνάκρουσις, *a striking up*).

Scholars have been influenced to adopt the anacrusic theory in its widest extent largely by the fact that in most modern music a measure must commence with a downward beat, a rule which did not hold in ancient music. By this theory an iambic verse becomes trochaic with anacrusis, an anapaestic verse dactylic with anacrusis, &c. But in many cases those kinds of verse which begin with an arsis were subject to different rules of construction from those which begin with a thesis. Hence it seems best to restrict anacrusis to logaoedic verse, in which it undoubtedly occurs.

2530. The anacrusis may be a long syllable, a short syllable, or two shorts (but not two longs). It is often irrational (2524). In metrical schemes it is often set off from the rest of the verse by a vertical row of dots: thus, :

## GROUPS OF FEET.

2531. A group of two feet is called a *dipody*, one of three a *tripody*, one of four a *tetrapody*, one of five a *pentapody*, and one of six a *hexapody*. The dipody is the measure of trochaic, iambic, and anapaestic verse. Other kinds of verse are measured by the single foot.

A single foot is sometimes called a *monopody*. A group of three half feet, i. e. a foot and a half, is sometimes called a *trithemimeris*, one of two and a half feet a *penthemimeris*, one of three and a half a *hepthemimeris*, &c.

2532. A *Rhythmical Series*, *Rhythmical Sentence*, or *Colon* is a group of two or more feet (but not more than six) which are united into a rhythmic whole by strengthening one of the ictuses, so that it becomes the principal or dominant ictus of the whole group.

2533. THE VERSE. A rhythmical series, or group of two (or even three) series, which forms a distinct and separate whole is called a *Verse*. The final syllable of a verse must terminate a word (except in cases of synapheia, see 2510), and may be either long or short (whence it is termed *syllaba anceps*) without regard to the rhythm. Hiatus (2474) is freely allowed at the end of a verse (though in rare cases elision occurs before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse; see 2492 and 2568).

A verse is generally (but not always) written as one line. Hence, the words "verse" and "line" are often used as synonyms.

## SYLLABA ANCEPS.

**2534.** In the present work, the final syllable of each verse is marked long or short as the rhythm may require, without reference to its quantity in a given example; and in the general schemes it is to be understood that the final syllable is *syllaba anceps* (2533) unless the contrary is expressly stated.

**2535.** DICOLIC AND ASYNARTETIC VERSES. A verse which consists of two rhythmical series (or cola) is called *dicolic*. If the series of which the verse is made up are quasi-independent of each other, so that hiatus or syllaba anceps occurs in the caesura, the verse is styled *asynartetic* (Gr. ἀσυνάρτητος, *not joined together*).

**2536.** NAMES OF VERSES. Verses are called *trochaic*, *iambic*, *dactylic*, &c., according to their fundamental (or characteristic) feet. A verse which contains one foot (or one dipody if iambic, trochaic, or anapaestic; see 2531) is called a *monometer*, one of two a *dimeter*, one of three a *trimeter*, one of four a *tetrameter*, one of five a *pentameter*, and one of six a *hexameter*.

Trochaic, iambic, and anapaestic verses are often named by Latin adjectives in *-ārius* (used as nouns) denoting the number of feet. Thus, such a verse of eight feet is called an *octōnārius*, one of seven a *septēnārius*, one of six a *sēnārius*, &c. A short verse which is employed to close a system (2547), or to mark a metrical or musical transition between longer verses, is called a *clausula*.

## CATALEXIS, PAUSE, SYNCOPE.

**2537.** CATALEXIS. A verse, the last foot of which is incomplete, is said to suffer *Catalexis* (Gr. κατάληξις, *a stopping short*) or to be *catalectic*; one of which the last foot is complete is called *acatalectic*.

It is usually the last part of the foot that is omitted; but (according to the theory now generally accepted) in catalectic iambic verses it is the last arsis that is omitted, the preceding thesis being protracted (2516) to compensate for the loss, thus:  $\cup \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad}$

**2538.** A verse in which both the last arsis and the next to the last are suppressed, so that a whole foot appears to be wanting, is called *brachycatalectic*.

**2539.** A verse is said to be catalectic *in syllabam*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables remaining in the last foot. Thus, the dactylic tetrameter  $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad}$  is catalectic *in syllabam*, but  $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup$  is catalectic *in disyllabum*.

**2540.** PAUSES. Theoretically all the feet (or dipodies; see 2531) into which a verse is divided must be equal in duration. Hence, when a final syllable (or two final syllables) is lost by catalexis, compensation is made for the loss by a pause at the end of the verse. Such a pause, which serves to fill out the last measure, answers to a *rest* in music.

A pause of one *mora* is often indicated by the sign  $\wedge$ , and one of two *morae* by  $\overline{\wedge}$ .



**2541.** SYNCOPE is the omission of one or more arses in the body of a verse. Compensation is made for the suppression of an arsis by protracting (2516) the preceding thesis.

### CAESURA.

**2542.** CAESURA AND DIAERESIS. A *Caesūra* (literally *a cutting*, from *caedo*, *I cut*) is the break in a verse produced by the ending of a word within a foot. When the end of a word coincides with the end of a foot, the break is called a *Diaeresis* (Gr. διαίρεσις, *a separating*). A caesura is marked ||, a diaeresis ‡.

The word *caesura* is often loosely used to include both caesura proper and diaeresis.

**2543.** Strictly speaking, there is a caesura (or diaeresis, as the case may be) wherever a word ends within a verse; but the main incision in the verse is so much more important than the rest that it is often called the *principal caesura*, or simply *the caesura*.

**2544.** Caesuras are named according to their position in the verse; thus a caesura after the third half-foot (i. e. in the second foot) is called *trithemimeral* (from Gr. τριθημιμερής, *containing three halves*), one after the fifth half-foot (i. e. in the third foot) *penthemimeral* (Gr. πενθημιμερής, *consisting of five halves*), one after the seventh half-foot (i. e. in the fourth foot) *hepthemimeral* (Gr. ἑφθημιμερής), &c.

The Latin names *caesūra sēmiternāria* (= the trithemimeral caesura), *sēmiquīnāria* (= the penthemimeral), *sēmiseptēnāria* (= the hepthemimeral), &c., are sometimes used. For the *masculine* and *feminine* caesuras, see 2557.

### STROPHE. SYSTEM.

**2545.** THE STROPHE. A fixed number of verses recurring in a regular order is called a *Strophe*. A strophe commonly contains verses of different kinds, but some strophes are composed of verses which are all alike. The most common strophes in Latin poetry are either *distichs* (i. e. groups of two lines each), *tristichs* (of three lines each), or *tetrastichs* (of four).

Strophes and verses are frequently named after some poet who made use of them. So the Alcaic strophe (named after Alcaeus), the Sapphic strophe (named after Sappho), the Glyconic verse (named after Glycon), the Asclepiadean (after Asclepiades), the Phalaecean (after Phalaeceus), the Pherecratean (after Pherecrates), &c.

**2546.** A *Stichic Series* is a series of verses of the same kind not combined into strophes.

**2547.** THE SYSTEM. A group of rhythmical series (see 2532) which is of greater extent than a verse is called a *System*. Long systems, such as are common in Greek poetry, are comparatively rare in Latin verse.

Few verses have more than two rhythmical series; none more than three.

**2548.** Although in all probability the Latin accent was mainly one of stress rather than of pitch, it seems to have been comparatively weak. Hence, when it conflicted with the metrical ictus, it could be the more easily disregarded. But accentual or semi-accentual poetry seems to have existed among the common people even in the Augustan age, and even in classical Latin verse in certain cases (as in the last part of the dactylic hexameter) conflict between ictus and accent was carefully avoided. After the third century A.D. the accent exerted a stronger and stronger influence upon versification, until in the Middle Ages the quantitative Latin verse was quite supplanted by the accentual.

### NUMERI ITALICI.

**2549.** Some of the earliest remains of Latin literature are believed to show a rhythmical structure. These are chiefly prayers, imprecations, sacred songs and the like, couched in a set form of words. Of the rules according to which these *carmina* were composed, almost nothing is known. According to one theory, they are wholly accentual, and are composed of rhythmical series, each series containing four theses. Frequently an arsis is suppressed, and compensation for the omission is made by dwelling longer upon the thesis. As an example is given the prayer in Cato, *Dē Rē Rūsticā*, 141 :

Mārs páter tē précor | quaésṓque útī síēs | vólēns própítíús  
míhí dómō | fámiliaéque nóstraé, &c.

### THE SATURNIAN.

**2550.** THE SATURNIAN is the best known and most important of the old Italian rhythms; but its nature long has been, and still is, matter of high dispute. There are two principal theories as to its character, the quantitative and the accentual, each of which is advocated by many distinguished scholars.

**2551. (1.) THE QUANTITATIVE THEORY.** According to this theory, the Saturnian is a verse of six feet, with an anacrusis (2529). There is a break after the fourth arsis, or more rarely after the third thesis. Each thesis may be either a long syllable or two shorts; each arsis may be a short syllable, a long, or two shorts, but an arsis is not resolved before the principal break or at the end of the verse. Hiatus is common, especially at the principal break in the verse. A short final syllable may be lengthened by the influence of the verse-ictus. An arsis is frequently suppressed, especially the penultimate arsis. Two arses are never suppressed in the same half-verse, and rarely two in the same verse. Examples of the Saturnian, measured quantitatively, are :

Dabúnt malúm Metéllī ‡ Naéviō poētae.

Novém Iovís concórdēs ‡ fíliaé soróres.

(Naevius.)

## 2552-2555.] *Appendix (E.): Prosody.*

Virúm mihí, Camēna, ‡‡ ínsecē versútum.  
(Livius Andronicus.)

Eōrúm sectám sequóntur ‡‡ múltī mórtālēs.  
(Naevius.)

Compare in English: "The queen was in the parlour, éating bréad and hóney."

**2552.** Most of the Roman grammarians who discussed the nature of the Saturnian seem to have regarded it as quantitative. In modern times the quantitative theory has been advocated by Ritschl, Buecheler, Havet, Christ, Lucian Mueller, W. Meyer, Reichardt and many others.

**2553.** (2.) THE ACCENTUAL THEORY. According to this theory, the Saturnian is an accentual verse, constructed without regard to quantity. It is divided by the principal break into two halves, the first of which has three theses. The second half usually has three, but may have only two, in which case it is usually preceded by an anacrusis (2529). Two accented syllables are regularly separated by an unaccented syllable, but in strictly constructed Saturnians the second and third unaccented syllables are regularly separated by two unaccented ones. Hiatus was at first freely admitted, but in the Saturnians of the second century B. C. occurs only at the principal break. Examples of the Saturnian, measured according to this theory, are:

Dábunt málum Metéllī ‡‡ Naéviō poētae.

Nóvem Ióvis concórdēs ‡‡ filiaé sorórēs.  
(Naevius.)

Vírum míhi, Camēna, ‡‡ ínsecē versútum.  
(Livius Andronicus.)

Eōrum séctam sequóntur ‡‡ múltī mórtālēs.  
(Naevius.)

**2554.** The accentual theory was held by the scholiast on V. G. 2, 385, and in modern times has been upheld (in one form or another) by O. Keller, Thurneysen, Westphal, Gleditsch, Lindsay and others. The brief statement given above agrees essentially with that of O. Keller. Gleditsch holds that each half-verse has four accents, as: **Dábunt málum Métellī || Naéviō poētaé**; Lindsay that the first hemistich has three accents and the second two, as: **Dábunt málum Metéllī || Naéviō poētae**. The whole question is still far from its final settlement.

### DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.

**2555.** These are descending rhythms belonging to the *Equal Class* (see 2527). In them the fundamental foot is the dactyl ( $\underline{\text{L}} \cup \cup$ ), for which its metrical equivalent, the spondee ( $\underline{\text{L}} \text{ —}$ ), is frequently substituted.



## THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

**2556.** The DACTYLIC HEXAMETER is the verse regularly employed in epic, didactic, and bucolic poetry, and is used by the Latin writers oftener than any other measure. It consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee (but with the privilege of *syllaba anceps*; see 2534). The fifth foot is usually a dactyl; but sometimes a spondee is employed, in which case the verse is called *spondaic*. In each of the other four feet either a dactyl or a spondee may be used. The scheme is therefore:

— ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | — —

**2557.** A caesura which comes immediately after the thesis of a foot is called *masculine*; one which falls in the middle of the arsis (i. e. after the first short of a dactyl) is termed *feminine*. The Roman writers show a strong preference for masculine principal caesuras, and in general their treatment of the caesura is more strict than that of the Greek poets.

**2558.** The principal caesura in the Latin hexameter is most frequently the penthemimeral (2544): as in:

Arma virumque canō || Trōiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs  
(V. I, 1).

Next in order of frequency stands the hephthemimeral, which is usually accompanied by a secondary trithemimeral, and in many cases also by a feminine caesura in the third foot: as in the verse,

Insīgnēm || pietāte || virum || tot adīre labōrēs  
(V. I, 10).

If the secondary trithemimeral caesura is lacking, the penthemimeral is usually accompanied by a feminine caesura in the second foot. Sometimes, though more rarely, the principal break in the line is the feminine caesura in the third foot (often called the "caesura after the third trochee"), as in the verse

Spargēns ūmida mella || sopōriferumque papāver  
(V. 4, 486).

**2559.** The diaeresis (see 2542) after the fourth foot (often called "bucolic diaeresis" from its use by pastoral writers) sometimes occurs, but is much less common in Latin hexameters than in Greek. An example is

Dīc mihi, Dāmoetā, || cūium pecus? ‡ An Meliboeī?  
(V. E. 3, 1).

This diaeresis, though common in Juvenal, is rare in most of the Latin poets (even the bucolic), and when it does occur, it is usually accompanied by a penthemimeral caesura. Lucian Mueller and others deny that the bucolic diaeresis ever forms the principal break in a line.

2560. When a line has several caesuras, it is often hard to determine which is the principal one. In general, masculine caesuras out-rank feminine; the penthemimeral takes precedence over the hephthemimeral, and the latter over all other caesuras. But if the hephthemimeral, or even one of the minor caesuras, coincides with an important pause in the sentence, it may out-rank the penthemimeral. Thus in the verse

Paulāt(im) adnābam || terrae; || iam tūta tenēbam  
(V. 6, 358),

the principal caesura is after *terrae*, not *adnābam*.

Lines without a principal caesura are rare. An instance is

Nōn quivīs videt inmodulāta poēmata iūdex  
(H. AP. 263).

2561. The great flexibility of the hexameter makes it an admirable vehicle of poetic expression. Accumulated spondees give the verse a slow and ponderous movement: as in the line

Ill(ī) in|ter sē|sē || mā|gnā vī | bracchia | tollunt  
(V. G. 4, 174).

The multiplication of dactyls imparts to the verse a comparatively rapid and impetuous motion, as in the famous verse

Quadrupē|dante pu|trem || soni|tū quatit | ungula | campum  
(V. 8, 596).

But even when dactyls are numerous, the Latin hexameter, "the stateliest measure ever moulded by the lips of man," should not be read with the jerky  $\frac{3}{8}$  movement which is characteristic of the English hexameter.

2562. The following passage may serve to illustrate the movement of the hexameter, and to show how the use of the different caesuras imparts variety to the measure:

Ō soci|ī || —nequ(e) e|n(im) ignā|rī || sumus | ante ma|lōrum —  
ō pas|sī gravi|ōra, || da|bit deus | hīs quoque | finem.  
Vōs et | Scyllae|am || rabi|em || peni|tusque so|nantēs  
accē|stis scopu|lōs, || vōs | et Cŷ|clōpea | saxa  
exper|tī; || revo|cāt(e) ani|mōs, || maelstumque ti|mōrem  
mittite: | fōrsan et | haec || ō|lim || memi|nisse iu|vābit.  
(V. 1, 198).

Compare in English:

Rolls and rages amain the restless, billowy ocean,  
While with a roar that soundeth afar the white-maned breakers  
Leap up against the cliffs, like foemen madly rejoicing.

## NOTES ON THE HEXAMETER.

2563. (1.) In all probability, the hexameter was originally a composite verse, made up of two tripodies, or of a tetrapody and a dipody. Hence hiatus in the principal caesura is not very rare, even in the Augustan poets. The stress upon the first and fourth theses was probably stronger than that upon the other three.

2564. (2.) In the second half of the hexameter, particularly in the fifth and sixth feet, verse-ictus and word-accent show a strong tendency to coincide.

2565. (3.) A monosyllable rarely stands before the principal caesura or at the end of the verse. When the verse ends in a monosyllable, the thesis of the last foot is generally a monosyllable also, as in the line

Crīspīnus minimō mē prōvocat; accipe, sī vīs  
(H. S. 1, 4, 14).

Exceptions to this rule sometimes occur when the poet wishes to produce a particular effect, as in

Parturient mōntēs, nāscētur rīdiculus mūs  
(H. AP. 139).

2566. (4.) A hexameter generally ends in a word of two or three syllables, almost never in one of four, rarely in one of five. But *spondaic* verses (2556) generally end with a word of four syllables, more rarely with one of three, almost never with one of two.

2567. (5.) Spondaic verses are comparatively rare in Ennius and Lucretius, but become more frequent in Catullus. They are not common in Vergil, Horace, Propertius and Ovid, and do not occur at all in Tibullus. Persius has one spondaic verse, Valerius Flaccus one, Claudian five, Silius Italicus six, Statius seven. Ennius has lines composed entirely of spondees, and so in one instance (116, 3) Catullus. Ennius also resolves the thesis of a dactyl in a few cases.

2568. (6.) A verse which is connected with the following one by elision (2492) is called hypermetrical. Such verses are rare, and usually end with the enclitics *-que* or *-ve*.

2569. (7.) The dactylic hexameter was introduced into Latin literature by Ennius, and was further perfected by Lucilius, Lucretius, and Cicero, who took him as their model. Catullus and the group to which he belonged followed Alexandrian models more closely, while the great poets of the Augustan age carried the technique of the hexameter to its highest perfection. Horace in his lyric poetry treats the hexameter with great strictness; but in the Satires and Epistles he handles it with much freedom, imparting to the measure a more colloquial character by the frequent use of spondees and by less rigorous treatment of the caesura.

## THE DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

2570. The DACTYLIC PENTAMETER is a verse consisting of two catalectic dactylic tripodies, separated by a fixed diaeresis. Spondees are admitted in the first tripody, but not in the second. The final thesis of the first tripody is protracted to a tetraseme (2516) to compensate for the omission of the arsis. The scheme is therefore

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ # ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

2571. (1.) The verse is not asynartetic (2535), neither *syllaba anceps* nor hiatus being allowed at the end of the first tripody.

2572. (2.) This verse is known as the pentameter because the ancient grammarians measured it

— ⏏ ⏏ | — ⏏ ⏏ | — — | ⏏ ⏏ — | ⏏ ⏏ —



2573. The pentameter is rarely used except in combination with the hexameter, with which it forms the so-called *Elegiac Distich*:

$\frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | - \text{ 5 } | - \text{ 5 } | \frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | \frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | \frac{1}{2} -$   
 $\frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | \frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | \text{ 4 } \# | \frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | \frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } | \frac{1}{2} \text{ 5 } |$

**2574.** The Elegiac Distich is used chiefly in elegiac poetry (whence the name), in amatory verse and in epigrams. The end of the pentameter generally coincides with a pause in the sense. As examples of the Elegiac Distich, the following may serve :

Quam legis | ex il|lā || tibi | vēnit e|pistola | terrā  
lātus u|b(ī) aequore|īs ‡ additur | Hister a|quīs.  
Sī tibi | contige|rit || cum | dulcī | vīta sa|lūte,  
candida | fōrtū|nae ‡ pars manet | ūna me|ae.

O. *Tr.* 5, 7, 1.

Compare in English (but see 2561 *ad fin.*):

“These lame hexameters the strong-winged music of Homer!  
No — but a most burlesque, barbarous experiment . . .  
Hexameters no worse than daring Germany gave us,  
Barbarous experiment, barbarous hexameters.”

(TENNYSON).

**2575.** The Elegiac Distich was introduced into Roman poetry by Ennius, who used it in epigrams. Varro employed it in his *Saturae*, and Catullus seems to have been the first of the Latins who used it in Elegiac poetry. The elegiac and amatory poets of the Augustan age, especially Ovid, perfected it, and wielded it with unequalled grace and ease.

**2576.** Ovid nearly always closes the pentameter with a disyllabic word ; but earlier poets, especially Catullus, are less careful in this regard. Elision is less frequent in the pentameter than in the hexameter. It sometimes occurs in the main diaeresis of the pentameter, though rarely.

THE DACTYLIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (or  
*Alcmanian*).

**2577.** This verse is chiefly used in composition with a trochaic tripod to form the Greater Archilochian verse (2677); but it occurs alone once in Terence (*Andria* 625), and is employed in stichic series (2546) by Seneca. The scheme is:

$\frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup$

An example is :

# hōcine | crēdibi|l(e) aut memo|rābile

(T. Andr. 625).

This verse is often called *Alcmanian* because it was used by the Greek poet Alcman.

### THE DACTYLIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Archilochian*.)

2578. This verse consists of four dactylic feet, the last one being incomplete. The scheme is :

$\underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \cup \cup \mid \underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \cup \cup \mid \text{---} \text{ } \text{---} \text{ } \text{---} \mid \underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \cup \wedge$

An example is :

Cármine | pérpetu|<sup>ó</sup> cele|brár(e) et

(H. I, 7, 6).

This verse differs from the preceding in that the last foot is always a trochee or spondee, never a dactyl. It is used only in the Alcmanian strophe (2724).

### THE DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Lesser* *Archilochian*).

2579. This verse has the scheme :

$\underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \cup \cup \mid \underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \cup \cup \mid \underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \overline{\text{---}}$

An example is :

Árbori|búsque co | maé

(H. 4, 7, 2).

It is used chiefly in the First Archilochian Strophe (see 2725). In form it is the same as the second half of the pentameter (2570).

2580. These verses (2578, 2579) are often called *Archilochian* because they were first used by the Greek poet Archilochus.

### IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

2581. These are ascending rhythms (2528) in  $\frac{3}{8}$  time. The fundamental foot is the Iambus ( $\cup \underline{\text{I}}$ ), for which its metrical equivalent the tribrach  $\cup \text{ } \text{ } \cup$ , the irrational spondee  $> \underline{\text{I}}$ , the irrational dactyl  $> \text{ } \underline{\text{I}} \text{ } \cup$ , the cyclic anapaest  $\cup \cup \underline{\text{I}}$ , or the proceleusmatic  $\cup \cup \text{ } \text{ } \cup$  is sometimes substituted.

2582. The Greek poets excluded all feet except the iambus and tribrach, and in comedy the anapaest, from the even places in iambic verse. The Latin poets were not so strict: but when one of the even feet was formed by a word or a word-ending, they did not usually allow the foot to be a spondee or an anapaest, but required it to be an iambus.

## THE IAMBIC TRIMETER OR SENARIUS.

2583. The IAMBIC TRIMETER is the verse most frequently used by the Roman dramatists. It consists of six iambic feet, or three iambic dipodies. The ictus on the second thesis of each dipody was probably weaker than that upon the first thesis. Some ancient authorities, however, held that the ictus on the second thesis was the stronger. The last foot is always an iambus. The normal scheme is therefore :

∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟

Some prefer (see 2529) to regard this verse as a trochaic trimeter catalectic with anacrusis. The normal scheme will then be :

∪ : ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ^

2584. The Latin poets differ widely in their treatment of the Senarius, some (especially Plautus, Terence, and the other early dramatists) handling it with great freedom, while others (especially Phaedrus and Publilius Syrus) conform more closely to Greek models. We may therefore distinguish two periods :

## (A.) Early Period.

2585. Any one of the substitutions enumerated in 2581 is admitted in any foot except the last. The scheme is therefore :

∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∪ ∟  
 ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∩ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∩ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ |  
 > ∟ ∪ | > ∩ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ | > ∩ ∪ | [> ∟ ∪] |  
 ∪ ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∪ ∟ |  
 ∪ ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∪ ∩ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∩ ∪ | [∪ ∪ ∟ ∪] |

The main caesura is usually penthemimeral (2544) ; but it is sometimes hephthemimeral, in which case there is generally a secondary caesura in, or diaeresis after, the second foot.

The following passage may serve to show the rhythm :

Ubi vén|t(um) ad ae|dīs || ést | Dromō | pultát | forēs ;  
 anūs quaé|dam prō|dit ; || haéc | ub(i) ape|rit ōs|tium,  
 contínu(ō) | hic sē | conié|cit || in|tr(ō), ego cōn|sequor ;  
 anūs fóri|bus ob|dit || pés|sul(um), ad | lānám | redit.  
 Hīc scí|rī potu|it || aút | nusqu(am) ali|bī, Clí|nia,  
 quō stúdi|ō vī|tam || suám | t(ē) absen|t(e) exē|gerit,  
 ubi d(ē) ín |prōvī|sōst || ín|terven|tum múli|erī, &c.

T. *Han.* 275.



$\cup \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid > \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $\cup \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \cup \cup \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $> \underline{\quad} \cup \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $\cup \underline{\quad} \cup \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid > \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $> \underline{\quad} \mid > \cup \cup \mid \cup \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid > \cup \cup \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $> \underline{\quad} \cup \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid > \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $\cup \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid > \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \mid > \underline{\quad} \cup \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$

**2586.** (1.) In the early dramatists, substitutions are very numerous, and lines which follow the normal scheme are rare. Substitutions are most frequent in the first foot.

**2587.** (2.) Four shorts rarely stand in succession unless they belong to the same foot. Hence a dactyl or tribrach is seldom followed by an anapaest.

**2588.** (3.) The dactyl and proceleusmatic are rare in the fifth foot. The proceleusmatic occurs chiefly in the first foot.

**2589.** (4.) The fifth foot is very often a spondee. It must not be a pure iambus except (*a.*) when the line ends with a polysyllable of four or more syllables; (*b.*) when it ends with a word which forms a Cretic (2521); (*c.*) when it ends with an iambic word preceded by one which forms a Fourth Paeon (2521), or by an anapaestic word which is itself preceded by a final short syllable; (*d.*) when there is a change of speakers before the last foot; (*e.*) when elision occurs in the fifth or sixth foot.

**2590.** (5.) The main caesura is rarely preceded by a monosyllable.

**2591.** (6.) In the Senarius, and in the other iambic and trochaic verses of the early dramatists, a resolved arsis or thesis is usually placed so that its first syllable *begins a word*, or so that the two shorts of the resolved arsis or thesis are *enclosed* by other syllables belonging to the same word. Hence a dactylic word with the ictus on the penult or ultima (e. g. **tempóre**) rarely occurs. But there are occasional exceptions to the rule, especially in the case of words that are closely connected (e. g. a preposition with its case).

### (B.) Later Period.

**2592.** Later writers conform more closely to Greek usage, but differ from one another in the degree of strictness with which they follow it. The general scheme is:

$\geq \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid \geq \parallel \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \mid \geq \underline{\quad} \mid \cup \underline{\quad}$   
 $\cup \underline{\quad} \cup \mid \cup \cup \cup \mid \cup \parallel \underline{\quad} \cup \mid \cup \cup \cup \mid \cup \underline{\quad} \cup$   
 $> \underline{\quad} \cup \mid \mid > \parallel \underline{\quad} \cup \mid$   
 $[\cup \underline{\quad}] \mid \mid [\cup \underline{\quad}] \mid$   
 $[\cup \underline{\quad} \cup \mid$

The main caesura is usually the penthemimeral (2544). The hephthemimeral sometimes occurs, but usually in connection with the penthemimeral, or with a diaeresis after the second foot. If the hephthemimeral is used without either of these, the second and third trochees of the line must form one word, as in

ut gaú|det in|sití|va || dē|cérpéns | pira.  
(H. *Epod.* 2, 19.)

2593. (1.) The anapaest is rare in nearly all classical writers; Catullus does not admit it at all, and Horace only five times in all. The proceleusmatic is admitted in the first foot by Seneca, the author of the *Octāvia*, Phaedrus, Publilius Syrus and Terentianus Maurus; other writers exclude it altogether. Catullus keeps the fifth foot pure, and Horace does not admit the tribrach in the fifth foot.

2594. (2.) Catullus (4 and 29), Horace (*Epod.* 16), Vergil (*Cat.* 3, 4, 8), and the authors of the *Priāpēa* sometimes use the *pure* iambic trimeter, without resolutions or substitutions.

2595. (3.) Phaedrus follows in part the earlier usage, admitting the spondee, dactyl, and anapaest, in every foot except the last. The dactyl he employs chiefly in the first, third, and fifth feet, the anapaest in the first and fifth. The proceleusmatic he admits only in the first.

2596. The rhythm of the Senarius may be illustrated by the following lines:

But one amid the throng of eager listeners,  
A sable form with scornful eye and look averse,  
Out-stretched a lean fore-finger and bespake Haroun.

### THE CHOLIAMBUS (or *Scazon*).

2597. The CHOLIAMBUS is an iambic trimeter in which a trochee has been substituted for the final iambus. The penultimate syllable is therefore long instead of short. The caesura is generally the penthemimeral (2544). If it is hephthemimeral, there is regularly a diaeresis after the second foot. The scheme is:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{⋈} \text{ — } & | & \cup \text{ — } & | & \text{⋈} \text{ — } & | & \cup \text{ — } & | & \cup \text{ — } & | & \text{ — } \cup \\ [\cup \text{ — } \cup] & | & \cup \cup \cup & | & \cup \text{ — } \cup & | & \cup \cup \cup & | & & & \\ > \text{ — } \cup & | & & | & > \text{ — } \cup & | & & | & & & \\ & & \cup \text{ — } & | & & & & & & & \end{array}$$

An example is:

Fulsē|re quon|dam || cán|didī| tibī | sōlē̄s.

(Cat. 8, 3.)

2598. (1.) The anacrustic scheme (see 2529) of the choliambus is:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{⋈} : & \text{ — } \cup & | & \text{ — } \text{⋈} & | & \text{ — } \cup & | & \text{ — } \cup & | & \text{ — } & | & \text{ — } \cup \\ \cup : & \text{ — } \cup \cup & | & \cup \cup \cup & | & \text{ — } \cup \cup & | & \cup \cup \cup & | & & & \end{array}$$

i. e. trochaic trimeter with anacrusis (2529), syncope (2541), and protraction (2516).

2599. (2.) Resolutions and substitutions are less common in the choliambus than in the ordinary trimeter. No monosyllable except **est** is admitted at the end of the line. The tribrach in the first foot is rare, and the fifth foot is regularly an iambus.

2600. (3.) The verse is named *Choliambus* (i. e. "lame" or "limping iambus") or *Scazon* ("hobbler") from its odd, limping movement. It is sometimes called Hipponactean from its inventor Hipponax, and is chiefly used to produce a satiric or ludicrous effect. It was introduced into Roman poetry by Cn. Mattius, and was employed by Varro, Catullus, Persius, Petronius, Martial, and others.

## THE IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

2601. The IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC occurs in Horace (1, 4 and 2, 18). The caesura is regularly penthemimeral (2544). Resolutions are not admitted, except in one doubtful case, *rēgumque puerīs* (2, 18, 34), where *pūerīs* may be read (with synizesis; see 2499). The scheme is:

$\text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \parallel \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$   
 $[\cup \cup \cup] \text{ } |$

Examples are:

*Meā | renī|det || ín | domō | lacū|nar.* (II. 2, 18, 2.)

$\cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \parallel \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$

*Seu pó|scit ā|gnā sī|ve mā|lit haé|dō.*

$\text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \parallel \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$  (H. I, 4, 12.)

2602. (1.) The anacrustic scheme is:

$\text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \# \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \wedge$ ,

i. e. trochaic trimeter catalectic with anacrusis (2529), syncope (2541), and protraction (2516).

2603. (2.) Horace seems to have changed his practice with reference to the first foot. In 1, 4 the first foot is a spondee in nine lines out of ten; in 2, 18, it is a spondee in only two lines out of twenty.

THE IAMBIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Octonarius*).

2604. This verse consists of four iambic dipodies, or eight complete iambic feet. The substitutions enumerated in 2581 are admitted in the first seven feet; but the last foot is always an iambus. The principal break in the line is usually a diaeresis after the fourth foot (which in that case must be a pure iambus), or a caesura after the arsis of the fifth. The full scheme is:

$\text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$   
 $\cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } |$   
 $\text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } |$   
 $\cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } |$   
 $\cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } |$

2605. The following lines are examples of this metre:

*Enīm vē|rō, Dā|ve, nī|locīst # sēgnīti|ae neque | sōcór|diae,*  
*quant(um) ín|tellē|xī módo | senis # sentén'tiam | dē nū|ptiīs:*  
*quae sī|nōn a|stū prō|viden|tur || m(ē)áu|terum | pessúm | dabunt.*  
 (T. *Andr.* 206.)

$\cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \# \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$   
 $\text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \text{⋈} \text{ } \cup \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } \# \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$   
 $\text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \parallel \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \text{>} \text{ } \underline{\text{—}} \text{ } | \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{—}}$



2606. Compare in English :

He smote the rock, and forth a tide of crystal waters streamed amain ;  
Up sprang the flowrets from the ground, and Nature smiled o'er all the  
plain.

2607. (1.) The iambic octonarius is chiefly a comic verse. Terence has about eight hundred lines in this measure, Plautus only about three hundred, Varro a few.

2608. (2.) Substitutions are much less common than in the senarius, especially in the even feet.

2609. (3.) When there is a diaeresis after the fourth foot, so that the line is divided into two equal halves, the verse is *asynartetic* (2535). There seems, however, to be no certain instance of hiatus in the diaeresis in the Terentian plays.

## IAMBIC SEPTENARIUS.

### (A.) Early Usage.

2610. The IAMBIC SEPTENARIUS consists of seven and a half iambic feet. In any of the complete feet the substitutes mentioned in 2581 are admitted. There is usually a diaeresis after the fourth foot, which in that case must be a pure iambus. If there is not such a diaeresis, there is generally a caesura after the arsis of the fifth foot. The scheme of substitution is :—

$\begin{array}{cccccccc} \text{⏏} \text{—} & | & \text{⏏} \text{.} & | & \text{⏏} \text{—} & | & \text{⏏} \text{.} & | & \text{⏏} \text{—} & | & \text{⏏} \text{.} & | & \text{⏏} \text{—} & | & \text{⏏} \text{—} \\ \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup \\ > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{ } \cup \\ \cup \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & | & \cup \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & | & \cup \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & | & \cup \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} \\ \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{ } \cup \end{array}$

2611. Examples of the Septenarius are the lines :

Spērā|bit sūm|ptum síbi | senex || levā|t(um) ess(e) hā|runc ábi|tū :  
n(ē) ill(e) haúd | scit hōc | paulúm | lucrī || quant(um) é|i da|mn(i)  
adpór|tet.

Tū nés|ciēs | quod scís, | Dromō, || sī sápi|ēs. Mū|tum dí|cēs.

(T. Han. 746.)

$\begin{array}{cccccccc} > \text{—} & | & > \text{.} & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & \cup \text{.} & || & \cup \text{—} & | & > \text{.} & | & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{—} \\ > \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & | & > \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & || & > \text{—} & | & > \text{.} & | & > \text{—} & | & \cup \text{—} \\ > \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & | & > \text{—} & | & \cup \text{.} & || & > \text{ } \cup & | & > \text{.} & | & > \text{—} & | & > \text{—} \end{array}$

Compare in English :

“Now who be ye would cross Lochgyle, this dark and stormy water?”  
(Campbell.)

**2612.** (1.) The Iambic Septenarius of the early comedy is not properly a "tetrameter catalectic" like the Greek, for the penultimate syllable is sometimes resolved, which is never the case in the Greek catalectic tetrameter. For the same reason the ordinary anacrusic (2529) scheme of the early Septenarius is erroneous; for a triseme cannot be resolved.

**2613.** (2.) When there is a diaeresis after the fourth foot, the verse is asynartetic (see 2535).

**2614.** (3.) The Septenarius seems not to have been used in tragedy.

### (B.) Later Usage.

**2615.** Varro and Catullus (25) employ a form of the Septenarius which conforms more closely to Greek models, keeping the arses of the even feet pure and rarely admitting resolutions. There is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot. The scheme is:—

⏑ — | ∪ — | ⏑ — | ∪ — ‡ ⏑ — | ∪ — | ⏑ — |

or anacrastically (2529)

⏑ ∷ — ∪ | — ⏑ | — ∪ | — ∥ ⏑ | — ∪ | — ⏑ | — ∪ | — ∧

**2616.** Catullus does not admit resolutions at all, save in one very doubtful case (25, 5). Varro seems to admit them in the first foot only.

### IAMBIC DIMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Quaternarius*).

**2617.** The IAMBIC DIMETER ACATALECTIC consists of two complete iambic dipodies or four iambic feet. In the first three feet the tribrach, irrational spondee, irrational dactyl and cyclic anapaest are admitted; but the proceleusmatic is very rare, except in the first foot of the *Versus Reizianus* (2625), (of which a Quaternarius forms the first colon). The scheme for substitution is:

⏑ — | ⏑ — | ⏑ — | ∪ —  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ |  
 > ∪ ∪ | > ∪ ∪ | > ∪ ∪ |  
 ∪ — | ∪ — | ∪ — |  
 [∪ ∪ ∪] | [∪ ∪ ∪] | ∪ ∪ ∪ |

Examples are:

Rogitá|re quasi | diffíci|le sit

∪ — | ∪ ∪ ∪ | > ∪ ∪ | ∪ —

(T. *Eu.* 209).

Ast égo | vicis|sim rí|serō

> ∪ ∪ | ∪ — | > — | ∪ —

(H. *Epod.* 15, 24).

Perŭn|xit hōc | Iá|sonem

∪ — | ∪ — | ∪ — | ∪ —

(H. *Epod.* 3, 12).

## 2618–2625.] *Appendix (E.): Prosody.*

2618. (1.) The verse may also be regarded as a trochaic dimeter catalectic with anacrusis (2529), with the normal scheme:

∪ ∷ ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∟

2619. (2.) Horace admits resolutions only four times, the tribrach once in the second foot and the dactyl thrice in the first.

2620. (3.) Plautus (except in a few instances), Terence, and Horace employ the dimeter only as a *clausula* (2536) to longer verses. Petronius, Seneca, and Prudentius use it to form *systems* (2547); but it is rarely so employed by earlier writers.

### THE IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Ternarius*).

2621. This is like the preceding verse, except that the last foot is incomplete. Examples are:—

Nequ(e) íd | perspice|re quí|vī

∪ ∟ | > ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∟

(Pl. *Cap.* 784).

Date; móx | eg(o) hūc | revór|tor

∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ ∟

(T. *Andr.* 485).

2622. (1.) The verse may also be regarded as a syncopated catalectic trochaic dimeter with anacrusis (2529). The normal scheme will then be:—

∪ ∷ ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ | ∟ ∟

2623. (2.) Plautus and Terence use this verse as a *clausula* (2536). Petronius is the first who employs it to form *systems* (2547).

### OTHER IAMBIC VERSES.

2624. Other short iambic verses, the acatalectic dipody (e. g. eg(o) illúm | famē, | eg(o) illúm | sitī, Pl. *Cas.* 153), and the catalectic tripody (e. g. inóps | amā|tor, Pl. *Tri.* 256) sometimes occur, but are rare.

### THE VERSUS REIZIANUS.

2625. This is a composite verse, consisting of two cola, an iambic dimeter acatalectic and an iambic tripody catalectic. The scheme is therefore,

> ∟	> ∟	> ∟	∪ ∟ #	> ∟	> ∟	∪ ∟
∪ ∟ ∪	∪ ∪ ∪	∪ ∟ ∪		[ ∪ ∟ ∪ ]	∪ ∟ ∪	
> ∟ ∪	> ∪ ∪	> ∟ ∪		> ∟ ∪	> ∟ ∪	
∪ ∟	∪ ∟	∪ ∟		∪ ∟	∪ ∟	
∪ ∟ ∪	[ ∪ ∪ ∪ ]	[ ∪ ∟ ∪ ]		∪ ∟ ∪	∪ ∟ ∪	

Examples are:—

Sed in aé|dibus | quid tíbi | meīs # n(am) erát | negó|tī

m(ē) absén|te, nis(i) e|go iūs|seram? # volo scí|re. Tac(ē) ér|gō.

Quia vē|nimūs coc|t(um) ad nū|ptiās. # Quid tū, | malūm, cú|rās.

(Pl. *Aul.* 427.)



2626. The nature of the second colon of this verse has long been disputed. Reiz and Christ treat it substantially as above; Studemund regards it as a syncopated iambic dimeter catalectic ( $\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—} \text{—} \cup$ ), Spengel and Gleditsch as anapaestic, Leo as logaoedic, Klotz as sometimes logaoedic and sometimes anapaestic! The view of Christ (*Metrik*<sup>2</sup>, p. 348) seems, on the whole, the most reasonable, though the question cannot be said to be fully decided. The tribrach is rare in the second colon, but there seems to be a case in Plautus, *R.* 675 b.

2627. For other iambic verses and combinations of verses, see special editions of the dramatists.

## TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

2628. These are descending rhythms in  $\frac{3}{4}$  time. The fundamental foot is the trochee  $\text{—} \cup$ , for which its metrical equivalent the tribrach  $\cup \cup \cup$ , the irrational spondee  $\text{—} >$ , the cyclic dactyl  $\text{—} \cup \cup$ , the irrational anapaest  $\cup \cup >$ , and (rarely) the proceleusmatic  $\cup \cup \cup$ , are sometimes substituted.

## THE TROCHAIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Septenarius*).

2629. The TROCHAIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC is, next to the iambic trimeter, the verse most frequently used by the early Roman dramatists. It consists of seven and a half trochaic feet, or four trochaic dipodies (the last one being incomplete). The ictus on the second thesis of each dipody was probably weaker than that on the first thesis. The normal scheme is:—

$\text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \wedge$

As in the case of the senarius, we may distinguish two periods in the usage:—

### (A.) Early Period.

2630. The tribrach is admitted in any of the complete feet, and the irrational spondee, cyclic dactyl, and irrational anapaest in any of the first six feet. Terence does not admit the proceleusmatic in the Septenarius (nor in any other kind of trochaic verse), but Plautus admits it in the first foot. The seventh foot of the Septenarius is usually a trochee, but the tribrach sometimes occurs there. The principal break in the line is usually a diaeresis after the fourth foot (which in that case must not be a dactyl), often accompanied by a secondary diaeresis after the second foot. Sometimes, however, the principal break is a diaeresis after the fifth foot, in which case there is generally a secondary diaeresis after the third foot or a caesura in the fourth. The full scheme of substitutions is:—

$\text{—} > | \text{—} > | \text{—} > | \text{—} > | \text{—} > | \text{—} > | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup |$   
 $\text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | [\text{—} \cup \cup]$   
 $\cup \cup > | \cup \cup > | \cup \cup > | \cup \cup > | \cup \cup > | \cup \cup > |$   
 $[\cup \cup \cup]$

The following lines are examples of the Septenarius:—

Séquere | sīs, erŭm | quí lū|dificās ‡ díctīs | dēlī|ránti|bus  
quī quoni(am) | erŭs, quod | ímpe|rāvit ‡ néglē|xistī | pérse|quī,  
núnc ve|nīs eti(am) | ūltr(ō) in|rīsum ‡ dómīnum|: quae neque | fīe|rī  
póssunt | neque fan|d(ō) úmqu(am) ac|cēpit ‡ quísquam | prōfers, |  
cárnu|fex. (Pl. *Am.* 585.)

$\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cdot \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} > | \cup \cup > \# \bar{\cup} > | \cdot > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \wedge$   
 $\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot > \# \bar{\cup} > | \cdot > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \wedge$   
 $\bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} > | \cdot > \# \bar{\cup} \cup > | \cdot \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \wedge$   
 $\bar{\cup} > | \cup \cup > | \bar{\cup} > | \cdot > \# \bar{\cup} > | \cdot > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot$

2631. (1.) When there is a diaeresis after the fourth foot, the verse is *asynartetic* (2535). In Plautus hiatus in the diaeresis is not rare; but there seems to be no *certain* instance of it in Terence (see *Ph.* 528, *Ad.* 697).

2632. (2.) An anapaest is not allowed to follow a dactyl.

2633. (3.) The seventh foot is usually a trochee; rarely a tribrach or dactyl. The tribrach and dactyl are seldom found in the fourth foot.

#### (B.) Later Usage.

2634. The later and stricter form of the Septenarius keeps the arses of the odd feet pure, and regularly shows a diaeresis after the fourth foot.

$\bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup \# \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \wedge$

Resolutions occur, but are far less common than in the earlier form of the verse. The strict form of the Septenarius is found in Varro, Seneca, and often in late poets (as Ausonius, Prudentius, &c.).

2635. The rhythm of the Septenarius may be illustrated by this line:—

“Comrades, leave me here a little, while as yet 'tis early morn.”  
(Tennyson.)

#### THE TROCHAIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Octonarius*).

2636. The TROCHAIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC is chiefly confined to the lyrical portions of the early comedy. It consists of four complete trochaic dipodies or eight trochaic feet. The tribrach, irrational spondee, irrational anapaest and cyclic dactyl may stand in any foot save the last. The last foot is regularly a trochee or a tribrach, though (the last syllable being *syllaba anceps*, 2533) an apparent spondee or anapaest, but not a dactyl, may arise. The principal break in the line is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot (which in that case must not be a dactyl). Occasionally, however, there is instead a caesura in the fourth or fifth foot. The scheme is:—

$\bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \cdot \cup$   
 $\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | [\cup \cup \cup]$   
 $\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cdot \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cdot \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \cdot \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup |$   
 $\bar{\cup} \cup > | \cup \cup > | \bar{\cup} \cup > | \cup \cup > | \bar{\cup} \cup > | \cup \cup > | \bar{\cup} \cup > | [\cup \cup >]$

Example:—

Cēse|ō. Sed|heús tū. | Quid vīs ? ‡ Cēnsēn | posse | m(e) óffir|māre ?  
(T. *Eu.* 217).

┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┐ > | ◡ > ‡ ┐ > | ◡ ◡ | ┐ > | ◡ ◡

Compare in English:—

Over stream and mount and valley sweeps the merry, careless rover,  
Toying with the fragrant blossoms, beating down the heads of clover.

2637. (1.) When there is a diaeresis after the fourth foot, the verse is *asynartetic* (2535).

2638. (2.) The Octonarius is essentially a lyric metre, and is much less common than the Septenarius.

### THE TROCHAIC TETRAMETER CLAUDUS (or *Scazon*).

2639. This verse is a trochaic tetrameter acatalectic, with syncope and protraction in the seventh foot. The normal scheme is:

┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┐ | ┐ ◡

An example is:—

Néc co|ruscus | ímber | altō || nūbi|lō ca|dēns | múltus

┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┐ ◡ | ◡ > ‡ ┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡ | ┐ | ┐ ◡

(Varro, *Sat. fr.* 557 Buech.).

2640. (1.) Substitutions are much rarer in this verse than in the ordinary trochaic octonarius.

2641. (2.) The Scazon was introduced among the Greeks by Hipponax, whence it is sometimes called the Hipponactean. Varro seems to be the only Roman poet who uses it.

### THE NINE-SYLLABLED ALCAIC.

2642. This verse consists of two complete trochaic dipodies, with anacrusis. The second foot is always an irrational spondee. The scheme is:—

◡ : ┐ ◡ | ◡ > | ┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡

An example is:—

Sil|vaé la|bōran|tés ge|lūque.

(H. 1, 9, 3.)

This verse occurs only in Horace, where it forms the third line of the Alcaic Strophe (see 2736).

### THE TROCHAIC DIMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Quaternarius*).

2643. This verse consists of two complete trochaic dipodies. It is very rare, but there are probably a few instances of it in Plautus, e. g. *Per.* 31:—

Bási|li|c(ō) accipi|ére | vīctū

┐ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ | ┐ ◡ | ◡ ◡





Example :—

Qu(i) ímpi|ger fu|í

— ∪ | — ∪ | — ∧

(Pl. *R.* 925).

In one instance (*R.* 924 ff.) Plautus has six catalectic tripodies in succession.

### OTHER TROCHAIC VERSES.

2649. The Trochaic Monometer Acatalectic is sometimes used by Plautus as a *clausula* (2536) to Cretic tetrameters. It consists of one complete trochaic dipody, e. g. *nímis in|epta' s*, *R.* 681. *iūre in|iūstās*, *Am.* 247. Terence uses the *catalectic* monometer twice (*Eu.* 292, *Ph.* 485) at the beginning of a scene, e. g. *Dōri|ō*, *Ph.* 485. Plautus has a few other trochaic verses and combinations of verses, for which see special editions of his plays.

### LOGAOEDIC RHYTHMS.

2650. Logaoedic verse consists of dactyls and trochees combined in the same metrical series. The dactyls are “cyclic” (see 2523), occupying approximately the time of trochees, and hence the verse moves in  $\frac{3}{2}$  time. Except in the “Lesser Alcaic” verse (2663), only one dactyl may stand in a single series; and a dactyl must not occupy the last place in a line.

2651. (1.) The name “logaoedic” (Gr. *λογαοιδικός*, from *λόγος*, *speech*, *prose*, and *αοιδή*, *song*) may refer to the apparent change of rhythm (due to the mixture of dactyls and trochees), in which logaoedic verse resembles prose; but this is a disputed point.

2652. (2.) In the logaoedic verses of Horace, an irrational spondee almost always takes the place of a trochee before the first dactyl; and if an apparent choriambus (— ∪ | —; see 2521) is followed by another apparent choriambus in the same verse, the two are regularly separated by a caesura. These rules are not observed by Catullus.

2653. (3.) Anacrusis (2529) and syncope (2541) are very common in logaoedic verse.

2654. The following are the principal logaoedic rhythms :—

#### DIPODY.

#### THE ADONIC.

2655. This is a logaoedic dipody, with the scheme :—

— ∪ | — ∪

Examples are :—

Térruit | úrbem

(H. I, 2, 4).

Rāra iu|véntus

(H. I, 2, 24).

## 2656-2659.] *Appendix (E.): Prosody.*

2656. (1.) Some regard the Adonic as a syncopated catalectic tripod:

┘ ∪ | ┘ | ┘ ∧

2657. (2.) A Latin Adonic should consist of a disyllable + a trisyllable, or the reverse. This rule did not hold in Greek, where such lines occur as ὦ τὸν Ἀδωνιν. Elision is not allowed in the Latin Adonic. Late Latin poets (like Terentianus) sometimes employ the Adonic in stichic series (2546).

### TRIPODIES.

#### THE ARISTOPHANIC.

2658. This is a logaoedic tripod acatalectic, with a dactyl in the first place. The scheme is therefore:—

┘ ∪ | ┘ ∪ | ┘ ∪

There is no fixed caesura. Examples are:—

Quíd latet | út ma|rínae  
(H. 1, 8, 13).

Fúnera | nē vi|rílís  
(H. 1, 8, 15).

Some authorities write the scheme as:

┘ ∪ | ┘ ∪ | ┘ | ┘ ∧

i. e. a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic.

#### THE PHERECRATEAN (or *Pherecratic*).

2659. This verse is used by Catullus (34, 61), and by Horace (as the third line of the Third Asclepiadean Strophe: see 2733). It is a logaoedic tripod, with the dactyl in the second place. The scheme is:—

[┘ ∪] |  
┘ > | ┘ ∪ | ┘ ∪  
[┘ —] |

The trochee and iambus are admitted in the first foot by Catullus, but not by Horace. The iambus is very rare. There is no fixed caesura. Examples are:—

Grātō, | Pýrrha, sub | éntērō  
(H. 1, 5, 3).

With initial trochee: Lúte|úmve pa|pāver  
(Cat. 61, 195).

With initial iambus: Púel|laéque ca|nāmus  
(Cat. 34, 4).



Some authorities prefer to regard the Pherecratean as a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic, with the scheme:—

[ $\text{—}$   $\cup$ ] |  
 $\text{—}$  > |  $\text{—}$   $\cup$  |  $\text{—}$  |  $\text{—}$   $\wedge$   
 [ $\cup$  —] |

## TETRAPODIES.

## THE GLYCONIC.

**2660.** This verse is used by Catullus (34, 61), by Horace (in the First, Second, and Third Asclepiadean Strophes: see 2731, 2732, 2733), and by Seneca and other later writers. It is a logaoedic tetrapody catalectic, with a dactyl in the second place. The scheme is:—

[ $\text{—}$   $\cup$ ] |  
 $\text{—}$  > |  $\text{—}$   $\cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\wedge$   
 [ $\cup$  —] |

The trochee and iambus in the first foot occur in Catullus, but not in Horace (except in the doubtful case, 1, 15, 36). There is generally a trithemimeral caesura; more rarely one in the arsis of the second foot. Examples are:—

Quém mor|tís || timu|ít gra|dúm  
 (H. 1, 3, 17).

With initial trochee: Mōnti|úm || domi|n(a) út fo|rēs  
 (Cat. 34, 9).

With initial iambus: Púel|l(ae) ét || pue|r(ī) ínte|grī  
 (Cat. 34, 2).

**2661.** (1.) This verse in composition with the Pherecratean forms the *Priapean* (2674).

**2662.** (2.) In admitting the trochee and iambus in the first foot, Catullus follows Greek models, while Horace adheres to the stricter Roman usage, as laid down by the grammarians of his own day. Seneca observes the same rule as Horace, but some of the later writers (e. g. Terentianus) revert to the earlier and freer usage.

## THE LESSER (OR DECASYLLABIC) ALCAIC.

**2663.** This verse is a logaoedic tetrapody acatalectic, with dactyls in the first and second places. The scheme is:—

$\text{—}$   $\cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup$

There is no fixed caesura, though there is frequently a break after the thesis, or in the arsis, of the second foot. Examples are:—

Flūmina | cōnstitute|rínt a|cūtō  
 (H. 1, 9, 4).

Mōntibus | ét Tibe|rím re|vértī  
 (H. 1, 29, 12).

## PENTAPODIES.

THE PHALAECEAN (or *Hendecasyllable*).

2664. This verse is a logaoedic pentapody with the dactyl in the second place. The Greek poets admitted the trochee and iambus, as well as the spondee, in the first foot, and Catullus followed their example; but in Petronius, Martial, and the *Priāpēa* the first foot is always a spondee, and in later writers nearly always. Horace does not use the Phalaecean. There is no fixed caesura, though the penthemimeral is often found. The scheme is:—

$$\begin{array}{c} [\text{—} \cup] | \\ \text{—} > | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup \\ [\cup \text{—}] | \end{array}$$

Examples are:—

Cūius | vīs fie|rí li|bélle | mūnus  
(Mart. 3, 2, 1).

With initial trochee: Dē di|ē faci|tís me|í so|dālēs  
(Cat. 47, 6).

With initial iambus: Ágit | péssimus | ómni|úm po|éta  
(Cat. 49, 5).

Compare in English:—

“Look, I come to the test, a tiny poem  
All composed in a metre of Catullus.”  
(Tennyson.)

2665. The Phalaecean is a favourite metre in epigrams. It was used by Sappho, Phalaeus (from whom it took its name), and other Greek poets, and was introduced into Roman poetry by Laevius and Varro. It is a favourite metre with Catullus, and is found in the fragments of Cinna, Cornificius and Bibaculus, in the *Priāpēa*, in Petronius, Statius, Martial, &c. In Catullus 55, a spondee is often employed instead of the dactyl, the two kinds of feet alternating in the latter verses of the poem; but this innovation seems not to have found favour.

## THE LESSER SAPPHIC.

2666. This verse is a logaoedic pentapody acatalectic, with the dactyl in the third place. The scheme is:—

$$\text{—} \cup | \left[ \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} > \right] | \text{—} \parallel \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup$$

The trochee in the second foot was admitted by Alcaeus and Sappho, and occurs in Catullus, but not in Horace. In Horace the caesura regularly falls after the thesis, or (less frequently) in the arsis, of the dactyl; but in Catullus, as in Sappho and Alcaeus, it has no fixed position. Examples of this verse are:—

With masculine caesura: Iám sa|tís ter|rís || nivis | átque | dírae  
(H. 1, 2, 1).

With feminine caesura: Phoébe | sílvā|rúmque || po|tēns Di|ána  
(H. C. S. 1).

With trochee in second foot: Seú Sa|cās sa|gíttife|rōsve | Párthōs  
(Cat. II, 6).

### THE GREATER (or HENDECASYLLABIC) ALCAIC.

2667. This verse is a logaoedic pentapody catalectic, with anacrusis and with the dactyl in the third foot. The scheme is:—

∞ : ‾ ∪ | ‾ > ‡ ‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∧

There is nearly always a diaeresis after the second foot. Examples are:—

Ō|mātre | púlchrā ‡ fília | púlchri|ór  
(H. I, 16, 1).

Vi|dēs ut | áltā ‡ stét nive | cándi | dúm  
(H. I, 9, 1).

2668. Alcaeus admitted a trochee in the second foot, and allowed the anacrusis to be either long or short; but Horace admitted only the spondee in the second foot, and usually (in Bk. 4 always) employed a long anacrusis. Horace also differed from his predecessor in assigning a fixed place to the caesura, which in Alcaeus has no regular position.

### COMPOSITE LOGAOEDIC VERSES.

#### THE LESSER ASCLEPIADEAN.

2669. This is a composite verse, consisting of two series, a syncopated logaoedic tripod + a logaoedic tripod catalectic. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two series. The scheme is:—

‾ > | ‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾ ‡ ‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∧

Examples are:—

Maécē|nās ata|vís ‡ édite| rêgi|bús  
(H. I, 1, 1).

Quís dē|síderi|ō ‡ sít pudor | aút mo|dús  
(H. I, 24, 1).

#### THE GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN.

2670. This is a composite verse, consisting of three series. It differs from the preceding (2669) in having a syncopated logaoedic dipody (‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾) inserted between the two tripodies. The three series are regularly separated by diaeresis. The scheme is therefore:—

‾ > | ‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾ ‡ ‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾ ‡ ‾ ∪ ∪ | ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∧

Examples are:—

Núllam|, Vāre, sa|crā ‡ víte pri|ús ‡ séveris | árbo|rém  
Círcā | míte so|lúm ‡ Tíburis | ét ‡ moénia | Cāti|lí.)  
(H. I, 18, 1-2).



## THE GREATER SAPPHIC.

2671. This is a composite verse, consisting of a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody + a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two series, and a caesura after the thesis of the first dactyl. The scheme is :—

⌋ ∪ | ⌋ > | ⌋ || ∪ | ⌋ ‡ ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ | ⌋ ∧

An example is :—

Tē de|ōs ō|rō || Syba|rín ‡ cūr prope|rēs a|mán|dō  
(H. 1, 8, 2).

2672. (1.) The second series has the same form as the Aristophanic, if the latter be written as a tetrapody (see 2658 *ad fin.*).

2673. (2.) Horace (1, 8) is the only Latin poet who makes use of the Greater Sapphic. It seems to be an imitation of the Greek Sapphic :—

⌋ ∪ | ⌋ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ | ⌋ ∧, e. g.

δεῦτέ νιν ἄβραι Χάριτες καλλίκομοί τε Μοῖσαι

but if so, the imitation is not exact.

## THE PRIAPEAN.

2674. This verse is employed by Catullus (17) and in the *Priāpēa* (86). It consists of a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody + a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two parts, but hiatus and *syllaba anceps* are not allowed at the end of the first series. The scheme is :—

— ∷ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ ‡ ⌋ ∷ | ⌋ ∪ | ⌋ | ⌋ ∧

Examples are :—

Ō Co|lōnia | quae cu|pīs ‡ pōnte | lūdere | lōn|gō  
(Cat. 17, 1).

Hūnc lū|cūm tibi | dēdi|cō ‡ cōnse|crōque Pri|ā|pē.  
(Cat. *Fr.*).

The first series has the same form as the Glyconic (2660), and the second series has the same form as the Pherecratean, if the latter be written as a tetrapody (see 2659 *ad fin.*).

## DACTYLO-TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

2675. DACTYLO-TROCHAIC verse, like logaoedic, is composed of dactyls and trochees ; but whereas in logaoedic verse the dactyls and trochees occur within the same metrical series, in dactylo-trochaic they always form separate series. Hence dactylo-trochaic verses are always composite, consisting of two or more series in combination.

2676. It is uncertain whether the dactyls in dactylo-trochaic verse were cyclic (2523) or whether there was a change of time in the middle of the verse.

## THE GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.

2677. This verse is composed of a dactylic tetrameter acatalectic + a trochaic tripody. There is regularly a diaeresis after the first colon, and a caesura after the third thesis. The fourth foot is always a pure dactyl. The third foot is very often a spondee. The scheme is :—

⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ || ⏏⏏ | ⏏⏏⏏ ‡ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

An example is :—

Sólvitur | ácris hi|éms || grā|tá vice || v́eris | ét Fa|vónī  
(H. 4, 1).

In Archilochus the verse is said to have been asynartetic (2535); but Horace and Prudentius do not allow hiatus or *syllaba anceps* in the diaeresis, and Prudentius sometimes neglects the diaeresis altogether.

## THE IAMBELEGUS.

2678. This verse consists of a trochaic dimeter catalectic with anacrusis + a Lesser Archilochian (2579). No resolutions are allowed in the first colon, and the dactyls in the second colon are never replaced by spondees. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two cola. The scheme is :—

⏏ : ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ‡ ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

An example is :—

Rū|pére | nec mā|tér do|mum ‡ caérula | té|reve|hét  
(H. *Epod.* 13, 16).

2679. This verse occurs only in the Second Archilochian Strophe (2726) of Horace. Some authorities treat the first colon as an iambic dimeter. The name Iambelegus was given to the verse because the ancient grammarians regarded it as a dactylic pentameter for the first half of which an iambic colon had been substituted.

## THE ELEGIAMBUS.

2680. This verse consists of the same cola as the Iambelegus (2678), but in reverse order. Spondees are not admitted in the first colon, and no resolutions occur in the second colon. There is regularly a diaeresis between the cola. The scheme is :—

⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ‡ ⏏ : ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

An example is :—

Scrībēre | v́ersicu|lōs || a|móre | percus|súm gra|vī  
(H. *Epod.* 11, 2).

2681. This verse occurs only in the Third Archilochian Strophe (2727) of Horace. The name Elegiambus is given to it as being the reverse of the Iambelegus (see 2679).

## ANAPAESTIC RHYTHMS.

2682. In these the fundamental foot is the anapaest ⏏⏏ ⏏, for which its metrical equivalents the spondee — —, dactyl — ⏏⏏ and proceleusmatic ⏏⏏⏏ are sometimes substituted.

2683. The anapaestic verse of the early Latin comedy is extremely irregular, and its limits are often hard to define. Spondees and apparent bacchii (reduced to anapaests by the law of iambic shortening; see 2470) are extremely common, and metrical irregularities of various kinds abound. The Latin language has so few anapaestic words that it does not lend itself readily to this rhythm. Terence wisely abstained altogether from anapaestic verse. Varro, Seneca, and Prudentius and other late writers wrote anapaests conforming more closely to Greek models.

### THE ANAPAESTIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Octonarius*).

2684. This consists of four anapaestic dipodies or eight complete anapaestic feet. There is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot, and the last thesis of the line is never resolved. Hiatus and *syllaba anceps* sometimes occur in the diaeresis, the verse being asynartetic (2535). The scheme is:—

$\cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . } | \cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . } \# \cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . } | \cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . }$   
 $\text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . } | \text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . } \# \text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . } | \text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . }$   
 $\text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup \# \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup |$   
 $\cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | [\cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup] \# \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup |$

Examples are:—

Neque quód | dubitem | neque quód | timeam # me(ō) ĩn péc |  
tore con | ditũmst cón | silium .

(Pl. *Ps.* 575).

Quid míhi | meliust | quid mágis | in remst # qu(am) ā  
cór|pore vī|tam sē|clũdam

(Pl. *R.* 220).

2685. The proceleusmatic is very rare in the fourth foot, but the spondee is very common there. Some editors divide the anapaestic octonarii into dimeters (or *quaternarii*) and write them as such.

### THE ANAPAESTIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Septenarius*).

2686. This is like the preceding, except that the last foot is incomplete. The seventh thesis may be resolved. There is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot, and hiatus and *syllaba anceps* sometimes occur in the diaeresis. The scheme is:—

$\cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . } | \cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . } \# \cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \cup \text{ . } | \cup \cup \text{ / } | \cup \bar{\text{ — }}$   
 $\text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . } | \text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . } \# \text{ — } \text{ / } | \text{ — } \text{ . } | \text{ — } \text{ / } |$   
 $\text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup \# \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup | \text{ — } \text{ ' } \cup |$   
 $\cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | [\cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup] \# \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup | \cup \cup \text{ ' } \cup |$

Examples are:—

Em né|m(ō) habet hō|r(um)? occí|distī. # dīc ígi|tur quis ha|bet  
né|scīs (Pl. *Aul.* 720).



Hunc hómi|nem decet | aur(ō) éx|pend(ī) : huic ‡ decēt státu|am  
statu(ī) | ex aú|rō

(Pl. B. 640).

### THE ANAPAESTIC DIMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Quaternarius*).

2687. This verse consists of two anapaestic dipodies, or four complete anapaestic feet. There is generally a diaeresis after the second foot, and the fourth thesis is not resolved. The scheme is:—

$\cup \cup \text{—}$  |  $\cup \cup \text{—}$  ‡  $\cup \cup \text{—}$  |  $\cup \cup \text{—}$   
 $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$  |  $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$  ‡  $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$  |  $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$   
 $\text{—}$   $\cup \cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup \cup$  ‡  $\text{—}$   $\cup \cup$  |  
 $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  ‡  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |

Examples are:—

Quod lúbet | nōn lubet ‡ iam cón|tinuō.

Ita m(ē) Ámor| lass(um) ani|mī lú|dificat,  
fugat, ágit | appetīt ‡ raptát | retinet

(Pl. Cist. 214).

This verse is often used to form systems, which frequently end in a paroemiac (see 2688).

### THE ANAPAESTIC DIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Paroemiac*).

2688. This verse consists of two anapaestic dipodies or four anapaestic feet, the last foot being incomplete. The third thesis is sometimes resolved. There is no fixed caesura. The scheme is:—

$\cup \cup \text{—}$  |  $\cup \cup \text{—}$  |  $\cup \cup \text{—}$  |  $\cup \overline{\text{—}}$   
 $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$  |  $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$  |  $\text{—}$   $\text{—}$  |  
 $\text{—}$   $\cup \cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup \cup$  |  $\text{—}$   $\cup \cup$  |  
 $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\cup \cup \cup \cup$  |

Examples are:—

Volucér| pede cor| pore púl| cher

(Ausonius).

Nimīs tán| d(em) eg(o) ābs tē | conté|mnor.

Quipp(e) égo | tē nī| conté|mnam,  
stratiō|ticus homo| quī clúe|ar?

(Pl. Ps. 916).

2689. (1.) The Paroemiac is generally used to close a system of acatalectic anapaestic dimeters; but sometimes several paroemiaks in succession form a system (as in the second example above), especially in Ausonius, Prudentius, and other late poets.

2690 (2.) Other anapaestic verses sometimes occur, especially in the early comedy, but they are rare.

## CRETIC RHYTHMS.

**2691.** These are rhythms of the Hemiolic class (2527), in  $\frac{5}{8}$  time. The fundamental foot is the Cretic ( $\underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}}$ ).

Either (but not *both*) of the two longs of a Cretic is sometimes resolved (giving the First Paeon  $\underline{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup$  or the Fourth Paeon  $\underline{\text{—}} \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}}$ ); but there is rarely more than one resolution in a single verse. The middle short is sometimes replaced by an irrational long (giving  $\underline{\text{—}} > \underline{\text{—}}$ , or if there is resolution,  $\underline{\text{—}} \cup > \underline{\text{—}}$  or  $\underline{\text{—}} > \cup \cup$ ); but this never occurs in the last foot of a verse, and but rarely when the middle syllable is the penult of a spondaic word (e. g. *nōs nostrās*).

**2692.** (1.) The ictus on the first long of the Cretic was probably (at least in most cases) stronger than that on the second. The first long and the short form the thesis, the second long the arsis,  $\underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}}$ .

**2693.** (2.) The impetuous, swinging movement of the Cretic rhythm fits it for the expression of passionate emotion.

## THE CRETIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC.

**2694.** This verse consists of four complete Cretic feet. There is usually a diaeresis after the second foot, but sometimes there is instead a caesura after the first long of the third foot. Resolution is not admitted before the diaeresis or the end of the line. The irrational long middle syllable is admitted in the first and third feet. The scheme is:—

$$\underline{\text{—}} \cup > \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}} \# \underline{\text{—}} \cup > \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}}$$

Examples are:—

Út malīs | gaúdeant ‡ átqu(e) ex in|cómmodīs  
(T. *Andr.* 627).

Déind(e) uter|qu(e) ímperā|tór || in medi|(um) éxeunt  
(Pl. *Am.* 223).

**2695.** This verse is common in the *cantica* of the early drama, and is often repeated to form systems. Hiatus and *syllaba anceps* sometimes occur in the diaeresis.

## THE CRETIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC.

**2696.** This is similar to the preceding, except that the last foot is incomplete. The scheme is:—

$$\underline{\text{—}} \cup > \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}} \# \underline{\text{—}} \cup > \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \overline{\text{—}}$$

Examples are:—

Sí cadēs,| nōn cadēs ‡ quín cadam| tēcum  
(Pl. *Most.* 329).

Nōv(ī) eg(o) hōc| saéculum ‡ mōribus| quíbus sit  
(Pl. *Tri.* 283).

## OTHER CRETIC VERSES.

2697. The Cretic trimeter acatalectic sometimes occurs, though rarely: e. g.

Iám revor|tár. diúst| i(am) íd mihī  
(Pl. *Most.* 338).

More frequent is the dimeter acatalectic, which has the scheme:—

$\frac{1}{\cup} \supset \frac{1}{\cup} \mid \frac{1}{\cup} \cup \div$

This is often compounded with a trochaic tripod catalectic: e. g.

Hōc ub(ī) Am|phítru(ō) erus ‡ cōnspi|cātus|ést  
(Pl. *Am.* 242),

and sometimes with a trochaic tripod acatalectic (e. g. Pl. *Ps.* 1248), a trochaic dipody acatalectic (e. g. Pl. *Cap.* 214), or a *Thymelicus* —  $\cup \cup \cup$  — (e. g. Pl. *Am.* 245). For other kinds of Cretic verses, see special editions of the early dramatists.

## BACCHIAC RHYTHMS.

2698. These are rhythms of the Hemiolic class (2527), in  $\frac{3}{2}$  time. The fundamental foot is the Bacchīus ( $\cup \frac{1}{\cup} \div$ ). Either (or both) of the two longs of a bacchīus is sometimes resolved. For the initial short syllable an irrational long is sometimes substituted. Occasionally two shorts are so substituted, especially in the first foot of a verse.

2699. (1.) The ictus on the first long of the bacchīus was probably stronger than that on the second long.

2700. (2.) The bacchiac rhythm, like the Cretic, has an impetuous and passionate character.

## THE BACCHIAC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC.

2701. This verse consists of four complete bacchiac feet. There is generally a caesura after the first long of the second or third foot, or (more rarely) a diaeresis after the second foot. An irrational long (or two shorts) may be substituted for the initial short only in the first and third feet. Resolution is not allowed before the caesura or the end of the verse. The scheme is:—

$[\supset \cup] \frac{1}{\cup} \frac{1}{\cup} \mid \cup \frac{1}{\cup} \parallel \frac{1}{\cup} \mid [\supset \cup] \frac{1}{\cup} \frac{1}{\cup} \mid \cup \frac{1}{\cup} \div$

Examples are:—

Habénd(um) et | ferúnd(um) hōc ‡ onúst cum | labōre  
(Pl. *Am.* 175).

At támen ubi | fidēs? || sī | rogēs nīl | pudént hīc  
(T. *Andr.* 637).

Vetulaé sunt | min(ae) ámb(ae). At ‡ bonás fuīs|se crédō  
(Pl. *B.* 1129).



2702. (1.) There are seldom more than two resolutions in the same verse, and never more than three. Bacchiac tetrameters are often repeated to form systems.

2703. (2.) According to some authorities, bacchiac tetrameters catalectic sometimes occur, e. g. *Pl. Cas.* 656, 867, *Men.* 969, 971, *Most.* 313, *Poen.* 244.

### OTHER BACCHIAC VERSES.

2704. (1.) Bacchiac dimeters are occasionally found, especially as *clausulae* to bacchiac systems. An example is:—

Ad aétā|t(em) agúndam

(*Pl. Tri.* 232).

An acatalectic dimeter is not seldom compounded with a catalectic iambic tri-pody: e. g.

Rerín tēr| in ánnō ‡ t(ū) hās tōn|sitá|rí?

(*Pl. B.* 1127).

2705. (2.) Bacchiac hexameters occur in a few instances, as:—

Satín par|va rēs est | volúptā|t(um) in vít(ā) at|qu(e) in aétā|t(e) agúndā  
(*Pl. Am.* 633).

2706. (3.) Hypermetrical combination of bacchii into a system appears to occur in Varro, *Sat. Men.* fr. 405 Buech.

### CHORIAMBIC RHYTHMS.

2707. In these, the fundamental foot is the choriambus ( $\underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup \underline{\text{I}}$ ). True choriambic verse is very rare in Latin poetry, though apparent choriambi of the form  $\underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}$  or  $\underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}}$  are common in logaoedic verse (2652).

Apparently, however, in Terence, *Ad.* 611-13,

Út neque quid | mé faciam| néc quid agam ‡ certúm|sit.  
mémбра metū | débilia | súnt, ánimus ‡ timō|re  
óbstipuit, | péctore cōn|sistere nīl ‡ cōnsi|lí quit,

there are three choriambic trimeters, the first two with iambic close, the third with trochaic. In the second line there is *syllaba anceps* at the end of the second choriambus. In Plautus, *Casina* 629, *Menaechmi* 110, and perhaps *Asinaria* 133, we have a choriambic dimeter + an acatalectic trochaic dipody.

Owing to the frequent occurrence of the apparent choriambus in certain kinds of logaoedic verse, the metricians of Horace's day regarded them as really choriambic. Hence the rule mentioned in 2652, a rule unknown to Greek writers of logaoedic verse.

### IONIC RHYTHMS.

2708. In these, the fundamental foot is the Ionic, of which there are two forms, the Ionic  $\bar{a}$  *māiōre*  $\underline{\text{I}} \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup$ , so called because it begins with the greater part (i. e. the thesis) of the foot, and the Ionic  $\bar{a}$  *minōre*  $\cup \cup \underline{\text{I}} \underline{\text{I}}$ , which receives its name from the fact that it begins with the less important part of the foot (i. e. the arsis).

2709. (1.) Ionics  $\bar{a}$  *minōre* are often treated as Ionics  $\bar{a}$  *māiōre* with anacrusis,  $\cup \cup | \underline{\text{I}} \underline{\text{I}} \cup \cup$ , &c. See 2529 *ad fin.*

2710. (2.) Ionic verse shows numerous resolutions and irrational longs, especially in early Latin. The accumulation of short syllables imparts to the verse a wild and passionate character.

2711. (3.) *Anaclasis* (Gr. ἀνάκλασις, "a bending back") is an exchange of place between a short syllable and the preceding long (e. g.  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \frac{1}{-} \cup$  for  $\frac{1}{-} \frac{1}{-} \cup \cup$  or  $\cup \cup \frac{1}{-} \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \frac{1}{-} \frac{1}{-}$  for  $\cup \cup \frac{1}{-} \frac{1}{-}$  |  $\cup \cup \frac{1}{-} \frac{1}{-}$ ), and is very frequent in Ionic verse.

### THE IONIC $\bar{a}$ $m\bar{a}i\ddot{o}re$ TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Sotadean*).

2712. This verse consists of four Ionic  $\bar{a}$   $m\bar{a}i\ddot{o}re$  feet, the last foot being incomplete. In the early Latin poets, beginning with Ennius, the Sotadean is treated with much freedom: resolution, contraction (2518), anaclassis (2711), and irrational longs are freely admitted. Examples are:—

Nám quam varia | sînt genera po|ēmatōrum, | Baébī,  
quámque longē | dístinct(a) ali|(a) áb aliīs sīs, | nōsce  
(Accius, *Didasc.* p. 305 M.).

$\frac{1}{-} \_ \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ >$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \bar{\Lambda}$   
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ >$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \cup \cup$  |  $\cup \cup \cup \_ >$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \bar{\Lambda}$

Compare in Greek:—

σείων μελί|ην Πηλίαδα | δεξιὸν κατ' | ὤμων (Sotades).

2713. Later poets (Petronius, Martial, Terentianus Maurus) are more strict in their usage, admitting (with very few exceptions) only the forms  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup \cup$ ,  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \cup \cup$ ,  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup$  besides the normal  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \cup \cup$ . Hence their scheme is:—

$\frac{1}{-} \_ \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \_ \bar{\Lambda}$   
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup \cup$  |  
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup$  |  $\frac{1}{-} \cup \_ \cup$  |

Examples are:—

Móllēs, vete | rēs Dēlia|cí manū re|císī  
péde tendite, | cúrs(um) addite, | cónvolāte | plántā  
(Petron. 23).

Laevius and Varro employ Ionic  $\bar{a}$   $m\bar{a}i\ddot{o}re$  systems of considerable length.

### THE IONIC $\bar{a}$ $min\ddot{o}re$ TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Galliambic*.)

2714. This consists of four Ionic  $\bar{a}$   $min\ddot{o}re$  feet, the last one incomplete. *Anaclassis*, resolution, and contraction are extremely common, and the multiplication of short syllables gives the verse a peculiarly wild and frenzied movement. Catullus very rarely admits Ionics that are not anaclastic (*never* in the first half of the verse, except the doubtful cases 63, 18; 54; 75); but Varro is less strict in this regard. The penultimate long is nearly always resolved. There is rarely more than one resolution in the same half-verse. A diacresis regularly occurs after the second foot. The scheme is:—

2715-2719.] *Appendix (E.): Prosody.*

$\cup\cup \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup\cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup\cup \quad - \# \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup\cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

Examples are :—

Ades, ínquit, | Ō Cybēbē, || fera mōnti|um deá  
(Maecenas).

$\cup\cup \quad \cup\cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

Super álta | vēctus Áttis || celerí ra|te mariá  
(Catullus 63, 1).

$\cup\cup \quad \cup\cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

Quō nōs de|cet citātis || celerāre | tripudiís  
(Id. 63, 26).

$\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

Ego iúvenis, | eg(o) adulēscēns || eg(o) ephēbus, | ego puér  
(Id. 63, 63).

$\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

Tibi týpana | nōn inānī || sonitū mā|tri' deúm  
(Varro, *Sat. Men.* 132 Buech.).

$\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

2715. It has been suggested that Catullus probably *felt* the rhythm not as Ionic, but as trochaic or logaoedic :—

$\cup\cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup \quad \# \quad \cup\cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup\cup \quad \cup \quad | \quad \cup \quad \bar{\cup}$

or the like.

This view has much in its favour; but the true nature of the rhythm is still matter of dispute.

2716. Compare the Greek :—

Γαλαῖ μη|τρὸς ὀρείης| φιλόθυρσοι| δρομάδες,

and in English :—

“Perished many a maid and matron, many a valorous legionary,  
Fell the colony, city and citadel, London, Verulam, Camuloduné.”  
(Tennyson).

2717. Horace (3, 12) employs a system of ten pure Ionics *ā minōre*, e. g. :—

Miserārum (e)st | nequ(e) amōrī, | dare lūdum | neque dúlcī  
mala vīnō | laver(e) aút ex|animārī  
metuéntis | patruaé ver|bera línguae.

There is generally a diaeresis after each foot.

### Lyric Metres of Horace.

2718. The following is a list of the Horatian lyric metres :—

2719. (I.) The IAMBIC TRIMETER (see 2592 ff.). *Epode* 17.



2720. (II.) The IAMBIC STROPHE, an iambic trimeter (2592) followed by an iambic dimeter acatalectic (2617):—

So in Archilochus, e. g. :—

**272I.** (III.) The HIPPONACTEAN or TROCHAIC STROPHE, a trochaic dimeter catalectic (2644) followed by an iambic trimeter catalectic (2601):—

2722. (IV.) The FIRST PYTHIAMBIĆ STROPHE, a dactylic hexameter (2556) followed by an iambic dimeter acatalectic (2617) :—

So in Archilochus, e.g.:—

2723. (V.) The SECOND PYTHIAMBIĆ STROPHE, a dactylic hexameter (2556) followed by a pure iambic trimeter (2594):—

So the Greek epigrammatists, e. g. :—

**2724.** (VI.) The **ALCMANIAN STROPHE**, a dactylic hexameter (2556) followed by a dactylic tetrameter catalectic (2578):—

**2725.** (VII.) The FIRST ARCHILOCHIAN STROPHE, a dactylic hexameter (2556) followed by a Lesser Archilochian (2579):—

2726. (VIII.) The SECOND ARCHILOCHIAN STROPHE, a dactylic hexameter (2556) followed by an iambelegus (2678):—

2727. (IX.) The THIRD ARCHILOCHIAN STROPHE, an iambic trimeter (2592) followed by an elegiambus (2680):—

$\geq \frac{1}{2} | \cup \cdot | \geq \frac{1}{2} | \cup \cdot | \geq \frac{1}{2} | \cup \cdot |$   
 $\frac{1}{2} \cup \cup | \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup | \frac{1}{2} \bar{\cup} \# \geq \frac{1}{2} \cup | \cdot \geq | \frac{1}{2} \cup | \cdot \wedge$   
*Epode II.*

Compare Archilochus fr. 85, Bergk (elegiambus; the trimeter is lost):—

ἀλλά μ' ὁ λυσιμελής, ὦ ταῖρε, δάμναται πόθος.

2728. (X.) The FOURTH ARCHILOCHIAN STROPHE, a Greater Archilochian (2677) followed by an iambic trimeter catalectic (2601):—

$\frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \parallel \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \# \frac{1}{2} \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup$   
 $\geq \frac{1}{2} \mid \cup \div \mid \geq \parallel \frac{1}{2} \mid \cup \div \mid \cup \sqcup \div$

C. I, 4.

So Archilochus, e. g. :—

τοῖος γὰρ φιλότητος ἔρως ὑπὸ καρδίην ἔλυσθεις  
πολλὴν κατ' ἀχλὺν ὀμμάτων ἔχευεν (Fr. 103, Bergk).

See, however, 2677 *ad fin.*

**2729. (XI.)** The LESSER ASCLEPIADEAN METRE, a series of Lesser Asclepiadeans (2669) employed stichically (2546):—

$$\perp > | \perp \cup | \perp \# | \perp \cup | \perp \cup | \perp \wedge \quad C. I, I; 3, 30; 4, 8.$$

So Alcaeus, e. g. :—

ἦλθες ἐκ περάτων γᾶς ἐλεφαντίναν  
 λάβαν τῷ ξίφει χρυσοδέταν ἔχων (Fr. 33, Bergk).

2730. (XII.) The GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN METRE, a series of Greater Asclepiadeans (2670) employed stichically (2546):—

$\perp > | \perp \cup | \perp \# \perp \cup | \perp \# \perp \cup | \perp \cup | \_ \wedge$   
C. I, II, 18; 4, 10.

So Alcaeus, e. g. :—

μηδὲν ἄλλο φυτεύσης πρότερον δένδριον ἀμπέλῳ  
(Fr. 44, Bergk).

Many editors hold (with Meineke) that the Horatian odes were written in tetra-  
stichs (2545), and hence that this metre and the preceding were employed by Horace  
in strophes of four lines each. Catullus (30) seems to use the Greater Asclepiadean  
by distichs, and so apparently Sappho (fr. 69, Bergk). But as to these points there is  
still much dispute.

**2731.** (XIII.) The FIRST ASCLEPIADEAN STROPHE, a Glyconic (2660) followed by a Lesser Asclepiadean (2669):—

$$\begin{array}{l} \frac{I}{I} > | \frac{I}{I} \cup | \frac{I}{I} \cup | \frac{I}{I} \wedge \\ \frac{I}{I} > | \frac{I}{I} \cup | \frac{I}{I} \# \frac{I}{I} \cup | \frac{I}{I} \cup | \frac{I}{I} \wedge \end{array}$$

*C.* 1, 3, 13, 19, 36; 3, 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; 4, 1, 3.

Cf. Alcaeus: —

νῦν δ' [αὐτ'] οὗτος ἐπικρέτει  
κινήσῃς τὸν ἀπ' ἱρας πύματον λίθον. (Fr. 82, Bergk).

In one instance, *C.* 4, 1, 35, elision occurs at the end of the Glyconic.

2732. (XIV.) The SECOND ASCLEPIADEAN STROPHE, three Lesser Asclepiadeans (2669) followed by a Glyconic (2660): —

$\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \# \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$   
 $\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \# \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$   
 $\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \# \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$   
 $\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$

*C.* 1, 6, 15, 24, 33; 2, 12; 3, 10, 16; 4, 5, 12.

2733. (XV.) The THIRD ASCLEPIADEAN STROPHE, two Lesser Asclepiadeans (2669), a Pherecratean (2659) and a Glyconic (2660): —

$\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \# \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$   
 $\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \# \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$   
 $\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup$   
 $\frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$

*C.* 1, 5, 14, 21, 23; 3, 7, 13; 4, 13.

Compare Alcaeus (Pherecratean followed by Glyconic; apparently two Lesser Asclepiadeans preceded, but they are lost): —

λάταγες ποτέονται  
κυλιχνᾶν ἀπο Τηϊαν. (Fr. 43, Bergk).

2734. (XVI.) The GREATER SAPPHIC STROPHE, an Aristophanic (2658) followed by a Greater Sapphic (2671): —

$\frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup$   
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \parallel \cup | \frac{1}{-} \# \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} | \frac{1}{-} \wedge$

*C.* 1, 8.

2735. (XVII.) The SAPPHIC STROPHE, three Lesser Sapphics (2666) and an Adonic (2655): —

$\frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \parallel \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup$   
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \parallel \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup$   
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} > | \frac{1}{-} \parallel \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup$   
 $\frac{1}{-} \cup | \frac{1}{-} \cup$

*C.* 1, 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; 2, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; 3, 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; 4, 2, 6, 11; *Carmen Saeculare*. Also in Catullus 11 and 51.

So Sappho: —

φαίνεται μοι κῆνος ἴσος θεοῖσιν  
ἔμμεν ὄνερ ὅστις ἐναντίος τοι  
ἰζάνει καὶ πλασίον ἄδν φωνεύ-  
σας ὑπακούει.

(Fr. 2, Bergk).



2736-2738.] *Appendix (E.): Prosody.*

Sappho apparently treated the third Sapphic and the Adonic as continuous; but Horace and Catullus allow *syllaba anceps* (and Horace in four cases, 1, 2, 47; 1, 12, 7, and 31; 1, 22, 15, hiatus) at the end of the third line. On the other hand, both Catullus and Horace sometimes join the third line to the fourth (by dividing a word, Hor. 1, 2, 19; 25, 11; 2, 16, 7; Cat. 11, 11; by elision Hor. 4, 2, 23; *Car. Saec.* 47; Cat. 11, 19), and in a few instances the second to the third (Hor. 2, 2, 18; 16, 34; 4, 2, 22; Cat. 11, 22, all by elision) by *synapheia* (see 2510). In Horace, the last foot of the third line is nearly always an irrational spondee.

2736. (XVIII.) The ALCAIC STROPHE, two Greater Alcaics (2667), a nine-syllabled Alcaic (2642) and a Lesser Alcaic (2663):—

$\text{C} \vdots \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \# \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{C} \vdots \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \# \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{C} \vdots \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$   
 $\text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

C. 1, 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; 2, 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; 3, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; 4, 4, 9, 14, 15.

So Alcaeus:—

Ἀσυνέτημι τῶν ἀνέμων στάσιν·  
 τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔνθεν κύμα κυλίνδεται,  
 τὸ δ' ἔνθεν· ἄμμες δ' ἂν τὸ μέσσον  
 νᾶϊ φορήμεθα σὺν μελαίνα.

(Fr. 18, Bergk).

In the Greek poets the last two lines are sometimes joined by *synapheia* (2510), and Horace has elision at the end of the third verse in 2, 3, 27; 3, 29, 35. But he frequently admits hiatus in that place.

2737. (XIX.) The IONIC SYSTEM, a system of ten pure Ionics *ā minōre* (see 2717):—

$\cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—}$   
 $\cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—}$   
 $\cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} \mid \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—}$

C. 3, 12.

### Lyric Strophes of Catullus.

2738. Catullus in 34 uses a strophe consisting of three Glyconics (2660) followed by a Pherecratean (2659):—

$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$   
 $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$

In 61 he employs a strophe consisting of *four* Glyconics followed by a Pherecratean.

## 2739. Index of Horatian Odes and their Metres.

The Roman numerals in the table refer to the numbers assigned to the various strophes in 2719-2737.

BOOK.	ODE.	METRE.	BOOK.	ODE.	METRE.	BOOK.	ODE.	METRE.
I	1	XI.	2	1	XVIII.	3	23	XVIII.
	2	XVII.		2	XVII.		24	XIII.
	3	XII.		3	XVIII.		25	XIII.
	4	X.		4	XVII.		26	XVIII.
	5	XV.		5	XVIII.		27	XVII.
	6	XIV.		6	XVII.		28	XIII.
	7	VI.		7	XVIII.		29	XVIII.
	8	XVI.		8	XVII.		30	XI.
	9	XVIII.		9	XVIII.	4	1	XIII.
	10	XVII.		10	XVII.		2	XVII.
	11	XII.		11	XVIII.		3	XIII.
	12	XVII.		12	XIV.		4	XVIII.
	13	XIII.		13	XVIII.		5	XIV.
	14	XV.		14	XVIII.		6	XVII.
	15	XIV.		15	XVIII.		7	VII.
	16	XVIII.		16	XVII.		8	XI.
	17	XVIII.		17	XVIII.		9	XVIII.
	18	XII.		18	III.		10	XII.
	19	XIII.		19	XVIII.		11	XVII.
	20	XVII.		20	XVIII.		12	XIV.
	21	XV.	3	1-6	XVIII.		13	XV.
	22	XVII.		7	XV.		14	XVIII.
	23	XV.		8	XVII.		15	XVIII.
	24	XIV.		9	XIII.	<i>Carmen Saeculare</i> . . }	XVII.	
	25	XVII.		10	XIV.			
	26	XVIII.		11	XVII.			
	27	XVIII.		12	XIX.	Epodes	1-10 II. IX. VI. VIII. IV. IV. V. I.	
	28	VI.		13	XV.			
	29	XVIII.		14	XVII.			
	30	XVII.		15	XIII.			
	31	XVIII.		16	XIV.			
	32	XVII.		17	XVIII.			
	33	XIV.		18	XVII.			
	34	XVIII.		19	XIII.			
	35	XVIII.		20	XVII.			
	36	XIII.		21	XVIII.			
	37	XVIII.		22	XVII.			
	38	XVII.						

## ABBREVIATIONS USED IN CITING THE AUTHORS.

2740. In Part First, in which authors are occasionally cited, but without direct reference to their works, the usual abbreviations are employed: as, Plaut., Ter., Cic., Verg., Hor., &c., &c.

2741. In Part Second, the principles adopted are as follows:

2742. (1.) A reference consisting of figures alone (as, 2, 2, 3), denotes book, chapter, and section of Caesar *de Bello Gallico*.

2743. (2.) A reference to a work (in italics), without a preceding abbreviation for the author's name (as, *TD.* 1, 2; *Mil.* 3), denotes the book and section, or the section only, of a work by Cicero. The abbreviations used to denote his works are given in the list below (2745).

2744. (3.) A reference made to Vergil (*V.*), followed by figures alone, is a reference to the *Aeneid*: as, *V.* 1, 20. Similarly, *H.* stands alone for the *Odes* of Horace; *O.* alone for the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid; and *Ta.* alone for the *Annals* of Tacitus.

2745. (4.) Roman letters are used in the abbreviations of the names of authors, *italics* in the abbreviations of the names of their works, as in the following List:—

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

Abbreviations.	Authors and Works.	Abbreviations.	Authors and Works.
Caes.	Caesar.	<i>Fin.</i>	<i>de Finibus.</i>
<i>C.</i>	<i>dē Bellō Cīvīlī.</i>	<i>Fl.</i> or <i>Flacc.</i>	<i>prō Flaccō.</i> [sīs.
See 2742.	<i>dē Bellō Gallicō.</i>	<i>HR.</i>	<i>dē Harūspicūm Respōn-</i>
Cat.	Catullus.	<i>IP.</i>	<i>dē Imperiō Pompēi.</i>
See 2743.	Cicero.	<i>Inv.</i>	<i>dē Inventiōne.</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>Acadēmica.</i>	<i>L.</i>	<i>Laelius.</i>
<i>ad Br.</i>	<i>ad Brūtum Epistulae.</i>	<i>LAgr.</i>	<i>dē lēge Agrāriā.</i>
<i>Agr.</i>	<i>dē lēge Agrāriā.</i>	<i>Leg.</i>	<i>dē Lēgibus.</i>
<i>Arch.</i>	<i>prō Archiā.</i>	<i>Lig.</i>	<i>prō Ligāriō.</i>
<i>Att.</i>	<i>ad Atticum Epistulae.</i>	<i>Marc.</i>	<i>prō Marcellō.</i>
<i>Balb.</i>	<i>prō Balbō.</i>	<i>Mil.</i>	<i>prō Milōne.</i>
<i>Br.</i>	<i>Brūtus.</i>	<i>Mur.</i>	<i>prō Mūrēnā.</i>
<i>C.</i>	<i>in Catilinam.</i>	<i>O.</i>	<i>Orātor.</i>
<i>Caec.</i>	<i>prō Caecīnā.</i>	<i>Off.</i>	<i>dē Officiis.</i> [tōrum.
<i>Caecil.</i>	<i>Dīvinātiō in Caecilium.</i>	<i>OG.</i>	<i>de Optimō Genere Orā-</i>
<i>Cael.</i>	<i>prō Caeliō.</i>	<i>OP.</i>	<i>de Orātōriā Partitiōne.</i>
<i>CM.</i>	<i>Cato Māior.</i>	<i>Par.</i>	<i>Paradoxa.</i> [bus.
<i>Clu.</i>	<i>prō Cluentiō.</i>	<i>PC.</i>	<i>de Prōvinciis Cōsulāri-</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>prō Deiotarō.</i>	<i>Ph.</i>	<i>Philippicae.</i>
<i>Div.</i>	<i>dē Dīvinatiōne.</i>	<i>Pis.</i>	<i>in Pisōnem.</i>
<i>DN.</i>	<i>dē Deōrum Nātūrā.</i>	<i>Pl.</i> or <i>Planc.</i>	<i>prō Planciō.</i>
<i>DO.</i>	<i>dē Orātōre.</i>	<i>Q.</i> or <i>Quint.</i>	<i>prō Quīntiō.</i> [Epistulae.
<i>Fam.</i>	<i>ad Familiārēs Epistulae.</i>	<i>QFr.</i>	<i>ad Quīntum Frātre</i>
<i>Fat.</i>	<i>dē Fātō.</i>	<i>RA.</i>	<i>prō Rōsciō Amerīnō.</i>



<i>RC.</i>	<i>prō Rōsciō Cōmoedō.</i>	<i>Most.</i>	<i>Mostellāria.</i>
<i>RP.</i>	<i>dē Rē Pūblicā. [nis reō.</i>	<i>Per.</i>	<i>Persa.</i>
<i>Rab.</i>	<i>prō Rabiriō perduelliō-</i>	<i>Poen.</i>	<i>Poenulus.</i>
<i>RabP.</i>	<i>prō Rabiriō Posthumō.</i>	<i>Ps.</i>	<i>Pseudolus.</i>
<i>Scaur.</i>	<i>prō Scaurō.</i>	<i>R.</i>	<i>Rudēns.</i>
<i>Sest.</i>	<i>prō Sēstiō.</i>	<i>St.</i>	<i>Stichus.</i>
<i>Sull.</i>	<i>prō Sūllā.</i>	<i>Tri.</i>	<i>Trinummus.</i>
<i>T. or Top.</i>	<i>Topica. [nēs.</i>	<i>Tru.</i>	<i>Truculentus.</i>
<i>TD.</i>	<i>Tusculānae Disputātiō-</i>	<i>Vid.</i>	<i>Vidulāria.</i>
<i>Tim.</i>	<i>Timaeus.</i>	Plin. <i>Ep.</i>	Pliny's <i>Epistulae.</i>
<i>Tul.</i>	<i>prō Tulliō.</i>	Plin. <i>NH.</i>	Pliny's <i>Nātūrālis His-</i>
<i>V. a. pr.</i>	<i>in Verrem āctiō I.</i>	Prop.	Propertius. [toriae.
<i>V.</i>	<i>in Verrem āctiō II.</i>	Publil. Syr.	Publilius Syrus.
Corn., Cornif.	Cornificius.	Quint. or {	Quintilian.
<i>E.</i>	Ennius.	Quintil. }	
<i>Fest.</i>	Festus.	<i>S.</i>	Sallust.
<i>Gell.</i>	Gellius.	<i>C.</i>	<i>Catilīna. [Lepidī.</i>
<i>H.</i>	Horace.	<i>Fr. Lep.</i>	<i>Fragmenta Ōrātiōnis</i>
<i>AP.</i>	<i>Ars Poetica.</i>	<i>Fr. Phil.</i>	<i>Fragmenta Ōrātiōnis</i>
See 2744.	<i>Carmina.</i>		<i>Philippī.</i>
<i>E.</i>	<i>Epistulae.</i>	<i>I.</i>	<i>Iugurtha.</i>
<i>Epod.</i>	<i>Epodoi.</i>	Sen.	Seneca.
<i>S.</i>	<i>Sermōnēs.</i>	<i>Ben.</i>	<i>dē Beneficiīs.</i>
<i>J.</i>	Juvenal.	<i>Ep.</i>	<i>Epistulae.</i>
<i>L.</i>	Livy.	<i>St.</i>	<i>Statius.</i>
<i>Lucil.</i>	Lucilius.	<i>Th.</i>	<i>Thēbais.</i>
<i>Lucr.</i>	Lucretius.	Suet.	Suetonius.
<i>Macrob.</i>	Macrobius.	<i>Aug.</i>	<i>Augustus.</i>
<i>Sat.</i>	<i>Sāturnālia.</i>	<i>Cal.</i>	<i>Caligula.</i>
<i>Mart.</i>	Martial.	<i>Cl.</i>	<i>Claudius.</i>
<i>N.</i>	Nepos.	<i>Galb.</i>	<i>Galba.</i>
<i>O.</i>	Ovid.	<i>Iul.</i>	<i>Iūlius.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>Amōrēs.</i>	<i>Tib.</i>	<i>Tibērius.</i>
<i>AA.</i>	<i>Ars Amātōria.</i>	<i>T.</i>	Terence.
<i>F.</i>	<i>Fāstī.</i>	<i>Ad.</i>	<i>Adelphoe.</i>
See 2744.	<i>Metamorphōsēs.</i>	<i>Andr.</i>	<i>Andria.</i>
<i>Tr.</i>	<i>Trīstia.</i>	<i>Eu.</i>	<i>Eunūchus.</i>
<i>Pl.</i>	Plautus.	<i>Hec.</i>	<i>Hecyra.</i>
<i>Am.</i>	<i>Amphitruō.</i>	<i>Han.</i>	<i>Heauton Tīmōrūmenos.</i>
<i>As.</i>	<i>Asināria.</i>	<i>Ph.</i>	<i>Phormiō.</i>
<i>Aul.</i>	<i>Aululāria.</i>	<i>Ta.</i>	Tacitus.
<i>B.</i>	<i>Bacchidēs.</i>	See 2744.	<i>Annālēs.</i>
<i>Cap.</i>	<i>Captīvī.</i>	<i>A. or Agr.</i>	<i>Agricola.</i>
<i>Cas.</i>	<i>Casina.</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>Dialogus.</i>
<i>Cist.</i>	<i>Cistellāria.</i>	<i>H.</i>	<i>Historiae.</i>
<i>Cu. or Cur.</i>	<i>Curculiō.</i>	<i>Tib.</i>	Tibullus.
<i>E.</i>	<i>Epidicus.</i>	<i>V.</i>	Vergil.
<i>Men.</i>	<i>Menaechmī.</i>	See 2744.	<i>Aenēis.</i>
<i>Mer.</i>	<i>Mercātor.</i>	<i>E.</i>	<i>Eclogae.</i>
<i>MG.</i>	<i>Miles Glōriōsus.</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>Georgica.</i>



# INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

THE REFERENCES ARE TO SECTIONS.

## Abbreviations,

C. for **Gāius**, 18; Cn. for **Gnaeus**, 18; C. for **Gāia**, 18; K. for **Kalendae**, 18.

## Ability,

verbal expressions of, in indic. with infin., 1495, 1496; in impf. indic., 1497; in conditional periods, 2074, 2101; words of, with gerundive construction, 2254.

## Ablative case,

defined, 419; sing., how formed, 425, 426; plur., how formed, 428; lacking, see **Defective**; forms in **-bus** for older **-būs**, 59; **-būs** retained, 67; of words in **-tu-** (**-su-**), 235, 430.

**-ā-** stems, in **-ād**, 426, 443; in **-eis**, 440, 443; in **-āis** and **-ēis**, 441; in **-īs** for **iis**, 440; in **-ābus**, 442; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444, 445.

**-o-** stems, in **-ōd**, 426, 465; in **-āis**, **-ēis**, **-ōis**, 458; in **-ōbus**, 464; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, **-e** for older **-ē**, 59, 425; **-ē** retained, 65; substs., in **-ī** and **-ei**, 502, 507; adjs., in **-ī**, 503, 622, 626; in **-īd**, 426, 507; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

**-i-** stems, substs., in **-ī**, **-e**, 552-558, 561, 517-527, 531; adjs., in **-ī**, **-e**, 558-561, 525-537, 634-636; adjs., in **-ī** alone, 559, 629; pres. part., in **-ī**, **-e**, 560, 633; inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

**-u-** stems, in **-uō** (**-ūd**), 593; in **-ubus**, 592; inscriptional forms, 593.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional forms, of **ego**, **tū**, **suī**, 648, 650, 651; of **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, 653-655; of **hic**, 663-665; of **ille**, **iste**, 667, 668; of **illic**, **istic**, 670; of **is**, 673, 674; of **idem**, 677, 678; of **ipse**, 680; of **quī**, **quis**, 688-690; of **aliquis**, &c., 692.

## Ablative case — *continued.*

Uses of, 1296-1400; general, 1296-1301; meaning of, 1297, 1299, 1300; as adv., 703-707, 1376; combined with acc., 1199, 1303.

Ablative proper, 1297, 1302-1330, attached to subst., 1301, 1313, 1314; of separation, want, departure, 1302-1306, 1293, 1294; denoting place from which, with town and island names, 1307-1310; denoting origin and place from which, with country names, 1309, 1310; in dates, 1307; **domō**, **rūre**, **humō**, 1311; of source, stuff, or material, 1312-1315; of the doer of an action, 1318, 1319, 1476, 1477, 2243; of cause, influence, or motive, 1316-1319; with **faciō** and **sum**, denoting that with which or to which something is done, 1315; **causā**, **grātiā**, &c., 1257, 1317; denoting person, equivalent to abstract, 1319; of comparison, 1320-1330; with **alter**, **alius**, 1323; with compar. advs., 1327; in expressions of age, 1329; **opiniōne**, **expectatiōne**, **spē**, 1330; **amplius**, **longius**, **plūs**, **minus**, 1328, 1329; with judicial verbs, 1280-1282.

Locative ablative, 1299, 1331-1355; attached to subst., 1301, 1331; in dates, 1307, 1331; **domī**, **rūrī**, **humī**, **orbī**, 1337; **bellī**, **militiae**, 1338; joined with loc. adv., 1340; of place where with town and island names, 1331-1335, 1342, 1343; of place where, with **forum**, **urbs**, **oppidum**, &c., 1332, 1333; of place where, with other appellatives, 1344, 1347; of place where, with country names, 1336, 1347; with **teneō**, **recipiō**, &c., 1348; with **fīdō**, **cōnfīdō**, **glōrior**, **laetor**, **nītor**, **stō**, **frētus**, 1349; of time at which, 1341, 1350, 1351; of time within which, 1352-1354; of time during which, 1355.

Instrumental ablative, 1300, 1356-



## Index of Subjects.

### **Ablative case** — *continued.*

1399; of accompaniment, 1356, 1357; with **iūctus**, **cōniūctus**, 1357; of manner, 1358-1361; absolute, 1362-1374, see also 1533, 1900, 2110, 2121; of quality, 1375; of the route taken, 1376; of instrument or means, 1377-1384, 1476, 1477; with **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **ūtor**, **vēscor**, **ūsus est**, **opus est**, 1379-1384; of specification, 1385; with verbs of fulness, 1386; with adjs. of fulness, 1387; of measure, exchange, price, 1388-1392; with **dignus**, **indignus**, &c., 1392; of amount of difference, 1393-1399, 1153, 1154, 1459; of time before or after which, 1394, 1154; with **absum** and **dīstō**, 1153; of **intervallum** and **spatium** in designations of distance, 1399; of persons, instead of abl. with **ab**, 1477.

Combined with other abls. in same sentence, 1400; with **in** and **sub** after verbs of rest, 1423; with **in** after verbs of motion, 1424; of gerundive construction and gerund, 2265-2268; supine in **-ū** as, 235, 2269, 2277.

### **Abounding,**

verbs of, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386; adjs. of, with gen., 1263, 1264; with abl., 1387.

### **Abridgement,**

of sentences, 1057, 2111.

### **Abstaining,**

verbs of, with gen., 1294; with abl., 1302-1306, 1294; with **quīn**, 1986.

### **Abstract,**

substs., defined, 7; plur. of, 416, 1109; subst. suffixes denoting quality, 246-264; adj. suffixes denoting quality, 281-297; suffixes denoting action, 212-237, 249, 285; abstract in rel. sentence instead of in main sentence, 1800.

### **Acatalectic verse,**

defined, 2537.

### **Accent,**

general rules of, 170, 171; in gen. and voc. of **-o-** decl., 172; on final syllable, 173; marks of, 174-177; of proclitics and enclitics, 178, 179; of preps., 178; of rel. and indef. prons., 178; of compounds of **faciō**, 394; in verse, 2548.

### **Accentual,**

verse, 2548; verse, in **carmina**, 2549; theory of the Saturnian, 2553.

### **Accompaniment,**

abl. of, 1356, 1357.

### **Accomplishing,**

verbs of, with subjv., 1579, 1712; with purpose clause, 1951; with result clause, 1955, 1965; with acc. and infin., 2196.

### **Accusative case,**

defined, 419; sing., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423; plur., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423; sing. and plur., of gender nouns, how formed, 424; lacking, see **Defective**; ending in **d**, 143.

**-ā-** stems, in **-ām**, 436; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444, 445.

**-o-** stems, in **-om** and **-um**, 452; in **-ā**, 65, 461; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, in **-īs**, 505, 507, 622; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

**-i-** stems, in **-im**, **-em**, 547-551, 517-525; inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

**-u-** stems, inscriptional forms, 593.

Adverbs from, 699-702, 549, 1156.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional forms, of **ego**, **tū**, **suī**, 648, 650, 651; of **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, 653-655; of **hīc**, 663-665; of **ille**, **iste**, 667; of **illic**, **istic**, 670; of **is**, 673; of **īdem**, 677; of **ipse**, 680.

Uses of, 1124-1174; general, 1124-1131.

Of the object, 1132-1150; with compounds of **ad**, **circum**, **ex**, **in**, **ob**, **per**, **prae**, **praeter**, **trāns**, 1137; double, with verbs compounded with preps., 1138, 1198; with verbs of feeling, commonly intrans., 1139; emphasizing or defining, 1140-1146, 1173, 1475; of kindred derivation with verb, 1140, 1173; of kindred meaning with verb, 1141; neut., of adj., with verb, 1142; with verbs of smelling and tasting, 1143; neut., of pron., with verbal expression, 1144, 1840, 1851; of appellative, used adverbially, 1145; attached to subst., 1129, 1146; of part concerned, 1147; of thing put on or off, 1148; of exclamation, 1149, 1150, 2112; with verb not expressed, 1150.

Of space and time, 1151-1156, 1475; with **abhinc**, 1154; with ordinals, 1155; expressing 'time at which,' 1156; of aim of motion, 1157-1166; of end of motion with **in** and **sub**, 1423; with verbs of rest, 1424; with names of towns, islands, peninsulas, 1157-1160;

## Index of Subjects.

### Accusative case — *continued.*

with names of countries, 1161; with appellatives, 1150, 1161; **domum, rūs, forās**, 1162-1164; **exsequiās, infitiās, malam crucem, malam rem**, 1165.

Two accusatives combined, 1167-1174; of obj. and pred., 1167, 1168; with verbs of teaching, hiding, demanding, questioning, 1169-1171; with verbs of wishing, reminding, inducing, accusing, 1172; defining acc. and acc. of person, 1173; acc. of extent or duration or aim of motion and acc. of object, 1174.

With verbs otherwise taking dat., 1184, 1185; with compounds of verbs of intrans. use, 1191; combined with dat. or abl., 1199, 1303; with **propior, proximius, prope**, &c., 1201; with **nōmen dō**, &c., 1214; pred., instead of dat., 1221, 1224; with prep., instead of objective gen., 1261; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 1288; with verbs of reminding, 1291; with **per**, to express instrument, 1378; with **abūtor, fungor, fruor, perfruor, potior**, 1380; with **opus est**, 1383; with **ūsus est**, 1384; with **post** and **ante** in expressions of time, 1394-1397; of extent, with verbs of surpassing, 1398; with comparatives, 1398; with preps., see **Prepositions**.

With infin., 1134, 2172-2203, 2312, 2313, 2321, 2330-2334; infin. as subst. acc., 2204-2206; acc. subj. of infin. omitted, 2183; pred. noun referring to unexpressed subj. of infin. in, 2213; use of reflexive pron. in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; obj. of gerundive, 2247; acc. of gerundive and gerund, use of, 2250-2253, 2243; obj. of gerund, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265; supine in **-um** as, 235, 1166, 2269; following supine in **-um**, 2272.

### Accusing,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1172; with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282; with **quod**, 1852; with **cūr**, 1852; with acc. and infin., 2185.

### Acquitting,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1172; with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282.

### Action,

suffixes denoting, 212-237, 249, 285; words denoting, range of meaning of, 213.

### Action — *continued.*

Conceivable, subjv. of, in simple sentence, 1554-1562; in subordinate sentence, 1731; in rel. characteristic or result sentences, 1818; in **quam** sentences, 1888; in **quamquam** sentences, 1901; in sentences of result with **ut**, 1947; in sentences of purpose with **ut**, 1962; in sentences with **quandō**, 2010; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753.

Congruent and coincident, 1733; coincident, introduced by **quod, quia**, 1850; introduced by **quī**, 1826; introduced by **cum**, 1874.

Repeated, subjv. of, 1730; non-occurrent, tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; defied, 2024; treated, 2091-2108, see **Conditional**; pres., &c., see **Present**, &c.; continued, see **Continued**.

### Active voice,

defined, 723, 1469; **pereō, vēneō, fiō**, meaning of, 1471; of **coepī** and **dēsino**, 1483; perf. partic. with force of, 907, 1485; deponents having, 1488, 1489; deponents having pres. system in, 1488; changed to pass., 1472-1480.

### Adjectives,

defined, 8; endings of, shortened, 59, 61; retained long, 65-67; used substantively, with **-e, -ī** in abl. sing., 558, 561, 631; pres. partic. used as, with **-ī** in abl. sing., 560, 633; formation of, 180-203; roots and stems, 183-198; without formative suffix, 195, 198, 199; with formative suffix, 195-198, 200-203.

Suffixes of, 280-360; primitive, with act. meaning, 281-290, 293, 294, 296; primitive, with pass. meaning, 291-297, 282, 283, 305; denominative, 298-360, 287; of material or resemblance, 299-301; of appurtenance, 302-330; of supply, 331-338; diminutive, 339, 340; of the compar., 342-348; of the superl., 342-345, 349-352; comparison of, see **Comparison**.

Compound, formation and meaning of, 379-390, see **Composition**; inflection of, 398-643, see **Gender, Number, Case, Declension**; of 'one,' 'two,' 'three' endings, 611.

Agreement of, 1082-1098; used substantively, 1099-1104, 1106, 1093, 1203, 1250; with acc. appended, 1130; neut. acc. of, denoting manner, 1142; pred., with verbs of making, choosing, naming, &c., 1167; with dat., 1183, 1200-1204;



## Index of Subjects.

### Adjectives — *continued.*

with acc., 1201; with acc. and prep., 1201; with gen., 1202-1204, 1238, 1245, 1263-1270; with abl., 1202, 1306; with loc., 1339; instead of gen., 1233, 1262; compar., with abl. or with **quam**, 1320-1330; prepositional expressions equivalent to, 1428; two adjs. compared, 1457; explanatory, put in rel. sentence, 1810; rel. sentence coordinated with, 1820; **quamquam** with, 1900; **quamvis** with, 1903; infin. with, 2166; gerundive used as, 2248, 2249; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2252; with dat. of gerundive construction, 2254; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258; with supine in **-ū**, 2274; partic. as, 2283, 2284; adj. relatives, see **Relative**; pred., see **Predicate**; attributive, see **Attributive**; numeral, see **Numeral adjectives**.

### Adjunct,

adverbial, defined, 1053.

### Admiring,

verbs of, with gen., 1286.

### Adonic,

the, 2655-2657.

### Advantage,

dat. of, 1178, 1205-1210.

### Adverbial,

adjunct, defined, 1053; acc., 1140-1146; ablatives, **iūre**, **ratione**, &c., 1358.

### Adverbs,

defined, 10, 696; diminutives of, 341; comparison of, 361-364; compounded with nouns or noun stems, 382, 383, 385; compounded with verbs, 396; in **-im**, 549, 700, 710; origin of, 696-710, 712; from acc., 699-702, 549, 1156; from abl., 703-707; from loc., 708, 709, 1340; from prons., 706, 710; from adjs., 701, 702, 704, 705; from partic., 704, 1372; denoting route by which, 707, 1376; of manner, 700, 704, 710; of place at which, 708, 709; of place to which, 710; of place from which, 710; sentences as, 712; correlative, 711, 1831; adjs. used with force of, 1142-1146.

With gen., 1242, 1248, 1253, 1254; acc. of appellative used as, 1145; compar., followed by abl. or **quam**, 1327-1330; development into preps., 696, 1402-1404; preps. with force of, 1407, 1408, 1432; words used as preps. and advs., 1412-1416, 1421; prepositional expressions

### Adverbs — *continued.*

equivalent to, 1428; function of, 1438; with meaning of adj., 1439; with partic. used as subst., 1440; with substs., 1441; used in place of substs., 1442; use of neg. advs., 1443-1453; neg. advs., two in one sentence, 1452, 1453; two advs., compared, 1457; used as connectives, 1687-1692, 2133-2159; postpositive, 1688; subordinate sentences as, 1715; **quō**, **unde**, &c., in place of rel. pron. with prep., 1793; indef. rel., introducing indic., 1814; numeral, 2404, 2405; numeral, forms in **-iēns**, **-iēs**, 2414.

### Adversative,

words, use of, 1676-1686, 2131, 2150-2153.

### Advising,

verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; with purpose clause, 1950.

### Affinities,

of **e**, 110; of **i**, 111; of **o**, 107; of **u**, 108.

### Affirmative,

expressed by two negatives, 1452; answer, expected with **-ne**, **-n**, 1504; answer, expected with **nōne**, 1506; answer, expected with **num**, 1507; answer, how expressed, 1511, 1512; meaning of **haud sciō an**, &c., 1782; coordination, 2159; sentence, **aliquis** in, 2390; sentence, **quivīs**, **quilibet**, **utervīs**, **uterlibet** in, 2401.

### Agent,

suffixes denoting, 204-211; of action, see **Doer**.

### Agreement,

of subst., 1077-1081; of mobile substs., 1078; explaining two or more substs., 1079; collective or distributive, explaining plur., 1080; in apposition with thought or clause, 1081.

Of adjective, 1082-1098; with persons or things implied in subst., 1083; attributive, with one of several substs., 1084; attributive, sing. with plur. subst., 1085; with combined adj. and subst., 1086; pred., with substs. denoting persons, 1088; with substs. denoting things, 1089; with substs. denoting persons and things, 1090; with nearest subst., 1091; **absente nōbīs**, 1092; neut. adj. used as subst. in pred., 1093.

Of verb, 1062-1076, 1080, 1807; in plur. with several sing. subjs., 1064, 1065; in sing. with several sing. subjs., 1066, 1067; with mixed subjs., sing. and



## Index of Subjects.

### Agreement — *continued.*

plur., 1068; with sing. subj. and abl. with **cum**, 1069; when subjs. are connected by **nec . . . nec, aut, aut . . . aut**, 1070; with collectives, 1071; agreeing with appositive or pred. subst., 1072; when subjs. are of different pers., 1076; agreeing with subst. introduced by **quam**, &c., 1073; **age**, &c., 1075; agreeing in pers. with antec. of rel. or implied antec., 1807.

Of pronouns, demonstrative, determinative, rel., 1093-1098, 1801-1811; agreement determined by sense, 1095, 1804; with several substs., 1096, 1803; agreeing with pred. subst., 1097, 1806; in agreement, equivalent to gen., 1098.

**Aim**,  
of motion, denoted by acc., 1157-1166; of motion, acc. of, combined with a second acc., 1174; verbs of, with purpose clause, 1949.

**Alcaic**,  
strophe, 2545; the nine-syllabled, 2642; the lesser (decasyllabic), 2663; the greater (hendecasyllabic), 2667, 2668; in Horace, 2736.

**Alcmanian**,  
verse, 2577; strophe, in Horace, 2724.

**Alphabet**,  
treated, 16-25; source of, 17; changes in, 17, 19, 20, 23; letters of, gender, 412; see **Pronunciation**.

**Amphibrach**, 2522.

**Anaclasis**, 2711.

**Anacrusis**, 2529, 2530.

**Anapaest**,  
defined, 2521; cyclic, 2523.

**Anapaestic**,  
rhythms, 2682-2690; tetrameter acatalectic, 2684, 2685; tetrameter catalectic, 2686; dimeter acatalectic, 2687; dimeter catalectic, 2688, 2689.

**Anaphora**, 1692.

**Annalistic present**, 1591.

**Answers**,  
forms of expected, 1504-1510, 1563; yes and no, how expressed, 1511-1514; of alternative questions, how expressed, 1525.

**Antecedent**,  
defined, 1796; position of, 1796-1798, omitted, 1798, 1799; indef., 1799; implied in possess., 1807; rules for agreement of rel. with, 1082-1098, 1801-1811; see also **Relative**.

**Antepenult**,  
defined, 155; when accented, 171, 177.

**Antibacchius**, 2522.

**Antispast**, 2522.

**Antitheses**,  
asyndeton in, 1640.

**Anxiety**,  
expressions of, with **ut**, **nē** clauses, 1957, 1958.

**Apex**, 30.

**Aphaeresis**, 92, 122.

**Apocope**, 96, 122.

**Apodosis**,  
defined, 1061; fut. perf. in, coincident in time with fut. perf. in prot., 1627; with **tam**, **nōn minus**, **nōn magis**, **aequē**, **perinde**, **iūxtā**, 1889, 1890; correlative lacking in, 1890; see **Conditional**, **Relative**, **Conjunctive**.

**Appeal**,  
questions of, in pres. indic., 1531; in fut., 1531, 1623; in subjv., 1563; in subordinate sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; in indirect question, 1786; in ind. disc., 2313, 2314.

Accusative in, 1150.

**Appellatives**,  
defined, 5; in acc. with expressions of motion, 1161; loc. of, 1337-1341; used without prep. to denote place where, 1344-1347; used with prep. to denote place where, 1347.

**Appointing**,  
see **Making**.

**Appositive**,  
defined, 1045; verb agreeing with, 1072; agreement of, 1077-1081; to a thought or clause, 1081; with loc., 1333, 1340, 1341; gen. as, with possess. pron., 1235; gen. used for, 1256; dat. used for, 1213; to a rel., 1809; sentence with **quod** as, 1845; infin. as subst. acc. in apposition, 2204; infin. as subst. nom. in apposition, 2207; appositive partic., 2293-2296.

**Appurtenance**,  
adj. suffixes denoting, 302-330.

**Archilochian**,  
verse, 2578-2580; the lesser, 2579; the greater, 2677; strophe, in Horace, 2725-2728.

**Aristophanic**, 2658.

**Arsis**, 2520.

**Ascending rhythms**, 2528.

**Asclepiadean**,  
the lesser, 2669; the greater, 2670; in Horace, 2729-2733.

## Index of Subjects.

### Asking,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase, 1170; with indirect question, 1774; with gerundive construction, 2250.

### Asseverations,

pres. subjv. in, 1542; fut. in, 1622; *ita . . . ut* in, 1542, 1622, 1937; expressed by *nam*, 2155.

### Assimilation,

of vowels, 103, 104; of vowel and cons., 106-111, see **Affinities**; of consonants, 144-151; subjv. of, 1728; subjv. of, sequence of tenses in, 1770-1772.

### Assumption,

expressed by subjv. of desire, 1553; expressed by fut., 1620.

### Asynartetic verses, 2535.

### Asyndetic,

coordination, defined, 1637; in simple sentences, 1638-1642; between sentences or periods, 2123-2127.

### Asyndeton,

enumerative, 2126; of summary, 2127; see **Asyndetic**.

### Attraction,

of verb, subst., adj., pron., partic., see

### Agreement,

subjv. of, 1728; sequence of tenses in, 1770-1772; in *cum* sentences, 1859; in *quoniam* sentences, 1882-1884; in *quam* sentences, 1888; in *quamquam* sentences, 1901; in sentences with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1924; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1994.

### Attribute,

defined, 1039; kinds of, 1040-1043; attached to proper name, 1044; with loc., 1332, 1333; with *domum*, *domōs*, 1164.

### Attributive,

subst., agreement of, 1077-1081; adj., agreement of, 1082-1098, see **Agreement**; subordinate sentence as, 1715; use of *antequam*, 1920; gerundive, 2248, 2249; partic., 2282-2286.

### Avoiding,

verbs of, with *nē* and subjv., 1960.

### Bacchiac rhythms, 2698-2706.

### Bacchius, 2521.

### Begin,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

### Believing,

verbs of, with dat., 1181, 1182.

### Benefiting,

verbs of, case with, 1205-1210.

### Birth,

place of, in abl., 1309; verbs of, with abl., 1312.

### Blaming,

verbs of, used with *quod*, 1852.

### Books,

pres. used in, 1592; see **Titles**.

### Brachycatalectic verse, 2538.

### Bucolic diaeresis, 2559.

### Buying,

verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl., 1388-1392.

### Caesura,

2542-2544; hiatus in, 2477; masculine and feminine, 2557; after the third trochee, 2558.

### Calling,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with indef. subj., 1033.

### Can,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

### Capability,

suffixes denoting, 284, 292-294.

### Capable,

adjs. meaning, with gerundive construction or gerund, 2252.

### Cardinal numerals,

decl. of, 637-642, 431; list of, 2404, 2405; some forms of, 2415-2418; in dates, 2419; in combination with *singuli*, 2420.

### Case,

endings, function of, 398; endings, lacking in prons., 645; the cases, defined, 419, 420; oblique cases, defined, 419; nouns, defective in, see **Defective**; rules for formation of the cases of nouns, general, 422-428; in *-ā-* stems, 436-443; in *-o-* stems, 452-465; in cons. stems, 495-507; in *-i-* stems, 540-564; in *-u-* stems, 590-595; in *-ē-* stems, 602-607; principal and secondary cases, 1111, 1112; see **Agreement**, **Nominative**, &c., **Prepositions**.

### Catalectic verse,

defined, 2537; in *syllabam*, &c., 2539.

### Catalexis, 2537.

### Catullus,

lyric strophes of, 2738.

### Causal,

sentences, defined, 1716; mood in, 1721; subjv. of ind. disc. and attraction in, 1722, 2319; tense of, after secondary, 1756; words, use of, 2133, 2154-2158; see **Cause**.



## Index of Subjects.

### Causative,

verbs, 368; use of verb, 2304.

### Cause,

gen. of, 1232-1238; abl. of, 1316-1319; expressed by abl. abs., 1317, 1367; coordinated member denoting, 1703; rel. sentences of, 1824-1830; expressed by sentence with **quod, quia**, 1838-1858; expressed by sentence with **cum**, 1859, 1874-1880; expressed by sentence with **quoniam**, 1882, 1884; expressed by sentence with **postquam, ubi, ut, &c.**, 1926, 1930; expressed by sentence with **dum**, 1998; expressed by sentence with **quandō, quandōque**, 2010, 2013, 2014; expressed by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266; expressed by partic., 2295, 1317; otherwise expressed, 1317.

### Cease,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

### Change,

in characters of alphabet, 17, 19, 20, 23; in sound of vowels, 55-113; in sound of diphthongs, 80-88; in sound of consonants, 114-154; see **Substitution, Development, Disappearance, Assimilation, Dissimilation, Interchange, Lengthening, Shortening, Weakening, Hiatus, Contraction, Elision, Affinities.**

### Characteristic,

rel. sentences of, 1818-1823.

### Charge,

gen. of, 1280-1282.

### Choliambus, 2597-2600.

### Choosing,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with pred. abl., 1363.

### Choriambic rhythms, 2707.

### Choriambus, 2521.

### Circumflex accent, 174-177.

### Circumstances,

expressed by abl. abs., 1362, 1365; by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266.

### Cities,

see **Towns.**

### Claudus,

trochaic tetrameter, 2639-2641.

### Clause,

defined, 1055; subst. in apposition to, 1081; see **Sentence, Subordinate.**

### Clausula, 2536.

### Climax,

asyndeton in, 1639; introduced by **vērō**, 1684.

### Cognate,

see **Kindred.**

### Coincident action,

defined, 1733; introduced by **quī**, 1826; introduced by **quod, quia**, 1850; introduced by **cum**, 1864, 1874; introduced by **dum**, 1998.

### Collectives,

defined, 6; suffixes forming, 228, 249; with sing. and plur. verb, 1071, 1080; with plur. subst., 1080; words denoting person used as, 1099; used in abl. with **ab**, 1477.

### Colon, 2532.

### Combination,

of sentences, 1055; of substs. by a prep., 1426-1428; of different copulatives, 1662-1666.

### Command,

acc. in, 1150; intimated by question, 1531; expressed by subjv., 1547-1552; expressed by imper., 1571-1586; accompanied by voc. or voc. nom., 1571; expressed by fut., 1624; introduced by **proinde, proin**, 2157; verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; subjv. coordinated with verbs of, 1708; verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950; verbs of, with acc. and infin., 2200-2202.

### Common,

names, defined, 5; quantity, definition and sign of, 31; gender, nouns of, 410.

### Comparative,

of adjs., **-us** in neut. for older **-ūs**, 59; **-ūs** in neut. retained, 67; diminutive formed from stem of, 340; formed from stems and roots, 342; stem of, 346, 470; suffixes of, 346-348; doubled suffix of, 348; lacking, 358, 360; formed by **magis**, 360; decl. and case forms of, 621-623, 503, 505, 507; used as adv., 701; of advs., ending of, 361, 363, 364; lacking, 364.

Use of, 1455-1464; general function of, 1455; used in comparison of adjs. and advs., 1457, 1458; combined with a positive, 1458; modified by abl. of difference, 1393, 1459; modified by acc., 1398; expressing disproportion, 1460, 1461; in neg. sentence, for superl., 1462; emphasized by **magis**, 1463; modified by **aequē**, 1463; with abl., for positive,



## Index of Subjects.

### Comparative — *continued.*

1464; strengthening a superl., 1468; agreeing with a rel., 1810; followed by **quam**, **quam ut**, **quam quī**, 1896; **quō** of purpose with, 1974; followed by **quasi**, 2122; followed by abl. of gerundive construction, 2268; double, with **quam . . . tam**, 1893; with **quantō . . . tantō**, 1973.

Sentence, defined, 1716; with **ut**, coordinated member equivalent to, 1704; **quisquam** and **ūllus** in, 2402; period of equality, **tam . . . quam**, &c. in, 1889, 1895; of inequality, 1894; with **quō** and **eō**, 1973.

### Comparison,

of adjs., 342-360; in **-ior**, **issimus**, 343; of adjs. in **-ilis**, 345, 359; of adjs. in **-er**, 344; with superl. in **-rimus**, 344, 350; with superl. in **-limus**, 345, 350; with superl. in **-timus**, 351; with superl. in **-mus** or **-imus**, 352; with compar. in **-erī** or **-er**, 347, 348; with compar. and superl. from different forms of same stem or from different stems, 353-355; without positive, 356, 357; without compar., 358; without superl., 359; with **magis** and **māximē**, 360; not admitted, 360.

Of adverbs, 361-364; with superl. in **-ēd**, 362; with superl. in **-ō** or **-um**, 362; without positive, 363; without compar., 364; without superl., 364.

Of participles, 2284.

Use of degrees of, 1454-1468, see **Positive, Comparative, Superlative.**

Ablative of, 1320-1330; **atque**, **et** in, 1653, 1654; periods of, with **quam**, 1888-1898; with **tamquam**, 1908-1910; conditional periods of, 2117-2122.

### Compensation, 55.

### Complement,

the essential, defined, 1177; the essential, uses of, 1180-1204; the optional, defined, 1178; the optional, uses of, 1205-1218; see **Dative.**

### Complementary,

dat., see **Dative**; final clauses, 1948-1960; consecutive clauses, 1948, 1965-1969; infin., 2168-2171, 2223-2225, 1953.

### Completed,

action, tenses of, 1603, 1605, 1614, 1626, 2218.

### Complex,

sentence, defined, 1058; varieties of, 1058-1061; treated, 1714-2122, see **Sentence.**

### Composition,

treated, 376-396; of nouns, 379-390; real compounds, 379-385; apparent compounds, 386-390; of verbs, 391-396; real compounds, 391, 392, 790; apparent compounds, 393-396, 790; verb with verb, 394; subst. with verb, 395; adv. with verb, 396; of partic., 2284.

### Compound,

words, defined, 181; containing mute or **f** followed by **l** or **r**, 169; direct, defined, 377; indirect, defined, 377; real, defined, 378; apparent, defined, 378; determinative, defined, 382-384; objective, defined, 384; possess., defined, 385; compound formative suffixes, defined, 200; compound verbs, with stem differing from simple, 821-823; perf. of, 823; reduplication in, 860, 861; forms of, 922-1020; cases with, 1137, 1138, 1187, 1191, 1194-1199, 1209; formation of, 1402-1409; compound sentence, defined, 1056; abridged, 1057; treated, 1636-1713; see **Sentence, Composition.**

### Compounds,

of **dīc**, **dūc**, accent of, 173; of roots **fac-**, **ag-**, **cap-**, 370; of **faciō**, accent of, 394; of **faciō**, form of, 394; in **-cola** and **-gena**, gen. plur. of, 439; in **-fer** and **-ger**, decl. of, 454, 616; of **dō**, 756, 757; of **eō**, 763-767; of **edō**, 771; in **-fīō** and **-ficior**, 790; of **dūcō**, imper. of, 846; of **ne**, 1444, 1445.

### Conative,

use of verb, 2301-2303.

### Conceivable,

action, subjv. of, in main sentence, 1554-1562; in subordinate sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; in rel. characteristic or result sentences, 1818; in **quam** sentences, 1888, 1896; in **quamquam** sentences, 1901; in sentences of result with **ut**, 1947; in sentences of purpose with **ut**, 1962; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1994; in sentences with **quandō**, 2010.

### Concession,

expressed by abl. abs., 1367; expressed by subjv. of desire, 1553; expressed by imper., 1571; expressed by

## Index of Subjects.

### Concession — *continued.*

fut., 1620; coordinated member equivalent to clause of, 1702, 1710; rel. sentences of, 1824-1830; expressed by sentence with **quod**, 1843; expressed by sentence with **quamquam**, 1900; expressed by sentence with **quamvis**, 1904; expressed by sentence with **quamlibet**, 1907; expressed by sentence with **ut**, **nē**, 1963; expressed by sentence with **etsi**, **tametsi**, &c., 2116; expressed by partic., 2295; **ille** (**quidem**), **hic**, **is**, **iste** in, 2361.

### Concessive,

sentences, defined, 1716; tense of, after secondary, 1756; **cum**, 1876-1880; **ut** . . . **ita**, **sic**, 1938; protases, 2116; conjunctions and advs., use of, 2133, 2150-2153.

### Conclusion,

introduced by **ergō**, **itaque**, **igitur**, 2158; see **Conditional**.

### Concrete,

substs., defined, 5.

### Condemning,

verbs of, with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282; with **quod**, 1852.

### Conditional,

sentences, defined, 1716; subjv. of ind. disc. and attraction in, 1722; subjv. of repeated action in, 1730; wish in form of, with **sī**, **ō sī**, 1546; unchanged after primary tense, 1753; with **sī**, **sī forte**, for indirect question, 1777; rel. sentences equivalent to, 1812; **cum** sentences equivalent to, 1859; expressed by **ut**, **nē** . . . **sic**, proviso, 1964.

Periods, 2016-2021; development of, 2016; words introducing prot., 2019-2021; classes of, 2022-2024.

Indeterminate protases, 2025-2090; indic. use, 2025-2071.

Present indicative in prot., 2026-2033; with apod. in pres. indic., 2026; with apod. in perf. indic., 2027; with apod. in impf. indic., 2028; with apod. in plup. indic., 2029; with apod. in fut., 2030; with apod. in fut. perf., 2031; with apod. in imper., 2032; with apod. in pres. subjv., 2033.

Perfect indicative in prot., 2034-2041; with apod. in pres. indic., 2034; with apod. in perf. indic., 2035; with apod. in plup. indic., 2036; with apod. in fut., 2037; with apod. in imper., 2038; with apod. in pres. subjv., 2039; with apod.

### Conditional — *continued.*

in impf. subjv., 2040; with apod. in plup. subjv., 2041.

Imperfect indicative in prot., 2042-2047; with apod. in pres. indic., 2042; with apod. in perf. indic., 2043; with apod. in impf. indic., 2044; with apod. in fut., 2045; with apod. in pres. subjv., 2046; with apod. in impf. subjv., 2047.

Pluperfect indicative in prot., 2048-2051; with apod. in pres. indic., 2048; with apod. in perf. indic., 2049; with apod. in impf. indic., 2050; with apod. in impf. subjv., 2051.

Future in prot., 2052-2058; with apod. in pres. indic., 2052; with apod. in perf. indic., 2053; with apod. in fut., 2054; with apod. in fut. perf., 2055; with apod. in imper., 2056; with apod. in pres. subjv., 2057; with apod. in perf. subjv., 2058.

Future perfect in prot., 2059-2064; with apod. in pres. indic., 2059; with apod. in perf. indic., 2060; with apod. in fut., 2061; with apod. in fut. perf., 2062; with apod. in imper., 2063; with apod. in pres. subjv., 2064.

General, 2034, 2035, 2044, 2050, 2054, 2069-2071; special uses, 2065-2067; **nōn**, **sī** . . . 2067; with **mīror**, **mīrum est**, 2068; use of subjv. for indic., 2069-2071.

Indeterminate protases, subjv. use, 2072-2090; indic. for subjv. in expressions of ability, duty, &c., 2074; non-occurrent action viewed as occurrent, 2075.

Prot. in pres. subjv., 2076-2083; prot. in perf. subjv., 2084-2088; apod. in pres. subjv., 2076, 2084; apod. in perf. subjv., 2077, 2085; apod. in pres. indic., 2078; apod. in fut., 2079, 2086; apod. in fut. perf., 2080; apod. in periphrastic, 2081, 2087; apod. in impf. subjv., 2082, 2088; apod. in plup. subjv., 2083; conversion to past time, 2089; periods of exemplification, 2054, 2090.

Protases of action non-occurrent, 2024, 2091-2108; force of tenses, 2091-2093; prot. in impf. subjv., 2094-2097; prot. in plup. subjv., 2096, 2098-2107; periphrastic prot., 2108; apod. in impf. subjv., 2094, 2098, 2108; apod. in plup. subjv., 2095, 2099, 2108; apod. in pres. subjv., 2096; periphrastic apod., 2097, 2100; apod. in impf. indic., 2101, 2102, 2104, 2106; apod. in perf. indic., 2101,



## Index of Subjects.

### Conditional — *continued.*

2103-2105; apod. in plup. indic., 2104, 2107.

Variation of prot., 2109-2111; variation of apod., 2112-2115; forms which apod. may take, 2018; coordinated member equivalent to prot., 1574, 1701; imper. as prot., 1574; prot. expressed by abl. abs., 2295; prot. expressed by partic., 2295; conditional comparisons, 2117-2122; protases in ind. disc., 2326-2329; apodoses in ind. disc., 2330-2334; sentence, *quisquam* and *ullus* in, 2402.

### Conjugation,

defined, 397; of *sum*, 744-750; of *possum*, 744, 751-753; of *dō*, 744, 754-757; of *bibō*, *serō*, *sistō*, 744, 758; of *inquam*, 759-761; of *eō*, 759, 762-767; of *queō*, *nequeō*, 759, 768; of *edō*, 769-771; of *volō*, 772-774; of *nōlō*, 772, 775-777; of *mālō*, 772, 778, 779; of *ferō*, 772, 780, 781; of verbs in *-ere* (third conj.), 782-784; of *aiō*, 785-787; of *fiō*, 785, 788-790; of verbs in *-iō*, *-ere*, 784-791; of verbs in *-āre* (first conj.), 792, 793; of verbs in *-ēre* (sec. conj.), 794, 795; of verbs in *-īre* (fourth conj.), 796, 797; of deponent verbs, 798-801; of periphrastic forms, 802-804; see **Stems, Person, Formation.**

### Conjunctional,

see **Conjunctive.**

### Conjunctions,

defined, 13; origin of, 696; copulative, use of, 1644-1661, 1687-1692, 1881, 2133-2149; combination of different, 1662-1666; disjunctive, use of, 1667-1675, 2133-2149; adversative, use of, 1676-1686, 2133, 2150-2153; postpositive, 1676; *quamquam* as, 1899, 1900; *quamvis* as, 1904, 1905; *quī*, 1976; concessive, use of, 2133, 2150-2153; causal and illative, use of, 2133, 2154-2158; affirmative coordination, 2159; see **Connectives.**

### Conjunctive,

particle sentences, 1838-2122; introduced by *quod*, *quia*, 1838-1858; by *nōn quod*, *nōn quō*, &c., 1855; by *cum*, 1859-1881; by *quoniam*, 1882-1884; by *quotiēns*, *quotiēnscumque*, 1885-1887; by *quam*, 1888-1898; by *quantus*, *ut*, 1892; by *quamquam*, 1899-1902; by *quam-*

### Conjunctive — *continued.*

*vīs*, 1903-1906; by *quamlibet*, 1907; by *tamquam*, 1908-1910; by *quemadmodum*, 1908; by *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1911-1921; by *prīdiē quam*, *postrīdiē quam*, 1922; by *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *cum primum*, 1923-1934; by *utī*, *ut*, *nē*, 1935-1970; by *ubi*, 1971; by *quō*, *quī*, 1972-1976; by *quantō*, 1973; by *quōminus*, 1977, 1978; by *quō sētius*, 1979; by *quīn*, 1980-1990; by *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1991-2009; by *modo*, 2003; by *quandō*, *quandōque*, 2010-2014; by *sī*, *nisi*, &c., 2015-2115; by *etsī*, *tametsī*, *tamenetsī*, *etiāmsī*, *sī*, 2116; by *quasi*, *quam sī*, *tamquam sī*, &c., 2117-2122; particle sentences, in ind. disc., 2315, 2317, 2319.

### Connection,

of the parts of sentence, 1636-1692; of sentences or periods, 2123-2159; relationship, &c., words of, with gen., 1203.

### Connectives,

compound sentence without, 1636-1642; separate sentences or periods without, 2124-2127; relatives as, 2131; demonstrative and determinative words as, 2129, 2130; concessive words as, 2150-2153; disjunctive words as, 1667-1675, 2134-2149; copulative words as, 1644-1661, 2134-2149; adversative words as, 1676-1686, 2150-2153; other words than conjunctions as, 1687-1692; causal words as, 2154-2158; illative words as, 2154-2158; affirmative coordination, 2159.

### Consecutive,

sentences, defined, 1716; tense of, after secondary, 1757-1759; complementary, 1948, 1965-1969; pure, 1948, 1970.

### Consonants,

cons. and vowel *i* and *u*, 21-24; *x* a double cons., how sounded, 47; *x* makes long syllable, 168; doubled cons., how written and how pronounced, 48; doubled, never ends a word, 139; doubled, makes long syllable, 168; pronunciation of, 44-49; classification of, 50-54; table of, 54; cons. changes, 114-154, see **Substitution, Development, Disappearance, Assimilation, Dissimilation, Interchange**; mute or *f* followed by *l* or *r*, how affecting



## Index of Subjects.

### Consonants — *continued.*

preceding short vowel, 169; cons. roots, defined, 188; cons. stems of substs., decl. of, 467-512, see **Declension**; cons. stems of substs., general rules of gender of, 570-584; cons. stems of adjs., decl. of, 621-626, 467-512, see **Declension**.

### Contempt,

expressed by diminutives, 269; expressed by **nesciō quid**, &c., 1789; expressed by **hīc**, 2350; expressed by **iste**, 2357; expressed by **homo**, 2365; expressed by **quidam**, 2393.

### Continued action,

tenses of, 1587, 1594, 1619, 2218; with **cum**, 1864, 1865; see **Incomplete action**.

### Continuous,

sounds, defined, 51; classified, 54; subst. stems in, decl. of, 481-493.

### Contraction,

of vowels, 97-101; of verb forms, 885-893; in versification, 2518.

### Contrary to fact,

see **Non-occurrent**.

### Contrasts,

asyndeton in, 1640; introduced by **et**, 2140; **hīc** and **ille** in, 2352; **ipse** in, 2374, 2375.

### Convicting,

verbs of, with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282.

### Coordination,

of sentences, 1055-1060, 1636; asyndetic, 1637-1642; constructions, history of, 1693-1695, 1705, 1706, 1740, 1957; treated, 1636-1692; without connective, 1636-1642; with copulative conjunctions, 1643-1666; with disjunctive conjunctions, 1667-1675; with adversative conjunctions, 1676-1686; with other words as connectives, 1687-1692; intermediate coordinate sentence, treated, 1693-1713; coordination instead of acc. and infin., 1696; question or exclamation in, 1697; instead of rel. sentence, 1698; instead of temporal expression, 1699; instead of result clause, 1700; instead of condition, 1701, 2110; instead of concessive clause, 1702; instead of causal clause, 1703; instead of compar. clause with **ut**, 1704; subjv. of desire in, 1705; **nē** in, 1706; with verbs of wishing, 1707; with verbs of request, exhortation, command, &c., 1708; with

### Coordination — *continued.*

**oportet**, **optumum est**, &c., 1709; with **permittō**, **concēdō**, **sinō**, **licet**, 1710; with **cavē**, &c., 1711; with **cedo**, **dō**, **persuādeō**, **cūrō**, **fac**, &c., 1712; with verbs in general, 1713; of questions, 1787; of imper., 1787, 1710-1712; of rel. sentence with subst., adj., or partic., 1820; of rel. sentences, 1832, 1833; affirmative, 2159; expressed by **quamquam**, **etsi**, **tametsi**, 2153; expressed by **quippe**, 1690.

### Copulative,

words, use of, 1644-1661, 1687-1692, 1881, 2133-2149; combination of different, 1662-1666.

### Correlative,

prons., table of, 695, 1831; advs., table of, 711, 1831; sentences, 1831; **idcirco**, **ideō**, &c., 1855, 1858; **quoniam** . . . **continuō**, &c., 1883; **quotiēns** . . . **totiēns**, &c., 1886; **quam** . . . **tam**, &c., 1889, 1890; **tamquam** . . . **sic**, **ita**, 1908; **ut** . . . **ita**, **item**, &c., 1937; adversative, **ut** . . . **ita**, **sic**, 1938; conditional, **ut**, **nē** . . . **sic**, 1964; **tantus** . . . **ut**, &c., 1970; **quō** . . . **eō**, **hōc**, 1973; **quantō** . . . **tantō**, 1973; **dum** . . . **subitō**, **repente**, **iam**, &c., 1995; **dum**, &c., . . . **tamdiū**, &c., 1999; **dum**, &c., . . . **ūsq̄ue**, &c., 2004; **quandō** . . . **tum**, 2011; **sic** . . . **si**, 2015; **sī** . . . **igitur**, &c., 2018, 2067; **etsi**, &c. . . **tamen**, 2116; lacking in apod., 1890, 1937.

### Correction, 2517.

### Costing,

verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl., 1388-1392.

### Countries,

names of, in plur., 1107; in acc. with expressions of motion, 1161; used adjectively, 1233; abl. of, attached to a subst., 1309; denoting place from which, 1309, 1310; place in or at which, 1336, 1347.

### Cretic,

defined, 2521; rhythms, 2691-2697.

### Curses,

**duim**, &c. in, 756.

### Customary,

action, expressed by pres., 1588; expressed by impf., 1596.

### Cyclic feet, 2523.

## Index of Subjects.

### Dactyl,

defined, 2521; cyclic, 2523.

### Dactylic,

rhythms, 2555-2580; hexameter, 2556-2569; pentameter, 2570-2576; tetrameter acatalectic, 2577; tetrameter catalectic, 2578; trimeter catalectic, 2579.

### Dactylo-trochaic rhythms,

2675-2681.

### Danger,

expressions of, with *ut*, *nē* clauses, 1957, 1958.

### Dates,

expressed by abl., 1307; expressed by loc., 1307, 1331; cardinals and ordinals in, 2419; marked by names of consuls, 2419.

### Dative case,

defined, 419; plur., how formed, 428; lacking, see **Defective**; forms in *-bus* for older *-būs*, 59; *-būs* retained, 67.

*-ā-* stems, in *-ī*, 618-620, 656, 693; in *-eis*, 440, 443; in *-īs* for *-iīs*, 440; in *-āis* and *-ēis*, 441; in *-ābus*, 442; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444.

*-o-* stems, in *-ī*, 618-620, 656, 693; in *-āis*, *-ēis*, *-ōis*, 458; in *-ōbus*, 464; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, in *-ē*, 501, 507; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

*-i-* stems, inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

*-u-* stems, in *-ubus*, 592; inscriptional forms, 593.

*-ē-* stems, in *-ē*, 602, 606; in *-ī*, 606; sing., of *rēs*, *fidēs*, 160, 602.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional forms, of *ego*, *tū*, *suī*, 651; of *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, 653, 654; of *hic*, 663-665; of *ille*, *iste*, 667, 668; of *illic*, *istic*, 670; of *is*, 672-674, 160; of *idem*, 677, 678; of *quī*, *quis*, 688, 690.

Uses of, 1175-1225; general, 1175-1179.

The complementary, 1180-1218; as essential complement, 1180-1204; as optional complement, 1205-1218; made subj. in pass., 1480, 1181; with verbs of intrans. use denoting state, disposition, feeling, quality, 1181, 1184, 1185; with *sum* and a pred. noun, 1183; with verbs

### Dative case — continued.

of union, contention, difference, 1186, 1357; with verbs combined with *adversum*, *obviam*, *praestō*, *bene*, *male*, *satis*, 1187; with verbs of intrans. use compounded with a prep., 1188-1191; with verbs of trans. use, 1192; with verbs of trans. use compounded with a prep., 1194-1199; with adjs., 1200-1204; with verbs of trans. or intrans. use to denote person or thing interested, benefited, harmed, 1205, 1315; with *similis*, 1204; with interjections, 1206; with sentences, 1207; with verbs denoting *warding off*, *robbing*, *ridding*, 1209; with verbs of motion, 1210; emotional, 1211; of possessor, 1212-1216, 1478, 2181, 2243; with compounds of *sum*, 1212; with *mihī est nōmen*, &c., 1213, 1214; of the doer of an action, 1215, 1216, 1478, 2181, 2243; of relation, 1217, 1218.

The predicative, 1219-1224; of tendency or result, 1219-1222; with verbs of considering or accounting, 1222; of purpose or intention, 1223-1225.

Double, 1213, 1214, 1219-1225; combined with acc., 1199, 1201, 1214, 1221, 1224; combined with nom., 1213, 1214, 1221, 1224; attached to subst., 1183, 1208, 1225; used with *cōnscius*, 1265; with *rēfert*, 1278; with impersonal verbs in pass., 1181; pred. noun in, 2214; of gerundive construction and gerund, 2254-2257; supine in *-ū* as, 2269; following supine in *-um*, 2272; with *idem*, 2373.

### Decasyllabic Alcaic, 2663.

### Declarations,

neg. adv. in, 1443; indic. used in, 1493; verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, &c. in, 1495-1497; confounded with questions and exclamations, 1502; subjv. used in, 1540-1562; expressed by indic. in rel. sentence, 1813; expressed by *quod*, 1838.

### Declarative,

sentence, defined, 1025; in ind. disc., mood of, 2312.

### Declension,

defined, 397.

Substantives, 432-607; *-ā-* stems, 432-445; *-ā-* stems, Greek nouns, 444, 445; *-o-* stems, 446-466; *-o-* stems,



## Index of Subjects.

### Declension — *continued.*

Greek nouns, 466; cons. stems, 467-512; guttural mute stems (-g-, -c-), 471-473; lingual mute stems (-d-, -t-), 474-478; labial mute stems (-b-, -p-), 479, 480; stems in -l-, -n-, 481-486; stems in -r-, -s-, 487-493; stems in -u- or -v-, 494; cons. stems, Greek nouns, 508-512; case endings of cons. stems, 495-507, see **Nominative**, &c.; -i- stems, 513-569; parisyllables with nom. in -is, 517-522; parisyllables with nom. in -ēs, 523, 524; parisyllables with stems in -bri-, -cri-, -tri-, 525; parisyllabic neuters with nom. in -e, 526-528; imparisyllables with stem in -ci-, 531; imparisyllables with stem in -di-, 532; imparisyllables with stem in -ti-, 533; imparisyllables with stem in -bi-, 534; imparisyllables with stem in -pi-, 535; imparisyllables with stem in -li-, 536; imparisyllables with stem in -ri-, 537, 538; imparisyllables with stem in -si-, 539; -i- stems, Greek nouns, 565; case endings of -i- stems, 540-564, see **Nominative**, &c.; -u- stems, 585-595; -ē- stems, 596-607.

Adjectives, 608-643, 432-569; stems in -o- and -ā- ('three endings'), 613-620, 432-466; cons. stems of 'two endings' (the compar.), 621-623, 503, 505, 507; cons. stems of 'one ending', 624-626, 467-512, 561; -i- stems, 627-636, 529-569; adjs. used as substs., 558, 561; numeral adjs., 637-643.

Present participles, 632, 633, 560, 562-564.

Pronouns, 644-694; personal, 644-651; reflexive, 644-651; possess., 652-655; demonstrative, 656-670; determinative, 656-659, 671-675; of identity, 656-659, 676-678; intensive, 656-659, 679, 680; rel., interrogative, indef., 656-659, 681-694.

See **Gender, Number, Case.**

### Decreeing,

see **Resolve.**

### Defective,

substs., in number, 416, 417, see also 477, 489, 493, 518, 523, 524, 534, 545; words of 4th decl., no sing., 588; words of 5th decl., no plur., 597, 600; in case, 430; cases lacking in 3rd decl., 473-545; cases lacking in 4th decl., 588; cases lacking in 5th decl., 597, 600, 604-607; adjs., in number, 623; in case, 430, 431, 356; cases lacking in cons. stems, 472,

### Defective — *continued.*

623-626; cases lacking in -i- stems, 531-537, 627, 634-636; in comparison, 356-360; advs., in comparison, 363, 364; prons., in case, 692; verbs, 805-817, 900, 905, 907, 922-1019.

### Defining,

acc., 1140-1146, 1173, 1475.

### Definite,

perf., use of, 1602, 1605-1613; sequence of, 1717, 1754; see **Perfect.**

Time, in **cum** sentences, 1861-1867; in sentences with **ubi**, **ut**, **simul atque**, 1933, 1934.

### Definition,

gen. of, 1255-1259; perf. subjv. in, with **antequam**, 1913.

### Degree,

denoted by advs., 1438; of comparison, see **Comparison**; of difference, see **Difference.**

### Delaying,

verbs of. with **quā**, 1986; see

### Hindering.

### Deliberating,

verbs of, with indirect question, 1774.

### Deliberation,

questions of, in pres. ind., 1531; in fut., 1531, 1623; in subjv., 1563; in subordinate sentence, 1731; tense of, in secondary sentence, 1753; in indirect question, 1786, 1774.

### Deliver,

see **Free.**

### Demanding,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase, 1170; with acc. and infin., 2194.

### Demonstrative,

prons., decl. of, 656-670; agreement of, 1095-1098, see **Agreement**; with a compar., 1326; omitted in rel. sentence, 1798; as connectives, 2128-2130; correlative prons., 1831; use of **hic**, 2347-2355; use of **iste**, 2356, 2357; use of **ille**, 2358-2364; see **hic**, &c.; advs., 711.

### Denominative,

defined, 198; substs., 246-279, 226, 227, 232; adjs., 298-360, 287; verbs, formation of, 365-375, 839, 840; inflection of, 792-797; list of, 987-1022, see **Verbs, Formation.**

### Dependent,

see **Subordinate.**



# Index of Subjects.

- Deponents,**  
defined, 725, 1486; imper. of, 297, 731; prin. parts of, 735; how designated, 736, 737; inflection of, 798-801; in -i, list of, 977-986; act. forms of, 798; with act. and pass. endings, 800, 1488, 1489; semi-deponents, 801, 1488; perf. partic. of, with act. and pass. meaning, 907, 1364, 1492; with reflexive, pass., or reciprocal force, 1487; with pass. meaning, 1490; pass. of, how expressed, 1491.
- Deprive,**  
verbs meaning, with abl., 1302-1306.
- Descending rhythms,** 2528.
- Descriptions,**  
impf. in, 1599; asyndeton in, 1639; in indic. in rel. sentence, 1813; expressed by abl. abs., 1367; expressed by partic., 2295.
- Desiderative,**  
verbs, definition and formation of, 375; defective, 810.
- Desire,**  
subjv. of, 1540-1553; in coordination, 1705-1713; in rel. sentences of purpose, 1817; in sentences with *potius quam*, &c., 1897; in sentences of purpose with *ut*, 1947; in sentences with *dum*, 2005.  
Verbs of, with gen., 1286; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2189-2192, 2228.  
See **Wish, Wishing, Desirous.**
- Desirous,**  
adjs. meaning, gen. with, 1263, 1264.
- Determinative,**  
compounds, defined and classified, 382-384.  
Pronouns., decl. of, 656-659, 671-675; agreement of, 1094-1098, see **Agreement**; omitted in rel. sentence, 1798; as connectives, 2128-2130; correlative prons., 1831; use and force of, 2365-2370, 2361; see *is*.  
Adverbs, 711.
- Development,**  
of vowel before cons., 89; of vowel between consonants, 90; of cons., 120, 121; *p* between *m* and *s*, *m* and *t*, 120; *n* before *s*, 121.
- Diaeresis,**  
defined, 2542, 2543; bucolic, 2559.
- Dialysis,** 2501.
- Diastolé,** 2505.
- Dicolic verses,** 2535.
- Difference,**  
verbs of, case with, 1186; amount of, abl. of, 1393-1399, 1153, 1154, 1459, see **Extent**; *quō . . . eō*, 1973.
- Difficult,**  
adjs. meaning, with supine in -ū, 2274.
- Diambus,**  
defined, 2522.
- Dimeter,**  
defined, 2536; iambic, 2617-2623; trochaic, 2643-2646; anapaestic, 2687-2689; cretic, 2697; bacchiac, 2704.
- Diminutive,**  
substs., suffixes forming, 267-278; meanings of, 267-270; gender of, 270; adjs., 339, 340; formed from compar. stems, 340; advs., 341.
- Diphthongs,**  
defined, 39; the, 41; origin of, 40, 99; pronunciation of, 42, 43; quantity of, 39, 158; quantity of, before a vowel, 158; *ei* in inscriptions to denote *i*, 29.  
Diphthong decay, 80-88; change of *au*, 81; change of *ou*, 82; change of *eu*, 83; change of *ai*, *ae*, 84-86; change of *aī*, 86; change of *oi*, *oe*, 87; change of *ei*, 86-88, 764, 789.
- Dipody,**  
defined, 2531; iambic, 2624; trochaic, 2649; logaoedic, 2655-2658.
- Direct,**  
compound, defined, 377, see **Composition**; quotation, 1723, see **Quotations**; discourse, defined, 2308; question, see **Questions**.
- Direction,**  
expressed by subjv., 1547-1551; introduced by *utī*, *ut*, *nē*, &c., 1547; expressed by fut., 1624; verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1708; introduced by *proinde*, *proin*, 2157.
- Disadvantage,**  
dat. of, 1178, 1205-1210.
- Disappearance,**  
of vowel, 91-96; initial, 92; medial, 93-95; final, 96; of cons., 122-143; initial, 123-125; medial, 126-138, 659; final, 139-143, 426, 648, 705.
- Disapprobation,**  
questions of, 1566-1569; expressed by infin., 2216.
- Disjunctive,**  
words, use of, 1667-1675, 2133-2149.

## Index of Subjects.

- Displeasing**,  
expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.
- Dispondee**, 2522.
- Disproportion**,  
expressed by positive, 1454; expressed by compar., 1460, 1461; compar. denoting, followed by *quam*, *quam ut*, *quam quī*, 1896.
- Dissimilation**,  
of two vowels, 105, 75, 112, 452, 653, 827; of vowel and cons., 105, 75, 112, 452, 653, 827; of two consonants, 152-154.
- Distance**,  
designations of, abl. of *intervāllum* and *spatium* in, 1399; see **Space**, **Time**.
- Distich**,  
defined, 2545; elegiac, 2573.
- Distress**,  
mental, verbs of, with gen., 1283-1286; with loc. and abl., 1339, 1344.
- Distributive**,  
numerals, suffix of, 317; decl. of, 643; list of, 2404, 2405; some forms of, 2418; uses of, 2420-2422; words, with plur. subst., 1080; with sing. and plur. verb, 1080.
- Disyllabic**,  
preps., position of, 1434; perfects and perf. partic., quantity of penult vowel of, 2434-2436.
- Ditrochee**, 2522.
- Doer**,  
of action, expressed by dat., 1215, 1216, 1478, 2181, 2243; expressed by abl. with *ab*, 1318, 1476, 1477, 2243; expressed by abl. alone, 1319, 1477.
- Doing**,  
verbs of, with *quod*, *quia*, introducing coincident action, 1850; with *quī*, 1826; with *cum*, 1874.
- Double**,  
questions, see **Alternative**; class, of rhythms, 2527.
- Doubt**,  
questions of, in pres. indic., 1531; in fut., 1531, 1623; in subjv., 1563; in subordinate sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; in indirect question, 1786; *fōrtasse*, &c., and subjv., 1554; verbs of, loc. and abl. with, 1339, 1344; indirect question with, 1774; with *quīn*, 1986.
- Dreading**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1286.
- Dual**, 415.
- Dubitative**,  
see **Appeal**.
- Duration**,  
of time, denoted by acc., 1151-1156, 1475; acc. of, combined with a second acc., 1174; denoted by abl., 1355.
- Duty**,  
verbal expressions of, in indic., 1495-1497; in conditional periods, 2074, 2101.
- Easy**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2252; with supine in *-ū*, 2274.
- Ecthlipsis**, 2493.
- Effect**,  
suffixes denoting, 213, 217, 224, 241.
- Effort**,  
see **Striving**.
- Elegiac distich**, 2573.
- Elegiambus**, 2680, 2681.
- Elision**,  
within a word, 97, 102; between words, 2481-2495; at end of verse, 2533, 2568.
- Emotion**,  
verbs of, with *quod*, *quia*, 1851; with *cum*, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184; with perf. infin., 2231.
- Emotional dative**, 1211.
- Emphasizing**,  
acc., 1140-1146, 1173, 1475.
- Enclitics**,  
the, 179; defined, 179; accent of, 179; quantity of, 2433; *-met*, 650, 655; *-pte*, 655; *-ce*, 662, 663, 669, 670, 2015; *dum*, with imper., 1573, 1992; at end of verse, 2568; see *-que*, &c.
- End**,  
of motion, see **Motion**.
- Endeavour**,  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.
- Endings**,  
case, function of, 398; lacking, in prons., 645; of nouns and verbs, shortened, 59-61; retained long, 63-68: 'one,' 'two,' 'three,' adjs. of, see **Adjectives**; see **Person**, **Declension**, **Suffix**.

## Index of Subjects.

- Enlargement**,  
of simple sentence, 1037-1054; of subj., 1038-1047; of pred., 1048-1054.
- Entreaty**,  
expressed by imper., 1571; verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1708.
- Enumerative asyndeton**, 2126.
- Envy**,  
verbs of, with dat., 1181.
- Epicenes**, 411.
- Epistolary**,  
impf., 1601; plup., 1616.
- Epitrite**, 2522.
- Equal class**,  
of rhythms, 2527.
- Essential**,  
complement, see **Complement**.
- Ethical**,  
see **Emotional**.
- Euripidean verse**, 2644-2646.
- Exchange**,  
abl. of, 1388-1392.
- Exclamation**,  
nom. of, 1117; acc. of, 1149, 1150, 2112; gen. of, 1295; verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity in, 1495-1497; indic. in, 1499; confounded with questions and declarations, 1502; introduced by prons. and unde, ubi, quō, cūr, quī, quīn, quam, quandō, quotiēns, 1526, 1527; introduced by ut, 1528; two or more exclamations with one verb, 1530; as member of coordinate sentence, 1697; subordinate, or indirect, 1773, see **Questions**; mīrum quantum, &c., 1790; in apod. of conditional sentence, 2018; infin. of, 2216.
- Exclamatory**,  
sentence, defined, 1025; questions, 1566-1569.
- Exemplification**,  
periods of, 2054, 2090.
- Exhortation**,  
intimated by question, 1531; expressed by subjv., 1547-1551; introduced by utī, ut, nē, nēmō, nihil, &c., 1547; expressed by imper., 1571; expressed by fut., 1624; verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1708.
- Expectation**,  
expressions of, with sī, sī fōrte, 1777; see **Hope**.
- Explanatory**,  
cum, 1859, 1874-1880.
- Explosives**, 51.
- Extent**,  
of space, denoted by acc., 1151-1156, 1475; acc. of, combined with a second acc., 1174; with verbs of surpassing, 1398.
- Faithful**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200.
- Favour**,  
verbs of, with dat., 1181, 1182.
- Fearing**,  
verbs of, with indirect question, 1774, 1959; with ut, nē clauses, 1957, 1958; with acc. and infin., 1959; with complementary infin., 1959, 2169.
- Feeling**,  
verbs of, with acc., 1139; with gen., 1283-1286; with loc. and abl., 1339, 1344; animī with verbs and adjs. of, 1339; see **Emotion**, **Mental distress**, &c.
- Feet**,  
metrical, defined, 2519; kinds of, 2521, 2522; cyclic, 2523; irrational, 2524; groups of, 2531, 2532.
- Feminine**,  
gender, general rules of, 407; for cons. and -i- stems, 577-581; caesura, 2557.
- Figures of prosody**, 2473-2510.
- Final**,  
disappearance, of vowel, 96; of cons., 139-143.  
Syllable, vowel of, shortened, 57, 59-61; retained long, 63-68; with accent, 173; quantity of, 2437-2457; of verse, *syllaba anceps*, 2533, 2534.  
e from o or i, 71; short vowel followed by word beginning with two consonants or double cons., 2458.  
Sentences, defined, 1716; complementary, 1948-1960; pure, 1948, 1961-1964; tense of, after perf. definite, 1754.
- Fitness**,  
adj. suffixes implying, 298, 302-330; adjs. denoting, cases with, 1200; adjs. denoting, with gerund and gerundive, 2252.
- Flowers**,  
names of, gender, 407, 408, 573.
- Forgetting**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1287-1291; with acc., 1288; with infin., 2169.



## Index of Subjects.

### Formation,

one of the divisions of Latin grammar, treated, 1, 180-396; defined, 180; roots and stems, 183-198; of nouns, without formative suffix, 195, 198, 199; with formative suffix, 195-198, 200-203.

Substantives, 204-279, 296, 308, 309, 313, 314, 333, 334; primitive, 204-245; denominative, 246-279, 226, 227, 232; suffixes denoting agent, 204-211; action, 212-237, 249; instrument or means, 238-245, 213, 224; concrete effect, 213, 217, 224, 241; result, 213, 222, 231, 234-236, 239, 249, 296; collectives, 228, 249; quality, 246-264; person concerned, 265, 309; place, 266, 228, 241, 242, 245, 249, 308, 309, 314, 334; diminutive suffixes, 267-278; suffixes forming patronymics, 279.

Adjectives, 280-360; primitive, 280-297, 305; denominative, 298-360, 287; suffixes denoting act. quality, 281-290, 293, 294, 296; pass. quality, 291-297, 282, 283; material or resemblance, 299-301; appurtenance, 302-330; supply, 331-338; diminutives, 339, 340; compar. and superl. suffixes, 342-360; suffixes denoting place, 317, 321, 347.

Adverbs, diminutives, 341; compar. and superl. endings, 361-364.

Verb stem, 824-919; variable vowel, 824-827; theme, 738-740; of denominative verbs, 365-375, 839, 840; frequentatives or intensives, 371-374; desideratives, 375; meditatives, 375, 970; inceptives or inchoatives, 834, see **Inceptives**; pres. indic., 828-840; pres. subjv., 841-843; imper., 844-846; impf. indic., 847, 848; impf. subjv., 849, 850; fut., 851-853; perf. indic., 854-875; perf. stem without suffix, 858-866; perf. stem in **-s-**, 867, 868; perf. stem in **-v-** or **-u-**, 869-875; perf. subjv., 876-878; perf. imper., 879, 813; plup. indic., 880; plup. subjv., 881; fut. perf., 882-884; short or old forms, in perf. system, 885-893; infin., 894-898; gerundive and gerund, 899; supine, 900; pres. partic., 901-903; fut. partic., 904, 905; perf. partic., 906-919.

See **Composition**.

### Formative suffix,

defined, 195, see **Suffix**.

### Fractions,

how expressed, 2424-2428.

### Free,

verbs meaning, with abl., 1302-1306; adjs. meaning, with abl., 1306.

### Frequentative,

verbs, definition and formation of, 371-374; conative use of, 2303.

### Friendly,

adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200.

### Friendship,

words of, with gen., 1203.

### Fulness,

verbs of, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386; adjs. of, with gen., 1263, 1264, 1387; with abl., 1387.

### Future action,

expressed by pres., 1593, 2026, 2030; expressed by perf., 1541, 1549, 1551, 1558, 1612, 2027.

### Future Perfect tense,

lacking in subjv. and imper., 716; formation of, 882-884; short or old forms, 885-893; **fuerit victūrus**, 803; infin., 887; dat. of possessor with, 1216, 1478; uses of, in simple sentence, 1626-1632, 1607, 1609; in prot. and apod., of coincident action, 1627; denoting fut. resulting state, 1628; expressing rapidity of action, 1629; denoting action postponed, 1630; denoting action which will have occurred while something takes place, 1631; not differing from fut., 1632; of inceptives, 1607; pass., with **fuerō**, &c., 1609; perf. used as, 1612; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1746, 1751, 1753; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1733, 1736; independent, 1738; with **cum**, 1860-1862; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1915; with **ubi**, **simul atque**, &c., 1934; with **dum**, 2006; with **dōnec**, **dōnicum**, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2059-2064; in conditional apod., 2023, 2031, 2055, 2062, 2080; represented by **fore** and perf. partic., 2234; of direct discourse represented by plup. or perf. subjv. in ind. disc., 2324.

### Futures,

virtual, 1718.

### Future tense,

lacking in subjv., 716; imper., 716, 1575; formation of, 851-853; **-it**, 68; **-ōr**, **-ār**, 68; dat. of possessor with, 1216, 1478; uses of, in simple sentence, 1619-1625; of fut. action, 1619; expressing prediction, will, threat, &c., 1619; of diffident assertion, 1620; in

## Index of Subjects.

### Future tense — *continued.*

predictions, 1621; in asseverations, 1622; in questions of appeal, 1623; expressing exhortation, request, command, &c., 1624; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1746, 1751, 1753; in subordinate sentence, 1625; fut. perf. with force of, 1632; rel. time, 1733-1735; independent, 1738; with **cum**, 1860-1862; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1913, 1916; with **ubi**, **simul atque**, &c., 1934; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdīū**, 1996, 2000, 2002, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2052-2058; in conditional apod., 2023, 2030, 2037, 2045, 2054, 2061, 2079, 2086; periphrastic, in conditional prot., 2092, 2108; in conditional apod., 2074, 2081, 2087, 2093, 2097, 2100; of direct discourse represented by impf. or pres. subjv. in ind. disc., 2324; infin., see **Infinite**; partic., see **Participles**.

### Galliambic, 2714-2716.

#### Gender,

kinds of, 402; defined, 403; nouns, defined, 402, 398; mobile nouns, 409; nouns of common, 410; epicenes, 411; variable, 413, 586, 597; general rules of, 402-413; of diminutives, 270; of inanimate things, 403; of Greek words, 570; of **-ā-** stems, 432, 433; of **-o-** stems, 446, 447; general rules of, for cons. and **-i-** stems, 570-584; of cons. stems, 467, 471-494; of **-i-** stems, 513, 517-539, 545; of **-u-** stems, 585, 586, 588; of **-ē-** stems, 596, 597; agreement of adj. and partic. in, 1082-1098; agreement of rel. pron. in, 1082-1098, 1801-1811, see **Relative**; agreement of demonstrative and determinative prons. in, 1082-1098, see **Demonstrative**, **Determinative**; agreement of subst. in, 1077-1081; see **Neuter**.

#### General,

truth, expressed by pres., 1588; expressed by impf., 1599; fut. in, 1620; in subordinate sentence, tense of, 1748, 1760; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1912-1914; introduced parenthetically by **ut**, 1940; introduced by **sic**, **ita**, 2159; conditions, 2034, 2035, 2044, 2050, 2054, 2069-2071; subj., in 1st pers. plur. and 2d pers. sing., omitted, 1030.

#### Genitive case,

defined, 419; plur., how formed, 427; stem of noun seen in, 421; stem of noun

### Genitive case — *continued.*

indicated by, 421; lacking, see **Defective**; stem vowel of **-o-** stems lengthened in, 56, 462.

**-ā-** stems, in **-īus**, **-ius**, 162, 618-620, 656, 657, 694; in **-āī**, 160, 437; in **-ās**, 437; in **-ūm**, 439; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 443-445.

**-o-** stems, in **-īus**, **-ius**, 162, 618-620, 656, 657, 694; in **-āī**, **-ēī**, **-ōī**, 458; of words in **-ius**, **-ium**, form and accent of, 172, 456, 457; in **-ūm**, **-ōm**, 462, 463, 465, 640, 641, 643; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, in **-uum**, 492, 506; in **-om**, 494, 507; in **-ium**, 477, 478, 489, 492, 494, 506, 507; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

**-i-** stems, in **-um**, 527-337, 563, 629, 631, 633, 636; inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

**-u-** stems, in **-uis**, 590; in **-tī**, 590; in **-om**, 591; in **-ūm**, 591; inscriptional forms, 593.

**-ē-** stems, in **-ē**, 602, 606; in **-ēs**, 602, 606; in **-ī**, 602, 606; of **rēs**, **fidēs**, 160, 602.

Present participles, in **-um**, 563.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional, forms, of **ego**, **tū**, **suī**, 646, 649; of **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, 653; of **hic**, 663, 665; of **ille**, **iste**, 667, 668; of **illic**, **istic**, 670; of **is**, 672-674; of **idem**, 677; of **quī**, **quis**, 688, 690; of **neuter**, 694.

Uses of, 1226-1295; general, 1226.

With substantives, 1227-1262; combined with one or more genitives limiting same subst., 1228; with limited subst. omitted, 1229; of the subj., cause, origin, owner, 1232-1238, 1207; of personal and reflexive prons., 1234; of word in apposition with possess. pron., 1235; as pred. with verbs meaning *am*, *belong*, *become*, &c., 1236, 1237; with **commūnis**, **proprius**, **aliēnus**, **sacer**, **tōtus**, 1238; of quality, attributively and predicatively, 1239, 1240; partitive, 1241-1254; with advs., 1242, 1248, 1253, 1254; partitive, with adjs., 1245; partitive, in pred., 1251; partitive, **nostrū**, **vestrū**, 2335; of definition, 1255-1259; with **causā**, **grātiā**, **nōmine**, **ergō**, 1257; with **quidquid est**, &c., 1259; the



## Index of Subjects.

### Genitive case — *continued.*

objective, 1260-1262; objective, **nostrī, vestrī**, 2335.

With adjectives, 1263-1270, 1203, 1204; with **cōnsciū** and **dat.**, 1265; with **partic.**, 1266; with **similis**, 1204; with **dignus, indignus**, 1269.

With verbs, 1271-1294; with verbs of valuing, &c., 1271-1275, 1279; with **rēfert** and **interest**, 1276-1279; with judicial verbs, 1280-1282; with **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet**, 1283, 1284; with **misereor, misereō, miserēscō**, 1285; with personal verbs of desiring, loathing, admiring, dreading, 1286; with verbs of memory, 1287-1291; with verbs of participation and mastery, 1292; with verbs of fulness and want, 1293; with verbs of separating and abstaining, 1294.

Of exclamation, 1295; with **mihi est nōmen, nōmen dō**, &c., 1213, 1214; with **opus**, 1383; with **post** and **intrā** in expressions of time, 1396; with **preps.**, 1406, 1413, 1419, 1420, 1232; **possess.**, with **infin.**, 1237, 2208, 2211, 1232; of gerundive construction and gerund, 2258-2264, 2164.

### Genus,

*par, duplex, sescuplex*, 2527.

### Gerund.

no plur. of, 416; a verbal noun, 732, 2237; formation of, 899; **dat.** of doer of action with, 1215, 1478, 2243; **abl.** with **ab** with, 2243; in reflexive sense, 1482; treated, 2237-2268; character of, 2237-2239; with and without **obj.**, 2241, 2242; of verbs of trans. use, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265; use of **acc.** of, with **ad**, 2252, 2164; with other **preps.**, 2253; use of **dat.** of, 2255, 2257; in **gen.**, 2259; denoting purpose, 2263; with **causā** expressing purpose, 2164; use of **abl.** of, 2265-2268; denoting means, cause, &c., 2266; with **preps.**, 2267; in **abl.** of separation, 2268.

### Gerundive,

a verbal noun, 732, 2237; formation of, 899, 288; originally neither act. nor pass., 288, 2238; **dat.** of possessor with, 1215, 1478, 2243; **abl.** with **ab** with, 2243; treated, 2237-2268; character of, 2237-2239; the construction, 2240; use of **nom.** of, 2243-2249, 2251; with **sum**, 2243; inflection of, with **sum**,

### Gerundive — *continued.*

804; with **sum** in conditional periods, 2101; **fruendus, fungendus**, &c., 2244; **habeō** with, 2245; impersonally, 2246, 2180, 2244; impersonally with **obj.**, 2247; adjectively, 288, 2248; denoting possibility, 2249; with **pass.**, 2251; use of **acc.** of, 2250-2253, 2243; with verbs, 2250; with **ad**, 2252, 2164; with other **preps.**, 2253; use of **dat.** of, 2254, 2256, 1208; use of **gen.** of, 2258-2264; with **subst.** or **adj.**, 2258, 2259; with **nostrī**, &c., 2260, 2261; **predicately** with **sum**, 2262; with **causā** expressing purpose, 2164; alone, denoting purpose, 2263; with judicial verbs, 2264; use of **abl.** of, 2265-2268; denoting means, cause, &c., 2266; with **preps.**, 2267; in **abl.** of separation, 2268; with **compar.** expression, 2268.

### Giving,

verbs of, **subjv.** coordinated with, 1712; with gerundive construction, 2250.

### Glyconic, 2660-2662.

### Gnomic,

see **Often.**

### Grave accent, 174-177.

### Greek,

characters of the alphabet, 17, 19; words, **eu** in, 83; changed in Latin, 90; quantity in, 158, 163, 164; **patronymics**, 279; nouns, gender of, 406, 408, 570; nouns of **-ā-** decl., forms of, 443-445; of **-o-** decl., 466; of **cons. decl.**, 508-512; of **-i-** decl., 565; **idiom**, imitated in Latin with **dat.** of **volēns**, &c., 1218; **acc.**, see **Part concerned.**

### Grief,

verbs of, with **quod, quia**, 1851; with **cum**, 1851, 1875; with **acc.** and **infin.**, 2187, 2188, 2184.

### Guilty,

**adjs.** meaning, **gen.** with, 1263, 1264.

### Gutturals,

53, 54; guttural mute stems, **decl.** of, 471-473.

### Habit,

suffixes denoting, 284.

### Happening,

verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; **quī** with, 1826, 1850; **quod** with, introducing coincident action, 1850; **cum** with, 1874, 1850; with result clause, 1965; with result clause, how translated, 1966.



## *Index of Subjects.*

- Hardening**, 2503.  
**Harming**,  
     verbs of, case with, 1205-1210.  
**Having**,  
     verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167.  
**Hearing**,  
     verbs of, in pres. of past action, 1592;  
     with indirect question, 1774.  
**Helping**,  
     expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.  
**Hemiolic class**,  
     of rhythms, 2527.  
**Hendecasyllabic Alcaic**, 2667, 2668.  
**Hendecasyllable**, 2664, 2665.  
**Hephthemimeral caesura**, 2544.  
**Hephthemimeris**, 2531.  
**Hesitate**,  
     verbs meaning, with *quīn*, 1987;  
     with infin., 2169.  
**Hexameter**,  
     defined, 2536; dactylic, 2556-2569;  
     bacchiac, 2705.  
**Hexapody**, 2531.  
**Hiatus**,  
     within a word, 97-102; between words,  
     2473-2480; at end of verse, 2533.  
**Hidden quantity**, 2459-2463.  
**Hiding**,  
     verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-  
     1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase,  
     1170.  
**Hindering**,  
     verbs of, with *nē*, 1960, 1977; with  
     *quōminus*, 1960, 1977; with *quīn*,  
     1986; with acc. and infin., 2203; with  
     acc. of gerundive construction or gerund,  
     2252.  
**Hipponactean verse**,  
     2597-2600, 2639-2641; strophe, in  
     Horace, 2721.  
**Hiring**,  
     verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl.,  
     1388-1392.  
**Historical**,  
     perf., 1602-1604, see **Perfect**; infin.,  
     see **Intimation**; pres., see **Vivid**  
     **narration**.  
**Hope**,  
     expressions of, with *sī*, *sī fōrte*,  
     1777; with acc. and infin., 2186; with  
     pres. infin., 2186.  
**Horace**,  
     lyric metres of, 2718-2737, 2739.  
**Hortatory**,  
     see **Desire**.  
**Hostility**,  
     words of, with gen., 1203.  
**Hypothesis**,  
     expressed by abl. abs., 1367; ex-  
     pressed by partic., 2295; variation of  
     prot., 2109-2111.  
**Hypermetrical verse**, 2568.  
**Iambelegus**, 2678, 2679.  
**Iambic**,  
     words, last syllable of, shortened in  
     verse, 61; shortening, law of, 2470-  
     2472; rhythms, 2581-2627; trimeter  
     (senarius), 2583-2596; choliambus,  
     2597-2600; trimeter catalectic, 2601-  
     2603; tetrameter acatalectic, 2604-2609;  
     septenarius, 2610-2616; dimeter acata-  
     lectic, 2617-2620; dimeter catalectic,  
     2621-2623; acatalectic dipody and cata-  
     lectic tripody, 2624; versus Reizianus,  
     2625, 2626; trimeter, in Horace, 2719;  
     strophe, in Horace, 2720.  
**Iambus**, 2521.  
**Ictus**,  
     2511; in combination with word  
     accent, 2548.  
**Identity**,  
     pron. of, decl. of, 676-678; use of,  
     2371-2373; see *īdem*.  
**Illative**,  
     words, use of, 2133, 2154-2158.  
**Illustrations**,  
     *ut* in, 1941; introduced by *nam*,  
     2155.  
**Imparisyllables**,  
     defined, 469; decl. of, cons. stems,  
     471-512; -i- stems, 529-569; gender  
     of, 571-584.  
**Imperative**,  
     with short final vowel, 61; tense of,  
     716, 1575; of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, 96,  
     846; of compounds of *dūcō*, 846; ac-  
     cent of compounds of *dīc.* *dūc.* 173;  
     endings of, 297, 731; in -d, 748; forma-  
     tion of, 844-846; perf., 879, 813; sing.,  
     of more than one, 1075; with *quīn*,  
     1527; in commands, 1571-1580; ac-  
     companied by *amābō*, *age*, *sānē*, &c.,  
     1572, 1573, 1992; in protasis of con-  
     ditional sentence, 1574, 2032, 2038,  
     2056, 2063; use of third person and  
     longer forms, 1575-1578; the fut.,  
     1575; *fac*, *fac ut*, *cūrā ut*, *vidē*,  
     &c., 1579; periphrastic perf. pass.,  
     1580; in prohibitions, 1581-1586; *nōn*

## Index of Subjects.

### Imperative — *continued.*

used with, 1582; **nōlī**, 1583; **fuge**, **parce**, **mitte**, &c., with infin., 1584; **cavē**, **cavē nē**, **fac nē**, &c., 1585; in laws, treaties, &c., 1575, 1586; asyndeton in, 1641; in coordination, 1574, 1697, 1710-1712, 1787; primary, 1717; sentence, defined, 1025; in ind. disc., 2312.

### Imperfect tense,

indicative, formation of, 847, 848; **-āt**, 68; dat. of possessor with, 1216, 1478; uses of, in simple sentence, 1594-1601, 1495-1497; of action not performed in the past, 1495; of action not performed at present time, 1497; of past action going on, 1594; of past action lasting while something occurs, 1595; of repeated or customary action, 1596; of past action still continued in past, 1597; of action suddenly recognized, 1598; in descriptions and general truths, 1599; in letters and messages, 1601; in conative use, 2302; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1745, 1747, 1760, 2322, 2328; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1733-1735; independent, 1738; with **cum**, 1860, 1861, 1864, 1865; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1918; with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, &c., 1930, 1932, 1933; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1997, 2001, 2002, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2042-2047, 2068; in conditional apod., 2023, 2028, 2044, 2050, 2101, 2102, 2104, 2106.

Subjunctive, formation of, 849, 850; **-ēt**, 68; in wishes, 1544, 1545; in expressions of obligation or necessity, 1552; of action conceivable, 1559, 1560, 1565; of past action, 1545, 1559, 1563, 1565, 1567, 1569; of repeated action, 1730; in subordinate sentence, following secondary, 1747, 1762, 1766, 1771, 2322; referring to fut. time, 1743, 1749, 2324; following primary, 1751, 1753, 2329; following pres. of vivid narration and pres. of quotation, 1752; following perf. definite, 1754; following perf. infin. or perf. partic., 1767; secondary, 1762; with indef. rel. pron. or adv., 1814; with **cum**, 1872, 1873; with **quotiēns**, **quotiēnscumque**, 1887; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1914, 1917, 1919, 1920; with **postea quam**, **postquam**, &c., 1924; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1997, 2002, 2003, 2005, 2007-2009; with **modo**, 2003; in conditional prot. of

### Imperfect tense — *continued.*

indeterminate protases, 2024, 2071, 2089; in conditional prot. of action non-occurrent, 2091, 2092, 2094-2097; in conditional apod. of indeterminate protases, 2024, 2040, 2047, 2051, 2068, 2071, 2073, 2082, 2088, 2089; in conditional apod. of action non-occurrent, 2091, 2092, 2094, 2098; with **quasi**, **tamquam si**, &c., 2120; in conditional apod. of direct discourse, how represented in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

### Impersonal,

verbs, forms of, 815-817; defined, 1034; classified, 815, 816, 1034; in pass., with dat., 1181; used personally, 1181, 1284; of mental distress, with gen., 1283; verbs of trans. use used as, 1479; verbs of intrans. use used as, 724, 763, 1479; with infin. as subj., 2208-2210; use of abl. of perf. partic., 1372; **irī** with supine, 2273; construction, with verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying, 2177-2182; **fruendum**, **fungendum**, &c., 2244; of other gerundives, 2180, 2246, 2247.

### Imprecation,

expressed by imper., 1571; in verse, 2549.

### Inceptives,

defective, 808; formation of, 834; the, 927, 939, 965, 968, 976, 980, 984; meaning of perf. of, 1607; quantity of vowel preceding **-scō**, 2462.

### Inchoatives,

see Inceptives.

### Incomplete action,

expressed by gerundive construction, 2240; expressed by perf. partic., 2280; see **Continued**.

### Indeclinable,

adjs., 431, 637, 642; **centum**, 637; see **Defective**.

### Indefinite,

advs., 711; prons., decl. and list of, 658, 659, 681-694; adj. and subst. forms of, 686; abl., **quī**, **quicum**, 689; table of correlative prons., 695; questions introduced by **ecquis**, &c., 1509; **nesciō quis**, **nesciō unde**, **sciō ut**, &c., 1788, 1789; rel. prons. and advs., followed by indic., 1814; use of, 2388-2403, see **quis**, &c.

Use of 2nd pers. sing., in commands and prohibitions, 1550, 1551; of action conceivable, 1556, 1558, 1559; of re-



## Index of Subjects.

### Indefinite — *continued.*

peated action, 1730; in **cum** sentences, 1859, 1860; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1912; with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, &c., 1924; with **sive . . . sive**, 2019; in conditional sentences, 2070.

Antecedent, omitted, 1799; **multi**, **quidam**, &c., used with **sunt qui**, &c., 1822; abl. **qui** used with **quippe**, **ut**, 1828; adv., **quamquam**, 1899; adv., **quamvis**, 1903; adv., **quamlibet**, 1907; use of **ut quisque**, 1939; use of **quō quisque**, 1973; adv., **quandō**, 2010; time, with **quandō**, 2011; time, denoted by impf. subjv. of action non-occurrent, 2091; subj., of infin., not expressed, 2212; expressed, 2212; unexpressed, with pred. noun in acc., 2213; in 1st pers. plur. and 2nd pers. sing., omitted, 1030.

### Independent,

time, of subordinate sentence, 1738, 1744.

### Indeterminate,

meaning, verbs of, 1035; with pred. nom., forming pred., 1035; rel. agreeing with pred. subst., 1806; period, defined, 2024; protases, defined, 2023; treated, 2025-2090, see **Conditional**; in pres. or perf. subjv. in ind. disc. after secondary, 2328; apodoses to, in ind. disc., 2330.

### Indicative mood,

tenses of, 716; how translated, 717.

Formation of tenses of, pres., 828-840; impf., 847, 848; perf., 854-875; stem without suffix, 858-866; stem in **-s-**, 867, 868; stem in **-v-** or **-u-**, 869-875; fut., 851-853; plup., 880; fut. perf., 882-884; short or old forms, 885-893.

Uses of, in declarations, 1493; the neg. of, 1494; in verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, &c., 1495-1497; in questions and exclamations, 1499-1533, see **Questions**; use of tenses in simple sentence, 1587-1633, see **Present**, &c.; in subordinate sentence, 1732-1739; tenses of, sequence after, 1717, 1746-1761; general rule for indic. in subordinate sentence, 1721; in ind. disc., 1729, 2318; with **sī**, **sī forte**, 1777; with **nesciō quis**, &c., 1788, 1789; with **mīrum quantum**, &c., 1790; in rel. sentence equivalent to conditional prot., 1812; in rel. sentence of simple declara-

### Indicative mood — *continued.*

tion or description, 1813; in rel. sentence introduced by indef. pron. or adv., 1814; with **sunt qui**, &c., 1823; with **qui tamen**, 1825; in rel. sentence resembling causal sentence, 1826; with **quippe qui**, **ut qui**, **ut pote qui**, 1827; with **quippe qui** (adv.), **ut qui**, 1828; **quod attinet ad**, &c., 1830; with **quod**, **quia**, 1838-1858; with **cum**, 1859-1871, 1873-1876, 1881; with **quoniam**, 1882-1884; with **quotiēns**, **quotiēnscumque**, 1885, 1886; with **quam**, 1888-1895; with **quantum**, **ut**, 1892; with **quamquam**, 1899, 1900; with **quamvis**, 1905, 1906; with **tamquam**, 1908; with **quemadmodum**, 1908; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1911-1921; with **pridīe quam**, **postridīe quam**, 1922; with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, **cum primum**, 1923-1934; with **utī**, **ut**, 1935-1946; with **ubi**, 1971; with **quō**, **qui**, 1972, 1973, 1976; with **quantō**, 1973; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1991-2009; with **quandō**, 2010-2014; in conditional periods of indeterminate protases, 2023, 2025-2071, 2074, 2078-2081, 2086, 2087, 2090; in conditional periods of action non-occurrent, 2092, 2097, 2100-2108, 2112-2114; with **etsī**, **tametsī**, **tamenetsī**, **etiamsī**, **sī**, 2116.

### Indirect compound,

defined, 377, see **Composition**.

### Indirect discourse,

defined, 1723, 2309; verbs introducing, 1724, 2309; with main verb not expressed, 1725, 2310, 2319; verb of saying, introduced by **qui**, **quod**, **cum**, put illogically in subjv., 1727, 2320; subjv. of attraction, 1728; sequence of tenses in, 1770-1772; in **quod** sentences, 1838, 2319; in **quia** sentences, 2319; in **quoniam** sentences, 1882-1884; in **quamquam** sentences, 1901; in **tamquam** sentences, 1909; in **antequam**, **priusquam** sentences, 1916, 1919, 1921; in sentences with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, &c., 1924; with **nōn dubitō**, 1987; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1994, 1995, 2005, 2007, 2008; in sentences with **quandō**, 2010; fut. perf. of main sentence how represented in, 2234; mood of main sentence in, 2312-2314; declarative sentences in,



## Index of Subjects.

### Indirect discourse — *continued.*

2312; imper. sentences in, 2312; interrogative sentences in, 2312; rhetorical questions in, 2313; original subjv. questions in, 2314; mood of subordinate sentences in, 1722-1729, 2315-2320; indic. in, 1729, 1995, 2318; rel. sentence equivalent to main sentence in acc. with infin., 2316; sentences introduced by conjunctive particles in acc. with infin., 2317; tense of infin. in, 2321; tense of subjv. in, 2322-2324; fut. and fut. perf. of subordinate sentence how represented in, 2324; use of prons. in, 2325, 2341, 2342; conditional protases in, 2326-2329; conditional apodoses in, 2330-2334; see **Infinitive**.

**Indirect object,**  
see **Complement.**

**Indirect question,**  
see **Questions.**

**Inducing,**  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1172;  
with purpose clause, 1951.

**Infinitive,**  
in -e, -ē, 59, 65; gender of, 412; the infinitives, verbal nouns, 732, 2160-2163; fut. act. and pass. and perf. pass., 732, 898, 2273; short or old forms of, 885-893; the fut. perf., 887; formation of, 894-898; pass. in -ier, 897.

Use of, treated, 2160-2236; origin and character of, 2160-2163; old and poetical use of, 2164-2166; of purpose, 2164, 2165; with adjs., 2166; ordinary use of, 2167-2215; the complementary, 2168-2171, 2223, 1953; acc. with, 2172-2203; acc. with, origin of construction of, 1134, 2172, 2173; with verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying, 2175-2184, 2219, 2226; with verbs of accusing, 2185; with verbs of hoping, promising, threatening, 2186; with verbs of emotion, 2187, 2188, 2184; with verbs of desire, 2189-2192, 2228; with verbs of resolving, 2191; with verbs of demanding, 2194; with **suādeō**, **persuādeō**, **precor**, 2195; with verbs of accomplishing, 2196; with verbs of teaching and training, 2197; with verbs of bidding, forbidding, allowing, 2198-2202; with verbs of hindering, 2203, 1960; as subst. acc., 2204-2206; as subj., 2207-2215; of exclamation, 2216; use of pres., 2218-2222, 2236; use of perf.,

### Infinitive — *continued.*

2218, 2220, 2223-2231; use of fut., 2218, 2232-2236; fut. pass., use of, 2273; with verbs signifying *represent*, 2299; in declarative sentences in ind. disc., 2312; in rhetorical questions in ind. disc., 2313; in rel. sentences equivalent to main sentences in ind. disc., 2316; in conjunctive particle sentences in ind. disc., 2317; force of tenses in ind. disc., 2321; use of tenses in conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2330-2334; use of reflexive pron. in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; partic. in agreement with, 1373; act. and pass., with forms of **coepi** and **dēsinō**, 1483; with forms of **possum**, **queō**, **nequeō**, 1484; with **nōli**, **fuge**, **parce**, **mitte**, &c., 1583, 1584; of intimation, 1534-1539; used interrogatively, 1538; after **cum**, **ubi**, **ut**, **postquam**, 1539, 1868, 1869, 1924; after **dōnec**, 2009; sequence after, 1717, 1766-1769; with **dignus**, **indignus**, **idōneus**, **aptus**, 1819; with **quam**, 1898; with verbs of fearing, 1959; with **sequitur**, **efficitur**, 1965; with **nōn dubitō**, 1987.

### Inflection,

defined, 397; of the noun, 398-712, see **Gender, Number, Case, Declension**; of the verb, 713-1022, see **Conjugation, Formation, Verbs.**

### Influence,

abl. of, 1316-1319; otherwise expressed, 1317; see **Inducing.**

### Initial,

disappearance, of vowel, 92; of cons., 123-125.

### Injuring,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

### Inscriptions,

cons. **i**, how represented in, 22; **i longa** in, 22, 29; long vowel, how represented in, 28-30; the apex in, 30; **ou** in, 82; **ai** in, 84; **ē** in, 85; **oi**, **oe**, **ei** in, 87, 88; final **m** dropped in, 140, 443, 465, 564; final **s** dropped in, 465, 507, 564, 593; ablatives in -**ād**, -**ōd**, -**īd**, -**ūd**, in, 426, 443, 465, 507, 593; case forms of -**ā**- decl. in, 443; of -**o**- decl. in, 465; of cons. decl. in, 507; of -**i**- decl. in, 564; of -**u**- decl. in, 593; of **ego**, **tū**, **suī** in, 651; of **meus**, **tuus**, **suus** in, 654; of **hic** in, 665; of **ille** in, 668; of **is** in, 674; of

## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Inscriptions — *continued.***

**īdem** in, 678; of **quī**, **quis** in, 690; person endings in, 729; form of **sum** in, 748; form of **possum** in, 753; forms of **eō** in, 764, 765; form of **tulī** in, 781; fut. perf. in, 884, 888; perf. subjv. in, 877, 887; pass. infin. in, 897, 965; use of nom. in, 1114.

### **Instrument.**

suffixes denoting, 238-245, 213, 224; abl. of, 1377-1384, 1476, 1477.

### **Instrumental case,**

meaning of, 1300; uses of, 1356-1399, see **Ablative**.

### **Intensive,**

verbs, definition and formation of, 371-374; pron., decl. of, 656, 657, 679, 680; use of, 2374-2384; see **ipse**.

### **Intention,**

dat. of, 1223-1225.

### **Interest,**

dat. of, 1205-1210; expressed by emotional dat., 1211.

### **Interjections,**

defined, 14; used with nom., 1117, 1123; used with voc., 1123; used with dat., 1206; used with acc., 1149, 1150; used with gen., 1295; hiatus after, 2475; monosyllabic, not elided, 2484.

### **Intermediate,**

coordinate sentence, treated, 1693-1713.

### **Interrogations,**

neg. adv. in, 1443; as apod. in **tam . . . quam** sentences, 1889.

### **Interrogative adverbs, 711, 1526.**

### **Interrogative implication,**

infin. of intimation with, 1538.

### **Interrogative pronouns,**

decl. of, 658, 659, 681-694; adj. and subst. forms of, 683-685; use of, in simple sentences, 1526-1533, 1787-1791; in subjv. questions, 1563-1570; in indirect question, 1785, 1786; **quid tibi hanc cūratiōst rem**, 1136: of kindred meaning with verb, 1144, 1840, 1851; with verbs of intrans. use, 1183-1186; with emotional dat., 1211; with **rēfert**, **interest**, 1276-1279; rel. developed from, 1795, 1808; difference between **uter** and **quis**, **quī**, 2385; difference between **quis**, **quid**, and **quī**, **quod**, 2386.

### **Interrogative sentences,**

defined, 1025; **quisquam** and **ūllus** in, 2402; see **Questions**.

### **Interrogative subjunctive,**

1563-1569; in subordinate sentence, 1731; in indirect question, 1786.

### **Intimation,**

infin. of, 1534-1539, 1717, 1868, 1869, 1924, 2009.

### **Intransitive use,**

verbs of, used impersonally in pass., 724, 1479; verbs of trans. use used as, 1133; used transitively, 1137, 1139, 1191; with dat., 1181-1191, 1205; use of gerundive of, 2246.

### **Ionic,**

rhythms, 2708-2717; **ā māiōre**, 2708-2713; **ā minōre**, 2708, 2709, 2714-2717; system, in Horace, 2737.

### **Ionic ā māiōre,**

defined, 2521; see **Ionic**.

### **Ionic ā minōre,**

defined, 2521; see **Ionic**.

### **Irrational syllables and feet,**

2524.

### **Irregular,**

verbs, defined, 743; conjugated, 744-781, see **Conjugation**.

### **Islands,**

names of, in acc., with expressions of motion, 1157, 1158; constructions with, to denote place from which, 1307-1310; constructions with, to denote place in or at which, 1331-1336, 1342, 1343; rel. advs., **ubī**, **quō**, **unde**, referring to, 1793.

### **Iterative,**

see **Frequentative**.

### **Ithyphallic verse, 2647.**

### **Joy,**

verbs of, with **quod**, **quia**, 1851; with **cum**, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184.

### **Judicial,**

verbs, with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282; with gen. of gerundive construction, 2264.

### **Keeping,**

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with pred. abl., 1363.

### **Kindred,**

derivation, acc. of, 1140, 1173; meaning, acc. of, 1141.

### **Know how,**

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.



## Index of Subjects.

### Knowing,

verbs of, coordinated, 1696; with indirect question, 1774; with acc. and infin., 2175; time of infin. with, 2219, 2226; adjs. meaning, gen. with, 1263, 1264.

### Known,

adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200.

### Labials,

53, 54; labial mute stems, decl. of, 479, 480.

### Labiodental, 53, 54.

### Lacking,

adjs. of, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1306; verbs of, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1293, 1302-1306.

### Lamentation,

expressed by infin., 2216.

### Laws,

duim, &c. in, 756; forms of perf. subjv. and fut. perf. in, 887; infin. in -ier in, 897; imper. in, 1575, 1586; use of -que in, 1649; use of ast in, 1685; extrā quam in, 1894; quō of purpose in, 1974; quādoque in, 2012, 2014.

### Learn,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

### Leaving,

verbs of, infin. of purpose with, 2165.

### Legal,

see Laws.

### Lengthening,

of vowels, 55, 56; by compensation, 55; in gen. plur., 56, 462.

### Letters,

tenses in, 1601, 1616; of alphabet, see Alphabet.

### Letting,

verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl., 1388-1392.

### Like,

adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200.

### Linguals,

53, 54; lingual mute stems, decl. of, 474-478.

### Loathing,

verbs of, with gen., 1286.

### Local sentences, 1716.

### Locative case,

defined, 420; in what words used, 420; form of, in -ā- stems, 438, 443; in -o- stems, 457, 460; in cons. stems, 504; in -i- stems, 554; in -u- stems,

### Locative case — continued.

594; of hīc, 665; of quī, quis, 689; used as adv., 708, 709, 1340; meaning of, 1299; uses of, 1331-1355; attached to subst., 1301, 1331; in dates, 1307, 1331; of names of towns and islands, 1331-1335; meaning near, 1331; with attribute, 1332, 1333; of names of countries, 1336; domī, rūri, humī, orbī, 1337; bellī, militiae, 1338; of other appellatives, 1339; joined with loc. adv., 1340; denoting time when, 1341; as abl., 1342-1355, see Ablative; quīn, use of, 1980-1990; sī, 2015.

### Logaoedic rhythms, 2650-2674.

### Main,

sentences, in ind. disc., mood of, 2312-2314.

### Making,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with pred. abl., 1363.

### Manner,

expressed by neut. acc. of adj., 1142; abl. of, 1358-1361; expressed by abl. abs., 1367; denoted by advs., 700, 704, 710, 1438; denoted by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266; expressed by partic., 2295.

### Masculine,

gender, general rules for, 405, 406; for cons. and -i- stems, 571-576; caesura, 2557.

### Mastery,

verbs of, with gen., 1292; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380.

### Material,

substs., defined, 6; substs., plur. of, 416, 1108; adj. suffixes denoting, 299-301; abl. of, 1312-1315, 1426; expressed by gen., 1232; expressed by adj., 1427.

### Maxims,

imper. in, 1575, 1586.

### Means,

suffixes denoting, 238-245, 213, 224; expressed by abl. abs., 1367; abl. of, 1377-1384; expressed by cum, 1874; expressed by quod, quia, 1850; expressed by quī, 1826; expressed by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266; expressed by partic., 2295.

### Measure,

abl. of, 1388-1392; expressed by gen., 1255; unit of, defined, 2515.



## Index of Subjects.

**Medial**,  
disappearance, of vowel, 93-95; of  
cons., 126-138.

**Meditative**,  
verbs, definition and formation of,  
375; the, 970.

**Meeting**,  
verbs of, case with, 1181-1185.

**Memory**,  
adjs. of, with gen., 1263; verbs of,  
with gen., 1287-1291; with acc., 1288,  
1291; with **de** and abl., 1289, 1291.

**Mental distress**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1283-1286.

**Metre**, 2512.

**Middle**,  
see **Reflexive**.

**Military**,  
expressions, dat. in, 1223, 1225; abl.  
in, 1356.

**Mobile**,  
nouns, defined, 409; substs., agree-  
ment of, 1078.

**Modal sentences**, 1716.

**Modesty**,  
plur. of, 1074.

**Molossus**, 2522.

**Monometer**,  
defined, 2536; trochaic, 2649.

**Monopody**, 2531.

**Monosyllables**,  
defective in case, 430; quantity of,  
2430-2433; rarely elided, 2484, 2485,  
2487, 2494, 2495.

**Months**,  
names of, adjs., 627; decl. of, 627.

**Moods**,  
names of, 715; subjv. in simple sen-  
tence, syntax of, 1540-1570, see **Sub-  
junctive**; imper., uses of, 1571-1586,  
see **Imperative**; indic. in simple  
sentence, syntax of, 1493-1533, see **In-  
dicative**; of subordinate sentence,  
1720-1731; indic. in subordinate sen-  
tence, general rule, 1721; indic. in sub-  
ordinate sentence, in ind. disc., 1729,  
2318; subjv. of repeated action in  
subordinate sentence, 1730; subjv. of  
wish, action conceivable, interrogation  
in subordinate sentence, 1731; subjv.  
in indirect question, 1773-1786; moods  
in rel. sentence, 1812-1830; use of  
moods in ind. disc. and subjv. of attrac-  
tion, 1722-1729, 2312-2320; see **quod**,  
**cum**, &c.

**Mora**, 2515.

**Motion**,  
aim of, denoted by acc., 1157-1166;  
end of, denoted by dat., 1210; from,  
how expressed, 1307-1311; abl. of route  
taken with verbs of, 1376; verbs of,  
with **in** and **sub** and acc., 1423; with  
**in** and **sub** and abl., 1424; with infin.  
of purpose, 2164; with supine in **-um**,  
1166, 2270.

**Motive**,  
abl. of, 1316-1319; expressed by abl.  
abs., 1367, 1317; otherwise expressed,  
1317; introduced by **quod**, 1853; ex-  
pressed by **tamquam**, 1909.

**Mountains**,  
names of, gender, 405, 406.

**Multiplicatives**, 2423.

**Mutes**,  
51, 54; mute stems, decl. of, 471-  
480, see **Declension**.

**Names**,  
of characters of alphabet, 16; proper,  
defined, 5; plur. of, 416, 1105; form of  
gen. and voc. of, in **-o-** decl., 172, 457,  
459; with accent on final syllable, 173;  
ending in **-āius**, **-ēius**, **-ōius**, de-  
clensional forms of, 458; with attribute  
attached, 1044; see **Greek**; common,  
defined, 5; of males, gender of, 405; of  
females, gender of, 407.

**Naming**,  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167;  
with indef. subj., 1033.

**Narration**,  
vivid, pres. of, 1590; asyndeton in,  
1639; see **Present**.

**Nasals**, 54.

**Near**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200-  
1203.

**Necessary**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200-  
1203.

**Necessity**,  
verbal expressions of, in conditional  
periods, 2074, 2101; verbal expressions  
of, subjv. coordinated with, 1709; verbal  
expressions of, in indic., 1495-1497;  
expressed by subjv., 1552.

**Need**,  
adjs. of, with gen., 1263; verbs mean-  
ing, with abl., 1302-1306; with gen.,  
1293.

# Index of Subjects.

## Negative,

adv., general use of, 1443-1453; with wishes, 1540; with exhortations, prohibitions, &c., 1547; two in one sentence, 1452, 1453, 1660, 1661; **nōn**, with subjv. of action conceivable, 1554; **nē**, **nōn**, in subjv. questions, 1563, 1566; **nē**, **nēve**, **neque**, **nōn**, **nēmō**, with imper., 1581, 1582, 1586; conjs., use of, 1657-1661, 2141-2144; combination of, with affirm. conjs., 1665; **nē** in coordinated subjv., 1706; **necne** and **an nōn** in indirect questions, 1778; meaning of **haud sciō an**, &c., 1782; **ut nē**, **nē**, **ut nōn**, &c., of purpose and result, 1947; in conditional prot., 2020, 2021; **nōn**, position of, in conditional sentences, 2067; apod. in **tam . . . quam** sentences, 1889; implied by perf., 1610; answer, expected with **-ne**, **-n**, 1504; expected with **nōnne**, 1506; expected with **num**, 1507; how expressed, 1513; sentence, **quīvis**, **quīlibet**, **utervīs**, **uterlibet** in, 2401; sentence, **quisquam** in, 2402.

## Neglect,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

## Neuter,

gender, defined, 402; general rule for, 412; for cons. and **-i-** stems, 582-584; nom. and acc. plur., form of, 423; in **-ā**, 59, 65, 461; of **-u-** stems, 586; of adjs., as substs., use of, 1093, 1101, 1106, 1250; acc., of pron., with verbal expressions, 1144; word, with partitive gen., 1247; adjs., in gen. with verbs of valuing, 1271; use of gerundive in, 2180, 2244, 2246, 2247.

## Nine-syllabled Alcaic, 2642.

## Nominative case,

defined, 419; sing., of gender nouns, how formed, 422, 448, 495, 587, 598; sing., of nouns with stems in **-ā-**, **-l-**, **-n-**, **-r-**, **-s-**, how formed, 422, 434, 496-500; sing., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423, 448, 496; plur., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423; lacking, see **Defective**; of compar., in **-us**, **-ūs**, 59, 67; in **-a**, **-ā**, 59, 65; in **-or**, **-ōr**, 59, 66; ending in **d**, 143.

**-ā-** stems, with long final vowel, 65, 436, 445; in **-ās**, 436; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444, 445.

**-o-** stems, in **-os** and **-us**, 452; in **-us**, **-er**, **-r**, 453, 454, 613-617;

## Nominative case — continued.

in **-ei**, **-eīs**, **-īs**, 461, 465; in **-āī**, **-ēī**, **-ōī**, 458; neut. plur., in **-ā**, 65, 461; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, sing., how formed, 495-500; plur., in **-īs**, 505, 507; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

**-i-** stems, sing., how formed, 540-546; plur., in **-ēs**, **-īs**, **-eis**, **-ia**, **-iā**, 562, 564; inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

**-u-** stems, inscriptional forms, 593.

Pronouns, without case ending, 645; peculiar and inscriptional forms, of **tuus**, **meus**, **suus**, 653; of **hic**, 663-665; of **ille**, **iste**, 667, 668; of **illic**, **istic**, 670; of **is**, 673, 674; of **idem**, 677, 678; of **ipse**, 680; of **quī**, **quis**, 688, 690; **alis**, **alid**, for **alius**, **aliud**, 619.

Uses of, 1113-1123; subj. of verb, 1113, 1027; general, 1113; as subj., in titles, &c., 1114-1116; in exclamations, 1117; as case of address, 1118-1123; combined with voc., 1121; with **mihi est nōmen**, &c., 1213, 1214; pred., instead of dat., 1221, 1224; with **opus est**, 1383; as subj. of infin., 1535; accompanying imper., 1571; pred. noun with infin. in, 2184; pred., see **Predicate**; of gerundive construction, 2243-2249, 2251.

## Non-occurrent,

action, tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753, 2329; protases of, defined, 2024; treated, 2091-2118, see **Conditional**; apodoses of, in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

## Notation, 2406-2411.

## Nouns,

defined, 3-8; endings of, with shortened vowel, 59, 61; with long vowel retained, 65-67; formation of, 180-203; roots and stems, 183-198; without formative suffix, 195, 198, 199; with formative suffix, 195-198, 200-203; suffixes of, 204-364, see **Formation**; compound, formation and meaning of, 379-390; gender nouns, defined, 398, 402; mobile, defined, 409; epicenes, 411; of common gender, 410; inflection of, 398-712, see **Gender, Number, Case, Declension**; with two forms of stem, 401, 413, 470, 475, 531, 545, 566-569,



## Index of Subjects.

### Nouns — *continued*.

603; agreement of, 1077-1098, see **Agreement**; use of, 1099-1468, see **Ablative, &c., Substantives, Adjectives**.

### Nouns of the verb,

enumerated, 732; formation of, 894-919, see **Formation**; sequence of tenses following, 1766-1769; uses of, 2160-2299; see **Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, Supine, Participles**.

### Number,

in nouns, defined, 414; in verbs, defined, 722; dual forms, 415; nouns defective in, see **Defective**; sing. and plur., with different meaning, 418, 480; agreement of verb in, 1062-1076; agreement of subst. in, 1077-1081; agreement of adj. and partic. in, 1082-1098; agreement of rel. pron. in, 1082-1098, 1801-1811, see **Relative**; agreement of demonstrative and determinative prons. in, 1082-1098, see **Demonstrative, Determinative**; sing., in collective sense, 1099; sing., of a class, 1100; sing., of neut. adjs. used as substs., 1101, 1093, 1250; plur., of a class, 1104; plur., of proper names, 1105, 416; plur., of neut. adjs. used as substs., 1106; plur., of names of countries, 1107; plur., of material substs., 1108, 416; plur., of abstracts, 1109, 416; plur., in generalizations and in poetry, 1110; denoted by gen. of quality, 1239; denoted by advs., 1438.

### Numeral adjectives,

decl. of, 637-643; agreeing with a rel., 1810; kinds of, 2404; table of, 2405; see **Numerals**.

### Numeral adverbs,

2404; table of, 2405; forms in **-iēns, -iēs**, 2414.

### Numerals,

cardinals, decl. of, 637-642, 431; ordinals and distributives, decl. of, 643; kinds of, 2404; table of, 2405; notation, 2406-2411; some forms of, 2412-2418; some uses of cardinals and ordinals, 2419; some uses of distributives, 2420-2422; multiplicatives, proportionals, and adjs. derived from numerals, 2423; fractions, 2424-2428; see **Numeral Adjectives, Cardinal numerals, Ordinal, Distributive**.

**Numeri Italici**, 2549.

### Obeying,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

### Object,

of a subst., defined, 1046; of a verb, direct, becomes nom. in pass., 1125; constructions of, 1132-1150, 1167-1174, see **Accusative**; subordinate sentence as, 1715; expressed by sentence with **quod**, 1845; complementary clause as, 1948; infin. as, 2167-2206, see **Infinitive**; of gerundive, 2247; of gerund, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265; indirect, see **Complement**.

### Objective,

compounds, defined, 384; gen., 1260-1262; gen., **nostrī, vestrī** used as, 2335.

### Obligation,

expressions of, in indic. with infin., 1495-1497; expressed by subjv., 1552; expressed by gerundive, 2243, 2248.

### Obligatory,

use of verb, 2306.

### Oblique cases, 419.

### Octōnārius,

defined, 2536; iambic, 2604-2609; trochaic, 2636-2638; anapaestic, 2684, 2685.

### Office,

suffixes denoting, 216, 235; titles of, with gerundive construction, 2254.

### Often,

perf. expressing action often or never done, 1611.

### Omission,

of prep., with several substs., 1430; of antecedent of rel., 1798, 1799; of subj. acc. of infin., 2183, 2184.

### Open vowels, 37.

### Optative,

see **Wish**.

### Orātiō Obliqua,

see **Indirect Discourse**.

### Order,

see **Command**.

### Ordinal,

numerals, decl. of, 643; in acc., to express time, 1155; with **post** and **ante** in expressions of time, 1394-1397; list of, 2404, 2405; in dates, 2419; some forms of, 2412-2418; with subst. not used in sing., 2419; **quisque** with, 2397.



## Index of Subjects.

### Origin,

adj. suffixes implying, 298, 302-330;  
gen. of, 1232-1238; expressed by abl.,  
1312-1315, 1309, 1426; expressed by  
adj., 1427.

### Ought,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

### Owner,

gen. of, 1232-1238.

### Paeon, 2521, 2522.

### Palatal, 53, 54.

### Palimbacchius, 2522.

### Pardoning,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

### Parentage,

denoted by abl., 1312.

### Parentheses,

asyndeton in, 1642; introduced by  
**nam**, **et**, &c., 1642; **quod sciam**,  
**quī quidem**, 1829; with **ut**, **sicut**,  
**prout**, 1905, 1940, 1942, 2017; ex-  
pressed by purpose clause with **ut**, **nē**,  
1962; **sī placet**, &c., 2113.

### Parisyllables,

defined, 515; decl. of, 517-528, 540-  
569, see **Declension**; gender of, 577-  
579.

### Paroemiac, 2688, 2689.

### Part concerned,

acc. of, 1147.

### Participation,

adjs. of, with gen., 1263, 1264; verbs  
of, with gen., 1292.

### Participles,

defined, 732, 2278; suffix, **-nus**, 296,  
316-322; in **-mino-**, 297; agreement  
of, 1082-1093, see **Agreement**; in  
dat., to denote person viewing or judg-  
ing, 1217; cause or motive expressed  
by, 1317; question with, 1533; rel. sen-  
tence coordinated with, 1820; **quam-**  
**quam** with, 1900; **quamlibet** with,  
1907; **quamvis**, with, 1907; intimat-  
ing condition, 2110; **quasi**, **tam-**  
**quam**, **ut**, **velut** with, 2121; with  
gerundive construction, 2254; uses of,  
treated, 2278-2299; character of, 2278;  
time of, 2279-2281; the attributive,  
2282-2286; expressing permanent con-  
dition, 2282; compared, &c., 2284; the  
subst., 2287-2292; the appositive, 2293-  
2296; representing rel. sentence, 2294;  
expressing time, means, &c., 2295; the  
predicative, 2297-2299.

### Participles — continued.

Present, stem of, 543, 632; abl. sing.  
of, 560, 633; decl. of, 632, 633; gen.  
plur. of, in **-um**, 563; of **sum**, 749;  
formation of, 901-903; with gen., 1266;  
in abl. abs., 1362; in reflexive sense,  
1482; with verbs signifying *represent*  
and verbs of senses, 2298, 2299.

Perfect, formation of, 906-919; lack-  
ing, 811, 905, 907, 922-1019; advs. from,  
704, 1372; dat. of possessor with, 1216,  
1478; of origin, with abl., 1312; in abl.  
abs., 1362, 1364; of deponents, 907, 1364,  
1492, 2280; abl. neut. of, used imper-  
sonally, 1372; agreeing with sentence or  
infin., 1373; with **ūsus est** and **opus**  
**est**, 1382; used as subst., 1440; with  
act. meaning, 1485; with **fuī**, **fueram**,  
**fuerō**, 1609; sequence after, 1766,  
1767; of contemporaneous action, 2280;  
translated as abstract, 2285, 2286; with  
**habeō**, **faciō**, **dō**, &c., 1606, 2297;  
quantity of penult vowel in disyllabics,  
2434-2436.

Future, formation of, 904, 905; with  
**sum**, 802, 803; with **sum**, use of,  
1633, 1737, 1742, 1746, 1747; use of,  
in conditional sentences, 2074, 2081,  
2087, 2092, 2993, 2097, 2100, 2108;  
in abl. abs., 1362; as adj., 2283.

Perfect active, 907.

### Particles,

interrogative, see **Interrogative**;  
exclamatory, see **Questions**; of  
wishes, 1540; conjunctive particle sen-  
tence, 1838-2122, see **Conjunctive**.

### Partitive,

gen., 1241-1254; **nostrū**, **vestrū**  
used as, 2335.

### Parts,

of speech, 2-15; prin., of verbs, 733-  
735; prin., classification of verbs accord-  
ing to, 920-1022, see **Verbs**.

### Passive voice,

defined, 723, 1472; of verbs of intrans.  
use, 724, 763, 1479; nom. of, for acc. of  
act., 1125, 1473; of compound verbs,  
with acc., 1138; of verbs of feeling,  
commonly intransitive, 1139; two ac-  
cusatives of the act. in, 1167-1171,  
1474; act. of a different verb serving  
as, 1471; defining acc. or acc. of extent  
or duration made subj. in, 1475; verbs  
of trans. use used impersonally in, 1479;  
the doer of the action how expressed  
with, 1318, 1319, 1476-1478, 2181, 2243;  
use of, 1472-1485; complementary dat.

## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Passive voice — *continued.***

of act. made subj. in, 1181, 1480, 2202; with reflexive meaning, 1481, 1487, 1148; of **coepī** and **dēsinō**, 1483; perf. partic. with act. meaning, 1485; deponents with force of, 1487; deponents with meaning of, 1490; perf. partic. of deponents with act. and pass. meaning, 907, 1364, 1492; forms with **fui**, &c., 1609; of verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying, &c., personal and impersonal constructions of, 2177-2182; of **iubeō**, **vetō**, **sinō**, used personally, 2201; with gerundive, 2251; fut. infin., formation and use of, 2273.

### **Patronymics,**

suffixes forming, 279; gen. plur. of, 439.

### **Pauses, 2540.**

### **Penalty,**

denoted by gen., 1282; denoted by abl., 1282.

### **Pentameter,**

defined, 2536; dactylic, 2570-2576.

### **Pentapody,**

defined, 2531; logaoedic, 2664-2668.

### **Penthemimeral caesura, 2544.**

### **Penthemimeris, 2531.**

### **Penult,**

defined, 155; when accented, 171, 172, 176, 177; quantity of, in polysyllables, 2434-2436.

### **Perceiving,**

verbs of, coordinated, 1696; in pres. with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, &c., 1926; with acc. and infin., 2175; time of infin. with, 2219, 2226.

### **Perfect tense,**

indicative, formation of, 854-875; stem without suffix, 858-866; stem in **-s-**, 867, 868; stem in **-v-** or **-u-**, 869-875; short or old forms, 885-893; **-runt** and **-re** in 3rd pers. plur., 727; quantity of vowel preceding **-runt**, **-re**, 856, 857; **-it**, 857, 68; reduplication of, 858-861, 922-932, 989, 995, 1011; quantity of penult vowel in disyllabic perfects, 2434-2436.

Dative of possessor with, 1216, 1478; in simple sentence, uses of, 1602-1613, 1616; definite, defined, 1602; historical, defined, 1602; historical, function of, 1603; historical, for plup., 1604; definite, function of, 1605; definite, expressed by **habeō** and partic., 1606; definite, of inceptives, 1607; definite, denoting pres.

### **Perfect tense — *continued.***

resulting state, 1608; definite, pass. with **fui**, &c., 1609; definite, other uses of, 1610-1616, 2027, 2030; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1761, 2322-2324; 2326-2329; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1733; 1736; independent, 1738; with **cum**, 1860, 1861, 1866, 1867, 1869, 1871; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1912, 1917, 1920; with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, &c., 1925, 1927, 1929, 1930, 1932; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1998, 2001, 2002, 2006, 2007, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2034-2041, 2066-2068; in conditional apod., 2023, 2027, 2035, 2043, 2049, 2053, 2060, 2101, 2103-2105.

Subjunctive, formation of, 876-878; short or old forms, 885-893; in wishes, 1541, 1543; in exhortations, prohibitions, &c., 1549, 1551; of action conceivable, 1557, 1558; with force of fut., 1541, 1549, 1551, 1558; of repeated action, 1730; sequence of, 1764, 1765; in subordinate sentence, following primary, 1746, 1762, 1766, 1771, 2323; following pres. of vivid narration and pres. of quotation, 1752; following perf. definite, 1754; following secondary, in rel., causal, and concessive sentences, 1756; following secondary, in consecutive sentences, 1757; following secondary, in indirect question, 1760; following secondary, in ind. disc., 2328; in sequence with adjacent verb, 1761; of action non-occurrent, in pres. sequence, 1763; in sequence with perf. infin., 1768; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1913, 1916, 1919; with **ut** purpose, 1962; in conditional prot., 2023, 2070, 2072, 2084-2088, 2090; in conditional apod., 2023, 2058, 2073, 2077, 2085, 2090; with **quasi**, **tamquam si**, &c., 2119; in ind. disc. representing a fut. perf., 2324.

Imperative, formation of, 813, 879; pass., 1580.

Infinitive, see **Infinitive**.

Participle, see **Participles**.

### **Periods,**

connection of, 2123-2159.

### **Periphrastic,**

forms of the verb, 802-804; fut. partic. with form of **sum**, 802, 803; fut. partic. with form of **sum**, use of, 1633, 1737, 1742, 1746, 1747; in conditional sentences, 2074, 2081, 2087, 2092, 2093, 2097, 2100, 2108; gerundive with



## Index of Subjects.

### Periphrastic — *continued.*

**sum**, 804, 2101, 2243; circumlocutions for perf. pass., fut. act., fut. pass. infin., 732, 898, 2273; perf. pass. imper., 1580; perf. with **habēō**, 1606, 2297; **fore**, **futūrum esse**, **ut**, 2233; **fore** with perf. partic., 2234; forms in conditional apoduses of action non-occurrent in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

### Permission,

verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1710; verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950; expressed by **quāmvīs**, 1904; expressed by **quāmlibet**, 1907.

### Permissive,

use of verb, 2307.

### Person,

in verbs, defined, 721; in imper., 731; 3rd pers. plur., in indef. sense, 1033; agreement of verb in, 1062; when subjects are of different pers., 1076; when subj. is rel., 1807; use of **nōs** for **ego**, 1074; order of persons, 1076; pers. of **quī**, 1792.

### Personal pronouns,

decl. of, 644-651; possess., 652-655; when used with 1st and 2nd pers., 1029; possess. used instead of gen., 1234, 1262; gen. of, used possessively, 1234; preps. following, 1435; use of **nostrūm**, **vestrūm**, **nostrī**, **vestrī**, 2335; possess. omitted, 2346; possess. meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; **ipse** with, 2376; see **ego**, &c.

### Personal verbs,

impersonal verbs used as, 1181, 1284; verbs of intrans. use used as, in pass., 1181, 1480, 2203; verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying as, in pass., 2177-2182; **iubeō**, **vetō**, **sinō** as, in pass., 2201.

### Person endings,

vowel of, short, 59, 61; vowel of, long, 68; **-mino** in imper., 297, 731; **-minī** in 2nd pers. plur., 297, 730; function of, 713, 721; table of, 726; **-runt** and **-re** in perf., 727; of 1st and 2nd pers., 728; **-ris** and **-re** in 2nd pers. pass., 730; in inscriptions, 729; 3rd pers. plur. **-ont**, **-unt**, 827.

### Persuading,

verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; subjv. coordinated with, 1712.

### Phalaecean, 2664, 2665.

### Pherecratean, 2659.

### Phonetic,

see **Sound**.

### Pity,

see **Mental distress**.

### Place,

subst. suffixes denoting, 266, 228, 241, 242, 245, 249; adj. suffixes denoting, 317, 321, 347; advs. denoting, 708, 709, 1438; expressed by loc., 1331-1341; expressed by loc. abl., 1342-1349; expressed by attributive prepositional phrase, 1426, 1233; expressed by adj., 1427, 1233; expressed by gen., 1427, 1232; from which, advs. denoting, 710; from which, how expressed, 1307-1311; to which, advs. denoting, 710; to which, how expressed, 1157-1166, 1210; rel. advs., **ubī**, **quō**, **unde**, 1793.

### Places,

names of, see **Towns**.

### Plants,

names of, gender, 407, 408, 573.

### Pleasing,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

### Plenty,

see **Fulness**.

### Pluperfect tense,

indicative, formation of, 880; short or old forms, 885-893; dat. with, 1216, 1478; uses of, in simple sentence, 1614-1618, 1607, 1609; of past action completed, 1614; expressing past resulting state, 1615; in letters, 1616; for perf., 1617; of time anterior to past repeated action, 1618; of inceptives, 1607; pass. with **fueram**, &c., 1609; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1745, 1747, 1748, 1755-1760, 2322-2324, 2326-2329; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1733, 1736; independent, 1738; with **cum**, 1860, 1861; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1918; with **postquam**, **ubī**, **ut**, &c., 1928, 1929, 1932, 1933; with **dum**, **dōnec**, 1997, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2048-2051; in conditional apod., 2023, 2029, 2036, 2104, 2107.

Subjunctive, formation of, 881; **-ēt**, 68; short or old forms, 885-893; in wishes, 1544; in expressions of obligation or necessity, 1552; of action conceivable, 1561; of repeated action, 1730; sequence of, 1762, 1763; in subordinate sentence, following secondary, 1747, 1762, 1766, 1771, 2322; following pres. of vivid narration and pres. of quotation, 1752; following primary, 1753, 2329; following perf. definite, 1754;



## Index of Subjects.

### Pluperfect tense — *continued.*

following perf. infin., or perf. partic., 1767; with **cum**, 1872, 1873; with **quotiēns**, **quotiēnscumque**, 1887; with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1914, 1920, 1921; with **postea quam**, **postquam**, &c., 1924; with **dōnec**, 2009; with indef. rel. pron. or adv., 1814; in conditional prot., 2024, 2071, 2089, 2091, 2096, 2098-2107; in conditional apod., 2024, 2041, 2071, 2073, 2083, 2089, 2091, 2095, 2099; with **quasi**, **tamquam si**, &c., 2120; in ind. disc. representing a fut. perf., 2324; in conditional apod. of direct discourse, how represented in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

### Plural number,

in nouns, defined, 414; lacking, see **Defective**; with different meaning from sing., 418, 480; of material substs., 416, 1108; of abstracts, 416, 1109; of proper names, 416, 1105; of names of countries, 1107; in generalizations and in poetry, 1110; adjs. in, used as substs., 1103, 1104, 1106; in substs., in agreement, 1077-1081; in adjs., prons., and partic., in agreement, 1082-1098; in verbs, defined, 722; with sing. and plur. subjects, 1062-1076; of modesty, 1074; of gerundive with **nostrī**, &c., 2261.

### Polysyllables,

quantity of penult in, 2434-2436;  
quantity of final syllable in, 2437-2457.

### Position,

syllables long by, 168; syllable containing vowel before mute or **f** followed by **l** or **r**, 169; final short vowel before word beginning with two consonants or double cons., 2458; final **s** does not always make, 2468; of preps., 1433-1437.

### Positive,

expressing disproportion, 1454; used in comparison of adjs. and advs., 1457, 1458; combined with a compar., 1458; expressed by compar. with abl., 1464; see **Comparison**, **Affirmative**.

### Possession,

adj. suffixes implying, 298, 302-330; expressed by dat., 1207, 1212-1216; expressed by gen., 1232-1238.

### Possessive compounds, 385.

### Possessive pronouns,

decl. of, 652-655; agreement of, 1082-1098; used instead of gen. of personal or reflexive pron., 1234, 1262; with

### Possessive pronouns — *continued.*

word in apposition in gen., 1235; with **rēfert** and **interest**, 1277; gen. of, with infin., 1237, 2208, 2211; implying antecedent to rel., 1807; of reflexive, referring to subj. of verb, 2336; of reflexive, referring to word not subj. of verb, 2337; of reflexive, in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; of reflexive, in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; omitted, 2346; meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; see **meus**, &c.

### Possessor,

dat. of, 1212-1216, 1478, 2181, 2243.

### Possibility,

expressed by subjv., 1554-1562; denoted by gerundive, 2249; verbal expressions of, see **Ability**.

### Postponed,

action, denoted by fut. perf., 1630.

### Postpositive,

words, 1676, 1688; preps., 1433-1436.

### Potential,

use of verb, 2305; see **Action conceivable**.

### Prayer,

**duim**, &c. in, 756; forms of perf. subjv. and fut. perf. in, 887; expressed by imper., 1571; in verse, 2549.

### Predicate,

defined, 1023, 1035; omitted, 1036; enlarged, 1048-1054; pred. subst., verb agreeing with, 1072; agreement of pred. subst., 1077-1081; in oblique case, 1052, 1363; pred. adj., agreement of, 1082-1098; pred. nom., with verb of indeterminate meaning, 1035; with other verbs, 1051; infin. as pred. nom., 2207; noun, in nom. with complementary infin., 2171; in acc., referring to subj. acc. 2174; in nom., with verbs of perceiving, knowing, &c., used in pass., 2177; in nom., with verbs of perceiving, knowing, &c., used in act., 2184; in acc., referring to unexpressed indef. subj. of infin., 2213; in dat., with implied subj. of infin., 2214; in acc., with verbs of making, choosing, naming, &c., 1167, 1168; pred. uses of gen., 1236, 1237, 1239, 1251; pred. use of abl. of quality, 1375; with **ūtor**, 1381; pred. partic. with **ūsus est**, **opus est**, 1382; pred. use of prepositional expressions, 1428; pron. agreeing with pred. subst., 1097, 1806; pred. use of gen. of gerundive construction, 2262-2264; see **Predicative**.

## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Predicative,**

dat., 1219-1225; partic., 2297-2299.

### **Prefixes,**

adv. as verbal, 1402-1409.

### **Prepositions,**

defined, 11, 696, 1402; as proclitics, 178; accent of, when following case, 178; how written in inscriptions and mss., 178; as positive, 357; compounded with nouns or noun stems, 381-383, 385, 390; compounded with verbs, 391, 392; inseparable, 392, 1409; origin of, 696, 1402-1404; function of, 1405; inflected forms of substs. used as, 1406, 1413, 1419, 1420; trace of adverbial use in tmesis, 1407; use as advs. and as preps. discussed, 1412-1416, 1421; used with acc., 1410-1416; used with abl., 1415-1421; used with abl. proper, 1297, 1415, 1419-1421; used with loc. abl., 1299, 1416; used with instrumental abl., 1300; with acc. or abl., 1422-1425, 1415; substs. combined by, 1426-1428; repetition of, with two or more substs., 1429; omission of, with a second subst., 1430; two, with one subst., 1431, 1432; position of, 1433-1437; in oaths, 1437; verbs compounded with, cases after, 1137, 1138, 1188-1191, 1194-1199, 1209; with infin. as obj., 2205; with gerundive construction or gerund in acc., 2252, 2253; in abl., 2267; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286; for special uses of different preps., see Index of Latin Words.

### **Present stems,**

used as roots, 190-194, 855; roots used as, 738-743, 828, 844.

### **Present system,**

of verbs, formation of, 828-853.

### **Present tense,**

indicative, formation of, 828-840; -*īt*, -*āt*, -*ēt*, 68; -*ōr*, 68; dat. of possessor with, 1216, 1478, 2181; uses of, in simple sentence, 1587-1593, 1601; of pres. action, 1587; of customary or repeated action, or general truth, 1588; of past action, still continued, 1589; of vivid narration, 1590, 1639; the annalistic, 1591; of verbs of hearing, seeing, saying, 1592; in quotations, 1592; of fut. action, 1593, 2026; in letters, 1601; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1746, 1749-1753, 2322-2324, 2326-2329; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1733-1735; independent, 1738; with *cum*, 1860-1862, 1866, 1867, 1869, 1871; with

### **Present tense — continued.**

*quoniam*, 1883; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1915, 1918; with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1926, 1927, 1930, 1932; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdīū*, 1995, 2000, 2001, 2006, 2007, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2026-2033, 2065-2068, 2074; in conditional apod., 2023, 2026, 2034, 2042, 2048, 2052, 2059, 2078.

Subjunctive, formation of, 841-843; -*īt*, -*āt*, -*ēt*, 68; -*ār*, 68; in wishes, 1541, 1542; in exhortations, prohibitions, &c., 1548, 1550, 1551; of action conceivable, 1556; of repeated action, 1730; primary, 1762; referring to fut. time, 1743, 1749; following perf. definite, 1754; following secondary in rel., causal, and concessive sentences, 1756; following secondary in consecutive sentences, 1757; following secondary in indirect question, 1760; following secondary in ind. disc., 2328; in sequence with adjacent verb, 1761; of action non-occurrent, in pres. sequence, 1763; in sequence with perf. infin., 1768; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1912, 1915, 1919; with *ut* purpose, 1962; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, 2003, 2005, 2007; with *modo*, 2003; in conditional prot., 2023, 2070, 2072, 2076-2083, 2090, 2093, 2096; in conditional apod., 2023, 2033, 2039, 2046, 2057, 2064, 2070, 2076, 2084, 2090; with *quasi*, *tamquam si*, &c., 2119; in ind. disc. representing a fut., 2324.

Infinitive, see **Infinitive**.

Participle, see **Participles**.

### **Preventing,**

see **Hindering**.

### **Priapean,** 2674.

### **Price,**

gen. of, 1271; abl. of, 1388-1392.

### **Primary tenses,** 1717, 1762.

### **Primitive,**

defined, 198; substs., 204-245, see **Substantives**; adjs., 280-297, 305, see **Adjectives**; verbs, theme in, 738-741; inflection of, 743-791; formation of pres. stem of, 828-838; list of, 922-986, see **Verbs**.

### **Principal cases,** 1111, 1112.

### **Principal parts,**

of the verb, 733-735; classification of verbs according to, 920-1022, see **Verbs**.

### **Privation,**

see **Separation**.



## Index of Subjects.

**Proceleusmatic**, 2521.

**Proclitics**, 178.

**Prohibitions**,

expressed by subjv., 1547-1551; expressed by imper., 1581-1586; expressed by fut., 1624; perf. infin. with *volō*, *nōlō* in, 2224.

**Promise**,

expressed by fut., 1619; implication of, in fut. perf., 1629.

**Promising**,

verbs of, with acc. and infin., 2186; with pres. infin., 2186, 2221, 2236.

**Pronominal**,

see **Pronouns**.

**Pronoun**,

questions, 1526-1530; questions, indirect, 1785.

**Pronouns**,

defined, 9; as proclitics, 178; inflection of, 644-694; personal, 644-651; reflexive, 644-651; possess., 652-655; demonstrative, 656-670; determinative, 656-659, 671-675; of identity, 656-659, 676-678; intensive, 656-659, 679, 680; rel., interrogative, indef., 656-659, 681-694; interrogative, adj. and subst. forms of, 683-685; indef., adj. and subst. forms of, 686; reduplicated, 650; correlative, 695, 1831; advs. from, 696-698, 701, 702, 704-710.

Agreement of, 1093-1098, 1801-1811, see **Agreement**; adj., equivalent to gen., 1098, 1234, 1262; used in neut. acc. with verbal expressions, 1144; as connectives, 2129-2132; use of, in ind. disc., 2325, 2338-2342; use of, 2335-2403; use of personal, 2335; use of reflexive, 2336-2345; use of possess., 2346; use of *hic*, 2347-2355; use of *iste*, 2356, 2357; use of *ille*, 2358-2364; use of *is*, 2365-2370; use of *idem*, 2371-2373; use of *ipse*, 2374-2384; use of *uter*, *quis*, 2385, 2386; use of rel., 1792-1837; use of indef. *quis*, *quī*, 2388, 2389; use of *aliquis*, 2390, 2391; use of *quīdam*, 2392, 2393; use of *quisque*, 2394-2398; use of *uterque*, 2399, 2400; use of *quīvīs*, *quīlibet*, *utervīs*, *uterlibet*, 2401; use of *quisquam*, *ūllus*, 2402; use of *nēmō*, *nihil*, *nūllus*, *neuter*, 2403; place of reciprocal taken by *inter nōs*, &c., *invicem*, &c., 2344, 2345; see **Relative**, &c., *quī*, &c.

**Pronunciation**,

of names of characters of alphabet, 16, 32-38; of vowels, 26, 32-38; of diphthongs, 42, 43; of consonants, 44-49; change of sound of vowels, 55-113, of diphthongs, 80-88; of consonants, 114-154; rules of vowel quantity, 157-167, 2429-2472, see **Quantity**; division of syllables, 155; long and short syllables, 168, 169; of *es*, *est* in combination with other words, 747; see also **Accent**, **Substitution**, **Development**, **Disappearance**, **Assimilation**, **Dissimilation**, **Interchange**, **Lengthening**, **Shortening**, **Weakening**, **Hiatus**, **Contraction**, **Elision**, **Affinities**.

**Proper**,

names, defined, 5; of *-o-* decl., form and accent of voc. and gen. sing. of, 172, 456-459; with accent on final syllable, 173; plur. of, 416, 1105; ending in *-āius*, *-ēius*, *-ōius*, declensional forms of, 458; with attribute attached, 1044; see **Greek**.

**Proportionals**, 2423.

**Propriety**,

verbal expressions of, in indic., 1495-1497; subjv. coordinated with verbal expressions of, 1709; verbal expressions of, in conditional periods, 2074, 2101; expressed by subjv., 1547-1552; expressed by gerundive construction, 2243, 2248.

**Prosody**,

2429-2739; see **Quantity**, **Figures of prosody**, **Versification**.

**Protasis**,

defined, 1061; fut. perf. in, coincident in time with fut. perf. in apod., 1627; concessive, 2116; see **Conditional**, **Relative**, **Conjunctive**.

**Protest**,

introduced by sentence with *quod*, 1842.

**Protestations**,

subjv. in, 1542; fut. in, 1622; *ita . . . ut*, 1542, 1622, 1937.

**Protraction**, 2516.

**Proviso**,

introduced by *ut*, *nē . . . ita*, 1964; by *dum*, 2003; by *modo*, 2003.

**Punishment**,

see **Penalty**.



## Index of Subjects.

### Purpose,

dat. of, 1223-1225; clauses, tense of, after perf. definite, 1754; rel. sentences of, 1817; expressed by *quod*, *id*, 1840; sentences of, with *priusquam*, 1919; sentences of, with *ut*, *nē*, &c., 1947-1964; sentences of, with *quō*, 1974; sentences of, with adv. *quī*, 1976; sentences of, with *dum*, *dōnec*, &c., 2005-2009; infin. of, 2164, 2165; expressed by acc. of gerundive construction, 2250; expressed by dat. of gerundive construction, 2256; expressed by gerundive construction or gerund with *causā*, 2164, 2258, 2270; expressed by gen. of gerundive construction alone, 2263; expressed by gen. of gerund alone, 2263; expressed by acc. of gerundive construction or gerund with *ad*, 2164, 2270; denoted by supine, 1166, 2270; expressed by partic., 2295; use of reflexive pron. in subjv. clauses of, 2341, 2342.

Pyrrhic, 2522.

Pythiambic strophe,  
in Horace, 2722, 2723.

### Quality,

subst. suffixes denoting, 246-264; adj. suffixes denoting, 281-297; gen. of, 1239, 1240; abl. of, 1375.

### Quantitative,

verse, 2548; theory of the Saturnian, 2551.

### Quantity,

of diphthongs, 39, 158; how denoted in inscriptions, 27-30; how denoted in books, 31, 2514; common, definition and sign of, 31, 2514; pronunciation of long and short vowels, 26, 33, 34; change in quantity of vowels and preservation of long quantity, 55-68, 74; long and short syllables, 168; of syllable containing vowel before mute or *f* followed by *l* or *r*, 169; general principles of vowel quantity, 157-167; vowel before another vowel or *h*, 157-164; diphthong before a vowel, 158; compounds of *prae*, 158: gen. in *āī*, 160; length of *e* in *diēī*, *rēī*, *fidēī*, *ēī*, 160, 601, 602; the endings *-āī*, *-āīs*, *-ōī*, *-ōīs*, *-ēī*, *-ēīs*, 161; gen. in *-īus*, *-ius*, 162, 618, 656, 657, 694; vowel before *nf*, *ns*, cons. *i*, *gn*, 167; as determining accent, 171, 176, 177; *-it* in perf., 857; *ī*, *i*, in perf. subj., 877,

### Quantity — continued.

878; *ī*, *i*, in fut. perf., 883, 884; rules of, in classical Latin, 2429-2463; monosyllables, 2430-2433; penults, 2434-2436; final syllables ending in vowel, 2437-2446; final syllables ending in single cons. not *s*, 2447-2450; final syllables ending in *s*, 2451-2457; position, 2458; hidden, 2459-2463; some peculiarities of, in old Latin, 2464-2469; law of iambic shortening, 2470-2472; in versification, 2514-2518.

### Quaternarius,

iambic, 2617-2620; trochaic, 2643; anapaestic, 2687.

### Questioning,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase, 1170; with indirect question, 1774.

### Questions,

indic. in, 1499; commoner in Latin than in English, 1500; two, short (*quid est*, *quid vērō*, &c.) leading to longer, 1500; kinds of, 1501.

Yes or No questions, 1501-1525; confounded with exclamations and declarations, 1502; without interrogative particle, 1502; with *nōn*, 1502; with *-ne*, *-n*, 1503-1505; with *nōnne*, 1503, 1506; with *nōnne . . . nōn . . . nōn*, 1506; with *num*, 1503, 1507; with *numne*, 1507; *an*, *anne*, *ān nōn* in single, 1503, 1508; with *ecquis*, *ecquō*, *ecquandō*, *ēn umquam*, 1509; with *satin*, *satin ut*, 1510; how answered, 1511-1514.

Alternative, history of, 1515-1517; without interrogative particle, 1518; with *utrum*, *-ne*, *-n*, and *an*, *anne*, *an nōn*, 1519; with *necne*, 1520; with several alternatives, 1521; with *utrum*, and *-ne* and *an*, 1522; with *utrumne . . . an*, 1522; with no alternative expressed, 1523; how answered, 1525.

Pronoun questions, 1526-1530; introduced by interrogative advs., 1526; with *ut*, *how*, 1528; with *quisne*, &c., 1529; two or more with one verb, 1530.

Subjunctive questions, 1563-1570; of appeal, 1563; in alternative form, 1564; asking whether action is conceivable, 1565; in exclamative sentences, with no interrogative word or with *-ne*, 1566, 1567; with *utī*, *ut*, 1568; with *utī*, *ut*, and *-ne*, *-n*, 1569; in subordinate

## Index of Subjects.

### Questions — *continued.*

sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753.

Indirect, defined, 1773; subjv. in, 1773; expressions introducing, 1774; with verbs of fearing, 1774, 1959; sequence of tenses in, 1760; Yes or No questions as, 1775-1777; introduced by *sī*, *sī fōrte*, 1777; alternative questions as, 1778-1784; introduced by *quī sciō an*, *quī scīs an*, *quis scit an*, 1781; introduced by *haud sciō an*, 1782; without interrogative particle, 1784; pron. questions as, 1785; original subjv. questions as, 1786; rel. constructions distinguished from, 1791; use of reflexive pron. in, 2341, 2342.

Accusative without verb in, 1150; verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity in, 1495-1497; in indic. pres. or fut., intimating command, exhortation, deliberation, appeal, 1531, 1623; set forms expressing curiosity, incredulity, wrath, captiousness, 1532; threats introduced by *scīn quō modō*, 1532; united with partic., abl. abs., or subordinate sentence, 1533; coordinate with imper. or *tē rogō*, *scīn*, &c., 1697, 1787; introduced by indef. *nesciō quis*, &c., 1788, 1789; *mīrum quantum*, &c., 1790; direct, defined, 1723; question and answer, original form of rel. sentence, 1795; in apod. of conditional sentence, 2018; introduced by *nam*, 2155; in ind. disc., 2312-2314; use of *uter*, *quis*, *quī*, 2385, 2386.

### Quotations,

*inquam* in, 760; pres. used in, 1592; direct, 1723.

### Reason,

introduced by *quod*, 1853; introduced by *nōn quō*, &c., 1855; introduced by *quoniam*, 1884; expressed by *tamquam*, 1909; coordinated members denoting, 1703; see **Cause**.

### Reciprocal,

action, deponents expressing, 1487, see **Reflexive**; pron., place taken by *inter nōs*, &c., *invicem*, &c., 2344, 2345; relations, expressed by *uterque* and *alter*, 2400.

### Redundant verbs, 818-823, 924-1019.

### Reduplication,

defined, 189; in prons., 650; in verb roots, 758, 828, 829; in perf., 858-861, 922-932, 989, 995, 1011.

### Reflexive pronouns,

decl. of, 644-651; possess., 652-655; possess. used instead of gen., 1234, 1262; gen. of, used possessively, 1234; preps. following, 1435; referring to subj. of verb, 2336; referring to word not the subj. of verb, 2337; in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; *inter sē*, *invicem inter sē*, *invicem sē*, *invicem*, and expressions with *alter*, *alius*, for reciprocal, 2344, 2345; possess. omitted, 2346; possess. meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; *is* used for, 2370; *ipse* with, 2376; see *suī*, *suus*.

### Reflexive verbs,

1481; pres. partic. of, in reflexive sense, 1482; gerund of, in reflexive sense, 1482; deponents, 1487; with acc., 1148.

### Reizianus versus, 2625, 2626.

### Relation,

dat. of, 1217, 1218.

### Relationship,

words of, with gen., 1203.

### Relative adverbs,

711; in place of rel. pron. and prep., 1793; correlative prons. and advs., 1831; adv., *utī*, *ut*, 1935; *quoad*, 1991.

### Relative conjunctive particles,

1794; sentences introduced by, 1838-2122.

### Relative pronouns,

decl. of, 658, 659, 681-694; agreement of, 1094-1098, 1801-1811; agreement determined by sense, 1095, 1804; with several substs., 1096, 1803; referring to proper name and explanatory appellative combined, 1805; agreeing with pred. subst., 1097, 1806; equivalent to gen., 1098; verb agreeing in pers. with antec. of rel., 1807; verb agreeing in pers. with antec. of rel. implied in possess., 1807; rel. attracted to case of antec., 1808; word in appos. with rel., 1809; word explanatory of antec. agreeing with rel., 1810; *quod*, *id quod*, *quae rēs*, 1811; rel. introducing main sentence, 1835; rel. introducing main sentence put in acc. with infin. in ind. disc., 2316; with a compar., 1321, 1326; preps. following, 1434, 1435; introducing rel. sentence, 1792; representing any pers., 1792; rel. advs. instead of, 1793; developed from interrogative



## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Relative pronouns — *continued.***

pron., 1795, 1808; **quod** before **sī**, &c., 1837; as connectives, 2128, 2131, 2132; see **quī**.

### **Relative sentence,**

treated, 1792-1837; introduced by rel. words, 1792-1794; development of, 1795; preceding main sentence, 1795; with subst. in both members, 1795, 1796; following main sentence, 1796; **urbem quam statuō vostra est**, 1797; with determinative, demonstrative, subst., omitted. 1798; **quā prūdentīa es, nihil tē fugiet**, 1800; indic. in, 1721; tense of, after secondary, 1756; subjv. of ind. disc. and attraction in, 1722, 1815; subjv. of repeated action in, 1730, 1815; equivalent to conditional prot., indic. or subjv. in, 1812, 2110; of simple declarations or descriptions, indic. in, 1813; introduced by indef. prons. and advs., indic. in, 1814; of purpose, subjv. in, 1817; of characteristic or result, subjv. in, 1818-1823; with **dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus**, 1819; coordinated with subst., adj., or partic., 1820; with antec. omitted, indef. antec., or **nēmō est quī, nihil est quod**, &c., 1799, 1821, 1822; **sunt quī**, &c., with indic., 1823; of cause, reason, proof, concession, subjv. in, 1824-1830; **quī tamen** with indic., 1825; sentences with indic., resembling causal sentences, 1826; **quippe quī, ut quī, ut pote quī**, with indic. and subjv., 1827; **quippe quī** (adv.), **ut quī**, 1828; parenthetical subjv., **quod sciam, quī quidem**, 1829; **quod attinet ad**, &c., 1830; following **prae-ut**, 1945; coordination of rel. sentences, with rel. omitted, 1832, 1833; with rel. repeated, 1833; with second rel. replaced by **is, hīc**, &c., 1833; subordination of, 1834; equivalent to main sentence, 1835; equivalent to main sentence, in ind. disc., 2316; other rel. sentences in ind. disc., 2315, 2318, 2319; **quō factō**, &c., 1836; coordinated member equivalent to, 1698; represented by partic., 2294.

### **Relative time,**

of subordinate sentence, 1732, 1741.

### **Remembering,**

adjs. meaning, with gen., 1263, 1264; verbs of, with gen., 1287-1291; with acc., 1288; with **de** and abl., 1289, 1290; with infin., 2169.

### **Reminding,**

verbs of, cases with, 1172, 1291.

### **Remove,**

verbs meaning, with abl., 1302-1306; with dat., 1195, 1209.

### **Repeated,**

action (**ter in annō**, &c.), 1353; expressed by pres. indic., 1588; by impf. indic., 1596; subjv. of, 1730; subjv. of, in **cum** sentences, 1859, 1860; subjv. of, in sentences with **quotiēns, quotiēnscumque**, 1887; subjv. of, in sentences with **dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū**, 1994, 2002, 2009; with **postquam, ubi, ut**, 1932; in general conditions, 2026, 2034, 2035, 2037, 2044, 2050, 2071.

### **Represent,**

verbs meaning, with pres. partic. used predicatively, 2298, 2299; with infin., 2299.

### **Request,**

expressed by imper., 1571; expressed by fut., 1624; verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950.

### **Resemblance,**

adj. suffixes denoting, 299-301.

### **Resisting,**

verbs of, with dat., 1181; with **nē** and subjv., 1960; with **quōminus**, 1977; with **quīn**, 1986.

### **Resolution, 2518.**

### **Resolve,**

verbs meaning, with purpose clause, 1950; with infin., 1953, 2169; with acc. and infin., 2193.

### **Rest,**

verbs of, followed by **in** or **sub** and abl., 1423; followed by **in** and acc., 1424.

### **Restraining,**

verbs of, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977; with **quīn**, 1986; with acc. and infin., 2203; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2252.

### **Result,**

clauses, tense of, after secondary, 1757-1759; rel. sentences of, 1818-1823; with **dignus, indignus**, &c., 1819; after assertions or questions of existence or non-existence, 1821, 1822; sentences with **ut, ut nōn**, &c., 1947, 1948, 1965-1970; **tantum abest**, 1969; **quam ut**, 1896; coordinated



## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Result** — *continued.*

member equivalent to clause of, 1700;  
dat. of, 1219-1222; suffixes denoting,  
213, 222, 231, 234-236, 239, 249, 296.

### **Rhetorical questions,** see **Appeal.**

### **Rhythm,**

defined, 2511; kinds of, 2525-2528;  
Numeri Italici, 2549; Saturnian, 2550-  
2554; dactylic, 2555-2580; iambic,  
2581-2627; trochaic, 2628-2649; logaoe-  
dic, 2650-2674; dactylo-trochaic, 2675-  
2681; anapaestic, 2682-2690; cretic,  
2691-2697; bacchiac, 2698-2706; chor-  
iambic, 2707; ionic, 2708-2717.

### **Rhythmical sentence,** 2532, 2533.

### **Rhythmical series,** 2532, 2533.

### **Rivers,**

names of, gender, 405, 406; decl., 518,  
519, 549, 554, 556.

### **Roots,**

defined, 183; nature of, 184; three  
kinds, noun roots, verb roots, pron.  
roots, 186; two or more forms of one  
root, 187; vowel and cons. roots, 188;  
reduplicated, 189; reduplicated in verbs,  
758, 828, 829; pres. stems used as,  
190-194, 855; used as stems, 195, 198,  
199; used as stems in verbs, 738-743,  
844; root stem, defined, 195; root verbs,  
defined, 743; root verbs, inflected, 744-  
781, 828; prin. parts of root verbs, 922.

### **Route taken,**

advs. denoting, 707, 1376; abl. of,  
1376.

### **Sapphic,**

strophe, 2545; the lesser, 2666; the  
greater, 2671-2673; in Horace, 2734,  
2735.

### **Saturnian,** 2550-2554.

### **Saying,**

verbs of, with indef. subj., 1033; in  
pres. of past action, 1592; in plup.,  
1617; ind. disc. with, 1724, 2309; illo-  
gically in subjv. in clause introduced by  
**quī, quod, cum**, 1727, 2320; coordi-  
nated, 1696; with acc. and infin., 2175;  
time of infin. with, 2219, 2226; see **In-  
direct discourse.**

### **Scazon,**

choliambus, 2597-2600; trochaic te-  
trameter, 2639-2641.

### **Secondary cases,** IIII, IIII2.

### **Secondary tenses,**

1717, 1762; rules for use of, 1740-  
1772; subordinate to indic., 1746-1761;  
subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; sub-  
ordinate to noun of verb, 1766-1769;  
subjv. in ind. disc. or by attraction,  
1770-1772, 2322-2324, 2326-2329; perf.  
def. and pres. of vivid narration, 1717,  
1752, 1754; secondary sequence with  
primary, 1751-1753; primary sequence  
with secondary, 1755-1760.

### **Seeing,**

verbs of, in pres. of past action, 1592;  
with indirect question, 1774; in pres.  
with **postquam, ubī, ut, &c.**, 1926.

### **Selling,**

verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl.,  
1388-1392.

### **Semi-deponents,** 801, 1488.

### **Semi-elision,** 2497.

### **Semi-hiatus,** 2497.

### **Sēmiquināria caesura,** 2544.

### **Sēmiseptēnāria caesura,** 2544.

### **Sēmitemnāria caesura,** 2544.

### **Semivowels,** 54.

### **Sēnārius,**

defined, 2536; iambic, 2583-2596.

### **Sentence,**

defined, 1023; simple, defined, 1024;  
simple, enlarged, 1037-1054; simple,  
combined, 1055; simple, treated, 1099-  
1635; declarative, defined, 1025; ex-  
clamatory, defined, 1025; imper., de-  
fined, 1025; coordinate and subordinate,  
1055-1061; subordinate, history of,  
1693-1695, 1705, 1706, 1957, see **Sub-  
ordinate sentences**; compound, de-  
fined, 1056; compound, abridged, 1057;  
compound, treated, 1636-1713; com-  
plex, defined, 1058; complex, varie-  
ties of, 1058-1061; as advs., 712; inter-  
rogative, defined, 1025, see **Questions**;  
coordinate, treated, 1636-1692; inter-  
mediate coordinate, treated, 1693-1713,  
see **Coordination**; complex, treated,  
1714-2122; compar., defined, 1716;  
local, defined, 1716; temporal, defined,  
1716, see **Temporal**; modal, defined,  
1716; correlative, 1831; main, intro-  
duced by rel. pron., 1835-1837; con-  
junctive particle, 1838-2122, see  
**Conjunctive**; connection of sen-  
tences, 2123-2159; rhythmical, 2532,  
2533; see **Conditional, Causal,**  
**Concessive, Final, Consecutive,**  
**Relative sentence.**

## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Separating,**

verbs of, with dat., 1195, 1209; with gen., 1294; with abl., 1302-1306, 1294; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2268; adjs. of, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1306.

### **Separation,**

expressed by supine in -ū, 2277; see **Separating**.

### **Septēnārius,**

defined, 2536; iambic, 2610-2616; trochaic, 2629-2635; anapaestic, 2686.

### **Sequence of tenses,**

1745-1772; subjv. subordinate to indic., 1746-1761; subjv. subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; subjv. subordinate to noun of verb, 1766-1769; subjv. in ind. disc. or by attraction, 1770-1772, 2322-2324, 2326-2329.

### **Series,**

rhythmical, 2532, 2533; stichic, 2546.

### **Service,**

adjs. of, with dat., 1200.

### **Serving,**

verbs of, with dat., 1181, 1182.

### **Sharing,**

verbs meaning, with gen., 1263.

### **Shortening,**

of vowels, 57-62; of vowel before another vowel, 57; in final syllable, 57-61; in nom. of -ā- stems, 59, 436; in neut. plur., 59, 461; in abl. ending e of cons. stems, 59; in verb endings, 59, 61; in nom. ending -or, 59; in compar. ending -us, 59; in dat. and abl. suffix -bus, 59; in mihī, tibī, sibī, ibī, ubī, alicubī, nēcubī, sīcubī, ubinam, ubivīs, ubicumque, ibīdem, 60; in iambic words in verse, 61; before -n for -sn, 61; in perf. ending -ērunt, 62, 857; in perf. subjv., 62, 876; elsewhere before cons., 62; in first syllable of ille, illic, quippe, immō, &c., 2469; iambic, rule of, 2470-2472; vowel before another vowel retained long, 58, 159-164; long vowel preserved in specific endings in Old Latin, 63-68.

### **Showing,**

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167.

### **Simple,**

words, defined, 181; formative suffixes, defined, 200; sentence, defined, 1024, see **Sentence**.

### **Singular number,**

in nouns, defined, 414; lacking, see **Defective**; with different meaning from plur., 418, 480; in substs., in agreement, 1077-1081, see **Agreement**; in adjs., prons., partic., in agreement, 1082-1098, see **Agreement**; in collective sense, 1099; of a class, 1100; neut., of adjs. used as substs., 1093, 1101, 1250; of other adjs. used as substs., 1102, 1103; in verbs, defined, 722; in verbs, in agreement, 1062-1076, 1080, see **Agreement**; of gerundive, with nostri, &c., 2260.

### **Smell,**

verbs of, with acc., 1143.

### **Softening,** 2504.

### **Sonants,** 52, 54.

### **Sotadean,** 2712, 2713.

### **Sound,**

one of the divisions of Latin Grammar, treated, 1, 16-179; change of, in vowels, 55-113; change of, in diphthongs, 80-88; change of, in consonants, 114-154; see **Substitution**, **Development**, **Disappearance**, **Assimilation**, **Dissimilation**, **Interchange**, **Lengthening**, **Shortening**, **Weakening**, **Hiatus**, **Contraction**, **Elision**, **Affinities**, **Pronunciation**, **Accent**, **Quantity**.

### **Sounds,**

continuous, defined, 51; momentary, defined, 51; classified, 54.

### **Source,**

abl. of, 1312-1315, 1426; expressed by gen., 1232; expressed by adj., 1427.

### **Space,**

extent of, denoted by acc., 1151-1156, 1398, 1475; denoted by abl., 1153, 1399.

### **Sparing,**

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

### **Specification,**

abl. of, 1385; acc. of, see **Part concerned**; gen. of, see **Genitive**.

### **Spirants,** 54.

### **Spondaic verse,**

defined, 2556; use, 2566, 2567.

### **Spondee,**

defined, 2521; irrational, 2524.

### **Statements,**

general, with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1912-1914; particular, with **antequam**, **priusquam**, 1915-1921.



## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Stems,**

defined, 195; roots used as, 195, 198, 199; root used as stem in root verbs, 738-743, 828, 844; pres., used as roots, 190-194, 855; new, how formed, 196; root stem, defined, 195; stem vowel retained before ending, in verbs, 367, 840; retained in nouns, 400; noun stems classified, 399; noun stems, how found, 421; how indicated, 421; nouns with two forms of stem or two stems, 401, 413, 470, 475, 531, 545, 566-569, 603, 632; prons. with, 645, 652, 672; verbs with, 720, 818-823, 924-1019; **-ā-** stems of substs., decl. of, 432-445; **-o-** stems of substs., decl. of, 446-466; cons. stems of substs., decl. of, 467-512, see **Declension**; **-i-** stems of substs., decl. of, 513-569, see **Declension**; mixed, 513; **-ū-** stems, decl. of, 585-595; **-ē-** stems, decl. of, 596-607; **-o-** and **-ā-** stems of adjs., decl. of, 613-620, 432-466; cons. stems of adjs., decl. of, 621-626, 467-512, see **Declension**; **-i-** stems of adjs., decl. of, 627-636, 529-569, see **Declension**; of pres. partic. 632; of personal prons., 645; of **hic**, 662; of **is**, 672; of **ipse**, 679; of **quī**, **quis**, 681, 687-689; of the verb, number of, 718; defective verbs, 805-817; formation of, 824-919, 365-375, see **Formation**; verbs arranged according to prin. parts, 920-1022, see **Verbs**.

**Stichic series**, 2546.

### **Stipulation,**

verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950.

### **Striving,**

verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950;  
with complementary infin., 1953.

### **Strophe,**

defined, 2545; Alcaic and Sapphic, 2545.

### **Stuff,**

abl. of, 1312-1315; gen. of, 1255.

### **Subject,**

of sentence, defined, 1023; subst. or equivalent word or words, 1026; in nom., 1027; when expressed and when omitted, 1028-1034; enlarged, 1038-1047; subordinate sentence as, 1715; **quod** sentence as, 1845; **cum** sentence as, 1871; complementary clause as, 1948; infin. as, 2167, 2207-2215; perf. partic. as, 2289; nom., of infin., 1535; acc., of infin., 2173; of infin., omitted, 1537, 2183; gen. of, 1232-1238.

### **Subjunctive mood,**

tenses of, 716; how translated, 717.

Formation of tenses of, pres., 841-843; impf., 849, 850; perf., 876-878; plup., 881; short or old forms, 885-893.

Uses of, forms of **possum** and **dē-beō** in, 1498; of desire, 1540-1553; in wishes, 1540-1546; in exhortation, direction, statement of propriety, obligation, necessity, prohibition, 1547-1552; expressing willingness, assumption, concession, 1553; of action conceivable, in simple sentences, 1554-1562; accompanied by **fōrtasse**, &c., 1554; **velim**, **nōlim**, **mālim**, 1555; **vellem**, **nōllem**, **māllem**, 1560; in questions, in simple sentences, 1563-1569; tenses of, in simple sentences, 1634, 1635; tenses of, in subordinate sentences, 1740-1772; sequence of tenses, 1740-1745; subordinate to indic., 1746-1761; subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; subordinate to noun of verb, 1766-1769; tenses of, in ind. disc. and by attraction, 1770-1772, 2322-2324; tenses of, in conditional protases in ind. disc., 2326-2329; in coordination, 1705-1713, see **Coordination**; in ind. disc., 1722-1727, 2312-2324, 2326-2329; of attraction or assimilation, 1728; of repeated action, 1730; of wish, action conceivable, interrogation, in subordinate sentence, 1731; of indirect question, 1773-1786, see **Questions**; indic. questions apparently indirect, 1787-1791; **sī**, **sī fōrte** with, 1777; rel. sentence equivalent to conditional prot., 1812; with indef. rel. prons. and advs., 1814; rel. sentences of purpose in, 1816, 1817; rel. sentences of characteristic or result in, 1816, 1818-1823; with **dīgnus**, **indīgnus**, **idōneus**, 1819; coordinated with subst., adj., or partic., 1820; with antec. omitted, indef. antec., or **nēmō est quī**, **nihil est quod**, &c., 1821, 1822; rel. sentences of cause, reason, proof, concession in, 1824-1830; **quippe quī**, **ut quī**, **ut pote quī** with, 1827; parenthetical, **quod sciam**, **quī quidem**, 1829; with **quod**, **quia**, 1838-1858; with **cum**, 1859, 1870, 1872, 1873, 1877-1881; with **quoniam**, 1882-1884; with **quotiēns**, **quotiēns-cumque**, 1887; with **quam**, 1896, 1897; with **quamquam**, 1900, 1901; with **quamvis**, 1904, 1905; with **quamlibet**, 1907; with **tamquam**,



## *Index of Subjects.*

### **Subjunctive mood — *continued.***

1909; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1911-1921; with *prīdiē quam*, 1922; with *ubī, ut quisque*, 1932; with *utī, ut, nē*, 1947-1970; with *ubī*, 1971; with *quō, quī*, 1972, 1974-1976; with *quōminus*, 1977, 1978; with *quō sētius*, 1979; with *quīn*, 1980-1990; with *dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū*, 1991-2009; with *modo*, 2003; with *quandō*, 2010; in conditional periods, 2023-2115; with *etsī, tametsī, tamenetsī, etiamsī, sī*, 2116; with *quasi, quam sī, tamquam sī*, &c., 2117-2122; use of reflexive in subordinate clauses containing, 2341, 2342.

### **Subordinate constructions,**

history of, 1693-1695, 1705, 1706, 1740, 1957.

### **Subordinate relations,**

expressed coordinately, 1693-1713, see **Coordination**.

### **Subordinate sentences,**

1055, 1058-1061; question in, 1533; treated, 1714-2122; how expressed, 1714; value of, 1715; names of, 1716; tenses of indic. in, 1732-1739; tenses of subjv. in, 1740-1772; mood of, 1720-1731, 1773-2122; following supine in *-um*, 2272; introduced by supine in *-ū*, 2275; mood of, in ind. disc., 2315-2320; use of reflexive pron. in, 2341-2343; *is* used for reflexive in, 2370.

### **Subordination,**

of rel. sentence, 1834.

### **Substantives,**

defined, 4-7; abstract, 7; concrete, 5; material, 6; endings of, shortened, 59, 61; endings of, retained long, 65-67; formation of, 180-203; roots and stems, 183-198; without formative suffix, 195, 198, 199; with formative suffix, 195-198, 200-203; suffixes of, 204-279, see **Suffix**; compound, formation and meaning of, 379-390; inflection of, 398-607, see **Gender, Number, Case, Declension**; adjs. used as, with *-e, -ī* in abl. sing., 558, 561, 631; advs. from, 696-700, 703, 708, 710.

Modifiers of, 1038-1047; obj. of, defined, 1046; pred., see **Predicate**; agreement of, 1077-1081, see **Agreement**.

Uses of, 1099-1468; used adjectively, 1042; adjs. used as, 1099-1104, 1106,

### **Substantives — *continued.***

1093, 1250; with acc. appended, 1129, 1136; with dat. appended, 1183, 1208, 1225; with gen., 1227-1262; with abl. appended, 1301, 1307, 1309, 1314, 1342, 1375-1377; with loc. appended, 1301, 1331; omitted in abl. abs. 1371; used alone as abl. abs., 1372; used as preps., 1406; combination of, by a prep., 1426-1428; prepositional expressions equivalent to, 1428; repetition of prep. with several, 1429; omission of prep. with several, 1430; two preps. with one subst., 1431, 1432; qualified by adv., 1439-1441; advs. used as, 1442; subordinate sentences with value of, 1715; expressed in both members of rel. sentence, 1795, 1796; put before the rel., 1797; omitted before rel., 1798; rel. sentence coordinated with, 1820; *quod* clause with value of, 1845; complementary clause with value of, 1948; infin. as subst. acc., 2204-2206; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2252; with dat. of gerundive construction 2254; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258; the subst. partic., 2287-2292.

### **Substitution,**

of consonants, 114-119; of *l* for *d* or *r*, 115; of *r* for *s*, 116; of *h* for sonant aspirate, 117; of *b* for *v, f, or p*, 118, 151; of *g* for *c*, 119, 151; of *d* for *t*, 119, 151.

### **Suffix,**

formative, defined, 195; nouns with, 195-198, 200-203; nouns without, 195, 198, 199; simple and compound, defined, 200; preceded by vowel, 202.

Substantive suffixes, 204-279; primitive, 204-245; denominative, 246-279, 226, 227, 232; denoting agent, 204-211; denoting action, 212-237, 249; forming collectives, 228, 249; denoting concrete effect, 213, 217, 224, 241; denoting instrument or means, 238-245, 213, 224; denoting result, 213, 222, 231, 234-236, 239, 249, 296; denoting quality, 246-264; denoting person concerned, 265, 309; denoting place, 266, 228, 241, 242, 245, 249, 308, 309, 314, 334; forming diminutives, 267-278; denoting patronymics, 279.

Adjective suffixes, 280-360; primitive, 280-297, 305; denominative, 298-360, 287; denoting active quality, 281-290, 293, 294, 296; denoting passive

## Index of Subjects.

### Suffix — *continued.*

quality, 291-297, 282, 283; denoting material or resemblance, 299-301; denoting appurtenance, 302-330; denoting supply, 331-338; forming diminutives, 339, 340; compar. suffixes, 346-348; superl. suffixes, 349-352; denoting place, 317, 321, 347.

Adverb suffixes, diminutive, 341; of compar. and superl., 361-364.

Verbal suffixes, denominative, 365-375; frequentative or intensive, 371-374; desiderative, 375; meditative, 375; inceptive or inchoative, 834; -nō, -tō, -iō, 832, 833, 835-838.

Pronoun suffix -met, 650, 655; -pte, 655; -ce, 662-664, 669, 670.

### Summary,

asyndeton of, 2127.

### Superlative,

Of adjs., suffixes of, 349-352; of adjs. in -er, 344, 350; of adjs. in -ilis, 345, 350, 359; lacking, 359, 360; formed from stems and roots, 342; formed by māmimē, 360.

Of adverbs, endings of, 361-363; lacking, 364; with gen., 1242.

Use of summus, &c., 1249; abl. with words of superl. meaning, 1393; used when two things are compared, 1456; expressed by compar. and neg., 1462; of more than two things, 1465; strengthened by ūnus, quam, māmimē, &c., 1466, 1892, 1903; denoting high degree, 1467; absolute, 1467; of eminence, 1467, 1468; strengthened by a compar., 1468; accompanied by vel, 1671; agreeing with a rel., 1810; tam . . . quam quī, quantus, ut, &c., 1892; double, with quam . . . tam, 1893; represented by quamvis with adj. or adv., 1903; ut quisque, quisque with, 1939.

### Supine,

acc. or abl. of substs. in -tu- (-su-), 235, 2269; the supines, verbal nouns, 732, 2269; formation of, 900; lacking, 900; denoting purpose, 1166, 2270; use of supine in -um, 2269-2273; use of supine in -ū, 2269, 2274-2277.

### Surds, 52, 54.

### Surprise,

expressed by dat., 1211; questions of, 1532, 1566-1569; verbs of, with quod, quia, 1851; with cum, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184; expressed by infin., 2216.

### Suspense,

verbs of, with loc. and abl., 1339, 1344.

### Syllaba anceps, 2533, 2534.

### Syllables,

final, vowel of shortened, 57, 59-61, see Shortening; vowel of retained long, 63-68; quantity of, 168; containing h, qu, 168; containing short vowel before mute or f followed by l or r, 169; division of, 155; names of, 155; irrational, 2524; see Accent.

### Synaeresis, 2500.

### Synaloepha, 2498.

### Synapheia, 2510.

### Syncope,

defined, 93, 122, 2508; in versification, 2541.

### Synecdochical,

acc., see Part concerned.

### Synizesis, 2499.

### System,

the pres., 828-853, 365-367, 738-740; the perf., 854-919, 738-740, see Formation; in versification, defined, 2547.

### Systolé, 2507.

### Taking away,

verbs of, with dat., 1209; with infin. of purpose, 2165.

### Taking up,

verbs of, with infin. of purpose, 2165.

### Taste,

verbs of, with acc., 1143.

### Teaching,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and infin., 2197.

### Telling,

verbs of, with indirect question, 1774.

### Temporal,

sentences, defined, 1716; subjv. of ind. disc. and attraction in, 1722, 2319; subjv. of repeated action in, 1730; cum, 1859-1873; quoniam, 1882, 1883; antequam, priusquam, &c., 1911-1922; dum, donec, quoad, quamdiū, 1991; quando, 2010-2012; postquam, ubi, ut, &c., 1923-1934; coordinated member equivalent to, 1699.

### Tempus,

in versification, 2515.

### Tendency,

dat. of, 1219-1222.

### Tenses,

of the indic., 716; of the subjv., 716; of the imper., 716; meanings of, 717; from two stems, 720; formation of, 824-



## Index of Subjects.

### Tenses — *continued.*

919, see **Formation**; primary and secondary, 1717; sequence of, 1740-1745.

In simple sentences, pres. indic., 1587-1593, 1601; impf. indic., 1594-1601, 1495-1497; fut., 1619-1625; perf. indic., 1602-1613, 1616; plup. indic., 1614-1618, 1607, 1609; fut. perf., 1626-1632, 1607, 1609; subjv., 1634, 1635, 1540-1569.

In subordinate sentences, indic., 1732-1739; subjv., general remarks, 1740-1745; subjv. subordinate to indic., 1746-1761; subjv. subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; subjv. subordinate to noun of the verb, 1766-1769; subjv. in ind. disc. or by attraction, 1770-1772, 2322-2324; conditional protases in ind. disc., 2326-2329; use in indirect questions, 1773-1791; use in rel. sentence, 1792-1837; use with conjunctive particles, 1838-2122.

Of infin., 2218-2236, 2321; conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2330-2334; of partic., 2278-2299; see **Present**, &c.

### Ternārius,

iambic, 2621-2623; trochaic, 2644-2646.

### Tetrameter,

defined, 2536; dactylic, 2577, 2578; iambic, 2604-2609; trochaic, 2629-2641; anapaestic, 2684-2686; cretic, 2694-2696; bacchiac, 2701-2703; ionic, 2712-2716.

### Tetrapody,

defined, 2531; logaoedic, 2660-2663.

### Tetraseme, 2516.

### Tetrastich, 2545.

### Thanks,

expressed by fut., 1622; *ita . . . ut* in, 1542, 1622, 1937.

### Theme,

of verb, 738-740.

### Thesis, 2520.

### Thinking,

verbs of, with indef. subjv., 1033; with two accusatives, 1167; coordinated, 1696; ind. disc. with, 1724; illogically in subjv. in rel. clause, 1727, 2320; with acc. and infin., 2175; time of infin. with, 2219, 2226; see **Indirect Discourse**.

### Threat,

introduced by question, 1532; expressed by fut., 1619; implication of in fut. perf., 1629.

### Threatening,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185; with acc. and infin., 2186; with pres. infin., 2186.

### Thymelicus, 2697.

### Time,

duration of, denoted by acc., 1151-1156; acc. of duration of made subj. in pass., 1475; duration of, denoted by abl., 1355; at which, denoted by acc., 1156; at which, denoted by loc., 1341; at which, denoted by abl., 1350, 1351, 1353; within which, denoted by abl., 1352-1354; before or after which, 1394-1397, 1154; denoted by advs., 1438; rel. of subordinate sentence, 1732, 1741; independent, of subordinate sentence, 1738, 1744; **antequam** with nouns denoting, 1920; **postquam** with nouns denoting, 1929; denoted by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266; of partic., 2279-2281; expressed by abl. abs., 1367; expressed by partic., 2295; see **Temporal**.

A, in versification, defined, 2515.

### Titles,

of books, use of nom. in, 1114-1116; of office, with gerundive construction, 2254.

### Tmesis,

defined, 1407, 2509; in **quicumque**, 692.

### Towns,

names of, form of loc. case of, 438, 460, 504, 554; decl. of, 518, 549, 554, 557; in acc. with expressions of motion, 1157-1160; used adjectively, 1233; constructions with, to denote place from which, 1307-1310; constructions with, to denote place in or at which, 1331-1336, 1342, 1343; rel. advs., *ubi*, *quō*, *unde*, referring to, 1793.

### Training,

verbs of, with acc. and infin., 2197.

### Transition,

expressed by **quid quod**, 1849; expressed by **quoniam**, 1884; *hic* and *ille* in, 2353, 2360.

### Transitive use,

verbs of, defined, 1133; used intransitively, 1133, 1479; verbs usually intransitive used as, 1137, 1139, 1191; with double acc., 1138; with dat., 1192-1199, 1205-1210; used impersonally, 1479; use of gerundive of, 2180, 2246, 2247; use of gerund of, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265.



## *Index of Subjects.*

- Trees,**  
names of, gender, 407, 408, 573.
- Trial,**  
expressions of, with *sī*, *sī fōrte*, 1777.
- Tribrach,** 2521.
- Trimeter,**  
defined, 2536; dactylic, 2579; iambic (senarius), 2583-2596; the choliambus, 2597-2600; iambic, catalectic, 2601-2603; cretic, 2697.
- Tripody,**  
defined, 2531; iambic, 2624; trochaic, 2647, 2648; logaoedic, 2659.
- Triseme,** 2516.
- Tristich,** 2545.
- Trithemimeral caesura,** 2544.
- Trithemimeris,** 2531.
- Trochaic,**  
rhythms, 2628-2649; tetrameter catalectic, 2629-2635; tetrameter acatalectic, 2636-2638; tetrameter claudus, 2639-2641; nine-syllabled Alcaic, 2642; dimeter acatalectic, 2643; dimeter catalectic, 2644-2646; tripody acatalectic, 2647; tripody catalectic, 2648; monometer, &c., 2649; dactylo-trochaic, 2675-2681; strophe, in Horace, 2721.
- Trochee,** 2521.
- Trusting,**  
verbs of, case with, 1181-1185.
- Try,**  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.
- Undertaking,**  
verbs of, with gerundive construction, 2250.
- Unfulfilled,**  
wishes, tenses of, 1544, 1545; conditions, see **Non-occurrent**.
- Union,**  
verbs of, case with, 1186.
- Unit of Measure,** 2515.
- Urging,**  
see **Inducing**.
- Useful,**  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2252.
- Value,**  
abl. of, 1388-1392.
- Valuing,**  
verbs of, with gen., 1271-1275.
- Variable,**  
gender, 413, 586, 597; stems, 401, 413, 470, 475, 531, 545, 566-569, 603, 632; vowel, 824-827, 839, 840, 758, 759, 366.
- Verbs,**  
defined, 12; endings of, shortened, 59, 61; endings of, retained long, 65, 68; reduplicated verb roots, 758, 828, 829; reduplicated perf., 858-861, 923-932; primitive, theme in, 738-741; compounded with nouns or noun stems, 384, 395; with preps., 391, 392, 396; with verb stems, 394; with advs., 396; root verbs, defined, 743; irregular, defined, 743; inflected, 744-781; semi-deponents, 801, 1488.  
Inflection of, 713-1022; the stem, 714-720; the person ending, 721-731; nouns of the verb, 732; prin. parts, 733-735; designation of the verb, 736, 737; theme of the verb, 738-740; arrangement of the verb, 741, 742; inflection of primitive verbs, 743-791; inflection of denominative verbs, 792-797; deponent, 798-801; periphrastic forms, 802-804; defective verbs, 805-817, 907, 922-1019; redundant verbs, 818-823, 924-1019.  
Formation of stems of, 824-919; variable vowel, 824-827; pres. indic. of root verbs, 828; pres. indic. of verbs in **-ere**, 829-838; pres. indic. of denominatives, 339, 840; pres. subjv., 841-843; imper., 844-846; impf. indic., 847, 848; impf. subjv., 849, 850; fut., 851-853; perf. indic., 854-875; perf. subjv., 876-878; perf. imper., 879; plup. indic., 880; plup. subjv., 881; fut. perf., 882-884; short or old forms, 885-893; infin., 894-898; gerundive and gerund, 899; supine, 900; pres. partic., 901-903; fut. partic., 904, 905; perf. partic., 906-919; formation of denominative verbs, 365-375.  
List of, 920-1022; root verbs, 922; verbs in **-ere**, perf. stem without suffix, 923-951; verbs in **-ere**, perf. stem in **-s-**, 952-961; verbs in **-ere**, perf. stem in **-v-**, 962-970; verbs in **-ere**, perf. stem in **-u-**, 971-976; deponents in **-ī**, 977-986; verbs in **-āre**, perf. stem without suffix, 989, 990; verbs in **-āre**, perf. stem in **-v-**, 991, 992; verbs in **-āre**, perf. stem in **-u-**, 993; deponents in **-ārī**, 994; verbs in **-ēre**, perf. stem without suffix, 985-998; verbs in

## Index of Subjects.

### Verbs — *continued.*

**-ēre**, perf. stem in **-s-**, 999, 1000; verbs in **-ēre**, perf. stem in **-v-**, 1001-1003; verbs in **-ēre**, perf. stem in **-u-**, 1004-1007; deponents in **-ērī**, 1008-1010; verbs in **-īre**, perf. stem without suffix, 1011-1013; verbs in **-īre**, perf. stem in **-s-**, 1014, 1015; verbs in **-īre**, perf. stem in **-v-**, 1016-1018; verbs in **-īre**, perf. stem in **-u-**, 1019; deponents in **-īrī**, 1020-1022.

Use of, 1469-2299; in 3rd pers. with indef. subjv., 1033; omitted, 1036; agreement of, 1062-1076, 1080, 1807, see **Agreement**; gen. with, 1271-1294, see **Genitive**; compounded, 1402-1409, see **Prepositions**; sequence of tenses following noun of, 1766-1769; use of nouns of, 2160-2299; with acc. of gerund and gerundive, 2250, 2252; with abl., 2254-2257; some occasional peculiarities of, 2300-2307; conative use, 2301-2303; causative use, 2304; potential use, 2305; obligatory use, 2306; permissive use, 2307; cases with, see **Ablative**, &c., **Prepositions**; of transitive and intransitive use, see **Transitive use**, **Intransitive use**; impersonal, see **Impersonal**; see **Subjunctive**, &c., **Present**, &c.

### Verse,

defined, 2533; treatment of end of, 2533; dicolic, 2535; asynartetic, 2535; names of, 2536; catalectic and acatalectic, 2537; brachycatalectic, 2538; catalectic *in syllabam*, &c., 2539; verses combined to make strophe, 2545; accentual and quantitative, 2548; spondaic, 2556, 2566, 2567; hypermetrical, 2568.

### Versification, 2511-2739.

### Vivid narration,

pres. of, 1590, see **Present**.

### Vocative case,

defined, 420; in what words used, 420; origin of form of, in **-o-** decl., 71, 76; form and accent of, in **-o-** decl., 172, 452, 454, 458, 459; forms of, in Greek words of **-ā-** decl., 445; in Greek words of cons. decl., 509, 512; in Greek words of **-i-** decl., 565; of **meus**, 652; use of, 1119-1123; nom. used as, 1118-1123; combined with nom., 1121; used in pred., 1122; accompanied by **ō**, **prō**, **eho**, **heus**, **au**, &c., 1123;

### Vocative case — *continued.*

use of **tū**, 1118, 1566, 1571; accompanying imper., 1571; as apod., 2112.

### Voice,

in verbs, defined, 723, 1469, 1472; see

**Active**, **Passive**.

### Vowels,

cons. and vowel **i** and **u**, 21-24; long and short, how denoted, 27-31; classification of, 37, 38; pronunciation of, 26, 32-38; vowel changes, 55-113, see **Lengthening**, **Shortening**, **Weakening**, **Diphthongs**, **Development**, **Disappearance**, **Hiatus**, **Contraction**, **Elision**, **Assimilation**, **Dissimilation**, **Affinities**, **Interchange**; rules of vowel quantity, 157-167, 2429-2472; vowel roots, defined, 188; stem vowel retained before ending, in verbs, 367, 840; in nouns, 400; variable, 824-827, 758, 759, 829, 839, 840, 366; long vowel in perf. stem, 862-865, 936-946; vowel stems, substs. and adjs., see **-i-** stems.

### Want,

verbs of, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1302-1306, 1293; adjs. of, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1306.

### Warding off,

verbs of, with dat., 1209.

### Weakening,

of vowels, 69-79; **a** to **e**, 73; **a** to **i**, 74; **a** to **u**, 72; **ā** to **ē**, 73; **ā** to **i**, 74; **e** to **i**, 79; final **e** for **o** or **i**, 71; **ē** to **i**, 79; **o** to **e**, 76; **o** to **i**, 77; **o** to **u**, 75, 105, 112, 452, 653, 827; **ō** to **ū**, 75; **u** to **i**, 78, 35; of diphthongs, 80-88, see **Diphthongs**.

### Weeping,

verbs of, used transitively, 1139.

### Will,

expressed by fut., 1619; *shall* and *will*, 1619; verbs of, with purpose clause, 1949; with infin., 2169; with perf. infin., 2225.

### Willingness,

expressed by subjv. of desire, 1553.

### Winds,

names of, gender, 405.

### Wish,

expressed by subjv., 1540-1546; introduced by **utinam**, **utī**, **ut**, **quī**, **modo**, **nē**, **nōn**, **nec**, 1540; with **sī**, **ō sī**, 1546; expressed by subjv. in sub-

## *Index of Subjects.*

---

### **Wish** — *continued.*

ordinate sentence, 1731; expressed by imper., 1571; as prot. of conditional period, 2110.

### **Wishing,**

verbs of, with double acc., 1172; subjv. coordinated with, 1707; with **ut, nē**, 1950; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2189, 2190, 2228; with perf. act. infin., 2223, 2224; with perf. pass. infin., 2229; see **Desire**.

### **Without,**

expressed by partic. and neg., 2296.

### **Wondering,**

verbs of, with indirect question, 1774; with **quod, quia**, 1851; with **cum**,

### **Wondering** — *continued.*

1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184.

### **Words,**

simple, defined, 181; compound, defined, 181; gender words, 398, 402; their sound, 2-179; their formation, 180-396; their inflection, 397-1022.

### **Yes,**

how expressed, 1511, 1512.

### **Yes or No Questions,**

1501-1525; in indirect questions, 1775-1777; see **Questions**.

### **Yielding,**

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.



# INDEX OF LATIN WORDS.

THE REFERENCES ARE TO SECTIONS.

- a**, the vowel, pronunciation of, 26, 33, 34, 37, 38; final, quantity of, 2437-2439.
- a**, weakened to **e**, 73; weakened to **i**, 74; weakened to **u**, 72.
- ā**, how denoted in inscriptions, 28, 30; weakened to **ē**, 73; weakened to **i**, 74;
- ab** (**ā**), prep., 1417; form of, 118, 142; with abl. proper, 1297; in expressions of distance, 1153; after **aliēnus**, 1202; expressions with, used with adjs., 1268; with abl. of separation, &c., 1304; with town names, 1308; denoting origin, 1309; expressing source, 1312; expressing cause, &c., 1317; expressing doer of action, 1318, 1476, 1477, 2243; with act. verbs equivalent to pass., 1318; with things and animals, 1318, 1477; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286; quantity of, 2430, 2432.
- abeō**, forms of, 766.
- abhinc**, with acc., 1154; with abl., 1154;
- abiēs**, form of, 55; gender and decl. of, 477; quantity of **e** in, 2456.
- abigō**, prin. parts of, 937.
- abnueō**, forms of, 819.
- aboleō**, prin. parts of, 1003.
- abolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.
- abs**, prep., 1417; pronunciation of, 45, 149; form of, 710.
- abscondō**, perf. of, 860.
- absēns**, 749, 902.
- absente nōbīs**, 1092.
- absiste**, with infin., for **nōlī**, 1584, 2170.
- absorbeō**, forms of, 1006.
- absque**, **apsque**, 1421, 1701, 2110.
- absum**, with abl. of amount of difference, 1153; with dat., 1212; **paulum abest**, &c., with **quīn**, 1986.
- abunde**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- abūtor**, with acc., 1380.
- ac**, quantity, 2433; see **atque**.
- accēdit**, with **quod**, 1845; with **ut**, 1965.
- Accherūns**, in acc., 1157; in loc., 1336; in abl., 1307, 1336, 1343.
- accidō**, forms of, 930; tense after, 1758; **accidit** with result clause, 1965, 1966.
- accidō**, prin. parts of, 930.
- accipiō**, with acc. and infin., 2175; **accēpimus** with pres. infin., 2220.
- accitus**, 919.
- accommodātus**, with dat. of person and acc. with **ad** of thing, 1201; with gerundive construction, 2254.
- accumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.
- ācer**, form of, 89; comparison of, 344; decl. of, 627-629.
- acēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- aciēs**, decl. of, 606, 607.
- acquiēscō**, defective, 905.
- acuō**, form of, 367, 839, 840; perf. of, 865; prin. parts of, 947.
- acus**, gender of, 588; decl. of, 592.
- ad**, prep., 1410; in comp., form of, 145; position of, 1435; after its case, unaccented, 178; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196, 1198; with **urbem** or **oppidum**, 1159; signifying motion towards or nearness, 1160; with country names and appellatives, 1161; expressions with, used with adjs., 1201, 1268; **adque adque**, 1408; **ad id** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2164, 2252, 2270; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286.
- adaequē**, correlative of **ut**, 1937.
- adamussum**, form of, 549, 698, 699.
- addō**, with **quod**, 1846.
- adeō**, verb, conjug. of, 763, 766.
- adeō**, adv., correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970.
- adeps** (**adips**), decl. of, 480; gender of, 480, 580.

## Index of Latin Words.

- adfati**m, form of, 549, 699; with partitive gen., 1248.
- adfinis**, decl. of, 558; with gen., 1263; with dat., 1268.
- adgredior**, forms of, 791, 799, 986.
- adhuc**, form of, 179; with partitive gen., 1253; with compar., 1459.
- adiciō**, with **quod**, 1846.
- adigō**, construction with, 1198.
- adimō**, perf. of, 823; with infin. as obj., 2206.
- adipiscor**, 980; with gen., 1292; **adep-tus** as pass., 1492.
- adiuero**, **adiuerit**, 891.
- adlegō**, prin. parts of, 937.
- adliciō**, prin. parts of, 956.
- admodum**, adv., 698, 699.
- adnexuerant**, 960.
- adolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.
- ador**, gender of, 575.
- adorior**, forms of, 791.
- ad ravim**, adv., 549.
- adsentiō**, **adsentior**, 800, 1015, 1488; with **haud**, 1449.
- adspargō**, constructions with, 1199.
- adsuēfaciō**, with acc. and infin., 2197.
- adulō**, 1489.
- adulor**, with dat. or acc., 1184.
- adultus**, with act. meaning, 907, 1485.
- adveniō**, forms of, 822.
- adversum**, prep., 1410; verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187.
- adversus**, prep., 1410; used after **im-pius**, 1201; expression with, instead of objective gen., 1261.
- advertō**, see **animum advertō**.
- advesperāscit**, perf. of, 872.
- advorsum quam**, 1895.
- ae**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 42; for earlier **ai**, 84; change of sound of to **ē**, 85; weakened to **ei** and **ī**, 86.
- aedile**, decl. of, 558.
- aedis**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; decl. of, 522, 540, 541.
- aegrē . . . cum**, 1869.
- Aegyptus**, use of acc. of, 1161; use of loc. of, 1336.
- aemulus**, with gen., 1263; with dat., 1183, 1268.
- aequālis**, decl. of, 558.
- aequē**, with abl., 1392; with compar., 1463; followed by **et**, 1653; **aequē . . . quam**, 1890; correlative of **ut**, 1937.
- aequius erat**, 1497.
- aequius est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1495, 1496.
- aequus**, constructions with, 1201; agreeing with abl. of quality, 1240; **aequī** as gen. of value, 1275; with abl., 1392; **aequum est, erat**, implying non-occurrent action, 1495, 1497; **aequum est** with infin., 2211; **aequum est** with perf. pass. and act. infin., 2230.
- aes**, form of, 132; decl. of, 450, 491; dat. in **-ē**, 501; gender of, 491, 572; use of plur. of, 1108.
- aestimō**, with gen. of value, 1271; with abl. of value, 1273, 1390.
- age**, used of several persons, 1075; with imper., 1572; **age sis**, 1572; asyndeton with, 1641.
- agedum**, 179, 1572, 1573.
- agidum**, with imper., 1572.
- agite dum**, 1573.
- agnōscō**, fut. partic. of, 905; perf. partic. of, 919; prin. parts of, 965.
- agō**, pres. stem of, 829; perf. of, 863; perf. partic. of, 916; prin. parts of, 937; compounds of, 937; **grātiās agō** with **quod** and **cum**, 1852, 1875.
- ai**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 43; weakened to **ae**, **ei**, **ī**, 84, 86.
- aī**, weakened to **ē**, 86.
- aiō**, form of, 58, 113, 135; conjug. of, 785, 786; old forms of, 787; defective, 786, 805.
- albeō**, defective, 809.
- āles**, decl. of, 506.
- alēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- algeō**, perf. of, 868; prin. parts of, 1000.
- algēscō**, prin. parts of, 959.
- aliās**, adv., 702; with fut. perf., 1630.
- alicubi**, quantity, 60; form of, 709.
- aliēnus**, formation of, 319; with gen., 1202, 1238; with dat., 1200; with abl., 1306; with **ab** and abl., 1202; with **domus**, 1337.
- aliquamdiū**, accent of, 178.
- aliquis, aliquī**, decl. of, 692; with correlatives, 695; sing. defining plur. subst., 1080; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1144; common use of, 2390; equivalent to **aliquis alius**, 2391.
- Alis**, use of acc. of, 1161; use of abl. of, 1347.
- aliter**, followed by **et**, 1653; **nōn aliter**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; with **sī**, 2021.
- alius**, gen. sing. of, 162, 166, 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; **alis, alid**, 619; **aliut**, 659; **alius modī**, 619; sing. defining plur. subst., 1080; abl. of comparison with, 1323; followed by **et**, 1653; **aliī . . . aliī**, 1687; **aliī sunt**



## Index of Latin Words.

- quī**, 1822; use of, expressing reciprocal relations, 2344.
- allēx** (**allēc**), gender and decl. of, 473; quantity of **e** in, 2448.
- Allia**, gender of, 406.
- alō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- Alpēs**, gender of, 406; no sing., 417.
- alter**, formation of, 347; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620; decl. of, 616, 618-620; sing. defining plur. subst., 1080; abl. of comparison with, 1323; use of, expressing reciprocal relations, 2344, 2400.
- alternīs**, adv., 704.
- alteruter**, decl. of, 694.
- altus**, comparison of, 343; with acc. appended, 1130.
- alvos** (**alvus**), gender of, 447.
- amābilis**, formation of, 294; comparison of, 359.
- ambi-**, inseparable prep., 392, 1409.
- ambiō**, forms of, 763, 766, 888, 919.
- ambō**, dual, 415; decl. of, 442, 464, 640.
- āmēns**, decl. of, 533, 559.
- amiciō**, prin. parts of, 1019.
- amnis**, decl. of, 517, 555; gender of, 517, 579.
- amō**, no supine, 900; with **haud**, 1449; **amābō** with imper., 1572.
- amplector**, pres. stem of, 835; prin. parts of, 985; with reflexive force, 1487.
- amplius**, with partitive gen., 1248; without **quam**, 1328; with **quam**, 1328; with abl., 1328; in expressions of age, 1329.
- an**, use in single questions, 1503, 1508; **anne**, **an nōn**, 1503, 1508; in alternative questions, 1519, 1521, 1522; **haud sciō an**, &c., 1449, 1554, 1782; in second half of indirect alternative question, 1778; **utrum . . . ne . . . an**, **utrumne . . . an**, 1779; **quī sciō an**, &c., 1781; in single indirect question, 1783; as disjunctive conjunction, 1667, 1675; **an . . . an** in indirect questions, 1776; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; quantity, 2433.
- an-**, inseparable, 392, 1409.
- Anactorium**, abl. of, with **in**, 1334.
- anas**, decl. of, 477; quantity of second **a** in, 2455.
- anatēs**, epicene, 411.
- anceps**, decl. of, 533, 559, 635.
- Andros**, how used in abl., 1308, 1334.
- angō**, defective, 808.
- angor**, with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with acc. and infin., 2188.
- anguis**, decl. of, 556; gender of, 579.
- animās**, pres. partic., 902.
- animus advertō**, construction with, 1198.
- animus**, loc. and abl. of, 1339, 1344.
- ante**, prep., 1410; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; expression with, instead of partitive gen., 1246; in expressions of time, 1394-1396; **ante quam** for **potius quam**, 1897; with gerundive construction and gerund, 2253; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286.
- ante ivit**, 767.
- antequam**, with pres. indic. of fut. action, 1593; with fut. perf., 1626; general statement of use, 1911; in general statements, 1912-1914; in particular statements, 1915-1921.
- antīquos** (**antīcus**, **antīquom**, **antīcum**), 327, 452.
- apage**, 805.
- aperiō**, prin. parts of, 1019.
- apis**, decl. of, 563.
- apiscor**, prin. parts of, 980; compounds of, 980; with gen., 1292.
- apium**, gender of, 408.
- appāreō**, defective, 905.
- applicō**, prin. parts of, 993.
- aptus**, constructions with, 1201; with **quī**, 1819; with infin., 1819; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2252.
- apud** (**aput**), prep., 1410; form of, 119; not compounded, 1406.
- aqua**, use of plur. of, 1108.
- Arar**, decl. of, 519, 544, 556.
- arbitrō**, 1489.
- arbor** (**arbōs**), form of, 116; decl. of, 489, 491; gender of, 575, 576.
- arceō**, prin. parts of, 1006; compounds of, 1006.
- arcēssō** (**accersō**), perf. of, 870; forms of, 970.
- arcus**, decl. of, 592.
- ārdeō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1000; with infin., 2170.
- ārdēscō**, prin. parts of, 959.
- ārēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- arguō**, stem of, 367; prin. parts of, 947; with double acc., 1172; used personally in pass., 2178; with acc. and infin., 2185; with gen. of gerundive construction, 2264.
- ariēs**, gender and decl. of, 477; quantity of **e** in, 2456.



## Index of Latin Words.

- Arpīnās**, accent of, 173; decl. of, 533.  
**artua**, nom. and acc. plur., 586.  
**artūs**, decl. of, 592.  
**ās**, form of, 139; decl. of, 539; stems of, 569; gender of, 539, 578; **āssis** as gen. of value, 1272; meaning and divisions of, 2427.  
**ast**, 1685.  
**at**, use of, 1676, 1685, 2151; correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**atque**, connecting substs. with sing. or plur. verb, 1064-1066; after a compar., 1324, 1654; after words of likeness and unlikeness, 1653; in comparisons after positive, 1654; use of, as copulative conj., 1644, 1647, 1652-1655, 2147, 2148; force of, 1652; **atque . . . atque**, 1652; meaning *but*, 1655; **atque**, (ac), **nōn**, &c., 1659; **-que . . . atque**, 1664; **atque . . . et**, 1664; **atque . . . -que**, 1664; **neque . . . ac**, 1665; **simul atque**, 1923-1934; **idem atque**, 2373.  
**atquī**, form of, 706; use of, 2152.  
**atquīn**, 2152.  
**atteruisse**, 963.  
**attingō**, forms of, 925.  
**attondeō**, 995.  
**attribuō**, with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**au**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 42; change of sound of, to **ō** and **ū**, 80, 81.  
**au**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.  
**aucupō**, 1489.  
**audeō**, forms of, 801, 1488.  
**audiō**, conjug. of, 796, 797; **audiō cum**, 1870; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**augeō**, prin. parts of, 999.  
**auspicātō**, as adv., 704, 1372.  
**auspicō**, 1489.  
**aut**, connecting substs. with sing. or plur. verb, 1070; **aut . . . aut** connecting substs. with sing. or plur. verb, 1070; use of, 1667-1669, 2149.  
**autem**, introducing parenthesis, 1642; position of, 1676; common use of, 1677; in questions, 1678; with **sī**, **sīn**, 2021; introducing adversative sentence, 2151.  
**auxilium**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; dat. of, with verb, 1220, 1223.  
**avē. havē**, 805.  
**aveō**, defective, 809.  
**avis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**axis**, gender of, 579.  
**b**, sound of before **s** or **t**, 45, 149; from **v**, **f**, or **p**, 118, 151; assimilation of, 149, 150; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432.  
**balbutiō**, defective, 810.  
**balsamum**, gender of, 408.  
**bātuō**, 367.  
**belli**, loc., 460; use of, 1338.  
**bellō**, with dat., 1186.  
**Bellōna**, form of, 118.  
**bellum**, form of, 118.  
**bellus**, comparison of, 358.  
**bene**, comparison of, 363; verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187; quantity, 2440.  
**beneficus**, comparison of, 353.  
**benevolēns**, comparison of, 354.  
**benevolus**, comparison of, 354; constructions with, 1201.  
**bēs**, decl. of, 539; meaning of, 2427.  
**bētō**, **bītō**, defective, 808; pres. stem of, 835.  
**bibō**, conjug. of, 744, 758; root verb, reduplicated, 744, 758; form of **bibit**, 828; perf. of, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 922; **dō bibere**, with infin. of purpose, 2164; **ministrō bibere**, 2164.  
**biceps**, form of, 110; decl. of, 533.  
**bilis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**bīnī**, formation of, 317; decl. of, 643; **bīnūm**, 462, 643; use of, 2405, 2420.  
**bipennis**, decl. of, 551.  
**bipēs**, decl. of, 532, 636.  
**bis**, quantity, 2433.  
**bis tantō quam**, 1895.  
**blandior**, prin. parts of, 1021.  
**bōlētus**, gender of, 408.  
**bonus**, form of, 118; comparison of, 355; decl. of, 613; **bonī** as gen. of value, 1275.  
**bōs**, gender and decl. of, 494.  
**brevis**, form of, 135; decl. of, 630, 631.  
**būrim**, 548; gender of, 579.  
**Burrus**, for later **Pyrrhus**, 20.  
**c**, the sign, earliest form of, 17; used as abbreviation, 18; sound of, 17, 45; **q** written for, 17, 690; initial, how treated, 124; medial, disappearance of, 134-136; changed to **g**, 119, 151; before **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, causing development of vowel, 89, 90.  
**cadō**, compounds of, 860, 930; prin. parts of, 930; followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.  
**caedēs**, decl. of, 523, 563; form **caedis**, 541.

## Index of Latin Words.

- caedō**, perf. of, 858; prin. parts of, 930; compounds of, 930.  
**caelebs**, defective, 624.  
**caelestis**, -um in gen. plur., 563.  
**caelicolūm**, gen., 439, 2449.  
**caelite**, **caelitēs**, decl. of, 477, 626.  
**caleō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006.  
**calēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**calix**, decl. of, 473; gender of, 473, 581.  
**callis**, gender of, 579.  
**calveō**, defective, 809.  
**calx**, *heel*, decl. of, 531; gender of, 531, 581.  
**calx**, *limestone*, decl. of, 531; gender of, 531, 581.  
**canālis**, decl. of, 520, 554; gender of, 579.  
**candeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**candēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**cāneō**, defective, 809.  
**cānēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**canis** (**canēs**), gender and decl. of, 486, 500, 566.  
**canō**, prin. parts of, 924.  
**capāx**, with gen., 1267.  
**capēssō**, prin. parts of, 970.  
**capiō**, conjug. of, 784; pres. stem of, 832, 836; perf. of, 863; forms **capsō**, &c., 887; prin. parts of, 940; compounds of, 940.  
**cardō**, decl. of, 485; gender of, 485, 574.  
**carduus**, gender of, 408.  
**careō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006; constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**carnifex**, form of, 108.  
**carō**, decl. of, 545; gender of, 545, 574.  
**carpō**, prin. parts of, 953; compounds of, 953.  
**Carthāginī**, see **Karthāginī**.  
**Carystus**, how used in abl., 1308.  
**cassēs**, gender of, 579.  
**caudex**, see **cōdex**.  
**caulis**, gender of, 579.  
**causa**, gen. of definition with **causā**, 1257; **causā** expressing cause, &c., 1317; **causā** resembling prep., 1406; **nūlla causa est quīn**, 1983; **causā** with gerundive construction or gerund, 2164, 2258, 2270.  
**cautēs**, decl. of, 523.  
**caveō**, perf. of, 864; prin. parts of, 996; **cavē**, used of several persons, 1075; **cavē**, **cavē nē**, **cavētō nē**, &c., with subjv., 1585, 1711, 1950, 1960.  
**-ce** (**-c**), enclitic, 96, 179; in **hīc**, 663, 659; in **istic**, **illic**, 669, 670; in **sīc**, 2015; quantity, 2433; **cedo**, 805; coordinated, 1712; with short **o**, 2443.  
**cēdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**cēlō**, with double acc., 1169; with **dē** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171.  
**cēnātus**, with act. meaning, 907.  
**cēnseō**, prin. parts of, 1005; coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2175, 2193.  
**centum**, indeclinable, 637.  
**cernō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 964; **cernitur**, impersonally, 2181.  
**certē**, in answers, 1512; correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**certō**, verb, with dat., 1186.  
**certō**, adv., in answers, 1512.  
**cēsor**, form for **cēnsor**, 131.  
**cēterum**, use of, 1676, 1683.  
**cētus**, decl. of, 508.  
**ceu**, 2118.  
**ch**, sound of, 49; use of, 49.  
**Chersonēsus**, in loc., 1336.  
**cicer**, gender of, 573.  
**cicur**, defective, 624.  
**cieō**, forms of, 821; perf. partic. of, 918; prin. parts of, 1002; defective, 1002.  
**cingō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**circā**, adv. and prep., 707, 1410, 1412; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253.  
**circiter**, prep., 1410; not compounded, 1406.  
**circum**, prep., 1410; compounds of, with acc., 1137; with double acc., 1138; with dat., 1194, 1195; other constructions with, 1196.  
**circumdō**, conjug. of, 757; constructions with, 1199.  
**circumfodiō**, forms of, 791.  
**circumfundō**, constructions with, 1199.  
**circum stō**, perf. of, 860.  
**cis**, comparison of, 357; prep., 1410; quantity, 2433.  
**citerior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**citimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357.  
**citius quam**, 1897.  
**cito**, with **o** lengthened, 65; with short **o**, 2442.  
**citrā**, prep. and adv., 1410, 1412.  
**citus**, 918, 2436.  
**cīvis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**clādēs**, decl. of, 523; form **clādis**, 541.  
**clam**, as adv., 1415; with acc., 1415; with abl., 1415.



## Index of Latin Words.

- clangō**, defective, 808.  
**clārēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**classis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**claudō**, **claudeō**, defective, 808.  
**claudō**, **clūdō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958; form **clūdō**, 81.  
**clāvis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.  
**Clōdius**, form of, 81.  
**clueō**, defective, 809.  
**Cn.**, abbreviation for **Gnaeus**, 18.  
**cōdex**, form of, 81.  
**coemō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**coēō**, with dat., 1186.  
**coepī**, defective, 812; synopsis of, 812; forms of pres. system, 99, 813, 940; form **coēpī**, 99, 813, 863; form **coeptūrus**, 814; prin. parts of, 940; use of act. and pass. of, 1483.  
**coerceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**cōgnōscō**, form of, 131; perf. partic. of, 919; prin. parts of, 965; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**cōgō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**collis**, decl. of, 556; gender of, 579.  
**colō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**colus**, gender of, 447.  
**com-**, compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; other constructions with, 1190, 1196, 1197.  
**combūrō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**comedō**, conjug. of, 771.  
**comitia**, with gerundive construction, 2254.  
**comminīscor**, prin. parts of, 980.  
**commiserēscit**, construction with, 1283.  
**commodum**, acc. as adv., 701, 1156.  
**commonēfaciō**, with double acc., 1291; with acc. and gen. or **dē** and abl., 1291.  
**commoneō**, with double acc., 1291; with acc. and gen. or **dē** and abl., 1291.  
**commūnis**, constructions with, 1202, 1238.  
**commūtō**, with abl., 1389; with **cum**, 1389.  
**cōmō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**comparō**, construction with, 1197.  
**compectus**, 980.  
**compede**, **compedium**, 532; stems of, 569; gender of, 532, 572.  
**compercō**, forms of, 930; **comperce** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584.  
**comperiō**, **comperior**, forms of, 1012; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**compescō**, prin. parts of, 976; **conpesce** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584.  
**compingō**, prin. parts of, 938; perf. of, 863.  
**complector**, pres. stem of, 835; prin. parts of, 985.  
**compleō**, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386.  
**complicō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**complūrēs**, decl. of, 623.  
**compos**, defective, 624; with gen., 1263; quantity of second **o** in, 2457.  
**comprimō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**compungō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**concēdō**, coordinated, 1710; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 1954; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**concidō**, perf. of, 860.  
**concinō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**concitus (concītus)**, 919.  
**concolor**, decl. of, 537, 559.  
**concors**, decl. of, 532, 559.  
**concrēduō**, 756.  
**concupiscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**concurrō**, with dat., 1186.  
**condignē**, with abl., 1392.  
**condōnō**, with double acc., 1172.  
**cōnficior**, **cōnfiō**, 790.  
**cōnfidō**, forms of, 801, 1488; with dat., 1181; with abl., 1349.  
**cōnfiteor**, prin. parts of, 1010.  
**cōnfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**cōnfringō**, prin. parts of, 938.  
**congruō**, prin. parts of, 947; **congru-**  
**ēre** for **congruere**, 819.  
**cōniveō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**conlocō**, with **in** and abl., 1424; with gerundive construction, 2250; with supine, 2271.  
**conquīrō**, prin. parts of, 967.  
**conrigō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**conruptus**, 938.  
**cōnscius**, with gen., 1263; with gen. and dat. or dat. alone, 1265; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.  
**cōnserō**, prin. parts of, 922.  
**cōnspargō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**cōstituō**, prin. parts of, 947; with **in** and abl., 1424; with purpose clause, 1950; with infin., 1953, 2169.  
**cōnsulō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**cōnsultus**, adj., with gen., 1263; with **iūre**, 1268.  
**contāgēs**, decl. of, 603.  
**contendō**, with dat., 1186; with purpose clause, 1951; with acc. and infin., 1954; with infin., 2169.  
**conticēscō**, **conticiscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**contineō**, with **quīn**, 1986.



## Index of Latin Words.

**contingō**, prin. parts of, 925.  
**continuō**, correlative of **sī**, 2067.  
**contrā**, form of, 707; prep. and adv., 1410, 1412; position of, 1434; **contrā quam**, 1895; quantity of final vowel of, 2467.  
**contremiscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**contundō**, perf. of, 861, 931; perf. partic. of, 931.  
**coquō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**cōram**, adv., 702; prep., 1417; with instrumental abl., 1300.  
**corbis**, gender of, 579.  
**cornū**, gender of, 586; decl. of, 589.  
**cortex**, gender of, 581.  
**cōs**, decl. of, 430, 477; gender of, 477, 576.  
**cōsol**, form for **cōnsul**, 131.  
**cottidiānus**, accompanying **hīc**, 2350.  
**cōturnīx**, with **ō** shortened, 62.  
**coxendīx** (**coxendix**), gender and decl. of, 473.  
**crassus**, with acc. appended, 1130.  
**crēbrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**crēdō**, conjug. of, 757; with dat. of person and gen. of thing, 1292.  
**crēduam**, &c., 756.  
**crepō**, prin. parts of, 993; form of compounds of, 993.  
**crēscō**, prin. parts of, 965; **crētus** with abl., 1312.  
**crīmen**, abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280.  
**crūdēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**crux**, gender and decl. of, 473; **malam crucem** and **in malam crucem**, 1165.  
**cubō**, forms of, 993; compounds of, 993.  
**cucumis**, decl. of, 491, 499, 518, 548, 554; gender of, 579.  
**cūdō**, prin. parts of, 942.  
**cum**, conj., **quom**, 112; in expressions of time after which, 1397; with infin., 1539, 1868, 1869, 2317; with perf. indic. of anterior time, 1613; with fut. perf., 1626; pres. of vivid narration combined with, 1752; general statement of uses, 1859; temporal, 1860–1873; of indef. time, with indic., 1860; of indef. time, with subjv., 1860; of definite time, 1861–1867; **cum intēreā**, **interim**, **etiam tum**, **nōndum**, **haudum**, **quidem**, **tamen**, **nihilōminus**, 1868; introducing main idea, 1869; attributively with words denoting time or with **est**, &c., 1870; **audiō cum**, 1870; **meminī cum**, 1870; in expressions equivalent to subst. of time,

1871; with subjv., 1872; use with indic. and with subjv., compared, 1873; explanatory, causal, concessive, 1874–1880; of coincident action, 1874; with verbs of emotion and **grātulor** and **grātiās agō**, 1875; **quippe cum**, **ut pote cum**, 1879; **cum . . . tamen**, 1880; **cum . . . tum**, 1831, 1881; **cum primum**, **cum extemplō**, 1923–1934; introducing conditional prot., 2110.  
**cum**, prep., 1417; making verb plur., 1069; with instrumental abl., 1300; with abl. of accompaniment, 1356; with **iūctus** and **cōniūctus**, 1357; with abl. of manner, 1358, 1359; with verbs of exchanging, 1389; position of, 178, 1435; intimating prot. of conditional period, 2110; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267; **īdem cum**, 2573; **cum eō** followed by **quod**, 1847.  
**cunctor**, with **quīn**, 1986; with infin., 2169.  
**cūctus**, form of, 128; used partitively, 1244; with loc. abl., 1346.  
**cupīdus**, with gen. of gerund or gerundive construction, 2258.  
**cupiō**, forms of, 791, 969; pres. stem of, 836; use of dat. of pres. partic. of, 1218; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2189, 2190; with perf. pass. infin., 2229.  
**cūr**, form of, 75; in questions, 1526; with verbs of accusing, 1852.  
**cūrō**, with dat. or acc., 1184; **cūrā ut**, **cūrātō ut**, with subjv., 1579; **cūrā nē**, **cūrātō nē**, with subjv., 1585; with subjv. coordinated, 1712; with purpose clause, 1951; **nōn cūrō** with infin., 2169; with perf. infin., 2225; with gerundive construction, 2250; with perf. partic., 2297; in causative use, 2304.  
**currō**, perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 932.  
**Cyprus**, use of acc. of, 1158.  
**d**, changed to **l**, 115; from **t**, 119, 151; initial, disappearance of, 118, 125; medial, treatment of, 137, 138, 145, 659; final, disappearance of, 143, 426; assimilation of, 145; assimilation of **ad-** in comp., 145; **dt**, the combination, its treatment, 152, 153; in abl. sing., 426, 443, 465, 507, 593, 648; in acc. sing., 648; for **t** in inscriptions, 729; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432.

## Index of Latin Words.

- dāmma**, gender of, 433.  
**danunt**, 756, 833.  
**dapis**, decl. of, 480.  
**dē**, prep., 1417; with abl. proper, 1297; comparison of, 357; compounds of, with dat., 1194, 1195; compounds of, other constructions with, 1196; expressions with, used with adjs., 1268; with **meminī** and **recorder**, 1289; with **venit in mentem**, 1290; expressing source, 1312; with abl. of material, 1314; expressing cause, &c., 1317; **susque dēque**, 1408; position of, 1435; **dē eō** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; introducing acc. and infin., 2176; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267; expression with, instead of partitive gen., 1246.  
**dea**, decl. of, 442.  
**dēbeō**, form of, 101; forms of, 1004; with dat., 1193; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; in subjv., 1498; with infin., 2169; in past tense with pres. infin., translation of, 2222; with perf. infin., 2223.  
**dēcernō**, with subj. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 1954, 2193; with infin., 1953, 2169.  
**dēcerpō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**decet**, with dat. or acc., 1184; with abl., 1392; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; with subjv. coordinated, 1709; with subj. infin., 2209; with perf. pass. and act. infin., 2230.  
**decimus**, form of, 2412; formation of, 352.  
**decōrus**, with abl., 1392.  
**dēcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**decumus**, 2412.  
**dēfetiscor**, prin. parts of, 984.  
**dēfit**, &c., 790.  
**dēfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**dēfrūtum**, with **ū** shortened, 62.  
**dēgener**, decl. of, 537, 559, 636.  
**dēgō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**dehibuistī**, 1004.  
**deinde**, disyllabic, 179; **primum (prīmō) . . . deinde . . . tum**, 1687.  
**dēleō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 1001.  
**dēmō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**dēmum, tum**, correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**dēnārius**, gen. plur. of, 462.  
**dēnique, tum**, correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**dēnotō**, with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**dēns**, decl. of, 533, 543; gender of, 580.  
**dēnsō, dēnsēō**, 820.  
**dēpeciscor**, 980.  
**depsō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**dērupier**, 975.  
**dēscendō**, prin. parts of, 950.  
**\*dēses**, defective, 624.  
**dēsīderō**, with acc. and infin., 2190.  
**dēsīnō**, forms of, 893, 964; use of act. and pass. of, 1483; with infin., 2169; with **o** shortened, 2443.  
**dēspondeō**, prin. parts of, 995.  
**dēsūm**, with dat., 1212; **nōn dēsunt quī**, 1822.  
**dētendō**, forms of, 924.  
**dēterior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**dēterreō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977; with **quīn**, 1986.  
**dēterrimus**, comparison of, 357.  
**dētineō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**dētondeō**, forms of, 995.  
**dētrahō**, with dat., 1209.  
**deūnx**, decl. of, 531; meaning of, 2427.  
**deus (dīvos, dīus)**, form of, 129; decl. of, 450, 462, 2449.  
**dēvortor**, forms of, 801.  
**dēxtāns**, decl. of, 533; gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.  
**dexter**, formation of, 347; decl. of, 616.  
**dexterior**, formation of, 348.  
**dextimus**, formation of, 351.  
**Dīāna**, quantity of **i** in, 163.  
**dīcō**, imper. of, 96, 846; imper. of compounds of, 173; form **dīxtī**, 886; form **dīxe**, 886; prin. parts of, 953; use of **dīxerim**, **dīcō**, 1555; **dīcam** after **vel**, 1670; used personally in pass., 2178; **dīcitur**, impersonally, 2181; **dīcī**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190.  
**dīēs**, gen. and dat. sing. of, 160; gender of, 597; decl. of, 601, 602; repeated in rel. sentence, 1796.  
**differō**, with dat., 1186; with **quīn**, 1986.  
**difficilis**, comparison of, 345, 359; **difficile est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2274; with supine in **-ū**, 2274.  
**diffidō**, forms of, 801, 1488.  
**diffindō**, perf. of, 861.  
**dīgnus**, with abl., 1269, 1392; with gen., 1269; with acc., 1144, 1392; with **quī**, 1819; with infin., 1819; with **ut**, 1819; with supine in **-ū**, 2276.



## Index of Latin Words.

- diligō**, perf. of, 823; prin. parts of, 953.  
**dīmicō**, forms of, 993.  
**dīnōscō** (**dīgnōscō**), 965.  
**dirruptus**, 938.  
**dīs**, decl. of, 533, 559.  
**dis-**, inseparable prep., 392, 1409.  
**discō**, form of, 134; pres. stem of, 834; perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 927.  
**discolor**, decl. of, 537.  
**discors**, decl. of, 532, 559.  
**discrepō**, with dat., 1186; **discrepāvit**, 993.  
**discumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**dispendō**, **dispendō**, forms of, 950.  
**dispār**, decl. of, 537, 561.  
**dispennite**, 950.  
**displīceō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**dissentiō**, with dat., 1186.  
**dissiciō**, form of, 146, 940.  
**dissideō**, prin. parts of, 997.  
**dissimilis**, comparison of, 345; agreeing with abl. of quality, 1240.  
**distendō**, forms of, 924.  
**distō**, with abl. of amount of difference, 1153; with dat., 1186.  
**diū**, comparison of, 364.  
**dīū**, *open sky*, quantity of *i* in, 163.  
**dīus**, quantity of *i* in, 163.  
**dīves**, decl. of, 477, 625; defective, 624; with gen., 1264; with abl., 1268, 1387.  
**dīvidō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**dīvus** (**dīvos**), see **deus**.  
**dō**, two verbs, 754; root verb, 744; conjug. of, 744, 754; **duim**, &c., 756, 841; quantity of *a* in, 755; old forms of, 756, 841; **interduō**, **concrēduō**, **crēduam**, &c., 756; compounds of, 757; perf. of, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922; with **vēnum**, 1165; **nōmen dō**, case with, 1214; with subjv. coordinated, 1712; **dō bībere** with infin. of purpose, 2164; with infin. as obj., 2206; with acc. of gerundive construction, 2250; with supine, 2271; with perf. partic., 2297; form **dō** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **dem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.  
**doceō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 1004; with **dē** and abl., 1170; with double acc., 1169; constructions with pass. of, 1171; with acc. and infin., 2175, 2197; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**dōdrāns**, decl. of, 533; gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.  
**doleō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006; with acc., 1139; with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with acc. and infin., 2188.  
**-dolēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**domō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**domus**, gender of, 447, 588; decl. of, 594; **domī**, 594, 708; use of, 1337; **domō**, as adv., 703; use of, 1311; with **in**, 1337; **domuī**, loc., 594, 1337; **domum**, use of, 1162-1164, 1129, 699; **domōs**, 1163.  
**dōnec**, form of, 140, 1991; meaning *all the time while*, 2002; meaning *until*, 1993, 2007-2009.  
**dōneque**, **dōneque cum**, 2007.  
**dōnicum**, 140, 1991, 2007, 2009.  
**dōnique**, form of, 140; use of, 1991, 2007, 2009.  
**dōnō**, with double acc., 1172; other constructions with, 1199.  
**-dormiscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**dōs**, decl. of, 430, 477; dat. sing. in **-ei**, 502; gender of, 576.  
**dubitō**, with **an**, 1782; with **quīn**, 1986, 1987; **nōn dubitō quīn** as expansion of apod., 2114; with infin., 1987, 2169; with acc. and infin., 1987; with indirect question, 1987.  
**dūcō**, imper. of, 96, 846; imper. of compounds of, 173, 846; prin. parts of, 953; with **prō** and abl., 1168; with dat., 1222; with gen. of value, 1271.  
**duelli**, loc., 1338.  
**dum**, enclitic, 179; with imper., 1572, 1573; with pres. indic. of fut. action, 1593; meanings of, 1991-1993; **dum . . . dum**, *one while . . . another*, 1992; use of, when meaning *in the time while*, 1993-1998; with pres. indic., 1995; with fut., 1996; with impf. and plup. indic. and impf. subjv., 1997; denoting cause, 1998; meaning *all the time while*, 1993, 1994, 1999-2001; of proviso, with or without **modo**, **quidem**, 1993, 1994, 2003, 2110; meaning *until*, 1993, 1994, 2004, 2005; indic. with **dum**, *while*, where subjv. with **dum**, *until*, is expected, 2006.  
**dūmī**, gender of, 408.  
**duo**, dual, 415; decl. of, 442, 464, 639, 640; with **ex** or **dē**, 1246; with short final vowel, 2442.  
**duplex**, decl. of, 531.  
**dūrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**Dūria**, gender of, 406.



## Index of Latin Words.

- e**, the vowel, pronunciation of, 26, 33, 34, 36-38; final, quantity of, 2437, 2440, 2441.
- e**, affinities of, 110; disappearance of, 92, 93, 95, 96; weakened to **i**, 79; from **i**, 71, 142; from **a**, 73; from **o**, 76; in perf. partic., 910.
- ē**, how, denoted in inscriptions, 28, 30; from **ā**, 73; from **ae**, 85; from **ai**, 86; weakened to **ī**, 79.
- ē** (**ex**), form of, 55, 142; quantity of, 2430; see **ex**.
- eapse**, &c., 680.
- ebur**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- ecastor**, with acc., 1149.
- ecce**, combined with **iste**, **ille**, 667; combined with **is**, 673; with nom., 1117; with acc., 1149; with dat., 1206.
- ecfodiō**, forms of, 791.
- ecquis**, **ecquī**, decl. of, 692; in questions, 1509.
- ecquandō**, in questions, 1509.
- ecquō**, in questions, 1509.
- edepol**, with acc., 1149.
- ēditus**, with abl., 1312.
- edō**, conjug. of, 769, 770; pass. forms of, 770; compounds of, 771; form **ēsus**, 137; form of **ēst**, 828; forms **edim**, &c., 841; form of **ēssem**, &c., 850; form of **ēsse**, 895; prin. parts of, 922.
- efficiō**, prin. parts of, 940; with purpose clause, 1951; with result clause, 1965.
- effigiēs**, decl. of, 607.
- effit**, &c., 790.
- effulgeō**, forms of, 1000.
- egeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; compound of, 1006; with gen., 1293, 1305; with abl., 1303, 1304.
- ego**, decl. of, 644-651; length of **o** in, 645, 2442; **mī**, 132; **mihī**, 60, 2446; when used, 1029; dat. of, with acc. of exclamation, 1150; with subjv. questions, 1566; **mē**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **nōs**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **nostrī** with gerundive, 2260; represented by **sē** in ind. disc., 2325; use of **nostrū**, **nostrī**, 2335; **inter nōs** expressing reciprocal relation, 2344; **ipse** with, 2376.
- egomet**, 179.
- ehem**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.
- ēheu**, quantity of **e** in, 163; with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with acc., 1149.
- eho**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.
- ei**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 43; origin and change of, 86-88, 764, 789; in inscriptions to denote **ī**, 29.
- ei**, interjection, with dat., 1206.
- ēia**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.
- ēiciō**, prin. parts of, 940.
- ēliciō**, prin. parts of, 975.
- ēluviēs**, decl. of, 607.
- em**, combined with **ille**, 667; with acc., 1149; with dat., 1206.
- ēmineō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- emō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 937; compounds of, 823, 937, 953.
- ēmorior**, forms of, 791.
- ēmungō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- ēn**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with acc., 1149; **ēn umquam** in questions, 1509.
- endo**, 1402, 1422; with short final vowel, 2442.
- ēnecō**, forms of, 993.
- enim**, introducing parenthesis, 1642; position of, 1688; meaning *indeed*, *verily*, &c., 1688; use of, 1688, 2154, 2155.
- enimvērō**, in answers, 1512.
- ēnsis**, decl. of, 522; gender of, 579.
- eō**, verb, conjug. of, 759, 762; pass. forms of, 763; compounds of, 763-767, 895; old and inscriptional forms of, 764, 765; forms with **v**, 767, 823; forms **īs**, &c., **eis**, &c., 764; form of **it**, 828; form of **eam**, &c., 842; gerundive of, 899; no supine, 900; pres. partic. of, 902; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922.
- With **exsequiās**, **īnfitiās**, **malam crucem**, **malam rem**, **vēnum**, 1165; **ī** with imper., 1572; **ī**, asyndeton with, 1641; **ī nunc**, 1641; with infin. of purpose, 2164; with supine, 2271; **īrī** with supine, 2273; with **o** shortened, 2443; quantity in **īit**, 2450.
- eō**, adv., 710; with gen., 1254.
- Ephesus**, loc. and abl. of, 1334.
- Epidamnus**, loc. and abl. of, 1334.
- Epidaurus**, loc. and abl. of, 1334.
- ergā**, prep., 1410; used after **benevolus**, 1201; expression with, instead of objective gen., 1261.
- ergō**, gen. of definition with, 1257; resembling prep., 1406; denoting inference, 1688, 2158; **ergō igitur**, 1689; **itaque ergō**, 1689; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258; with shortened **o**, 2442.
- ērigō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- ēripiō**, prin. parts of, 975.
- escit**, **escunt**, 748.

## Index of Latin Words.

- ēsuriō**, defective, 905.
- et**, connecting subst. with sing. or plur. verb, 1064-1066; **et . . . et** connecting subst. with sing. or plur. verb, 1064-1066; introducing parenthesis, 1642; meaning *also*, and *also*, 1648; meaning *but*, 1655; use of, as copulative conj., 1644-1647, 1655, 1656, 2134-2140; after **alius**, **aequō**, &c., 1653; **et nōn**, &c., 1659; **et . . . -que**, 1663; **-que . . . et**, 1664; **neque . . . et**, **et . . . neque**, 1665; **atque . . . et**, 1664; **simul et**, 1923-1934.
- etenim**, use of, 1688, 2154, 2155.
- etiam**, form of, 113; with compar., 1459; in answers, 1512; after **vel**, 1670; with **sed**, **vērūm**, 1680; **cum etiam tum**, 1868.
- etiāmsī**, 2116.
- etsī**, with abl. abs., 1374; concessive, 2116; coordinating, 2153.
- eu**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 43; change of and preservation of, 83.
- eugē**, with acc., 1149.
- ēvilēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- ex**, prep., 1417; form of, 710; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1194, 1195; compounds of, other constructions with, 1196; expression with, instead of partitive gen., 1246; with abl. proper, 1297; with abl. of separation, &c., 1304; with town and island names, 1308; expressing source, 1312; with abl. of material, 1314; denoting cause, &c., 1317; expressing manner, 1361; **ex eō** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267.
- examussum**, form of, 549, 698, 699.
- excitus, excitus**, 919.
- excubāverant**, 993.
- exedō**, conjug. of, 771.
- exerceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- exhērēs**, decl. of, 475; with gen., 1263.
- exicāveris**, 993.
- exolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.
- exos**, 2457.
- exōsus**, 814; with act. meaning, 907.
- exōsus sum**, 813.
- expergīscor**, prin. parts of, 980.
- experior**, prin. parts of, 1020.
- explicō**, prin. parts of, 993.
- explōdō (explaudō)**, 958.
- expungō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- exsequiās**, with **eō**, 1165.
- exsiliō**, forms of, 1019.
- exsolvō**, construction with, 1303, 1304.
- exsorbeō**, forms of, 1006.
- expectātiōne**, with compar., 1330.
- exsultās**, pres. partic., 902.
- extemplō, cum extemplō**, 1923-1934.
- extendō**, forms of, 924.
- extera**, defective, 356.
- exterī**, use of, 347.
- exterior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 356.
- extimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 356.
- extrā**, form of, 707; prep., 1410; **extrā quam**, 1894.
- extrēmus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249; **extrēmus est** with result clause, 1965.
- exuō**, prin. parts of, 947; constructions with, 1199.
- f**, changed to **b**, 118; **nf.** quantity of vowel preceding, 167; **fl**, **fr**, 169.
- facēssō**, forms of, 970.
- faciēs**, decl. of, 606, 607.
- facile**, comparison of, 361.
- facilis**, comparison of, 345, 359; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2274; with supine in **-ū**, 2274; **facile est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496.
- faciō**, parts supplied by **fīō**, 788, 1471; pass. of, 788; pres. stem of, 836; in composition, 394, 790, 940; imper. of, 96, 846; perf. of, 863; forms **faxim**, &c., 887, 888; form **faxitur**, 888; prin. parts of, 940; with gen. of value, 1271; with abl., 1315; **fac**, **facitō**, **fac ut**, **facitō ut** with subjv., 1579, 1712; **fac nē** with subjv., 1585; with purpose clause, 1951; with result clause, 1965, 1967; with acc. and infin., 2196; with perf. partic., 2297; with pres. partic. used predicatively, 2298; in causative use, 2304.
- fallō**, prin. parts of, 932.
- falsus**, comparison of, 358.
- famēs**, decl. of, 524, 603.
- famul**, 142, 455.
- fār**, form of, 139; decl. of, 430, 489; gender of, 583.
- farcīō**, prin. parts of, 1014; compounds of, 1014.
- fārī**, 805.
- fās**, defective, 430; gender of, 578; **fās est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; with supine in **-ū**, 2274.
- fascis**, gender of, 579.
- fastīdiōsus**, with gen., 1263.



## Index of Latin Words.

- fateor**, prin. parts of, 1010; compounds of, 1010.  
**fatiscō**, defective, 808.  
**faveō**, prin. parts of, 996.  
**febris**, decl. of, 519, 550, 555.  
**fel**, gender and decl. of, 430, 482; quantity, 2433.  
**femur**, gender and decl. of, 489.  
**ferē**, quantity, 2440.  
**feriō**, defective, 810.  
**fermē**, quantity, 2440.  
**ferō**, conjug. of, 772, 780, 781; form **tulī**, 860, 2435; form **tetulī**, 781, 860; form **tolī**, 781; compound forms, **rettulī**, **rētulī**, 781, 861; defective, 780, 807, 900; form of **fert**, 828; form of **feram**, &c., 842; form of **fer**, &c., 844; prin. parts of, 922; **ferunt**, *they say*, 1033; used reflexively, 1481, 1482; **molestē ferō** with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851.  
**fertilis**, comparison of, 359; with gen., 1263.  
**ferveō**, **fervō**, 821, 866; prin. parts of, 998.  
**fervescō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**fīcus**, gender of, 408.  
**fidēlis**, constructions with, 1201.  
**fidēs**, gen. and dat. sing. of, 160; defective, 600; decl. of, 602.  
**fidō**, forms of, 801; with abl., 1349.  
**fīgō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**fīlia**, decl. of, 442; with **familiās**, 437.  
**fīlius**, gen. sing. of, 456; voc. sing. of, 459; nom. plur. **fili**, 461; dat. and abl. sing. **filis**, 464; with **familiās**, 437.  
**findō**, perf. of, 861, 2435; prin. parts of, 934; with **o** shortened, 2443.  
**fungō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**fīnis**, form of, 138; sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; decl. of, 556; gender of, 579; **fīnī** as prep. with abl., 1406, 1419; as subst. with gen., 1419; position of, 1419; **fine** with gen., 1419.  
**fiō**, conjug. of, 785, 788; quantity of **i** in, 163; supplying parts of **faciō**, 788, 1471; form **fiō**, 789; form **fieri**, 789, 895; **fiere**, 789, 895; quantity of **i** in **fieri**, &c., 789; in composition, 394, 790; defective, 807; **fit** with **quōminus**, 1977.  
**flāgitō**, with double acc., 1169; with **ab** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171; with **ut**, 1950.  
**flāveō**, defective, 809.  
**flectō**, pres. stem of, 835; prin. parts of, 960.  
**fleō**, prin. parts of, 1001; with acc., 1139.  
**-flīgō**, forms of, 953.  
**flō**, prin. parts of, 991.  
**floccl**, as gen. of value, 1272.  
**flōreō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**flōrescō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**fluō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**fodiō**, forms of, 791; pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 946.  
**follis**, gender of, 579.  
**forās**, use of, 1162.  
**forceps**, decl. of, 480; gender of, 580.  
**forfex**, gender of, 581.  
**fornix**, gender of, 581.  
**fōrsan**, with subjv., 1554.  
**fōrsitan**, form of, 712; with subjv., 1554.  
**fōrtasse**, with subjv., 1554; introducing concessive period, 2150; with subj. infin., 2209.  
**foveō**, prin. parts of, 996.  
**frangō**, perf. of, 863; prin. parts of, 938; compounds of, 938.  
**fremō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**frētus**, with abl., 1349.  
**fricō**, prin. parts of, 993; compounds of, 993.  
**frigescō**, prin. parts of, 959.  
**frūgī**, comparison of, 353; indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431; with **bonae**, 1220.  
**fruor**, prin. parts of, 978; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380; use of gerundive of, 2244.  
**frūstra**, **frūstrā**, 701, 707, 2467.  
**fugiō**, pres. stem of, 836; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 940; **fuge** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584, 2170.  
**fulgeō**, forms of, 1000.  
**fundō**, prin. parts of, 944.  
**fungor**, prin. parts of, 979; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380; use of gerundive of, 2244.  
**fūnis**, gender of, 579.  
**furfur**, gender of, 583.  
**fūstis**, decl. of, 521, 555; gender of, 579.  
**g**, introduction of, 17; form of, 17; followed by **v**, 24; sound of, 17, 45; from **c**, 119, 151; initial, before **n**, disappearance of, 124; medial, disappearance of, 135; and **gu**, assimilation of, 149; **gn**, quantity of vowel preceding, 167.  
**Gāia**, abbreviated, 18.  
**Gāius**, abbreviated, 18; form of, 129; quantity of **a** in, 163; decl. of, 161, 458.  
**ganniō**, defective, 810.  
**gaudeō**, forms of, 801, 1488; with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with **sī**, 2068; with acc. and infin., 2188; with perf. infin., 2231.



## Index of Latin Words.

- gemō**, prin. parts of, 972; with acc., 1139.  
**generātus**, with abl., 1312.  
**genius**, voc. sing. of, 459.  
**genū**, gender of, 586; decl. of, 592.  
**gerō**, form of, 116; prin. parts of, 953.  
**gignō**, forms of, 973; **genitus** with abl., 1312.  
**glis**, decl. of, 538, 544; stems of, 569; gender of, 579.  
**gliscō**, defective, 808.  
**glōmus**, 62, 491.  
**glōrior**, with abl., 1349.  
**glūbō**, defective, 808.  
**Gnaeus**, abbreviated, 18; form of, 99, 129.  
**gracilis**, comparison of, 345.  
**gradior**, conjug. of, 799; compounds of, 791, 799, 986; pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 986.  
**grātia**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; **grātiā**, gen. of definition with, 1257; **grātiā**, expressing cause, &c., 1317; **grātiā**, resembling prep., 1406; **grātiās agō** with **quod** and **cum**, 1852, 1875; **eā grātiā . . . quod**, 1854; **grātiā** with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.  
**grātulor**, with **quod**, 1852; with **cum**, 1852, 1875.  
**grave est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**grex**, decl. of, 472; gender of, 581.  
**grūs**, gender and decl. of, 494.  
**guminasium**, form of, 90.  
**h**, from sonant aspirate, 117; not a cons., 168; medial, disappearance of, 132; elision before, 2482, 2493.  
**habeō**, prin. parts of, 1004; compounds of, 1004; with **prō** and abl., 1168; with dat., 1222; with gen. of value, 1271; **habētō**, 1576; with perf. partic., 1606, 2297; with gerundive, 2245, 2250.  
**Hadria**, gender of, 433.  
**haereō**, form of, 116; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1000; with dat., 1186.  
**hau**, 143; use of, 1450.  
**haud**, see **haut**.  
**hauddum**, following **cum**, 1868.  
**hauriō**, fut. partic. of, 905; forms of, 1014.  
**hausciō**, formation of, 396, 1450.  
**haut**, **haud**, with adjs., advs., verbs, 1449; **haud sciō an**, &c., 1449, 1554, 1782.  
**havē**, **avē**, 805.  
**hebeō**, defective, 809.  
**hebes**, decl. of, 533, 635.  
**hēia**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with short final vowel, 2438.  
**hem**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.  
**hercle**, in answers, 1513.  
**herī**, **here**, 1341.  
**heu**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with acc., 1149; with gen., 1295.  
**heus**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.  
**hīc**, decl. of, 658-665; nom. plur., **hīsce**, 461, 664, 665; dat. and abl. plur., **hībus**, 664, 665; formation of, 659, 662; with short vowel, 664, 2466; inscriptional forms of, 665; full form with **-ce**, 663; **hoice**, 658; **hīcine**, 179, 663; with correlatives, 695.  
 Adj. equivalent to gen., 1098; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1156; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; **hūius** as gen. of value, 1272; with rel., 1797; correlative of **quī**, 1831; used instead of repeated rel., 1833; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; **hōc . . . quō**, 1973; as connective, 2129, 2130; **hōc ipsum**, **tōtum hōc**, as attribute of infin., 2215; pointing out what is near in place, time, or thought, 2347; referring to the speaker, 2348; **haec** meaning *the realm, our country*, &c., 2349; expressing something familiar, with shade of contempt, 2350; referring to words of a sentence, 2351; **hīc** and **ille** contrasted, 2352-2355; in concessions, 2361; **īdem** used with, 2372.  
**hīc**, adv., 708, 1340; defined by loc., 1340; quantity of vowel in, 2466.  
**hiemps (hiems)**, form of, 120, 495; decl. of, 430.  
**hinc**, adv., 710; as coordinating word, 1691.  
**hīscō**, defective, 808.  
**Hispalis**, decl. of, 518, 549, 554; in abl. with **in**, 1335.  
**homo**, **hominēs sunt quī**, 1822; **hominem** as indef., 2212; expressing feeling, as admiration or contempt, 2365; with short final vowel, 2442.  
**honōrificus**, comparison of, 353.  
**horreō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with acc., 1139.  
**horrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**hosticapās**, nom., 436.  
**hostis**, decl. of, 517, 552.  
**hūc**, with gen., 1254.

## Index of Latin Words.

- humilis**, comparison of, 345.  
**humus**, gender of, 447; **humī**, loc., 460; use of **humī**, 1337; **humō**, use of, 1311.
- i**, as vowel and as cons., how represented, 21-23, 29; the vowel, pronunciation of, 26, 33, 34, 37, 38; the cons., pronunciation of, 45; the cons., how represented, 22, 23; the cons., quantity of vowel preceding, 167; the cons., medial, disappearance of, 128; **ii** (cons. and vowel), the combination, 112; interchange of vowel and cons., 113; **i longa**, 22, 29; final, quantity of, 60, 61, 65, 2437, 2445, 2446.
- i**, change of **u** especially before **b**, **p**, **m**, **f** to **i**, 35, 78, 108; from **a**, 74; from **ā**, 74; from **e**, 79; from **o**, 77; from **u**, 78; medial, disappearance of, 94, 95; weakened to **e**, 71, 142; in perf. subjv., 878; in fut. perf., 883.
- i**, how denoted in inscriptions, 29, 30; from **ē**, 79; from **ai**, **ae**, 86; from **oi**, **oe**, 87; from **ei**, 88, 764, 789; in perf. subjv., 877; in fut. perf., 884.
- iaceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- iaciō**, form of, in compounds, 112, 146, 940; pres. stem of, 836; perf. of, 863; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 940.
- iamdiū**, accent of, 178.
- ibī**, quantity, 60, 2446; form of, 709; **ubī** . . . **ibī**, 1831.
- ibīdem**, quantity, 60.
- īcī**, forms of, 937.
- idcircō**, as coordinating word, 1691; **idcircō** . . . **quod** (**quia**), 1854, 1855, 2067; before **ut**, **nē**, 1961; correlative of **sī**, 2018, 2067.
- īdem**, decl. of, 676-678; abl. of, with **locī**, 1252; correlative of **quī**, 1831; used instead of repeated rel., 1833; connecting two different predicates to same person or thing, 2371; used with **hīc**, &c., 2372; followed by **quī**, &c., meaning *the same as*, 2373.
- ideō**, as coordinating word, 1691; **ideō** . . . **quod**, 1854; **ideō** . . . **quia**, 1854, 1855, 1858, 2067; before **ut**, **nē**, 1961; correlative of **sī**, 2067.
- idōneus**, with dat. and acc., 1201; with **quī**, 1819; with infin., 1819.
- idūs**, gender of, 588.
- iecur**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- igitur**, position of, 1688; **ergō igitur**, 1689; correlative of **sī**, 2018; use of, 1688, 2158.
- ignis**, decl. of, 521, 555.
- ignōrō**, with **haud**, 1449.
- ignōscō**, form of, 131; fut. partic. of, 905; prin. parts of, 965.
- ilicet**, form of, 712; with acc., 1149.
- ilicō**, adv., 698, 703; correlative of **sī**, 2067; with shortened **o**, 2442.
- ille**, form of, 142; decl. of, 656-659, 666-668; **illut**, 659; old and inscriptional forms of, 667, 668; combined with **ecce** and **em**, 667; with correlatives, 695.
- Adj. equivalent to gen., 1098; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; with subjv. questions, 1566; with rel., 1797; correlative of **quī**, 1831; used instead of repeated rel., 1833; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; of ind. disc. representing **tū** and **vōs** of direct discourse, 2325; **hīc** and **ille** contrasted, 2352-2355; pointing to what is remote in place, time, or thought, 2358; pointing out a celebrity, 2359; indicating change of subj., 2360; in concessions, 2361; in poetry, to repeat a thing with emphasis, 2362; in poetry, to emphasize the second of two ideas, 2363; in poetry, to anticipate the real subj., 2364; **īdem** used with, 2372; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.
- illi**, **illic**, adv., 708; use of, 1340; quantity of second **i**, 2466.
- illic**, form of, 79; decl. of, 669, 670; rare forms of, 670; quantity of second **i**, 2466; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.
- imber**, form of, 89; decl. of, 525, 542, 556.
- Imbro**s, in abl. with **in**, 1334.
- imbuō**, prin. parts of, 947.
- immāne quantum**, 1790.
- immemor**, decl. of, 537, 559.
- immineō**, defective, 809.
- immō**, in answers, 1514; with shortened **o**, 2442; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.
- impār**, decl. of, 537, 561.
- impediō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977; with acc. and infin., 2203.
- imperō**, use of, 2202.
- impertiō**, constructions with, 1199.
- impingō**, prin. parts of, 938; perf. of, 863.
- impius**, constructions with, 1201.
- impleō**, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386.
- implicō**, prin. parts of, 993.
- impos**, quantity of **o** in, 2457.



## Index of Latin Words.

- imposisse**, 972.  
**impūbēs** (*impūbis*), decl. of, 491, 624, 625.  
**īmus**, comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**in**, comparison of, 357; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196, 1198; with acc. of names of towns and islands, 1158; with **urbem** and **oppidum**, 1159; with country names and appellatives, 1161; with **domum**, **domōs**, 1164; with **malam crucem** and **malam rem**, 1165; used after adjs., 1201, 1268; expressions with, for dat. of tendency or result, 1221; expression with, instead of partitive gen., 1246; expression with, instead of objective gen., 1261; with **urbe** and **oppidō**, 1333; with abl. of town and island names, 1334, 1335; with abl., of **domus**, 1337; with loc. abl., 1299, 1346, 1347; in expressions of time, 1353; older **endo**, 1402, 1422; older **indu**, 1422; with acc. and abl., 1423, 1424; in **eō** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2253; with abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2267; quantity, 2433.  
**in-**, privative, with gerundives, 2249.  
**incertum an**, 1782.  
**incēssō**, prin. parts of, 970.  
**incidō**, defective, 905.  
**incipiō**, prin. parts of, 940.  
**incitus** (*incitus*), 919.  
**inclusus** (*inclitus*), 919; comparison of, 358.  
**increpāvit, increpārit**, 993.  
**incubāvēre, incubitus**, 993.  
**incumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**incutiō**, prin. parts of, 961.  
**inde**, enclitic, 179; with partitive gen., 1253; as coordinating word, 1691; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
**indigeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with gen., 1293, 1305; with abl., 1293.  
**indignor**, with **quod, quia, quom**, 1851; with acc. and infin., 2188.  
**indignus**, with abl., 1269, 1392; with gen., 1269; with **quī**, 1819; with infin., 1819; with **ut**, 1819; with supine in **-ū**, 2276.  
**indolēs**, decl. of, 523.  
**indō nōmen**, case with, 1214.  
**indu**, 1422, 2444.  
**indulgeō**, prin. parts of, 999.  
**induō**, prin. parts of, 947; constructions with, 1199.  
**ineptiō**, defective, 810.  
**iners**, form of, 73; decl. of, 533.  
**īnfera**, defective, 356.  
**īnferī**, use of, 347.  
**īnferior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 356.  
**īnferne**, with short final vowel, 2440.  
**īnfirmus**, comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**īnfīnitum est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**īnfit**, 790.  
**īnfitiās**, defective, 430; with **eō**, 1165.  
**īnfrā**, form of, 93; not compounded, 1406; prep. and adv., 1410, 1412; **īnfrā quam**, 1894.  
**īnfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**inger**, imper. of **ingerō**, 846.  
**ingruō**, prin. parts of, 947.  
**īniquus**, constructions with, 1201.  
**īnliciō**, prin. parts of, 956.  
**īnlīdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**īnmittō**, construction with, 1198.  
**īnops**, decl. of, 535, 559, 636; with gen., 1263.  
**īnpercō** (*im-*), forms of, 930.  
**inquam**, conjug. of, 759-761; with direct quotations, 760; defective, 760, 805; form of **inquit**, 828; prin. parts of, 922; 3rd pers. sing. with indef. subj., 1033.  
**īnquiēs**, defective, 430, 477.  
**īnscius**, with gen., 1263.  
**īnsiliō**, prin. parts of, 1019.  
**īnsinuō**, construction with, 1198.  
**īnspergō**, constructions with, 1199.  
**īnstar**, defective, 430.  
**īnsuper quam**, 1895.  
**īntellegō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**inter**, form of, 710; prep., 1410; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; expression with, instead of partitive gen., 1246; position of, 1434; with infin. as obj., 2205; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253; **inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē**, expressing reciprocal relations, 2344.  
**īntercēdō**, with **nē**, 1960.  
**īnterclūdō**, cases with, 1199, 1303, 1304; with **quōminus**, 1977; with **nē**, 1977.  
**īnterdicō**, cases with, 1199; with purpose clause, 1950; with **nē**, 1960.  
**īnterduō**, 756.



## Index of Latin Words.

**intereā**, with partitive gen., 1253; **cum intereā**, 1868.  
**interemō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**intereō**, followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.  
**interest**, constructions with, 1276-1279.  
**interfieri**, 790.  
**interim**, **cum interim**, 1868.  
**interior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**interlegō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**intermittō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**internōscō**, prin. parts of, 965.  
**interrogō**, with double acc., 1169; with **dē** and **abl.**, 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171.  
**intervallum**, use of **abl.** of, 1399.  
**intibus**, gender of, 408.  
**intimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**intonō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**intrā**, in expressions of time, 1396; prep., 1410; **intrā . . . quam**, 1929.  
**invehō**, used reflexively, 1482.  
**inveniō**, used personally in pass., 2178.  
**inveterāscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**invicem**, adv., 699; **invicem inter sē**, **invicem sē**, **invicem**, expressing reciprocal relations, 2345.  
**invictus**, comparison of, 358.  
**invitus**, comparison of, 358; use of **dat.** of, 1218.  
**iō**, with **voc. nom.** and **voc.**, 1123.  
**ipse**, form of, 76, 142; comparison of, 358; decl. of, 656, 657, 679, 680; gen. of, in apposition with possess. pron., 1235; with **abl. abs.**, 1366; **ipsum**, **hōc ipsum**, as attribute of **infin.**, 2215; in contrasts, 2374, 2375; with personals and reflexives, 2376; standing for **sē** or **suus**, 2377; meaning *actual, positive, even*, 2379; meaning *regular, proper, real*, 2380; and **et ipse**, meaning *as well, likewise, too*, 2381; meaning *alone, mere*, 2382; meaning *exactly, just, precisely, right*, 2383; meaning *of oneself, voluntarily, of one's own motion*, 2384.  
**ipsissimus**, 358.  
**ipsus**, 680.  
**irāscor**, with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851.  
**is**, **dat. sing.** of, 160, 672; decl. of, 656-659, 671-674; **it**, 659; stems of, 672; old and inscriptional forms of, 673, 674; combined with **ecce**, 673; in table of correlatives, 695.  
Adj. equivalent to **gen.**, 1098; **id quod**, 1811; **is, ēius modī** followed by **rel. sentence** of characteristic or

result, 1818; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; **acc.** used adverbially, 1129, 1144, 1146, 1156, 1840; **neut.** with partitive **gen.**, 1248; **abl.** of, with **locī**, 1252; with **rel.**, 1797; correlative of **quī**, 1831; used instead of repeated **rel.**, 1833; correlative of **ut, ut nōn**, 1970; **eō . . . quō**, 1973; as connective, 2129, 2130; **eum**, **subj.** of **infin.**, omitted, 2183; in concessions, 2361; referring to something named in context, 2365; referring to something named before or after, 2366; with connective, denoting important addition, 2367; indicating something restrained or restricted by a **rel.** or **indef.**, 2368; used for reflexive, 2370; quantity, 2433.  
**iste**, form of, 76, 142; decl. of, 656-659, 666, 667; **istut**, 659; old forms of, 667; combined with **ecce**, 667; with correlatives, 695.

With **rel.**, 1797; correlative of **ut, ut nōn**, 1970; pointing out something connected with person addressed, 2356; expressing contempt, 2357; in concessions, 2361; **īdem** used with, 2372; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.

**istī**, **istic**, adv., 708, 1340; quantity of second **i**, 2466.

**istic**, decl. of, 669, 670; rare forms of, 670; quantity of second **i**, 2466.

**istice (istic)**, **pron.**, 179.

**istice (istic)**, adv., 179.

**istūc**, form of, 659; **īdem** used with, 2372; with long **u**, 2448.

**ita, ita enim vērō, ita vērō**, in answers, 1512; **nōn ita** in answers, 1513; correlative of **ut, ut nōn**, 1831, 1937, 1970; correlative of **tamquam**, 1908; preceding **quīn**, 1988; correlative of **dum, quoad, quamdiū**, 1999; correlative of **dum nē**, 2003; correlative of **sī**, 2018; correlative of **quasi, tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; expressing affirmative coordination, 2159; introducing **acc.** and **infin.**, 2176; with short final vowel, 2438.

**itaque**, position of, 1688; **itaque ergō, ergō itaque**, 1689; use of, 1688, 2158.

**item**, correlative of **ut**, 1831, 1937.

**iter**, decl. of, 500; gender of, 573.

**itidem**, correlative of **ut**, 1937.

**iūbar**, gender and decl. of, 489.

**iubeō**, form of **iūssī**, 82; forms of, 1000; with **subjv.** coordinated, 1708, 2200; with **acc.** and **infin.**, 2198; with **ut**,

## Index of Latin Words.

- 2200; used personally in pass., 2201; in causative use, 2304.
- iūdicium**, abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280.
- iūdicō**, used personally in pass., 2178.
- iuncus**, gender of, 408.
- iungō**, prin. parts of, 954; with dat., 1186; **iunctus** with **cum**, 1357.
- Iuppiter**, form of, 74; formation of, 389; decl. of, 494, 500.
- iūrātus**, with active meaning, 907.
- iūrō**, with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.
- iūs**, *right*, decl. of, 491, 496, 498; dat. sing. in **-ē**, 501, 507; **iūre cōsultus**, **peritus**, 1268.
- iūs**, *broth*, decl. of, 491.
- iuvenis**, comparison of, 353, 354; gender and decl. of, 486, 500, 566.
- iuvō**, perf. of, 864; form **iuerint**, 891; fut. partic. of, 905; prin. parts of, 990.
- iūxtā**, not compounded, 1406; prep. and adv., 1410, 1412; **iūxtā quam**, 1890.
- j**, the character, 23.
- k**, supplanted by **c**, 17; used as abbreviation, 18.
- kalendae**, abbreviated, 18; no sing., 417.
- Karthāginī**, 504, 708, 1331; **-ē**, 1343.
- l**, doubled, pronunciation of, 48; after **c**, 90; after medial **u**, 93; before **i**, 94; from **d** or **r**, 115; preceded by mute or **f**, 169.
- lābor**, prin. parts of, 983.
- lac**, decl. of, 478.
- lacēssō**, prin. parts of, 970.
- \*laciō**, pres. stem of, 836.
- lacteō**, defective, 809.
- lacus**, decl. of, 592.
- laedō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.
- Laenās**, accent of, 173.
- laetor**, with abl., 1349; with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with acc. and infin., 2188.
- lāmentor**, with acc., 1139.
- languēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- lanx**, decl. of, 531.
- lār**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- largior**, prin. parts of, 1021.
- largiter**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- largus**, with gen., 1264.
- lateō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- latēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- lātus**, partic., form of, 1115, 123, 125.
- lātus**, adj., with acc. appended, 1130.
- laudō**, conjug. of, 792, 793; use of pass. of, 1491.
- lavō**, forms of, 820, 864, 990; prin. parts of, 990.
- legō**, prin. parts of, 937; compounds of, 937.
- Lēmnus**, use of acc. of, 1158; use of abl. of, 1334; use of loc. of, 1334.
- lēnībunt**, 852.
- Lēthē**, gender of, 406.
- Leucēsius**, form of, 83.
- levō**, with gen., 1294; with abl., 1303, 1304.
- lēx**, abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280.
- liber**, **librī**, in titles of books, 1115; use of abl. of, 1345.
- liber**, with gen., 1306; with abl., 1306; with prep., 1306.
- liberālis**, with gen. 1263.
- liberō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304; used personally in pass., 2178.
- libet**, form of, 78.
- liceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- liceor**, prin. parts of, 1009.
- licet**, forms of, 816, 817; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; **sī licuerit**, 1632; coordinated, 1710; as correlative of **quamvis**, 1904; with subj. infin., 2209, 2214; with concessive partic., 2295.
- liēn**, gender of, 583.
- Liger**, decl. of, 519, 544, 556.
- linō**, pres. stem of, 832, 833; perf. partic. of, 918; forms of, 964.
- linquō**, prin. parts of, 938.
- linter**, see **lunter**.
- liqueō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- liquēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- lis**, form of, 123; decl. of, 533; stems of, 569.
- littera**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418.
- litus**, 918, 2436.
- liveō**, defective, 809.
- locō**, with **in** and abl., 1424; with gerundive, 2250.
- locuplēs**, decl. of, 533.
- locus**, form of, 123; use of abl. of, 1344, 1345; repeated in rel. sentence, 1796.
- longē**, 705; **longē ab**, 1308; with compar., 1459; with superl., 1466.
- longius**, without **quam**, 1328; with **quam**, 1328; with abl., 1328.
- longus**, with acc. appended, 1130; **longus est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496.
- loquor**, prin. parts of, 978.
- lubet** (**libet**), forms of, 816, 817.



## Index of Latin Words.

- lūceō**, prin. parts of, 999.  
**lūcēscit**, impersonal, 1034.  
**lūcēscō**, **lūcīscō**, prin. parts of, 959.  
**lūcet**, impersonal, 1034.  
**lūdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**luēs**, decl. of, 430.  
**lūgeō**, prin. parts of, 999; with acc., 1139; with acc. and infin., 2188.  
**lunter** (*linter*), decl. of, 525; gender of, 573.  
**luō**, prin. parts of, 947.  
**lūxuriēs**, decl. of, 605.
- m**, after *c*, 89, 90; medial, disappearance of, 131; before *n*, 90; final, how treated, 46, 140; assimilation of, 147; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432; final, elided, 2493-2495.
- madeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**madēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**Maecenās**, accent of, 173.  
**maereō**, defective, 809; with acc., 1139; with *quod*, *quia*, *quom*, 1851.  
**mage**, form of, 71, 142, 363.  
**magis**, form of, 363; as sign of compar., 360; *magis . . . quam*, 1457; with compar., 1463; *magis quod*, &c., . . . *quam quō*, &c., 1855; *nōn magis quam*, 1889.  
**magister**, formation of, 348.  
**māgnificus**, comparison of, 353.  
**māgnus**, comparison of, 353; agreeing with dat. of tendency or result, 1220; *māgnī* as gen. of value, 1271, 1279; *māgnō* as abl. of value, 1273, 1390, 1391; *māgnū est* implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**māior**, form of, 55, 113, 135; comparison of, 353; agreeing with dat. of tendency or result, 1220; in expressions of age, 1329.  
**male**, comparison of, 363; verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187; intimating negation, 1451; quantity, 2440.  
**maledicēns**, comparison of, 354.  
**maledicus**, comparison of, 354.  
**maleficus**, comparison of, 358.  
**malevolus**, comparison of, 358.  
**mālō**, form of, 101; formation of, 396; conjug. of, 772, 775, 778, 779; form of *mālim*, &c., 841; prin. parts of, 922; use of *mālim*, *mālō*, 1555; use of *māllem*, 1560; coordination of forms of, 1707; with *ut*, 1950; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2189, 2190.  
**malus**, comparison of, 355; *malam crucem* and *malam rem*, 1165.
- manceps**, form of, 95; decl. of, 480.  
**mandō**, prin. parts of, 950; with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950.  
**maneō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**manus**, gender of, 588.  
**marcēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**mare**, form of, 71; decl. of, 526, 527, 546, 552, 557.  
**margō**, gender of, 574.  
**marmor**, gender of, 489, 575.  
**Mārspiter**, formation of, 389.  
**mās**, decl. of, 538, 544.  
**mātūrē**, comparison of, 363.  
**mātūrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**mātūrus**, comparison of, 344.  
**māximē**, as sign of superl., 360; with superl., 1466.  
**māximus**, form of, 108; formation of, 351; comparison of, 353; agreeing with dat. of tendency or result, 1220; *māximī* as gen. of value, 1271; *māximus nātū*, superl. of *senex*, 353.  
**medius**, with partitive meaning, 1249; with loc. abl., 1346.  
**mel**, form of, 139; gender and decl. of, 430, 482; quantity, 2433.  
**melior**, comparison of, 355; decl. of, 503, 505, 622.  
**melius**, form of, 75; comparison of, 363; *melius est* implying non-occurrent action, 1496; *melius est* with perf. infin., 2231.  
**melos**, decl. of, 508.  
**meminī**, defective, 812; synopsis of, 812; no pass., 813; perf. imper. act. *mementō*, *mementōte*, 813, 879; *meminēns*, perf. act. partic., 907; with gen., 1287; with acc., 1288; with *dē* and abl., 1289; meaning of, 1607; with secondary sequence, 1769; *meminī cum*, 1870; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175; with pres. infin., 2220.  
**memor**, decl. of, 537, 559, 636; with gen., 1263.  
**memoriā teneō**, with pres. infin., 2220.  
**memorō**, used personally in pass., 2178; *memorātur*, impersonally, 2181.  
**Menandrū**, gen., 466.  
**mēns**, decl. of, 533; *venit in mentem*, 1290; use of *mentis*, 1339.  
**mēnsis**, decl. of, 492, 500, 566; gender of, 579.  
**mentior**, prin. parts of, 1021.  
**mercēs**, gender of, 572.



## Index of Latin Words.

- mereō, mereor**, prin. parts of, 1004; two inflections, 1488.
- merges**, gender of, 572.
- mergō**, prin. parts of, 958.
- meridiēs**, defective, 597; gender of, 597.
- meritus**, comparison of, 358.
- merx (mercēs, mers)**, decl. of, 531.
- Messālla**, formation of, 274.
- messis**, decl. of, 520, 551.
- mētior**, prin. parts of, 1022.
- metō**, pres. stem of, 835.
- metuō**, 367; prin. parts of, 947; with **ut**, 1957; with **quīn**, 1986.
- metus est sī**, 2068.
- meus**, voc. **mī**, 459, 652; **mihī**, quantity, 60, 2446; decl. of, 652-655; **meā**, with **rēfert**, interest, 1277; **meum** as attribute of infin., 2215; represented by **suus** in ind. disc., 2325; used instead of gen., 1234, 1262.
- micō**, prin. parts of, 993; compounds of, 993.
- mihī est nōmen**, case with, 1213.
- Milētus**, in loc., 1334.
- militiae**, loc., 438, 1338.
- mille**, decl. of, 642.
- mina**, form of, 90.
- minimē**, comparison of, 363; intimating negation, 1451; in answers, 1513.
- minimus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 355; **minimum** with partitive gen., 1248; **minimī** as gen. of value, 1271; **minimō** as abl. of value, 1391; **minimus nātū**, superl. of **iuvenis**, 353.
- minister**, formation of, 348.
- ministrō bibere**, 2164.
- minor**, form of, 102; comparison of, 355; **minus** with partitive gen., 1248; **minōris** as gen. of value, 1271, 1274; in expressions of age, 1329.
- minor**, verb, with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.
- minuō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 948.
- minus**, form of, 363; without **quam**, 1328; with **quam**, 1328; with abl., 1328; in expressions of age, 1329; intimating negation, 1451; **nihil minus** in answers, 1513; with **nihilō**, 1676, 1686, 2151; **nōn minus quam**, 1889; with **sī**, 2021.
- mīra sunt**, with **sī**, 2068.
- mīrificus**, comparison of, 358.
- mīror**, conjug. of, 798; with gen., 1286; pass. of, how expressed, 1491; with **quod, quia, quom**, 1851; with **sī**, 2068; with acc. and infin., 2188.
- mīrum est**, with **sī**, 2068.
- mīrum quantum**, as adv., 712, 1790.
- mīrum quīn**, 1984.
- mīs**, 646.
- misceō**, form of, 134; prin. parts of, 1004; with dat., 1186.
- misereō**, with gen., 1285; forms of, 815, 1009; impersonal, 1034; impersonal, construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284.
- misereor**, forms of, 815, 1009; used impersonally, 1009; with gen., 1285; construction with **miserētur**, 1283.
- miserēscit**, defective, 815; construction with, 1283.
- mittō**, prin. parts of, 958; **mitte** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584; **quod mittō**, &c., 1840; with infin. of purpose, 2164; with acc. and infin., 2175; perf. partic. of, used with **faciō**, 2297.
- mōbilis**, comparison of, 359.
- modius**, gen. plur. of, 462.
- modo**, with **ō** preserved, 65; with short **o**, 2442; with wishes, 1540; with imper., 1572; with **nōn**, 1661, 1680-1682; **modo . . . modo**, 1687; with **sī**, 2019; with **dum** and subjv., 2003, 2110; alone with subjv., 2003, 2110.
- mōlēs (mōlis)**, decl. of, 523; form of, 541.
- molestē ferō**, with **quod, quia, quom**, 1851.
- mōlior**, prin. parts of, 1021.
- molō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- moneō**, conjug. of, 794, 795; prin. parts of, 1004; with double acc., 1172, 1291; with acc. and gen. or **dē** and abl., 1291; with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 1954.
- mōns**, gender of, 580.
- mordeō**, perf. of, 858, 859; prin. parts of, 995.
- morior**, forms of, 791, 799; compounds of, forms of, 791, 799; pres. stem of, 836; fut. partic. of, 905; perf. partic. of, 910; prin. parts of, 981; **mortuus** used actively, 1364.
- mōs**, decl. of, 491; **mōs est** with result clause, 1965; **mōs est** with infin., 2211.
- moveō**, with shortened forms, 891; prin. parts of, 996; **mōtus**, form of, 82; case constructions with, 1303, 1304; with purpose clause, 1951; **moveor** with **quōminus**, 1977.

## Index of Latin Words.

**mox**, with fut. perf., 1630.  
**mulceō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**mulgeō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**multiplex**, decl. of, 531.  
**multum**, comparison of, 363.  
**multus**, comparison of, 355; **multum** with partitive gen., 1248; **multō** with compar., 1459; **multī sunt quī**, &c., 1822; **nōn multum abest** with **quīn**, 1986.  
**mūniceps**, decl. of, 479, 480, 495, 507.  
**mūnificus**, comparison of, 358.  
**mūnus**, dat. of, with verb, 1223.  
**mūtō**, with abl., 1389; with **cum**, 1389.  
**n**, **adulterīnum**, before **c**, **g**, **q**, **x**, 46; after **c**, 90; before **s**, 121, 131; after **m**, 90; in **cōniūnx**, 121; medial, disappearance of, 131; final, disappearance of, 141; assimilation of, 148; **np**, **ns**, **gn**, quantity of vowel preceding, 167, dropped in pres. partic., 902.  
**nam**, introducing parenthesis, 1642; with **et**, 1648; position of, 1688; causal or illative, 2154; asseverative, 2155; introducing question, 2155; introducing explanation, illustration, &c., 2155.  
**namque**, position of, 1688, 2155; use of, 2154, 2155.  
**nam quis**, 692.  
**nancīscor**, prin. parts of, 980.  
**nārrō**, form of, 146.  
**nāscor**, prin. parts of, 980; with abl., 1312; with prep. and abl., 1312; constructions of **nātus** in expressions of age, 1329; **nātus** used actively, 1364.  
**nātū māximus**, superl. of **senex**, 353.  
**nātū minimus**, superl. of **iuvenis**, 353.  
**naucī**, as gen. of value, 1272.  
**nāvis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.  
**nāvus**, form of, 124.  
**nē**, with subjv., 1447; **nē . . . quidem**, 1447; **nōn modo (nōn solum) . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, 1682; **nē . . . quidem** after a neg., 1661; with wishes, 1540; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with subjv. questions, 1563; with imper., 1447, 1581, 1586; with coordinated subjv., 1706; in purpose clauses, 1947; with expressions of fear, 1958; **ūt nē**, 1947; **nē nōn**, 1957; with **dum** and subjv., 2003; with subjv., following supine in **-um**, 2272; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; see **ut**.

**-ne (-n)**, enclitic and interrogative, 96, 179; **tūtine**, 650; **hīcine**, &c., 663; **illicine**, &c., 670; answer expected with, 1503, 1504; position of, 1505; **numne**, 1507; **anne**, 1503, 1508; in first half of alternative question, 1517, 1519; **necne**, 1520, 1778; **utrum . . . ne . . . an**, 1522; **utrumne**, 1522; **-ne . . . -ne**, 1524; with **quis**, **uter**, **quantus**, 1529; with subjv. questions, 1567; with **ut**, **utī**, in questions, 1569; in indirect questions, 1775; **-ne . . . -ne** in indirect questions, 1776; **utrum . . . -ne . . . an**, **utrumne . . . an** in indirect questions, 1779; in second member of indirect alternative question, 1780; appended to infin. of exclamation, 2216; quantity, 2433.  
**nec**, and not, but not, 1445; **nec . . . nec** connecting substs. with sing. or plur. verb, 1070; in sense of **nōn**, 1446; **necne**, 1520, 1778; with wishes, 1540; for **nē . . . quidem**, 1658; **nec . . . quidem**, 1658; in purpose clauses, 1947; quantity, 2433; see **neque**.  
**necdum**, 1446.  
**necessārius**, constructions with, 1201.  
**necesse est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496; coordinated, 1709; with infin., 2211.  
**necō**, forms of, 993.  
**nec opināns**, 1446.  
**nectō**, pres. stem of, 835; forms of, 960.  
**nēcubi**, quantity, 60; form of, 124, 709.  
**nēcunde**, form of, 124, 710.  
**nefās**, defective, 430; gender of, 578; with supine in **-ū**, 2274; **nefās est** with infin., 2211.  
**neglegō**, form of, 151; perf. of, 823; prin. parts of, 953.  
**negō**, translation of, 1445; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**negōtium dō**, with purpose clause, 1950.  
**negōtium est**, with infin., 2211.  
**nēmō**, form of, 100, 132; decl. of, 430, 485; forms of **nūllus** used for, 485; translation of, 1445; with **nōn**, 1452; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with imper., 1586; after **et**, **atque**, **-que**, 1659; **nēmō est quī**, 1822; **ut nēmō**, **nēmō ut**, 1947; **nēmō quisquam**, 2402; **nēmō** for **nōn quisquam**, and **nēmō umquam** for **numquam quisquam**, 2403.  
**nempe**, first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
**neō**, pres. stem of, 837; form **neunt**, 837; prin. parts of, 1001.



## Index of Latin Words.

- nēquam**, comparison of, 353; indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431.
- nēquandō**, form of, 179.
- neque**, with imper., 1581; introducing parenthesis, 1642; as copulative conj., 1644, 1657, 2141-2144; **neque . . . neque**, 1657; preferred to **et nōn**, 1659; **nec . . . nōn**, 1660; **neque . . . haud**, 1660; after a neg., 1661; **neque . . . et**, **et . . . neque**, 1665; **neque . . . -que**, 1665; **neque . . . ac**, 1665; in purpose clauses, 1947; see **nec**.
- nequeō**, conjug. of, 768; form of **nequit**, 828; pass. forms of, 768, 1484; prin. parts of, 922; translation of, 1445.
- nesciō**, formation of, 396; translation of, 1445; with **nisi**, 2020; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175; with **o** shortened, 2443; **nesciō an**, 1782; **nesciō quis**, &c., 1788, 1789; **nesciō quōmodo**, as adv., 712, 1788, 1789; **nesciō quō pactō**, as adv., 712, 1788, 1789.
- neu**, 1674; see **nēve**.
- neuter**, form of, 99; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620, 657, 694; decl. of, 618-620, 694; translation of, 1445; use of sing. and plur., 2403.
- nēve**, form of, 142, 1674; with imper., 1581, 1586; in purpose clauses, 1947.
- nex**, gender of, 581.
- nī**, 2020; with **mīrum**, 2068.
- nigrēscō**, perf. of, 875; prin. parts of, 976.
- nihil**, form of, 103, 140, 455; used adverbially, 1144; with partitive gen., 1248; translation of, 1445; with **nōn**, 1452; for **nēmō**, 1462; **nihil minus** in answers, 1513; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; after **et**, **atque**, **-que**, 1659; **nihil est quod**, 1822, 1841; **nihil habeo quod**, 1822; **ut nihil**, **nihil ut**, 1947; **nihil quicquam**, 2402; used for **nōn quicquam**, 2403; **nihil abest**, with **quīn**, 1986; **nihil aliud quam**, 1895; **nihilī**, as gen. of value, 1272; **nihilō**, as abl. of value, 1391; **nihilō minus**, 1676, 1686; **cum nihilōminus**, 1868; **nihilō minus** introducing adversative sentence, 2151; **nihilum**, form of, 140, 455; **nīl**, form of, 132, 455; with **ī** in second syllable, 2448.
- nimiō**, with compar., 1459.
- nimis**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- nimum**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- nisi**, introducing subst. with which verb agrees, 1073; with abl. abs., 1374; **nisi quod**, 1848; **nisi quia**, 1848; **nisi sī**, 2020; in adversative sense, after **nesciō**, with **tamen**, 2020; as neg. of **sī**, 2016, 2020; **nisi fōrte**, **vērō**, 2020; coordinating, 2153; **nisi fōrte** with infin. in ind. disc., 2317; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; with short final vowel, 2445.
- niteō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- nītor**, prin. parts of, 983; with abl., 1349; with **haud**, 1449; with purpose clause, 1951; with infin., 1953, 2169.
- nix**, gender and decl. of, 494, 500; use of plur. of, 1108.
- nō**, prin. parts of, 991.
- nōbilis**, comparison of, 359.
- noceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- noctū**, 533, 703.
- noenu**, form of, 140, 699, 1444, 2444; use of, 1444.
- noenum**, form of, 87, 140, 455, 699, 1444; use of, 1444.
- nōlō**, form of, 100, 396; conjug. of, 772, 775-777; form of **nōlim**, &c., 841; imper. of, 844; prin. parts of, 922; translation of, 1445; use of **nōlim**, **nōlō**, 1555; use of **nōllem**, 1560; use of **nōlī**, **nōlite**, 1583, 1584; **nōlim** with subjv., 1585; coordination of forms of, 1707; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin. 2189, 2190, 2228; with perf. act. infin., in prohibitions, 2224; with perf. pass. infin., 2229.
- nōmen**, decl. of, 481; **mihī est nōmen**, case with, 1213; **nōmen dō**, **indō**, &c., case with, 1214; gen. of definition with, 1256; gen. of definition with **nōmine**, 1257; abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280; **nōmine** resembling prep., 1406.
- nōmus**, 892.
- nōn**, form of, 87, 140, 455, 699, 1444; common use of, 1443, 1494; **nōn nēmō**, &c., 1452; **nēmō nōn**, &c., 1452; **nōn . . . nōn**, 1452; in questions, 1502; **nōnne . . . nōn**, 1506; **an nōn**, 1508, 1519; with and without particles in answers, 1513; with wishes, 1540; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with subjv. of action conceivable, 1554; with subjv. questions, 1563, 1566; with imper., 1582; with fut. expressing prohibition, 1624; after **et**, **atque** (**ac**), **-que**, 1659; **ut nōn**, 1947; **nē nōn**, 1957; with **dum** and subjv., 2003; **sī**



## Index of Latin Words.

- nōn**, 2020; **nōn aliter**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; **nōn aliud quam**, 1895; **nōn dubitō**, constructions with, 1986, 1987; **nōndum . . . cum**, 1869; **cum . . . nōndum**, 1868; **nōn magis . . . quam**, 1889; **nōn minus . . . quam**, 1889; **nōn modo**, after a neg., 1661; **nōn inodo**, followed by **sed etiam**, &c., 1680; **nōn modo**, meaning **nōn dīcam**, 1681; **nōn modo**, followed by **nē . . . quidem**, vix, 1682; **nōn multum abest**, with **quīn**, 1986; **nōn quod**, **nōn quō**, &c., 1855, 1989; **nōn secus**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; **nōn secus**, correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; **nōn solum**, followed by **sed etiam**, &c., 1680; **nōn solum**, followed by **nē . . . quidem**, vix, 1682; **nōn tantum**, 1680.
- nōnne**, answer expected with, 1503, 1506; **nōnne . . . nōn**, 1506; in indirect questions, 1775.
- nōnnihilō**, as abl. of price, 1391.
- nōn nullī sunt quī**, 1822.
- nōs**, decl. of, 644-651; used for **ego**, 1074; see **ego**.
- nōscō**, form of, 124; prin. parts of, 965; compounds of, 965.
- noster**, decl. of, 652; used for **meus**, 1074; **nostrā** with **rēfert**, interest, 1277; represented by **suus** in ind. disc., 2325; used instead of gen., 1234, 1262.
- nostrās**, accent of, 173.
- nōtēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- novus**, comparison of, 358.
- nox**, decl. of, 533; stems of, 569; adv., 533.
- noxius**, with gen., 1264.
- nūbō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- nūdiustertius**, form of, 712.
- nūdō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- nūdus**, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1306; with prep., 1306.
- nullus**, form of, 102; forms of, used for **nēmō**, 485; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; translation of, 1445; for **nōn** or **nē**, 1448; with **nōn**, 1452; **ut nullus**, **nullus ut**, 1947; **nulla causa est quīn**, 1983; used for **nōn ullus**, 2403.
- num**, an acc., 1156; answer expected with, 1503, 1507; **numne**, 1507; **numquid**, 1507; **num . . . num**, 1524; in indirect questions, 1775; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388.
- Numidia**, in loc., 1336.
- nummus**, gen. plur. of, 462.
- numquam**, translation of, 1445; with **nōn**, 1452; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with subjv. of action conceivable, 1556.
- nunc**, an acc., 1156.
- nunciam**, form of, 113.
- nūntiō**, form of, 82; with **ut**, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2175; used personally in pass., 2178; **nūntiātur**, impersonally, 2181.
- nuō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 947.
- nūper**, comparison of, 364; form of, 698.
- nusquam**, with partitive gen., 1253; translation of, 1445.
- o**, the vowel, pronunciation of, 26, 33, 34, 36-38; final, quantity of, 2437, 2442, 2443.
- o**, assimilation of, 103; affinities of, 107, 109; weakened to **u**, 75, 105, 112, 452, 827; after **o**, **v**, **qu**, 75; weakened to **e**, 71, 76, 142; weakened to **i**, 77.
- ō**, how denoted in inscriptions, 30; weakened to **ū**, 75; from **au**, 81; from **ou**, 82; from **oi**, **oe**, 87.
- ō**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with acc., 1149; **ō utinam**, **ō sī**, with wishes, 1541, 1546.
- ob**, prep. 1410; form of, 118; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; expressing cause, &c., 1317; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253.
- obcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.
- obeō**, construction with, 1191.
- ōbice**, decl. of, 473; gender of, 581.
- oblīvīscor**, prin. parts of, 980; cases with, 1287, 1288.
- obmutēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- obsideō**, prin. parts of, 997.
- obsisto**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.
- obsolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.
- obstō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.
- obsurdēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- obtundō (op-)**, forms of, 931.
- obviam**, verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187.
- occalēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- occidō**, prin. parts of, 930.
- occinō**, perf. of, 823; forms of, 972.
- occulō**, prin. parts of, 972.

## Index of Latin Words.

- ōcior**, comparison of, 357.  
**ōcius**, comparison of, 363.  
**octō**, with shortened final **o**, 2442.  
**ōdī**, defective, 812; synopsis of, 812; forms **ōsus sum**, **fuī**, 813; no pass., 813; form **ōsus**, 814; form **ōsūrus**, 814; meaning of, 1607.  
**oe**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 42; changes of, 87.  
**officiō**, with **nē**, 1960; with **quōminus**, 1960.  
**ōhē**, quantity of **o** in, 163; quantity of **ē** in, 2440.  
**oi**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 43; changes of, 87.  
**oleaster**, gender of, 408.  
**oleō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**olus**, **ollus**, **olle**, 667, 668.  
**omitte**, with infin., for **nōlī**, 1584.  
**omnīnō**, use of, 2150.  
**omnis**, gen. in appos. with possess. pron., 1235; **omnium** with gen. of pron., 1234; used partitively, 1244; with loc. abl., 1346; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
**onustus**, with gen., 1387; with abl., 1387.  
**opera**, use of abl. of, 1378.  
**operiō**, prin. parts of, 1019.  
**opīniōne**, with compar., 1330.  
**opis**, decl. of, 430, 480.  
**oportet**, forms of, 816; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; coordinated, 1709; with subj. infin., 2209; in past tense with pres. infin., translation of, 2222; with perf. pass. and act. infin., 2230.  
**opprior**, prin. parts of, 1020.  
**oppidum**, pred. in agreement with, 1072; acc. of, with **in** or **ad**, 1159; **oppidō** and **in oppidō**, 1333; **oppidūm**, 463.  
**oppingō**, prin. parts of, 938; perf. of, 863.  
**oppūgnō**, construction with, 1191.  
**Ops**, decl. of, 480.  
**opstipēscō** (**ob-**), prin. parts of, 976.  
**optābile est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**optābilius est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**optimē**, comparison of, 363.  
**optimus**, form of, 35, 78, 108; formation of, 351; comparison of, 355; **optimum est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; **optumum est** coordinated, 1709.  
**optō**, coordination of forms of, 1707; with **ut**, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2190.  
**opus est**, with abl., 1379; with partic., 1382; with subj. nom. or acc., 1383; with gen., 1383; coordinated, 1709; with supine in **-ū**, 2276; with subst. and partic., 2286.  
**orbis**, gender of, 579; loc. **orbī**, 1337.  
**orbō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**ordior**, prin. parts of, 1022.  
**ōrdō**, gender of, 574.  
**orior**, forms of, 791, 799; gerundive of, 899; prin. parts of, 981; **ortus** and **oriundus** with abl., 1312; **ortus** used actively, 1364.  
**ōrō**, coordinated, 1708; with **ut**, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2194.  
**os**, decl. of, 492; gender of, 576; plur. **ossua**, 586; quantity, 2433.  
**ōs**, decl. of, 430, 491; gender of, 576.  
**ostendō**, forms of, 924.  
**ou**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 43; changes of, 80, 82.  
**p**, changed to **b**, 118, 151; development of, between **m** and **s**, **m** and **t**, 120; assimilation of, 150, 151.  
**pacīscor**, prin. parts of, 980; compounds of, 980; **pactus** used passively, 1364.  
**paene ut**, 1947.  
**paenitet**, forms of, 815, 817; impersonal, 1034; construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284; with subj. infin., 2209; with perf. infin., 2231.  
**palam**, as adv. and prep., 1421.  
**palleō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**pallēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**palūs**, decl. of, 475; gender of, 584.  
**pandō**, prin. parts of, 950; compounds of, 950.  
**pangō**, perf. of, 858, 863; forms of, 925.  
**papaver**, gender of, 573.  
**pār**, decl. of, 537, 544, 561; agreeing with abl. of quality, 1240; **pār est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; with infin., 2211; with gerundive construction, 2254; with long vowel, 2448.  
**parcō**, defective, 905; forms of, 930; compounds of, 930; **parce** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584, 2170.  
**parcus**, with gen., 1264.  
**pāreō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**paricīdas**, nom., 436.  
**pariēs**, quantity of **e** in, 2456.  
**pariō**, forms of, 791; pres. stem of, 836; fut. partic. of, 905; prin. parts of, 928.  
**pariter**, followed by **et**, 1653; correlative of **ut**, 1937.



## Index of Latin Words.

- pars**, decl. of, 530, 533; use of abl. of, 1345; **pars . . . pars**, 1687.  
**particeps**, decl. of, 480, 624, 625.  
**partim**, acc. as adv., 549, 699; with partitive gen., 1248.  
**partior**, conjug. of, 798; prin. parts of, 1021; **partitus** used passively, 1364.  
**partus**, decl. of, 592.  
**parum**, with partitive gen., 1248; intimating negation, 1451.  
**parvē**, comparison of, 363.  
**parvus**, comparison of, 355; **parvī** as gen. of value, 1271, 1279; **parvō** as abl. of value, 1391.  
**pāscō**, prin. parts of, 965; used reflexively, 1482.  
**passus**, gen. plur. **passūm**, 591.  
**pateō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**patior**, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 986; compounds of, 986; with acc. and infin., 2198; **nōn patior** with purpose clause, 1950.  
**paucī sunt quī**, 1822.  
**paulum**, with partitive gen., 1248; **paulum abest**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**pauper**, comparison of, 344; decl. of, 489, 624, 625; with gen., 1264.  
**pavescō**, prin. parts of, 939.  
**pectō**, pres. stem of, 832, 835; prin. parts of, 960.  
**pēior**, comparison of, 355.  
**pēius**, comparison of, 363.  
**pelagus**, decl. of, 493, 508.  
**pelliciō**, prin. parts of, 956.  
**pellō**, prin. parts of, 932; compounds of, 932; constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**pelvis**, decl. of, 550.  
**pendeō**, perf. of, 859; prin. parts of, 995.  
**pendō**, prin. parts of, 930; with gen. of value, 1271.  
**penes**, prep., 1410; position of, 1434; quantity of second **e** in, 2456.  
**penus**, gender of, 588.  
**per**, prep., 1410; after its case, 178; compounds of, with acc., 1137; with acc. of duration of time, 1151; expressing cause, &c., 1317; denoting place, 1346; expressing manner, 1361; expressing instrument, 1378; position of, 1437; quantity, 2433.  
**peragō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**percellō**, perf. of, 861, 2435; prin. parts of, 935.  
**percitus**, 919.  
**perdō**, forms of, 757; forms of, supplied by **pereō**, 757, 1471; with infin. as obj., 2206.  
**peregrī**, 1340.  
**peremō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**pereō**, supplying forms of **perdō**, 757, 1471; followed by **ab** and abl., 1318.  
**perfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**perfruor**, with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380.  
**pergō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**perinde**, pronunciation of, 179; correlative of **ut**, 1937; correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; **perinde . . . quam**, 1890.  
**peritus**, with gen., 1263; with **iūre**, 1268, 1385; with infin., 2166; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.  
**perlegō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**permāgnī**, as gen. of estimation, 1279.  
**permāgnō**, as abl. of value, 1273, 1390, 1391.  
**permittō**, coordinated, 1710; with purpose clause, 1950, 2202; with acc. and infin., 2202; with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**permulsus**, 1000.  
**perniciēs**, decl. of, 606.  
**perōsus**, 814; with act. meaning, 907.  
**perōsus sum**, 813.  
**perpes**, decl. of, 533.  
**perpetior**, prin. parts of, 986.  
**perplaceō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**persuādeō**, with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 1954, 2195.  
**pertundō**, forms of, 931.  
**pervenio**, forms of, 822.  
**pēs**, compounds of, decl. of, 532, 636.  
**pessimē**, comparison of, 363.  
**pessimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 355.  
**pesumdō**, conjug. of, 757.  
**petō**, forms of, 895, 967; quantity in **petiit**, 2450; with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**ph**, sound of, 49; use of, 49.  
**piget**, forms of, 815, 817; impersonal, 1034; construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284.  
**pilī**, as gen. of value, 1272.  
**pingō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**piper**, gender of, 573.  
**pīsō**, **pīnsō**, forms of, 819, 972.  
**placeō**, prin. parts of, 1004; compounds of, 1004; **sī placuerit**, 1632; coordination of forms of, 1707; **placet** with purpose clause, 1950; **sī placet**, 2113; **placet** with subj. infin., 2209; **placitus**, with act. meaning, 907.



## Index of Latin Words.

- plangō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**plaudō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.  
**plēbs** (**plēps**, **plēbēs**), pronunciation of, 149; decl. of, 524, 534, 603.  
**plēnus**, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1268, 1387.  
**-pleō**, prin. parts of, 1001.  
**plērique**, use of, 1244; with abl. abs., 1366.  
**plērumque**, with partitive gen., 1248.  
**-plicō**, prin. parts of, 993; compounds of, 993.  
**pluit**, defective, 815; form **plūvit**, 823; prin. parts of, 947; impersonal, 1034.  
**plūrimum**, comparison of, 363.  
**plūrimus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 355; **plūrimum** with partitive gen., 1248; **plūrimī** as gen. of value, 1271; **quam plūrimō** as abl. of value, 1391.  
**plūs**, form of, 128; comparison of, 355, 363; defective, 355; decl. of, 623; with partitive gen., 1248; **plūris** as gen. of value, 1271, 1274, 1279; without **quam**, 1328; with **quam**, 1328; with abl., 1328; **plūrēs** with subjv. of action conceivable, 1556.  
**pol**, quantity, 2433.  
**polleō**, defective, 809.  
**polliceor**, with acc. and infin., 2186; with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.  
**pōne**, not compounded, 1406; prep., 1410.  
**pōnō**, form of, 133; forms of, 972; **nōmen pōnō**, case with, 1214; with in and abl., 1424.  
**populō**, **populor**, 123, 800, 1488.  
**por-**, inseparable prep., 392, 1409.  
**porrigō**, **porgō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**porticus**, gender of, 588.  
**pos**, prep. 1410.  
**poscō**, form of, 130; pres. stem of, 834; perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 927; with double acc., 1169; with **ab** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171.  
**possum**, conjug. of, 744, 751; form of, 752, 753; **potis sum**, &c., for, 752; defective, 753; old and rare forms of, 753; pass. forms of, 753, 1484; prin. parts of, 922; **potēns**, 922; with **haud**, 1449; with superl., 1466, 1892; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; in subjv., 1498; **sī potuerō**, 1632; **quod** (quantum) . . . **possum**, 1830; **nōn possum quīn** (ut **nōn**), &c., 1985; **nōn possum** in conditions, 2074; in past tense with pres. infin., translation of, 2222; with perf. infin., 2223; use of pres. infin. of, for fut., 2236; in perf. infin. in conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2333.  
**post**, form of, 96, 1410; compounds of, with dat., 1195; in expressions of time, 1394-1397; followed by **quam** or **cum** in expressions of time, 1397; with fut. perf., 1630; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286.  
**poste**, prep., 96, 1410.  
**postea**, with partitive gen., 1253.  
**postera**, defective, 356.  
**posterī**, use of, 347.  
**posterior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 356.  
**posthabeō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**postid**, with partitive gen., 1253; prep., 1410.  
**postideā**, with partitive gen., 1253.  
**postquam**, **postea quam**, **posquam**, with infin., 1539, 1924; with indic. and subjv., 1923-1931.  
**pōstrēmus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**postrīdiē**, as adv., 1341; with gen., 1413, 1232; with acc., 1406, 1413; **postrīdiē quam**, 1922.  
**postulō**, with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with **ut**, 1950; used personally in pass., 2178; with acc. and infin., 1953, 2194.  
**postumus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 356.  
**pote**, form of, 142; with or without **sum**, 752; **ut pote quī**, 1827; **ut pote cum**, 1879.  
**potior**, forms of, 791, 799; prin. parts of, 981; with gen., 1292; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380; use of gerundive of, 2244.  
**potis**, with or without **sum**, 752.  
**potius**, after **vel**, 1670; with **sive**, 1672; **potius quam**, 1897.  
**pōtus**, with act. meaning, 907.  
**prae**, prep., 1417; comparison of, 357; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; with abl. proper, 1297; expressing cause, &c., 1317; **prae quam**, 1895; **prae quam quod**, 1895.

## Index of Latin Words.

- praebeō**, form of, 101, 132; forms of, 1004.  
**praecinō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**praecipiō**, with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2194.  
**praecox**, decl. of, 531.  
**praehibeō**, with short diphthong, 158; form of, 1004.  
**praelegō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**praemordeō**, forms of, 995.  
**Praeneste**, decl. of, 557.  
**praesāgus**, with gen., 1264.  
**praescius**, with gen., 1264.  
**praesideō**, prin. parts of, 997.  
**praesidium**, dat. of, with verb, 1220, 1223.  
**praestō**, prin. parts of, 989; with purpose clause, 1951; **praestat** with subj. infin., 2209.  
**praestō**, adv., verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187.  
**praestōlor**, with dat. or acc., 1184.  
**praeter**, form of, 710; prep., 1410; compounds of, with acc., 1137; **praeter quam quod**, 1848, 1895; **praeter quam**, 1895; with infin. as obj., 2205.  
**praeternittō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**praeterquam**, introducing subst. with which verb agrees, 1073.  
**praeut**, 1945.  
**prandeō**, perf. of, 866; prin. parts of, 998; **prānsus**, with act. meaning, 907.  
**precor**, with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2195.  
**prehendō**, 158; or **praehendō**, **prēndō**, 950.  
**premō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.  
**prīdiē**, as adv., 1341; with acc., 1406, 1413; with gen., 1413, 1232; **prīdiē quam**, 1922.  
**prīmum**, 362, 701; **prīmum (prīmō)** . . . **deinde . . . tum**, 1687; **ubī, ut, cum prīmum**, 1923-1934.  
**primus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 357; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**prior**, comparison of, 357.  
**prius quam**, for **potius quam**, 1897.  
**priusquam**, with fut. perf., 1626; with pres. indic. of fut. action, 1593; general statement of use, 1911; in general statements, 1912-1914; in particular statements, 1915-1921.  
**privō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**prō**, prep., 1417; with abl. proper, 1297; following **dūcō**, **habeō**, **putō**, 1168; expressions with, for dat. of tendency or result, 1221; **quam prō**, 1461; **prō eō** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; **prō quam**, 1895; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267.  
**prō**, interjection, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with acc., 1150.  
**procul**, as adv. and prep., 1421.  
**prōcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**prōcurrō**, perf. of, 860.  
**prōdigus**, with gen., 1264.  
**prōdīnunt**, 833.  
**proficīscor**, prin. parts of, 980; **profectus**, used actively, 1364.  
**prōfusus**, with gen., 1263.  
**prōgnātus**, with abl., 1312.  
**prōgredior**, forms of, 791, 799.  
**prohibeō**, forms **prohibēssis**, &c., 887; contracted, 1004; case constructions with, 1303, 1304; with **nē**, 1960; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977; with acc. and infin., 2203.  
**proin**, introducing command, 2157.  
**proinde**, form of, 99; disyllabic, 179; correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; introducing command, 2157.  
**prōmittō**, with acc. and infin., 2175; with fut. infin., 2235.  
**prōmō**, perf. of, 823; prin. parts of, 953.  
**prope**, prep., 1410; comparison of, 357; with acc., 1201; **prope ut**, 1947.  
**prōpendeō**, prin. parts of, 995.  
**properō**, with acc. and infin., 2190.  
**propior**, comparison of, 357; with acc., 1201.  
**propius**, prep., 1410; with acc., 1201.  
**proprius**, constructions with, 1202, 1238.  
**propter**, prep., 1410; expressing cause, &c., 1317; not compounded, 1406; position of, 1434; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253; with subst. and partic., 2286.  
**propterea**, as coordinating word, 1691; **propterea . . . quod**, 1854; **propterea . . . quia**, 1854, 1858; before **ut**, **nē**, 1961.  
**prout**, 1942.  
**prōvidus**, with gen., 1263.  
**proximē**, prep. 1410; with acc., 1201.  
**proximus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357; with acc., 1201.  
**prūdēns**, form of, 87; with gen., 1263.  
**-pte**, enclitic, 655.  
**pūbēs**, decl. of, 491, 523, 624, 625.



## Index of Latin Words.

**pudet**, forms of, 815, 817; impersonal, 1034; construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284; with subj. infin., 2209.

**pūgnō**, with dat., 1186.

**pungō**, perf. of, 823, 858; prin. parts of, 925.

**puppis**, decl. of, 519, 550, 555.

**pūtēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.

**putō**, with **prō** and abl., 1168; with gen. of value, 1271; coordinated, 1696; used personally in pass., 2178; **putārī**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190; **puta**, for instance, with short final vowel, 2438.

**putus**, 919.

**q**, written for **c**, 17, 690; followed by **u**, 24, 46, 168, see **qu**; medial, disappearance of, 135.

**qu**, initial, disappearance of, 124; assimilation of, 149.

**quā . . . quā**, 1687.

**quadrāns**, decl. of, 533; gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.

**quaerō**, form of, 116; prin. parts of, 967; compounds of, 967; **sī quaeris**, 2113.

**quaesō**, with imper., 1572.

**quālis**, in questions, 1526; agreement of, 1802; **tālis . . . quālis**, 1831.

**quam**, form of, 702; introducing subst. with which verb agrees, 1073; after a compar., 1324-1327, 1329; after **alius** and **alter**, 1323; after **amplius**, **longius**, **plūs**, **minus**, 1328; in expressions of time, 1397; in comparisons, 1457, 1458; **quam prō**, after compar., 1461; with superl., 1466, 1892; in questions, 1526; moods with, 1888; in compar. period of equality, 1889; **tam . . . quam**, 1831, 1889; **nōn minus**, **nōn magis . . . quam**, 1889; **aequē**, . . . **quam**, 1890; **perinde . . . quam**, 1890; **iūxtā . . . quam**, 1890; **tam . . . quam** coordinating words, 1891; **tam . . . quam quī**, 1892; **quam . . . tam** with double compar. or superl., 1893; in compar. period of inequality, 1894; **suprā quam**, 1894; **infrā quam**, 1894; **ultrā quam**, 1894; **extrā quam**, 1894; **nihil aliud**, **nōn aliud quam**, 1895; **secus quam**, 1895; **bis tantō quam**, 1895; **prae quam**, 1895; **contrā quam**, 1895; **praeter quam quod**, 1895; **super quam quod**, 1895; **insuper quam**, 1895; **prō quam**, 1895; **advorsum quam**,

1895; **magis quod**, &c., . . . **quam quō**, &c., 1855; **quam**, **quam ut**, **quam quī**, with subjv. after compar. denoting disproportion, 1896; **potius**, **citius** (**ante**, **prius**) **quam**, **potius quam ut**, 1897; with infin., 1898; **priusquam**, **antequam**, 1593, 1626, 1911-1921; **prīdiē quam**, **postrīdiē quam**, 1922; **postquam**, **postea quam**, **posquam**, 1923-1931; **intrā . . . quam**, 1929; **tamdiū . . . quam**, 1999; **quam sī**, 2117.

**quamdiū**, accent of, 178; use of, 1991, 1994, 1999-2001.

**quamlibet**, use of, 1907.

**quamquam**, with abl. abs., 1374, 1900; as adv., 1899; as conj. with indic., subjv., adj., partic., 1899-1902; coordinating, 2153; with infin. in ind. disc., 2317.

**quamvis**, with abl. abs., 1374; use of, 1903-1907.

**quandō**, enclitic, 179; with acc. of exclamation, 1150; in questions, 1526; **nesciō quandō**, 1788; as indef. adv., 2010; temporal, 2010, 2011; causal, 2013; with **quidem**, 2013; as prot. of conditional period, 2110; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; with shortened **o**, 2442.

**quandōque**, 2012, 2014.

**quantō . . . tantō**, 1831, 1973.

**quantum**, introducing subst. with which verb agrees, 1073; **quantum . . . tantum**, 1831.

**quantus**, neut. with partitive gen., 1248; **quantum est** with gen., 1259; **quantī** as gen. of value, 1271, 1274, 1279; in questions, 1526; with **-ne**, 1529; agreement of, 1802; **quantum . . . possum**, &c., 1830, 1892.

**quasi**, with abl. abs., 1374; in figurative expressions, 1944; in conditional comparisons, 2117-2120; with partic., nouns, and abridged expressions, 2121; after a compar., 2122; in actual comparisons, 2122; followed by **sī**, 2118; **idem quasi**, 2373; with short final vowel, 2445.

**quatiō**, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 961; compounds of, 961.

**-que**, enclitic, 179; connecting substs. with sing. or plur. verb, 1064-1066; use of, as copulative conj., 1644, 1646, 1647, 1649-1651, 1655, 1656, 2145, 2146, **-que . . . -que**, 1650; meaning *but*, 1655; **-que nōn**, &c., 1659; **et . . .**



## Index of Latin Words.

- que, 1663; -que . . . et, 1664; -que . . . atque, 1664; atque . . . -que, 1664; neque . . . -que, 1665; quantity, 2433, 2506; at end of verse, 2568.
- quemadmodum**, with infin. in ind. disc., 2317.
- queō**, conjug. of, 759, 768; used with neg., 768; pass. forms of, 768, 1484; form of **queam**, &c., 842; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922.
- queror**, conjug. of, 798; prin. parts of, 978; with acc., 1139.
- quī**, decl. of, 681-683; **quot**, 659; stems of, 681, 687; rel., 682; interrogative adj., 683; interrogative subst., 685; **quōius**, **quoi**, 658, 688; dat. and abl. plur. **quīs**, 688; inscriptional forms of, 690; derivatives of, 691, 692; with correlatives, 695; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1144, 1840; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; **quod est** with gen., 1259; in questions, 1526; use of, 1792; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098, 1801-1811; agreeing with antecedent implied in possess., 1807; **id quod**, 1811; **quae rēs**, 1811; equivalent to conditional prot., 1812; with indic., 1813-1815; with subjv. denoting purpose, 1816, 1817; with subjv. of characteristic or result, 1818-1823; with **dignus**, **indignus**, **idōneus**, **aptus**, 1819; **est quī**, **nēmō est quī**, **nōn habeo quod**, &c., 1822; **est quī**, &c., with indic., 1823; with subjv. of cause or concession, 1824; **quī tamen**, 1825; with indic. instead of causal subjv., 1826; **quippe quī**, 1827, 1828; **ut quī**, 1827, 1828; **ut pote quī**, 1827; **quod sciam**, &c., 1829; **quī quidem**, 1829; **quod attinet ad**, **quod . . . possum**, 1830; correlatives of, 1831; omitted in second clause, 1832, 1833; repeated, 1833; place supplied by **is**, &c., in second clause, 1833; introducing main sentence, 1835, 2131, 2316; formulas **quō factō**, &c., 1836; preceding **sī**, &c., 1837, 2132; **tam . . . quam quī**, 1892; **quam quī**, 1896; **prae quam quod**, 1895; referring to **is**, 2368; **idem quī**, *the same as*, 2373; **quis**, **quī**, distinguished from **uter**, 2385; **quis**, **quid**, distinguished from **quī**, **quod**, 2386; indef., after **sī**, &c., 686, 2388; **quī** (plur.) not elided before short vowel, 2487.
- quī**, adv., form and use of, 689, 706, 1972; in questions, 1526; with wishes, 1541; **quippe quī**, 1828; **ut quī**, 1828; with subjv., 1976.
- quia**, form of, 701; **nisi quia**, 1848; use of, 1854-1858; with infin. in ind. disc., 2317; with short final vowel, 2438.
- quicumque**, decl. of, 692; tmesis in, 692; **quodcumque est** with gen., 1259; agreement of, 1802; with indic., 1814; referring to **is**, 2368.
- quīdam**, decl. of, 692; with **ex** or **dē**, 1246; **quīdam sunt quī**, &c., 1822; usual force of, 2392; used to soften metaphor or expressing contempt, 2393.
- quidem**, with **nē**, 1447, 1661, 1682; with **sānē** in answers, 1512; with **nōn** and **minimē** in answers, 1513; **quī quidem**, 1829; **cum quidem**, 1868; with **dum** and subjv., 2003; with **quandō**, 2013; with **sī**, 2019; introducing concessive period, 2150; following **ille** in concessions, 2361.
- quies**, decl. of, 477; gender of, 572.
- quiescō**, perf. of, 871; prin. parts of, 968.
- quilibet**, decl. of, 692; use of, 2401.
- quīn**, form of, 96, 1980; in questions, 1526, 1531, 1981; with imper. or indic., 1527; **nōn quīn**, 1855, 1989; with subjv. in question, 1982; **nūlla causa est quīn**, 1983; **mīrum quīn**, 1984; with **nōn possum**, &c., 1985; with other verbs and expressions, 1986-1990; quantity of, 2430.
- quincunx**, decl. of, 531; meaning of, 2427.
- quīnquātrūs**, gender of, 588.
- quīntus**, form of, 135, 2412.
- quippe**, 1690, 2156; **quippe quī**, 1827, 1828; **quippe cum**, 1879; first syllable shortened, 2469.
- Quirīs**, accent of, 173; decl. cf, 533; quantity of second **i** in, 2452.
- quis**, decl. of, 684, 686; **quit**, 659; stems of, 681, 687; interrogative subst., 684; interrogative adj., 685; feminine, **quīs**, **quae**, 684; **quai**, 687; **quōius**, **quoi**, &c., 658, 688; dat. and abl. plur. **quīs**, 688; nom. plur. **quēs**, 688; inscriptional forms of, 690; derivatives of, 691, 692; with correlatives, 695; adj. equivalent to gen., 1098; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; **quid tibi** with subst. in **-tīō** and **est**, 1136; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1144; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; abl. of,

## Index of Latin Words.

- with *locī*, 1252; *quid* for *quis*, 1462; *quid est*, *quid dicis*, *quid*, *quid vērō*, &c., 1500; in questions, 1526; with *-ne*, 1529; *nesciō quis*, 1788, 1789; *sciō quid* as indef., 1788; *quis est quī*, 1822; *quid est quod*, &c., 1841; *quid quod*, 1849; *quis*, *quī* distinguished from *uter*, 2385; *quis*, *quid* distinguished from *quī*, *quod*, 2386; indef., after *sī*, &c., 686, 2388; quantity, 2433.
- quisnam*, decl. of, 692.
- quispiam*, decl. of, 692; use of, 2389.
- quisquam*, decl. of, 692; with *haud*, 1449; use of, 2402, 2403; *nēmō quisquam* and *nihil quicquam*, 2402.
- quisque*, decl. of, 692; with abl. abs., 1366; with *ut*, *when*, 1932; with *ut*, *as*, 1939; with superl., 1939; usual force of, 2394; in both rel. and demonstrative sentence, 2395; in rel. sentence alone, 2396; following *sē*, *suus*, superl., or ordinal, 2397; equivalent to *quicumque*, *quisquis*, 2398; *cūiusque generis*, *cūiusque modī*, 2398.
- quisquis*, decl. of, 692; *quidquid est* with gen., 1259; with indic., 1814; for *quisque*, 2398.
- quivīs*, decl. of, 692; use of, 2401.
- quō*, adv., with acc. of exclamation, 1150; with gen., 1254; in questions, 1525; instead of rel. pron. with prep., 1793; *quō . . . eō*, 1831; *nōn quō*, *nōn eō quō*, *nōn quō nōn*, 1855; with indic., 1973; with subjv., 1974; *quō nē*, 1975; followed by *quis*, *quī*, indef., 2388.
- quoad*, form of, 1991; use of, meaning *all the time while*, 1994, 1999–2001; meaning *until*, 2007, 2008.
- quod*, conj., origin of, 1838; with declarative and causal sense, 1838; resembling pron. *quod*, 1839–1842; with *veniō*, *mittō*, 1840; *quid est quod*, &c., 1841; meaning *as to what*, 1842; meaning *in case*, 1843, 2110; with indic. and subjv., 1838; meaning *the fact that*, 1844–1852; *addō quod*, 1846; *adiciō quod*, 1846; *nisi quod*, 1848; *praeter quam quod*, 1848, 1895; *super quam quod*, 1848, 1895; *tantum quod*, 1848; *quid quod*, 1849; with *gaudeō*, &c., 1851; with verbs of praising, &c., 1852; meaning *because*, 1853; with correlatives *eō*, *ideō*, &c., 1854, 1855; *nōn quod*, *sed quod*, &c., 1855; *magis quod . . . quam quod*, &c., 1855; *nōn quod nōn*, 1855; following supine in *-um*, 2272.
- quōiās*, accent of, 173; formation of, 329.
- quōius*, in questions, 1526.
- quom*, see *cum*.
- quōminus*, use of, 1977, 1978.
- quoniam*, form of, 113, 1882; use of, 1882–1884.
- quoque*, with *sed*, 1680.
- quōr*, see *cūr*.
- quō sētius*, 1979.
- quot*, indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431; not used partitively, 1244; *nesciō quot*, 1788; *tot . . . quot*, 1831.
- quotiēns*, in questions, 1526; with perf. indic. of anterior time, 1613; *totiēns . . . quotiēns*, 1831, 1886; mood with, 1885–1887.
- quotiēnscumque*, use of, 1885–1887.
- r*, development of short vowel before, 89; after medial *e*, 93; before *i*, 94; changed to *l*, 115; from *s*, 116, 488; medial, disappearance of, 130; preceded by mute or *f*, 169.
- rabiēs*, decl. of, 606.
- rādō*, prin. parts of, 958.
- rapiō*, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 975; compounds of, 975.
- rauciō*, defective, 905.
- re-*, compounds with, perf. of, 781, 861.
- reāpse*, 680.
- receptuī*, 1225.
- recidō*, defective, 905.
- recipiō*, loc. abl. with, 1348.
- recordor*, with gen., 1287; with acc., 1288; with *dē* and abl., 1289; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175.
- recumbō*, prin. parts of, 974.
- recūsō*, with *nē*, 1960, 1977; with *quōminus*, 1960, 1977; with *quīn*, 1986.
- rēd-* (*rē-*), inseparable prep., 392, 1409.
- reddō*, conjug. of, 757; with infin. as obj., 2206; with perf. partic., 2297.
- redīnunt*, 833.
- redux*, decl. of, 531, 635.
- refellō*, prin. parts of, 932.
- rē fert* (*rēfert*), formation of, 395; forms of, 816; constructions with, 1276–1279; with subj. infin., 2209.
- refertus*, with gen., 1263, 1387; with abl., 1268, 1387.
- regō*, conjug. of, 782, 783; no supine, 900; prin. parts of, 953; compounds of, 953.
- relegō*, prin. parts of, 937.



## Index of Latin Words.

- rēlicuus** (**rēliquus**), with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**rēnēs**, gender of, 583.  
**renīdeō**, defective, 809.  
**reor**, perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 1008.  
**reparcō**, forms of, 930.  
**repellō**, prin. parts of, 932.  
**reperiō**, prin. parts of, 1011.  
**replicō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**rēpō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**reprimō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**repūgnō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.  
**requiēs**, decl. of, 477, 603; gender of, 572.  
**rēs**, gen. and dat. sing. of, 160; decl. of, 601, 602; **malam rem** and **in malam rem**, 1165; repeated in rel. sentence, 1796; **quae rēs**, 1811; form **rē** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **rem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.  
**resideō**, prin. parts of, 997.  
**resipiscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**resistō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.  
**resonō**, forms of, 993.  
**respondeō**, prin. parts of, 995.  
**restis**, decl. of, 520, 550.  
**rēte**, decl. of, 528, 557.  
**retendō**, forms of, 924.  
**reticeō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**retineō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**rettulī, rētulī**, 781, 861.  
**retundō**, prin. parts of, 931.  
**reus**, with gen., 1263.  
**revivēscō** (**-viviscō**), 959.  
**revortor**, forms of, 801.  
**Rhodus**, in loc., 1334.  
**rīdeō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**rigeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**rigēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**rōbur**, gender of, 408; decl. of, 489.  
**rōdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**rogō**, with double acc., 1169; with **dē** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171; with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**rubēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**rubus**, gender of, 408.  
**rudēns**, gender of, 580.  
**rudis**, with gen., 1263.  
**rumex**, gender of, 408.  
**rumpō**, prin. parts of, 938; compounds of, 938.  
**ruō**, perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 947.  
**russum, rursus, russum, russus, rūsum**, 145, 701.  
**rūs**, decl. of, 430, 491; loc. **rūrī**, 504; use of **rūrī**, 1337; acc. as adv., 699; acc. without prep., 1162; use of abl. **rūre**, 1311; use of loc. abl. **rūre**, 1344, 1345; **rūre** as adv., 703.  
**s**, sound of, 47; followed by **u**, 24, 47; (and **ss**) used for **z**, 20; after **e**, 92; before medial **i**, 94; changed to **r**, 116, 488; (and **st**), initial, disappearance of, 123; medial, disappearance of, 133, 134; final, disappearance of, 47, 142; **ns**, quantity of vowel preceding, 167; final syllables in, quantity of vowel of, 2451-2457; does not always make position, 2468.  
**sacer**, comparison of, 358; constructions with, 1202, 1238.  
**saepe**, comparison of, 364.  
**saepiō**, prin. parts of, 1014.  
**Sagra**, gender of, 406.  
**sāl**, decl. of, 430, 482; gender of, 583.  
**saliō**, prin. parts of, 1019; compounds of, 1019.  
**sam**, pron., 675.  
**Samnis**, accent of, 173; decl. of, 533; quantity of **i** in, 2452.  
**sanciō**, forms of, 1014.  
**sānē**, introducing concessive period, 2150; **sānē quam**, 1790; **sānē, sānē quidem**, in answers, 1512; with imper., 1572.  
**sānēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**sanguis**, form of, 131; decl. of, 486; gender of, 579; quantity of **i** in, 2452.  
**sapiō**, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 969; compounds of, 969.  
**sarciō**, prin. parts of, 1014.  
**sās** (for **suās**), 653.  
**satin**, in questions, 1510.  
**satis**, verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187; with partitive gen., 1248; **satis est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; **satis est**, &c., with perf. infin., 2231.  
**satisdō**, conjug. of, 757.  
**satius est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**scalpō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**scandō**, prin. parts of, 950; compounds of, 950.  
**scilicet**, form of, 712; in answers, 1512.  
**scindō**, perf. of, 859, 860, 2435; prin. parts of, 934.



## Index of Latin Words.

- sciō**, pres. stem of, 837; imper. of, 846; fut. **scībō**, 852; prin. parts of, 1016; with **haud**, 1449, 1554, 1782; **scītō**, **scītōte**, 1576; **scīn**, coordinated, 1787; **sciō quid**, &c., as indef., 1788; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175; with **o** shortened, 2443.
- scirpus**, gender of, 408.
- sciscō**, prin. parts of, 965.
- scribō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- sculpō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- secō**, prin. parts of, 993; compound of, 993.
- secūris**, decl. of, 520, 550, 554.
- sēcūrus**, with gen., 1264.
- secus**, comparison of, 364; defective, 430; **secus quam**, 1895; **nōn secus**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118.
- sed**, **set**, use of, 1676, 1679; after **nōn modo**, &c., 1680-1682; coordinating rel. sentence, 1820; **nōn quod**, &c., . . . **sed**, &c., 1855; introducing adversative sentence, 2151.
- sēd-** (**sē-**), as inseparable prep., 392, 1409; as prep., 1417.
- sedeō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 997; compounds of, 997.
- sēdēs**, decl. of, 476, 566.
- seges**, gender of, 572.
- Seleucia**, abl. of, with **in**, 1334.
- sēmentis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.
- sēmis**, decl. of, 539; meaning of, 2427.
- senātus**, gen. sing. **senātī**, **senātuos**, 590, 593.
- senēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- senex**, comparison of, 353; decl. of, 500.
- sentēs**, gender of, 579.
- sentiō**, prin. parts of, 1015.
- sepeliō**, prin. parts of, 1017.
- septemplex**, decl. of, 531.
- septunx**, 2427.
- sequor**, prin. parts of, 978.
- seriēs**, decl. of, 607.
- serō**, *string*, prin. parts of, 972.
- serō**, *sow*, conjug. of, 744, 758; root verb, reduplicated, 744, 758; form of **serit**, 828; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922; prin. parts of compounds of, 922; **satus** with abl., 1312.
- sēstertius**, gen. plur. of, 462.
- sētius**, comparison of, 364; with **quō**, 1979.
- seu**, see **sive**.
- sextāns**, gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.
- sī**, **sei**, adv., 708; with wishes, 1546; with pres. indic. of fut. action, 1593; with fut. perf., 1626; **sī** or **sī forte** in questions, 1777; form of, 2015; correlatives of, 2015, 2018; with **quidem**, 2019; with **modo**, 2019; with **tamen**, 2019; **sī** (**sive**) . . . **sive**, 2019; neg. of, **sī nōn**, **nisi**, **nisi sī**, **nī**, 2020; **sī autem**, **minus**, **aliter**, 2021; in conditions, 2025-2115; with **mīror**, **mīrum est**, **mīra sunt**, **gaudeō**, **terreō**, **metus est**, 2068; **sī placet**, &c., 2113; **etsī**, **sī**, &c., concessive, 2116; **quasi**, **quam sī**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2117-2122; **sī nōn** with infin. in ind. disc., 2317; **sīquis** referring to **is**, 2368; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388.
- sīc**, form of, 96, 2015; adv., 708; correlative of **tamquam**, 1908; correlative of **ut**, 1831, 1937, 1970; preceding **quīn**, 1988; correlative of **sī**, 2015, 2018; correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; expressing affirmative coordination, 2159; introducing acc. and infin., 2176.
- sīcubi**, quantity, 60; form of, 124, 709.
- sīcunde**, form of, 124, 710.
- sīcut**, after **quamvis**, 1905; form of, 1937; meaning *since*, 1946.
- sīcuti**, with short final vowel, 2445.
- Sicyōnī**, **Sicyōne**, 1331.
- sīdō**, prin. parts of, 943.
- sileō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- silex**, gender of, 581.
- similis**, comparison of, 345; constructions with, 1204; agreeing with abl. of quality, 1240.
- similiter**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118.
- simplex**, decl. of, 531.
- simul**, as adv. and prep., 701, 1421; with **et**, 1648; **simul** . . . **simul**, 1687.
- simul atque**, **ac**, **et**, **ut**, and **simul**, use of, 1923-1934, 1613.
- sīn**, 2021.
- sine**, prep., 1417; with abl. proper, 1297; position of, 1434; intimating prot. of conditional period, 2110; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267.
- sinō**, pres. stem of, 833; forms of, 893, 964; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; with subjv. coordinated, 1710; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2198; used personally in pass., 2201.

# Index of Latin Words.

- sīs** (for **sī vīs**), 774; with imper., 1572; parenthetical, 2113.
- sīs**, determinative pron., 675.
- sistō**, conjug. of, 744, 758; root verb, reduplicated, 744, 758; form of **sistit**, 828; perf. of, 133, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922.
- sitis**, decl. of 518, 548, 554.
- sive**, form of, 142; use of, 1667, 1672, 1673; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; see **sī**.
- sōcors**, form of, 103; decl. of, 559.
- sōdēs**, with imper., 1572.
- soleō**, forms of, 801, 1488.
- solum**, with **nōn**, 1680, 1682.
- sōlus**, gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; gen. in apposition with possess. pron., 1235; **sōlus est quī**, 1822.
- solvō**, prin. parts of, 947; constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- sonō**, forms of, 820; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 993; compound of, 993.
- sorbeō**, forms of, 1006; compounds of, 1006.
- sors**, decl. of, 533, 543, 556.
- sorsum**, form of, 102.
- sortior**, prin. parts of, 1021.
- sōs**, determinative pron., 675.
- sōspes**, decl. of, 477, 624, 625.
- spargō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.
- Sparta**, abl. of, with **in**, 1334
- spatium**, use of abl. of, 1399.
- speciēs**, decl. of, 606, 607.
- speciō**, **spiciō**, pres. stem of, 836; forms of, 956.
- specus**, gender of, 588; decl. of, 592.
- spernō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 964.
- spērō**, with acc. and infin., 2175, 2186; with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.
- spēs**, defective, 600, 602; **spē** with compar., 1330; form **spē** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **spem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.
- spoliō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- spondeō**, perf. of, 133, 859; prin. parts of, 995; compounds of, 995.
- spuō**, prin. parts of, 947.
- squāleō**, defective, 809.
- sta**, **stūc** (for **ista**, **istūc**), 667.
- statuō**, 367; prin. parts of, 947; compounds of, 947; with **in** and abl., 1424; with purpose clause, 1950; with infin., 1953, 2169; with acc. and infin., 1954.
- sternō**, prin. parts of, 964.
- sternuō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 948.
- stertō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- stinguō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- stirps**, gender of, 580.
- stō**, pres. stem of, 837; perf. of, 133, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 989; with abl., 1349; **stat per aliquem** with **quōminus**, 1977; form **stō** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **stem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.
- strepō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- strīdeō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 997.
- strigilis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.
- stringō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- struō**, perf. of, 149, 865, 867; prin. parts of, 953.
- studeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with purpose clause, 1951; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2190.
- studiōsus**, with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.
- stupeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- stupēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- Styx**, gender of, 406.
- suādeō**, prin. parts of, 1000; with subjv. coordinated, 1712; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2195.
- sub**, form of, 118; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; with loc. abl., 1299; with acc. and abl., 1422, 1423.
- subcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.
- subinde**, pronunciation of, 179.
- subitō**, with **cum**, 1869.
- subrepsit**, 975.
- subrupiō**, forms of, 975.
- subter**, with acc., 1410; with abl., 1416.
- subtundō**, forms of, 931.
- suēscō**, perf. of, 871; prin. parts of, 968.
- sūgō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- sui**, decl. of, 644-651; use of gen. of, 1234; **sē**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **sui** with gerundive, 2260, 2261; in ind. disc. representing **ego** and **nōs** of direct discourse, 2325; referring to subj. of verb, 2336; referring to word not subj. of verb, 2337; use in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; use in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; **inter sē**, **invicem** **inter sē**, **invicem sē**, expressing reciprocal relations, 2344, 2345; **is** used for, 2370; **ipse** with, 2376; **ipse** standing for, 2377; **sē quisque**, 2397.



## Index of Latin Words.

**Sŭlla**, formation of, 274.

**sultis** (for **sī voltis**), 774; with imper., 1572; parenthetical, 2113.

**sum**, form of, 92, 746; conjug. of, 744, 745; form of **sumus**, 89, 746; pronunciation of **ēs**, **es**, and **est** after vowel or **-m**, 747, 2496; pronunciation of **ēs**, **es**, and **est** after **-s**, 747, 2496; **sont**, 748; **escit**, &c., 748; **siem**, &c., 748, 841; **estōd**, 748; form of **eram**, **erō**, &c., 116, 746, 848; **es** for **ēs**, 747; partic. of, 749, 902; in compounds, 749, 902; no gerund or gerundive of, 749; no perf. partic. or supine of, 750, 900; **fuam**, &c., 750, 842; **fore**, &c., 750, 803; **fūit**, &c., 58, 750, 865; with **potis**, **pote**, 752; no perf. system of, 745, 807; form **est**, 828; suffix of pres. subjv. **-i-** and **-iē-**, 841; form of **sim**, &c., 841; form of **es**, &c. (imper.), 844; form of **essem**, &c., 850; form of **esse**, 895; prin. parts of, 922; root verb, 744.

Used impersonally, 1034; omitted, 1036; fut. partic. with, 802, 803, 1633, 1737, 1742, 1746, 1747; gerundive with, 804, 2101, 2243; dat. of possessor with, 1212; dat. of tendency or result with, 1219; gen. of value with, 1271; abl. with, 1315; combinations with **est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; use of **ēs**, **estō**, 1576; **fuī**, **fueram**, **fuerō**, with perf. partic., 1609; **est quī**, 1822; with attributive **cum** sentence, 1870, 1871; with attributive **postquam** or **ut** sentence, 1927; **esse**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190; **fore** or **futūrum esse ut** as circumlocution, 2233; **fore** with perf. partic., 2234; predicate use of gen. of gerundive construction with, 2262; **futūrus** as adj., 2283; **futūrus** as subst., 2292; **esse** and **fuisse** with fut. partic., and **futūrum fuisse ut** in conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2331, 2334; form **sim** not elided before short vowel, 2495.

**sum**, pron., 675.

**summus**, form of, 145; formation of, 352; comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249.

**sūmō**, prin. parts of, 953.

**Sūnium**, in loc., 1334.

**suō**, prin. parts of, 947.

**supellēx**, decl. of, 545, 556.

**super**, compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other con-

structions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; with acc. and abl., 1422, 1425; **super id** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; **super quam quod**, 1848, 1895; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2253; with abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2267.

**supera**, defective, 356.

**superbiō**, defective, 810.

**superfit**, &c., 790.

**superī**, use of, 347; no sing., 417.

**superior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 356.

**superne**, with short final vowel, 2440.

**supersedeō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.

**superstes**, decl. of, 477, 624, 625.

**supplex**, decl. of, 531.

**suprā**, prep., 1410; **suprā quam**, 1894.

**suprēmus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 356.

**surgō**, **surrigō**, prin. parts of, 953.

**surpuit**, &c., 975.

**sūs**, gender and decl. of, 494.

**suscēseō**, with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851.

**suscipiō**, with gerundive, 2250.

**susque dēque**, 1408.

**suus**, form of, 107; decl. of, 652-655; used instead of gen., 1234, 1262; in ind. disc. representing **meus**, **noster** of direct discourse, 2325; referring to subj. of verb, 2336; referring to word not subj. of verb, 2337; use in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; use in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; omitted, 2346; meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; **ipse** standing for, 2377; **suus quisque**, 2397.

**t**, sound of, 47; changed to **d**, 119, 151; initial, disappearance of, 125; medial, treatment of, 137, 138, 145; assimilation of, 137, 145, 146, 151; **dt**, the combination, its treatment, 152, 153; final, in **it**, **illut**, &c., 659; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432.

**tābēs**, decl. of, 523, 603.

**tābēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.

**taceō**, prin. parts of, 1004.

**taedet**, forms of, 815; impersonal, 1034; construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284.

**tagō**, 925.

**talentum**, gen. plur. of, 462.



## Index of Latin Words.

- tālis**, followed by rel. sentence of result, 1818; **tālis . . . quālis**, 1831; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970.
- talpa**, gender of, 433.
- tam**, form of, 702; **tam . . . quam**, correlatives, 1831; **tam . . . quam**, use of, 1889, 1891; **tam . . . quam quī**, 1892; **quam . . . tam**, 1893; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; preceding **quīn**, 1988.
- tamdiū**, correlative of **dum**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, **quam**, **dōnec**, 1999, 2004.
- tamen**, with abl. abs., 1374; common use of, 1676, 1686; **quī tamen**, 1825; **cum tamen**, 1868; **cum . . . tamen**, 1880; correlative of **sī**, 2018; with **sī**, 2019; with **nisi**, 2020; correlative of **etsī**, **tametsī**, &c., 2116; introducing adversative sentence, 2151; after partic. expressing concession, 2295.
- tamenetsī**, 2116.
- tametsī**, concessive, 2116; coordinating, 2153.
- tamquam**, in periods of comparison, 1908; introducing reason, 1909; with or without **sī** in conditional comparisons, 2117-2121.
- tandem**, form of, 147.
- tangō**, prin. parts of, 925; forms **tagō**, &c., 925; compounds of, 925.
- antisper**, 1999.
- tantopere**, correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970.
- tantum**, with **nōn**, 1680; **quantum . . . tantum**, 1831; **tantum quod**, 1848; **tantum abest ut . . . ut**, 1969; correlative of **dum**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1999.
- tantummodo**, 1999.
- tantundem**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- tantus**, form of, 147; **tantum** with gen., 1248, 1259; **tantī** as gen. of value, 1271, 1274, 1279; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; **quantō . . . tantō**, 1973; preceding **quīn**, 1988.
- teges**, gender of, 572.
- tegō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 953.
- temnō**, defective, 808; pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 955.
- temperī**, comparison of, 364.
- temperō**, with **nē**, 1960; with **quīn**, 1986.
- temptō**, with purpose clause, 1951; with infin., 1953.
- tendō**, prin. parts of, 924; form of **tennitur**, 146, 924; compounds of, 924; with perf. infin., 2225.
- teneō**, prin. parts of, 1004; compounds of, 1004; with loc. abl., 1348; with **nē**, 1960; with **quōminus**, 1977; with **quīn**, 1986; **memoriā teneō** with pres. infin., 2220.
- tenus**, unaccented, 178; with abl. proper, 1297, 1420; as subst. with gen., 1406, 1420; position of, 1420.
- tepēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- ter**, quantity, 2433.
- teres**, decl. of, 533, 559, 635.
- tergeō**, **tergō**, forms of, 1000.
- terō**, prin. parts of, 963.
- terreō**, prin. parts of, 1004; with **sī**, 2068.
- terūncī**, as gen. of value, 1272.
- texō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- th**, sound of, 49; use of, 49.
- Tiberis**, decl. of, 518, 549, 554.
- timeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with **ut**, 1957.
- tingō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- tīs**, 646.
- tollō**, form of, 146, 833; supplying parts of **ferō**, 780; prin. parts of, 926.
- tondeō**, perf. of, 859; prin. parts of, 995; compounds of, 995.
- tonō**, forms of, 993; **tonat**, defective, 815; **tonat**, impersonal, 1034.
- torpēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- torqueō**, prin. parts of, 999.
- torquis**, gender of, 579.
- torreō**, prin. parts of, 1004.
- tot**, indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431; not used partitively, 1244; **tot . . . quot**, 1831.
- totidem**, not used partitively, 1244.
- totiēns . . . quotiēns**, 1831, 1886.
- tōtus**, gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; construction with, 1202, 1238; with loc. abl., 1346; **tōtum hōc** as attribute of infin., 2215.
- trādux**, gender of, 581.
- trahō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- trāns**, compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with double acc., 1138; as adv., 1402; prep., 1410.
- tremīscō**, **tremēscō**, prin. parts of, 976, 834.
- tremō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- trēs**, decl. of, 639; with **ex** or **dē**, 1246.
- tribuō**, 367; prin. parts of, 947; **nōmen tribuō**, case with, 1214.
- tribus**, decl. of, 592.
- triēns**, gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.

## Index of Latin Words.

- triplex**, decl. of, 531.  
**trūdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**trux**, decl. of, 531, 635.  
**tū**, decl. of, 644-651; when expressed, 1029; used in address, 1118; dat. with acc. of exclamation, 1150; with subjv. questions, 1566; with imper., 1571; **tē**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **vōs**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **tē** as indef., 2212; **vostri** with gerundive, 2260, 2261; represented by *ille* or *is* in ind. disc., 2325; use of **vestrūm**, **vestri**, 2335; **inter vōs** expressing reciprocal relation, 2344.  
**tūber**, gender of, 573.  
**tueor**, prin. parts of, 1009.  
**tum**, form of, 701, 1156; **primum** (**prīmō**) . . . **deinde** . . . **tum**, 1687; **tum** . . . **tum**, 1687; **cum** . . . **tum**, 1831, 1881; correlative of **quandō**, 2011; correlative of **sī**, 2018; **tum dēnique**, **tum dēmum**, correlatives of **sī**, 2018.  
**tumescō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**tundō**, prin. parts of, 931; compounds of, 931; perf. of, 2435.  
**turbō**, gender of, 574.  
**turgeo**, forms of, 1000.  
**turris**, decl. of, 517, 550, 555.  
**tussiō**, defective, 810.  
**tussis**, decl. of, 517, 548, 554.  
**tuus**, decl. of, 652-655; **tuā** with **rēfert**, **interest**, 1277; **tuum** as attribute of infin., 2215; used instead of gen., 1234, 1262.  
**u**, as vowel and as cons., how represented, 21, 23; the vowel, pronunciation of, 26, 33, 34, 37, 38; used for **y**, 20; after **q**, **g**, **s**, 24, 46, 47, 168; affinities of, 108, 109; interchange of vowel and cons., 113; final, quantity of, 2437, 2444.  
**u**, change of, especially before **b**, **p**, **m**, **f**, to **i**, 35, 78, 108; from **a**, 72; from **o**, 75, 105, 112, 452, 827; weakened to **i**, 78; followed by **o**, 75, 105, 112, 452, 827; medial, disappearance of, 93, 95; assimilation of, 103.  
**ū**, how denoted in inscriptions, 28, 30; from **ō**, 75; from **au**, 81; from **ou**, 82; from **oi**, **oe**, 87.  
**ūber**, *udder*, gender of, 573.  
**ūber**, *fruitful*, decl. of, 537, 636.  
**ubī**, quantity, 60, 2446; form of, 124, 709; in questions, 1526; with infin., 1539; with perf. indic. of anterior action, 1613; with fut. perf., 1626; **nesciō ubī**, 1788; instead of rel. pron. with prep., 1793; **ubī . . . ibī**, 1831; **ubī primum**, 1923; use of, meaning *when*, 1923-1926, 1932-1934; use of, meaning *where*, 1971; introducing conditional prot., 2110.  
**ubicumque**, quantity, 60.  
**ubinam**, quantity, 60; with partitive gen., 1253.  
**ubique**, quantity, 60.  
**ubivīs**, quantity, 60.  
**ui**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 41, 43; from **oi**, 87.  
**ulcīscor**, prin. parts of, 980.  
**ūllus**, formation of, 274; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; with **haud**, 1449; use of, 2402, 2403.  
**ūls**, comparison of, 357; prep., 1410.  
**ūltior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**ūltimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**ūltrā**, prep. and adv., 1410, 1412; position of, 1434; **ūltrā quam**, 1894.  
**ūmeō**, defective, 809.  
**umquam**, with **haud**, 1449; with **ēn** in questions, 1509.  
**uncia**, 2427.  
**unde**, form of, 124, 710; with acc. of exclamation, 1150; in questions, 1526; **nesciō unde**, 1788; instead of rel. pron. with prep., 1793; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
**unguis**, decl. of, 556; gender of, 579.  
**unguō** (**ungō**), prin. parts of, 954.  
**ūnus**, form of, 87; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620, 638; decl. of, 618-620, 638; gen. in apposition with possess. pron., 1235; with **ex** or **dē**, 1246; with gen., 1246; with superl., 1466; **ūnus est quī**, 1822.  
**ūnusquisque**, decl. of, 692.  
**urbs**, pred. in agreement with, 1072; acc. of, with **in** or **ad**, 1159; gen. of definition with, 1256; **urbe** and **in urbe**, 1333.  
**urgeo**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**ūrō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**ūsq̄ue**, as prep., 1414; correlative of **dum**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, **dōnec**, 1999, 2004; **ūsq̄ue eō**, **ūsq̄ue ad eum finem**, 2004.  
**ūsus est**, with abl., 1379; with partic., 1382; with acc., 1384; by what authors used, 1384; with subst. and partic., 2286.



## Index of Latin Words.

**ut**, **utei**, **utī**, form of, 1935; with gen., 1254; with **satin** in questions, 1510; in wishes, 1540; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with questions, 1568, 1569; coordinated member equivalent to result clause with, 1700; **sciō ut** as indef., 1788; with **dignus**, **indignus**, 1819; **quam ut**, 1896; general statement of use in subordinate clause, 1947, 1948; **ut nē**, 1947; **ut nōn**, 1947; **nēmō ut**, **vix ut**, &c., 1947; in complementary final clauses, 1949-1960; after expressions of fear, &c., 1957, 1958; in pure final clauses, 1961-1964; in parenthetical clauses, 1962; expressing assumption or concession, 1963, 2110; in provisos, 1964; in complementary consecutive clauses, 1965-1969; **tantum abest ut . . . ut**, 1969; in pure consecutive clauses, 1970; after **nōn possum**, &c., 1985.

*How*, in questions and exclamations, 1528.

*As*, with infin., 1539; with fut. perf., 1626; coordinated member equivalent to comparative sentence with, 1704; **ut quī**, 1827, 1828; **ut pote quī**, 1827; **ut . . . ita**, **sic**, **item**, 1831; **ut pote cum**, 1879; with superl., 1892; **ut** or **sicut** after **quamvis**, 1905; correlatives of, 1937; **sicuti**, **sicut**, **velutī**, **velut**, 1937; with adversative correlation, 1938; with **quisque**, 1939; introducing parenthesis, 1940; in illustrations, 1941; **ut**, **prout**, making allowance, 1942; meaning *as indeed*, *as in fact*, 1943; meaning *like*, 1944; **praeut**, 1945; **sicut**, *since*, 1946; with infin. in ind. disc., 2317; **idem ut**, 2373.

**ut**, **ut primum**, **simul ut**, *when*, use of, 1923-1934; with **quisque**, 1932.

**ut**, *where*, 1936.

**ut**, **ut sī**, in conditional comparisons, 2117, 2121.

**uter**, form of, 124; formation of, 347; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620, 657, 693; decl. of, 618-620, 693; as rel. or indef., 693; in questions, 1526; with **-ne**, 1529; distinguished from **quis**, **quī**, 2385.

**ūter**, decl. of, 525.

**utercumque**, decl. of, 694.

**uterlibet**, decl. of, 694; use of, 2401.

**uterque**, gen. sing. of, 162, 657, 694; decl. of, 694; **utriusque** with gen. of

pron., 1234; as subst. and as adj., 1243; of two individuals, 2399; **utrique**, of two sets, 2399; **utrique**, of two individuals, 2399; combined with different case of **alter** or different case of same word to express reciprocal relations, 2400.

**utervīs**, decl. of, 694; use of, 2401.

**ūtilis**, comparison of, 359; constructions with, 1201.

**utinam**, in wishes, 1540.

**ūtor**, prin. parts of, 983; with abl., 1379, 1381; use of gerundive of, 2244.

**utrum . . . an**, **anne**, **an nōn**, 1517, 1519; **utrum . . . an . . . an**, 1521; **utrum . . . -ne . . . an**, 1522; **utrumne . . . an**, 1522; **utrum**, alone, 1523; as pron., 1522; **utrum . . . -ne . . . an**, **utrumne . . . an**, 1779; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388.

**v**, the character, as vowel and as cons., 21; as cons., 23; sound of, 47; after **q**, **g**, **s**, 24, 46, 168; interchange of vowel and cons., 113; changed to **b**, 118; medial, disappearance of, 129.

**vacō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.

**vacuus**, with gen., 1264; with abl., 1306; with prep., 1306.

**vādō**, defective, 808; prin. parts of, 958.

**vae**, with dat., 1206.

**vafer**, comparison of, 358.

**vāh**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117.

**valeō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006.

**valēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.

**vallēs** (**vallis**), 541.

**vānēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.

**vannus**, gender of, 447.

**vas**, gender and decl. of, 475.

**vās**, decl. of, 492; gender of, 578.

**vātēs**, decl. of, 478, 566.

**-ve**, enclitic, 179; appended to **nē**, 1581, 1586, 1674; use of, 1667, 1674; quantity, 2433; at end of verse, 2568.

**vēcors**, decl. of, 532.

**vēctis**, gender of, 579.

**vehō**, prin. parts of, 953.

**vel**, with superl., 1466, 1671; meaning *if you will*, *even*, *perhaps*, *for instance*, 1671; use of, 1667, 1669, 1670; followed by **etiam**, **potius**, **dīcam**, 1670; in sense of **aut**, 1670; quantity, 2433.

**vellō**, see **vollō**.



## Index of Latin Words.

- velutī, velut**, 1937; **velut sī**, in conditional comparisons, 2117-2121.
- vēndō**, formation of, 395; forms of, 757; forms of, supplied by **vēneō**, 757, 1471; **vēnum dō** used for, 1165.
- vēneō**, formation of, 395; supplying forms of **vēndō**, 757, 1471; **vēnum eō** used for, 1165; followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.
- veniō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 1013; compounds of, 822; **venit in mentem**, 1290; **quod veniō**, &c., 1840; with infin. of purpose, 2164; with **supine**, 2271.
- venter**, decl. of, 525.
- vēnum dō**, use of, for **vēndō**, 1165.
- vēnum eō**, use of, for **vēneō**, 1165.
- veprēs**, gender of, 579.
- vēr**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- verberis**, decl. of, 489; gender of, 573.
- vereor**, conjug. of, 798; prin. parts of, 1009; with **gen.**, 1286; with **ut, nē**, 1957, 1958; **vereor nē** as expansion of **apod.**, 2114; with infin., 1959, 2169; with indirect question, 1959.
- vergō**, defective, 808.
- vermis**, gender of, 579.
- vērō**, use of, 1684; with **nisi**, 2020; introducing adversative sentence, 2151; position of, 1676; **nōn hercle vērō**, **minimē vērō**, 1513; **vērō, ita enim vērō, ita vērō**, in answers, 1512.
- verrō**, see **vorrō**.
- versicolor**, decl. of, 537.
- versus**, prep., 1414; position of, 1414.
- vertō (vortō)**, prin. parts of, 950.
- verū**, gender of, 586; decl. of, 592.
- vērū**, in answers, 1512; with **et**, 1648; **vērū** or **vērū etiam** after **nōn modo**, &c., 1680; common use of, 1679; introducing adversative sentence, 2151.
- vēscor**, with **abl.**, 1379; use of **gerundive** of, 2244.
- vesperāscit**, prin. parts of, 968.
- vesperī, vespere**, use of, 703, 1341.
- vester**, decl. of, 652; **vestrā** with **rēfert, interest**, 1277; used instead of **gen.**, 1234, 1262.
- vetō**, forms of, 993; used personally in **pass.**, 2201; with **o** shortened, 2443.
- vetus**, comparison of, 358; decl. of, 491, 503, 626.
- vicem**, resembling prep., 1406.
- vicīniae**, loc., 1339, 1340.
- vicis**, decl. of, 430, 473.
- vidēlicet**, form of, 712.
- videō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 997; **vidē, vidē ut** with subjv., 1579; **vidē nē, vidētō nē** with subjv., 1585, 1958; in **pres. indic.** after **postquam**, &c., 1926; with purpose clause, 1951; **sī vidētur**, 2113; with **acc. and infin.**, 2175; **videor** with **infin.**, 2169; **videor** personally, 2179; **vidētur** impersonally, 2181; **vidērī**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190.
- vigeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- vigil**, gender and decl. of, 636, 482, 544, 561.
- vinciō**, prin. parts of, 1014.
- vincō**, prin. parts of, 938.
- vīrus**, gender and decl. of, 493.
- vīs**, decl. of, 430, 518, 548, 554; stems of, 569.
- vīscus**, gender and decl. of, 491.
- vīsō**, **pres. stem** of, 835; prin. parts of, 945.
- vītis**, decl. of, 522.
- vītō**, with **dat. or acc.**, 1184; with **nē**, 1960.
- vīvēscō**, prin. parts of, 959.
- vīvō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- vix**, 1451; **nōn modo (nōn solum) . . . sed vix**, 1682; **vix . . . cum**, 1869; **vix ut**, 1947; with **gerundives**, 2249; **vixdum . . . cum**, 1869.
- vollō (vellō)**, perf. of, 866; prin. parts of, 951.
- volō**, conjug. of, 772, 773; forms **volt, vult, voltis, vultis**, 774; forms **vellem**, &c., 146; **sīs**, 774; **sīs** with **imper.**, 1572; **sīs** parenthetical, 2113; **sultis**, 774; **sultis** with **imper.**, 1572; **sultis** parenthetical, 2113; form of **volt**, 828; form of **velim**, &c., 841; prin. parts of, 922; use of **dat. of partic.** of, 1218; use of **velim, volō**, 1555; use of **vellem**, 1560; **volō, velim**, with subjv., 1579; **sī voluerō**, 1632; coordination of forms of, 1707, 1787; **quam vīs**, &c., 1374, 1903-1906; with **ut**, 1950; with **infin.**, 2169; with **acc. and infin.**, 1954, 2189, 2190, 2228; with **perf. act. infin.**, 2223, 2224, 2228; with **perf. pass. infin.**, 2229; in **conative use**, 2303.
- volturius**, **voc. sing.** of, 459.
- volucris**, stems of, 490, 500, 566.
- volvō**, prin. parts of, 947.
- vōmis**, decl. of, 491, 499; gender of, 579.

## *Index of Latin Words.*

---

**vomō**, prin. parts of, 972.

**vorrō**, **verrō**, prin. parts of, 950.

**vorsus**, prep., 1414; position of, 1414.

**vortō**, see **vertō**.

**vōs**, decl. of, 644-651; see **tū**.

**voster**, see **vester**.

**vostrās**, accent of, 173.

**votō**, see **vetō**.

**voveō**, prin. parts of, 996.

**x**, double cons., 47; sound of, 47; medial, treatment of, 134; makes position, 168.

**y**, introduction of, 19; represented by **u**, 20; pronunciation of, 35, 37, 38.

**z**, introduction of, 19; represented by **s** and **ss**, 20; makes position, 168.





## DATE DUE

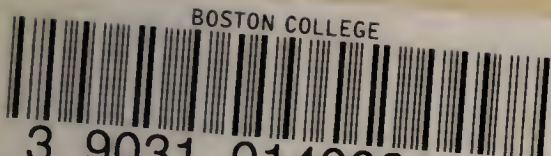
APR 22 1970

OCT 18 1985

JAN 20 1999

GAYLORD

PRINTED IN U.S.A.



131218

131218

PA2087

.L3

Lane, George M.

Author

A Latin Grammar for

Title

Schools and Colleges

Lane

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY HEIGHTS

CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.

Books may be kept for two weeks and may be renewed for the same period, unless reserved.

Two cents a day is charged for each book kept overtime.

If you cannot find what you want, ask the Librarian who will be glad to help you.

The borrower is responsible for books drawn on his card and for all fines accruing on the same.



